rexroth
A Bosch Company

IndraDrive ML

Drive Systems with HMU05

Project Planning Manual
R911344279

Edition 04



Title	IndraDrive ML Drive Systems with HMU05
Type of Documentation	Project Planning Manual
Document Typecode	DOK-INDRV*-HXX05******-PR04-EN-P
Internal File Reference	RS-bdff4382be37d8ef0a6846a5002ff107-4-en-US-8
Purpose of Documentation	• Overview of the IndraDrive Hxx05 drive system • Description of the allowed combinations of system components • Selection of the system components of the drive system • Specification applying to all components (ambient and operating conditions) • Application manual of system characteristics
Revision history	See chapter "Editions of this documentation" on page 17
Copyright	© Bosch Rexroth AG 2026 All rights reserved, also regarding any disposal, exploitation, reproduction, editing, distribution, as well as in the event of applications for industrial property rights.
Liability	The specified data is intended for product description purposes only and shall not be deemed to be a guaranteed characteristic unless expressly stipulated in the contract. All rights are reserved with respect to the content of this documentation and the availability of the product.
Editorial Department	Engineering Drives [HaKr, DiGr, RaSi, FrLu (UdSt; BaBo/PiaSt)]

Table of Contents

Page

1 System presentation ... 1
1.1 IndraDrive ML Range ... 1
1.1.1 Overview – IndraDrive ML ... 1
1.1.2 Target applications ... 3
1.1.3 Features ... 4
Functional features ... 4
Interfaces ... 4
Supported encoder systems ... 4
1.2 System configuration ... 5
1.2.1 System structure ... 5
1.2.2 System components ... 6
HMU05 universal inverter ... 6
HMU05 type code ... 6
Control sections ... 9
Optional cards ... 13
Installing and removing control sections and optional cards ... 14
Training ... 14
ESD protection ... 14
Limited number of plug-in actions ... 14
Instructions ... 15
Firmware ... 16
1.2.3 About this documentation ... 17
Purpose ... 17
Editions of this documentation ... 17
Documentation ... 17
Drive systems, system components ... 17
Firmware ... 18

2 Important directions for use ... 21
2.1 Intended use ... 21
2.1.1 Introduction ... 21
2.1.2 Areas of use and application ... 21
2.2 Unintended use ... 22

3 Safety instructions for electric drives and controls ... 23
3.1 Definitions of terms ... 23
3.2 Basic information ... 24
3.2.1 Using the Safety instructions and passing them on to others ... 24
3.2.2 Requirements for safe use ... 24
3.2.3 Hazards by improper use ... 25
3.3 Instructions with regard to specific dangers ... 26
3.3.1 Protection against contact with electrical parts and housings ... 26
3.3.2 Protective extra-low voltage as protection against electric shock ... 27

Page

3.3.3 Protection against dangerous movements ... 28
3.3.4 Protection against electromagnetic and magnetic fields during operation and mounting ... 29
3.3.5 Protection against contact with hot parts ... 29
3.3.6 Protection during handling and mounting ... 30
3.3.7 Battery safety ... 30
3.3.8 Protection against pressurized systems ... 31
3.4 Explanation of signal words and the Safety alert symbol ... 31

4 Combining the individual components ... 33
4.1 Documentations ... 33
4.2 Brief description of the individual components ... 33
4.2.1 HMU05 - Brief description and design ... 33
4.3 Configuring the drive system ... 35
4.3.1 Firmware ... 35
Firmware and device types ... 35
4.3.2 Motors ... 35
Third-party motors ... 35
General information on third-party motors ... 35
Requirements for third-party motors ... 36
Requirements for the third-party motor encoder ... 39
Notes on selection and commissioning ... 39
4.3.3 Cable ... 40
Motor power cable ... 40
Encoder cables ... 40
4.3.4 Leakage capacitances ... 41
Allowed leakage capacitances ... 41
DC bus choke, DC bus ground capacitor pairs ... 42
Operating HMU05 together with HMS01/HMD01 ... 44
Topologies ... 44
HMU05 systems without a central DC bus choke ... 45
HMU05 systems with a central DC bus choke ... 47
4.4 Installation conditions ... 49
4.4.1 Ambient and operating conditions ... 49
4.4.2 Mounting position ... 51
Mounting positions of components ... 51
4.4.3 Control cabinet ... 52
Air cooling ... 52
Control cabinet design and cooling ... 52
Liquid cooling ... 53
General information ... 53
Cooling systems ... 54
Components of the cooling system ... 55
Cooling of drive components ... 63
Coolant ... 67
Sizing of liquid cooling system ... 68
4.4.4 UL ratings ... 69

Page

Introduction ... 69
HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx ... 69
Inverter ... 69
Supply units ... 70
4.4.5 Compatibility with foreign matters ... 72
4.5 Mechanical project planning ... 73
4.5.1 Dimensions ... 73
HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx ... 73
HMU05.1N-F0140-0210, -0350 ... 73
HMU05.1N-F0170-0250, -0430 ... 74
HMU05.1N-F0220-0300, -0510, HMU05.1N-F0270-0370 ... 75
HMU05.1N-F0270-0660 ... 76
HMU05.1N-F0340-0820, HMU05.1N-F0400-0600 ... 77
HMU05.1N-F0430-1040 ... 78
HMU05.1N-F0540-0750 ... 79
HMU05.1N-F0540-1300 ... 80
HMU05.1N-Wxxxx-xxxx ... 81
HMU05.1N-W0140, -W0170 (wall mounting) ... 81
HMU05.1N-W0140, -W0170 (push-through mounting) ... 82
HMU05.1N-W0220 (wall mounting) ... 83
HMU05.1N-W0220 (push-through mounting) ... 84
HMU05.1N-W0270, -W0340 (wall mounting) ... 85
HMU05.1N-W0270, -W0340 (push-through mounting) ... 86
4.5.2 Dimensions, mass, insulation, sound pressure level ... 87
HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx ... 87
HMU05.1N-F… -A4-D7 ... 87
HMU05.1N-F… -A5-11 ... 88
4.5.3 Temperatures, cooling, power dissipation, distances ... 88
HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx ... 88
4.5.4 Mounting positions of components ... 94
4.6 Electrical project planning ... 95
4.6.1 Overall connection diagram (HMU05 as drive controller) ... 95
4.6.2 Overall connection diagram (HMU05 as supply unit) ... 96
Overall connection diagram with load contactor ... 96
Overall connection diagram with a controllable main switch ... 98
4.6.3 Project planning of control voltage ... 100
Control voltage for drive systems ... 100
Sizing the control voltage supply ... 100
Determining the power requirement ... 100
Requirements on the 24V power supply unit ... 101
Installing the 24 V supply ... 102
4.6.4 Mains connection ... 104
Residual-current-operated circuit breakers (RCD, RCCB) as additional fusing ... 104
General information ... 104
Cause of leakage currents ... 104
Possibilities of use ... 105

Page

Mains types ... 106
TN-S mains type ... 106
TN-C mains type ... 107
IT mains type ... 108
TT system ... 110
Mains with grounded outer conductor (Corner-grounded delta mains) ... 110
Mains connection type ... 111
Mains connection load and mains current ... 114
Technical data of components ... 114
Calculating the mains-side phase current ... 114
Sizing the line cross sections and fuses ... 115
Combining a mains filter, mains choke, preconnected choke, and mains capacitor ... 116
4.6.5 Running multiple HMU05s in parallel ... 119
4.7 Acceptance tests and approvals ... 121
4.7.1 Declaration of conformity ... 121
4.7.2 C-UL-US listing ... 121
4.7.3 CCC (China Compulsory Certification) ... 123

5 Condition as supplied, identification, transport and storage ... 125
5.1 Condition as supplied ... 125
5.1.1 Factory testing ... 125
Voltage testing and insulation resistance testing ... 125
5.1.2 Customer testing ... 125
5.2 Identification ... 125
5.2.1 Type plate ... 125
5.2.2 Rating plate ... 126
5.2.3 Scope of delivery ... 126
5.3 Transporting components ... 126
5.4 Storing components ... 127

6 Mounting and installation ... 129
6.1 Mounting HMU05 devices in control cabinet ... 129
6.2 Electrical connection ... 129
6.2.1 Overall connection diagram (HMU05 as drive controller) ... 129
6.2.2 Overall connection diagram (HMU05 as supply unit) ... 129
Overall connection diagram with load contactor ... 129
Overall connection diagram with a controllable main switch ... 129
6.2.3 Connection points ... 130
Arrangement of HMU05 connection points ... 130
HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx ... 130
HMU05.1N-Wxxxx-xxxx ... 131
Protective conductor connection ... 132
L1, L2, L3, mains/motor connection ... 135
Important information ... 135
XG3, motor temperature monitoring, motor holding brake, motor fan control ... 136

Page

XG32, HNA bus ... 138
XG1, IndraBus ... 139
XD10, 24 V supply (control voltage) ... 140
L+ L-, DC bus connection ... 141
Shield connection ... 143
Ground connection ... 143
6.2.4 Optional cards ... 144
HPC01.1-MN0x-NN ... 144
HPC01.1-P001-NN ... 144
6.3 WATER IN/OUT, coolant connection ... 145

7 Technical data of the components ... 147
7.1 Ambient and operating conditions ... 147
7.2 Power section ... 147
7.2.1 Control voltage ... 147
HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx ... 147
7.2.2 Mains voltage ... 150
HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx ... 150
7.2.3 DC bus ... 153
HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx ... 153
7.2.4 Inverter ... 156
HMU05.1-Fxxxx-xxxx ... 156

8 Cables, accessories, additional components ... 163
8.1 Overview ... 163
8.1.1 Cables ... 163
8.1.2 Accessories ... 163
8.1.3 Additional components ... 163
8.2 Accessories ... 165
8.2.1 Mounting and connection accessories (HAS03) ... 165
8.2.2 Cabinet mounting kit (HAS08) ... 166
Type code ... 166
HAS08.1-009-NNN-MH ... 167
HAS08.1-010-NNN-MH ... 175
8.2.3 Blank covers, motor monitor grounding, mounting plates, fixing clips, push-through technology frame (HAS10) ... 183
HAS10 type code ... 183
Blank covers (HAS10.1-002-003) ... 184
Motor monitor grounding (HAS10.1-002-004) ... 186
Mounting plate for device width 200 mm (HAS10.1-002-005) ... 188
Mounting plate for a device width of 220 mm (HAS10.1-002-006) ... 190
Mounting frame, through-hole technology (HAS10.1-002-012/…) ... 192
8.3 Additional components ... 198
8.3.1 HNA05 mains connection module ... 198
HNA05 type code ... 198

Page

Dimensions ... 199
Data ... 202
Connection points ... 204
Overview ... 204
Protective conductor connection point ... 205
XD1, mains voltage, equipment grounding conductor ... 206
XD2, DC bus ... 207
XD10, 24 V supply (control voltage) ... 208
XG1, IndraBus ... 209
XG31, messages ... 210
XG32, HNA bus ... 212
XG33, on, off, ZKS (DC bus short circuit) status ... 213
XG34, mains contactor (contact) ... 215
XG40, mains contactor (acknowledgment messages) ... 216
Display elements ... 217
8.3.2 HNC05 mains capacitor ... 218
HNC05 type code ... 218
Dimensions ... 219
Overview ... 219
HNC05.1N-0050/0075/0100-A4 ... 220
HNC05.1N-0150-A4 ... 221
HNC05.1N-0040/0050-A5 ... 222
HNC05.1N-0070/0100-A5 ... 223
HNC05.1N-0125-A5 ... 224
HNC05.1N-0150-A5 ... 225
Mounting ... 226
Data ... 227
HNC05.1N-xxxx-A4 ... 229
HNC05.1N-xxxx-A5 ... 230
IT mains ... 231
HNC05.1N-…-C001 (mains capacitor without ground capacitors) ... 232
Reactive current ... 234
Assignment HNC05 to HMU05 ... 234
Loss of capacity ... 235
HNC as wear part ... 235
Components ... 235
Checking the capacity ... 235
Reconnect the HNC ... 237
8.3.3 HNF05 mains filter ... 239
HNF05 type code ... 239
Dimensions ... 241
HNF05.1A-500N-R0150/R0180-N-A5 ... 241
HNF05.1A-500N-R0250-N-A5 ... 242
HNF05.1A-500N-R0320/R0400-N-A5 ... 243
HNF05.1A-500N-R0600-N-A5 ... 244
HNF05.1A-500N-R1000-N-A5 ... 245

Page

Mounting ... 246
Data ... 247
Reactive current with supply unit locked ... 247
Assignment HNF05 to HMU05 ... 247
8.3.4 HNL05 mains choke ... 248
HNL05 type code ... 248
Dimensions HNL05.1R-…-A4 ... 252
HNL05.1R-0219-N0218-N-A4-NNNF ... 252
HNL05.1R-0182-N0262-N-A4-NNNF ... 253
HNL05.1R-0219-N0262-N-A4-NNNW ... 254
HNL05.1R-0135-N0327-N-A4-NNNW ... 255
HNL05.1R-0135-N0327-N-A4-NNNF ... 256
HNL05.1R-0045-N0327-N-A4-NNNN ... 257
HNL05.1R-0054-N0409-N-A4-NNNN ... 258
HNL05.1R-0117-N0409-N-A4-NNNW ... 259
HNL05.1R-0117-N0409-N-A4-NNNF ... 260
HNL05.1R-0043-N0514-N-A4-NNNN ... 261
HNL05.1R-0130-N0514-N-A4-NNNW ... 262
HNL05.1R-0130-N0514-N-A4-NNNF ... 263
HNL05.1R-0050-N0652-N-A4-NNNN ... 264
HNL05.1R-0113-N0652-N-A4-NNNF ... 265
HNL05.1R-0040-N0811-N-A4-NNNN ... 266
HNL05.1R-0100-N0811-N-A4-NNNF ... 267
Dimensions HNL05.1R-…-A5 ... 268
HNL05.1R-0649-N0127-N-A5-NNNF ... 268
HNL05.1R-0125-N0152-N-A5-NNNN ... 269
HNL05.1R-0542-N0152-N-A5-NNNF ... 270
HNL05.1R-0100-N0190-N-A5-NNNN ... 271
HNL05.1R-0434-N0190-N-A5-NNNF ... 272
HNL05.1R-0080-N0238-N-A5-NNNN ... 273
HNL05.1R-0346-N0238-N-A5-NNNF ... 274
HNL05.1R-0054-N0352-N-A5-NNNN ... 275
HNL05.1R-0234-N0352-N-A5-NNNF ... 276
HNL05.1R-0040-N0471-N-A5-NNNN ... 277
HNL05.1R-0175-N0471-N-A5-NNNF ... 278
Data ... 279
Water cooling ... 282
Mounting ... 282
Connection ... 283
Operation ... 284
Assignment HNL05 to HMU05 ... 284
8.3.5 Motor choke/balancing choke HML05 ... 285
HML05 type code ... 285
Dimensions ... 286
Overviewm on the motor choke/balancing choke ... 286
HML05.1W-D021U-N0254-N-500 ... 287

Page

HML05.1W-D018U-N0306-N-500 ... 288
HML05.1W-D014U-N0392-N-500 ... 289
HML05.1W-D009U-N0490-N-500 ... 290
HML05.1W-D009U-N0616-N-500 ... 291
HML05.1W-D007U-N0771-N-500 ... 292
HML05.1W-D006U-N1002-N-500 ... 293
HML05.1W-D004U-N1185-N-500 ... 294
HML05.1W-D052U-N0147-N-690 ... 295
HML05.1W-D043U-N0177-N-690 ... 296
HML05.1W-D034U-N0227-N-690 ... 297
HML05.1W-D027U-N0284-N-690 ... 298
HML05.1W-D020U-N0374-N-690 ... 299
HML05.1W-D013U-N0581-N-690 ... 300
HML05.1F-D200U-N0465-N-500 ... 301
HML05.1F-D200U-N0269-N-690 ... 302
HML05.1F-D200U-C0269-N-690 ... 303
Mounting ... 304
Motor choke/balancing choke data ... 305
Data for motor chokes for high-speed motors ... 308
HML05 to HMU05 assignment ... 311
8.3.6 HLL05 DC bus choke ... 312
HLL05 type code ... 312
Sizing ... 314
Dimensions ... 315
HLL05.1W-04M0-S0202 ... 315
HLL05.1F-04M0-S0202 ... 316
HLL05.1F-04M0-S0243 ... 317
HLL05.1W-04M0-S0303 ... 318
HLL05.1F-04M0-S0303 ... 319
HLL05.1F-04M0-S0380 ... 320
HLL05.1F-04M0-S0475 ... 321
HLL05.1W-04M0-S0475 ... 322
HLL05.1F-04M0-S0603 ... 323
HLL05.1F-04M0-S0720 ... 324
Data ... 325
Water cooling ... 326
Mounting ... 326
Circuit diagram ... 327
Connection ... 327
HLL05 to HMU05 assignment ... 330
8.3.7 DC bus ground capacitor pair (HAS04.1-003) ... 331
Type code ... 331
Data ... 331
Mounting ... 334
8.3.8 HLR05 external braking resistor ... 336
HLR05 type code ... 336

Page

Dimensions ... 337
HLR05.1W-54K0-N05R4, …-70K0-N04R0 ... 337
Data ... 338
Installation ... 339
8.3.9 HLT05 braking unit ... 342
HLT05 type code ... 342
Dimensions HLT05 ... 343
Data HLT05 ... 347
Connection diagram ... 349
HLT05 ... 349
HLT05 / HNA05 / HMU05 ... 352
Connection points ... 353
Overview ... 353
XE01, equipment grounding conductor connection point ... 355
XD02, DC bus ... 357
XD4, braking resistor ... 359
XD10, 24 V supply (control voltage) ... 360
XG1, IndraBus ... 361
XG3, braking resistor overtemperature feedback contact ... 362
XG31, feedback contact (Bb, warning) and reset input ... 363
XG33, DC BUS SHORT-CIRCUIT (ZKS) ... 365
Display elements ... 366
8.3.10 24V power supply unit ... 367
Features ... 367
Data ... 368
24V/20A connection diagram ... 369
24V/40A connection diagram ... 370
8.3.11 HAH02 heat exchanger ... 371
HAH02 Type code ... 371
General information ... 374
Manufacturer’s details and machine identification details ... 374
Disclaimer notice ... 376
Safety information ... 377
General safety warnings ... 377
Water-water heat exchanger (WW008-020, WW035-090) ... 378
Technical information ... 378
Transporting and installing ... 391
Usage ... 399
Maintenance ... 408
Troubleshooting ... 410
Replacing the component ... 412
Control using MLD ... 418
Starting the machine ... 421
Parameters ... 423
Water-water heat exchanger (WW060-180) ... 426
Technical information ... 426

Page

Transporting and installing ... 438
Use ... 446
Maintenance ... 455
Troubleshooting ... 458
Replacing the component ... 460
Control using MLD ... 466
Starting the machine ... 469
Parameters ... 471
Air-water heat exchanger (WA012-020) ... 474
Technical information ... 474
Transporting and installing ... 488
Use ... 495
Maintenance ... 504
Troubleshooting ... 507
Replacing the component ... 509
Control using MLD ... 514
Starting the machine ... 516
Parameters ... 518
Air-water heat exchanger (WA020-090) ... 521
Technical information ... 521
Transporting and installing ... 534
Use ... 539
Maintenance ... 548
Troubleshooting ... 552
Replacing the component ... 553
Control using MLD ... 562
Starting the machine ... 564
Parameters ... 566
Air-water heat exchanger (WA035-090) ... 569
Technical information ... 569
Transporting and installing ... 582
Use ... 588
Maintenance ... 598
Troubleshooting ... 602
Replacing the component ... 604
Control using MLD ... 614
Starting the machine ... 616
Heating function (optional) ... 617
Parameters ... 617

9 Environmental protection and disposal ... 621
9.1 Environmental protection ... 621
9.2 Disposal ... 621

10 Service and support ... 623

Page

11 Appendix ... 625
11.1 Switching supply units on and off ... 625
11.1.1 Switching on ... 625
11.1.2 Switching off ... 626
11.2 Reactive power ... 627
11.3 Operation at third-party supply units ... 628
11.4 Sizing the line cross-sections and fuses ... 629
11.4.1 Introduction ... 629
11.4.2 International except for USA/Canada; installation type B1 ... 629
11.4.3 International except for USA/Canada; installation type B2 ... 631
11.4.4 International except for USA/Canada; installation type E ... 633
11.4.5 USA/Canada; installation type E ... 635
11.4.6 Rated values of the table values ... 638
11.5 DC bus fuses ... 640
11.6 Aluminum contact points and cupal disks ... 641
11.6.1 Introduction ... 641
11.6.2 Preparation ... 641
11.6.3 Cupal disk ... 641
11.7 Leakage capacitances ... 643
11.7.1 Determining the leakage capacitance ... 643
11.7.2 Leakage capacitance of power cables ... 643
11.8 RSC - Relative Short Circuit Power ... 644
11.9 Total Harmonic Distortion (THD) ... 646
11.10 Liquid cooling ... 650
11.10.1 Sizing liquid cooling ... 650
Calculation criteria ... 650
Physical data ... 650
Flow rate ... 650
Pressure decrease ... 651
Sizing aids ... 652
11.10.2 Sizing example ... 657
11.11 UL/CSA - Component designations ... 662

Index ... 665

1 System presentation

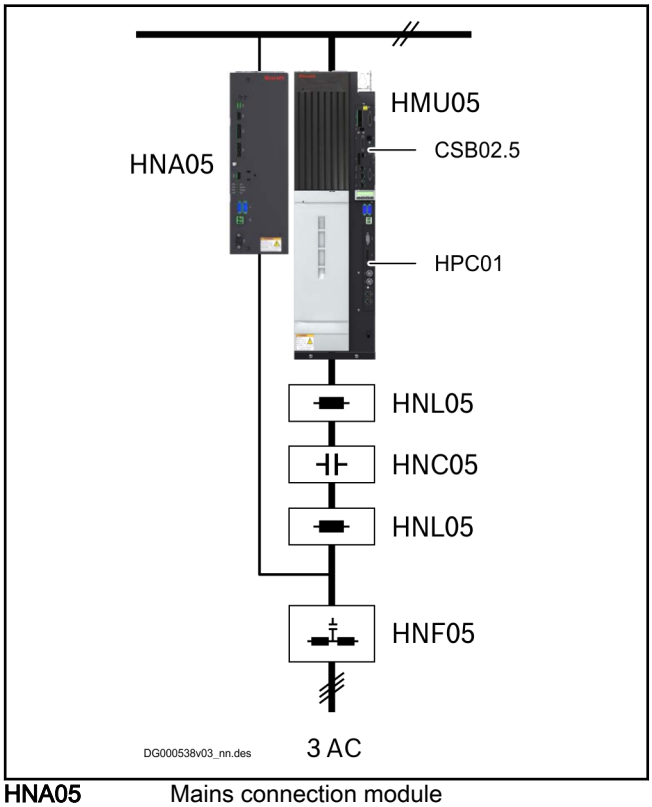
1.1 IndraDrive ML Range

1.1.1 Overview – IndraDrive ML

IndraDrive ML
HMU05
 DG000573v01_nn.tif

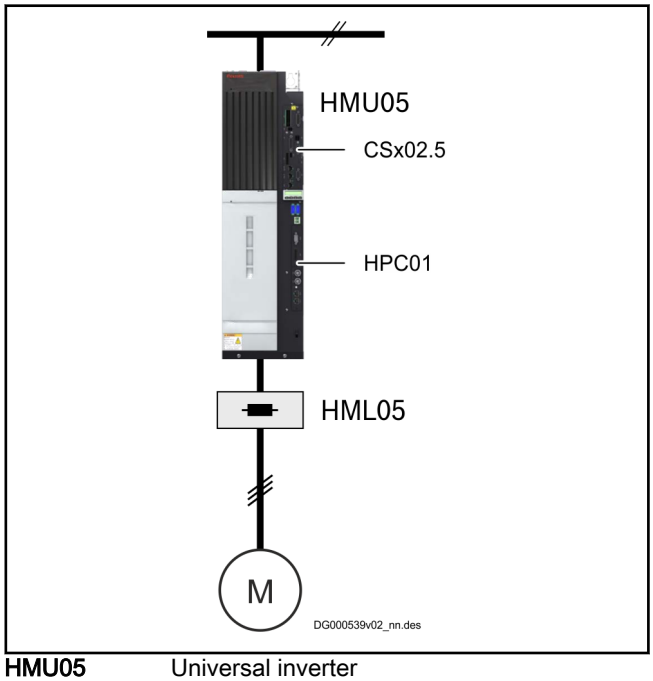
Tab. 1-1: HMU05 universal inverter of the IndraDrive ML product range

Supply unit	Drive controller



HNA05 Mains connection module
HMU05 Universal inverter
CSB02.5 Control section with firmware for supply units (FWA-INDRV*-**PSB**-…)
HPC01 Motor/mains module
HNC05 Mains capacitor
HNL05 Choke
HNF05 Mains filter

Fig. 1-1: Power supply unit components



HMU05 Universal inverter
CSx02.5 Control section with firmware for drive controllers (FWA-INDRV*-**MPx**-…)
HPC01 Motor/mains module
HML05 Motor choke (optional)

Fig. 1-2: Drive controller components

Tab. 1-2: Supply unit, drive controller

HMV05 HMV05 is the designation for a **supply unit** consisting of an HNA05 mains connecting module, HMU05 universal inverter and CSB02.5 control section with firmware for supply units (FWA-INDRV*-**PSB**-...).

HMV05 is not an official product designation and is used solely for documentation purposes.

HMS05 HMS05 is the designation for a **drive controller** consisting of an HMU05 universal inverter and CSx02.5 control section with firmware for drive controllers (FWA-INDRV*-**MPx**-...).

HMS05 is not an official product designation and is used solely for documentation purposes.

DC/DC converter See the documentation "IndraDrive ML, DC/DC Controller with HMU05" (R911398286).

1.1.2 Target applications

	**Metal forming** • Main drive servo press • Winder • Straightening drives • Profile forming drives
	**Plastics** • Extruder • Kneader • Pumps • Injection and profiling axis drives
	**Metallurgy** • Roller conveyors • Lifters
	**Others** • Paper production (pumps, rollers) • Printing machines (winding computation, cross cutters, rollers) • General automation (pumps, cranes, test rigs)

Tab. 1-3: Target applications

1.1.3 Features

Functional features

- Universal supply units for inverters and regenerative power sections
- Power sections with the same output can be connected in parallel
- Compact type of construction
- Degree of protection of device: IP20; degree of protection of connections: IP00
- Control section CSx02.5
- Control panel with programming module function
- Scalable signal processing and firmware
- Multi-encoder interface for all standard encoders
- DC bus connection
- Analog input (14-bit, ±10 V)
- Cooling type: Liquid cooling

Interfaces

Overview

- Compatible with the IndraDrive platform
- Ethernet-based communication with the following supported protocols:
  - sercos III
  - PROFINET IO
  - EtherNet/IP
  - EtherNet POWERLINK
  - EtherCAT
- optional communication:
  - PROFIBUS
  - CANopen
- optional safety technology
- optional multi-encoder interface
- optional encoder emulation
- Analog input
- freely configurable digital inputs/outputs
- optional digital/analog I/O extension

Supported encoder systems

Supported encoder systems

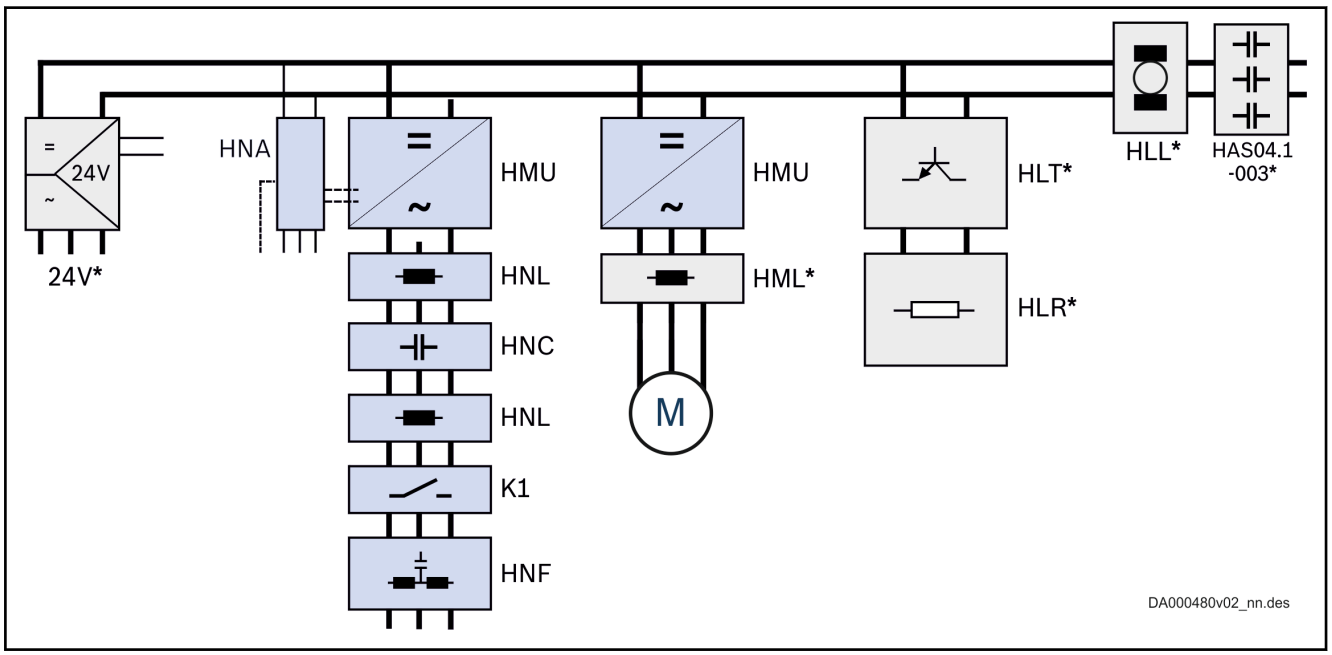
Encoder systems with a supply voltage of **5 and 12 V**:

- Encoder IndraDyn
- $1V_{pp}$ sin-cos encoder; HIPERFACE®
- $1V_{pp}$ sin-cos encoder; EnDat 2.1; EnDat 2.2
- $1V_{pp}$ sin-cos encoder; with reference track
- 5V-TTL square-wave encoder; with reference track
- SSI

- Combined encoder for SSI (combination of SSI and $1V_{pp}$ sin-cos encoder)
- Resolver

1.2 System configuration

1.2.1 System structure



*	Optional
24V	24V power supply unit (AC/DC power supply unit; optional DC/DC power supply unit for redundancy in the case of mains failure)
HAS04.1-003	DC bus ground capacitor pairs
HLL	DC bus choke
HLR	Braking resistor
HLT	Braking unit
HML	Motor choke
HMU	Universal inverter
HNA	Mains connection module
HNC	Mains capacitor
HNF	Mains filter
HNL	Choke
K1	Mains contactor
M	Motor

Fig. 1-3: IndraDrive ML Drive system

1.2.2 System components

HMU05 universal inverter

HMU05 type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	M	U	0	5	.	1	N	-	F	0	2	7	0	-	0	6	6	0	-	N	-	A	4	-	D	7	-	P	1	N	-	N	N	N	N					
	①			②			③	④		⑤	⑥										⑦		⑧						⑨	⑩	⑪		⑫								

①	**Product:** HMU = Universal inverter
②	**Series:** 05 = 05
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Application:** N = Standard
⑤	**Cooling type:** F = Liquid cooling
⑥	**DC bus continuous power / maximum current:** 0140-0210 = 140 kW / 210 A 0140-0350 = 140 kW / 350 A 0170-0250 = 170 kW / 250 A 0170-0430 = 170 kW / 430 A 0220-0300 = 220 kW / 300 A 0220-0510 = 220 kW / 510 A 0270-0370 = 270 kW / 370 A 0270-0660 = 270 kW / 660 A 0340-0820 = 340 kW / 820 A 0400-0600 = 400 kW / 600 A 0430-1040 = 430 kW / 1040 A 0540-0750 = 540 kW / 750 A 0540-1300 = 540 kW / 1300 A
⑦	**Degree of protection:** N = IP00
⑧	**Mains connection voltage / Nominal DC bus voltage:** A4-D7 = supply unit: 3 x AC 380 V -15% ... 500 V +10%; inverter: DC 750 V A5-11 = supply unit: 3 x AC 525 V -15% ... 690 V +10%; inverter: DC 1100 V
⑨	**Parallel operation:** P = Parallel operation is possible

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	M	U	0	5	.	1	N	-	F	0	2	7	0	-	0	6	6	0	-	N	-	A	4	-	D	7	-	P	1	N	-	N	N	N	N					
	①			②			③	④		⑤	⑥										⑦		⑧						⑨	⑩	⑪		⑫								

⑩	**Motor/mains module connection:** B = Not equipped (with blank cover at motor/mains module connection and control section connection) 1 = Equipped
⑪	**Parallel module connection:** B = Not equipped, with blank cover 1 = Equipped
⑫	**Other design:** NNNN = None NS01 = Modified maximum currents at standstill ND01 = DC voltage operation

Tab. 1-4: HMU05, type code

		DC bus continuous power / maximum current												
		0140-0350	0170-0430	0220-0510	0270-0660	0340-0820	0430-1040	0540-1300	0140-0210	0170-0250	0220-0300	0270-0370	0400-0600	0540-0750
Mains connection voltage / Nominal DC bus voltage	A4-D7	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–
	A5-11	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Cooling type	F	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Tab. 1-5: DC bus continuous power / maximum current

		Other design			Parallel operation
		NNNN	NS01	ND01	P
Mains connection voltage / Nominal DC bus voltage	A4-D7	✓	✓	✓	✓
	A5-11	✓	–	✓	✓
DC bus continuous power / Maximum current	0140-0350	✓	✓	✓	✓
	0170-0430	✓	✓	✓	✓
	0220-0510	✓	✓	✓	✓
	0270-0660	✓	✓	✓	✓
	0340-0820	✓	✓	✓	✓
	0430-1040	✓	–	✓	✓
	0540-1300	✓	–	✓	✓
	0140-0210	✓	–	✓	✓
	0170-0250	✓	–	✓	✓
	0220-0300	✓	–	✓	✓
	0270-0370	✓	–	✓	✓
	0400-0600	✓	–	✓	✓
	0540-0750	✓	–	–	✓
Cooling type	F	✓	✓	✓	✓

Tab. 1-6: Other design , parallel operation

		Motor/mains module connection		Parallel module connection	
		B	1	B	1
Parallel operation	P	✓	✓	✓	✓

Tab. 1-7: Motor cable and mains module connection, parallel module

☞ Our sales representative in charge will help you with the currently available designs.

Control sections

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	C	S	B	0	2	.	5	B	-	E	T	-	E	C	-	P	B	-	L	3	-	E	C	-	N	N	-	F	W												
	①			②			③	④		⑤			⑥			⑦			⑧			⑨			⑩			⑪													

①	**Product:** CSB = Single-axis control section BASIC
②	**Series:** 02 = 02
③	**Design:** 5 = For Hxx05
④	**Interface equipment:** B = Extended scope
⑤	**Communication:** ET = Multi-Ethernet
⑥	**Interface 1:** EC = Multi-encoder interface
⑦	**Interface 2:** NN = Not equipped PB = PROFIBUS CN = CANopen EC = Multi-encoder interface EM = Encoder emulation EP = Engineering port
⑧	**Interface 3 (safety technology) [1]:** NN = Not equipped L3 = STO (Safe Torque Off) S4 = Safe Motion S5 = Safe Motion SB = Safe Motion Bus
⑨	**Interface 4:** NN = Not equipped EC = Multi-encoder interface [2] EM = Encoder emulation [3] DA = Digital/analog I/O extension

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	20	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	30	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	40
Example:	C	S	B	0	2	.	5	B	-	E	T	-	E	C	-	P	B	-	L	3	-	E	C	-	N	N	-	F	W											
	①			②			③	④		⑤			⑥			⑦			⑧			⑨			⑩			⑪												

⑩	**Other design:** NN = None
⑪	**Firmware:** FW = Firmware has to be ordered as a separate subposition NW = Without control panel, without firmware

1) The L3, S4, S5 and SB interfaces guarantee both the function and the certification
2) Only if interface 2 = PB or CN
3) Only if interface 2 = PB, CN or EC

Tab. 1-8: CSB02.5 type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	20	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	30	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	40
Example:	C	S	H	0	2	.	5	B	-	C	C	-	E	C	-	E	T	-	N	N	-	D	A	-	N	N	-	F	W											
	①			②			③	④		⑤			⑥			⑦			⑧			⑨			⑩			⑪												

①	**Product:** CSH = Single-axis control section ADVANCED
②	**Series:** 02 = 02
③	**Design:** 5 = For Hxx05
④	**Interface equipment:** B = Extended scope
⑤	**Communication:** CC = sercos III master ET = Multi-Ethernet
⑥	**Interface 1:** EC = Multi-encoder interface
⑦	**Interface 2:** NN = Not equipped ET = Multi-Ethernet [1)] PB = PROFIBUS [1)] CN = CANopen [1)] EC = Multi-encoder interface EM = Encoder emulation

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	C	S	H	0	2	.	5	B	-	C	C	-	E	C	-	E	T	-	N	N	-	D	A	-	N	N	-	F	W												
	①			②			③	④		⑤			⑥			⑦			⑧			⑨			⑩			⑪													

⑧	**Interface 3 (safety technology) [2]:** NN = Not equipped L3 = STO (Safe Torque Off) S4 = Safe Motion S5 = Safe Motion SB = Safe Motion Bus
⑨	**Interface 4:** NN = Not equipped EC = Multi-encoder interface [3] EM = Encoder emulation [3] DA = Digital/analog I/O extension
⑩	**Other design:** NN = None
⑪	**Firmware:** FW = Firmware must be ordered as a separate subposition NW = Without control panel, without firmware

1) Only if communication = CC
2) The L3, S4, S5 and SB interfaces guarantee both the function and the certification
3) Only if interface 2 = ET, PB, CN or EC

Tab. 1-9: CSH02.5 type code

CSB02.5 control section vs. CSH02.5 CONTROL SECTION

Functional equipment	CSB02.5B-ET (BASIC)	CSH02.5B-CC/ET (ADVANCED)
Communication	Multi-Ethernet (incl. Sercos III)	CC: sercos III master ET: Multi-Ethernet
	optional interface[1)] (PROFIBUS, CANopen)[2)]	optional interface[1)] (Multi-Ethernet, PROFIBUS, CANopen)
Encoder evaluation	Multi-encoder interface	Multi-encoder interface
	optional multi-encoder interface[1)]	optional multi-encoder interface[1)]
Encoder emulation	✓	✓
Integrated safety technology	L3 (Safe Torque Off) S4, Safe Motion S5 (Safe Motion) SB (Safe Motion Bus)	L3 (Safe Torque Off) S4, Safe Motion S5 (Safe Motion) SB (Safe Motion Bus)
IndraMotion	MLD-S[3)]	MLD-S[3)] MLD-M[3)]
freely configurable digital inputs/outputs (inkl. touch probe)	✓	✓
analog input	✓	✓
Control panel • with programming module function	✓	✓
• with a slot for microSD memory card	–	✓
optional digital/analog I/O extension	✓	✓

1) **one** additional interface per converter for communication **or** encoder evaluation

2) When using "PROFIBUS" or "CANopen" for communication, the Multi-Ethernet function is no longer available. However, you can still use the connection points X24 and X25 as Engineering interfaces.

3) Firmware version MPx-19 or higher

Tab. 1-10: BASIC vs. ADVANCED

Optional cards

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	P	C	0	1	.	1	-	P	0	0	1	-	N	N																										
	①			②			③			④					⑤																										

①	**Product:** HPC = HPC
②	**Series:** 01 = 01
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Function:** P001 = Standard MN02 = Motor/mains module (for devices that can be connected in parallel)
⑤	**Other design:** NN = None

Tab. 1-11: HPC01, type code

Optional card	Function
HPC01.1-MN02	Motor/mains module for devices that can be connected in parallel; supports both standalone and parallel operation; when multiple HMU05 units are operated in parallel, the HMU05 equipped with this option card acts as the master. • Motor: Temperature sensor, brake control • Mains connection module HNA05: Communication
HPC01.1-P001	Parallel connection module; when running multiple HMU05s in parallel, the HMU05s with only this optional card are slaves. • Controlling/synchronizing HMU05s • Transmitting safety signals

Tab. 1-12: Option cards

Installing and removing control sections and optional cards

Training

NOTICE **Risk of damage from improper handling.**

Only those trained by Rexroth for installing and removing control sections and optional cards are allowed to perform these actions.

ESD protection

NOTICE **Risk of damage and impairment to reliability from electrostatic discharge.**

Exposed conductive parts coming into contact with control sections and optional cards must be discharged beforehand through grounding.

Such exposed conductive parts include:

- The human body (grounding by touching a conductive, grounded object)
- Parts and tools (place them on a conductive surface)

Control sections and optional cards may only be stored or shipped in conductive packaging.

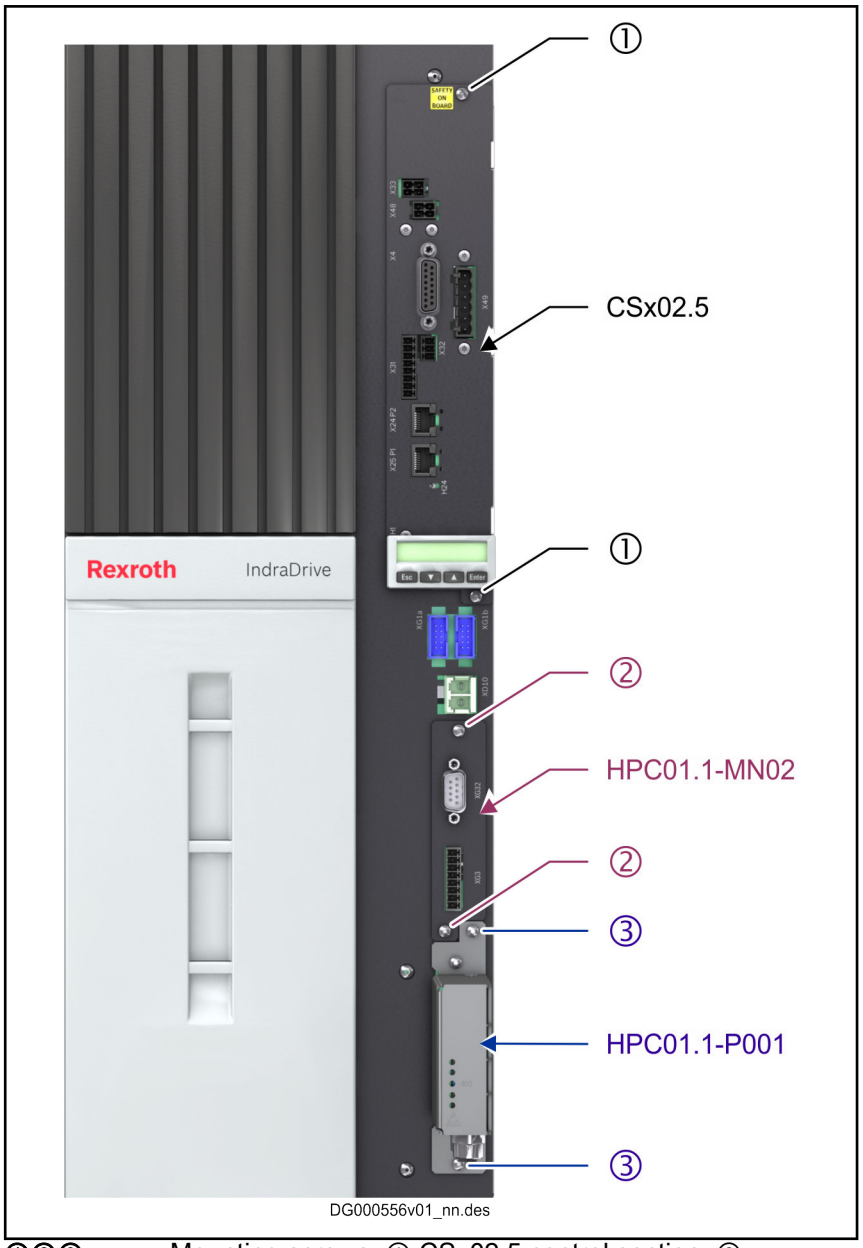
Limited number of plug-in actions

NOTICE **Risk of damage from frequent installation and removal.**

A control section/optional card may only be installed and removed a maximum of **20 times**.

Instructions

1. Loosen the mounting screws for the control section, optional card or blank cover.



①②③ Mounting screws: ① CSx02.5 control section, ② HPC01.1-MN02, ③ HPC01.1-P001

Fig. 1-4: HMU05 with control section (CSx02.5) and optional card (HPC01)

2. Carefully remove the control section or optional card from the slot.
3. Installation is the reverse of removal.

Firmware

Firmware for drive controllers	Assigned device type
FWA-INDRV*-MP**B**-**20**VRS-D5-x-NNN-NN or higher	CSB02.5 control section (BASIC)
FWA-INDRV*-MP**C**-**20**VRS-D5-x-xxx-xx or higher	CSH02.5 control section (ADVANCED)

Tab. 1-13: Drive firmware

Firmware for supply units	Assigned device type
FWA-INDRV*-PS**B**-**20**VRS-D5-x-NNN-NN or higher	CSB02.5 control section (BASIC)

Tab. 1-14: Supply unit firmware

📖 For detailed information, see the Functional Description of the firmware used (index entry "Overview of functions/functional packages").

1.2.3 About this documentation

Purpose

⚠ WARNING **Personal injury and property damage by incorrect project planning for installations, machines and applications!**

Comply with the contents of the documentations relevant for your drive system (refer to chapter "Documentation" on page 17)

This documentation contains

- Overview of the IndraDrive ML system
- Description of the allowed combinations of IndraDrive ML system components
- Selection of the system components of the IndraDrive ML system
- Specification applying to all components (ambient and operating conditions)
- Application manual of system characteristics

Editions of this documentation

Edition	Release date	Notes
01	2014-10	-
02	2016-09	-
03	2019-05	-
04	2026-05	-

Tab. 1-15: Editions

Documentation

Drive systems, system components

Title	Type of documentation	Document typecode[1)] DOK-…	Material number de (en)
IndraDrive ML, Drive Systems with HMU05	Project Planning Manual	INDRV*-HXX05******-PRxx-EN-P	R911344279 (R911344279)
IndraDrive ML DC/DC Converter with HMU05	Project Planning Manual	INDRV*-HXX05_DCDC*-PRxx-EN-P	R911398286 (R911398286)
IndraDrive Control Sections CBS02, CSE02, CSH02, CDB02	Project Planning Manual	INDRV*-CXX02******-PRxx-EN-P	R911338962 (R911338962)

Title	Type of documentation	Document typecode[1)] DOK-…	Material number de (en)
Offshore / Maritime; EMC, Design IndraDrive	Project Planning Manual	DRIVE*-CABINETMARE-PRxx-EN-P	R911394126 (R911394126)
Control Cabinet; Air Conditioning, EMC, Design, IP Code, Electrics, IndraDrive, Rexroth EFC/Fv, Sytronix	Project Planning Manual	DRIVE*-CABINET****-PRxx-EN-P	R911344988 (R911344988)

1) In the documentation typecodes, "xx" is a placeholder for the current edition of the documentation (e.g.: PR01 is the first edition of a Project Planning Manual)

Tab. 1-16: Documentations – drive systems, system components

Firmware

Title IndraDrive ...	Type of documentation	Document typecode[1)] DOK-INDRV*-…	Material number de (en)
IndraDrive MPx-21 Functions	Application Manual	MP*-21VRS**-APxx-EN-P	R911385759 (R911385758)
IndraDrive Power Supply Basic PSB-21 Functions	Application Manual	PSB-21VRS**-APxx-EN-P	R911385754 (R911385754)
IndraDrive Power Supply Basic PSB-21 Version Notes	Release Notes	PSB-21VRS**-RNxx-EN-P	R911385752 (R911385752)
IndraDrive Power Supply Basic PSB-20 Functions	Application Manual	PSB-20VRS**-APxx-EN-P	R911345610 (R911345610)
IndraDrive Power Supply Basic PSB-20 Version Notes	Release Notes	PSB-20VRS**-RNxx-EN-P	R911345612 (R911345612)
MPx-20 Version Notes	Release Notes	MP*-20VRS**-RNxx-EN-P	R911345606 (R911345606)
MPx-20 Functions	Application Manual	MP*-20VRS**-APxx-EN-P	R911345608 (R911345608)
IndraDrive Power Supply Basic PSB-19 Functions	Application Manual	PSB-19VRS**-APxx-EN-P	R911345602 (R911345602)
MPx-16 to MPx-21 and PSB Parameters	Reference Book	GEN1-PARA**-RExx-EN-P	R911328651 (R911328651)
MPx-16 to MPx-21 and PSB Diagnostics	Reference Book	GEN1-DIAG**-RExx-EN-P	R911326738 (R911326738)

Title IndraDrive ...	Type of documentation	Document typecode[1)] DOK-INDRV*-…	Material number de (en)
Integrated Safety Technology "Safe Torque Off" (as of MPx-16)	Application Manual	SI3-**VRS**-APxx-EN-P	R911332634 (R911332634)
Integrated Safety Technology "Safe Motion" (MPx-18 and above)	Application Manual	SI3*SMO-VRS-APxx-EN-P	R911338920 (R911338920)
IndraMotion MLD Libraries as of MPx-18	Reference Book	MLD-SYSLIB3-RExx-EN-P	R911338916 (R911338916)
IndraMotion MLD MPx-18 and above	Application Manual	MLD3-**VRS*-APxx-EN-P	R911338914 (R911338914)

1) In the document typecodes, "xx" is a placeholder for the current edition of the documentation (e.g.: RE02 is the second edition of a Reference Book)

Tab. 1-17: Documentations – firmware

2 Important directions for use

2.1 Intended use

2.1.1 Introduction

Rexroth products are developed and manufactured to the state-of-the-art. The products are tested prior to delivery to ensure operational safety and reliability.

⚠ WARNING **Personal injury and property damage by using products incorrectly!**

The products have been designed for use in an industrial environment and may only be used as intended. Failure to use them in the intended way may cause situations resulting in property damage and personal injury.

☞ Rexroth as the manufacturer shall not honor any warranty, liability or compensatory claims for damages resulting from unintended use of the products. The user alone shall bear the risks of unintended use of the products.

Before using Rexroth products, make sure that all the prerequisites for an intended use of the products are satisfied:

- Personnel that in any way, shape or form uses our products must first read and understand the relevant safety instructions and be familiar with their intended use.
- Leave hardware products in their original state, i.e., do not make any structural modifications. It is not permitted to decompile software products or alter their source codes.
- Do not install damaged or faulty products or put them into operation.
- Make sure that the products have been installed as described in the relevant documentation.

2.1.2 Areas of use and application

Drive controllers by Rexroth are designed to control electric motors and monitor their operation.

Controlling and monitoring the drive controllers may require additional sensors and actuators.

☞ The drive controllers may only be used with the accessories and attachments specified in this documentation. Components that are not expressly mentioned may neither be attached nor connected. The same applies to cables and lines.

Operation is only allowed in the specified configurations and combinations of the components using the software and firmware as specified in the relevant functional descriptions.

Drive controllers have to be programmed before commissioning to ensure that the motor executes the functions specific to the application.

Drive controllers of the IndraDrive ML series have been developed for use in single- and multi-axis drive and control tasks.

Drive controllers may only be operated under the assembly and installation conditions specified in this documentation, in the specified mounting position and under the specified ambient conditions (temperature, degree of protection, humidity, EMC, etc.).

2.2 Unintended use

"Unintended use" refers to using the drive controllers outside of the operating conditions, technical data and specifications described in this documentation.

Drive controllers must not be used, if …

- they are exposed to operating conditions that do not meet the specified ambient conditions. This includes, for example, operation under water, under extreme temperature fluctuations or extreme maximum temperatures.
- Furthermore, drive controllers may not be used in applications which have not been explicitly authorized by Rexroth. Therefore, please carefully follow the specifications outlined in the general safety instructions!



Components of the IndraDrive ML system are **products of Category C3** (with restricted distribution) in accordance with IEC 61800-3. The Category C3 comprises EMC limit values for line-based and radiated noise emission.

Compliance with these Categories requires the appropriate measures of interference suppression (e.g., mains filters, shielding measures) to be used in the drive system.

These components are not provided for use in a public low-voltage grid supplying residential areas. If these components are used in such a mains, high-frequency interference is to be expected. This can require additional measures of interference suppression.

3 Safety instructions for electric drives and controls

3.1 Definitions of terms

Installation An installation consists of several devices or systems interconnected for a defined purpose and on a defined site which, however, are not intended to be placed on the market as a single functional unit.

Electric drive system An electric drive system comprises all components from mains supply to motor shaft; this includes, for example, electric motor(s), motor encoder(s), supply units and drive controllers, as well as auxiliary and additional components, such as mains filter, mains choke and the corresponding lines and cables.

User A user is a person installing, commissioning or using a product which has been placed on the market.

Application documentation Application documentation comprises the entire documentation used to inform the user of the product about the use and safety-relevant features for configuring, integrating, installing, mounting, commissioning, operating, maintaining, repairing and decommissioning the product. The following terms are also used for this kind of documentation: Operating Instructions, Commissioning Manual, Instruction Manual, Project Planning Manual, Application Description, etc.

Electrical equipment Electrical equipment encompasses all devices used to generate, convert, transmit, distribute or apply electrical energy, such as electric motors, transformers, switching devices, cables, lines, power-consuming devices, circuit board assemblies, plug-in units, control cabinets, etc.

Device A device is a finished product with a defined function, intended for users and placed on the market as an individual piece of merchandise.

Manufacturer The manufacturer is an individual or legal entity bearing responsibility for the design and manufacture of a product which is placed on the market in the individual's or legal entity's name. The manufacturer can use finished products, finished parts or finished elements, or contract out work to subcontractors. However, the manufacturer must always have overall control and possess the required authority to take responsibility for the product.

Component A component is a combination of elements with a specified function, which are part of a piece of equipment, device or system. Components of the electric drive and control system are, for example, supply units, drive controllers, mains choke, mains filter, motors, cables, etc.

Machine A machine is the entirety of interconnected parts or units at least one of which is movable. Thus, a machine consists of the appropriate machine drive elements, as well as control and power circuits, which have been assembled for a specific application. A machine is, for example, intended for processing, treatment, movement or packaging of a material. The term "machine" also covers a combination of machines which are arranged and controlled in such a way that they function as a unified whole.

Product Examples of a product: Device, component, part, system, software, firmware, among other things.

Project Planning Manual A Project Planning Manual is part of the application documentation used to support the sizing and planning of systems, machines or installations.

Qualified persons In terms of this application documentation, qualified persons are those persons who are familiar with the installation, mounting, commissioning and operation of the components of the electric drive and control system, as well as with the hazards this implies, and who possess the qualifications their work

requires. To comply with these qualifications, it is necessary, among other things,

1) to be trained, instructed or authorized to switch electric circuits and devices safely on and off, to ground them and to mark them

2) to be trained or instructed to maintain and use adequate safety equipment

3) to attend a course of instruction in first aid

Control system A control system comprises several interconnected control components placed on the market as a single functional unit.

3.2 Basic information

3.2.1 Using the Safety instructions and passing them on to others

Do not attempt to install and operate the components of the electric drive and control system without first reading all documentation provided with the product. Read and understand these safety instructions and all user documentation prior to working with these components. If you do not have the user documentation for the components, contact your responsible Rexroth sales partner. Ask for these documents to be sent immediately to the person or persons responsible for the safe operation of the components.

If the component is resold, rented and/or passed on to others in any other form, these safety instructions must be delivered with the component in the official language of the user's country.

Improper use of these components, failure to follow the safety instructions in this document or tampering with the product, including disabling of safety devices, could result in property damage, injury, electric shock or even death.

3.2.2 Requirements for safe use

Prior to initial commissioning of the components of the electric drive and control system, read the following instructions to avoid personal injury and/or property damage. You must comply with these safety instructions.

- In the case of damage due to non-compliance with the safety instructions, Rexroth shall not assume any liability.
- Prior to commissioning, read the operating, maintenance and safety instructions. If you are not able to sufficiently understand the language used in the application documentation, please contact and inform your vendor.
- Appropriate and professional transport, storage, assembly and installation, as well as thorough operation and maintenance, are the basis of correct and safe operation of the component.
- Only qualified personnel may use components of the electric drive and control system or work in its close proximity.
- Only use accessories and spare parts approved by Rexroth.
- Comply with the safety instructions and regulations of the country in which the components of the electric drive and control system are operated.
- Only use components of the electric drive and control system as intended. Please refer to chapter "Intended use".
- The ambient and operating conditions specified in this application documentation have to be complied with.

- Applications for functional safety are only allowed if they are explicitly and unambiguously specified in the application documentation "Integrated Safety Technology". If this is not the case, these applications are excluded. Functional safety includes parts of the overall safety in which measures of risk reduction for personal safety depend on electric, electronic or programmable controls.
- The specifications contained in the application documentation regarding the use of the provided components are only application examples and recommendations.

  For their individual application, the machine manufacturer and the system installer have to

  – verify the applicability of the provided components and the specifications made for their use in this application documentation,
  – synchronize the applicability with the safety regulations and standards applicable for their application and to execute the required measures, modifications and additions.
- Commissioning of the provided components is prohibited until is has been established that the machine or the system in which the components are installed corresponds to the country-specific provisions, safety regulations and standards of the application.
- Operation is only allowed when complying with the national EMC regulations for the relevant application.
- For information about EMC-compliant installation, refer to the section on EMC in the relevant application documentation.

  The system or machine manufacturer is responsible for compliance with the limit values specified in the national regulations.
- The technical data, connection and installation conditions of the components are contained in the relevant application documentations and must be complied with.
- Country-specific laws and regulations must be observed.

3.2.3 Hazards by improper use

- High electrical voltage and high working current! Danger to life or serious injury by electric shock!
- High electrical voltage by incorrect connection! Danger to life or injury by electric shock!
- Dangerous movements! Danger to life, serious injury or property damage by unintended motor movements!
- Health hazard for persons with heart pacemakers, metal implants and hearing aids in proximity to electric drive systems!
- Risk of burns by hot housing surfaces!
- Risk of injury by improper handling! Injury by crushing, shearing, cutting, hitting!
- Risk of injury by improper handling of batteries!
- Risk of injury by improper handling of pressurized lines!

3.3 Instructions with regard to specific dangers

3.3.1 Protection against contact with electrical parts and housings

☞ This section concerns components of the electric drive and control system with voltages of **more than 50 volts**.

Contact with parts conducting voltages above 50 volts can cause personal danger and electric shock. When operating components of the electric drive and control system, it is unavoidable that some parts of these components conduct dangerous voltage.

High electrical voltage! Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock or serious injury!

- Only qualified persons are allowed to operate, maintain and/or repair the components of the electric drive and control system.
- Follow the general installation and safety regulations when working on power installations.
- Before switching on, the equipment grounding conductor must have been permanently connected to all electrical components in accordance with the connection diagram.
- Even for brief measurements or tests, operation is only allowed if the equipment grounding conductor has been permanently connected to the points of the components provided for this purpose.
- Before accessing electrical parts with voltage potentials higher than 50 V, you must disconnect electrical components from the mains or from the power supply unit. Secure the electrical component from reconnection.
- With electrical components, observe the following aspects:

  Always wait **30 minutes** after switching off power to allow live capacitors to discharge before accessing an electrical component. Measure the electrical voltage of live parts before beginning to work to make sure that the equipment is safe to touch. Measure the electrical voltage both conductor against conductor and conductor against ground (PE).

  Particularly if **DC bus ground capacitor pairs without discharging resistors (HAS04.1-003-NN1-NN)** are used, dangerous voltages against ground may be present for more than **24 hours** after the power supply was switched off. Only when voltage cannot be measured anymore between the positive and the negative DC bus connections is it allowed to discharge the DC bus ground capacitor pairs against ground. For this purpose, use the appropriate high-resistance device (e.g., DUSPOL® by "Benning Elektrotechnik und Elektronik GmbH & Co. KG"; observe the Operating Manual!).
- Install the covers and guards provided for this purpose before switching on.
- Never touch electrical connection points of the components while power is turned on.
- Do not remove or plug in connectors when the component has been powered.
- Under specific conditions, electric drive systems can be operated at mains protected by residual-current-operated circuit-breakers sensitive to universal current (RCDs/RCMs).

- Secure built-in devices from penetrating foreign objects and water, as well as from direct contact, by providing an external housing, for example a control cabinet.

High housing voltage and high leakage current! Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock!

- Ground or connect the electrical drive and control system components with the equipment grounding conductor to the grounding points before power-on and commissioning.
- Connect the equipment grounding conductor of the components of the electric drive and control system permanently to the main power supply at all times. The leakage current is greater than 3.5 mA.
- Establish an equipment grounding connection with a minimum cross section according to the table below. With an outer conductor cross section smaller than 10 mm^2 (8 AWG), the alternative connection of two equipment grounding conductors is allowed, each having the same cross section as the outer conductors.

Outer conductor cross section	Minimum cross section of equipment grounding conductor Leakage current ≥ 3.5 mA	
	1 equipment grounding conductor	2 equipment grounding conductors
1.5 mm^2 (16 AWG)	10 mm^2 (8 AWG)	2 × 1.5 mm^2 (16 AWG)
2.5 mm^2 (14 AWG)		2 × 2.5 mm^2 (14 AWG)
4 mm^2 (12 AWG)		2 × 4 mm^2 (12 AWG)
6 mm^2 (10 AWG)		2 × 6 mm^2 (10 AWG)
10 mm^2 (8 AWG)		-
16 mm^2 (6 AWG)	16 mm^2 (6 AWG)	-
25 mm^2 (4 AWG)		-
35 mm^2 (2 AWG)		-
50 mm^2 (1/0 AWG)	25 mm^2 (4 AWG)	-
70 mm^2 (2/0 AWG)	35 mm^2 (2 AWG)	-
X mm^2	(X × 0.5) mm^2 (applies to X ≥ 50)	-

Tab. 3-1: Minimum cross section of equipment grounding connection

3.3.2 Protective extra-low voltage as protection against electric shock

Protective extra-low voltage is used to allow connecting devices with basic insulation to extra-low voltage circuits.

On components of an electric drive and control system provided by Rexroth, all connections and terminals with voltages up to 50 volts are PELV ("Protective Extra-Low Voltage") systems. It is allowed to connect devices equipped with basic insulation (such as programming devices, PCs, notebooks, display units) to these connections.

Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock! High electrical voltage by incorrect connection!

If extra-low voltage circuits of devices containing voltages and circuits of more than 50 volts (e.g., the mains connection) are connected to Rexroth products, the connected extra-low voltage circuits must comply with the requirements for PELV ("Protective Extra-Low Voltage").

3.3.3 Protection against dangerous movements

Dangerous movements can be caused by faulty control of connected motors. Some common examples are:

- Improper or wrong wiring or cable connection
- Operator errors
- Wrong input of parameters before commissioning
- Malfunction of sensors and encoders
- Defective components
- Software or firmware errors

These errors can occur immediately after equipment is switched on or even after an unspecified time of trouble-free operation.

The monitoring functions in the components of the electric drive and control system will normally be sufficient to avoid malfunction in the connected drives. Regarding personal safety, especially the danger of injury and/or property damage, this alone cannot be relied upon to ensure complete safety. Until the integrated monitoring functions become effective, it must be assumed in any case that faulty drive movements will occur. The extent of faulty drive movements depends upon the type of control and the state of operation.

Dangerous movements! Danger to life, risk of injury, serious injury or property damage!

A **risk assessment** must be prepared for the installation or machine, with its specific conditions, in which the components of the electric drive and control system are installed.

As a result of the risk assessment, the user must provide for monitoring functions and higher-level measures on the installation side for personal safety. The safety regulations applicable to the installation or machine must be taken into consideration. Unintended machine movements or other malfunctions are possible if safety devices are disabled, bypassed or not activated.

To avoid accidents, injury and/or property damage:

- Keep free and clear of the machine’s range of motion and moving machine parts. Prevent personnel from accidentally entering the machine’s range of motion by using, for example:
  - Safety fences
  - Safety guards
  - Protective coverings
  - Light barriers
- Make sure the safety fences and protective coverings are strong enough to resist maximum possible kinetic energy.

- Mount emergency stopping switches in the immediate reach of the operator. Before commissioning, verify that the emergency stopping equipment works. Do not operate the machine if the emergency stopping switch is not working.
- Prevent unintended start-up. Isolate the drive power connection by means of OFF switches/OFF buttons or use a safe starting lockout.
- Make sure that the drives are brought to safe standstill before accessing or entering the danger zone.
- Additionally secure vertical axes against falling or dropping after switching off the motor power by, for example,
  - mechanically securing the vertical axes,
  - adding an external braking/arrester/clamping mechanism or
  - ensuring sufficient counterbalancing of the vertical axes.
- The standard equipment **motor holding brake** or an external holding brake controlled by the drive controller is **not sufficient to guarantee personal safety**!
- Disconnect electrical power to the components of the electric drive and control system using the master switch and secure them from reconnection ("lock out") for:
  - Maintenance and repair work
  - Cleaning of equipment
  - Long periods of discontinued equipment use
- Prevent the operation of high-frequency, remote control and radio equipment near components of the electric drive and control system and their supply leads. If the use of these devices cannot be avoided, check the machine or installation, at initial commissioning of the electric drive and control system, for possible malfunctions when operating such high-frequency, remote control and radio equipment in its possible positions of normal use. It might possibly be necessary to perform a special electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) test.

3.3.4 Protection against electromagnetic and magnetic fields during operation and mounting

Electromagnetic and magnetic fields!

Health hazard for persons with active implantable medical devices (AIMD) such as pacemakers or passive metallic implants.

- Hazards for the above-mentioned groups of persons by electromagnetic and magnetic fields in the immediate vicinity of drive controllers and the associated current-carrying conductors.
- Entering these areas can pose an increased risk to the above-mentioned groups of persons. They should seek advice from their physician.
- If overcome by possible effects on above-mentioned persons during operation of drive controllers and accessories, remove the exposed persons from the vicinity of conductors and devices.

3.3.5 Protection against contact with hot parts

Hot surfaces of components of the electric drive and control system. Risk of burns!

- Do not touch hot surfaces of, for example, braking resistors, heat sinks, supply units and drive controllers, motors, windings and laminated cores!
- According to the operating conditions, temperatures of the surfaces can be **higher than 60 °C** (140 °F) during or after operation.
- Before touching motors after having switched them off, let them cool down for a sufficient period of time. Cooling down can require **up to 140 minutes**! The time required for cooling down is approximately five times the thermal time constant specified in the technical data.
- Before touching chokes after having switched them off, let them cool down for a sufficient period of time. Cooling down can require **up to 140 minutes**!
- After switching off supply units and drive controllers, wait **15 minutes** to allow them to cool down before touching them.
- Wear safety gloves or do not work at hot surfaces.
- For certain applications, and in accordance with the respective safety regulations, the manufacturer of the machine or installation must take measures to avoid injuries caused by burns in the final application. These measures can be, for example: Warnings at the machine or installation, guards (shieldings or barriers) or safety instructions in the application documentation.

3.3.6 Protection during handling and mounting

Risk of injury by improper handling! Injury by crushing, shearing, cutting, hitting!

- Observe the relevant statutory regulations of accident prevention.
- Use suitable equipment for mounting and transport.
- Avoid jamming and crushing by appropriate measures.
- Always use suitable tools. Use special tools if specified.
- Use lifting equipment and tools in the correct manner.
- Use suitable protective equipment (hard hat, safety goggles, safety shoes, safety gloves, for example).
- Do not stand under hanging loads.
- Immediately clean up any spilled liquids from the floor due to the risk of falling!

3.3.7 Battery safety

Batteries consist of active chemicals in a solid housing. Therefore, improper handling can cause injury or property damage.

Risk of injury by improper handling!

- Do not attempt to reactivate low batteries by heating or other methods (risk of explosion and cauterization).
- Do not attempt to recharge the batteries as this may cause leakage or explosion.
- Do not throw batteries into open flames.
- Do not dismantle batteries.

- When replacing the battery/batteries, do not damage the electrical parts installed in the devices.
- Only use the battery types specified for the product.

☞ Environmental protection and disposal! The batteries contained in the product are considered dangerous goods during land, air, and sea transport (risk of explosion) in the sense of the legal regulations. Dispose of used batteries separately from other waste. Observe the national regulations of your country.

3.3.8 Protection against pressurized systems

According to the information given in the Project Planning Manuals, motors and components cooled with liquids and compressed air can be partially supplied with externally fed, pressurized media, such as compressed air, hydraulics oil, cooling liquids and cooling lubricants. Improper handling of the connected supply systems, supply lines or connections can cause injuries or property damage.

Risk of injury by improper handling of pressurized lines!

- Do not attempt to disconnect, open or cut pressurized lines (risk of explosion).
- Observe the respective manufacturer's operating instructions.
- Before dismounting lines, relieve pressure and empty medium.
- Use suitable protective equipment (safety goggles, safety shoes, safety gloves, for example).
- Immediately clean up any spilled liquids from the floor due to the risk of falling!

☞ Environmental protection and disposal! The agents (e.g., fluids) used to operate the product might not be environmentally friendly. Dispose of agents harmful to the environment separately from other waste. Observe the national regulations of your country.

3.4 Explanation of signal words and the Safety alert symbol

The Safety Instructions in the available application documentation contain specific signal words (DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION or NOTICE) and, where required, a safety alert symbol (in accordance with ANSI Z535.6-2011).

The signal word is meant to draw the reader's attention to the safety instruction and identifies the hazard severity.

The safety alert symbol (a triangle with an exclamation point), which precedes the signal words DANGER, WARNING and CAUTION, is used to alert the reader to personal injury hazards.

⚠ DANGER

In case of non-compliance with this safety instruction, death or serious injury **will** occur.

⚠ WARNING

In case of non-compliance with this safety instruction, death or serious injury **could** occur.

⚠ CAUTION

In case of non-compliance with this safety instruction, minor or moderate injury could occur.

NOTICE

In case of non-compliance with this safety instruction, property damage could occur.

4 Combining the individual components

4.1 Documentations

See chapter "Documentation" on page 17

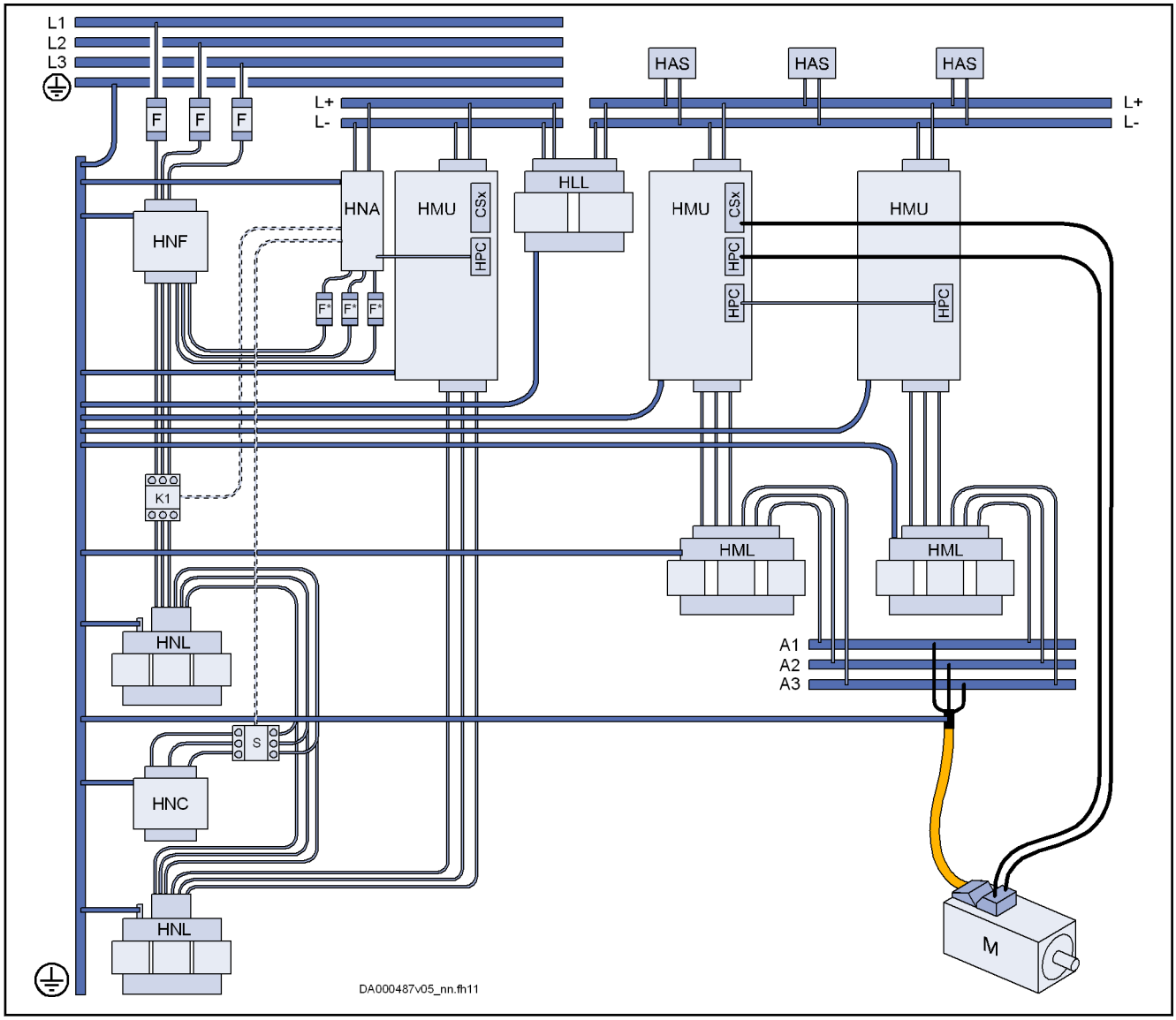
4.2 Brief description of the individual components

4.2.1 HMU05 - Brief description and design

Brief description

HMU05 components are part of the IndraDrive ML product range and are used as:

- **Drive controller** (HMU05 + firmware for drive controllers):
  Maximum DC bus voltage that can be set:
  - HMU05-…-A4-D7: DC 800 V
  - HMU05-…-A5-11: DC 1120 V
- **Supply unit** (HMU05 + HNA05 + firmware for supply units):
  Mains connection voltage:
  - HMU05-…-A4-D7: 3 AC 380 … 500 V
  - HMU05-…-A5-11: 3 AC 525 … 690 V



CSx	Control section
F	Fuse
HAS	DC bus ground capacitor pair (HAS04.1-003)
HLL	DC bus choke
HML	Motor choke
HMU	Universal inverter
HNA	Mains connection module
HNC	Mains capacitor
HNF	Mains filter
HNL	Mains choke
HPC	Plug-in module for power section
K1	External mains contactor (controlled by HNA)
M	Motor
S	Power circuit-breaker with thermomagnetic trip (optional)

Fig. 4-1: Design of a drive system

4.3 Configuring the drive system

4.3.1 Firmware

Firmware and device types

See chapter "Firmware" on page 16.

4.3.2 Motors

Third-party motors

General information on third-party motors

Why use third-party motors with IndraDrive ML drive controllers?

Today, machine axes are mainly moved with electric drives. Standard motors are used in most cases, as this is the most cost-efficient solution.

Special requirements

Due to special requirements on machine axes, design or safety-related aspects, it may be necessary for the machine manufacturer to use a motor design diverging from the standard.

Motor designs not included in product range

In such cases, drive suppliers are required to be able to provide drives equipped with motors that, due to their special design, are not included in their own product lineup.

Check before commissioning

Third-party motors can also be used with drive controllers of the IndraDrive ML device family. To do this, check whether the third-party motor meets the requirements for use.

The firmware funcational description includes forms for motor data. Please obtain the completed form for the qualifying examination of a third-party motor.

Which directives are important?

In accordance with legal requirements (EU EMC Directive 89/336/EEC and German EMC laws), systems and machines must be designed and manufactured in accordance with current standards.

To comply with the machinery directives regarding "electromagnetic compatibility (EMC)", a conformity assessment of the drive system (motor with drive controller and connection assembly) must be performed. The machine manufacturer has to guarantee the test of the drive system and compliance with the directives.

Controllable third-party motors

Types of motor construction

The following motor types can be controlled:

- Asynchronous motors, rotary
- Asynchronous motors, linear
- Synchronous motors, rotary
- Synchronous motors, linear

These motors can be operated within the technical specifications of the selected drive controller IndraDrive ML. If motors are equipped with a holding brake, it should be controlled via the drive controller. Ensure that the relevant technical specifications of the motor holding brake and the holding brake output match!



Rexroth Generally does not provide any warranty for the performance data at the motor shaft for third-party motors!

Synchronous motors

For synchronous motors equipped with a motor encoder, the commutation offset must be set during commissioning. The drive firmware provides several methods for determining this offset, so that the value can be calculated for motors with different characteristics.

☞ Please note the limitations associated with the use of synchronous motors in connection with commutation offset determination! See firmware documentation, chapter "Drive control", "Commutation setting".

Any reluctance property cannot be used for synchronous third-party motors! Determining motor parameter values which are safe to operate for using the reluctance property is not possible for third-party motors. For this reason, the corresponding bit for "P-0-4014, Motor type" cannot be set.

Requirements for third-party motors

General information

To ensure the successful and safe operation of a third-party motor,

- check whether the third-party motor to be controlled can withstand the voltage stresses
- which drive controller is suitable based on the motor torque and power to be delivered?
- Third-party motor has the required minimum inductance
- Motor can be protected against inadmissible temperature rise in the case of overload (temperature evaluation)
- Mounted position measuring system can be evaluated by the drive controller or which position measuring system can be selected for kit motors

Voltage stress on the third-party motor

The stress placed on a motor's insulation system under actual operating conditions is significantly influenced by the following factors:

- by the output variables of the drive controller (which feed the transmission line)
- by cable parameters as a function of cable design and length (which determine the characteristics of the transmission line, such as attenuation)
- the motor design in terms of capacitive and inductive properties (which form the terminating elements of the transmission line)

Based on the results of the influencing factors, the insulation system of the third-party motor is subjected to the following stresses with respect to voltage:

- Periodic peak voltage U_{pp} and
- Voltage change du/dt

The periodic peak voltages that occur at the motor terminals are caused by reflections at the end of the motor cable. As a result, the motor's insulation is subjected to a higher peak voltage than the voltages at the output of the power section.

☞ Determine the voltage stress occurring at the **connection terminals** of the third-party motor in the application, taking into account all components involved.

Using motor filters

Use voltage-reducing components (e.g., motor filters) if any of the following criteria apply:

- Permissible voltage change (du/dt) of the third-party motor: **< 5 kV/µs**
- Permissible periodic peak voltage of the third-party motor between phase-to-phase and phase-to-housing:
  - For mains voltage of 3 AC 380 V … 500 V: < 1500 V
  - For mains voltage of 3 AC 525 V … 690 V: < 2200 V
- The voltage change (du/dt) and periodic peak voltage (U_{ss}) at the motor terminals are determined by the length and electrical properties of the motor cable:
  - The longer the motor cable, the more pronounced the voltage spikes (periodic peak voltage) are at the end of the cable closest to the motor. The maximum periodic peak voltage occurs when the cable length reaches approximately 25 m. A further increase in voltage is not expected, even with longer cables.
  - For cable lengths under 15 m, the periodic peak voltage decreases, depending on the length from the specified maximum value down to the level of the DC bus voltage.

☞ In addition to the nominal current I_N, ensure to take into account, in particular, the maximum permissible switching frequency (f_s) of the power output stage at which the motor filter may be operated.

Verify the effectiveness of the voltage-reduction measures by measuring the voltage at the motor terminals. Use a potential-free or isolated measuring device!

Minimum inductance of an third-party motor

Depending on the drive controller used, the motor requires a minimum inductance value. The actual inductance of a motor can be measured using an inductance measurement bridge connected directly between any two motor terminals. The measurement has to be performed on a complete motor that is wired as it will be in operation but has not yet been connected. But one motor terminal remains open! For asynchronous motors, the measured value can only be used if the rotor does not have closed slots!

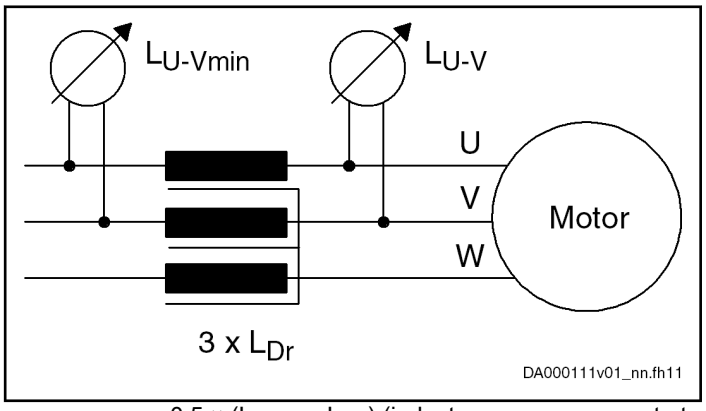
$L_{U-V} = U_{DC} \div (8 \times f_s \times \sqrt{2} \times I_{Typ} \times 0{,}2)$
L_{U-V} Minimum inductance (measured between two phases) in mH
U_{DC} DC bus voltage (e.g., regulated DC bus at 750 V_{DC} or 1100 V_{DC}; unregulated DC bus at $400V_{AC} \Rightarrow 565V_{DC}$)
f_s: Switching frequency in kHz
I_{Type}: Maximum current of the drive controller according to the type plate (rms value)

Tab. 4-1: Calculating the minimum inductance

Install a three-phase choke in the motor supply line if the inductance of the third-party motor is lower than that specified in the table above. This choke has to increase the measurable inductance between any two motor terminals to the minimum value.

☞ When measuring inductance, different inductance values may be observed at various rotor positions within a single pole width of the motor. The average value is relevant for checking the minimum value.

Correct values can only be determined when the motor is at **standstill**!

Existing third-party motor	Planned third-party motor
	Calculation of the leakage inductance (asynchronous motor) or inductance (synchronous motor) of the third-party motor using the single-phase equivalent circuit diagram (as specified by the manufacturer!). Calculating the choke, if required. We recommend contacting Rexroth!
L_{Dr} = 0.5 × (L_{U-Vmin} - L_{U-V}) (inductance measurement at 1 kHz)	
Fig. 4-2: Installing 3 × L_{Dr} (three-phase choke)	
Requirements for the choke: • $I_{n_Dr} \geq I_{n_Mot}$ The rated current of the choke has to be greater than or equal to the rated current of the motor. • Depending on the maximum speed, the choke is subjected to stress based on the corresponding output frequency and the PWM frequency of the drive controller. • The insulation class must be at least equal to that of the motor or designed for higher temperatures. • The voltage load of the choke depends on the selected drive controller.	

Tab. 4-2: Information on any required chokes

Temperature monitoring of a third-party motor

Only operate motors with a built-in temperature sensor on IndraDrive ML drive controllers so that the motor can be thermally monitored by the drive controller and protected from being damaged from excess temperature increase (see "P-0-0512, Temperature sensor").

If you want to operate third-party motors without a temperature sensor on IndraDrive ML drive controllers in exceptional instances, you have to determine the thermal time constants of the motor housing (P-0-4035) and motor winding (P-0-4034, P-0-4037). This allows the firmware to accurately reflect the motor's cooling conditions using its temperature model.

☞ If the motor housing or fan is dirty, the cooling performance of the motor deteriorates, resulting in inadequate protection against thermal overload!

Requirements for the third-party motor encoder

Third-party asynchronous motor encoder

Asynchronous motors can also be controlled by IndraDrive ML drive controllers in "open-loop" operation (without motor encoder). In "closed-loop" operation (with motor encoder), a relative measuring system is sufficient for asynchronous motors.

Motor encoder for third-party synchronous motors

To ensure reliable operation of drives with externally synchronized motors connected to IndraDrive ML drive controllers, the following possible combinations and restrictions have to be taken into account when selecting the measuring system:

Drive family	Motor measuring system	Third-party synchronous motor
IndraDrive ML	Absolute	■
	Relative	□

■ Advantageous combination
□ Combination is possible (application-specific restrictions); commissioning may be more difficult in some cases!

Tab. 4-3: Possible combinations of an external synchronous motor and a motor measuring system



The drive controller can evaluate measuring systems as motor encoders when they are listed in "P-0-0074, Encoder type 1 (motor encoder)".

For information on absolute and relative measuring systems, see the section "Measuring systems" in the firmware documentation!

Motor encoder (resolver) - Selection guidelines

Resolvers first have to be checked to see if they are suited for motor encoders. The following resolver data are required to check if they can be evaluated by the drive controllers:

- Data of resolver system being compared have to be available at 8 kHz
- Transmission ratio
- Current consumption
- DC resistance of the stator
- Number of poles
- Phase shift

The resolver data has to be used to check whether the supply voltage of the encoder interface and the signal levels of the encoder tracks are sufficient.

Notes on selection and commissioning

Selecting the drive controller based on continuous current

The drive controller required for the respective motor is determined by comparing the motor data with the device data.

The continuous current of the drive controller should be greater than the continuous current of the motor.

The continuous power of the drive controller has to be greater than the required average power.

Selecting connection technology

You can find the available power and encoder cables in the "Rexroth IndraDrive and IndraDyn Connecting Cables" documentation.

Instructions for commissioning

For more information, commissioning instructions, and supporting documents (e.g., forms for entering the required data), please refer to the firmware documentation.

4.3.3 Cable

Motor power cable

When selecting the motor power cable, please note the following:

- **Cross-section:** The minimum cross-section depends on the type current (maximum current of the drive controller) and the installation method of the motor power cable.
- **Leakage capacitance:** See chapter 4.3.4 "Leakage capacitances" on page 41

Encoder cables

Encoder	Allowed cable length
Encoder evaluation in the CSx02 control section	75 m

Tab. 4-4: Cable length

4.3.4 Leakage capacitances

Allowed leakage capacitances

Capacitive leakage currents arise due to the clocked operation of an inverter in conjunction with the leakage capacitances of the motor power cables and the leakage capacitances of the motors.

In order for the drive system to run in accordance with its intended use, the values of the capacitive leakage currents have to be limited.

When sizing drive systems with HMU05 take the maximum allowed leakage capacitances into account.

See also chapter 11.7.1 "Determining the leakage capacitance" on page 643.

Maximum allowable leakage capacitances:

Supply units	Derating	Maximum allowable leakage capacitance [nF] 1)	
		without HLL	with n×HLL + DC bus ground capacitor pairs
1 × HMU05-…-A4-D7	1	500	1200
n × HMU05-…-A4-D7	0.95	n_{HMU05} × 500 × 0.95	n_{HLL05} × 1200 × 0,95
1 × HMU05-…-A5-11	1	- 2)	800
n × HMU05-…-A5-11	0.95	- 2)	n_{HLL05} × 800 × 0.95

1) At a clock frequency of **6 kHz**, the permissible leakage capacitance is reduced by a **factor of 1.5**; at a clock frequency of **8 kHz**, the permissible leakage capacitance is reduced by a **factor of 2**. Comply with the permissible leakage capacitance of the motor chokes/symmetry chokes. See chapter "Motor choke/balancing choke data" on page 305

2) HMU05-…-A5-11 operation without a DC bus choke is not permitted.

Tab. 4-5: Maximum permissible leakage capacitances

DC bus choke, DC bus ground capacitor pairs

NOTICE **Damage to the DC bus ground capacitor pairs is possible!**

If the leakage current is distributed unevenly, the DC bus ground capacitor pairs may become overloaded and damaged!

Distribute the DC bus ground capacitor pairs **evenly** according to the leakage capacitances connected to the inverters.

In drive systems with many axes, big motors and/or long motor power cables, a DC bus choke (HLL05) can be used to increase the maximum allowed total leakage capacitance of the drive system.

- HMU05…-A4-D7:

  A maximum of 3 DC bus chokes per power supply string (HMU, HNL, HNC, HNF) is permitted

- HMU05…-A5-11:

  A maximum of 2 DC bus chokes per power supply string (HMU, HNL, HNC, HNF) is permitted

  (As a general rule, at least one DC bus choke is always required.)

As a rule, each DC bus choke is assigned to 3 pairs of DC bus ground capacitor pairs (HAS04.1-003). No more than 3 DC bus ground capacitor pairs are permitted.

Example: 3 Inverters at the DC bus with the same connected leakage capacitance. Consequently: One pair of DC bus ground capacitors is connected to the DC bus of each inverter.

If any of the following conditions are met, two pairs of DC bus ground capacitor pairs per DC bus choke are sufficient:

- *Potentially **additional** capacitance that may be present >: 2 × 2.5 µF per DC bus choke.*

  Additional capacitances include, for example, axes from other device series (e.g., IndraDrive HMS01, HMS02) with integrated DC bus ground capacitors and the leakage capacitance of the axes (motor cables, motor housing).

- *Clock frequencies ≥ 2 kHz and leakage capacitance < 600 nF (500-V series) or 400 nF (690-V series)*

  Throughout the **entire** DC bus link, only clock frequencies ≥ 2 kHz are used, and the total leakage capacitance at the motor outputs of all axes protected by the DC bus choke is <600 nF (500,-V series) or 400 nF (690-V series).

  When determining the lowest clock frequency, take into account "load-dependent PWM switching" and "velocity-dependent PWM switching".

DC bus ground capacitor pair

See chapter 8.3.7 "DC bus ground capacitor pair (HAS04.1-003)" on page 331.

DC bus choke See chapter 8.3.6 "HLL05 DC bus choke" on page 312.

Operating HMU05 together with HMS01/HMD01

☞ Only HMU05.1N-…-**A4-D7** models may be operated together with HMS01/HMD01.

Topologies

HMS01 or HMD01 drive controllers from the IndraDrive M product family may only be operated with HMU05 power supply units if at least one **HLL DC bus choke**, along with the corresponding **DC bus ground capacitor pairs**, is used.

There are two different topologies:

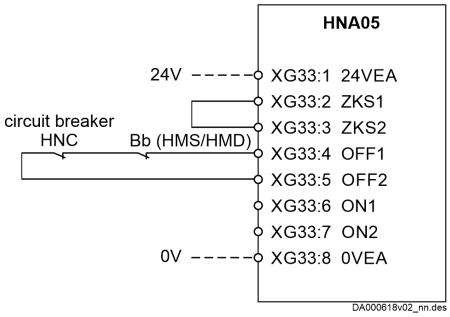
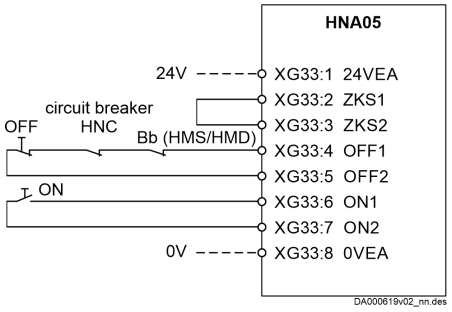
- HMU05 systems **without** a central DC bus choke
  chapter "HMU05 systems without a central DC bus choke" on page 45
- HMU05 systems **with** a central DC bus choke
  chapter "HMU05 systems with a central DC bus choke" on page 47

Concerning the tapered cross sections of the DC bus bars, please observe the information on DC bus fuses: See chapter 11.5 "DC bus fuses" on page 640.

HMS01 or HMD01 drive controllers must **always be operated with DC bus fuses**.

There is **no UL certification** for the operation of the HMU05 with devices from other series. UL certification must be obtained as part of the system acceptance process.

With the drive firmware you can configure an inverter as a **module bus master**. Integrate the relay contact of the module bus master configured as a **Bb contact** in the power supply control circuit in such a way that opening the relay contact causes the power to be disconnected.

Control via communication	Control via HNA
	

Tab. 4-6: Wiring examples

HMU05 systems without a central DC bus choke

HMU05 systems without a central DC bus choke require an HLL DC bus choke before the HMS/HMD drive lines, as well as HLC DC bus capacitor units in the HMS/HMD drive lines.

DC bus choke:

Size the DC bus choke in accordance with the continuous current and peak current. (The DC bus current is calculated from the DC bus power and DC bus voltage).

DC bus capacitor unit:

Determine the minimum size of the DC bus capacitor unit based on the designed DC bus continuous power rating of the respective drive packet:

47 µF per kilowatt [kW] of DC bus continuous power

Install the **DC bus ground capacitor pairs** close to the HMS/HMD drive controllers.

In the case of multiple drive lines, the DC bus ground capacitor pairs are distributed proportionately in accordance with the sum of leakage capacitances.

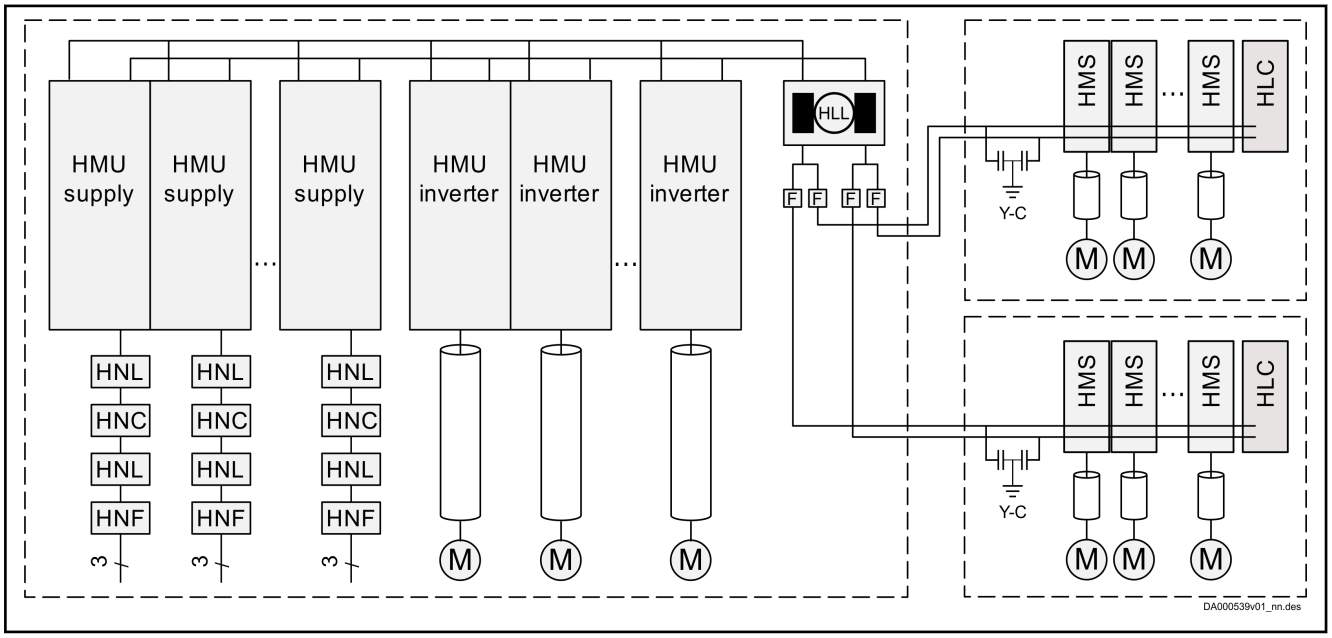


Fig. 4-3: HMU05 systems without a central DC bus choke

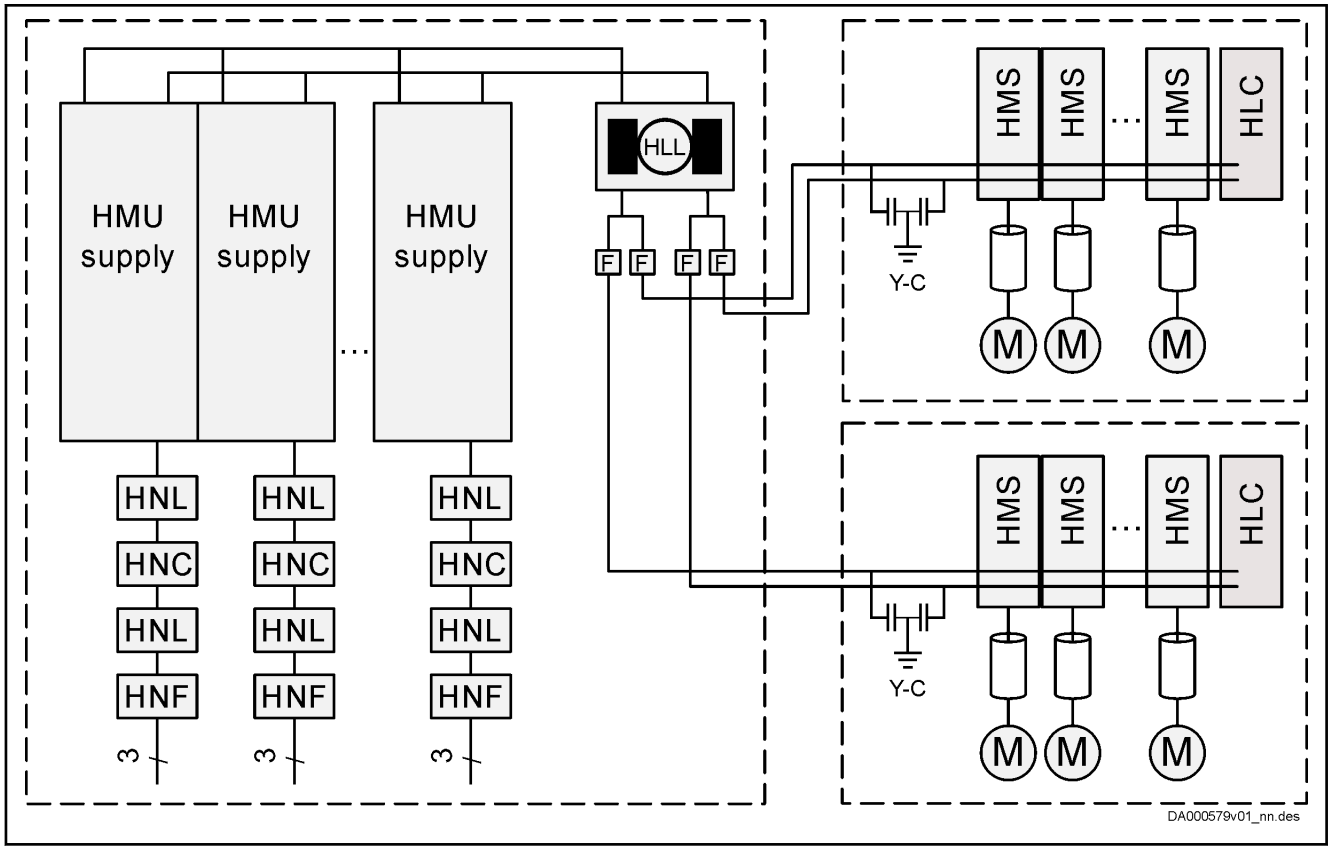


Fig. 4-4: HMU05 systems without a central DC bus choke and without an HMU05 inverter

HMU05 systems with a central DC bus choke

HMS drive lines may be connected directly to the DC bus, if a DC bus choke has been assigned to each HMU05 supply unit.

Connecting power supply units in parallel, each with its own DC bus choke, requires DC bus chokes that are particularly resistant to saturation.

Only the following types of DC bus chokes may be used for this topology:

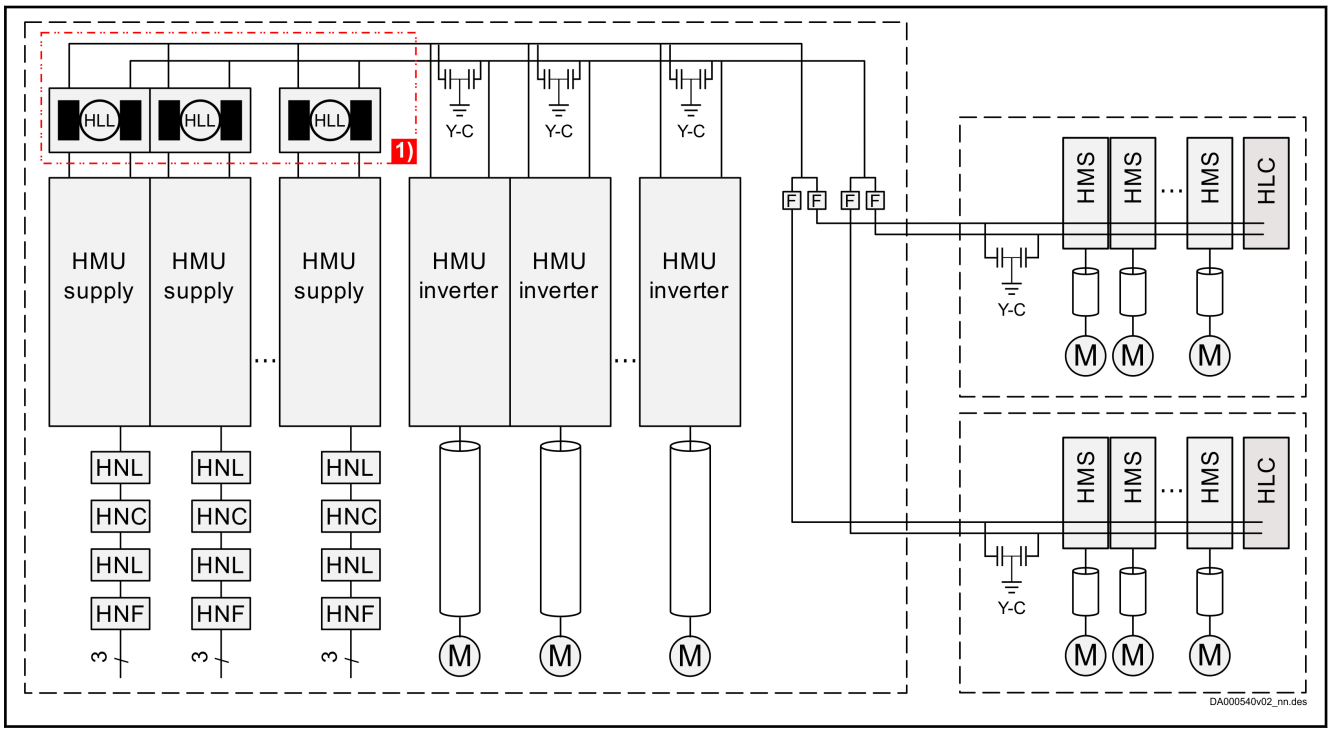
- HLL01.1F-04M0-S202-N-11-01U2-NNNN
- HLL01.1W-04M0-S202-N-11-01U2-NNNN
- HLL01.1F-04M0-S243-N-11-01U2-NNNN
- HLL01.1F-04M0-S303-N-11-01U2-NNNN
- HLL01.1W-04M0-S303-N-11-01U2-NNNN
- HLL01.1F-04M0-S380-N-11-01U2-NNNN

Larger models for this topology are available upon request.

The DC bus ground capacitor pairs are distributed proportionally based on the sum of their leakage capacitances.

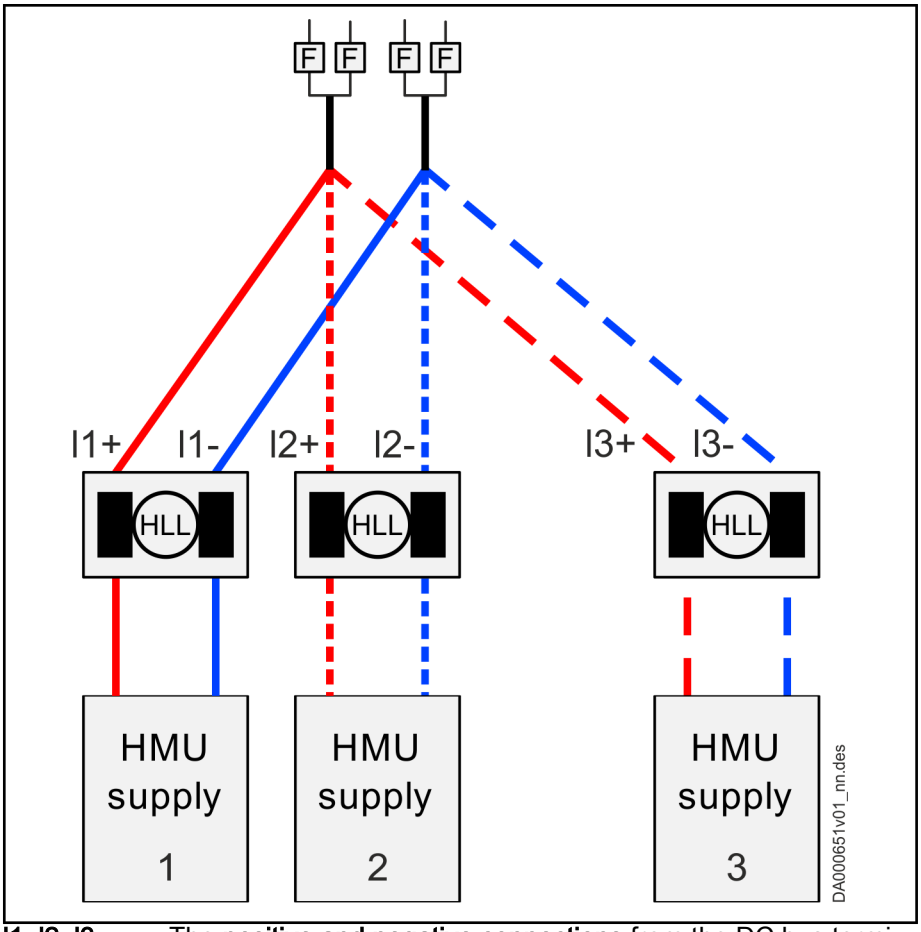
HLC DC bus capacitor units have to be installed in the HMS/HMD drive lines. Determine the minimum size of the HLC DC bus capacitor unit based on the designed DC bus continuous power of the respective drive packet:

47 µF per kilowatt [kW] of DC bus continuous power



1) See fig. 4-6 "Symmetrical connection of the DC bus chokes" on page 48

Fig. 4-5: HMU05 systems with a central DC bus choke



I1, I2, I3 The **positive and negative connections** from the DC bus terminal HMU through the DC bus choke HLL has to be **symmetrical** up to the point where they join the parallel branches (same length, same cross-section; I1+ = I1-, I2+ = I2-, I3+ = I3-)

Fig. 4-6: Symmetrical connection of the DC bus chokes

4.4 Installation conditions

4.4.1 Ambient and operating conditions

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock by live parts with more than 50 V!**

Only operate the device

- with the connectors plugged on (even if no lines have been connected to the connectors) and
- with the equipment grounding conductor connected!

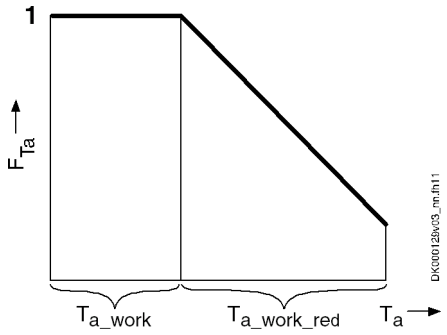
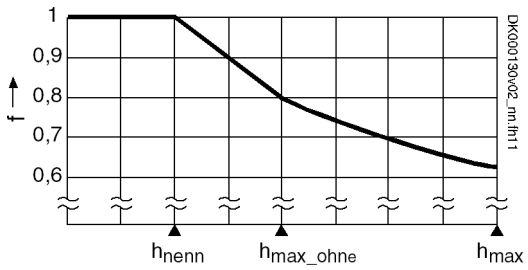
Control cabinet

The devices in the IndraDrive ML product range, as well as their additional components (except for some braking resistors), have to be installed **in control cabinets**.

Check that the ambient and operating conditions, in particular the control cabinet temperature, are complied with by calculating the heat levels in the control cabinet. Afterwards, make the corresponding measurements to confirm that ambient and operating conditions have actually been observed. In the technical data of the individual components, the power dissipation is specified as an important input value for calculating the heat levels.

Ambient and operating conditions

Designation	Symbol	Unit	Value
Conductive dirt contamination			Not allowed (You can protect the devices against conductive dirt contamination, for example by mounting them in control cabinets of the degree of protection IP54 in accordance with IEC529.)
Degree of protection (IEC529)			IP00
Use within scope of CSA / UL			For use in NFPA 79 Applications only!
Storage temperature			see chapter 5.4 "Storing components" on page 127
Temperature during transport			See chapter 5.3 "Transporting components" on page 126
Allowed mounting position			G1
Installation altitude	h_{nenn}	m	1000
Ambient temperature range	T_{a_work}	°C	0 … 40

Designation	Symbol	Unit	Value
Derating vs. Ambient temperature: Within the ambient temperature range $T_{a_work_red}$, the performance data[2)] are reduced by a factor of F_{Ta}: $F_{TA} = 1 - [(T_a - 40) \times f_{Ta}]$ Example: With an ambient temperature T_a = 50 °C and a capacity utilization factor f_{Ta} = 2%, the rated power is reduced to $P_{DC_cont_red} = P_{DC_cont} \times F_{Ta} =$ P_{DC_cont} x (1 - [(50 - 40) x 0.02]) = P_{DC_cont} x 0.8 Operation at ambient temperatures outside of T_{a_work} and $T_{a_work_red}$ is not allowed!			
	$T_{a_work_red}$	°C	40 … 55 40 … 50 (applies to air-cooled HMUs + control section with safety technology)
	f_{Ta}	%/K	Utilization factor: see technical data for each component (data for cooling and power dissipation → derating of P_{DC_cont}, P_{BD}, I_{out_cont} at $T_{a_work} < T_a < T_{a_work_red}$) chapter 4.5.3 "Temperatures, cooling, power dissipation, distances" on page 88
Derating vs. Installation altitude: Applies only to air-cooled components (HNC, HNF, air-cooled HNL, air-cooled HLL, …): At an installation altitude h > h_{nenn}, the available performance data are reduced by the factor f[2)]. Applies to air- and liquid-cooled components: At an installation altitude in the range h_{max_ohne} to h_{max}, voltage-limiting measures (overvoltage limiters) have to be installed at the mains connection of the drive system. Use above h_{max} is not allowed!			Applies to air-cooled components:  Liquid-cooled components: No derating vs. Available installation altitude
	h_{max_ohne}	m	2000
	h_{max}	m	4000
Simultaneous derating for ambient temperature **and** installation altitude			Allowed; reduce by the factors f and f_{Ta}
Relative humidity		%	5 … 95
Absolute humidity		g/m³	1 … 29
Condensation			Not allowed
Climatic category (IEC 60731-3-3)			3K3
Allowed pollution degree (IEC 60664-1)			2
Resistance to chemically active substances			IEC 60721-3-3, class 3C1
Vibration sine: Amplitude (peak-peak) at 10 … 57 Hz [1)]		mm	0.15

Designation	Symbol	Unit	Value
Vibration sine: Acceleration at 57 … 150 Hz [1)]		g	1
Overvoltage category			III (according to IEC60664-1)

1) According to EN 60068-2-6
2) Reduced performance data: permissible DC bus continuous power, permissible mains voltage, permissible DC bus voltage, braking resistor continuous power, continuous current

Tab. 4-7: Ambient and operating conditions

4.4.2 Mounting position

Mounting positions of components

NOTICE **Risk of damage to the components by incorrect mounting position!**

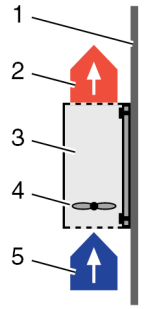
Only operate the components in their allowed mounting positions. The allowed mounting positions are specified in the technical data of the components.

For supply units and drive controllers installed in control cabinets, only the mounting position G1 is usually allowed.

Some components can also be operated in mounting positions other than G1. The allowed mounting positions are specified in the technical data of the component.

Mounting positions

The allowed mounting positions are specified with G1, G2, G3, G4 or G5 in the technical data of the components.

Mounting position	Description	
G1		**Normal mounting position** The air heated inside the component can flow unimpeded vertically upward. In the case of components with integrated fans, the natural convection supports the forced cooling air current. 1. Mounting surface 2. Outgoing, heated air 3. Component 4. Fan within the component (forces the cooling air current) 5. Cooling air
G2	180° to normal mounting position	
G3	90° to normal mounting position	
G4	bottom mounting; mounting surface on the bottom	
G5	top mounting; mounting surface at the top	

Tab. 4-8: Mounting positions

4.4.3 Control cabinet

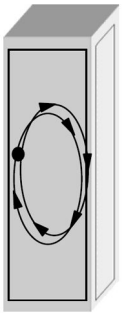
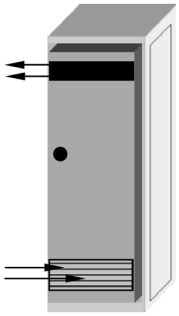
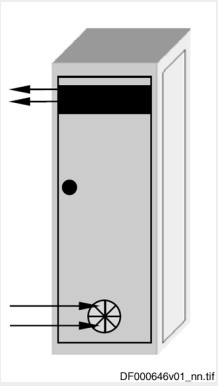
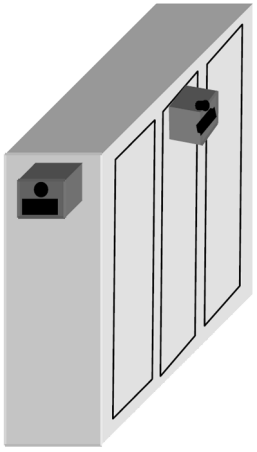
Air cooling

Control cabinet design and cooling



G1 is the only mounting position allowed for supply units and drive controllers installed in control cabinets.

Possible ways of heat dissipation

Closed control cabinet with air circulation	Closed control cabinet with heat exchanger	Control cabinet with fan	Closed control cabinet with air conditioning unit
 DF000644v01_nn.tif	 DF000645v01_nn.tif	 DF000646v01_nn.tif	 DF000647v01_nn.tif
P_Q ~ 400 W	P_Q ~ 1700 W	P_Q ~ 2700 W	P_Q ~ 4000 W

P_Q Dissipated heat output

Tab. 4-9: Possible ways of heat dissipation

The section below describes the "control cabinet with fan".

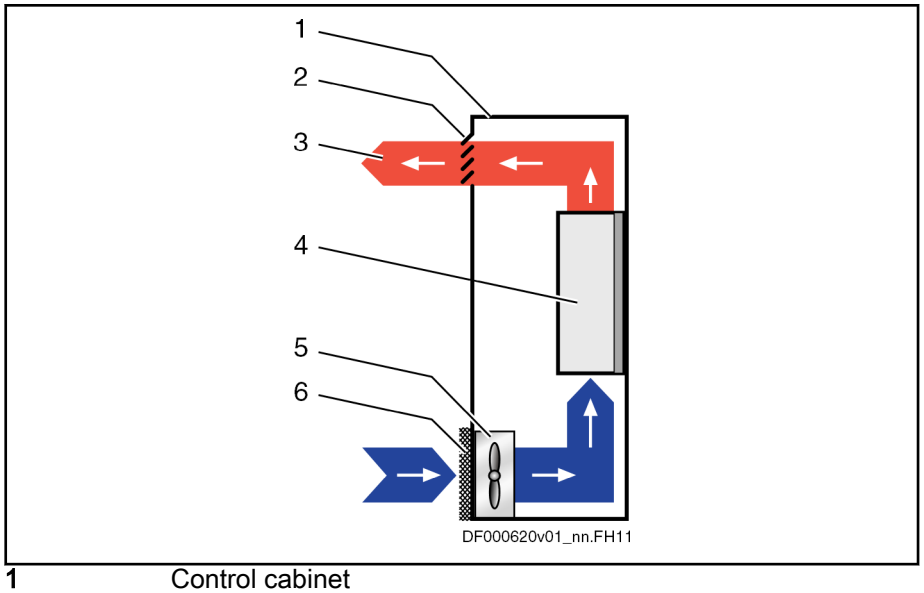
Requirements for control cabinets with fan

NOTICE **Risk of damage by unclean air in the control cabinet!**

Operating a control cabinet with a fan, but without the corresponding filters, can damage the devices or cause malfunction.

- Install filters at the air intake opening of the control cabinet so that unclean air cannot get into the control cabinet.
- Service the filters at regular intervals according to the dust loading in the environment.
- Only replace the filters when the fan has been switched off, because otherwise the fan sucks in the dirt coming off the filter and the dirt gets into the control cabinet.

Control cabinet ventilation (schematic diagram)



1 Control cabinet
2 Air outlet opening
3 Heat discharge
4 Device in control cabinet
5 Control cabinet fan
6 Filter at air intake opening

Fig. 4-7: Control cabinet ventilation (schematic diagram)

Only clean air gets into the control cabinet through the filter at the air intake opening. The control cabinet fan behind the air intake opening conveys the air into the control cabinet and generates overpressure in the control cabinet. The overpressure prevents unclean air from getting into the control cabinet through possibly existing leaky points (leaky cable ducts, damaged seals, etc.).

Liquid cooling

General information

- **Permitted materials** in the cooling circuit:
  - Aluminum
  - Stainless steel
  - Plastic

  Non-ferrous metals and galvanized components are **not permitted**.
- The cooling system has to be a **closed system**.

Refrigeration equipment

There are three types of cooling systems for liquid cooling:

- Air-to-liquid cooling unit
- Liquid-to-liquid cooling unit
- Cooling unit

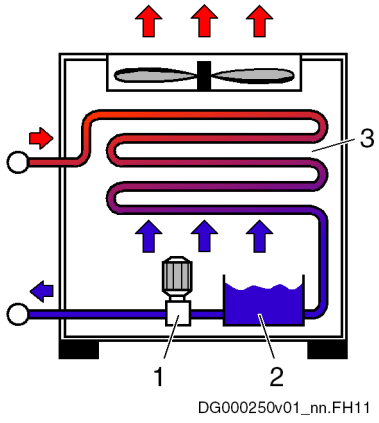
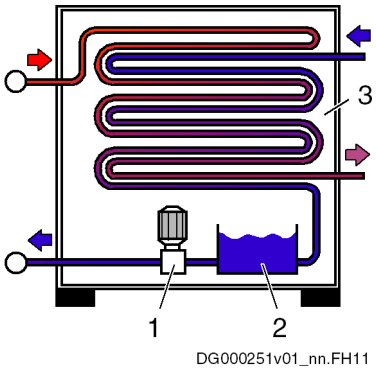
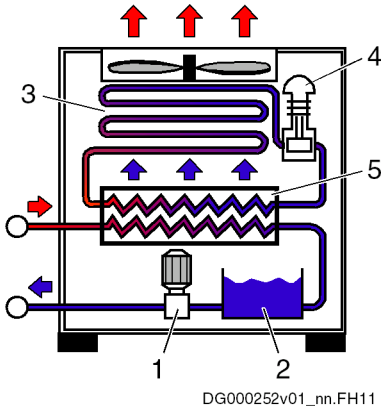
Power dissipation in the control cabinet

Even liquid-cooled drive components generate power dissipation in the form of heat inside the control cabinet. It may be necessary to integrate the control cabinet into the liquid-cooled circuit.

Cooling systems

The cooling system transfers the sum of all heat input into the coolant to a superordinate cooling agent. It provides a temperature-controlled cooling agent and thereby maintains the required temperature level of the components to be cooled.

There are three different types of cooling systems. Cooling systems are named according to the type of heat exchange that occurs between one agent and another.

Air-to-liquid cooling unit	Liquid-to-liquid cooling unit	Cooling unit
		
1. Coolant pump 2. Coolant container 3. Air-to-liquid heat exchanger	1. Coolant pump 2. Coolant container 3. Liquid-liquid heat exchanger	1. Coolant pump 2. Coolant container 3. air-cooled condenser 4. Compressor 5. Evaporator

Tab. 4-10: Types of cooling systems

Features	Air Liquid Cooling unit	Liquid Liquid Cooling unit	Cooling unit
Temperature control accuracy of the coolant	small (±5 K)	small (±5 K)	good (±1 K)
Is a master coolant circuit required?	No	Yes	No
Does the machine's ambient air heat up?	Yes	No	Yes
Is recovering the dissipated power possible?	No	Yes	No
Space requirements for the cooling unit	low	Small	Big
depending on the ambient temperature?	Yes	No	No

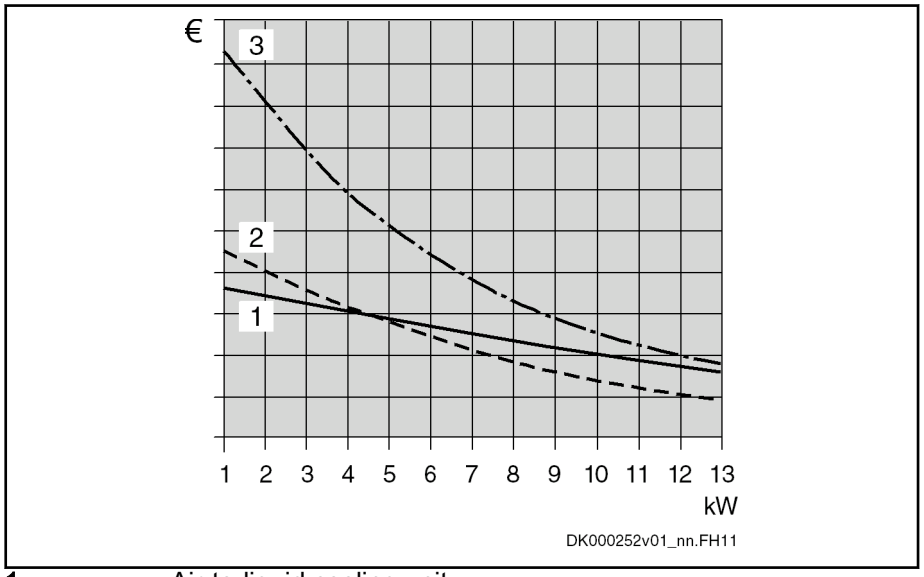
Tab. 4-11: Comparing the cooling systems

Application

Air Liquid Cooling unit	Particularly suitable for individual workshop machines. Is used, • where no higher-level cooling circuit is available • where there are no strict requirements regarding the stability of the coolant temperature
Liquid Liquid Cooling unit	Particularly suitable for systems with existing central recooling. Used in applications where there are no strict requirements regarding coolant temperature stability.
Cooling unit	Particularly suitable for applications where a system requires high thermal stability. By maintaining a constant temperature, the heat generated by electrical components has no effect on the system's accuracy.

Tab. 4-12: Applications of cooling systems

Cost comparison



1 Air-to-liquid cooling unit
2 Liquid-to-liquid cooling unit
3 Cooling unit

Fig. 4-8: Rough cost comparison of cooling systems

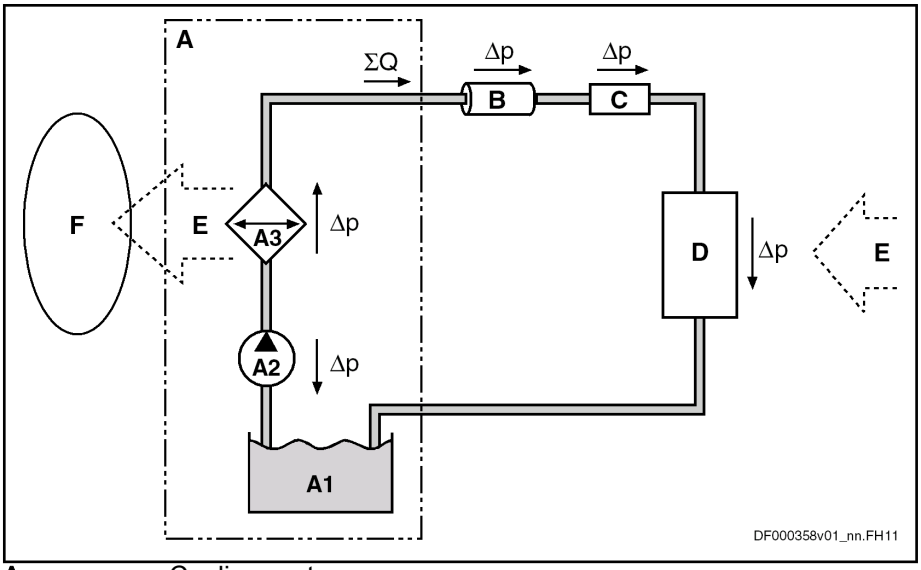
Components of the cooling system

Overview

A liquid cooling system consists of

- a cooling system and
- the drive components to be cooled, including
  - Lines
  - Fittings
  - Shut-off valves, etc.

Heat is transferred via a heat exchanger to a superordinate cooling agent.



A	Cooling system
A1	Coolant container
A2	Coolant pump
A3	Heat exchanger
B	Coolant lines
C	Fittings
D	Electric drive components that need to be cooled
E	Heat transfer
F	higher-level cooling agent
ΔP	Pressure drop
ΣQ	Required flow rate

Fig. 4-9: Basic layout of a liquid cooling system

Coolant container

Recommendation for the design of the coolant container

$$V_T = V_{Ks} + 1,3 \times V_{T_min}$$

V_T	Required capacity of the coolant container
V_{Ks}	Coolant circulating in the cooling system
V_{T_min}	Minimum required coolant volume

Fig. 4-10: Required capacity of the coolant container

$$V_{Ks} = V_{Wt} + V_{Arm} + V_{ch} + V_{Ltg}$$

V_{Ks}	Coolant volume of the coolant system (circulating coolant)
V_{Wt}	Coolant volume in the heat exchanger
V_{Arm}	Coolant volume in the cooling system components
V_{ch}	Coolant volume in the drive components
V_{Ltg}	Coolant volume in the coolant lines

Fig. 4-11: Coolant circulating in the coolant system

Coolant pump

General information

The coolant pump in a cooling system has to generate the required flow rate for the cooling system. To do this, the coolant pump has to generate a pres-

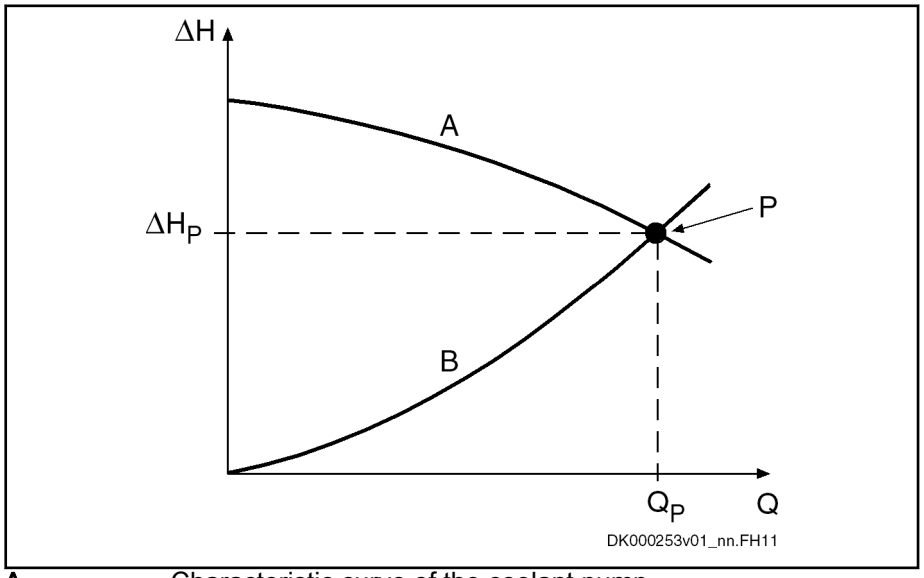
sure that corresponds to the total pressure drop in the cooling system at the required flow rate.

A coolant pump is characterized by:

- Discharge flow
- corresponding lift height

The delivery head is determined by the total pressure drop in the cooling system.

Superimposing the flow charts for the cooling system and the coolant pump yields the **operating point** of the coolant pump. The flow rate at the operating point has to be greater than or equal to the flow rate required for the cooling system.



A Characteristic curve of the coolant pump
B Characteristic curve of the coolant system
ΔH Lifting height
P Operating point of the coolant pump
Q Discharge flow

Fig. 4-12: Operating point of a coolant pump

Discharge flow

Parallel connection

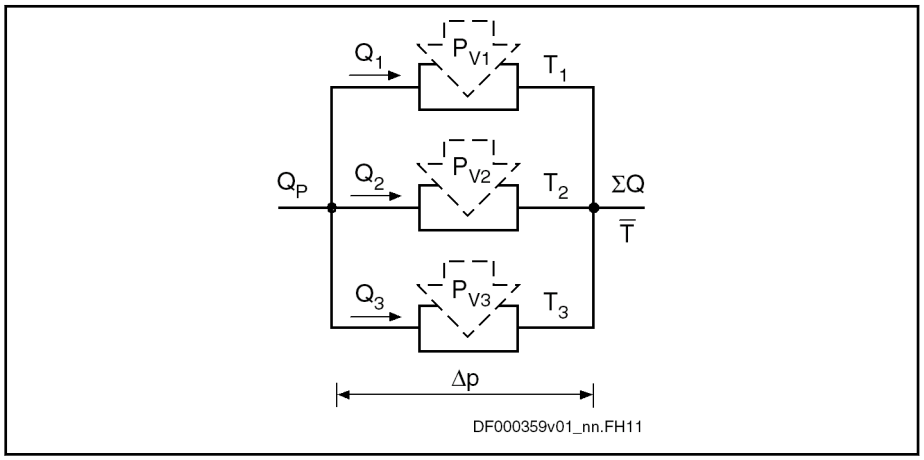


Fig. 4-13: Parallel connection of components

The flow rate of the coolant pump ($_{QP}$) has to equal the total flow rate of all connected components (ΣQ):

$$Q_P \geq Q_1 + Q_2 + \ldots + Q_n = \sum Q$$

Q_P Coolant pump flow rate
$Q_{1...n}$ Required flow rates of the drive components

Fig. 4-14: Coolant pump flow rate in a parallel configuration

Series connection

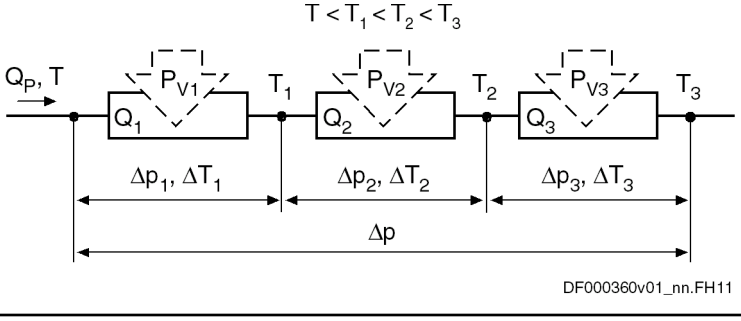


Fig. 4-15: Series connection of components

The flow rate of the coolant pump has to match the flow rate of the component that requires the highest flow rate. All other connected components are then flushed with this flow rate.

$$Q_P \geq \text{Maximum}(Q_1, Q_2 \ldots Q_n)$$

Q_P Coolant pump flow rate
$Q_{1...n}$ Required flow rates for the drive components

Fig. 4-16: Coolant pump flow rate in series connection

The required flow rates for the liquid-cooled drive components are specified in the technical data for each component (based on a fixed temperature increase of the water coolant). If other coolants are used or different temperature increases are desired, the flow rate has to be adjusted accordingly.

Discharge pressure

Required delivery pressure of the coolant pump

The coolant pump has to overcome all pressure drops along the coolant's flow path.

The flow path runs through

- Heat exchanger
- Valves and fittings
- Main distribution
- drive components connected in parallel and/or in series
- Coolant line

$$\Delta p_p \geq \Delta p_{Wt} + \Delta p_{Arm} + \Delta p_{ch} + \Delta p_{Ltg} = \sum \Delta p$$

Δp_{xxx} Pressure decreases in individual cooling system components on flow path (Wt: heat exchanger, Arm: fittings, ch: drive component, Ltg: lines)
Δp_p Delivery pressure of the coolant pump

Fig. 4-17: Required delivery pressure of the coolant pump

Pressure drop in the coolant line

$$\Delta p_{Ltg} = \Delta p_{Ltg}/\Delta l \times l$$

$\Delta p_{Ltg}/\Delta l$ Length-dependent pressure drop in hPa/m
l Cable length in meters

Fig. 4-18: Pressure drop in the coolant line

Use the data provided by the manufacturer of the coolant lines for your calculations.

Pressure drop fittings

The pressure drop is specified in the manufacturer's specifications. If no information is available, the following rule of thumb applies:

$$\Delta p_{Arm} \approx \frac{\Delta p_{Ltg}}{\Delta l} \times 5m$$

$\Delta p_{Ltg}/\Delta l$ Pressure drop in a hose with the same inner diameter in hPa/m

Fig. 4-19: Pressure drop fittings

Pressure drop in heat exchanger

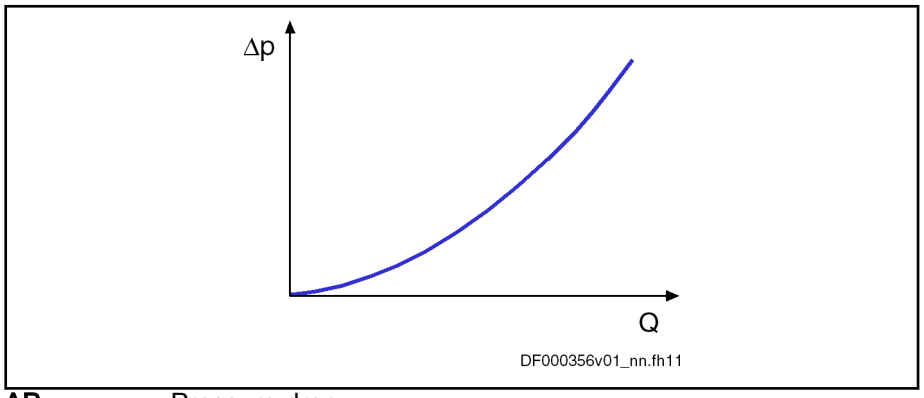
The pressure drop Δp_{Wt} can be found in the manufacturer's specifications.

Pressure drop in drive components

The resulting pressure decrease Δp_{ch} generally differs from the specified Δp_n, since the flow rate is mostly greater than Q_{min}.

Calculating the pressure drop: See chapter "Appendix" → "Liquid cooling" → "Calculation criteria".

The following diagram shows the relationship between pressure drop and flow rate.



ΔP Pressure drop
Q Flow rate

Fig. 4-20: Flow chart

NOTICE **Connection components that are too small can lead to a significant increase in pressure drop!**

Dimension the connection components according to our specifications.

To select the correct coolant pump, its required head, ΔH has to be known:

Delivery head of the coolant pump

$$\Delta H = \frac{\Delta p_P \times 10^2 \times kg \times m}{\rho \times 9{,}81 \times l \times hPa}$$

ΔH	Lift height in meters
Δp_p	Coolant pump pressure in hPa
ρ	Specific gravity of the coolant in kg/l

Fig. 4-21: Delivery head of the coolant pump

A properly sized coolant pump can operate at or near its point of maximum efficiency. Prerequisite: the system characteristic curve has to be determined as accurately as possible. Excessive safety margins often result in the selection of an unnecessarily large coolant pump, which then have to be operated under partial load.

If the required pressure of the coolant pump exceeds the maximum allowable system pressure, the hose cross-sections has to be resized or the temperature increase ΔT in the cooling system has to be adjusted.

Cooling unit or refrigeration unit

Air-liquid cooling unit and control cabinet air cooler

Selection information

Determining the specific cooling capacity

$$P_{01} = \frac{\Sigma P_V}{(T_{ein} - T_{amb})}$$

P_V	Power dissipation in kW
P_{01}	Specific cooling capacity in kW/K
T_{amb}	Ambient temperature in °C
T_{ein}	Inlet temperature of the coolant entering the heat exchanger in °C

Fig. 4-22: Determining the specific cooling capacity

For air-to-liquid cooling units, the maximum outlet temperature of the drive components ($=T_{ein}$) should be set to 50 °C for economic reasons. An air-to-liquid cooling unit is only practical up to an ambient temperature of approximately 35 °C and for capacities up to 3 kW.

Change in coolant temperature

$$\Delta T_{Km} = \frac{P_V \times 60 \frac{s}{min}}{\rho \times c_{Km} \times Q}$$

P_V	Power dissipation in kW
ρ	Density of the coolant in kg/l
c_{Km}	Specific heat capacity of the coolant in kJ/kgK
Q	Coolant flow rate in l/min

Fig. 4-23: Change in coolant temperature

Change in air temperature

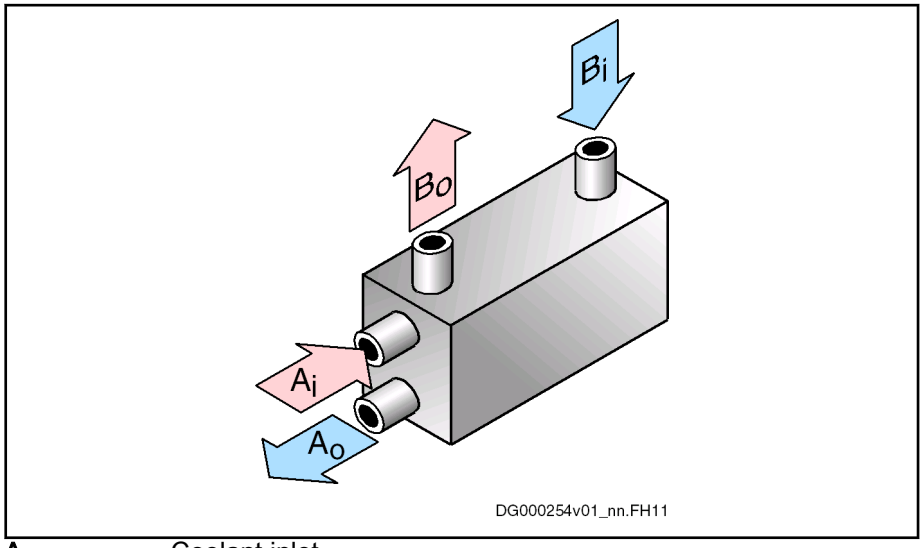
$$\Delta T_L = \frac{P_V \times 60 \frac{s}{min}}{1{,}3 \times 10^{-3} \frac{kg}{l} \times 0{,}72 \frac{kJ}{kgK} \times Q_L}$$

P_V Power dissipation in kW
Q_L Air current in l/min

Fig. 4-24: Change in air temperature

For control cabinet air cooling, design the air current $_{QL}$ so that the air temperature change is ΔT_L = 10 K. (Preventing condensation: see chapter "Condensation protection" on page 65)

Liquid-to-liquid cooling unit



A_i Coolant inlet
A_o Coolant leak
B_i Fluid inlet
B_o Fluid outlet

Fig. 4-25: Liquid-liquid heat exchanger

In a liquid-liquid heat exchanger, two liquids are hydraulically separated and brought into the best possible thermal contact. This transfers the dissipated power absorbed by the coolant to the superordinate cooling circuit (operating fluid).

These cooling units are suitable for, among other things, the coolants specified in this documentation. Depending on the material used, freshwater, river water, industrial water, seawater, or brackish water can be used as working fluid.

Selection information

Determining the specific cooling capacity

$$P_{01} = \frac{P_V}{(T_1 - T_2)}$$

P_V Power dissipation in kW
P_{01} Specific cooling capacity in kW/K
T_1 Coolant inlet temperature in °C
T_2 Inlet temperature of the fluid in °C

Fig. 4-26: Determining the specific cooling capacity

Cooling of the warmer medium (coolant)

$$\Delta T_1 = \frac{3{,}6 \times P_V}{\rho_1 \times c_1 \times Q_1 \times 0{,}06}$$

ΔT_1 Coolant temperature reduction in K
ρ_1 Density of the coolant in kg/l
P_V Power dissipation in kW
c_1 Specific heat capacity of the coolant in kJ/kgK
Q_1 Coolant flow rate in l/min

Fig. 4-27: Cooling of the warmer medium (coolant)

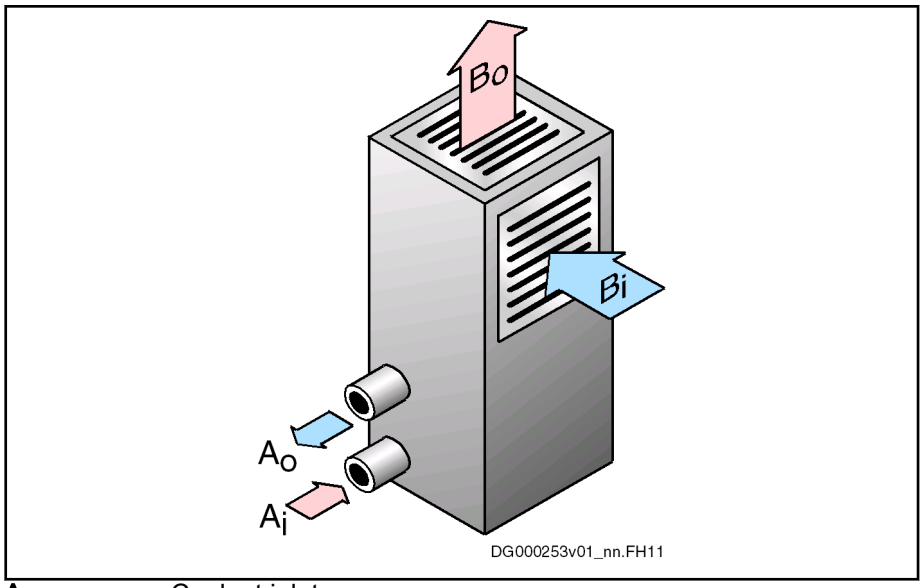
Heating of the colder fluid

$$\Delta T_2 = \frac{3{,}6 \times P_V}{\rho_2 \times c_2 \times Q_2 \times 0{,}06}$$

ΔT_2 Temperature increase of the fluid in K
ρ_2 Density of the fluid in kg/l
P_V Power dissipation in kW
c_2 Specific heat capacity of the fluid in kJ/kgK
Q_2 Flow rate of the fluid in l/min

Fig. 4-28: Heating of the colder fluid

Refrigeration unit



A_i Coolant inlet
A_o Coolant leak
B_i Air intake
B_o Air outlet

Fig. 4-29: Cooling unit

A **refrigeration unit** consists of a refrigerant circuit and a coolant circuit. The water, which has been heated by the drive components it is cooling, is circulated by the coolant pump through the evaporator, where it is cooled. The heat removed from the cooling agent is raised to a higher temperature level in the refrigerant circuit and transferred to a higher-level cooling medium in the condenser. The refrigerant circuit is automatically controlled by thermostats. The desired coolant temperature can be set accurately.

Refrigeration units are characterized by their **cooling capacity**.

The cooling capacity of a unit with an air-cooled condenser depends on the ambient temperature. The cooling capacity (in kW) of a refrigeration unit must always be greater than or equal to the total power loss to be dissipated.

Determining the cooling capacity

Selection information

$$P_C \geq \sum P_V$$

P_C Cooling capacity of the refrigeration unit
$\sum P_V$ Total power dissipation

Fig. 4-30: Determining the cooling capacity

Cooling of drive components

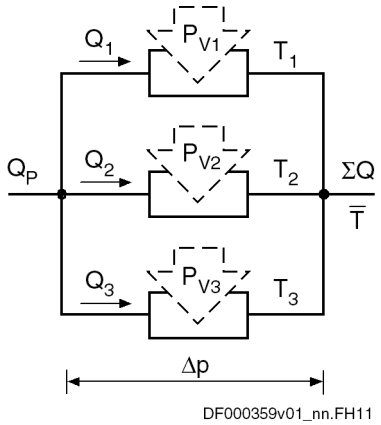
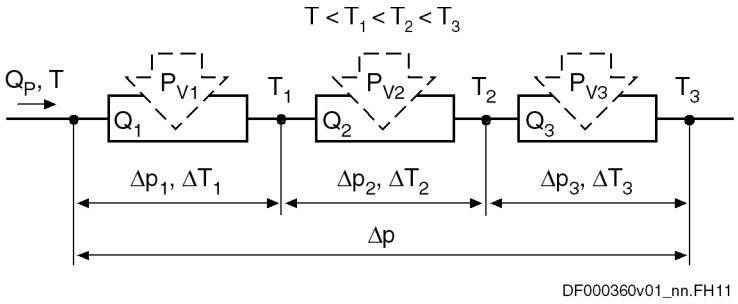
Technical data

☞ The technical data required for sizing the cooling system can be found in the project planning manuals of the drive components used (see "Related documentation").

Wiring

The two possible ways of connecting hydraulic components (series connection/parallel connection) differ significantly in terms of:

- Pressure drop of the entire cooling system
- Coolant pump flow rate
- Temperature level and temperature control capabilities of the individual components to be cooled

Parallel connection	Series connection
	

Tab. 4-13: Parallel and series connection of drive components to be cooled

Parallel connection

A parallel connection is characterized by nodes in the hydraulic system. The following applies:

- The sum of the coolant flow rates entering a node is equal to the sum of the coolant flow rates leaving the node.
- Between two nodes, the pressure difference (pressure drop) is the same for all cooling system branches in between.

Application aspects

The individual components to be cooled

- can be cooled at the flow rate required for each individual application ⇒ high thermal operational reliability.
- have the same temperature at the coolant inlet ⇒ resulting in uniform machine heating.
- all have the same pressure differential between the coolant inlet and outlet ⇒ high hydraulic operational reliability of the cooling system due to low total pressure

Series connection

In a series connection, a single coolant flow passes through all the components that need to be cooled.

The following applies:

- The flow rates of all components are the identical.
- Each component experiences a pressure drop between the coolant inlet and outlet. The individual pressure drops add up to the total pressure drop across the drive components.

Application aspects

The following characteristics of series connections always have to be taken into account:

- A series connection does not allow for individual adjustment of the required flow rate for each of the connected components.
- The required system pressure is equal to the sum of all pressure drops across the interconnected individual components. This results in reduced hydraulic operational reliability due to high system pressure
- The temperature of the coolant rises from component to component, since each source of power dissipation transferred to the coolant increases its temperature. This results in uneven heating of the machine due to the components that need to be cooled

Combined wiring

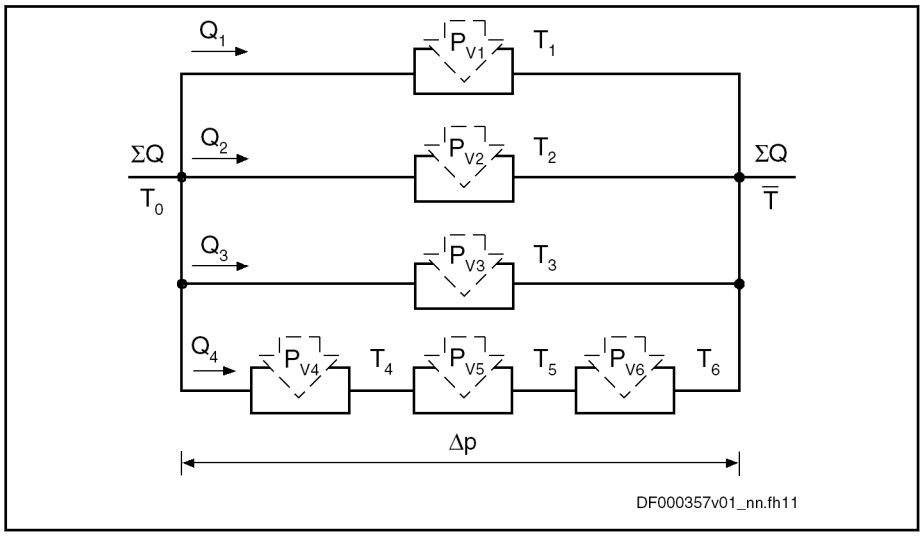


Fig. 4-31: Combined wiring of drive components requiring cooling

By combining the drive components that need to be cooled into a single circuit, the advantages of both parallel and series connections can be used.

Condensation protection

NOTICE **Risk of damage. Drive components cannot build condensation.**

In temperate zones (up to 40°C and 70% humidity), the inlet temperature of the coolant may be at a maximum 5 K below the temperature in the control cabinet.

Safest protection against condensation:

Coolant inlet temperature = ambient temperature

The temperature of the coolant flowing through liquid-cooled drive components generally differs from the temperature of the ambient air.

Depending on the humidity, the ambient air contains water vapor. The amount of water vapor which can be absorbed by the air depends on the air temperature and air pressure. The warmer the air, the more water vapor it can absorb at the same air pressure.

When warm air gets in contact with a less warm object, a moist film (condensation) forms on the surface of the object if the temperature of the object is below the condensation temperature.

Drive components with protection classes IPx4, IPx5, IPx6 are not at risk from condensation because their design provides sufficient protection against water.

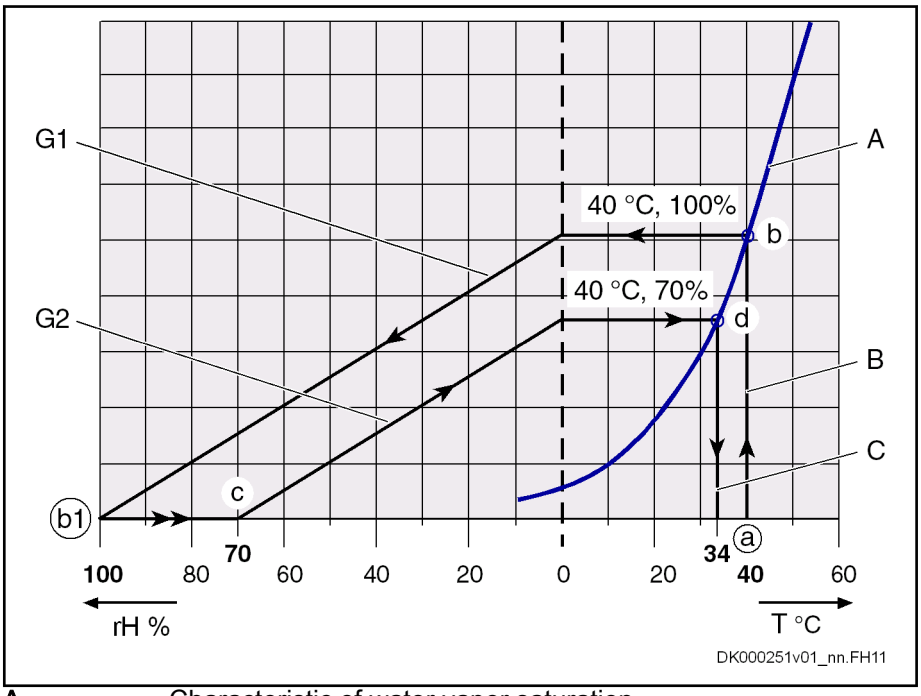
Drive components with the protection class IPx0, such as drive controllers and supply units, do not have sufficient protection against water. This is why condensation cannot be allowed to form on them.

Condensation temperature

In temperate zones (e.g., Central Europe), the condensation temperature is **34°C** at

- Air temperatures up to 40°C and
- Relative humidity up to 70%

For climatic zones with higher air temperatures and/or higher relative humidities, the condensation temperature must be graphically determined according to the figure below. The maximum temperature difference between internal air of the control cabinet and coolant inlet temperature derives from the figure.



A	Characteristic of water vapor saturation
B	Maximum temperature of ambient air
C	Condensation temperature
G1, G2	Artificial lines
rH	Relative humidity
T	Ambient temperature
a	Maximum ambient temperature (e.g., 40°C)
b, b1	Intersection point of ambient air temperature and characteristic of water vapor saturation. This intersection point characterizes the 100% humidity value (b1)
c	Convert 100% humidity value graphically by parallel translation of artificial line G1 to expected humidity value (e.g., 70%) (⇒ artificial line G2)
d	Intersection point of expected humidity value and characteristic of water vapor saturation leads to expected condensation temperature of drive component (34°C)

Fig. 4-32: Determining condensation temperature

☞ The temperature difference between the actual ambient air temperature and the coolant inlet temperature must not be greater than between maximum ambient air temperature and moisture condensation temperature to be expected!

Coolant

Water-based coolant (water-glycol mixture)

NOTICE **Risk of damage to the components!**

- Ensure that the coolant has the required properties and a suitable composition.
- When transporting and storing the components, ensure adequate protection against freezing (see chapter "Transport and storage").

Required properties

Most cooling systems use water as a coolant. The values specified in the technical data for the components therefore refer to water as the coolant, containing 20 percent by volume of glycol-based coolant additives.

If you increase the volume percentage, take the power derating into account. See the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the coolant additive.

The water-based coolant must have the following properties:

- pH value: > 7.3
- Water hardness: max. 10 °dH (England: 12.5 °e; France: 17.8 °f; U.S.: 178 ppm $CaCO_3$)
- Chlorides: max. 20 mg/l
- Nitrates: max. 10 mg/l
- Sulfates: max. 100 mg/L
- Insoluble substances: max. 250 mg/L

Drinking water in Germany meets these requirements.

Frost control

Water-glycol mixtures are freeze-resistant depending on the mixing ratio. Follow the manufacturer's specification.

Protection against corrosion

- To prevent corrosion and ensure chemical stability, add a suitable additive to the cooling water.
- The specified mixing ratio (as stated in the manufacturer's data sheet) has to be followed or verified. The mixing ratio is at least 20% by volume (with derating, 50% by volume is possible).

  Check the condition and concentration of the coolant additive at least once a year. Most manufacturers of coolant additives offer this inspection free of charge.

  Deviations from the specified mixing ratio may result in:

  – Reduction in cooling capacity
  – Changes in emulsion stability
  – unexpected behavior with respect to sealing materials
  – Reduction in corrosion protection
- The coolant should be chemically neutral (pH: > 7.3)
- Use a **closed-loop** system. An open-loop system should not be used for cooling, as deposits and corrosion (e.g., from calcaerous water) can impair heat transfer or completely clog the cooling channels.

☞ If the specified mixing ratio exceeds the recommended 20% by volume, calculate the cooling system based on the resulting coolant.

Check whether the coolant is compatible with the plastic and sealing materials. If required, contact the coolant manufacturer.

Corrosion protection additive

Aqueous solutions already provide reliable corrosion protection without significantly altering the physical properties of the water.

☞ Comply with the safety instructions provided by the manufacturer of the corrosion inhibitor (e.g., the DIN safety data sheet).

Coolant additives

Recommended manufacturer of coolant additives

Proper chemical treatment of closed water systems is essential for preventing corrosion (corrosion protection required [inhibitors]), maintaining heat transfer, and minimizing bacterial growth throughout the system.

☞ Rexroth cannot make any general statements or conduct any studies regarding the suitability of system-specific coolants, additives, or operating conditions.

The machine manufacturer is responsible for performing a qualifying examination to verify the suitability of the coolants used and for designing the liquid cooling system.

Water-based coolant

Permissible water-glycol mixtures are:

- Water + Antifrogen N or L
- Water + Glysofor N

Refer to the manufacturers' data sheets (minimum concentration, water properties, monitoring and condition of the coolant, etc.) or use ready-to-use mixtures such as Rifrost from Rittal.

Non-water-based coolant

Non-water-based coolants (e.g., oil) are **not permitted**.

Sizing of liquid cooling system

For information on sizing a liquid-cooled cooling system, please refer to the appendix, which includes a sizing example.

It is necessary **to check the pH level of the coolant annually**.

If pH value < 7.3:

- Drain the coolant
- Flush the cooling system
- add new coolant

Non-ferrous metals are not permitted in the cooling system.

4.4.4 UL ratings

Introduction

This chapter contains:

- Limit values for use within the scope of CSA / UL
- Applied standards (CE conformity, UL listing)

HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx

Inverter

HMU05.1N-F… -A4-D7-P

Ambient and operating conditions - UL ratings

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0350-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0430-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0510-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0660-N-A4-D7-P
Short circuit current rating	SCCR	A rms	85000			
Nominal input voltage, power	U_{LN_nenn}	V	DC 450...750			
Nominal input current	I_{LN}	A	242.0	291.0	373.0	467.0
Output voltage	U_{out}	V	3 x AC 0...500			
Output current	I_{out}	A	254.0	306.0	392.0	490.0

Tab. 4-14: HMU – Ambient and operating conditions – UL ratings

Ambient and operating conditions - UL ratings

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0340-0820-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0430-1040-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-1300-N-A4-D7-P
Short circuit current rating	SCCR	A rms	85000		
Rated input voltage, power	U_{LN_nenn}	V	DC 450...750		
Nominal input current	I_{LN}	A	587.0	734.0	954.0
Output voltage	U_{out}	V	3 x AC 0...500		
Output current	I_{out}	A	616.0	771.0	1002.0

Tab. 4-15: HMU – Ambient and operating conditions – UL ratings

HMU05.1N-F… -A5-11-P

Ambient and operating conditions - UL ratings

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0210-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0250-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0300-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0370-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0400-0600-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-0750-N-A5-11-P
Short circuit current rating	SCCR	A rms	85000					
Rated input voltage, power	U_{LN_nenn}	V	DC 750…1100					
Nominal input current	I_{LN}	A	165.0	198.0	254.0	318.0	419.0	651.0

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0210-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0250-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0300-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0370-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0400-0600-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-0750-N-A5-11-P
Output voltage	U_{out}	V	3 x AC 0…780					
Output current	I_{out}	A	147.0	177.0	227.0	284.0	374.0	581.0

Tab. 4-16: HMU – Ambient and operating conditions – UL ratings

Supply units

HMU05.1N-F… -A4-D7-P

Ambient and operating conditions - UL ratings

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0350-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0430-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0510-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0660-N-A4-D7-P
Short circuit current rating	SCCR	A rms	85000			
Nominal input voltage, power	U_{LN_nenn}	V	3 x AC 380...500			
Mains frequency	f_{LN}	Hz	50...60			
Nominal input current	I_{LN}	A	218.00	262.00	327.00	409.00
Mains connection fuse[1)]		A	300	350	450	600
Output voltage	U_{out}	V	DC 750			
Output power	P_{out}	kW	144.00	173.00	216.00	270.00

1) Use cUL-listed fuses (class J; 600 V AC).

Tab. 4-17: HMU – Ambient and operating conditions – UL ratings

Ambient and operating conditions - UL ratings

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0340-0820-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0430-1040-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-1300-N-A4-D7-P
Short circuit current rating	SCCR	A rms	85000		
Rated input voltage, power	U_{LN_nenn}	V	3 x AC 380...500		
Mains frequency	f_{LN}	Hz	50...60		
Nominal input current	I_{LN}	A	514.00	652.00	811.00
Mains connection fuse[1)]		A	700	900	1200
Output voltage	U_{out}	V	DC 750		
Output power	P_{out}	kW	340.00	430.00	540.00

1) Use cUL-listed fuses (class L; 600 V AC).

Tab. 4-18: HMU – Ambient and operating conditions – UL ratings

HMU05.1N-F… -A5-11-P

Ambient and operating conditions - UL ratings

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0210-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0250-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0300-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0370-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0400-0600-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-0750-N-A5-11-P
Short circuit current rating	SCCR	A rms	85000					
Rated input voltage, power	U_{LN_nenn}	V	3 x AC 525…600					
Mains frequency	f_{LN}	Hz	50...60					
Nominal input current	I_{LN}	A	127.00	152.00	190.00	238.00	352.00	471.00
Mains connection fuse[2)]		A	200*	250*	300*	350*	600*	700**
Output voltage	U_{out}	V	DC 1100					
Output power1)	P_{out}	kW	144.00	173.00	216.00	270.00	400.00	535.00

1) The values listed refer to an input voltage of 690 V.
2) Use cUL-listed fuses (*: class J; **: class L; 600 V AC).

Tab. 4-19: HMU – Ambient and operating conditions – UL ratings

4.4.5 Compatibility with foreign matters

All Rexroth controls and drives are developed and tested according to the state-of-the-art technology.

As it is impossible to follow the continuing development of all materials (e.g. lubricants in machine tools) which may interact with the controls and drives, it cannot be completely ruled out that any reactions with the materials we use might occur.

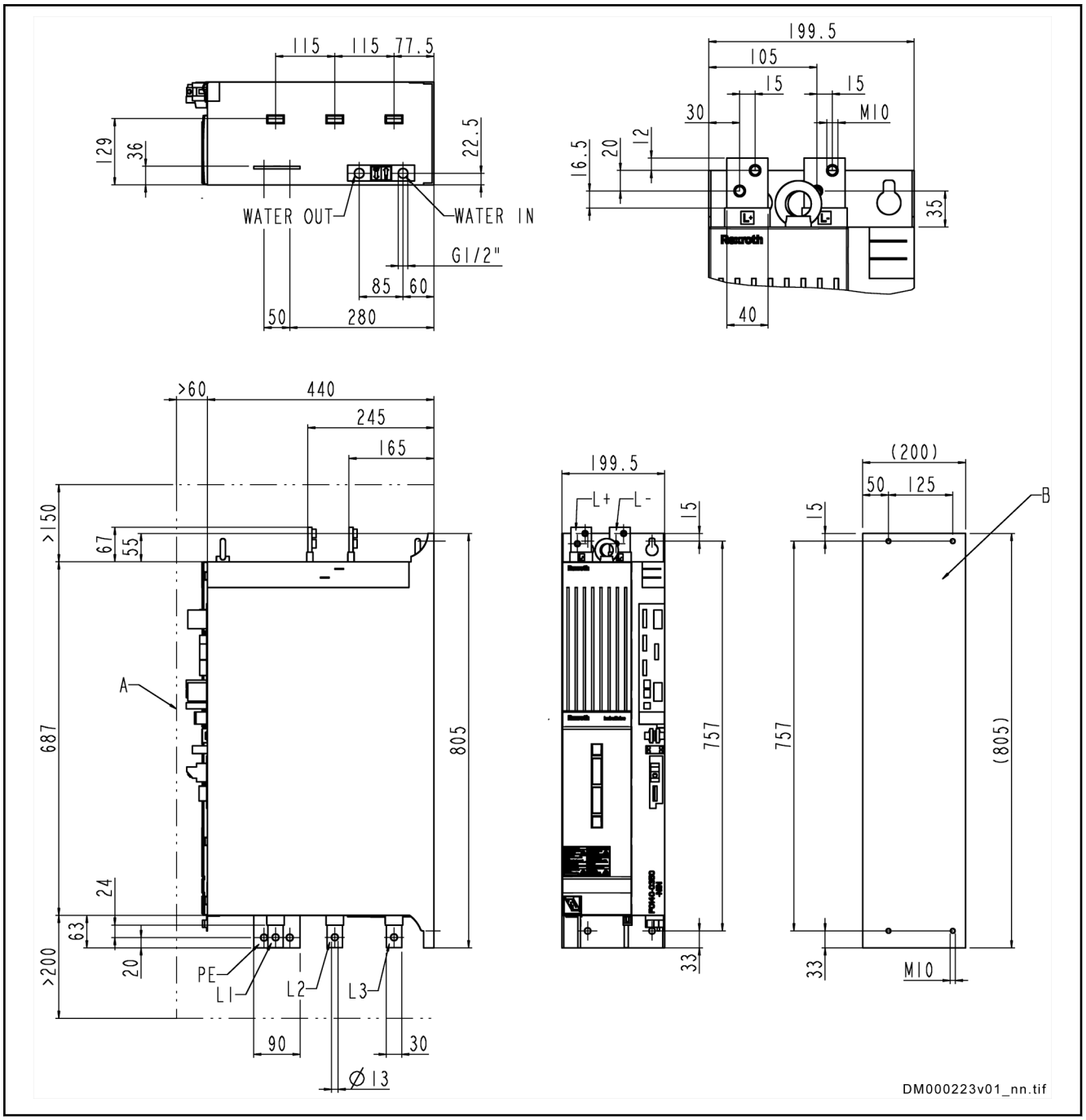
For this reason, before using the respective material a compatibility test has to be carried out for new lubricants, cleaning agents etc. and our housings/ materials.

4.5 Mechanical project planning

4.5.1 Dimensions

HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx

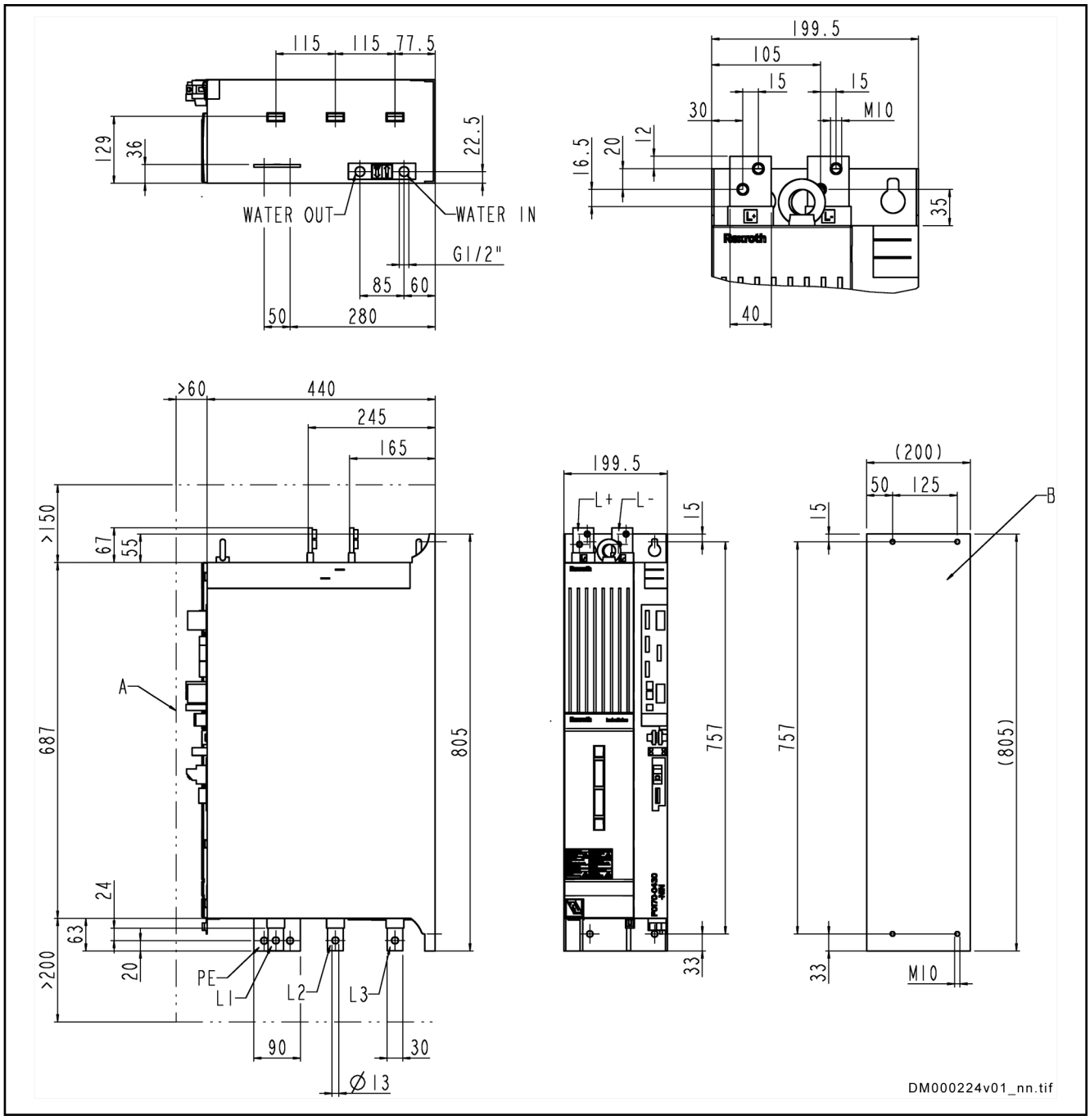
HMU05.1N-F0140-0210, -0350



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 4-33: HMU05.1N-F0140-0210, -0350

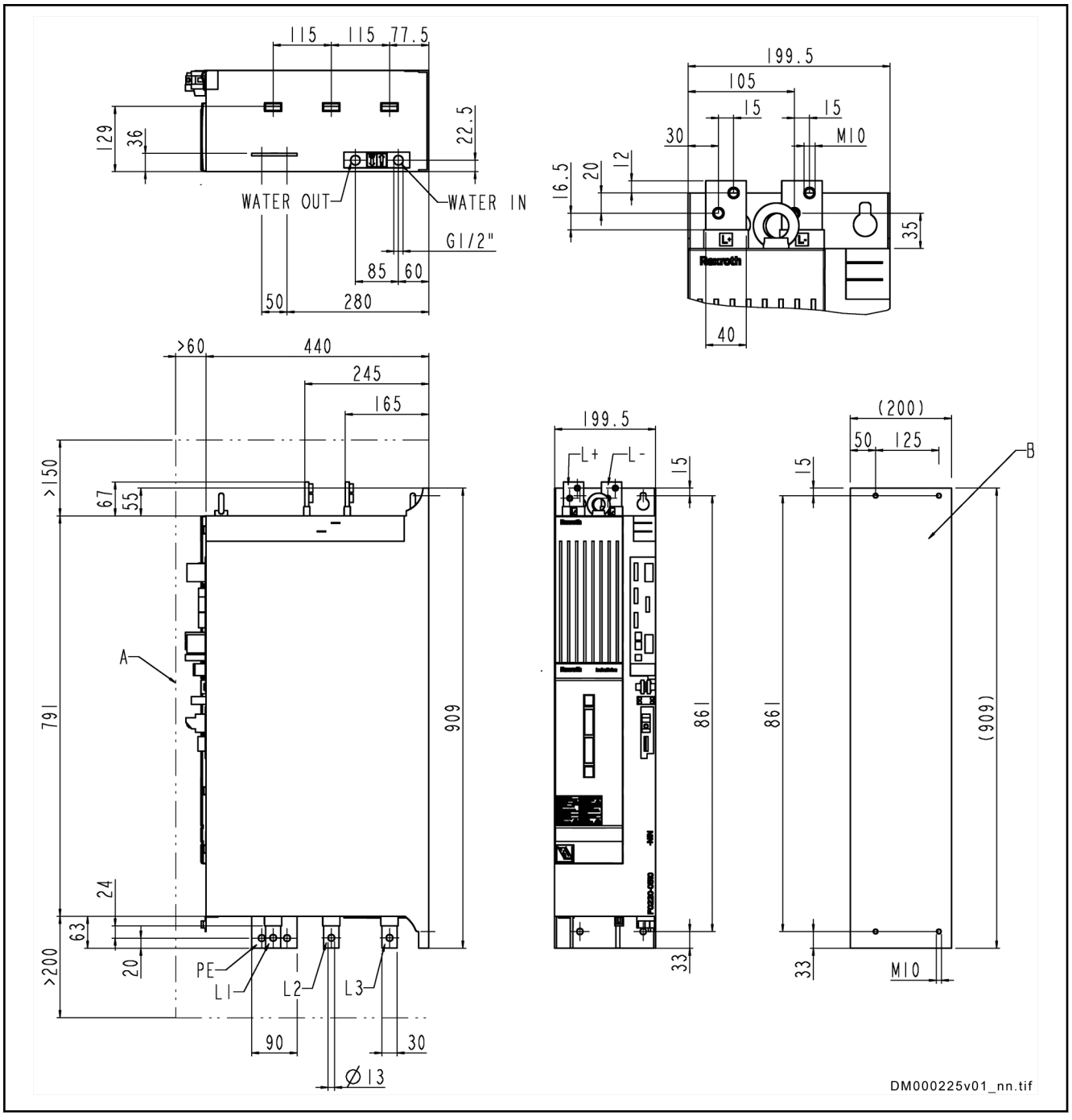
HMU05.1N-F0170-0250, -0430



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 4-34: HMU05.1N-F0170-0250, -0430

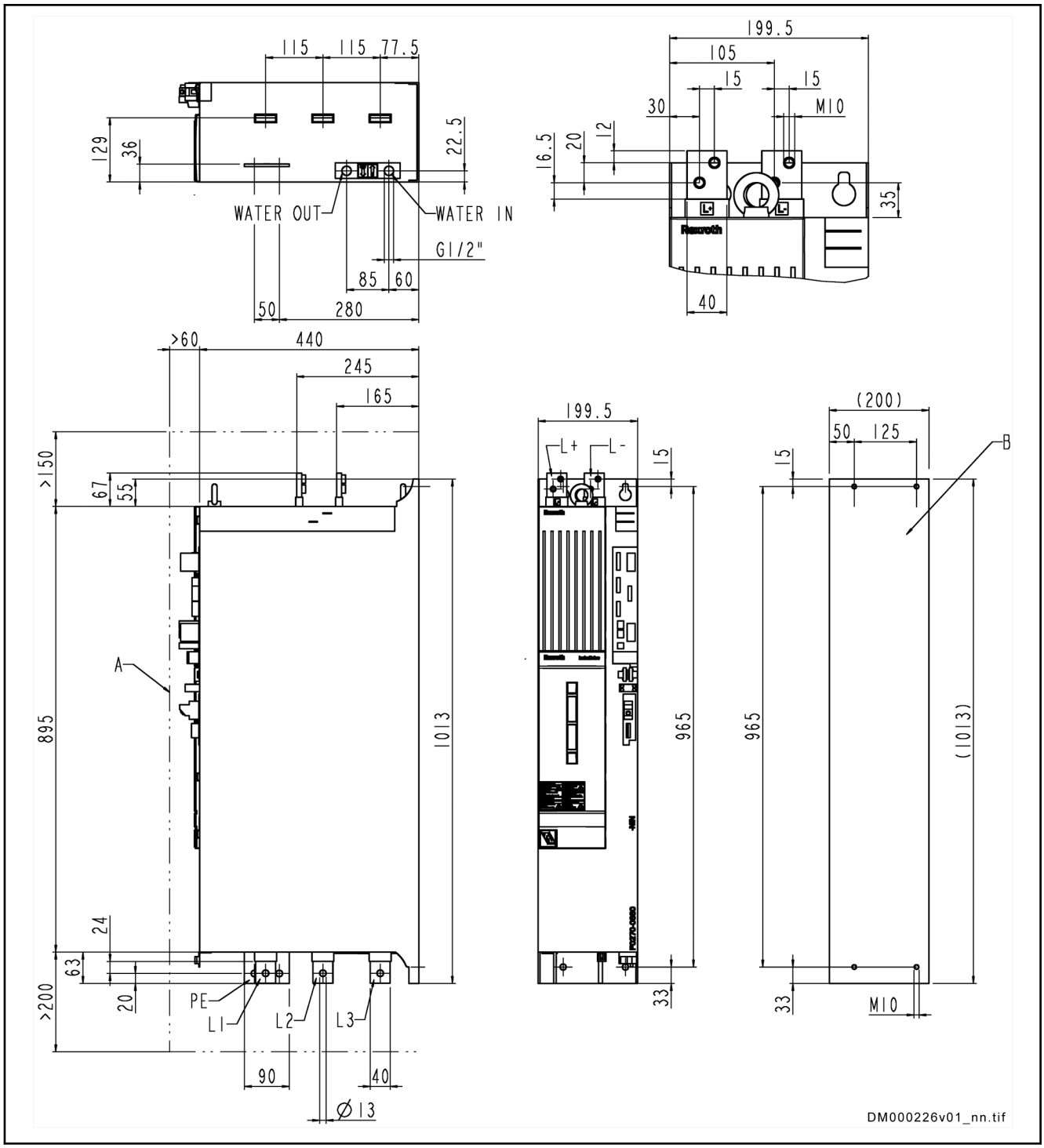
HMU05.1N-F0220-0300, -0510, HMU05.1N-F0270-0370



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 4-35: HMU05.1N-F0220-0300, -0370, HMU05.1N-F0270-0510

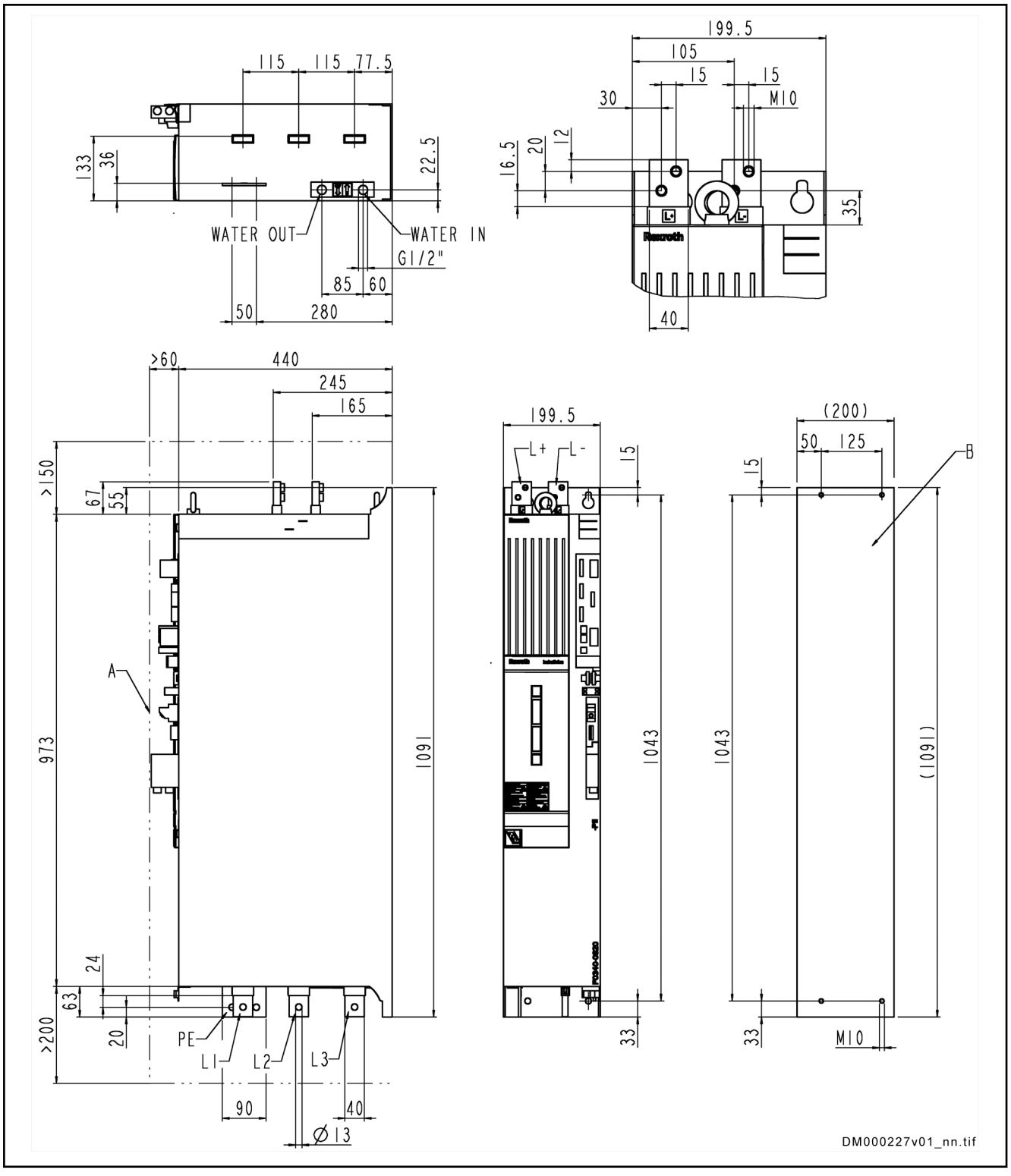
HMU05.1N-F0270-0660



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 4-36: HMU05.1N-F0270-0660

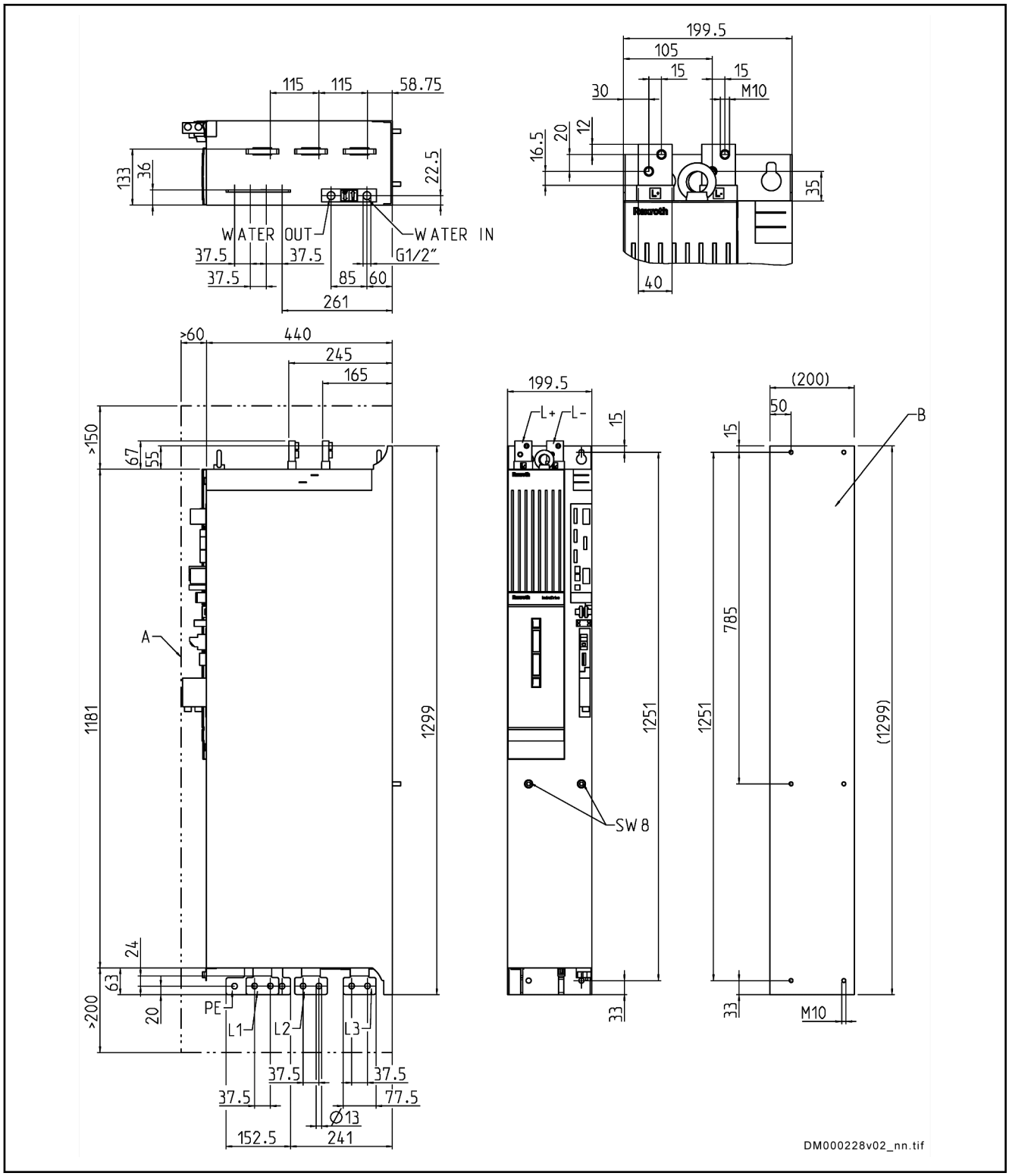
HMU05.1N-F0340-0820, HMU05.1N-F0400-0600



A	Minimum mounting clearance
B	Boring dimensions

Fig. 4-37: HMU05.1N-F0340-0820, HMU05.1N-F0400-0600

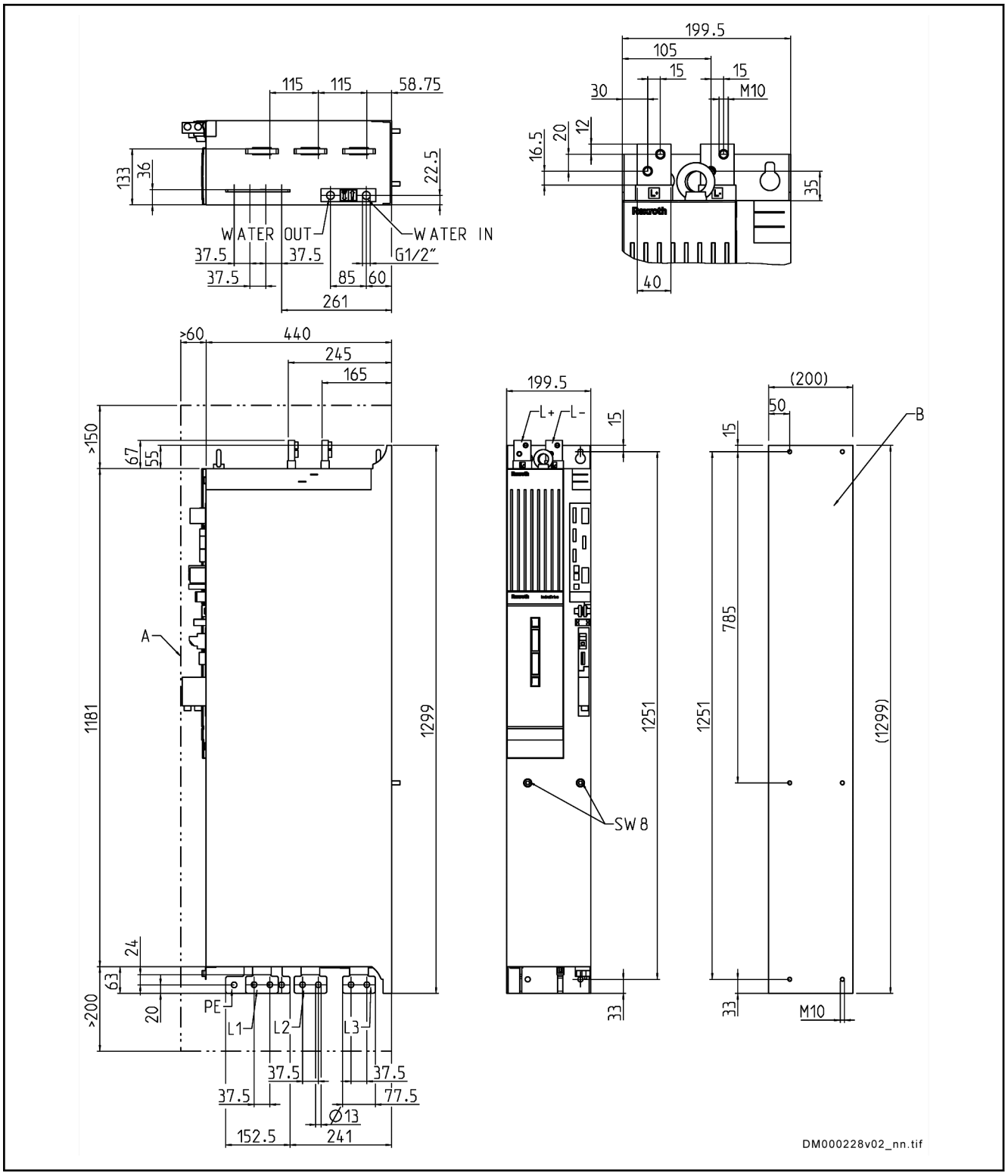
HMU05.1N-F0430-1040



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 4-38: HMU05.1N-F0430-1040

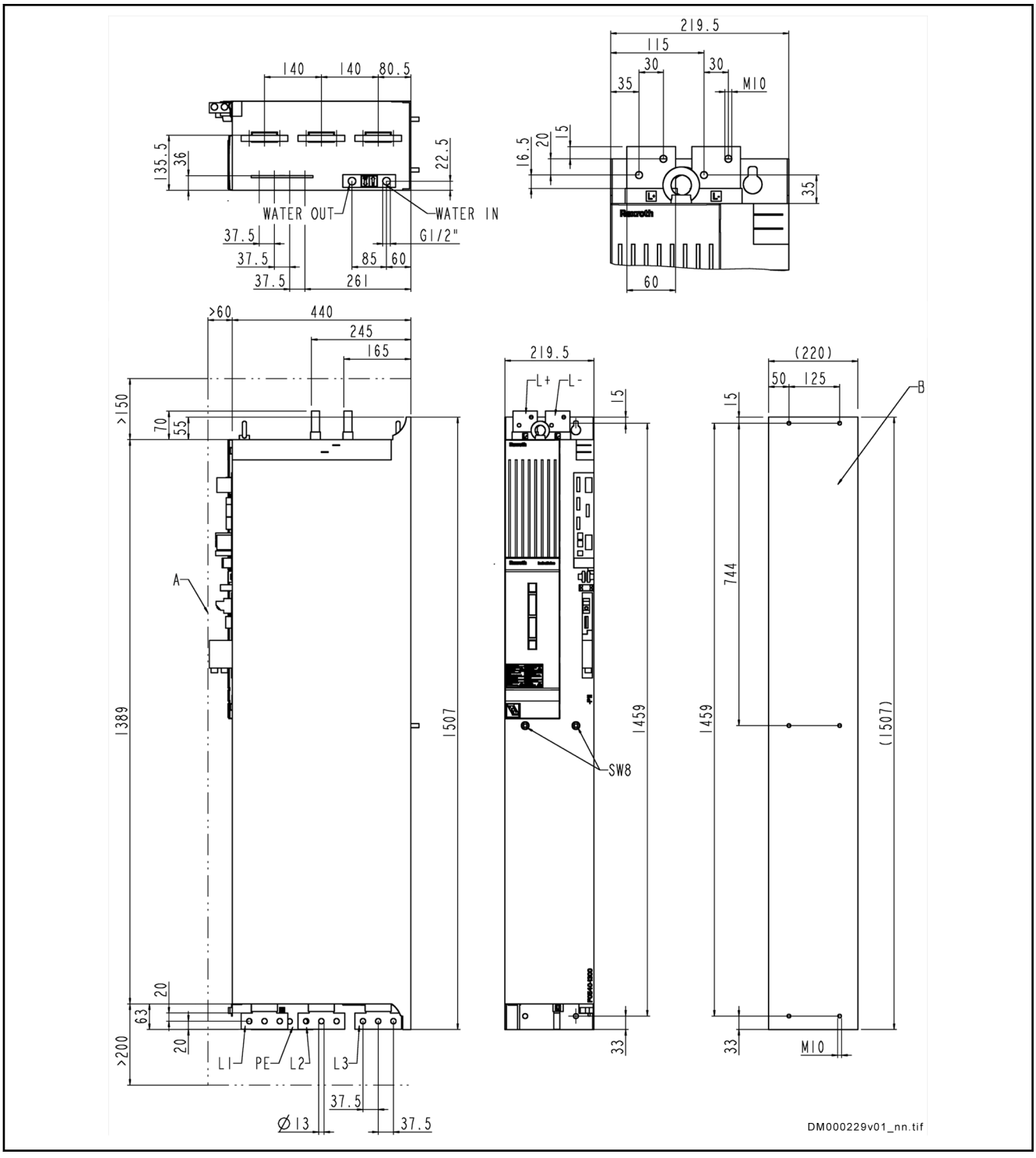
HMU05.1N-F0540-0750



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 4-39: HMU05.1N-F0540-0750

HMU05.1N-F0540-1300

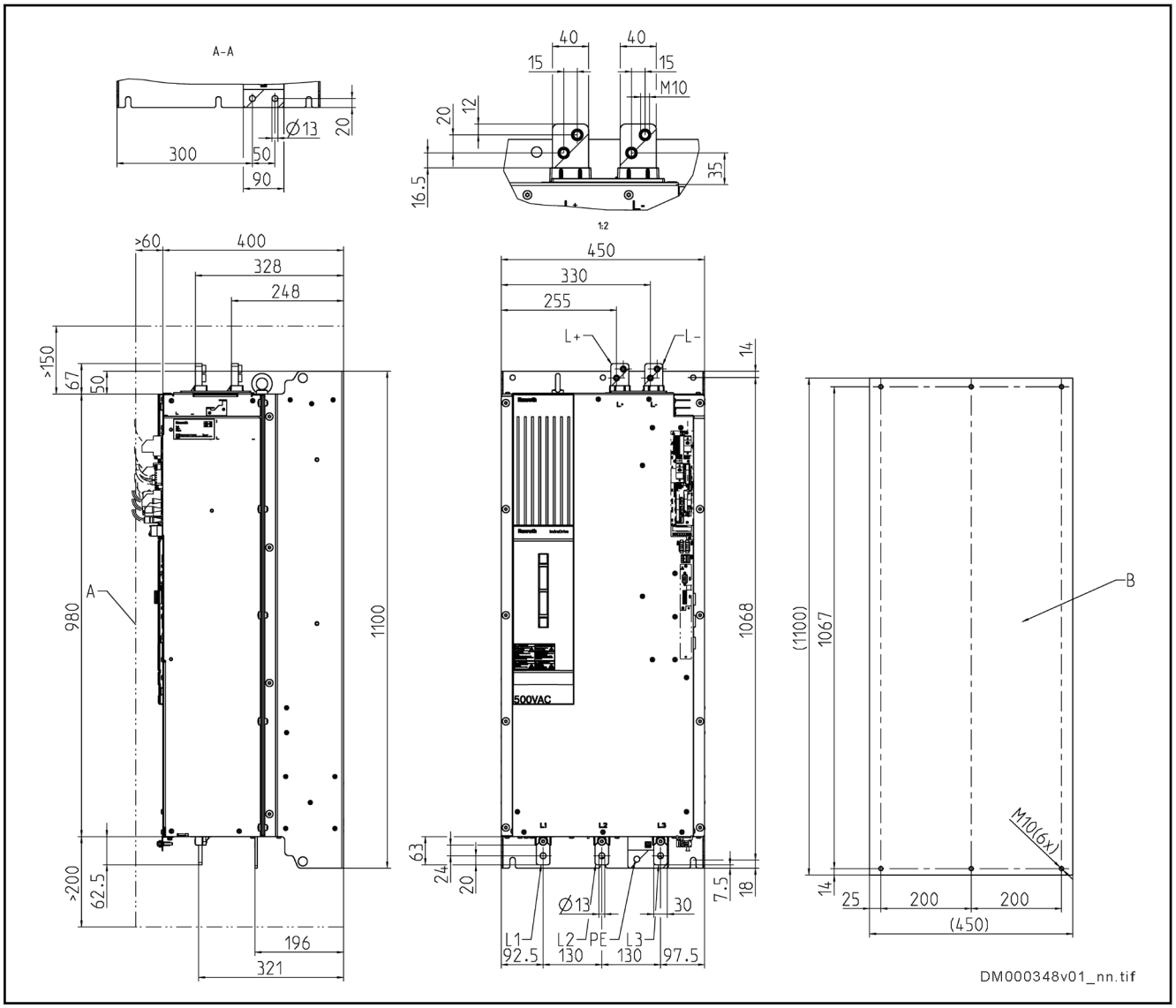


A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 4-40: HMU05.1N-F0540-1300

HMU05.1N-Wxxxx-xxxx

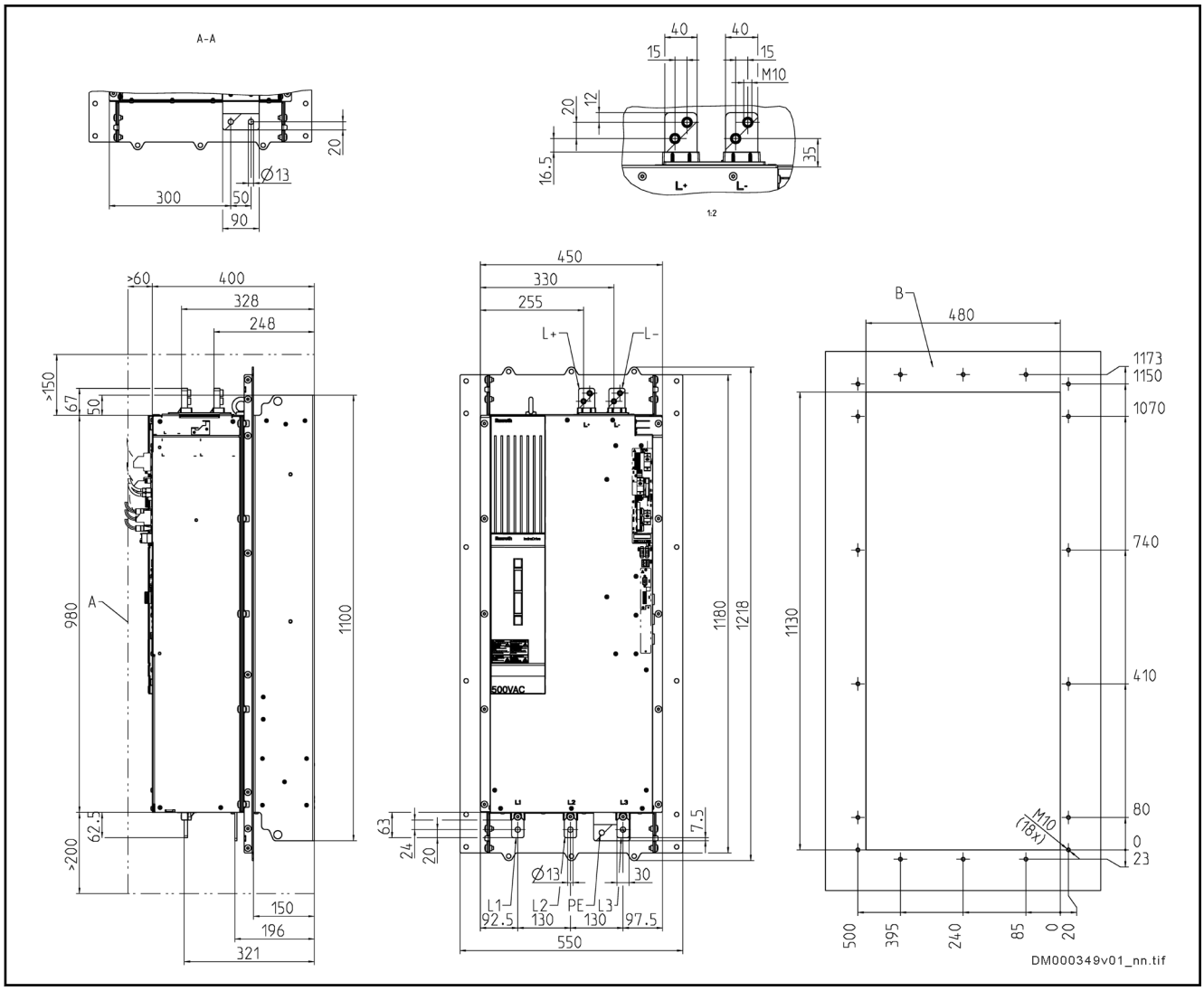
HMU05.1N-W0140, -W0170 (wall mounting)



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 4-41: HMU05.1N-W0140, -W0170 (wall mounting)

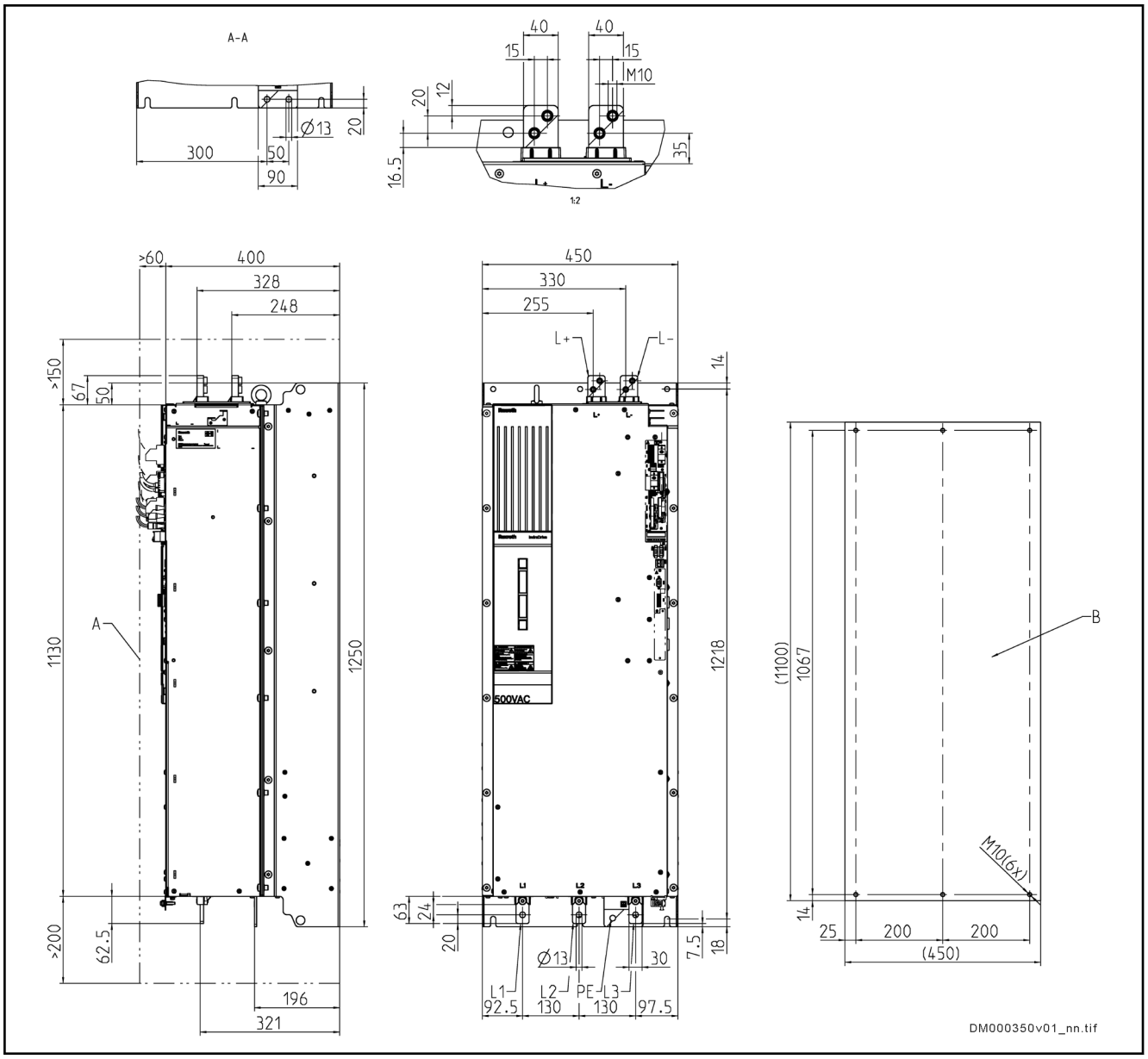
HMU05.1N-W0140, -W0170 (push-through mounting)



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 4-42: HMU05.1N-W0140, -W0170 (push-through mounting)

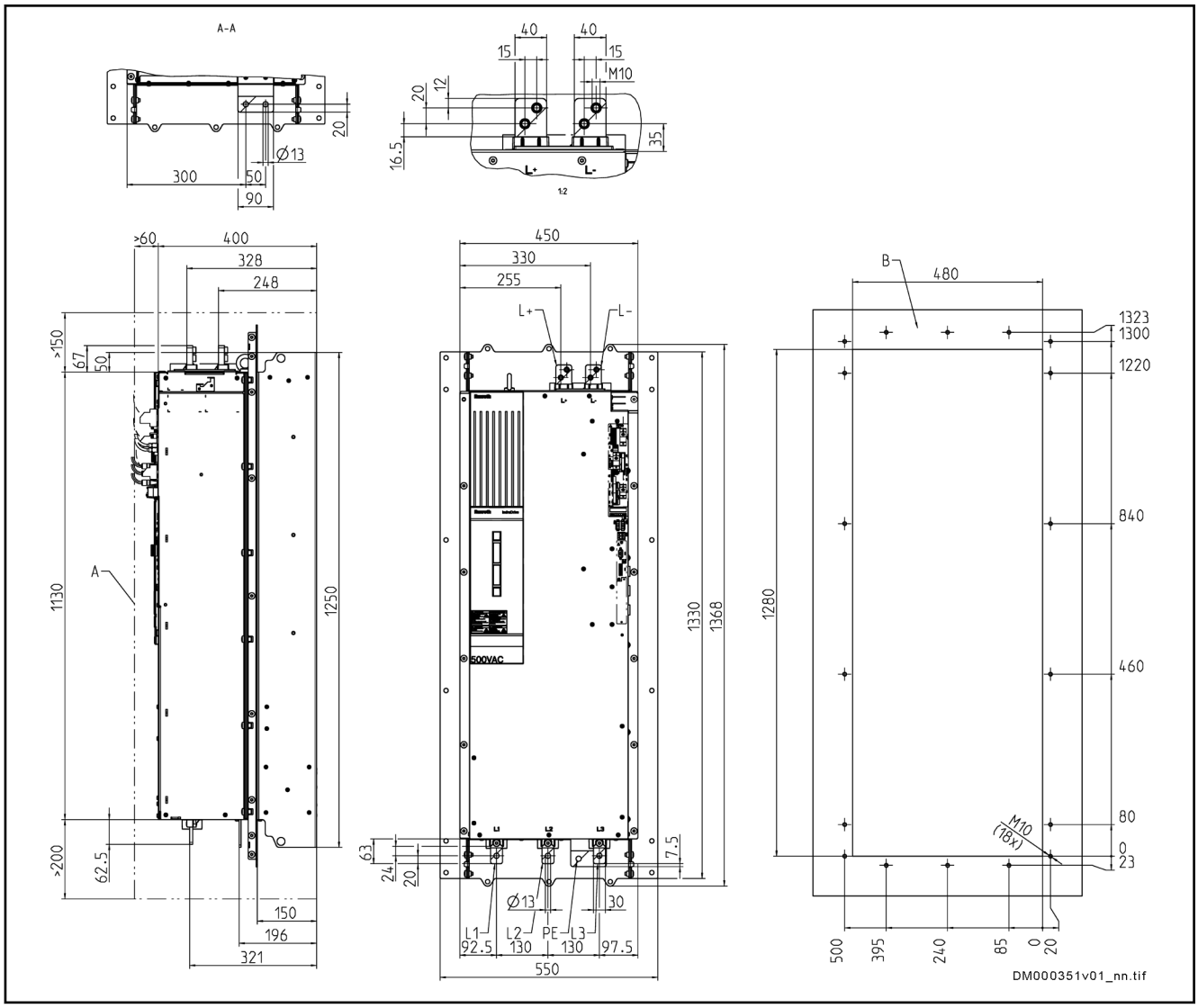
HMU05.1N-W0220 (wall mounting)



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 4-43: HMU05.1N-W0220 (wall mounting)

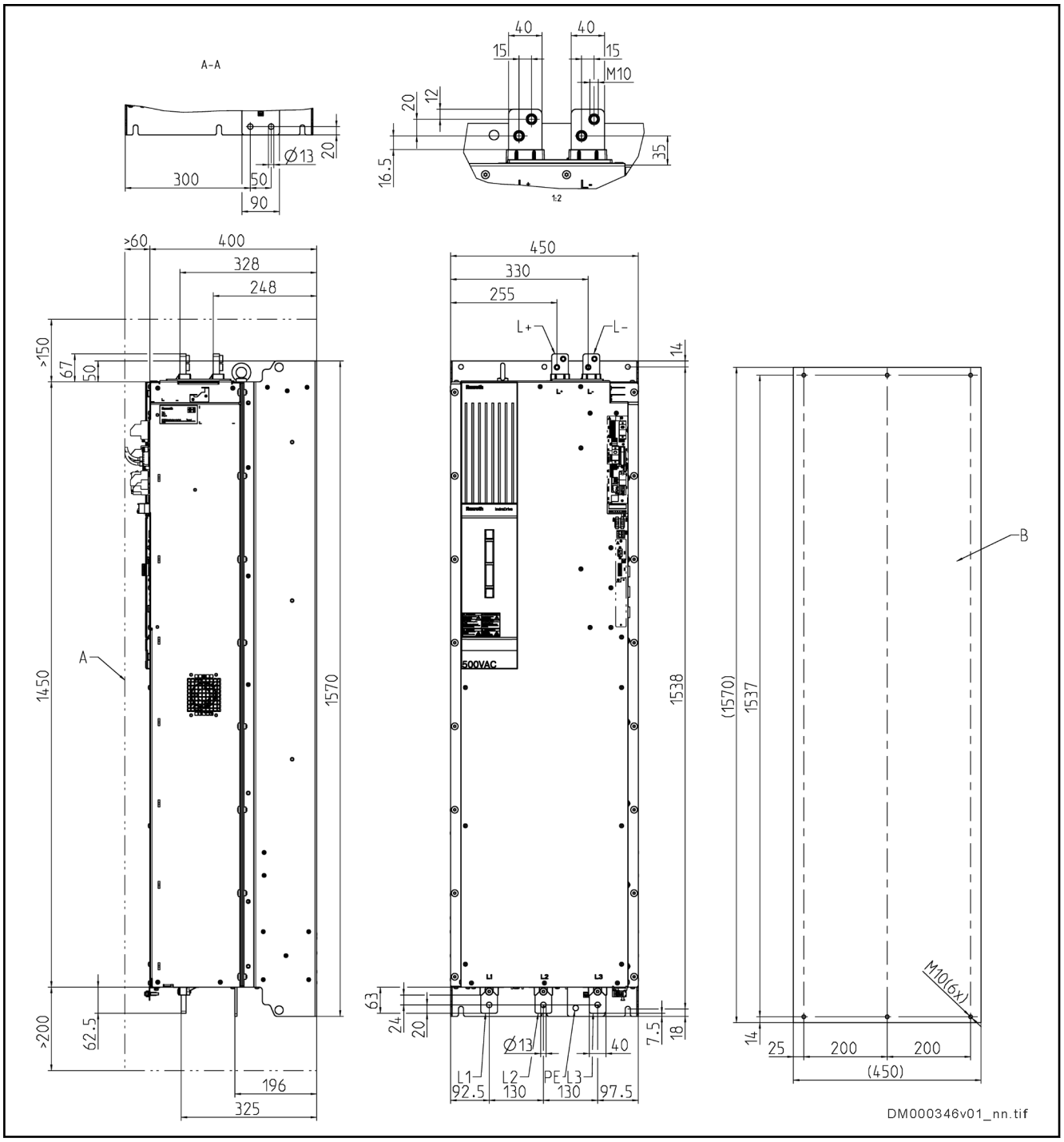
HMU05.1N-W0220 (push-through mounting)



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 4-44: HMU05.1N-W0220 (push-through mounting)

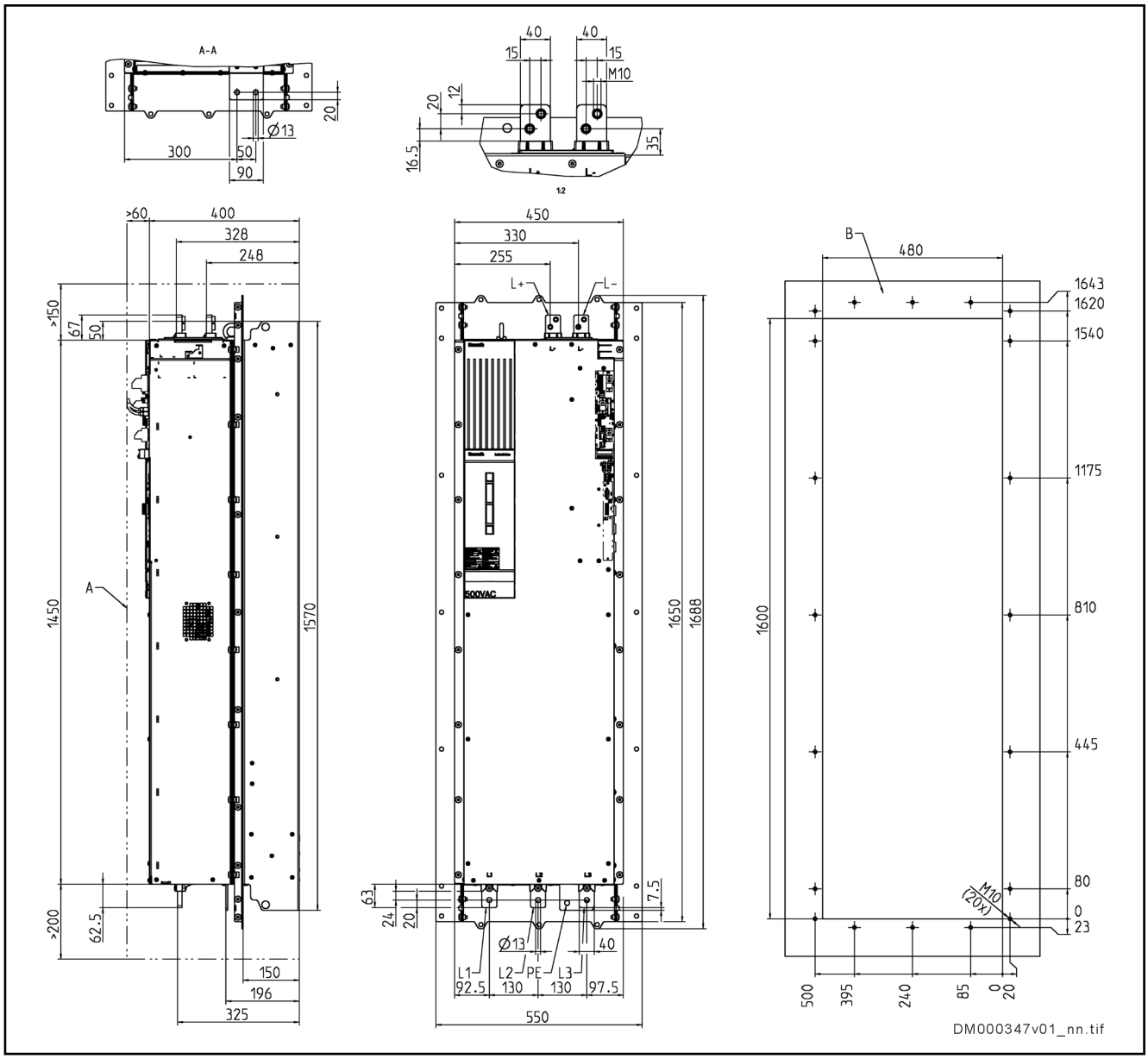
HMU05.1N-W0270, -W0340 (wall mounting)



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 4-45: HMU05.1N-W0270, -W0340 (wall mounting)

HMU05.1N-W0270, -W0340 (push-through mounting)



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 4-46: HMU05.1N-W0270, -W0340 (push-through mounting)

4.5.2 Dimensions, mass, insulation, sound pressure level

HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx

HMU05.1N-F… -A4-D7

Data for mass, dimensions, sound pressure level, insulation

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0350-N-A4-D7-N	HMU05.1N-F0170-0430-N-A4-D7-N	HMU05.1N-F0220-0510-N-A4-D7-N	HMU05.1N-F0270-0660-N-A4-D7-N
Mass	m	kg	51.00		58.00	65.00
Device height[1)]	H	mm	817		921	1025
Device depth[2)]	T	mm	440			
Device width[3)]	B	mm	200			
Insulation resistance at 500 V DC	R_{is}	Mohm	> 50			
Capacitance against housing	C_Y	nF	-			
Average sound pressure level (accuracy class 2) at P_{DC_cont}[4)]	L_P	dB (A)	-			

1) 2) 3) Housing dimension; see also related dimensional drawing
4) According to DIN EN ISO 11205; comparative value at 1 m distance, out of cabinet

Tab. 4-20: HMU - Data on mass, dimensions, sound pressure level and insulation

Data for mass, dimensions, sound pressure level, insulation

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0340-0820-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0430-1040-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-1300-N-A4-D7-P
Mass	m	kg	70.00	83.00	103.00
Device height[1)]	H	mm	1103	1311	1522
Device depth[2)]	T	mm	440		
Device width[3)]	B	mm	200		220
Insulation resistance at 500 V DC	R_{is}	Mohm	> 50		
Capacitance against housing	C_Y	nF	-		
Average sound pressure level (accuracy class 2) at P_{DC_cont}[4)]	L_P	dB (A)	-		

1) 2) 3) Housing dimension; see also related dimensional drawing
4) According to DIN EN ISO 11205; comparative value at 1 m distance, out of cabinet

Tab. 4-21: HMU - Data on mass, dimensions, sound pressure level and insulation

HMU05.1N-F… -A5-11

Data for mass, dimensions, sound pressure level, insulation

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0210-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0250-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0300-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0370-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0400-0600-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-0750-N-A5-11-P
Mass	m	kg	51.00		58.00		70.00	83.00
Device height[1)]	H	mm	817		921		1103	1311
Device depth[2)]	T	mm	440					
Device width[3)]	B	mm	200					
Insulation resistance at 500 V DC	R_{is}	Mohm	> 50					
Capacitance against housing	C_Y	nF	-					
Average sound pressure level (accuracy class 2) at P_{DC_cont}[4)]	L_P	dB (A)	-					

1) 2) 3) Housing dimension; see also related dimensional drawing
4) According to DIN EN ISO 11205; comparative value at 1 m distance, out of cabinet

Tab. 4-22: HMU - Data on mass, dimensions, sound pressure level and insulation

4.5.3 Temperatures, cooling, power dissipation, distances

HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx

Cooling and power dissipation data

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0350-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0430-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0510-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0660-N-A4-D7-P
Allowed mounting position			G1			
Allowed switching frequencies	f_s	kHz	Inverter: 2; 4; 8 Supply units: 3,8; 4,2			
Inverter switching frequency (nominal value)	f_{snenn}	kHz	4			
Power dissipation at I_{out_cont} = 0 A; $f_s = f_s$ (min.)[1)]	$P_{Diss_0A_fs\,min}$	W	230	250	270	320
Power dissipation when I_{out_cont} = 0 A; $f_s = f_s$ (rated)[1)]	$P_{Diss_0A_fs\,nenn}$	W	250	275	300	350
Power dissipation when I_{out_cont} = 0 A; $f_s = f_s$ (rated) (supply units)[1)]	$P_{Diss_0A_fs\,nenn_supply}$	W	250	275	300	350
Power dissipation at I_{out_cont} = 0 A; $f_s = f_s$ (max.)[2)]	$P_{Diss_0A_fs\,max}$	W	300	325	350	400

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0350-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0430-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0510-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0660-N-A4-D7-P
Power dissipation at continuous current and continuous DC bus power respectively[3)]	P_{Diss_cont}	W	2500	3000	4250	5500
Power dissipation at continuous current or continuous power (supply units)[3)]	$P_{Diss_cont_supply}$	W	2500	3000	4250	5500
Liquid cooling data						
Power dissipation ratio (liquid) at continuous current or continuous power	$P_{Diss_cont_F}$	W	2100	2500	3500	4500
Proportion of power dissipation (liquid) at continuous current or continuous power (supply units)	$P_{Diss_cont_F_supply}$	W	2100	2500	3500	4500
Coolant inlet temperature	T_{ein}	°C	< 40			
Minimum required coolant flow rate for $P_{Diss_cont_F}$	Q_{min}	l/min	4.5	5.4	7.3	9.2
Minimum required coolant flow rate for $P_{Diss_cont_F_supply}$ (supply units)	Q_{min_supply}	l/min	4.5	5.4	7.3	9.2
Temperature rise at Q_{min} and $P_{Diss_cont_F}$	ΔT	K	< 10			
Pressure drop for Q_{min}	ΔP	bar	0.4		0.5	
Maximum permissible operating pressure	p_{max}	bar	5.00			
Volume of core duct	V_{ch}	ml	609		667	724
Material of the core duct			Aluminum			
Constant for determining pressure drop	$K_{\Delta p}$		tbd			
Air cooling data						
Power dissipation ratio (air) at continuous current or continuous power	$P_{Diss_cont_A}$	W	400	500	750	1000
Power dissipation ratio (air) at continuous current or continuous power (supply units)	$P_{Diss_cont_A_supply}$	W	400	500	750	1000
Ambient temperature range for operation with nominal data	T_{a_work}	°C	0...40			
Ambient temperature range during operation with reduced nominal data	$T_{a_work_red}$	°C	0...55			

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0350-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0430-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0510-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0660-N-A4-D7-P
Utilization factor: Derating vs. Ambient temperature (Derating of P_{DC_cont}; P_{BD}; I_{out_cont} at $T_{a_work} < T_a < T_{a_work_red}$)	f_{Ta}	%/K	2.0			
Volumetric capacity of forced cooling	V	m^3/h	-			
Minimum distance on the top of the device[4)]	d_{top}	mm	100			
Minimum distance on the bottom of the device[5)]	d_{bot}	mm	100			
Temperature increase with minimum distances d_{bot}; d_{top}; P_{BD}	ΔT	K	10			

1) 2) Plus dissipation of braking resistor and control section; find intermediate values by interpolation to P_{Diss_cont}

3) Plus dissipation of braking resistor and control section

4) 5) See fig. "Air intake and air outlet at device"

Tab. 4-23: HMU - Data on cooling and power dissipation data

Cooling and power dissipation data

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0340-0820-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0430-1040-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-1300-N-A4-D7-P
Allowed mounting position			G1		
Allowed switching frequencies	f_s	kHz	Inverter: 2; 4; 8 Supply units: 3,8; 4,2		
Inverter switching frequency (nominal value)	f_{snenn}	kHz	2		
Power dissipation at I_{out_cont} = 0 A; $f_s = f_s$ (min.)[1)]	$P_{Diss_0A_fs\ min}$	W	350	400	450
Power dissipation when I_{out_cont} = 0 A; $f_s = f_s$ (rated)[1)]	$P_{Diss_0A_fs\ nenn}$	W	350	400	450
Power dissipation when I_{out_cont} = 0 A; $f_s = f_s$ (rated) (supply units)[1)]	$P_{Diss_0A_fs\ nenn_supply}$	W	400	450	500
Power dissipation at I_{out_cont} = 0 A; $f_s = f_s$ (max.)[2)]	$P_{Diss_0A_fs\ max}$	W	450	500	550
Power dissipation at continuous current and continuous DC bus power respectively[3)]	P_{Diss_cont}	W	5500	6500	8700
Power dissipation at continuous current or continuous power (supply units)[3)]	$P_{Diss_cont_supply}$	W	6000	7500	9500

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0340-0820-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0430-1040-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-1300-N-A4-D7-P
Liquid cooling data					
Power dissipation ratio (liquid) at continuous current or continuous power	$P_{Diss_cont_F}$	W	4500	5500	7500
Proportion of power dissipation (liquid) at continuous current or continuous power (supply units)	$P_{Diss_cont_F_supply}$	W	5000	6400	8200
Coolant inlet temperature	T_{ein}	°C	< 40		
Minimum required coolant flow rate for $P_{Diss_cont_F}$	Q_{min}	l/min	9	11.4	15.8
Minimum required coolant flow rate for $P_{Diss_cont_F_supply}$ (supply units)	Q_{min_supply}	l/min	9.5	12	16
Temperature rise at Q_{min} and $P_{Diss_cont_F}$	ΔT	K	< 10		
Pressure drop for Q_{min}	ΔP	bar	0.6	1	1.3
Maximum permissible operating pressure	p_{max}	bar	5.00		
Volume of core duct	V_{ch}	ml	851	966	1024
Material of the core duct			Aluminum		
Constant for determining pressure drop	$K_{\Delta p}$		tbd		
Air cooling data					
Power dissipation ratio (air) at continuous current or continuous power	$P_{Diss_cont_A}$	W	1000		1200
Power dissipation ratio (air) at continuous current or continuous power (supply units)	$P_{Diss_cont_A_supply}$	W	1000	1100	1300
Ambient temperature range for operation with nominal data	T_{a_work}	°C	0...40		
Ambient temperature range during operation with reduced nominal data	$T_{a_work_red}$	°C	0...55		
Utilization factor: Derating vs. Ambient temperature (Derating of P_{DC_cont}; P_{BD}; I_{out_cont} at $T_{a_work} < T_a < T_{a_work_red}$)	f_{Ta}	%/K	2.0		
Volumetric capacity of forced cooling	V	m^3/h	-		
Minimum distance on the top of the device[4)]	d_{top}	mm	100		

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0340-0820-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0430-1040-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-1300-N-A4-D7-P
Minimum distance on the bottom of the device[5)]	d_{bot}	mm	100		
Temperature increase with minimum distances d_{bot}; d_{top}; P_{BD}	ΔT	K	10		

1) 2) Plus dissipation of braking resistor and control section; find intermediate values by interpolation to P_{Diss_cont}
3) Plus dissipation of braking resistor and control section
4) 5) See fig. "Air intake and air outlet at device"

Tab. 4-24: HMU - Data on cooling and power dissipation data

Cooling and power dissipation data

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0210-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0250-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0300-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0370-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0400-0600-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-0750-N-A5-11-P
Allowed mounting position			G1					
Allowed switching frequencies	f_s	kHz	Inverter: 2; 4; 8 Supply units: 3,8; 4,2					
Inverter switching frequency (nominal value)	f_{snenn}	kHz	4			2		
Power dissipation at I_{out_cont} = 0 A; f_s = f_s (min.)[1)]	$P_{Diss_0A_fs\ min}$	W	90				150	1150
Power dissipation when I_{out_cont} = 0 A; f_s = f_s (rated)[1)]	$P_{Diss_0A_fs\ nenn}$	W	170			90	150	1150
Power dissipation when I_{out_cont} = 0 A; f_s = f_s (rated) (supply units)[1)]	$P_{Diss_0A_fs\ nenn_supply}$	W	180				310	2390
Power dissipation at I_{out_cont} = 0 A; f_s = f_s (max.)[2)]	$P_{Diss_0A_fs\ max}$	W	330				588	4560
Power dissipation at continuous current and continuous DC bus power respectively[3)]	P_{Diss_cont}	W	3850	4460	5670	5970	6730	12080
Power dissipation at continuous current or continuous power (supply units)[3)]	$P_{Diss_cont_supply}$	W	3270	3910	4810	6130	8480	13560
Liquid cooling data								
Power dissipation ratio (liquid) at continuous current or continuous power	$P_{Diss_cont_F}$	W	3660	4240	5410	5670	6400	11480
Proportion of power dissipation (liquid) at continuous current or continuous power (supply units)	$P_{Diss_cont_F_supply}$	W	3110	3720	4570	5830	8060	12880

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0210-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0250-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0300-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0370-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0400-0600-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-0750-N-A5-11-P
Coolant inlet temperature	T_{ein}	°C	< 40					
Minimum required coolant flow rate for $P_{Diss_cont_F}$	Q_{min}	l/min	5.8	6.8	8.7	9.2	10.3	18.5
Minimum required coolant flow rate for $P_{Diss_cont_F_supply}$ (supply units)	Q_{min_supply}	l/min	5	6	7.4	9.4	13	19
Temperature rise at Q_{min} and $P_{Diss_cont_F}$	ΔT	K	< 10					
Pressure drop for Q_{min}	ΔP	bar	0.3		0.4		0.5	1.2
Maximum permissible operating pressure	p_{max}	bar	5.00					
Volume of core duct	V_{ch}	ml	609		667		851	966
Material of the core duct			Aluminum					
Constant for determining pressure drop	$K_{\Delta p}$		tbd					
Air cooling data								
Power dissipation ratio (air) at continuous current or continuous power	$P_{Diss_cont_A}$	W	190	220	260	300	330	600
Power dissipation ratio (air) at continuous current or continuous power (supply units)	$P_{Diss_cont_A_supply}$	W	160	190	240	300	420	680
Ambient temperature range for operation with nominal data	T_{a_work}	°C	0...40					
Ambient temperature range during operation with reduced nominal data	$T_{a_work_red}$	°C	0...55					
Utilization factor: Derating vs. Ambient temperature (Derating of P_{DC_cont}; P_{BD}; I_{out_cont} at $T_{a_work} < T_a < T_{a_work_red}$)	f_{Ta}	%/K	2.0					
Volumetric capacity of forced cooling	V	m^3/h	-					
Minimum distance on the top of the device[4)]	d_{top}	mm	100					

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1 N- F0140-0 210-N- A5-11-P	HMU05.1 N- F0170-0 250-N- A5-11-P	HMU05.1 N- F0220-0 300-N- A5-11-P	HMU05.1 N- F0270-0 370-N- A5-11-P	HMU05.1 N- F0400-0 600-N- A5-11-P	HMU05.1 N- F0540-0 750-N- A5-11-P
Minimum distance on the bottom of the device[5)]	d_{bot}	mm	100					
Temperature increase with minimum distances d_{bot}; d_{top}; P_{BD}	ΔT	K	10					

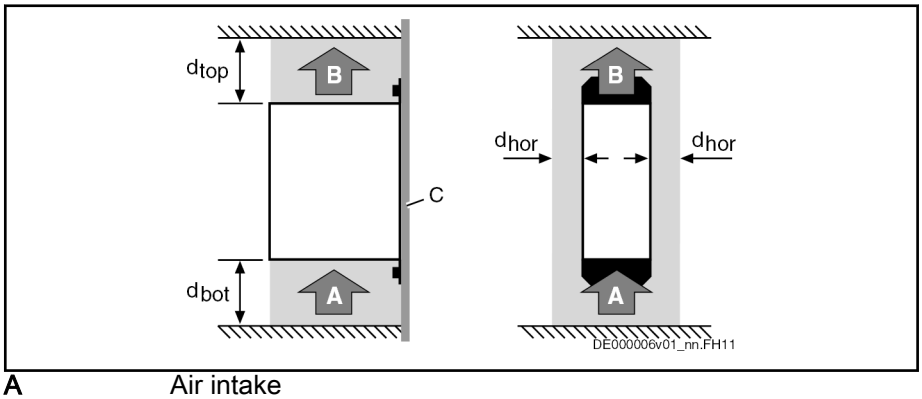
1) 2) Plus dissipation of braking resistor and control section; find intermediate values by interpolation to P_Diss_cont
3) Plus dissipation of braking resistor and control section
4) 5) See fig. "Air intake and air outlet at device"
Tab. 4-25: HMU - Data on cooling and power dissipation data

NOTICE **Property damage due to temperatures higher than 105 °C!**

Observe the indicated minimum distances!

Above the devices there may only be such materials which

- are not combustible
- are insensitive to the occurring high temperatures



A Air intake
B Air outlet
C Mounting surface in control cabinet
d_{top} Distance top
d_{bot} Distance bottom
d_{hor} Distance horizontal
Fig. 4-47: Air intake and air outlet at device

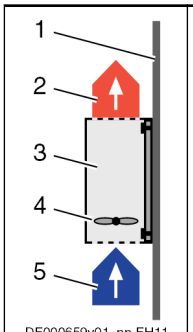
4.5.4 Mounting positions of components

NOTICE **Risk of damage to the components by incorrect mounting position!**

Only operate the components in their allowed mounting positions.

For supply units and drive controllers installed in control cabinets, only the mounting position G1 is allowed.

Mounting position G1



The air that is heated inside the component can flow out of the component in a vertical upward direction. The natural convection supports the forced cooling air current. This avoids the generation of pockets of heat in the component.

1. Mounting surface in control cabinet
2. Outgoing, heated air
3. Component
4. Fan within the component (forces the cooling air current)
5. Cooling air

Tab. 4-26: Mounting position G1

4.6 Electrical project planning

4.6.1 Overall connection diagram (HMU05 as drive controller)

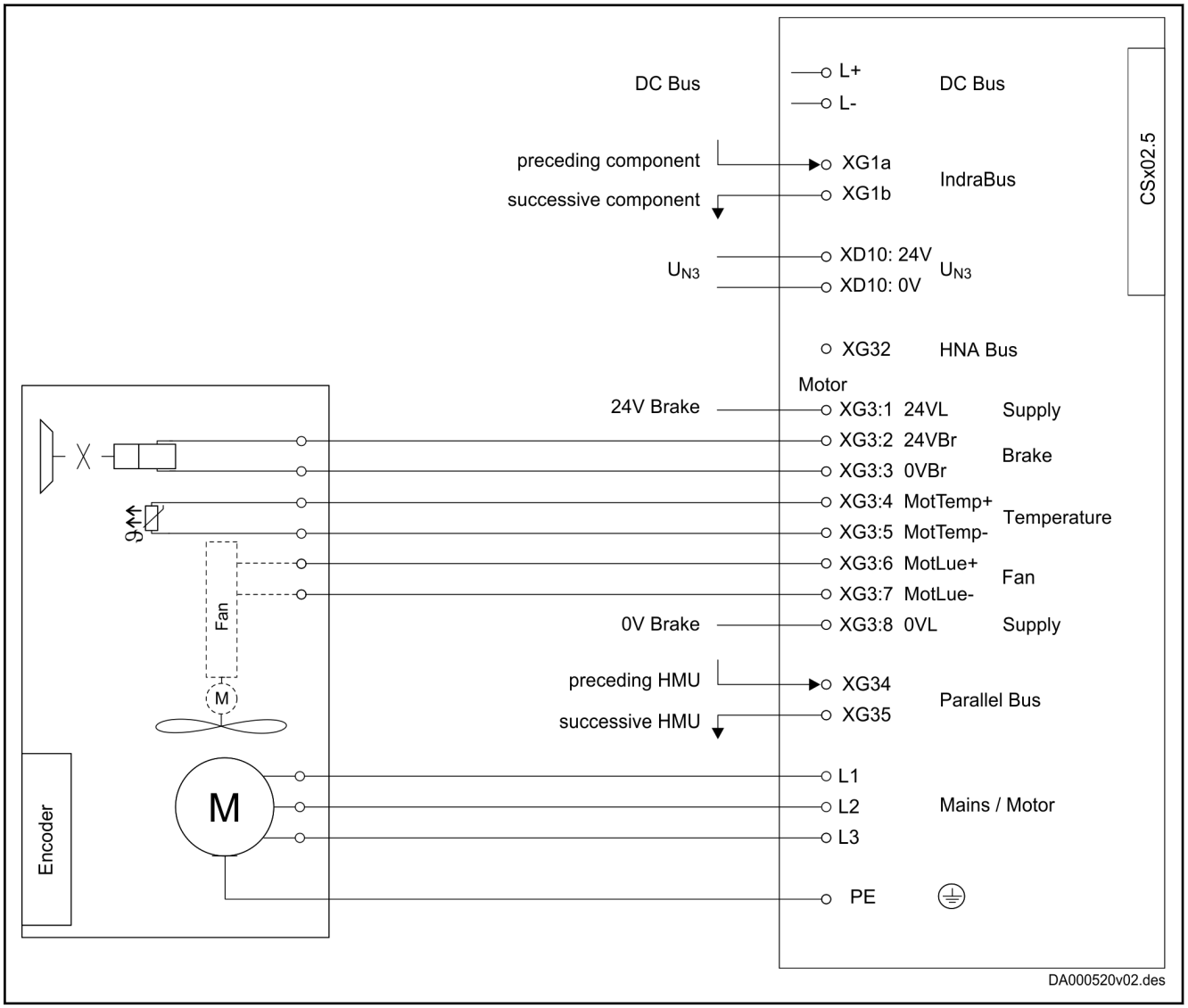


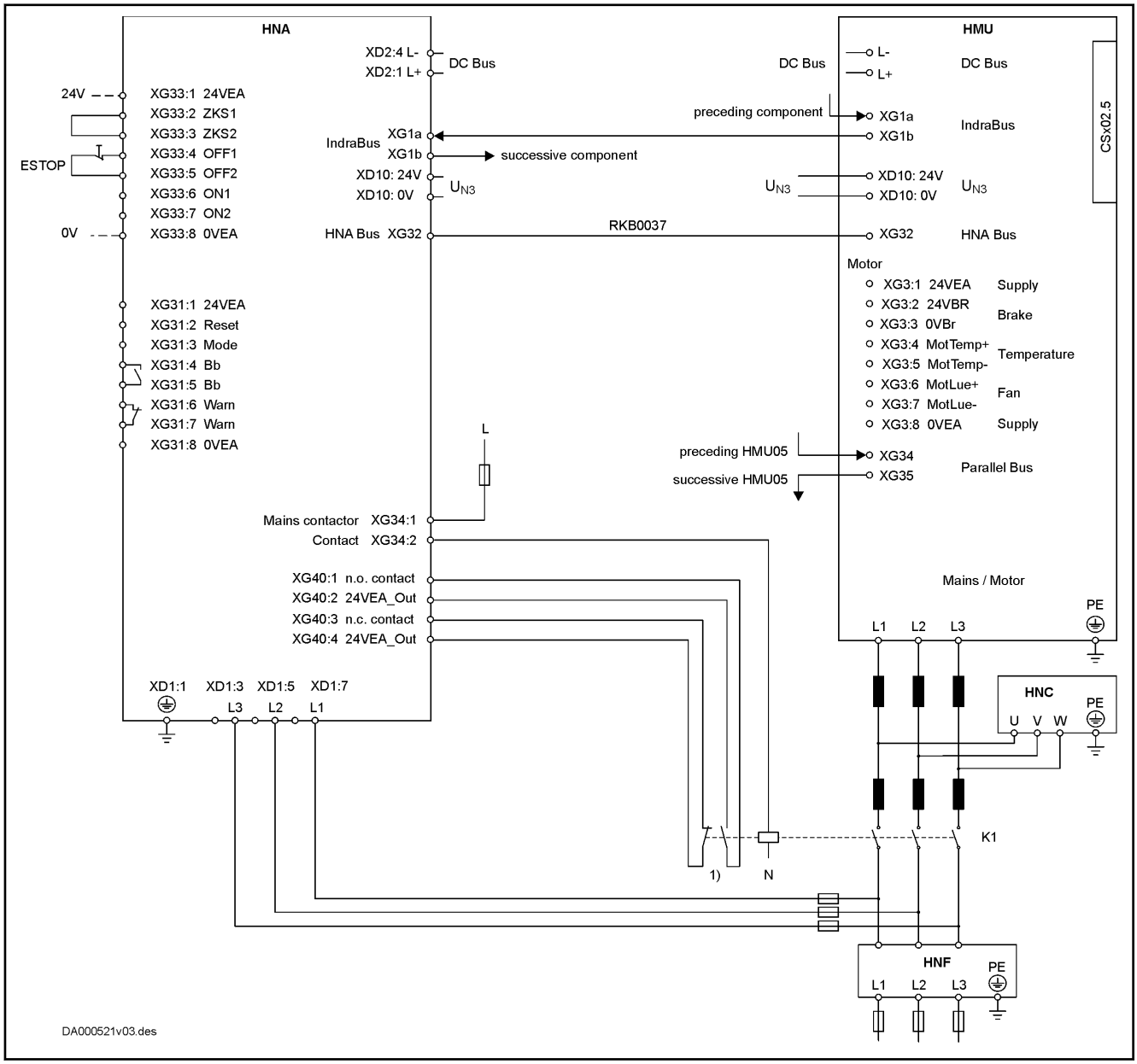
Fig. 4-48: Connection diagram (HMU05 as drive controller)

4.6.2 Overall connection diagram (HMU05 as supply unit)

Overall connection diagram with load contactor

For your drive system, preferably use the connection with a load contactor pictured here (instead of the connection with a controllable main switch).

XG33 (HNA) must also be wired if the supply unit is controlled via the communication.



1) With multiple contactors connected in parallel, connect the N/O contacts and N/C contacts in series.

K1 Load contactor

Fig. 4-49: Connection diagram with load contactor (HMU05 as supply unit)

HLT05

Connection diagram with HLT05:

See chapter "HLT05 / HNA05 / HMU05" on page 352.

Reactive power, reactive current

Reactive power: chapter 11.2 "Reactive power" on page 627.

HNC05 reactive current: chapter "Reactive current" on page 234

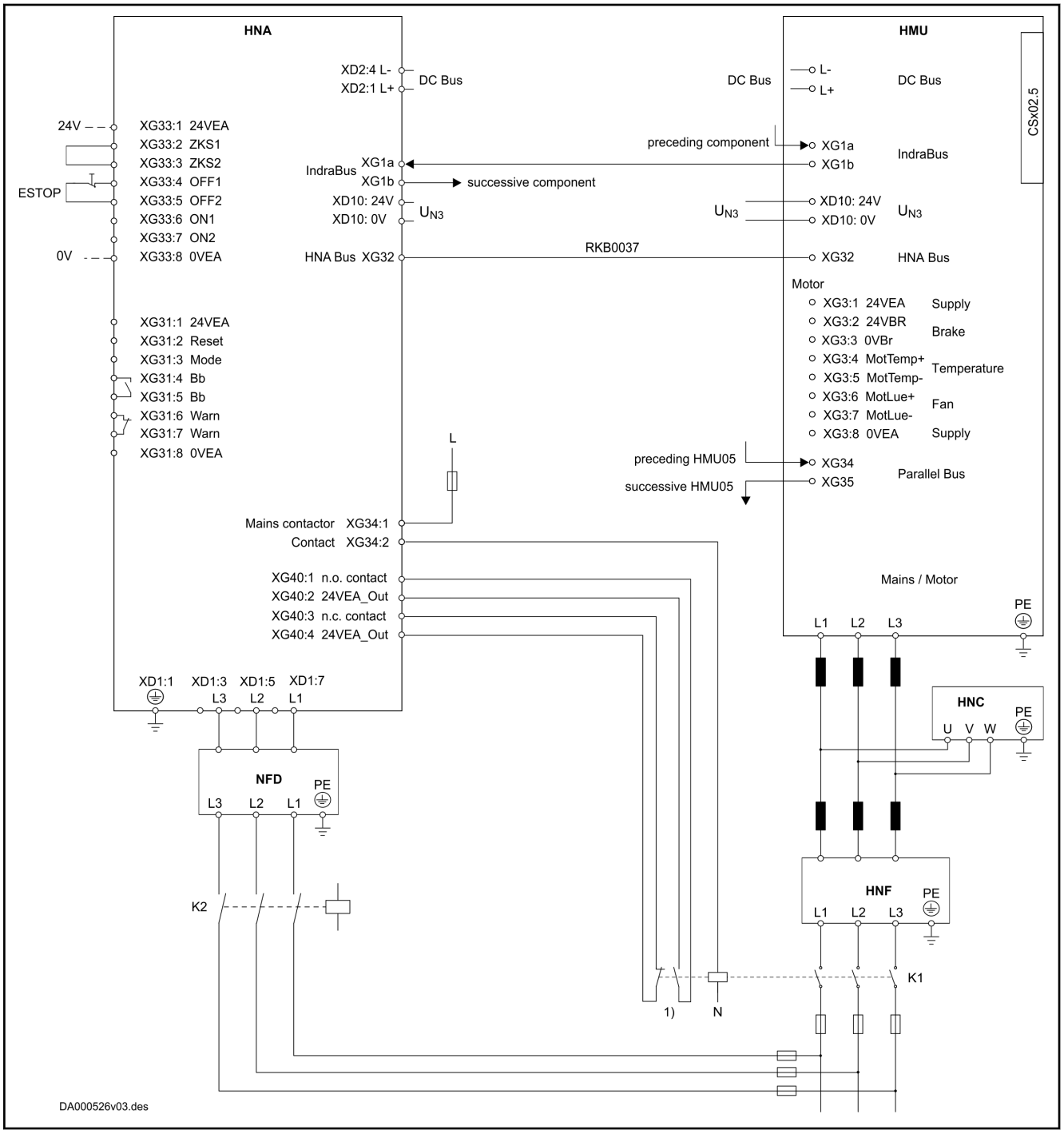
HNF05 reactive current: chapter "Reactive current with supply unit locked" on page 247

Overall connection diagram with a controllable main switch

☞ For your drive system, preferably use the connection with a load contactor (instead of the connection with a controllable main switch).

☞ Transient oscillation processes between HNC and mains inductance can occur when the main switch is turned on. Therefore, select an appropriate main switch.

☞ Observe the local regulations regarding EMC and standards.



1) With multiple main switches connected in parallel, connect the N/O contacts and N/C contacts in series.

K1 Main switch

K2 Auxiliary switch

Fig. 4-50: Connection diagram with controllable main switch (HMU05 as supply unit)

4.6.3 Project planning of control voltage

Control voltage for drive systems

Some components of a drive system have to be supplied with control voltage. For the project planning of the control voltage supply, observe the requirements of the drive system components:

- **Allowed tolerances of the supply voltage** depending on the motor cable length and the use of motor holding brakes
- Power consumption of the **drive controllers**
- Power consumption of **other loads** (e.g., motor holding brakes, digital outputs)
- **Current carrying capacity of the connection point** for control voltage supply at the component for the purpose of looping through the control voltage to other components

Sizing the control voltage supply

Determining the power requirement

Power requirement of the drive controller

The **total power requirement** of the control voltage supply of a drive controller results from the sum of the following power values:

- Basic device (drive controller without connected encoders)
- Optional connection interfaces (e.g. communication, additional encoder evaluation)
- Connected encoder systems
- External loads

For the configuration of your drive controller, please see the type plate and the type code.

Power requirement of the base device

The power requirement of the base device is determined by

- The maximum current of the drive controller
- Inrush current of drive controller
- The control section design (data: see Project Planning Manual for control section)

See chapter 7.2.1 "Control voltage" on page 147.

Power requirements of the optional connection points

If the drive controller has optional connection points, the power requirement of the base device increases. (Data: See the Project Planning Manual of the control section)

Power requirements of the external loads

External loads include, for example,

- Motor encoder system
- Motor holding brake
- Load at a digital output

The drive controller has to supply the external loads with power.

Table 3: Power requirements of the external loads

External load	Power requirement
5-V encoder system	$P = I_{Encoder} \times 5\ V \times 1.75$ [1), 5)]
12-V encoder system	$P = I_{Encoder} \times 12\ V \times 1.25$ [1), 5)]
Load at digital output	$P = I_{Load} \times U_{N3}$ [2), 4)]
Motor holding brake	$P = I_{Brake} \times U_{N3}$ [3), 4)]

1) $I_{Encoder}$: Current consumption of the encoder system
2) T_{load}: Current consumption of the external load
3) I_{Brake} : Current consumption of the motor holding brake
4) U_{N3} : Control voltage supply of the drive controller
5) The sum of the power consumptions of all connected encoder systems incl. encoder emulation cannot exceed **6 W**.

Tab. 4-27: Power requirements of the external loads

Calculation formula

The total power consumption ($_{PN3}$) from the 24-V control voltage of a drive controller is calculated as follows:

$P_{N3} = P_{base\ device} + \Sigma P_{optional\ connection\ points} + \Sigma P_{external\ loads}$

Requirements on the 24V power supply unit

PELV[1)] for 24V power supply unit

For the 24 V supply of the devices of the IndraDrive ML drive family, use a power supply unit or a control-power transformer with protection by PELV according to IEC 60204-1 (section 6.4).

Within the scope of CSA/UL, a UL508/UL61800-certified power supply unit has to be used.

The following **characteristic values** contain the essential electrical requirements on the 24 V power supply unit:

- **Output voltage** or output voltage range
- **Continuous power** the 24 V power supply unit has to supply during operation
- **Peak current** the 24 V power supply unit has to supply when switching on
- **Inrush current** which the 24 V power supply unit has to supply when switching on

Required continuous power

The continuous power of the 24 V power supply unit has to be greater than the sum of the power consumptions P_{N3} of the components to be supplied.

To select the 24V power supply unit, determine the continuous current I_{N3} of all components:

$I_{N3} = P_{N3} / U_{N3}$

(P_{N3} : power consumption of all components)

1) Protective Extra-Low Voltage

The calculated current I_{N3} corresponds to the continuous current of the 24 V power supply unit.

The power consumption is specified as the maximum value of the respective component and can occur at **individual components**.

In drive systems with **multiple components**, the occurring power consumption under statistical assumptions will be lower than the calculated one.

Required peak current

When the 24V control voltage is switched on, the 24V power supply unit is loaded with the charging current of the capacitors of the connected components. This charging current is electronically limited in the components.

The required peak current of the power supply unit is calculated with:

$I_{PeakCurrent_PowerSupplyUnit} = 1.2 \times P_{N3} / U_{N3}$

(P_{N3} : power consumption of all components)

The power supply unit has to provide the calculated peak current $I_{PeakCurrent_PowerSupplyUnit}$ for at least one second.

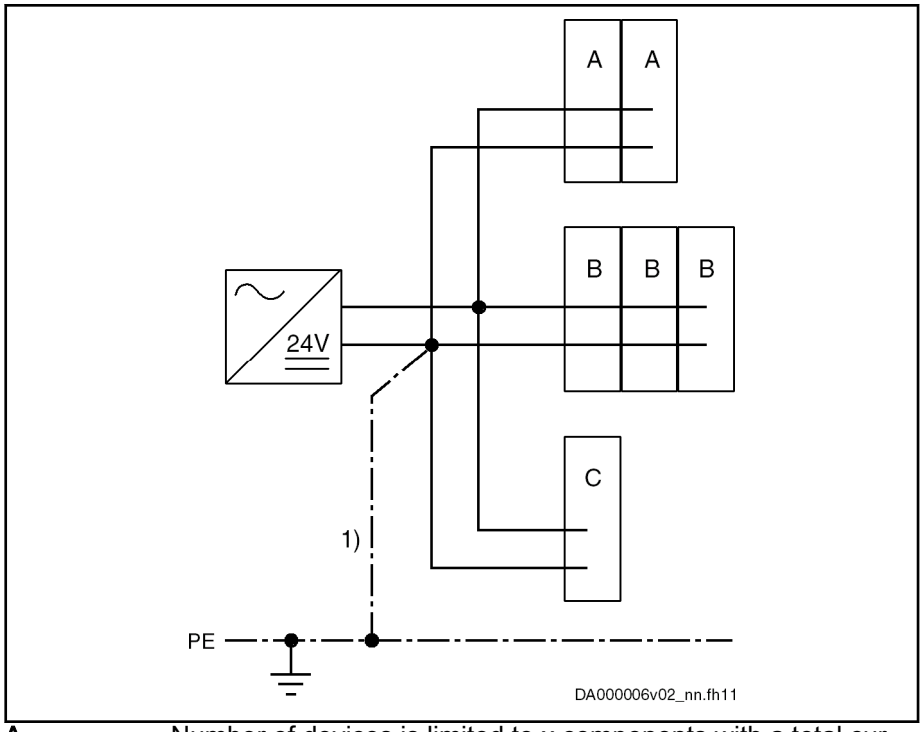
Required inrush current

See chapter 7.2.1 "Control voltage" on page 147

Installing the 24 V supply

Installation instructions

- The 24 V supply of the IndraDrive ML system components should be installed in a **star** layout. Therefore, run separate supply lines for each group of drive controllers or third-party components. This, too, applies to multiple-line arrangement in the case of supply from a supply unit, for example.
- Run lines with sufficiently dimensioned line cross sections to reduce load-dependent voltage drops.
- For looping through the control voltage, observe the maximum current carrying capacity of the connection points. The maximum current carrying capacity limits the number of devices to which the control voltage can be looped through.



A Number of devices is limited to x components with a total current consumption of < 40 A (in accordance with UL: 31 A).
B Number of devices is limited to y components with a total current consumption of < 40 A (in accordance with UL: 31 A).
C Third-party component (e.g., PLC, valve etc.)
1) Connection to central ground point (e.g., earth-circuit connector PE)

Fig. 4-51: Installing the 24 V supply

If you use multiple 24V power supply units:

- Output voltages of the 24 V power supply units have to be within the allowed voltage range
- Interconnect 0 V reference conductors of the individual 24 V power supply units with low impedance
- Always switch 24V power supply units on and off synchronously

Chronological order of 24 V supply and mains voltage

Before mains voltage or DC bus voltage is applied to the components, they have to be supplied by the 24V supply.

Looping through the control voltage

NOTICE **Property damage in case of error from line cross section being too small!**

Comply with the current carrying capacity of the connection points for control voltage supply at the components used.

You are only allowed loop through the control voltage between the components, if the **sum** of current consumptions ΣI_{N3} of the individual components is smaller than **40 A** (in accordance with UL: 31 A) (current carrying capacity of the connection point XD10).

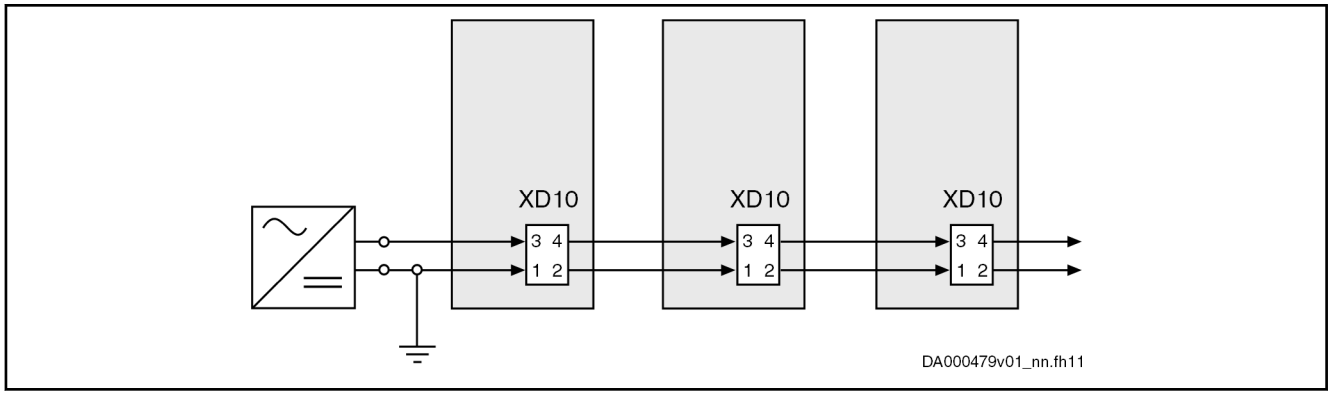


Fig. 4-52: Looping through the control voltage

Exemplary calculation for 3 drive controllers:

$$I_D = 3 \times \frac{P_{N3}}{U_{N3}}$$

Fig. 4-53: Continuous current

The result I_D has to be smaller than the specified current carrying capacity of the connection point.

4.6.4 Mains connection

Residual-current-operated circuit breakers (RCD, RCCB) as additional fusing

General information

The following designations are used for residual-current-operated circuit breakers:

- RCCB (Residual-Current-Operated Circuit Breaker)
- RCD (Residual-Current-Operated Device)
- RCM (Residual-Current Monitoring Device)
- Earth-leakage circuit breaker (voltage-independent)
- Residual-current circuit breaker (voltage-dependent)

☞ It is only to a limited extent that residual-current-operated circuit breakers can be used with IndraDrive ML systems.

If these circuit breakers are to be used, the company erecting the installation has to check the mutual compatibility of the residual-current-operated circuit breakers and installation or machine with the drive system, in order to avoid accidental triggering of the residual-current-operated circuit breaker. This has to be taken into account

- for switch-on processes, due to high asymmetric inrush currents and
- during operation of the installation, due to leakage currents produced in normal operation.

Cause of leakage currents

For the purpose of stepless speed variation with a high degree of positioning accuracy and dynamic response, certain modulation procedures are necessary for drive systems. For physical reasons, these modulation procedures give rise to inevitable leakage current produced during normal operation. Es-

pecially with unbalanced loads of the mains phases or a large number of drives it can easily reach some amperes (rms value).

The leakage current is not sinusoidal but pulse-shaped. For this reason, measuring instruments normally sized for alternating currents in the range of 50 Hz are not suited. Use measuring instruments with rms value measuring ranges.

The degree of leakage current depends on the following features of the installation:

- Type of inrush current limitation
- Number, type and size of drives used
- Length and cross section of connected motor power cables
- Grounding conditions of the mains at the site of installation
- Unbalance of the three-phase network
- Types of filters and chokes connected in the incoming circuit
- EMC measures that are taken

If measures are taken to improve the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) of the installation (mains filters, shielded lines), the leakage current in the ground wire is inevitably increased, especially when switching on or in the case of mains unbalance. Given these operating conditions, residual-current-operated circuit breakers can trigger without an error having occurred.

The EMC measures are mainly based on capacitive short-circuiting of the interference currents within the drive system. Inductive filter measures can reduce the leakage currents, but affect the dynamic response of the drive and bring about

- higher construction volume
- higher weight
- expensive core material

Possibilities of use

Motor cable lengths

Keep the motor cables as short as possible. Only short motor cables make low leakage currents possible and thereby enable residual-current-operated circuit breakers to work.

Types of residual-current-operated circuit breakers

There are two types of residual-current-operated circuit breakers:

1. **Residual-current-operated circuit breakers sensitive to power pulse current** (type A acc. to IEC 60755)

   These are normally used. However, it is only pulsating direct fault currents of a maximum of 5 mA and sinusoidal alternating fault currents that they switch off safely. This is why they are not allowed for devices that can generate smoothed direct fault currents. In the case of smoothed direct fault currents that can be produced in power supply units, mains rectifiers and drive controllers with power converters in B6 circuit, the residual-current-operated circuit breaker is not triggered. This blocks the triggering of a residual-current-operated circuit breaker sensitive to power pulse current in the case of ground contact, i.e. in the case of error.

   Residual-current-operated circuit breakers sensitive to power pulse current do not provide any protection against inadmissible contact voltage.

2. **Residual-current-operated circuit breakers sensitive to universal current** (type B acc. to IEC 60755)

These circuit breakers are suited for smoothed direct fault currents, too, and safely switch off devices with B6 input rectifiers.

If a current with 30 mA triggers the residual-current-operated circuit breaker, it is possible to use a residual-current-operated circuit breaker with a higher tripping current for machine protection.

If this residual-current-operated circuit breaker triggers accidentally, too, check in how far the above conditions and dependencies can be improved (for example, by connecting current-compensated mains chokes in the incoming circuit, increasing the inrush current limitation).

Using isolating transformer to reduce leakage current in mains

If no improvement is achieved and the residual-current-operated circuit breaker, due to specific mains conditions on site, has to be used nevertheless on the mains input side, connect an isolating transformer between mains connection and power connection of the drive system. This reduces the leakage current in the ground wire of the mains that is produced during normal operation which allows the residual-current-operated circuit breaker to be used. Connect the neutral point of the secondary winding of the isolating transformer to the equipment grounding conductor of the drive system.

Adjust the ground-fault loop impedance to the overcurrent protective device so that the unit can be switched off in the case of failure.

Before operating enable, check the correct function of the overcurrent protection device including activation in the case of failure.

Exclusive fusing by residual-current-operated circuit breaker

For drive systems with electronic drive controllers, exclusive protection by means of a residual-current-operated circuit breaker normally is not possible and not allowed.

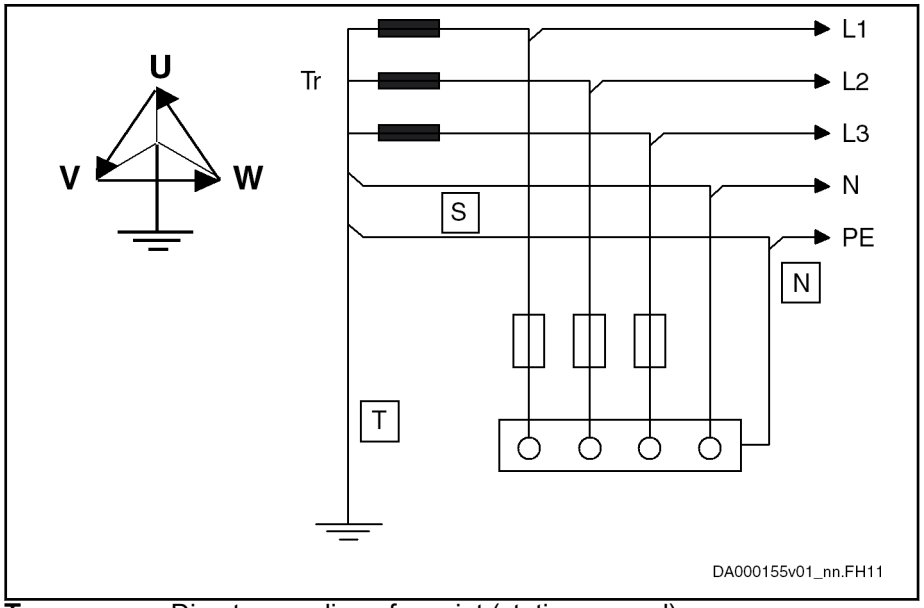
Electronic equipment that has a nominal power higher than 4 kVA or is destined for permanent connection normally does not need residual-current-operated circuit breakers. Observe the country-specific standards.

According to IEC 60204-1 and IEC 61800-5-1, the mains-side protection against indirect contact, i.e. in the case of insulation failure, has to be provided in a different way, for example by means of an overcurrent protection device, protective grounding, protective-conductor system, protective separation or total insulation.

Mains types

TN-S mains type

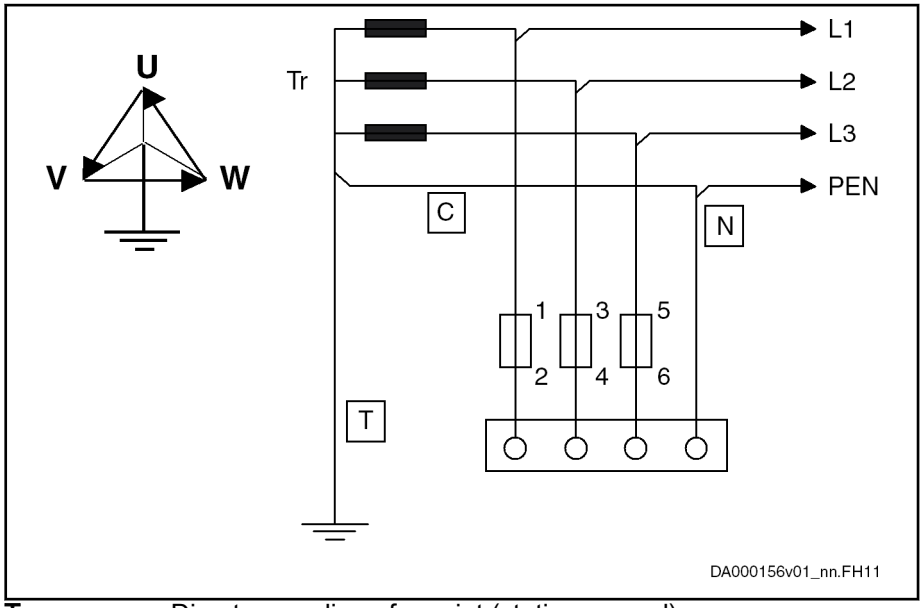
The TN-S mains type is the usual mains type in Europe.



T = Direct grounding of a point (station ground)
N = Exposed conductive parts directly connected to station ground
S = Separate neutral conductor and equipment grounding conductor in entire mains

Fig. 4-54: TN-S mains type

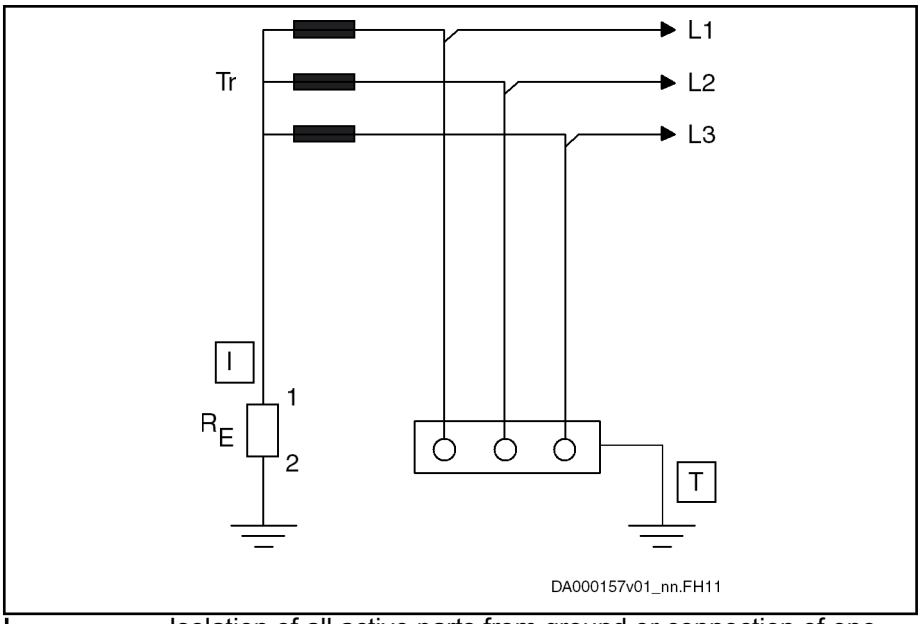
TN-C mains type



T = Direct grounding of a point (station ground)
N = Exposed conductive parts directly connected to station ground
C = Neutral conductor and equipment grounding conductor functions in entire mains combined in a single conductor, the PEN conductor.

Fig. 4-55: TN-C mains type

IT mains type



I Isolation of all active parts from ground or connection of one point to ground via an R_E impedance

T Exposed conductive parts directly grounded, independent of grounding of current source (station ground)

Fig. 4-56: IT mains type

Notes on project planning

If you would like to do project planning for installations at the IT-mains, it is absolutely necessary that you consult Rexroth.

NOTICE **Risk of damage to the devices by voltage flashovers!**

For applications with static charging (e.g., printing, packaging) and operation at **IT mains type**, use an **isolating transformer** with $U_K \leq 2.5\%$.

NOTICE **Risk of damage to the devices by voltage increase in the case of ground fault!**

If a "ground fault" occurs in the IT mains type, the voltages against ground (device housing) acting on the device are higher than in error-free operation.

Where applicable, the "ground fault" in the IT mains type is only possible **temporarily** with the IndraDrive components.

- **"Mains-side ground fault":**

  If a "ground fault" occurs, it is **not** possible to continue operating mains capacitors (HNC) of the 400 V series with ground capacitors (HNC05.1…-A4-NNNN). They have to be immediately disconnected from the mains.

  Mains filters (HNF05.1) and mains capacitors of the 690 V series (HNC05.1…-A5-) as well as all mains capacitors without ground capacitors (HNC05.1…-C001) may still be operated for a limited period of time in case a mains-side ground fault occurs.

  If it is required to operate devices with 690 V for a limited period of time in case a mains-side ground fault occurs, please use the more voltage-resistant type HAS04.1-003-NN**1**-NN for DC bus ground capacitors.

- **"Motor-side ground fault":**

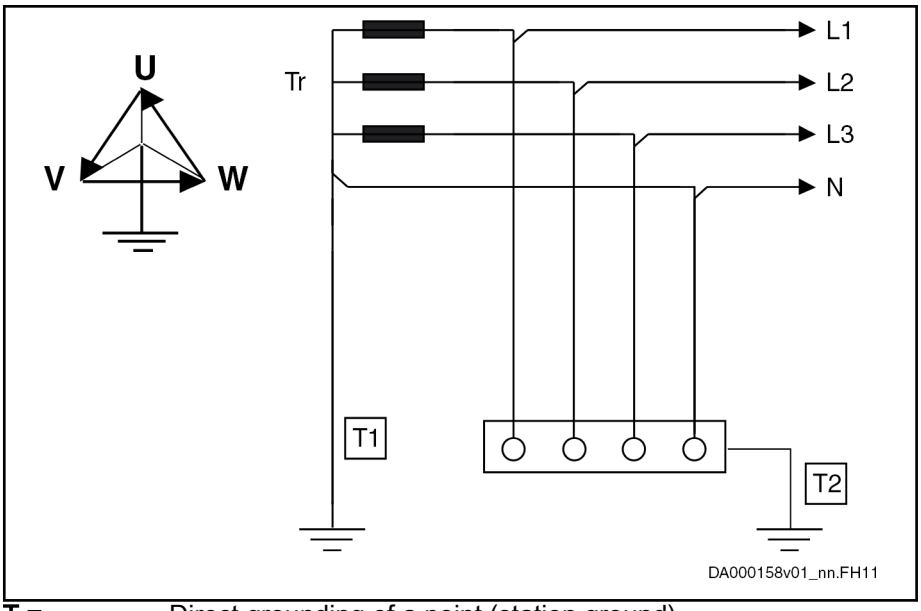
  If a motor-side ground fault occurs, it is **not allowed** to continue operating:

  – Mains filter (HNF05.1…)
  – Mains capacitors with ground capacitors (HNC05.1…-NNNN)
  – DC bus ground capacitors (HAS04.1-003)

  Continued operation leads to immediate destruction of these components.

  Mains capacitors without ground capacitors (HNC05.1…-C001) may still be operated for a limited period of time in case a motor-side ground fault occurs. However, it must be ensured that the other components of the drive system and the entire IT mains are designed for this.

TT system

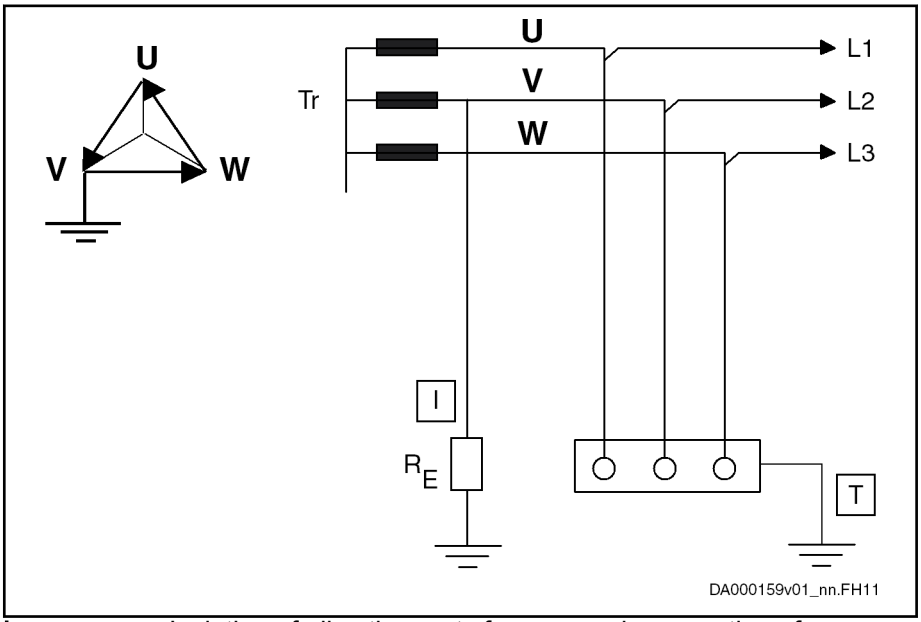


T = Direct grounding of a point (station ground)
T = Exposed conductive parts directly grounded, independent of grounding of current source (station ground)

Fig. 4-57: TT mains system

The EMC requirements are only complied with by specific measures (such as specific mains filters).

Mains with grounded outer conductor (Corner-grounded delta mains)



I = Isolation of all active parts from ground, connection of one phase - generally phase V - to ground or via an impedance R_E
T = Exposed conductive parts directly grounded, independent of grounding of current source (station ground)

Fig. 4-58: Mains with grounded outer conductor

Notes on project planning

- Observe the allowed mains voltages.
  See chapter 7.2.2 "Mains voltage" on page 150.
- The EMC requirements are only complied with by specific measures (such as specific mains filters).

HNF05 mains filter and HNC05 mains capacitors on mains grounded with outer conductor

HNF05 mains filter and HNC05 mains capacitors are not suited for operation on mains grounded with outer conductor. Use isolating transformers.

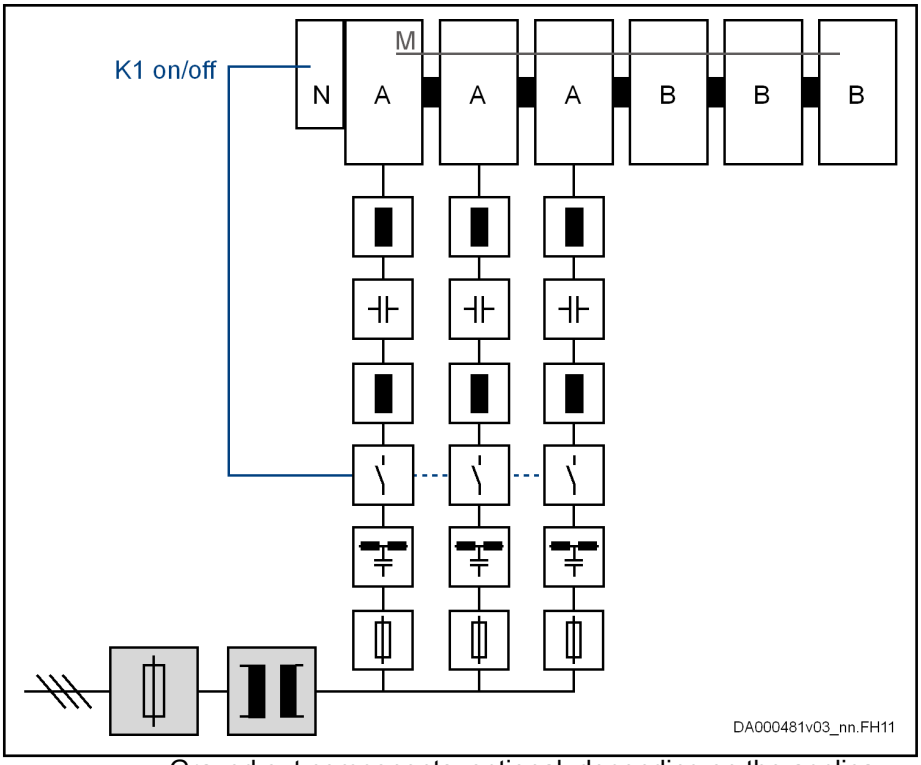
Allowed mains connection voltage: see technical data for each device

Mains connection type

See also chapter 4.6.4 "Mains connection" on page 104.

Parallel connection

Multiple HMU05 components (same size) are connected to the mains and in parallel to a larger HMV05. Each HMU05 has its own mains choke and mains filter.



Grayed out components: optional, depending on the application

A HMU05 Component (all components A identical); connected to power grid with mains chokes; connected to other components through DC bus

B HMU05 Component (as HMS05 inverter); connected to other components through DC bus

K1 on/off Mains contactor wiring; connect the auxiliary contacts of the mains contactors in series (see picture below)

M IndraBus

N HNA05 mains connection module

Fig. 4-59: Parallel connection; multiple components HMU05 connected to the power grid

Mains contactor wiring in the case of parallel connection

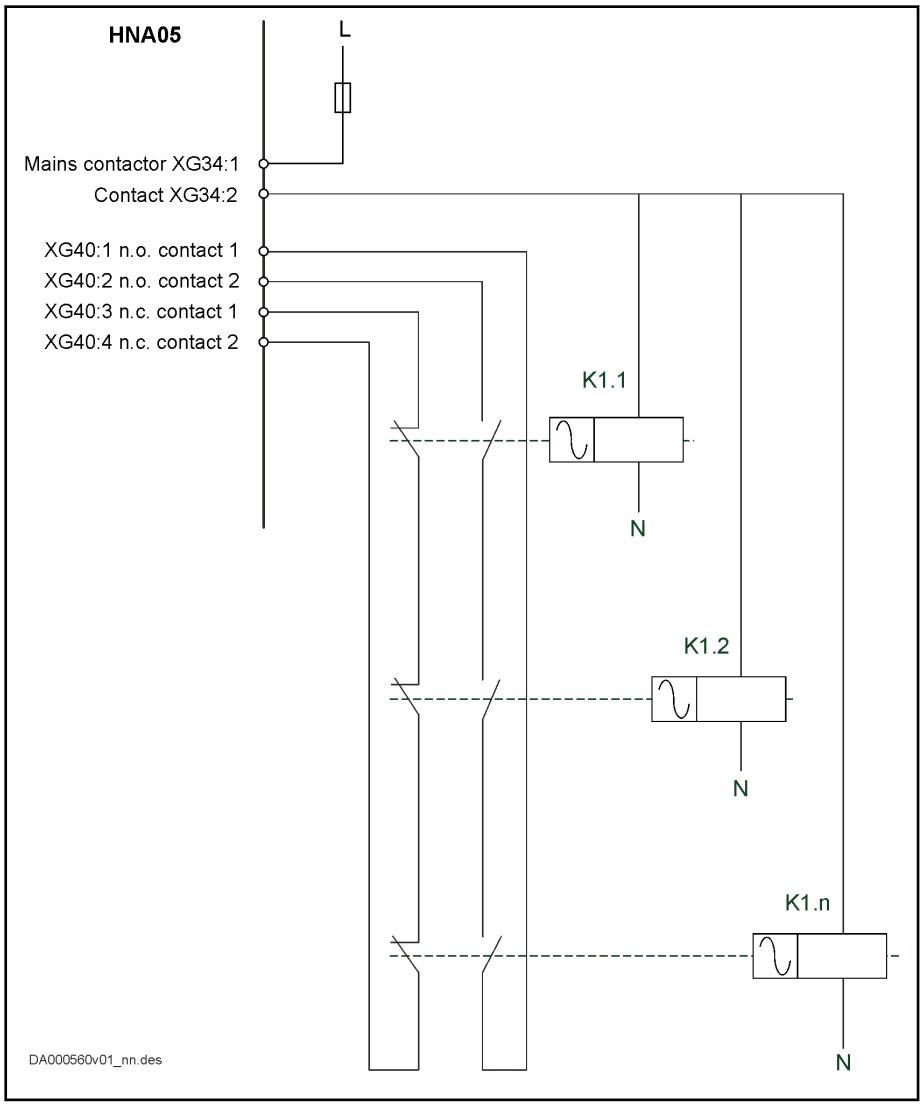


Fig. 4-60: Mains contactor wiring in the case of parallel connection

Mains contactor wiring: Connect the auxiliary contacts of the mains contactors in series. The auxiliary contacts are evaluated by HNA05.

Switch-on process: N/O contacts are monitored

Switch-off process: N/C contacts are monitored

NOTICE **Risk of fire caused by missing fuses!**

Install fuses. In the event of a short circuit in the drive controller, a fuse provides the best protection against overheating or fire (see also IEC 61800-5-1 and UL 61800-5-1).

For the North American sales region, individual fuses are mandatory for this type of mains connection (refer to UL 508A).

In the scope of application of international and European standards (IEC/EN, excluding North America), a group fuse instead of individual fuses is allowed. When selecting the nominal current of the group fuse, take the loop impedance, the line length and the line cross section of the supply feeder into account (see IEC 60204-1, chapter Appendix A).

Observe the data for sizing line cross sections and fuses (see also IEC 60204-1, UL 508A and NFPA 79).

Mains connection load and mains current

Technical data of components

- See chapter 7.2.2 "Mains voltage" on page 150
- See chapter 7.2.3 "DC bus" on page 153

Calculating the mains-side phase current

The mains-side phase current is required for the following cases:

- Selecting the mains contactor
- Determining the fuses in the mains connection
- Determining the line cross section
- Selecting other components in the mains connection (mains filter, mains choke)

Operation under rated conditions

For data on mains contactor, fuses and cross section in operation under rated conditions, see technical data of the respective component.

Operation at partial load

Operation at partial load may involve smaller mains contactors, fuses and line cross sections.

If defined data for operation at partial load are available, the mains-side phase current can be determined as follows:

1. Determine the **motor power**

   Take power of drive controller-motor combination from Rexroth IndraSize or calculate it.

$$P_{mHa} = \frac{M_n \times n_n}{9550}$$

P_{mHa}	Mechanical nominal power for main drives (shaft output) [kW]
M_n	Nominal motor torque [Nm]
n_n	Nominal motor speed [min^{-1}]

2. Determine the **DC bus power** from motor power and efficiency

$$P_{DC} = \frac{M_m \times n_m \times 2\pi}{60} \times k$$

P_{DC}	Required DC bus continuous power [W]
M_m	Average torque in Nm
n_m	Average speed in min^{-1}
k	Factor for motor and controller efficiency = 1.25

3. Add the **powers of all axes** at the common DC bus and put them into relation to the rated power of the supply unit
   ⇒ Partial load of P_{DC_cont} is known
4. Determine the **power factor TPF** for partial load (TPF = Total Power Factor)
   For the value **TPF** at rated power and **TPF_{10}** (at 10% of rated power), see technical data (mains voltage) of the component.
5. Calculate the **mains connected load**

$$S_{LN} = \frac{P_{DC}}{TPF}$$

S_{LN}	Mains connected load [VA]
P_{DC}	DC bus continuous power [W]
TPF	Total Power Factor λ

6. Calculate the **mains-side phase current**

3-phase: $$I_{LN} = \frac{S_{LN}}{U_{LN}\sqrt{3}}$$

I_{LN}	Mains-side phase current in [A]
S_{LN}	Mains connected load [VA]
U_{LN}	Voltage between phases of mains [V]

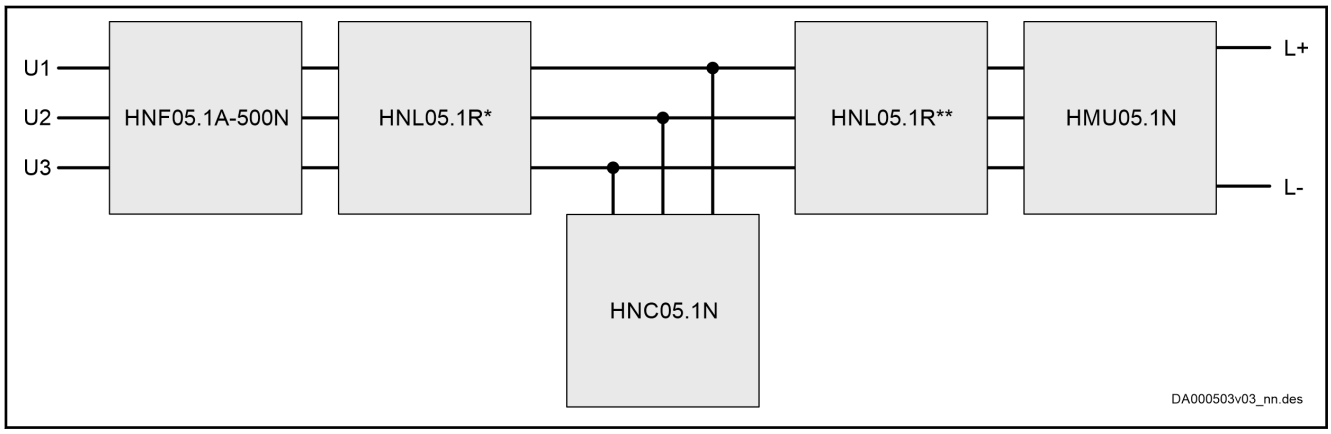
7. Select the **mains contactor**
8. Determine the **mains circuit breaker and line cross section**
   See chapter 11.4 "Sizing the line cross-sections and fuses " on page 629

Sizing the line cross sections and fuses

Some standards provide recommendations for sizing wire cross-sections and fuses.

See chapter 11.4 "Sizing the line cross-sections and fuses " on page 629.

Combining a mains filter, mains choke, preconnected choke, and mains capacitor



HNF05.1A-500N Mains filter
HNL05.1R* Preconnected choke
HNC05.1N Mains capacitor
HNL05.1R** Chopper choke
HMU05.1N Universal inverter

Fig. 4-61: Components for mains connection

Components		Supply unit HMU05.1N-F…-N-A4-D7 (liquid-cooled)						
		0140-0350	0170-0430	0220-0510	0270-0660	0340-0820	0430-1040	0540-1300
Chopper choke HNL05.1R-…-N-A4-NNNF	0219-N0218	✓						
	0182-N0262		✓					
	0135-N0327			✓				
	0117-N0409				✓			
	0130-N0514					✓		
	0113-N0652						✓	
	0100-N0811							✓
Preconnected choke HNL05.1R-…-N-A4-NNNN	0045-N0327	(✓)	(✓)	✓				
	0054-N0409				✓			
	0043-N0514					✓		
	0050-N0652						✓	
	0040-N0811							✓
Mains capacitor HNC05.1N-…-NNNN	0050-A4	✓	✓					
	0075-A4			✓				
	0100-A4				✓	✓	✓ [1)]	✓ [1)]
	0150-A4						(✓) [1)]	(✓) [1)]
Mains filter HNF05.1A-	500N-R0250-N-A5	✓						
	500N-R0320-N-A5		✓					
	500N-R0400-N-A5			✓				
	500N-R0600-N-A5				✓	✓		
	500N-R1000-N-A5						✓	✓

(✓) Optional

1) For operation of the supply unit at a clock frequency of 3.8 kHz (for 7- or 8-unit parallel connection), use HNC05.1N-0150-A4-NNNN.

Tab. 4-28: Components for mains connection (HMU05.1N-F…-A4-D7)

HNC, permissible clock frequencies:

- **4.2 kHz**: all
- **3.8 kHz**: HNC05.1N-**0150**-A4

Components		Supply unit HMU05.1N-F…-N-A5-11 (liquid-cooled)					
		0140-0210	0170-0250	0220-0300	0270-0370	0400-0600	0540-0750
Chopper choke HNL05.1R-	0649-N0127-N-A5	✓					
	0542-N0152-N-A5		✓				
	0434-N0190-N-A5			✓			
	0346-N0238-N-A5				✓		
	0234-N0352-N-A5					✓	
	0175-N0471-N-A5						✓
Preconnected choke HNL05.1R-	0125-N0152-N-A5	(✓)	✓				
	0100-N0190-N-A5			✓			
	0080-N0238-N-A5				✓		
	0054-N0352-N-A5					✓	
	0040-N0471-N-A5						✓
Mains capacitor HNC05.1N-…-NNNN	0040-A5	✓	✓				
	0050-A5			✓			
	0070-A5				✓		
	0100-A5					✓	
	0125-A5						✓
Mains filter HNF05.1A-	500N-R0150-N-A5	✓					
	500N-R0180-N-A5		✓				
	500N-R0250-N-A5			✓	✓		
	500N-R0400-N-A5					✓	
	500N-R0600-N-A5						✓

(✓) Optional

Tab. 4-29: Components for mains connection (HMU05.1N-…-A5-11)

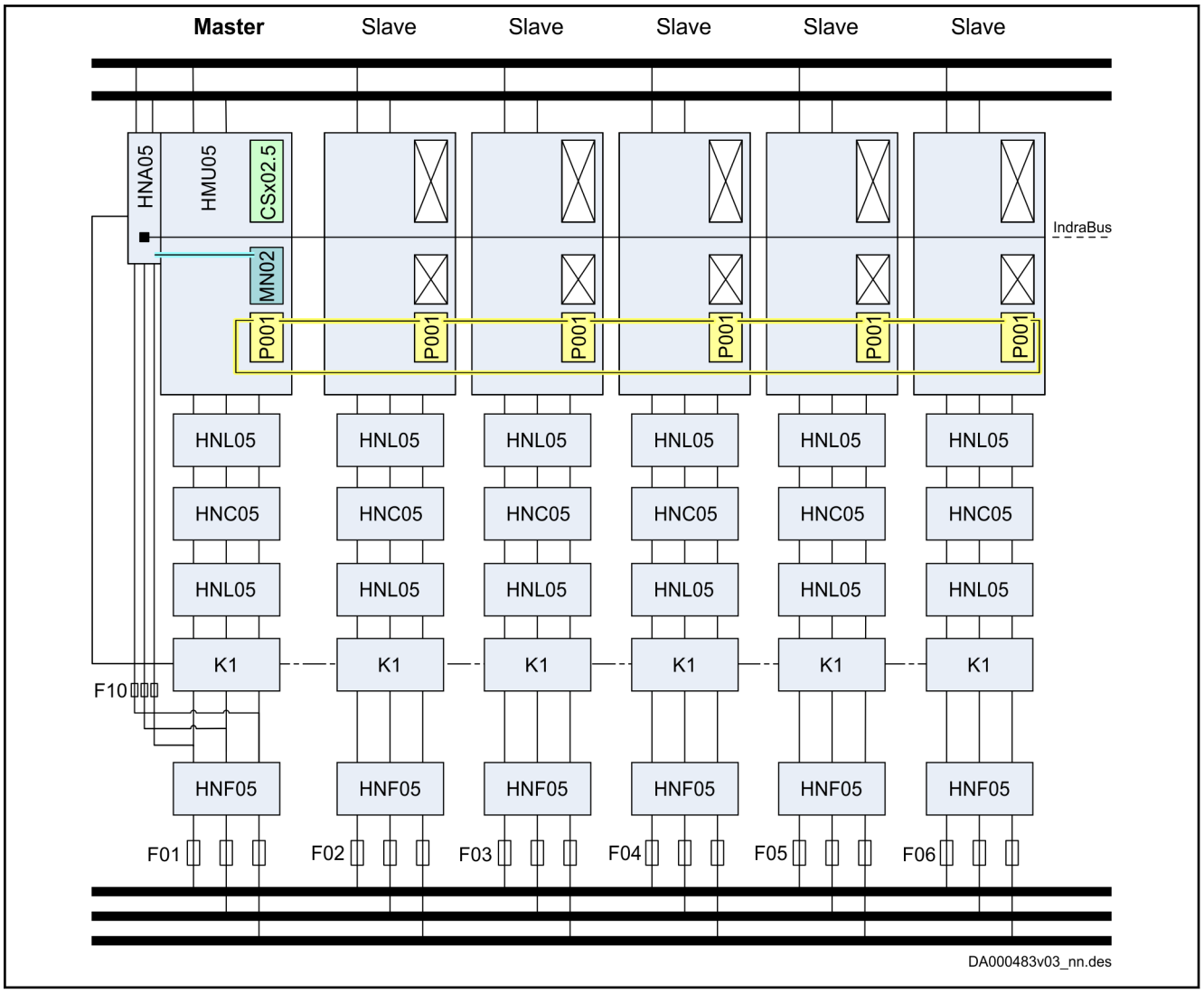
4.6.5 Running multiple HMU05s in parallel

To extend the power range, multiple **HMU05 units with identical power ratings** can be operated in parallel.

The maximum number of HMU05 units that can be connected in parallel depends on the **clock frequency**.

Parallel HMU05 units can be operated both as power supply units and as drive controllers.

When used as a power supply unit, it uses HNL05 mains chokes to ensure symmetry in parallel operation.

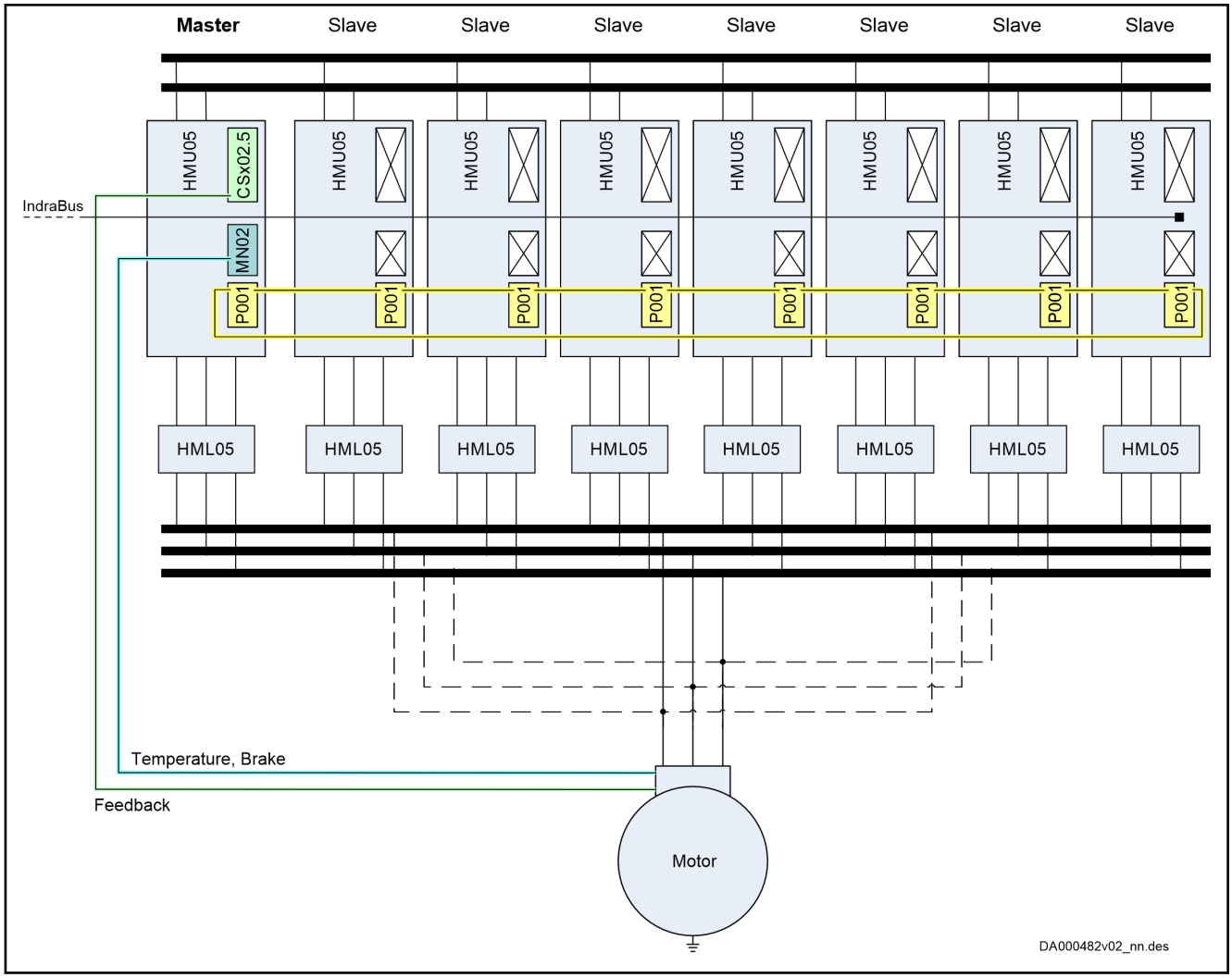


Clock frequency 3.8 kHz: A maximum of **8** HMU05 units connected in parallel

Clock frequency 4.2 kHz: A maximum of **6** HMU05 units connected in parallel

*Fig. 4-62: Parallel operation of the HMU05 in addition to its use as a **power supply unit***

The unit uses HML05 motor chokes as drive controllers.



Clock frequency HMU05 units connected in parallel can only be operated at clock frequencies of <8 kHz:

6 kHz A maximum of 3 HMU05 units connected in parallel

4 kHz A maximum of 8 HMU05 units connected in parallel

Motor It is possible to operate a motor with galvanically isolated windings. It is not possible to operate a motor with phase-shifted windings.

*Fig. 4-63: Parallel operation of the HMU05 in addition to its use as **a drive controller***

In parallel operation, one HMU05 acts as the "master" and the other HMU05s act as "slaves".

The master has a CSx02.5 control section and an HPC01.1-**MN02** option card. The master communicates with the slaves via HPC01.1-**P001** option cards (ring topology). Connection cables to the HPC01.1-P001 optional cards always have to be run **inside the control cabinet**. Comply with maximum allowed line lengths.

To ensure that the output current of the HMU05 is distributed symmetrically and that no HMU05 is overloaded, the power outputs must be wired **symmetrically**. To do this, the power outputs are connected to a common bus bar. The motor is then connected directly to the busbar.

Maximum line lengths

Between HMU05 and the motor:

- shielded: 100 m
- unshielded: 150 m

Comply with the allowed cable capacitance for motor chokes or balancing chokes.

Connecting the HPC01.1-P001 option cards

- **1 m:** Between two neighboring devices
- **8 m:** Between the last and first device

(Lines may not be routed outside the control cabinet.)

Derating

- **5%** for utility applications and no highly dynamic drive applications
- **10%** for highly dynamic drive applications

Since the output current is not exactly distributed equally even with a symmetrical design, the output current is derated. Therefore, it is impossible to use 100% of the calculated total power.

4.7 Acceptance tests and approvals

4.7.1 Declaration of conformity

Declarations of conformity confirm that the components comply with the valid EN standards and EC directives. If required, our sales representative can provide you with the declarations of conformity for components.

DX000011v01_nn.FH11	**Drive controllers, supply units**	**Motors**
CE conformity with regard to Low-Voltage Directive	EN 61800-5-1:2007	EN 60034-1:2010+Cor.:2010 EN 60034-5:2001+A1:2007
CE conformity with regard to EMC product standard	EN 61800-3:2004 + A1:2012	
CE conformity with regard to RoHS	EN 63000:2018	

Tab. 4-30: CE - applied standards

4.7.2 C-UL-US listing

The components are listed by **UL** (Underwriters Laboratories Inc.®).

Proof of certification can be found online. Enter the terms "UL" and "databases" in a search engine to get to the relevant UL web page. With the file number you will find the proof of certification.

c UL us **Listed** **POW. CONV. EQ.** **97Y4**	• UL standard: 61800-5-1 • CSA standard: Canadian Standard CSA C22.2 No. 274-13
	Company name BOSCH REXROTH ELECTRIC DRIVES & CONTROLS GMBH Company name: Power Conversion Equipment
	File numbers IndraDrive ML Components (HMU05, HNA05, HLR05, HLT05): • E134201

Tab. 4-31: C-UL listing

UL ratings

When using the component in the scope of CSA / UL, take the UL ratings for each component into account.

Make sure that the specified **short-circuit current rating SCCR** is not exceeded, e.g. by providing appropriate fuses in the mains connection of the supply unit.

UL wiring material

In the scope of CSA / UL, use copper 75 °C only; class 1 or equivalent only.

Allowed pollution degree

Comply with the allowed pollution degree of the components (see "Ambient and operating conditions").

UL and CSA certifications for choke and filter components

Component[1)]	UL/CSA Certification	Remarks
Mains filter HNF05.1A-…-A5	recognized (cUR US); E172117 in accordance with UL 1283; CSA C22.2 No. 8	1)
Mains choke HNL05.1R-…-A4-NNNN HNL05.1R-…-A4-NNNF	recognized (cUR US); E472843	2)
Mains choke HNL05.1R-…-A4-NNNW	Insulation system (UR) according to E181051 "F2"	-
Mains choke HNL05.1R-…-A5	Insulation system (UR) according to E181051 "F2"	1)
Mains capacitor HNC05.1N-...-A4	cUL US; E134201 Volume 9, Section 1	-

Component[1)]	UL/CSA Certification	Remarks
Mains capacitor HNC05.1N-...-A5	cUL US; E134201 Volume 9, Section 1	1)
DC bus choke HLL05.1F…-N-11-01U2 HLL05.1W-04M0-S0202-N-11-01U2 HLL05.1W-04M0-S0303-N-11-01U2	Listed (cUL US); E472843	2) 3)
DC bus choke HLL05.1W-04M0-S0475-N-11-01U2	Insulation system (UR) according to E181051 "F2"	3)
Motor/balancing choke HML05.1W-D021U-N0254-N-500 HML05.1W-D018U-N0306-N-500 HML05.1W-D014U-N0392-N-500 HML05.1W-D009U-N0490-N-500 HML05.1W-D009U-N0616-N-500 HML05.1W-D007U-N0771-N-500 HML05.1W-D006U-N1002-N-500	recognized (cUR US); E472843	2)
Motor/balancing choke HML05.1W-D…-N-690	Insulation system (UR) per E181051 "F2"	-
Motor choke HML05.1F-…	Insulation system (UR) per E181051 "F2"	-

1) Within the UL/CSA scope, these components may only be operated up to $600V_{AC}$.

2) Description in the E-file: chapter 11.11 "UL/CSA - Component designations" on page 662

3) Within the UL/CSA scope, these components may only be operated up to $850V_{DC}$.

Tab. 4-32: UL and CSA certifications for choke and filter components

4.7.3 CCC (China Compulsory Certification)

The CCC mark is a compulsory certification of safety and quality for certain products mentioned in the product catalog "First Catalogue of Products Subject to Compulsory Certification" and in the CNCA document "Application Scope for Compulsory Certification of Products acc. first Catalogue" and put in circulation in China. This compulsory certification has existed since 2003.

CNCA is the Chinese authority responsible for certification guidelines. When a product is imported in China, the certification will be checked at customs using the entries in a database. Three criteria are typically critical for certification being required:

1. Customs tariff number (HS code) according to CNCA document "Application Scope for Compulsory Certification of Products acc. first Catalogue".
2. Field of application according to CNCA document "Application Scope for Compulsory Certification of Products acc. first Catalogue".
3. For the IEC product standard used, a corresponding Chinese GB-standard must exist.

For the drive components by Rexroth described in this documentation, **certification is currently not required**, so they are not CCC certified. Negative certifications will not be issued.

5 Condition as supplied, identification, transport and storage

5.1 Condition as supplied

5.1.1 Factory testing

Voltage testing and insulation resistance testing

According to standard, the **components** of the IndraDrive ML range are tested with voltage.

Testing	Test rate
Voltage testing	100% (EN 61800-5-1)
Insulation resistance testing	100% (EN 60204-1)

Tab. 5-1: Applied standards

5.1.2 Customer testing

NOTICE

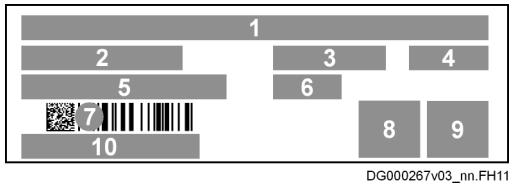
Risk of damage to the installed Rexroth components by customer-side testing of the machine or installation!

Before conducting voltage testing or insulation resistance testing for an **installation or machine** in which these components are used:

Disconnect all connections to the Rexroth components or disconnect the plug-in connections to protect the electronic components.

5.2 Identification

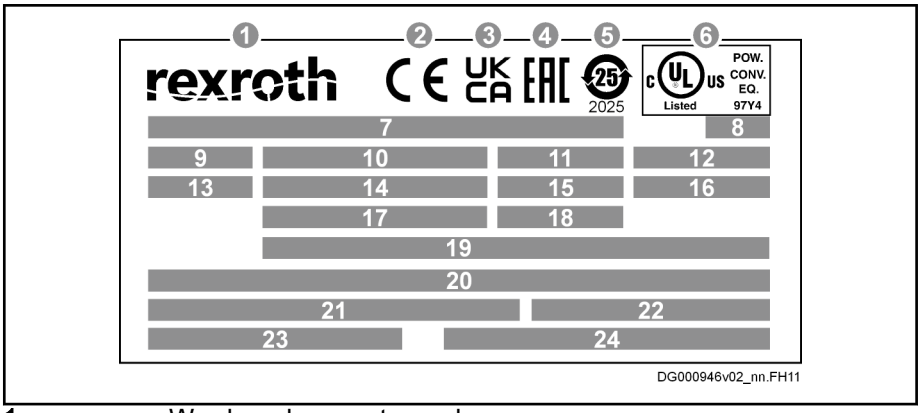
5.2.1 Type plate



1 Type designation
2 Material number
3 Production week
4 Factory
5 Serial number
6 Hardware index
7 Bar code, 2D code
8 CE label
9 UKCA marking
10 Country of manufacture

Fig. 5-1: Type plate

5.2.2 Rating plate



1	Word mark or customer logo
2	CE conformity mark
3	UKCA conformity mark
4	EAC conformity mark
5	China RoHS 2 conformity label, production year
6	UL label
7	Type designation
8	Factory
9	Supply input data
10	Input voltage
11	Input current
12	Input frequency
13	Output data of power supply
14	Output voltage
15	Output current
16	Output frequency
17	Efficiency class
18	Degree of protection provided by housing
19	UL-Text2
20	UL-Text1
21	SCCR
22	Ambient temperature during operation
23	Designation of origin
24	Company address

Fig. 5-2: Rating plate (electrical equipment)

5.2.3 Scope of delivery

Standard
Documentation

Tab. 5-2: Scope of delivery HMU05

5.3 Transporting components

Ambient and operating conditions for transport

Description	Symbol	Unit	Value
Temperature range	T_{a_tran}	°C	-25 to 70
Relative humidity		%	5 to 95

Description	Symbol	Unit	Value
Absolute humidity		g/m^3	1 to 60
Climatic category (IEC721)			2K3
Condensation			Not permitted
Icing			Not permitted

Tab. 5-3: Ambient and operating conditions for transport

5.4 Storing components

NOTICE **Risk of damage to components from long-term storage.**

Some components contain electrolytic capacitors which may deteriorate during storage.

When storing the following components for a longer period of time, run them **once per year for at least one hour**:

- Converters and supply units: operated with line voltage V_{LN}
- Inverters and DC bus capacitor units: operated with DC bus voltage V_{DC}

NOTICE **Risk of damage to liquid-cooled components from frost.**

Before storing, fully drain coolant channels or use antifreeze.

Ambient and operating conditions for storage

Description	Symbol	Unit	Value
Temperature range	T_{a_store}	°C	-25 to 55
Relative humidity		%	5 to 95
Absolute humidity		g/m^3	1 to 29
Climatic category (IEC721)			1K3
Condensation			Not permitted
Icing			Not permitted

Tab. 5-4: Ambient and operating conditions for storage

6 Mounting and installation

6.1 Mounting HMU05 devices in control cabinet

HMU05 Drive controllers were designed to be mounted in control cabinets.

Installation instructions for liquid-cooled devices

- When mounting, comply with the mandatory **minimum distances** between components (seechapter "HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx" on page 73).
- **Tightening torque** of the **M10** mounting screws: **48 Nm**
- Assembly kit:
  - Mounting plate for device width 200 mm: HAS10.1-002-005

    See chapter "Mounting plate for device width 200 mm (HAS10.1-002-005)" on page 188.
  - Mounting plate for device width 220 mm: HAS10.1-002-006

    See chapter "Mounting plate for a device width of 220 mm (HAS10.1-002-006)" on page 190.

Mounting instructions for air-cooled devices

- When mounting, comply with the mandatory **minimum distances** between components (seechapter "HMU05.1N-Wxxxx-xxxx" on page 81).
- **Tightening torque** of the **M10** mounting screws: **48 Nm**
- Mounting accessories for push-through mounting:
  - Mounting frame: chapter "Mounting frame, through-hole technology (HAS10.1-002-012/…)" on page 192

6.2 Electrical connection

6.2.1 Overall connection diagram (HMU05 as drive controller)

See chapter 4.6.1 "Overall connection diagram (HMU05 as drive controller)" on page 95.

6.2.2 Overall connection diagram (HMU05 as supply unit)

Overall connection diagram with load contactor

See chapter "Overall connection diagram with load contactor" on page 96.

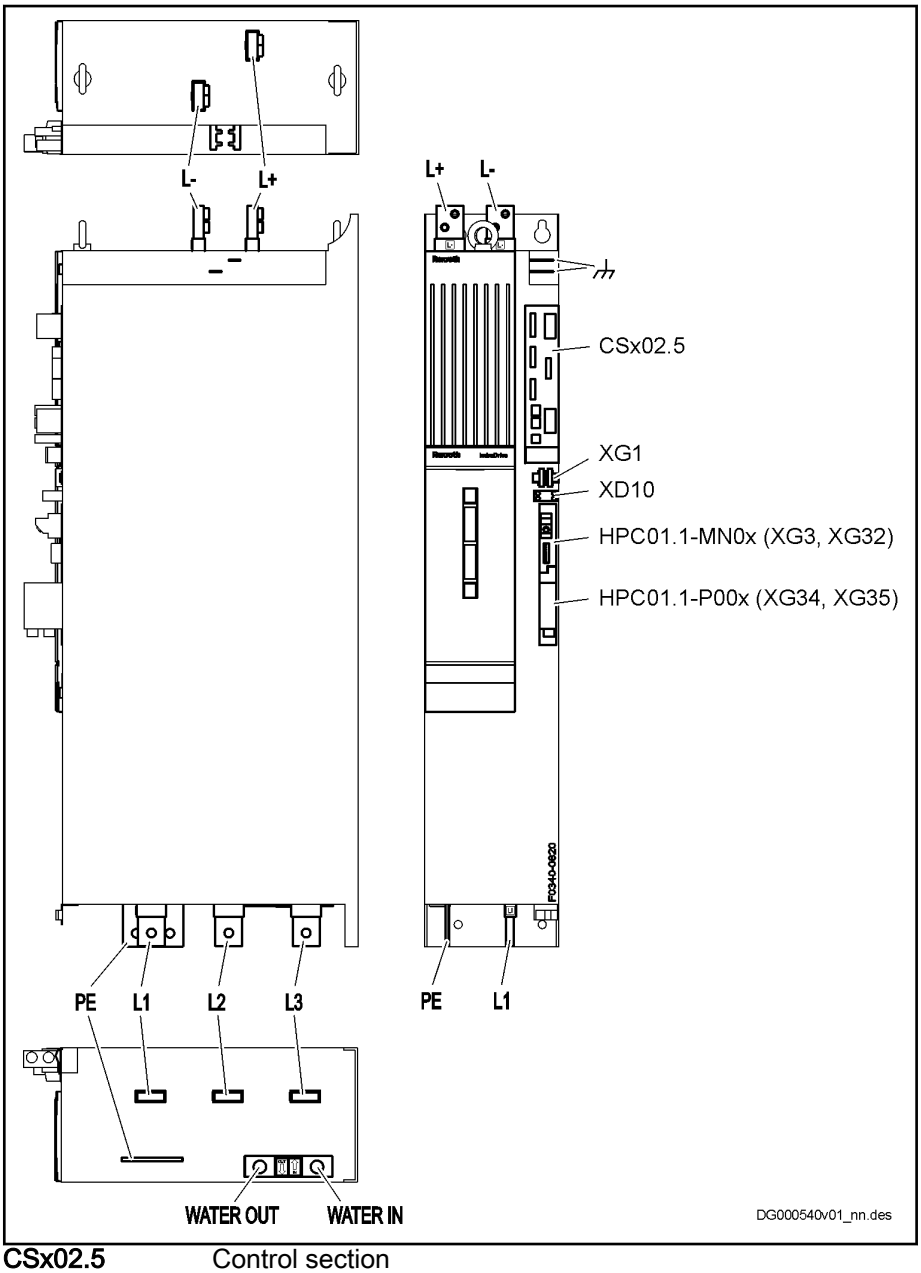
Overall connection diagram with a controllable main switch

See chapter "Overall connection diagram with a controllable main switch" on page 98.

6.2.3 Connection points

Arrangement of HMU05 connection points

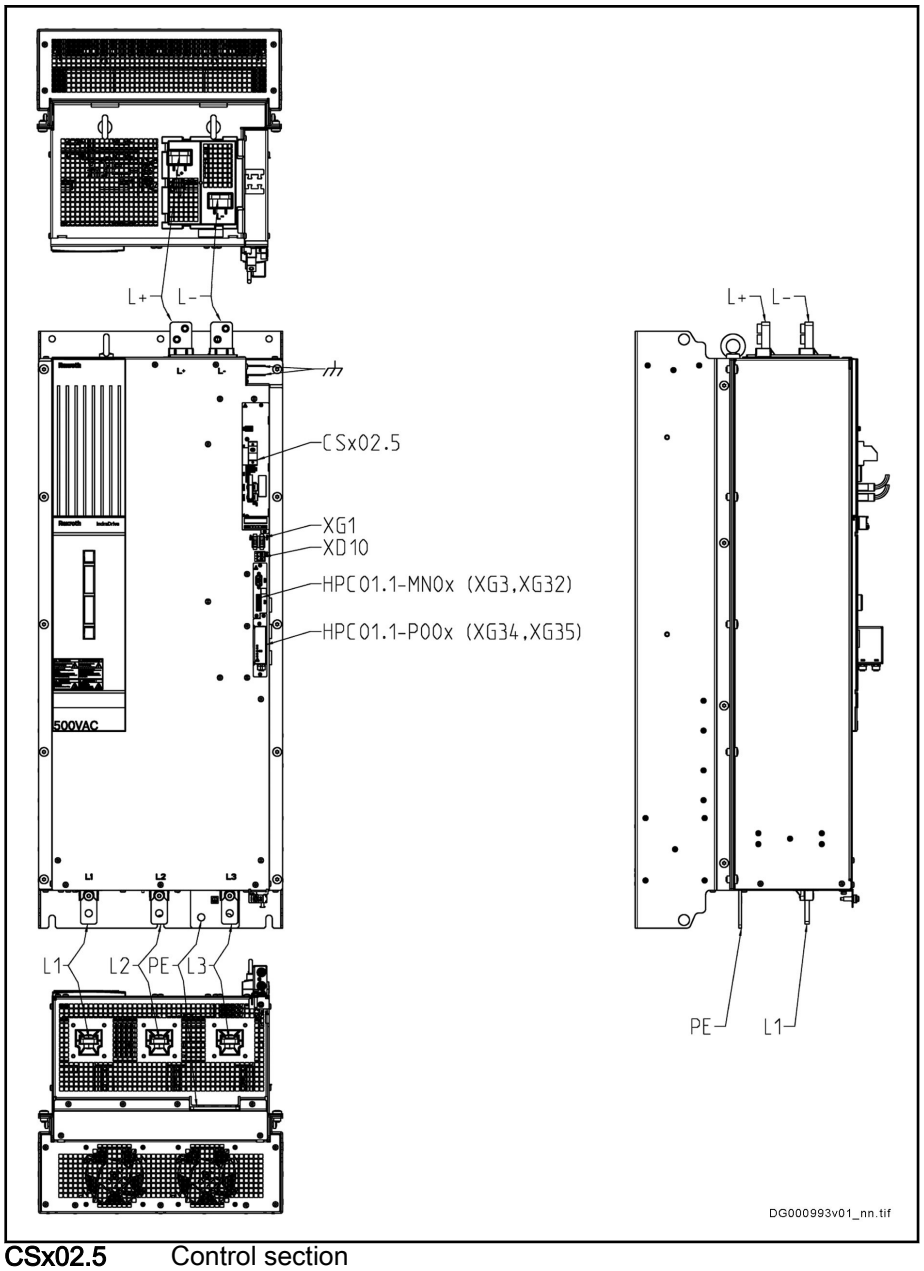
HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx



CSx02.5	Control section
HPC01	Optional card
L1, L2, L3	Mains/motor connection
L+, L-	DC bus
PE	Equipment grounding conductor
XG1	IndraBus
XD10	Control voltage
WATER IN/OUT	Cooling liquid

Fig. 6-1: HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx connection points

HMU05.1N-Wxxxx-xxxx



CSx02.5	Control section
HPC01	Optional card
L1, L2, L3	Mains/motor connection
L+, L-	DC bus
PE	Equipment grounding conductor
XG1	IndraBus
XD10	Control voltage

Fig. 6-2: HMU05.1N-Wxxxx-xxxx connection points

Protective conductor connection

⚠ WARNING **High housing voltage and high earth current! Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock!**

- Prior to switching on and commissioning, ground or connect the electric drive and control system components to the equipment grounding conductor at the grounding points.
- Connect the equipment grounding conductor of the electric drive and control system components permanently to the main power supply at all times. The earth current is greater than 3.5 mA.
- Establish an equipment grounding connection with a sufficient copper cross-sectional area (see the table "Minimum cross-section of the equipment grounding connection").

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock by live parts with more than 50 V!**

Only operate the device

- with the connectors plugged on (even if no lines have been connected to the connectors) and
- with the equipment grounding conductor connected!

☞ **Protective conductor: Material and cross section**

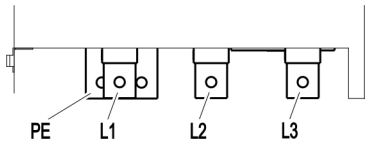
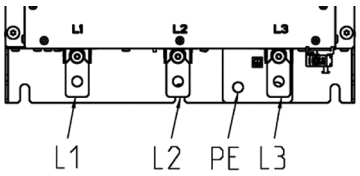
Use the same metal (e.g., copper) for the equipment grounding conductor as for the outer conductors.

When connecting the protective conductor connection point of the device to the equipment grounding system within the control cabinet, take into account that a sufficient cable cross-section is required.

Cross-section of equipment grounding connection:

See the table "Minimum cross-section of the equipment grounding connection".

Additionally mount the housing on a metallic, uncoated mounting plate. Also connect the mounting plate with at least the same cross-section to the protective conductor system in the control cabinet.

View	Identification	Function
HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx:  HMU05.1N-Wxxxx-xxxx:  	PE	Connection to protective conductor system

Connecting bolt	Unit	min.	max.
Boring diameter	mm	13	
Tightening torque M12	Nm	48	
Occurring current load and minimum required connection cross section		See technical data of device used (I_{LN} and A_{LN})	
Occurring voltage load		See technical data of device used (U_{LN} or U_{LN_nenn})	

Tab. 6-1: Function, pin assignment, properties

Minimum cross-section of equipment grounding connection

Cross-section of outer conductor	Minimum cross-section of protective conductor Earth current ≥ 3.5 mA
16 mm² (6 AWG)	16 mm² (6 AWG)
25 mm² (4 AWG)	
35 mm² (2 AWG)	
50 mm² (1/0 AWG)	25 mm² (4 AWG)
70 mm² (2/0 AWG)	35 mm² (2 AWG)
X mm²	(X × 0.5) mm² (Applies to X ≥ 50)

Tab. 6-2: Minimum cross-section of equipment grounding connection

Installation instructions

- The cable is connected to the connection point using **ring terminal ends**.

NOTICE **Risk of damage to the device!**

Provide strain relief for the terminal connectors of the device in the control cabinet.

L1, L2, L3, mains/motor connection

Important information

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock by live parts with more than 50 V!**

Only operate the device

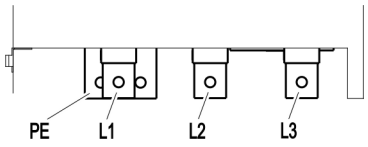
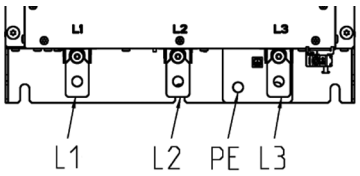
- with the connectors plugged on (even if no lines have been connected to the connectors) and
- with the equipment grounding conductor connected!

Installation instructions

- The cable is connected to the connection point using **ring terminal ends**.
- Determine the **required cross-section** of the connecting cables based on the calculated phase current I_{LN} and the mains fuse.

NOTICE **Risk of damage to the device!**

Provide strain relief for the terminal connectors of the device in the control cabinet.

View	Identification	Function
HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx:  HMU05.1N-Wxxxx-xxxx:  	L1	Connection to power grid (L1) or the motor (A1)
	L2	Connection to power grid (L2) or the motor (A2)
	L3	Connection to power grid (L3) or the motor (A3)

Connecting bolt	Unit	min.	max.
Boring diameter	mm	13	
Tightening torque M12	Nm	48	
Occurring current load and minimum required connection cross section		See technical data of device used (I_{LN} and A_{LN})	
Occurring voltage load		See technical data of device used (U_{LN} or U_{LN_nenn})	

Tab. 6-3: Function, pin assignment, properties

XG3, motor temperature monitoring, motor holding brake, motor fan control

⚠ WARNING **Dangerous movements! Danger to persons from falling or dropping axes!**

The standard motor holding brake provided or an external motor holding brake controlled directly by the drive controller are not sufficient on their own to guarantee personal safety!

Personal safety must be achieved using higher-level, fail-safe measures:

- Block off danger zones with safety fences or safety guards
- Additionally secure vertical axes against falling or dropping after switching off the motor power by, for example,
  - mechanically securing the vertical axes
  - adding external braking/arrester/clamping mechanisms
  - ensuring sufficient equilibration of the vertical axes

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

The input of the motor temperature evaluation is **not** galvanically isolated from the housing. Excess voltage at the input (e.g., by the motor winding voltage flashing over) can get to the housing. Make sure that the temperature sensor of the connected motor is **double**-insulated from the motor winding.

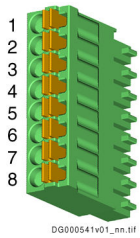
NOTICE **Risk of damage to device from excess voltage at motor temperature evaluation input!**

Only the allowed control voltage for the device is allowed at the motor temperature evaluation input. Excess voltage at the input may damage the device.

Function

- Monitoring the motor temperature
- Controlling the motor holding brake
- Analog output for connecting a frequency converter for a motor fan

☞ Via an integrated contact element (BR), the power section switches the voltage of the **external** 24 V supply to the output for controlling the motor holding brake.

View	Connection	Signal name	I/O	Function
	1	24VEA	E	24 V supply voltage
	2	24VBr	A	Output to control the motor holding brake
	3	0VBr	A	
	4	MotTemp+	E	Motor temperature evaluation input
	5	MotTemp-	E	
	6	MotLue+	A	Motor fan output (0 … 10 V)
	7	MotLue0V	A	Reference to motor fan output (0 V)
	8	0VEA	E	0 V supply voltage

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	min.	max.
Connection cable stranded wire	mm^2	0.25	1.5
	AWG	24	16
Stripped length	mm	10	
Current carrying capacity XG3 output (motor holding brake)	A	-	2
Time constant of load	ms	-	50
Number of switching actions		Wear-free electronic contact	
Short circuit protection		XG3.2 against XG3.3 (output for controlling the motor holding brake)	
Overload protection		XG3.2 against XG3.3 (output for controlling the motor holding brake)	

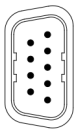
Tab. 6-4: Function, pin assignment

Installation instructions

Make sure the **voltage supply** is sufficient for the motor holding brake at the motor. Take into account that voltage drops on the supply line. Use connection lines with the largest possible cross-section of single strands.

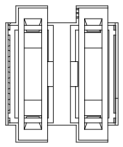
If motor holding brakes are to be supplied with currents higher than the permissible current rating at X6, an **external switching device** is required.

XG32, HNA bus

View	Identification	Function	
	XG32	HNA bus	
D-Sub, 9-pin, male	**Unit**	**Min.**	**Max.**
Connection cross section	mm^2	0.25	0.5
Cable: RKB0037	m	0.5 or 0.66	1

Tab. 6-5: Function, pin assignment, properties

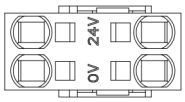
XG1, IndraBus

View	Connection	Function
	XG1a XG1b	Connects the components through a ribbon cable. • Output for quickly reporting critical errors to other devices • Input for detecting critical errors from other devices • Blocking and releasing DC bus short circuit by a braking resistor unit • Reporting DC bus availability *Cables* • Unshielded length: < 3 m Cable designation: RKB0036 • Shielded length: < 100 m Cable designation: RKB0035 In individual operation (that is to say not in combination with other devices of the Hxx05.1 series), both IndraBus **RBS0025 terminating plugs** must have been plugged in. In combination with other devices, the RBS0025 terminating plug on the first device (left) must be plugged in at the left side of XG1 and the terminating plug on the last device (right) must be plugged in at the right side.

Tab. 6-6: XG1, IndraBus

XD10, 24 V supply (control voltage)

Function, pin assignment The 24 V supply is applied externally via connection point XD10.

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
	24V	+24V	Power supply
		+24V	
	0V	0V	Reference potential for voltage supply
		0V	

Tab. 6-7: XD10, 24-V power supply

Mechanical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	min.	max.
Connecting cable Solid wire	mm^2	1	10
Connecting cable multi-strand **without** wire end ferrule	mm^2	1	6
	AWG	16	10
Connecting cable multi-strand **with** wire end ferrule	mm^2	1	4
Stripping length	mm	15	

Tab. 6-8: Mechanical data

Electrical data

	Unit	min.	max.
Voltage load capacity	V	-	U_{N3} 1)
Power consumption	W	-	P_{N3} 1)
Current carrying capacity (looping through)	A	-	40 (UL: 31)
Allowed inductance	µH	-	100 (2 twisted single strands, 75 m long)

1) See chapter 7.2.1 "Control voltage" on page 147

Tab. 6-9: Electrical data

Installation instructions Depending on the power consumption of the devices and the current carrying capacity of the connector XD10, check the number of devices through which one line for 24 V supply can be looped through. If required, connect another device directly to the 24 V supply and loop through the control voltage from this device to other devices.

L+ L-, DC bus connection

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

Before working with live parts: Disconnect the system and secure power switch against unintentional or unauthorized reconnection.

Make sure voltage has fallen below 50 V before touching live parts!

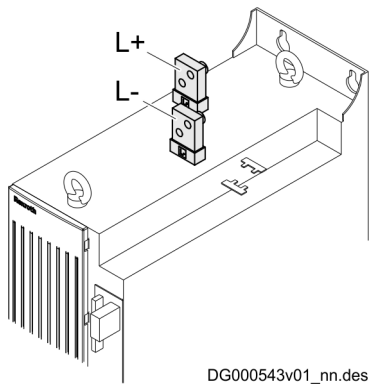
Before accessing the device, wait at least **30 minutes** after switching off the supply voltages to allow **discharging**.

When using DC bus ground capacitor pairs, the discharge time **to ground** may exceed 30 minutes.

Mount a **touch guard**!

Function, pin assignment

The DC bus connection connects DC buses of several components.

View	Identification	Function
	L+ L-	Connections for screwing on DC bus bars Threads on connecting bolt: 2 × M10 Tightening torque: 48 Nm
	Unit	
Dimensions		See dimension sheet for each component:
Short circuit protection		By fusing elements in the incoming circuit of the mains connection
Overload protection		is performed using an internal temperature/load model

Tab. 6-10: Function, pin assignment, properties

Installation instructions

NOTICE **Risk of damage due to incorrect connection of the DC bus terminals L- and L+**

- Make sure the polarity is correct.
- Screw the screws in all the way along the entire length of the connection's thread.

Select the connection cross-section according to the maximum current load occurring on the DC bus and the installation method for the connections.

If you route the DC bus outside the control cabinet, install an HLL DC bus choke and the DC bus grounding capacitor pairs close to the inverters. This reduces the noise emission of the line and improves its EMC performance.

Shield connection

Control line shield connection

Shield connection for control lines of the control section, motor, etc. whose connectors do not have a shield connection.

Always connect the shields with the largest possible metal-to-metal contact surface.

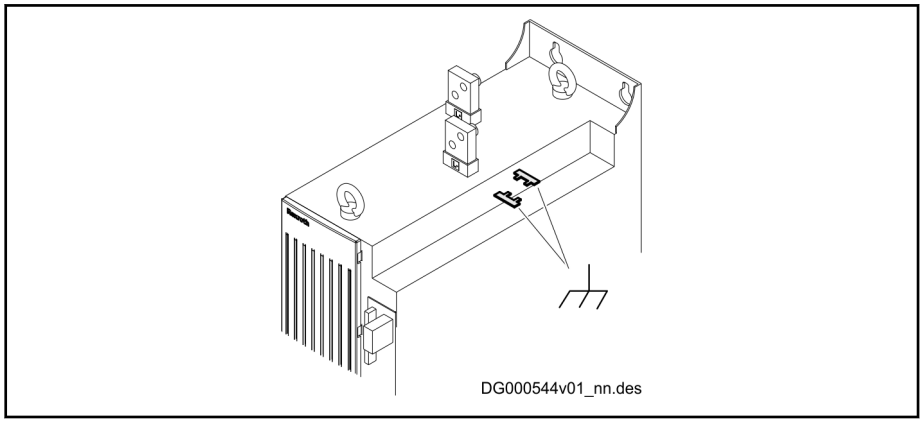


Fig. 6-3: Shield connection of shielded control lines

Motor power cable shield connection

The motor power cable shield is connected at a separate location in the control cabinet and not directly at HMU05.

Ground connection

The ground connection of the housing is used to provide functional safety of the drive controllers and protection against contact in conjunction with the protective conductor.

Ground the housing of the drive controllers:

1. Connect the uncoated, metallic rear panel of the drive controller in conductive form to the mounting surface in the control cabinet.
2. Connect the bare metal mounting surface of the control cabinet in conductive form to the equipment grounding system.

   See also Project Planning Manual "Control Cabinet: Air Conditioning, EMC, Design, IP Code, Electrics; IndraDrive, Rexroth EFC/Fv, Sytronix" (R911344988).
3. For the ground connection, observe the maximum allowed ground resistance.
4. Use a ground connection with a cross-section ≥ 16 mm^2 to the drive controller.

   See also tab. 6-2 "Minimum cross-section of equipment grounding connection" on page 133.

6.2.4 Optional cards

HPC01.1-MN0x-NN



Fig. 6-4: HPC01.1-MN0x-NN

XG3 See chapter "XG3, motor temperature monitoring, motor holding brake, motor fan control " on page 136

XG32 See chapter "XG32, HNA bus" on page 138

Cables **RKB0037**; cable connects HPC01.1-MN0x-NN with HNA

HPC01.1-P001-NN



Fig. 6-5: HPC01.1-P001-NN

Cables **RKB0038**; cable connects several HPC01.1-P001-NN

It is **not** allowed to run the lines outside the control cabinet!

Maximum allowed length

- **1 m:** Between two neighboring devices
- **8 m:** Between the last and first device

6.3 WATER IN/OUT, coolant connection

View	Identification	Function
	WATER IN	Inlet
	WATER OUT	Outlet

	Symbol	Unit	min.	max.
Connection thread (internal thread)			G1/2"	
Coolant inlet temperature	T_{in}	°C	Ambient temperature - 5 K	40
Permissible operating pressure	p_{max}	bar	-	5

Tab. 6-11: Function, properties

NOTICE **Risk of damage. Drive components cannot build condensation.**

In temperate zones (up to 40°C and 70% humidity), the inlet temperature of the coolant may be at a maximum 5 K below the temperature in the control cabinet.

Safest protection against condensation:

Coolant inlet temperature = ambient temperature

Condensation protection

Please comply with the information regarding protection against condensation.

See chapter "Condensation protection" on page 65.

7 Technical data of the components

7.1 Ambient and operating conditions

7.2 Power section

7.2.1 Control voltage

HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx

Control voltage supply data

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0350-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0430-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0510-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0660-N-A4-D7-P
Control voltage input	U_{N3}	V	24 ±20%			
Control voltage when using motor holding brake with motor cable length < 50 m[1)]	U_{N3}	V	24 ±5%			
Control voltage when using motor holding brake with motor cable length > 50 m[1)]	U_{N3}	V	26 ±5%			
Max. inrush current at 24 V supply	I_{EIN3_max}	A	< 8			
Pulse width of I_{EIN3}	$t_{EIN3Lade}$	ms	< 20			
Input capacitance	C_{N3}	mF	< 0.01			
Power consumption, Control Voltage at $_{UN3}$ and rated switching frequency	P_{N3}	W	41	48	53	46

1) Data refer to the HPC01.1-MN0x optional card

Tab. 7-1: HMU - Control voltage supply data

Control voltage supply data

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0340-0820-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0430-1040-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-1300-N-A4-D7-P
Control voltage input	U_{N3}	V	24 ±20%		
Control voltage when using motor holding brake with motor cable length < 50 m[1)]	U_{N3}	V	24 ±5%		
Control voltage when using motor holding brake with motor cable length > 50 m[1)]	U_{N3}	V	26 ±5%		
Max. inrush current at 24 V supply	I_{EIN3_max}	A	< 8		
Pulse width of I_{EIN3}	$t_{EIN3Lade}$	ms	< 20		
Input capacitance	C_{N3}	mF	< 0.01		
Power consumption, Control Voltage at $_{UN3}$ and rated switching frequency	P_{N3}	W	48	56	58

1) Data refer to the HPC01.1-MN0x optional card

Tab. 7-2: HMU - Control voltage supply data

Control voltage supply data

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0210-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0250-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0300-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0370-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0400-0600-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-0750-N-A5-11-P
Control voltage input	U_{N3}	V	24 ±20%					
Control voltage when using motor holding brake with motor cable length < 50 m[1)]	U_{N3}	V	24 ±5%					
Control voltage when using motor holding brake with motor cable length > 50 m[1)]	U_{N3}	V	26 ±5%					
Max. inrush current at 24 V supply	I_{EIN3_max}	A	< 8					
Pulse width of I_{EIN3}	$t_{EIN3Lade}$	ms	< 20					
Input capacitance	C_{N3}	mF	< 0.01					
Power consumption, Control Voltage at $_{UN3}$ and rated switching frequency	P_{N3}	W	36	39	40	34	42	49

1) Data refer to the HPC01.1-MN0x optional card

Tab. 7-3: HMU - Control voltage supply data

Overvoltage

Overvoltage greater than 33 V has to be discharged by the appropriate electrical equipment of the machine or installation.

This includes:

- 24V power supply units that reduce incoming overvoltage to the allowed value.
- Overvoltage limiters at the control cabinet input that limit existing overvoltage to the allowed value. This also applies to long 24V lines that have been run in parallel to power cables and mains cables and can absorb overvoltage by inductive or capacitive coupling.

7.2.2 Mains voltage

HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx

Electric specifications - Currents, voltages, power

Designation	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0350-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0430-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0510-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0660-N-A4-D7-P
Mains frequency	f_{LN}	Hz	50...60			
Tolerance mains frequency		Hz	±2			
Rotating field condition			none			
Mains voltage, single-phase	U_{LN}	V	-			
Three-phase mains voltage at TN-S, TN-C, TT mains	U_{LN}	V	380…500			
Mains voltage, three-phase at IT mains[1)]	U_{LN}	V	380…500			
Nominal mains voltage	U_{LN_nenn}	V	3 AC 400			
Mains voltage, three-phase at grounded outer conductors[1)]	U_{LN}	V	200...230			
Tolerance U_{LN}		%	+10 / -15			
Assigned mains choke type			HNL05.1R-0219-N0218	HNL05.1R-0182-N0262	HNL05.1R-0135-N0327	HNL05.1R-0117-N0409
Assigned type of mains filter			HNF05.1A-500N-R0250	HNF05.1A-500N-R0320	HNF05.1A-500N-R0400	HNF05.1A-500N-R0600
Nominal current	I_{LN}	A	218.00	262.00	327.00	409.00
Required connection cross section in accordance with NFPA 79 and UL 508 A (internal wiring)	A_{LN}	AWG	Project Planning Manual appendix			
Power factor TPF (λ_L) at P_{DC_cont} with mains choke; U_{LN_nenn}	TPF		0.99			

1) Please consult with Rexroth!

Tab. 7-4: HMU - Electric specifications - Currents, voltages, power

Electric specifications - Currents, voltages, power

Designation	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0340-0820-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0430-1040-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-1300-N-A4-D7-P
Mains frequency	f_{LN}	Hz	50...60		
Tolerance input frequency		Hz	±2		
Rotating field condition			none		
Mains voltage, single-phase	U_{LN}	V	-		
Three-phase mains voltage at TN-S, TN-C, TT mains	U_{LN}	V	380...500		
Mains voltage, three-phase at IT mains[1)]	U_{LN}	V	380...500		
Nominal mains voltage	U_{LN_nenn}	V	3 AC 400		
Mains voltage, three-phase at grounded outer conductors[1)]	U_{LN}	V	200...230		
Tolerance rated input voltage U_{LN}		%	+10 / -15		
Assigned mains choke type			HNL05.1R-0130-N0514	HNL05.1R-0113-N0652	HNL05.1R-0100-N0811
Assigned type of mains filter			HNF05.1A-500N-R0600	HNF05.1A-500N-R1000	
Nominal current	I_{LN}	A	514.00	652.00	811.00
Required connection cross section in accordance with NFPA 79 and UL 508 A (internal wiring)	A_{LN}	AWG	Project Planning Manual appendix		
Power factor TPF (λ_L) at P_{DC_cont} with mains choke; U_{LN_nenn}	TPF		0.99		

1) Please consult with Rexroth!

Tab. 7-5: HMU - Electric specifications - Currents, voltages, power

Electric specifications - Currents, voltages, power

Designation	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0210-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0250-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0300-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0370-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0400-0600-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-0750-N-A5-11-P
Mains frequency	f_{LN}	Hz	50...60					
Tolerance input frequency		Hz	-2.5...+.3.0					
Rotating field condition			none					
Mains voltage, single-phase	U_{LN}	V	-					
Three-phase mains voltage at TN-S, TN-C, TT mains	U_{LN}	V	525...690					
Mains voltage, three-phase at IT mains[1)]	U_{LN}	V	525...690					
Nominal mains voltage	U_{LN_nenn}	V	3 AC 690					
Mains voltage, three-phase at mains with grounded outer conductor[1)]	U_{LN}	V	300...400					
Tolerance U_{LN}		%	+10 / -15					
Assigned mains choke type			HNL05.1R-0649-N0127-N-A5	HNL05.1R-0542-N0152-N-A5	HNL05.1R-0434-N0190-N-A5	HNL05.1R-0346-N0238-N-A5	HNL05.1R-0234-N0352-N-A5	HNL05.1R-0175-N0471-N-A5
Assigned type of mains filter			HNF05.1A-500N-R0150-N-A5	HNF05.1A-500N-R0180-N-A5	HNF05.1A-500N-R0250-N-A5		HNF05.1A-500N-R0400-N-A5	HNF05.1A-500N-R0600-N-A5
Nominal current	I_{LN}	A	127.00	152.00	190.00	238.00	352.00	471.00
Required connection cross section in accordance with NFPA 79 and UL 508 A (internal wiring)	A_{LN}	AWG	Project Planning Manual appendix					
Power factor TPF (λ_L) at P_{DC_cont} with mains choke; U_{LN_nenn}	TPF		0.99					

1) Please consult with Rexroth!

Tab. 7-6: HMU - Electric specifications - Currents, voltages, power

7.2.3 DC bus

HMU05.1N-Fxxxx-xxxx

Mains input voltage (U_{LN}) and DC bus power (P_{DC}), derating

- With $U_{LN} < U_{LN_nenn}$ (nominal mains input voltage), a derating of U_{LN} / U_{LN_nenn} has to be taken into account for the DC bus power.
- With $U_{LN} > U_{LN_nenn}$, the DC bus power remains limited to the nominal value.

DC bus voltage (U_{DC}) and DC bus power (P_{DC}), derating

- With $U_{DC} < U_{DC_nenn}$ (nominal DC bus voltage), a derating of U_{DC} / U_{DC_nenn} has to be taken into account for the DC bus power.
- With $U_{DC} > U_{DC_nenn}$, the DC bus power remains limited to the nominal value.

If both $U_{LN} < U_{LN_nenn}$ and $U_{DC} < U_{DC_nenn}$ are specified only the value with the highest derating needs to be taken into account. So, for example, if $U_{LN} / U_{LN_nenn} < U_{DC} / U_{DC_nenn}$, the value of U_{LN} / U_{LN_nenn} applied for derating.

Power section data - DC bus

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0350-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0430-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0510-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0660-N-A4-D7-P
DC bus voltage	U_{DC}	V	DC 450...800			
DC bus voltage, nominal value	U_{DC_nenn}	V	DC 750			
Capacitance in DC bus	C_{DC}	mF	5.00		6.60	8.25
DC resistance in DC bus (L+ to L-)	R_{DC}	kohm	30			24
Monitoring value maximum DC bus voltage, switch-off threshold	$U_{DC_limit_max}$	V	900			
Monitoring value minimum DC bus voltage, undervoltage threshold	$U_{DC_limit_min}$	V	-			
Monitoring value for maximum DC bus voltage, braking resistor switch-on threshold	$U_{DC_limit_Bleeder}$	V	820			
Allowed external DC bus capacitance (nom.) at U_{LN_nenn}	C_{DCext}	mF	2500			
Nominal power	P_{DC_cont}	kW	140	170	220	270
Maximum allowed DC bus power at U_{LN_nenn}	P_{DC_max}	kW	180	216	260	324

Tab. 7-7: HMU - Power section data - DC bus

Power section data - DC bus

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0340-0820-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0430-1040-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-1300-N-A4-D7-P
DC bus voltage	U_{DC}	V	DC 450...800		
DC bus voltage, nominal value	U_{DC_nenn}	V	DC 750		
Capacitance in DC bus	C_{DC}	mF	9.90	13.20	16.50
DC resistance in DC bus (L+ to L-)	R_{DC}	kohm	24	15	12
Monitoring value maximum DC bus voltage, switch-off threshold	$U_{DC_limit_max}$	V	900		
Monitoring value minimum DC bus voltage, undervoltage threshold	$U_{DC_limit_min}$	V	-		
Monitoring value for maximum DC bus voltage, braking resistor switch-on threshold	$U_{DC_limit_Bleeder}$	V	820		
Allowed external DC bus capacitance (nom.) at U_{LN_nenn}	C_{DCext}	mF	2500		
Nominal power	P_{DC_cont}	kW	340	430	540
Maximum allowed DC bus power at U_{LN_nenn}	P_{DC_max}	kW	405	509	645

Tab. 7-8: HMU - Power section data - DC bus

Power section data - DC bus

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1 N- F0140-0 210-N- A5-11-P	HMU05.1 N- F0170-0 250-N- A5-11-P	HMU05.1 N- F0220-0 300-N- A5-11-P	HMU05.1 N- F0270-0 370-N- A5-11-P	HMU05.1 N- F0400-0 600-N- A5-11-P	HMU05.1 N- F0540-0 750-N- A5-11-P
DC bus voltage	U_{DC}	V	DC 450…1120					
DC bus voltage, nominal value	U_{DC_nenn}	V	DC 1100					
Capacitance in DC bus	C_{DC}	mF	2.20		3.30		4.40	6.60
DC resistance in DC bus (L+ to L-)	R_{DC}	kohm	45					36
Monitoring value maximum DC bus voltage, switch-off threshold	$U_{DC_limit_max}$	V	1200					
Monitoring value minimum DC bus voltage, undervoltage threshold	$U_{DC_limit_min}$	V	-					
Monitoring value for maximum DC bus voltage, braking resistor switch-on threshold	$U_{DC_limit_Bleeder}$	V	1150					
Allowed external DC bus capacitance (nom.) at U_{LN_nenn}	C_{DCext}	mF	2500					
Nominal power	P_{DC_cont}	kW	140	170	220	270	400	540
Maximum allowed DC bus power at U_{LN_nenn}	P_{DC_max}	kW	180	216	260	324	473	645

Tab. 7-9: HMU - Power section data - DC bus

7.2.4 Inverter

HMU05.1-Fxxxx-xxxx

Power section data - inverter

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0350-N-A4-D7-N	HMU05.1N-F0170-0430-N-A4-D7-N	HMU05.1N-F0220-0510-N-A4-D7-N	HMU05.1N-F0270-0660-N-A4-D7-N
Allowed switching frequencies	f_s	kHz	2, 4, 8			
Switching frequency at nominal value	f_{s_nenn}	kHz	4			
Output voltage, fundamental wave in V/Hz (U/f) control	U_{out_eff}	V	~ UDC x 0.71			
Output voltage, fundamental wave in closed-loop operation	U_{out_eff}	V	~ UDC x 0.71			
Rise of voltage at output with U_{LN_nenn} and 15 m motor cable length phase-phase (10-90%)[1)]	dv/dt	kV/µs	5.00		3.00	
Rise of voltage at output with U_{LN_nenn} and 15 m motor cable length phase-ground (10-90%)[2)]	dv/dt	kV/µs	2.00			
Output frequency range when f_s = 2 kHz	f_{out_2k}	Hz	0…200)			
Output frequency range when f_s = 4 kHz	f_{out_4k}	Hz	0…400			
Output frequency range when f_s = 8 kHz	f_{out_8k}	Hz	0…800			
Output frequency threshold to detect motor standstill[3)]	f_{out_still}	Hz	6			
Maximum output current when f_s = 2 kHz	I_{out_max2}	A	357	427	515	660
Maximum output current when f_s = 4 kHz	I_{out_max4}	A	357	427	515	660
Maximum output current when f_s = 8 kHz	I_{out_max8}	A	242	362	430	476
Continuous output current when f_s = 2 kHz	I_{out_cont2}	A	254	306	392	490
Continuous output current when f_s = 4 kHz	I_{out_cont4}	A	254	306	392	490
Continuous output current when f_s = 8 kHz	I_{out_cont8}	A	182	260	315	350
Continuous output current when f_s = 1 kHz; output frequency $f_{out} < f_{out_still}$[4)]	$I_{out_cont0Hz_1}$	A	210	251	302	388

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0350-N-A4-D7-N	HMU05.1N-F0170-0430-N-A4-D7-N	HMU05.1N-F0220-0510-N-A4-D7-N	HMU05.1N-F0270-0660-N-A4-D7-N
Continuous output current when f_s = 2 kHz; output frequency $f_{out} < f_{out_still}$	$I_{out_cont0Hz_2}$	A	210	251	302	388
Continuous output current when f_s = 4 kHz; output frequency $f_{out} < f_{out_still}$	$I_{out_cont0Hz_4}$	A	210	230	302	320
Continuous output current when f_s = 8 kHz; output frequency $f_{out} < f_{out_still}$	$I_{out_cont0Hz_8}$	A	150	185	213	

1) 2) Guide value, see following note
3) See following note regarding output current reduction
4) The switching frequency f_s = 1 kHz is not allowed; this setting is only relevant if the "halving the PWM frequency in the standstill range" function is used; see "P-0-0045, Control word of current controller"

Tab. 7-10: HMU - Power section data - inverter

Power section data - inverter

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0340-0820-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0430-1040-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-1300-N-A4-D7-P
Allowed switching frequencies	f_s	kHz	2, 4, 8		
Switching frequency at nominal value	f_{s_nenn}	kHz	2		
Output voltage, fundamental wave in V/Hz (U/f) control	U_{out_eff}	V	~ UDC x 0.71		
Output voltage, fundamental wave in closed-loop operation	U_{out_eff}	V	~ UDC x 0.71		
Rise of voltage at output with U_{LN_nenn} and 15 m motor cable length phase-phase (10-90%)[1)]	dv/dt	kV/µs	3.00		
Rise of voltage at output with U_{LN_nenn} and 15 m motor cable length phase-ground (10-90%)[2)]	dv/dt	kV/µs	2.00		
Output frequency range when f_s = 2 kHz	f_{out_2k}	Hz	0..200		
Output frequency range when f_s = 4 kHz	f_{out_4k}	Hz	0..400		
Output frequency range when f_s = 8 kHz	f_{out_8k}	Hz	0..800		
Output frequency threshold to detect motor standstill[3)]	f_{out_still}	Hz	6		
Maximum output current when f_s = 2 kHz	I_{out_max2}	A	825	1037	1297

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0340-0820-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0430-1040-N-A4-D7-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-1300-N-A4-D7-P
Maximum output current when f_s = 4 kHz	I_{out_max4}	A	765	838	1000
Maximum output current when f_s = 8 kHz	I_{out_max8}	A	510	650	736
Continuous output current when f_s = 2 kHz	I_{out_cont2}	A	616	771	1002
Continuous output current when f_s = 4 kHz	I_{out_cont4}	A	546	624	775
Continuous output current when f_s = 8 kHz	I_{out_cont8}	A	364	465	526
Continuous output current when f_s = 1 kHz; output frequency $f_{out} < f_{out_still}$ [4)]	$I_{out_cont0Hz_1}$	A	485	610	705
Continuous output current when f_s = 2 kHz; output frequency $f_{out} < f_{out_still}$	$I_{out_cont0Hz_2}$	A	485	610	650
Continuous output current when f_s = 4 kHz; output frequency $f_{out} < f_{out_still}$	$I_{out_cont0Hz_4}$	A	450	493	500
Continuous output current when f_s = 8 kHz; output frequency $f_{out} < f_{out_still}$	$I_{out_cont0Hz_8}$	A	For idle operation, switch the PWM frequency from 8 kHz to 4 kHz		

1) 2) Guide value, see following note
3) See following note regarding output current reduction
4) The switching frequency f_s = 1 kHz is not allowed; this setting is only relevant if the "halving the PWM frequency in the standstill range" function is used; see "P-0-0045, Control word of current controller"

Tab. 7-11: HMU - Power section data - inverter

Power section data - inverter

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0210-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0250-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0300-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0370-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0400-0600-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-0750-N-A5-11-P
Allowed switching frequencies	f_s	kHz	2, 4, 8					
Switching frequency at nominal value	f_{s_nenn}	kHz	4			2		
Output voltage, fundamental wave in V/Hz (U/f) control	U_{out_eff}	V	~ UDC x 0.71					
Output voltage, fundamental wave in closed-loop operation	U_{out_eff}	V	~ UDC x 0.71					

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0210-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0250-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0300-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0370-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0400-0600-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-0750-N-A5-11-P
Rise of voltage at output with U_{LN_nenn} and 15 m motor cable length phase-phase (10-90%)[1)]	dv/dt	kV/µs	5.00					
Rise of voltage at output with U_{LN_nenn} and 15 m motor cable length phase-ground (10-90%)[2)]	dv/dt	kV/µs	4.00					
Output frequency range when f_s = 2 kHz	f_{out_2k}	Hz	0..200					
Output frequency range when f_s = 4 kHz	f_{out_4k}	Hz	0..400					
Output frequency range when f_s = 8 kHz	f_{out_8k}	Hz	0..800					
Output frequency threshold to detect motor standstill[3)]	f_{out_still}	Hz	6					
Maximum output current when f_s = 2 kHz	I_{out_max2}	A	207	248	298	367	600	751
Maximum output current when f_s = 4 kHz	I_{out_max4}	A	207	248	298		425	482
Maximum output current when f_s = 8 kHz	I_{out_max8}	A	130				220	160
Continuous output current when f_s = 2 kHz	I_{out_cont2}	A	147	177	227	284	379	587
Continuous output current when f_s = 4 kHz	I_{out_cont4}	A	147	177	227		269	377
Continuous output current when f_s = 8 kHz	I_{out_cont8}	A	100				139	125
Continuous output current when f_s = 1 kHz; output frequency $f_{out} < f_{out_still}$[4)]	$I_{out_cont0Hz_1}$	A	122	146	175	216	353	442
Continuous output current when f_s = 2 kHz; output frequency $f_{out} < f_{out_still}$	$I_{out_cont0Hz_2}$	A	122	146	175	216	345	439

Description	Symbol	Unit	HMU05.1N-F0140-0210-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0170-0250-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0220-0300-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0270-0370-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0400-0600-N-A5-11-P	HMU05.1N-F0540-0750-N-A5-11-P
Continuous output current when f_s = 4 kHz; output frequency $f_{out} < f_{out_still}$	$I_{out_cont0Hz_4}$	A	122	139			222	227
Continuous output current when f_s = 8 kHz; output frequency $f_{out} < f_{out_still}$	$I_{out_cont0Hz_8}$	A	72				116	For idle operation, switch the PWM frequency from 8 kHz to 4 kHz

1) 2) Guide value, see following note
3) See following note regarding output current reduction
4) The switching frequency f_s = 1 kHz is not allowed; this setting is only relevant if the "halving the PWM frequency in the standstill range" function is used; see "P-0-0045, Control word of current controller"

Tab. 7-12: HMU - Power section data - inverter

☞ **Guide value "Rise of voltage at output"**

Please note that the voltage load at the motor is almost independent of the power section used.

Particularly when using **standard motors**, make sure that the standard motors can withstand the occurring voltage load.

The line length and line type influence the rate of voltage rise.

☞ **Reduced output current at motor standstill**

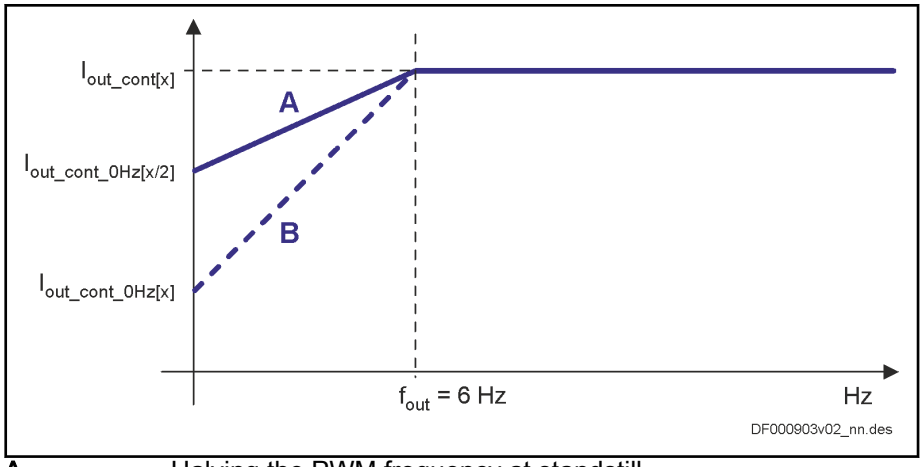
Depending on the electric output frequency, the output current is reduced for thermal protection of the power section.

The output current is reduced, when the electric output frequency has fallen below the threshold to detect motor standstill.

Reducing the output current during standby

For single-cycle motor starts, an increased standstill current is permitted for 0.5 s.

This process can be repeated every 10 minutes.



A Halving the PWM frequency at standstill
B constant PWM frequency

Fig. 7-1: Current waveform during acceleration

☞ For a detailed sizing calculations, Rexroth provides the sizing tool "IndraSize".

8 Cables, accessories, additional components

8.1 Overview

8.1.1 Cables

Function	Cables, connectors
IndraBus	RKB0035 (shielded, < 100 m) RKB0036 (unshielded, < 3 m) RBS0025 (terminating plug)
HNA bus	RKB0037
Connection of HPC01.1-P001-NN parallel connection modules	RKB0038

Tab. 8-1: Cables - overview

8.1.2 Accessories

Accessories	Notice
HAS03: Mounting and connection accessories	For mounting an HNA05/HLT05
HAS08: Cabinet installation kit	For mounting an HMU05
HAS10.1-001: Blank covers, motor monitor grounding, mounting plates, fixing clips	
HAS10.1-002: Mounting frame	For mounting an HMU05 using through-hole technology

Tab. 8-2: Accessories - overview

8.1.3 Additional components

Type	Additional component
HAH02	Heat exchanger
HAS04	DC bus ground capacitor pair
HLL05	DC bus choke
HML05	Motor choke
HNA05	Mains connection module
HNC05	Mains capacitor
HNF05	Mains filter
HNL05	Mains choke
HLR05	Braking resistor
HLT05	Braking unit

Type	Additional component
QT20.241 QTD20.241 QT40.241	24V power supply unit
YR40.241 YR80.241	Redundancy module

Tab. 8-3: Additional components - overview

8.2 Accessories

8.2.1 Mounting and connection accessories (HAS03)

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	A	S	0	3	.	1	-	0	0	2	-	N	N	N	-	N	N																								
	①			②			③			④					⑤				⑥																							

①	**Product:** HAS = IndraDrive accessories
②	**Series:** 03 = Control cabinet adapter
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Device assignment:** 002 = HCS02.1E-W0012 002 = HCS02.1E-W0028 002 = HLB01.1C-01K0-N06R0-A-007-NNNN 002 = HLC01.1C-01M0-A-007-NNNN 002 = HLC01.1C-02M4-A-007-NNNN 004 = HCS02.1E-W0054 004 = HCS02.1E-W0070 006 = HNA05.1, HLT05.1W-105K (height leveling + depth leveling 200 mm) 007 = HNA05.1, HLT05.1W-105K (height leveling + depth leveling 240 mm)
⑤	**Other properties:** NNN = None
⑥	**Other design:** NN = None

Tab. 8-4: HAS03, type code

Use Accessories are used to mount HNA05 mains connection modules or HLT05 braking units in the control cabinet and even out the height (defined offset parallel to the mounting surface) or depth (defined offset vertical to the mounting surface).

8.2.2 Cabinet mounting kit (HAS08)

Type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	A	S	0	8	.	1	-	0	0	1	-	P	5	4	-	F	L																							
	①			②			③			④				⑤			⑥																									

①	**Product:** HAS = IndraDrive accessories
②	**Series:** 08 = Cabinet installation kit
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Device assignment:** 001 = HCS04.2E-W0290 002 = HCS04.2E-W0350 003 = HCS04.2E-W0420 004 = HCS04.2E-W0520 005 = HCS04.2E-W0640 005 = HCS04.2E-W0790 006 = HCS04.2E-W1010 006 = HCS04.2E-W1240 007 = HCS04.2E-W1540 008 = HMU05.1N-F (008 is replaced by 010) 009 = HMU05.1N-W 010 = HMU05.1N-F
⑤	**Degree of protection:** P00 = IP00 P23 = IP23 P54 = IP54 NNN = Not relevant
⑥	**Other design:** NN = None FL = Filter fan GL = Separate air flow MH = Mounting kit, dismounting kit

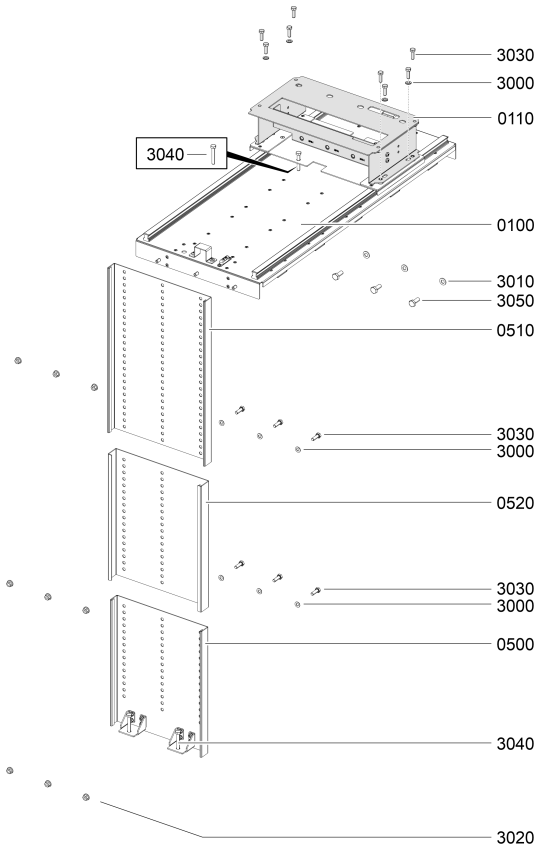
Tab. 8-5: HAS08, type code

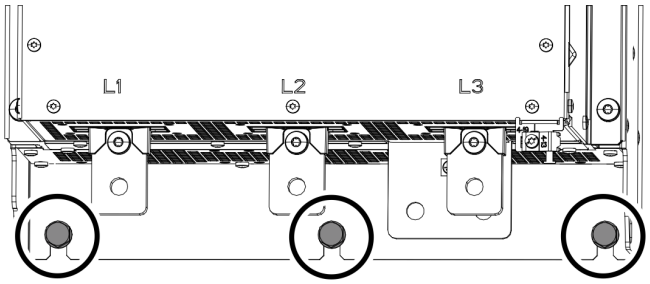
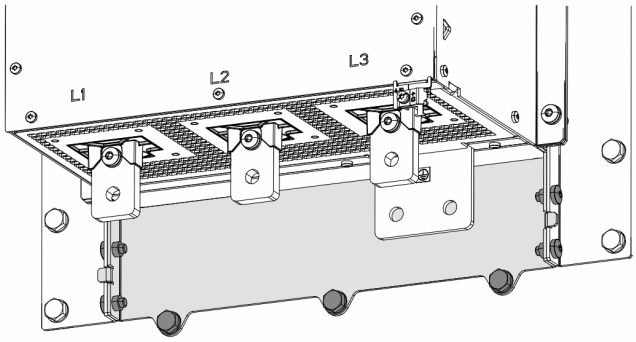
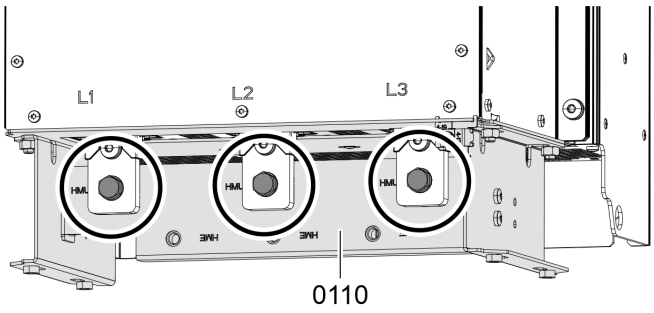
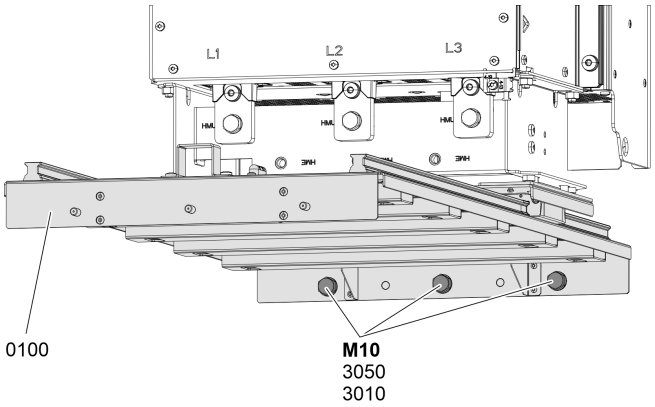
HAS08.1-009-NNN-MH

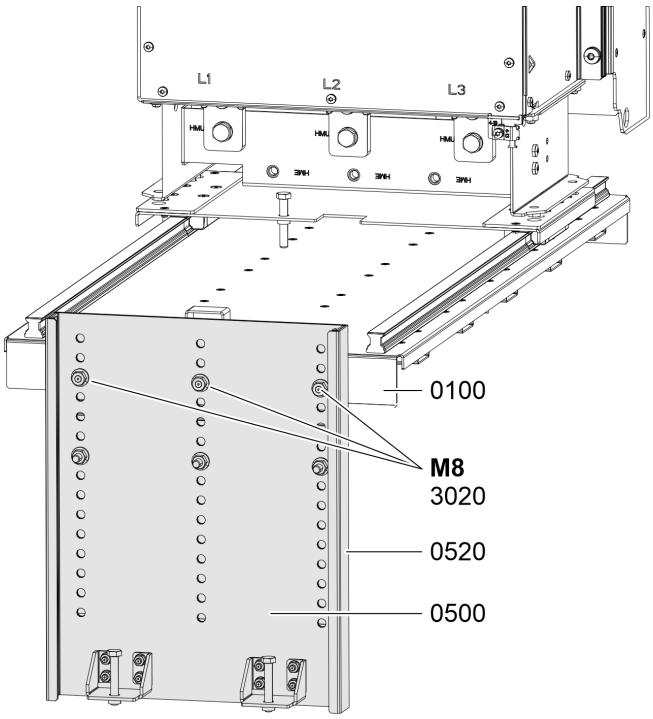
Cabinet mounting kit for **air-cooled** devices HMU05.1-**W**…

Material number R911408249

Position / Position	Mat. no. / Mat. no.	Name / Item	Quantity / Qty.	Unit / Unit
0100	R911398499	LINEAR GUIDE ASSEMBLY HMU W	1	ST
0110	R911398531	DEVICE MOUNTING ASSEMBLY HMU W	1	ST
0500	R911398373	SHEET METAL SUPPORT ASSEMBLY 39&	1	ST
0510	R911408432	SHEET METAL SUPPORT 510 MM	1	ST
0520	R911408433	SHEET METAL SUPPORT 2 390MM	1	ST
3000	R911215757	WASHER 8.40 X 16.00 X 1.60 DIN 125 B	10	ST
3010	R911213277	WASHER 10.50X 20.00X 2,00 DIN 125 A	3	ST
3020	R911223313	NUT-KOM-M 8.0-D18-H09.50 A2-B	9	ST
3030	R911292421	HEXAGON HEAD SCREW ISO 4017-M8X25-8.8-ZN&	14	ST
3040	R911258195	HEXAGON HEAD SCREW ISO 4017-M8X50-8.8-VE&	3	ST
3050	R911212947	HEXAGON HEAD SCREW ISO4017-M10X25-8.8	3	ST



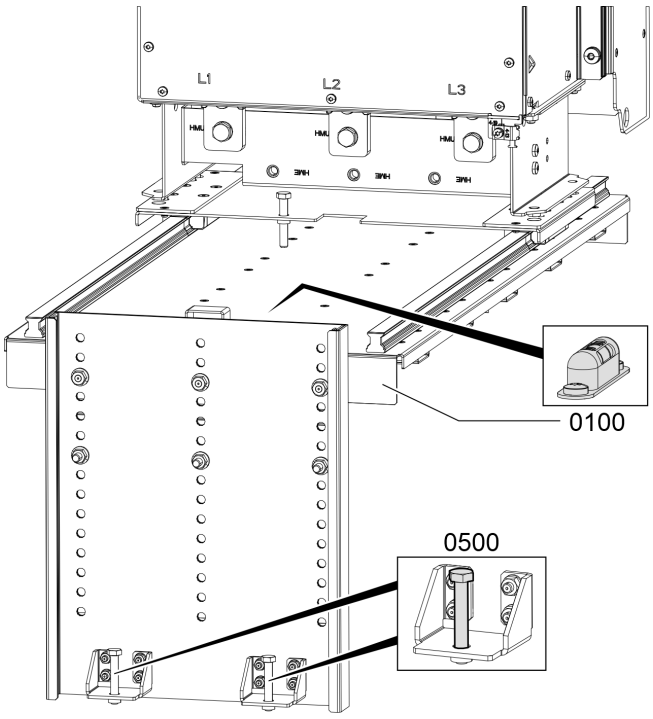
	HMU **wall-mounted**: Remove the lower fastening screws from HMU.
	HMU with **push-through mounting**: Remove lower mounting plate of mounting frame. For this purpose, remove the three M10 screws and the four M8 screws.
	With three M10 screws and washers, mount device holder (0110) to the L1/L2/L3 connection points of HMU.
	With three screws (**M10**×25; 3050) and washers (3010), mount linear guide (0100) in the control cabinet.



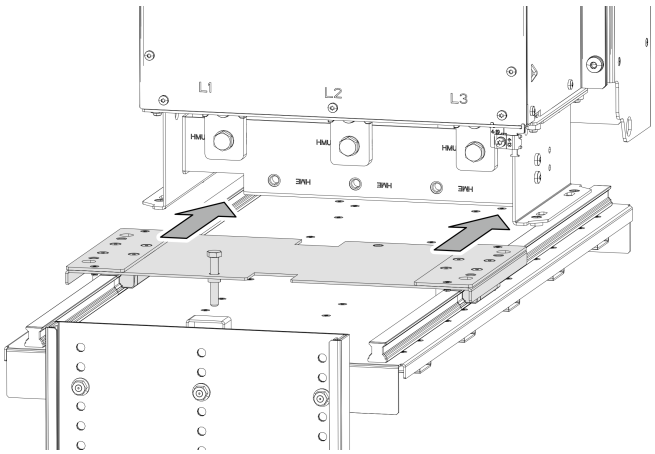
Plates 0500/0510/0520:

Depending on the distance from HMU to the floor, the plates 0510/0520 may have to be screwed to the plate 0500 in the appropriate position. The pictured case does not need plate 0510 and plate 0520 does not need to be moved.

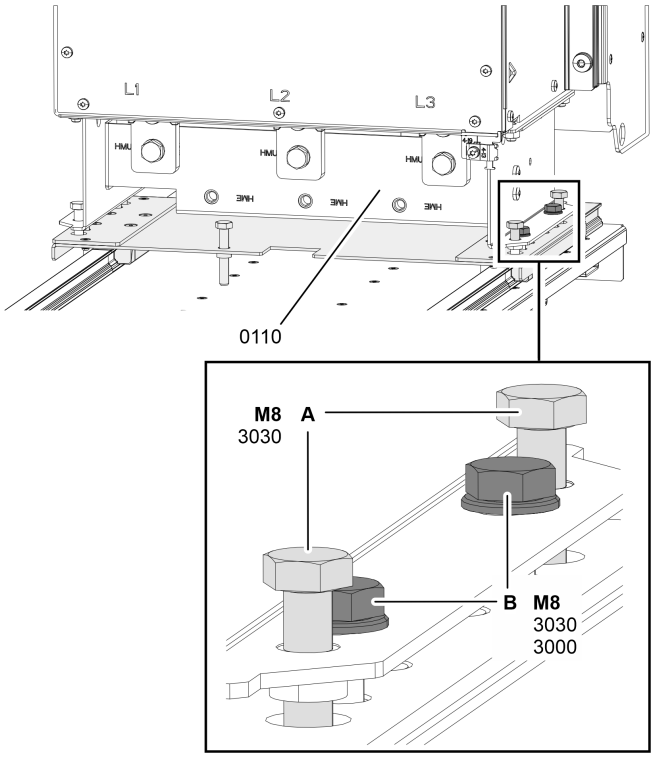
Mount plate (0500/0510/0520) to the linear guide (0100) using three nuts (**M8**; 3020).



Align the linear guide (0100) horizontally using two screws at plate 0500 and the spirit level at the linear guide (0100).



Push slide unit under HMU.



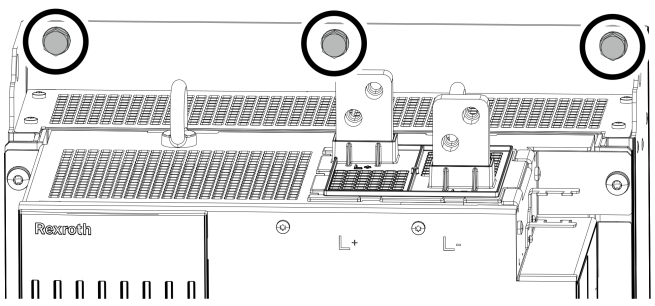
Fix slide unit to device holder (0110) with screws:

- **A:** Screw in the screws M8 (3030) as far as possible
- **B:** First of all, only screw in the screws M8 (3030) with washers (3000) a little bit

Equally tighten screws **A** until the device holder (0110) lifts off the slide unit and is flush with HMU.

This relieves the mounting screws of HMU, and prevents HMU from dropping after its mounting screws have been loosened.

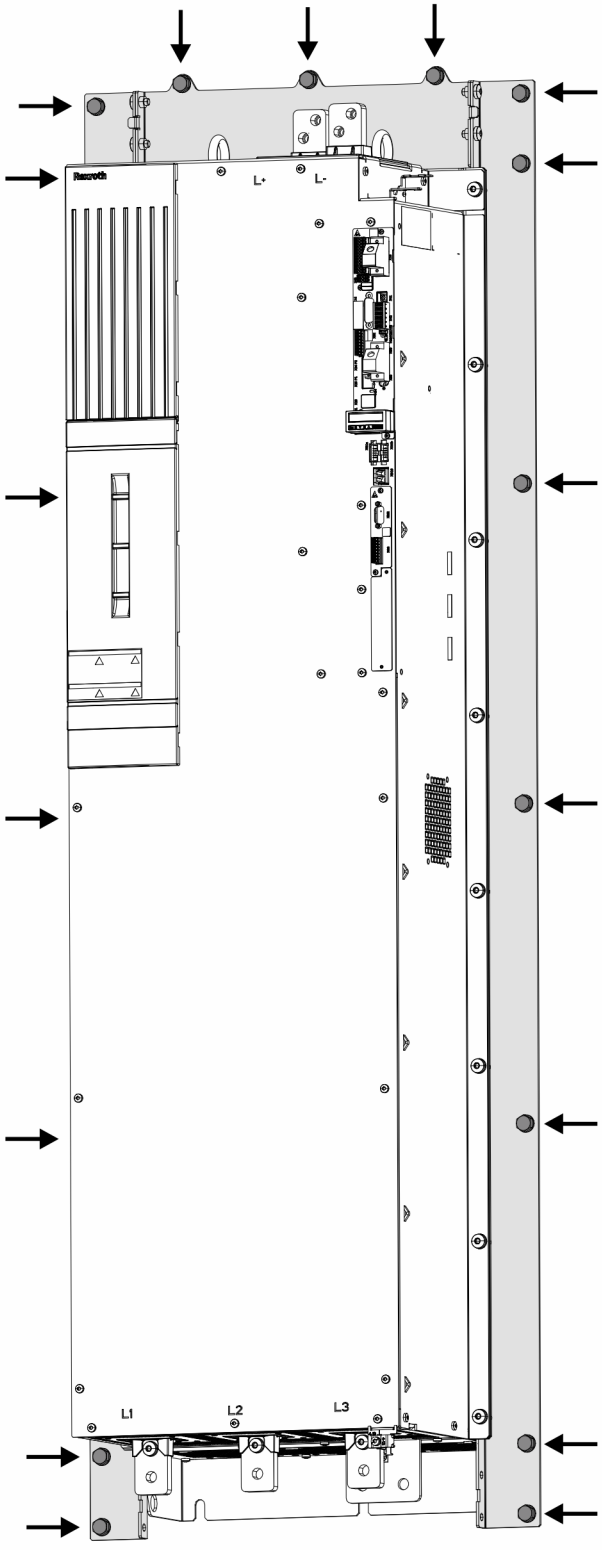
Tighten screws **B**.



HMU **wall-mounted**:

CAUTION! HMU may tilt after the mounting screws were removed!

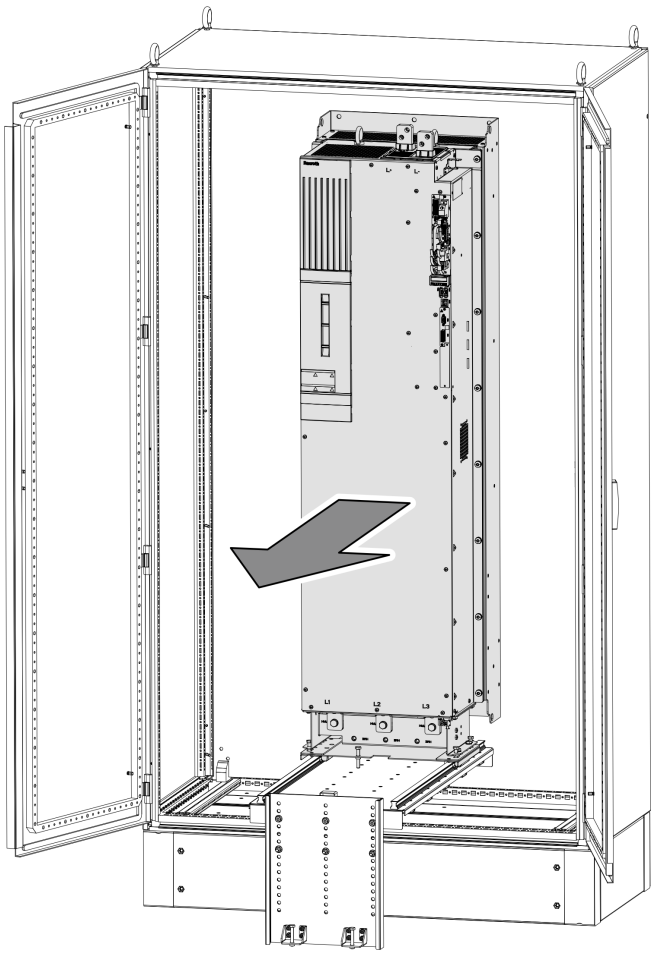
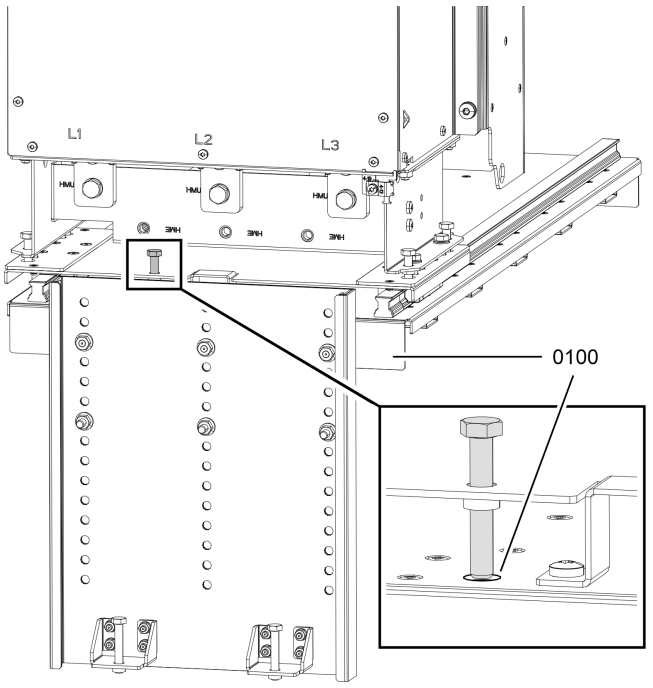
Remove upper mounting screws of HMU.

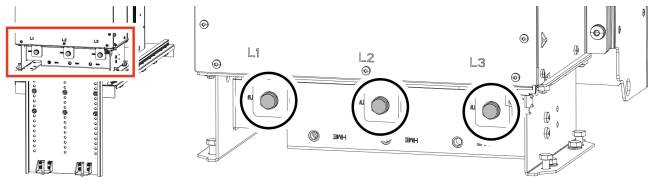


HMU with **push-through mounting**:

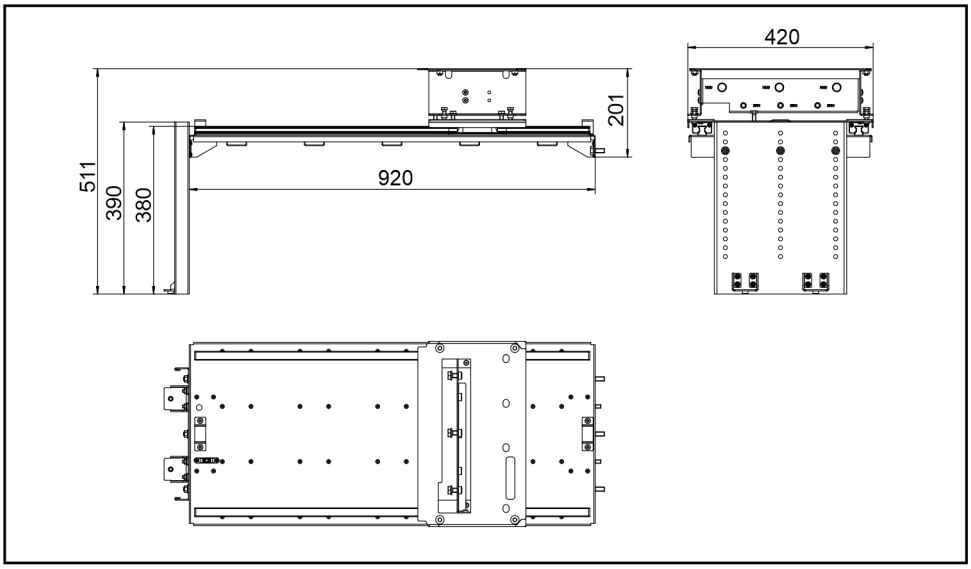
CAUTION! HMU may tilt after the mounting screws were removed!

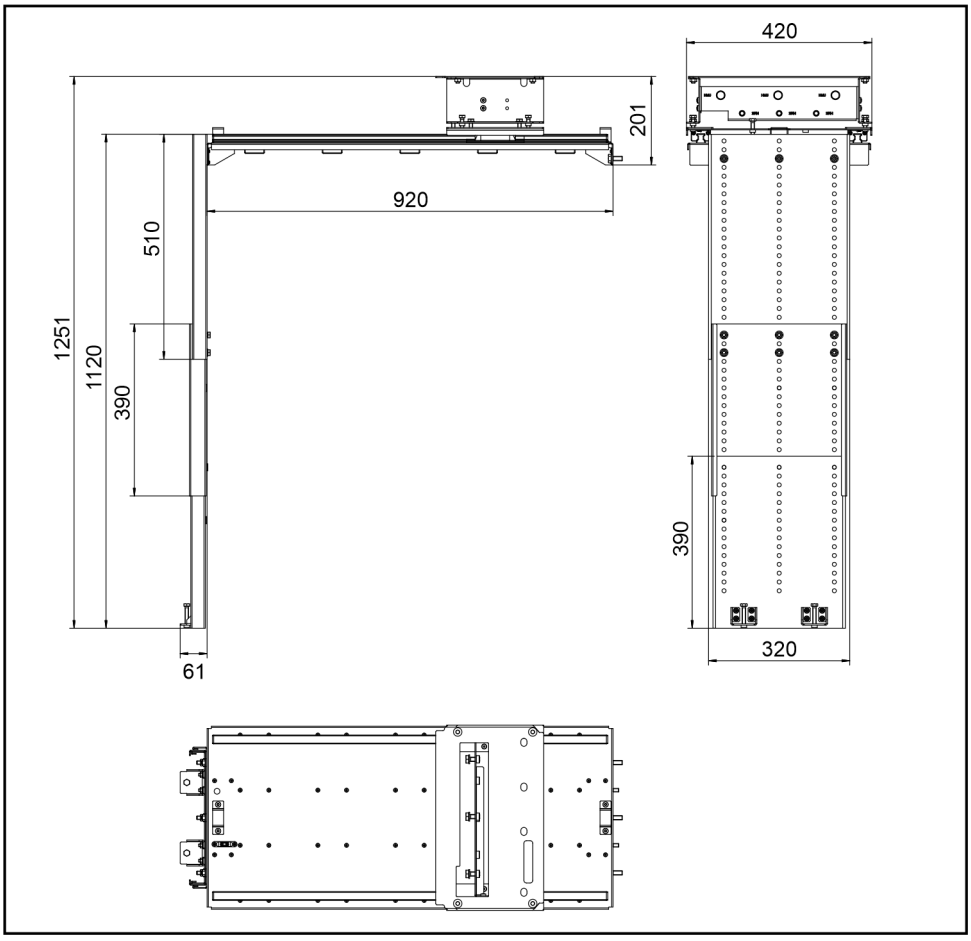
Starting from below, remove the mounting screws of the mounting frame.

	Pull HMU out of the control cabinet.
	Position screw of slide unit above the hole of the linear guide (0100) and tighten it.

	Hang up HMU using a crane or a comparable carrying device. **CAUTION! After the screws at HMU were removed, HMU can move freely while hanging on the crane.** Remove the screws. HMU can now be moved freely while hanging on the crane.
Install the device in reverse order	

Dimensions



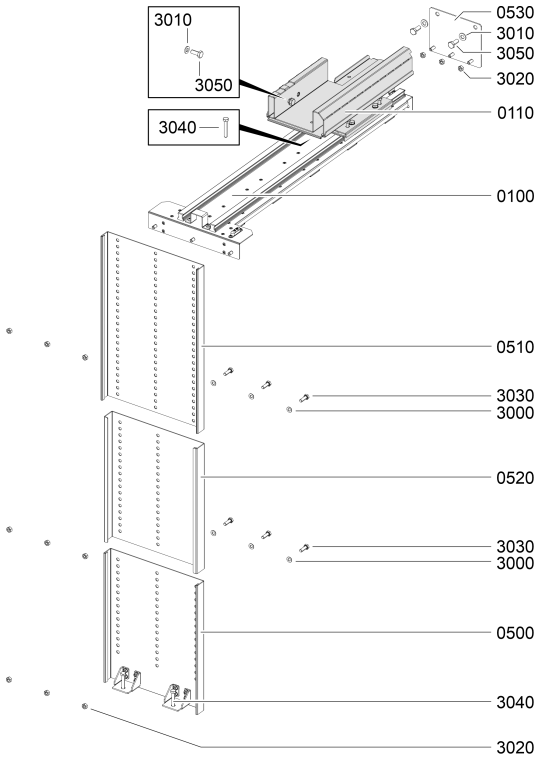


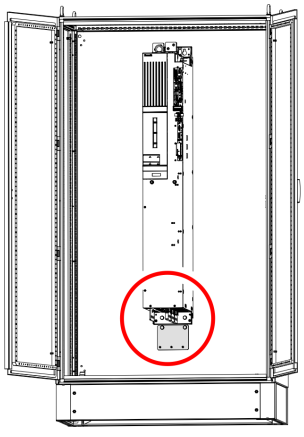
HAS08.1-010-NNN-MH

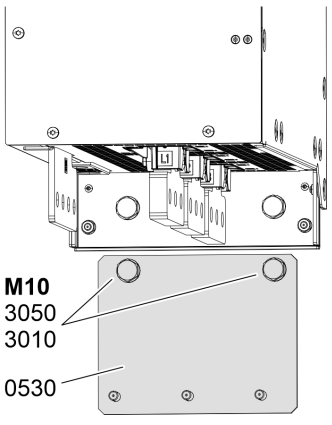
Cabinet mounting kit for **liquid-cooled** devices HMU05.1-**F**…

Material number R911408250

Position / Position	Mat. no. / Mat. no.	Name / Item	Quantity / Qty.	Unit / Unit
0100	R911408805	LINEAR GUIDE ASSEMBLY HMU F	1	ST
0110	R911408820	DEVICE MOUNTING ASSEMBLY HMU F	1	ST
0500	R911398373	SHEET METAL SUPPORT ASSEMBLY 39&	1	ST
0510	R911408432	SHEET METAL SUPPORT 510 MM	1	ST
0520	R911408433	SHEET METAL SUPPORT 2 390MM	1	ST
0530	R911398380	ADAPTER REMOVAL TOOL&	1	ST
3000	R911215757	WASHER 8.40 X 16.00 X 1.60 DIN 125 B	10	ST
3010	R911213277	WASHER 10.50X 20.00X 2,00 DIN 125 A	3	ST
3020	R911223313	NUT-KOM-M 8.0-D18-H09.50	12	ST
3030	R911292421	HEXAGON HEAD SCREW ISO 4017-M8X25-8.8-ZN&	14	ST
3040	R911258195	HEXAGON HEAD SCREW ISO 4017-M8X50-8.8-VE&	3	ST
3050	R911212947	HEXAGON HEAD SCREW ISO4017-M10X25-8.8	3	ST

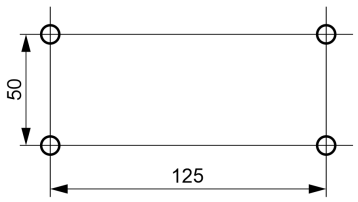


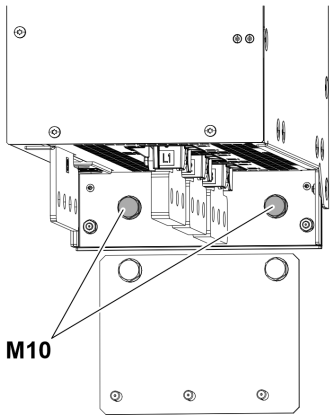
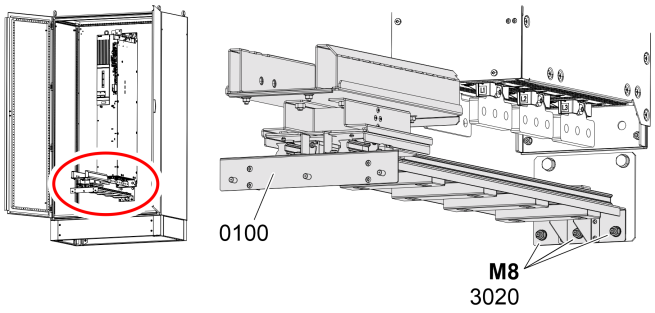
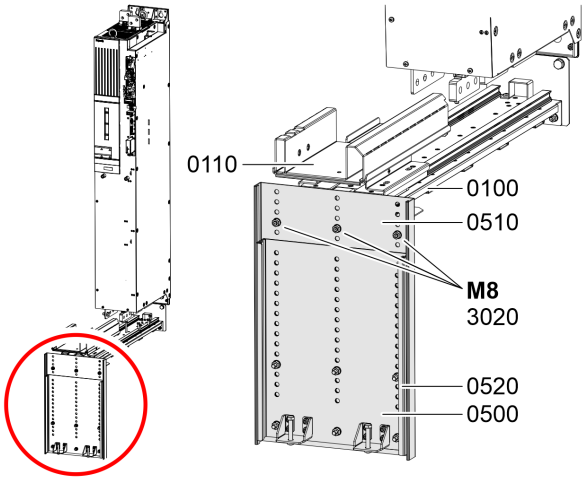


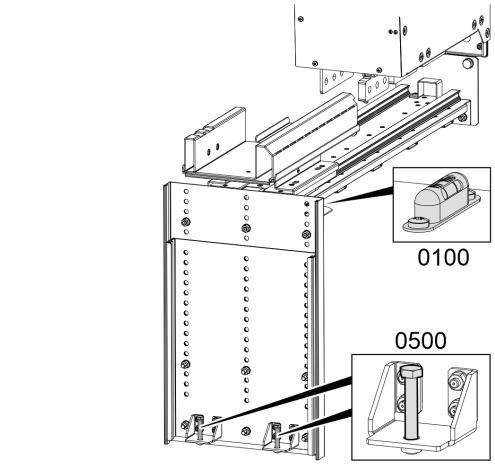
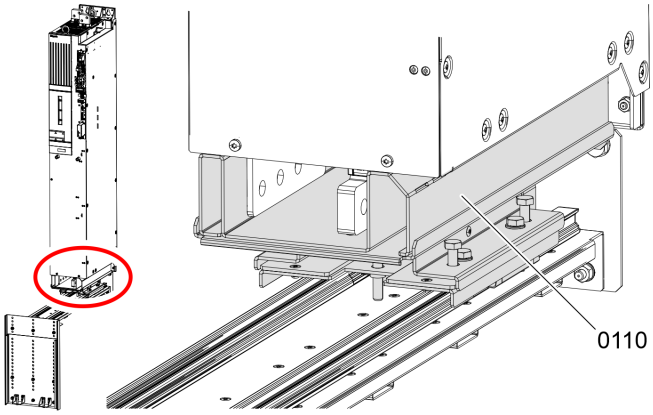
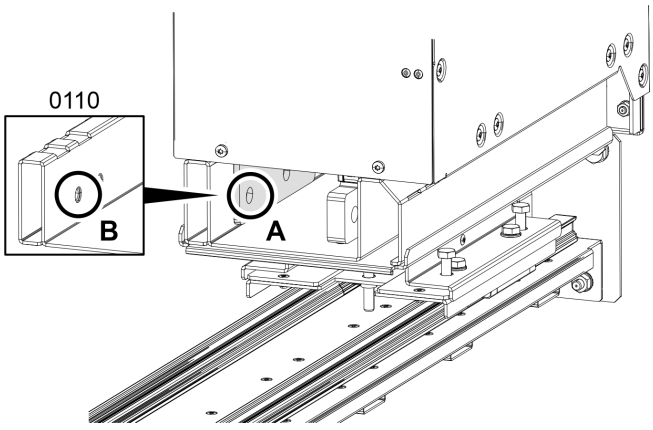


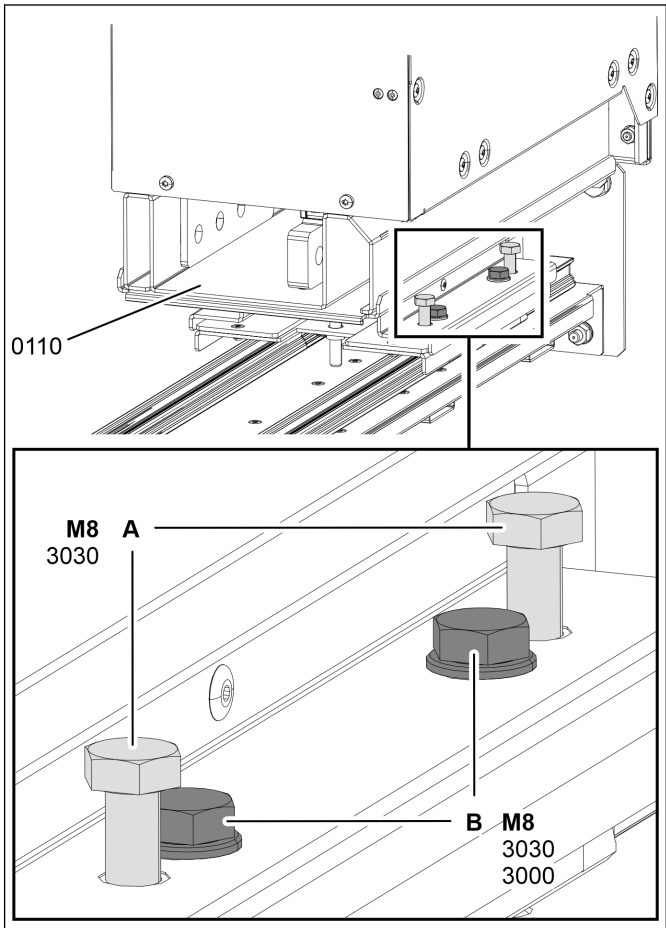
Install the adapter (0530) in the control cabinet using two screws (**M10**×25; 3050) and washers (3010).

Position of the screws relative to the lower mounting screws on the HMU:



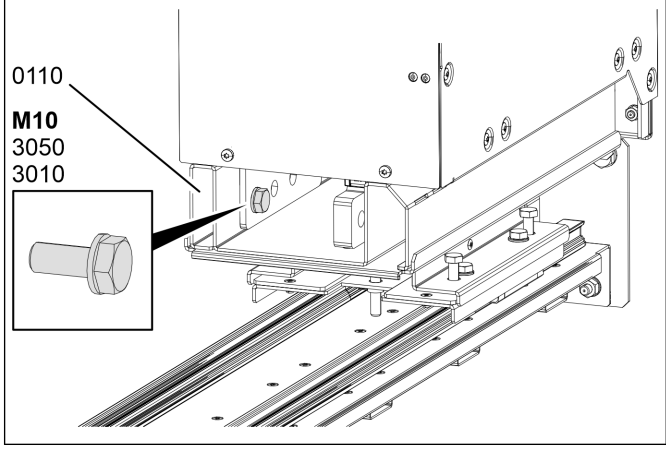
	Remove the lower mounting screws (**M10**) from the HMU.
	Mount linear guide (0100) to the adapter using three nuts (**M8**; 3020).
	Plates 0500/0510/0520: Depending on the distance from HMU to the floor, the other plates (0510/0520) may have to be screwed to the plate (0500) in the appropriate position. Make sure that the upper sheet (0510) is positioned below the device holder (0110). Mount plate (0500/0510/0520) to the linear guide (0100) using three nuts (**M8**; 3020).

	Use the bubble level on the linear guide (0100) and the screws on the plate (0500) to level the linear guide.
	Push device holder (0110) under the HMU.
	Position the device holder (0110) so that hole **A** on the HMU grounding tab aligns with thread **B** on the device mount (0110). In a later step, a screw is inserted through the grounding lug and screwed into threaded hole B of the device holder (0110). The first thread in the device holder (0110) is for devices F0540 and F0430. This case is shown in the figure. The second thread applies to all smaller devices.

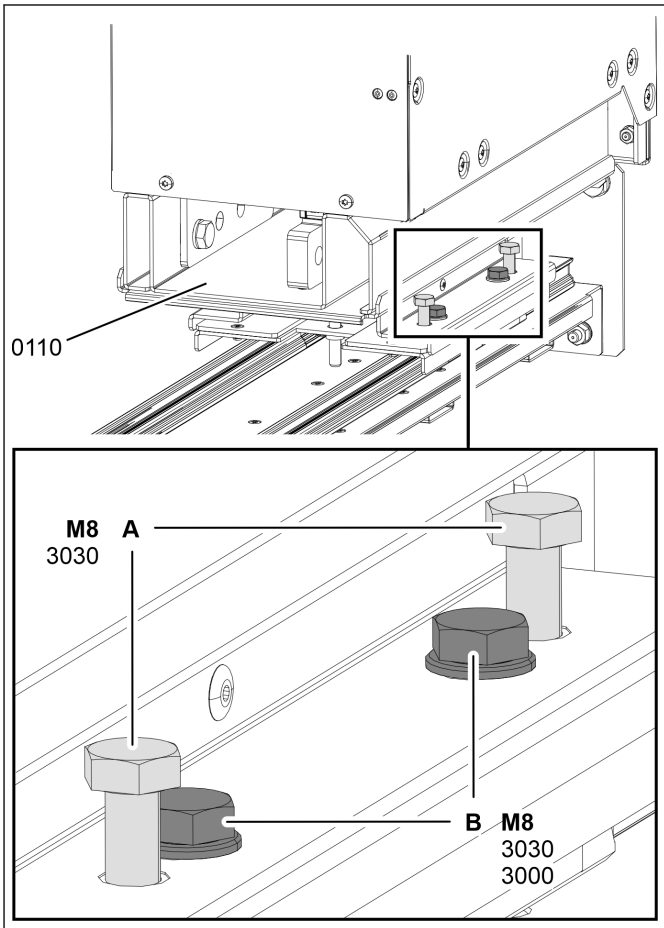


Lift the device holder (0110) until it is flush against the HMU:

Tighten all four screws **A** (**M8**×25; 3030) evenly and, if necessary, loosen screws **B** (**M8**×25; 3030; 3000: washer).



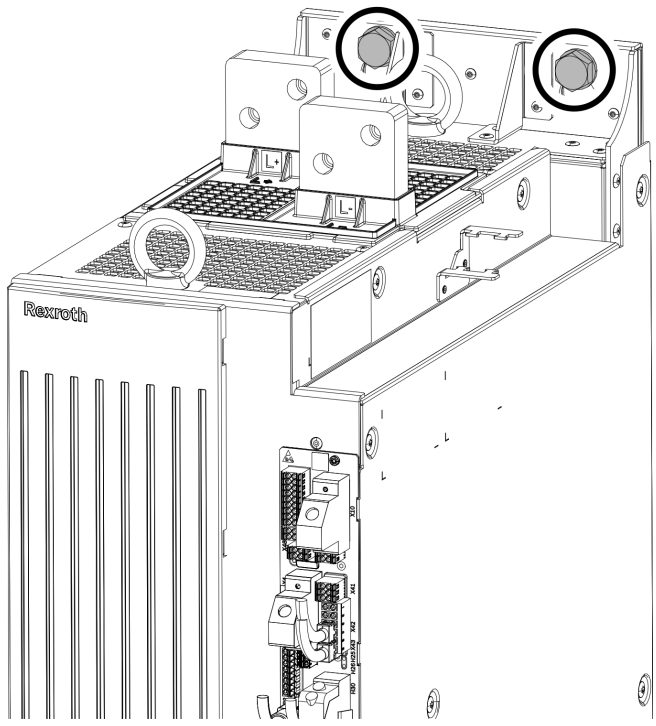
Screw the screw (**M10×25**; 3050) with the washer (3010) through the HMU grounding lug into the device holder (0110).



Raise the device holder (0110) a little further using screws **A** (**M8**×25; 3030) to relieve the stress on the upper mounting screws on the HMU.

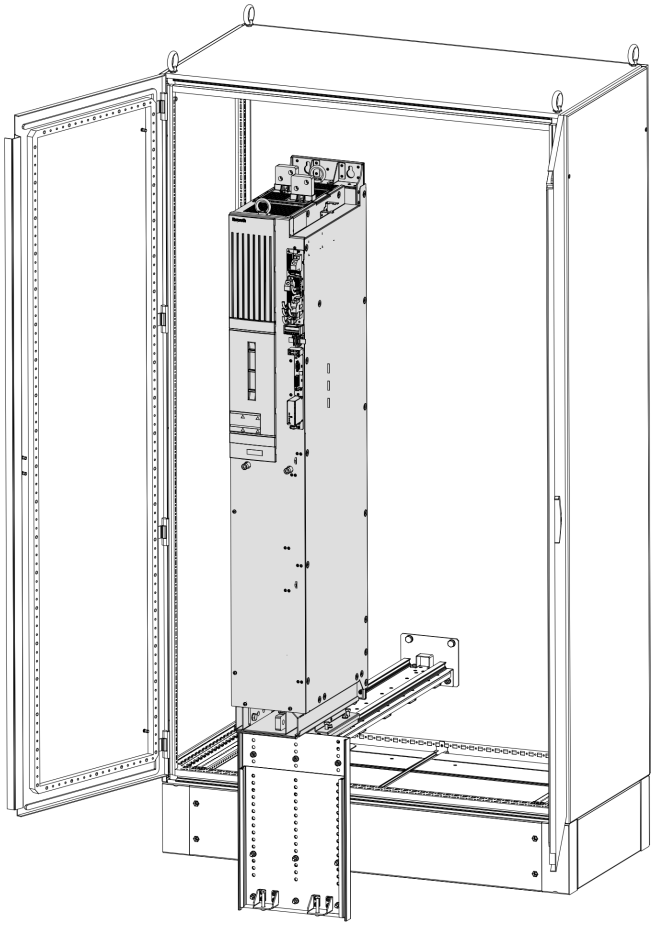
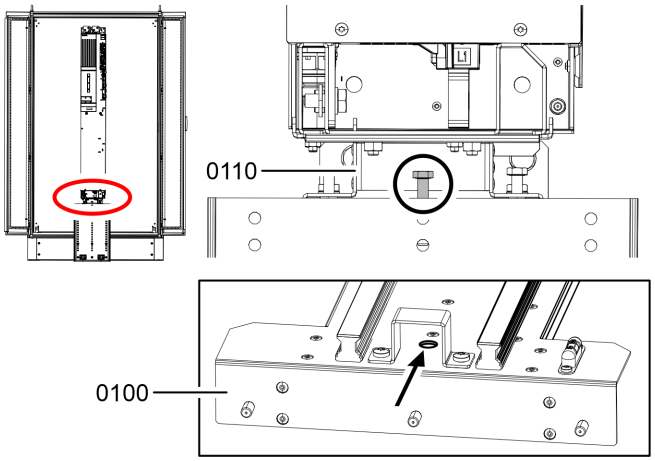
This prevents the HMU from dropping after its upper mounting screws are loosened.

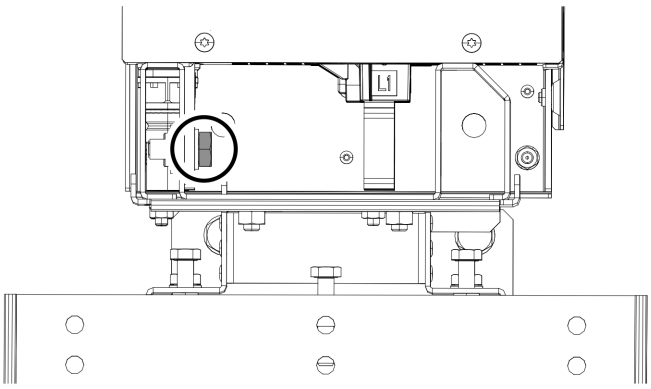
Tighten screws **B** (**M8**×25; 3030; 3000: washer).



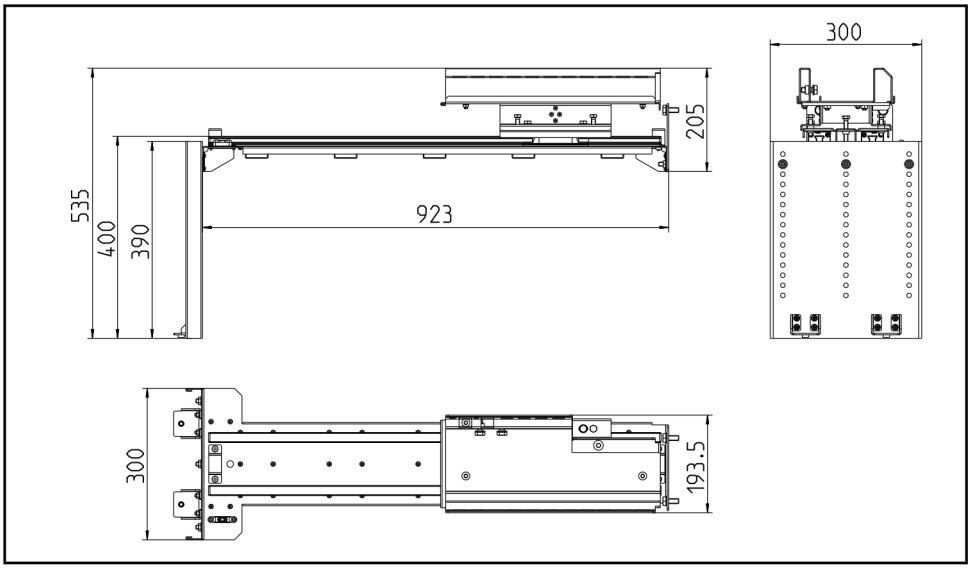
CAUTION! HMU may tilt after the upper mounting screws were removed!

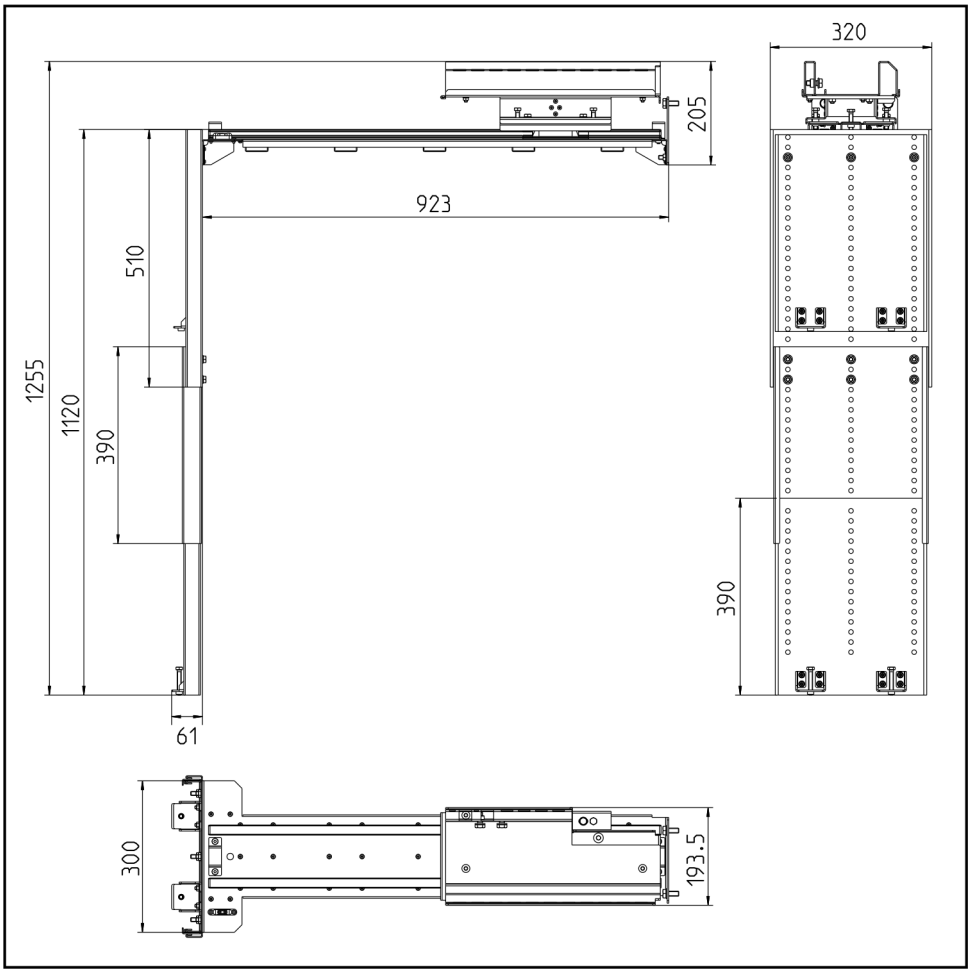
Remove upper mounting screws of the HMU.

	Pull HMU out of the control cabinet.
	Secure the device holder (0110): Screw the screw on the device holder (0110) into the linear guide (0100).

	Hang up HMU using a crane or a comparable carrying device. **CAUTION! Once the screw on the grounding lug has been removed, the HMU can move freely while suspended from the crane.** Remove the screw from the grounding lug. HMU can now be moved freely while hanging on the crane.
Install the device in reverse order	

Dimensions


300
205
535
400
390
923
300
193.5


320
205
923
510
1255
1120
390
390
61
300
193.5

8.2.3 Blank covers, motor monitor grounding, mounting plates, fixing clips, push-through technology frame (HAS10)

HAS10 type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	A	S	1	0	.	1	-	0	0	1	-	0	0	2	-	N	N																								
	①			②			③			④					⑤				⑥																							

①	**Product:** HAS = IndraDrive accessories
②	**Series:** 10 = Mechanical mounting parts
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Device assignment [1]:** 001 = KSM01.2, KSM02.1 KMS01.2 and KMS02.1 002 = HMU05.1
⑤	**Other properties [2]:** 001 = Fixing clip of connectors for increased vibration resistance 002 = Fixing clip of connectors and master communication for increased vibration resistance 003 = Blank cover for mounting bays: 1 × parallel module / 1 × motor mains module / 1 × control section 004 = Motor monitor grounding 005 = Mounting plate for device width 200 mm 006 = Mounting plate for device width 220 mm 007 = Fixing clip for increased vibration resistance (maritime applications) 008 = Cross-brace 335 mm (for HAS10.1-002-007-NN) 009 = Cross-brace 555 mm (for HAS10.1-002-007-NN) 010 = Cross-brace 775 mm (for HAS10.1-002-007-NN) 011 = Cross-brace 995 mm (for HAS10.1-002-007-NN) 012 = Push-through technology frame, size 1 013 = Push-through technology frame, size 2 014 = Push-through technology frame, size 3 015 = Push-through technology frame, size 4 016 = Push-through technology frame, size 5 017 = Push-through technology frame, size 6
⑥	**Other design:** NN = None

1) Device assignment "001" is only available with Other properties "001" and "002".

2) Device assignment "002" is only available with Other properties "003" to "011".

Tab. 8-6: HAS10, type code

Blank covers (HAS10.1-002-003)

The accessories include blank covers for covering unused slot bays.

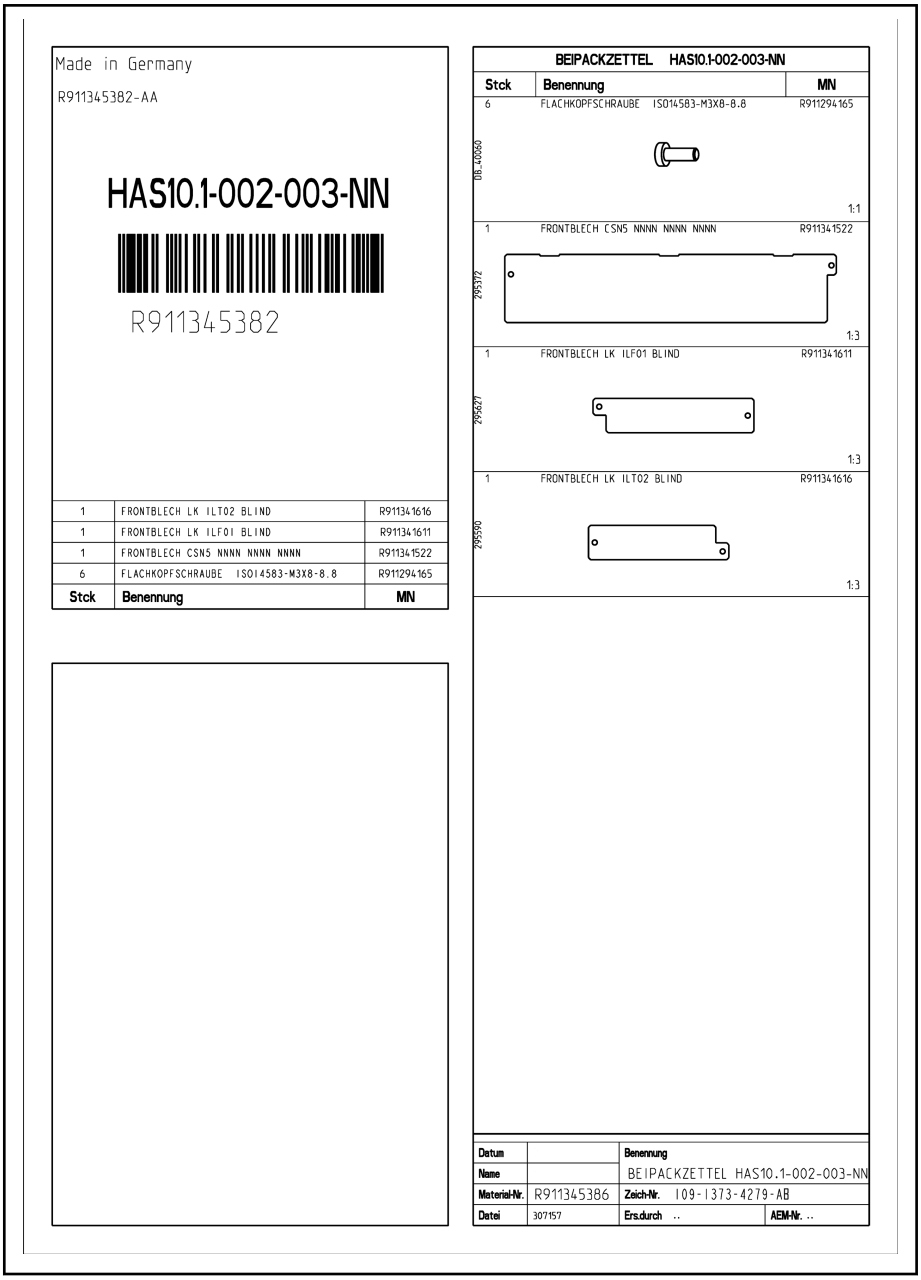


Fig. 8-1: Product insert (HAS10.1-002-003)

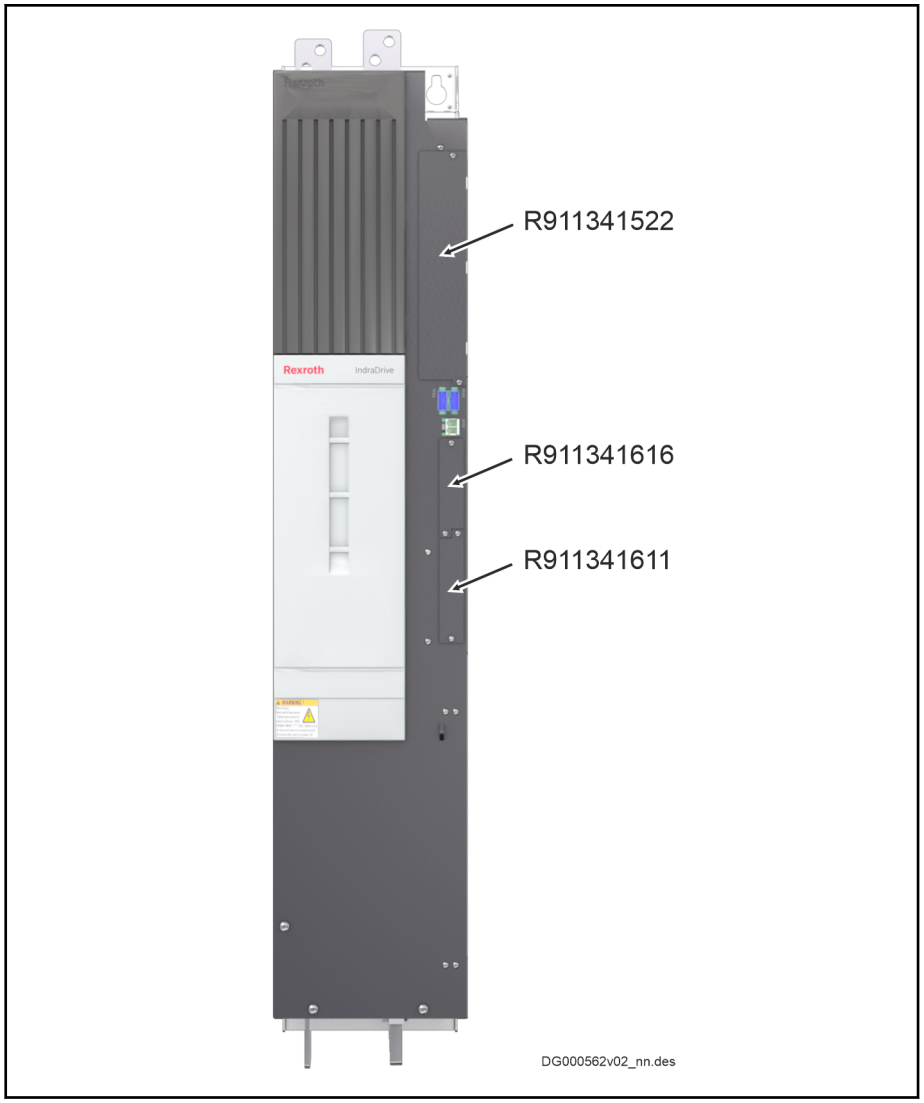


Fig. 8-2: Blank covers (HAS10.1-002-003)

Motor monitor grounding (HAS10.1-002-004)

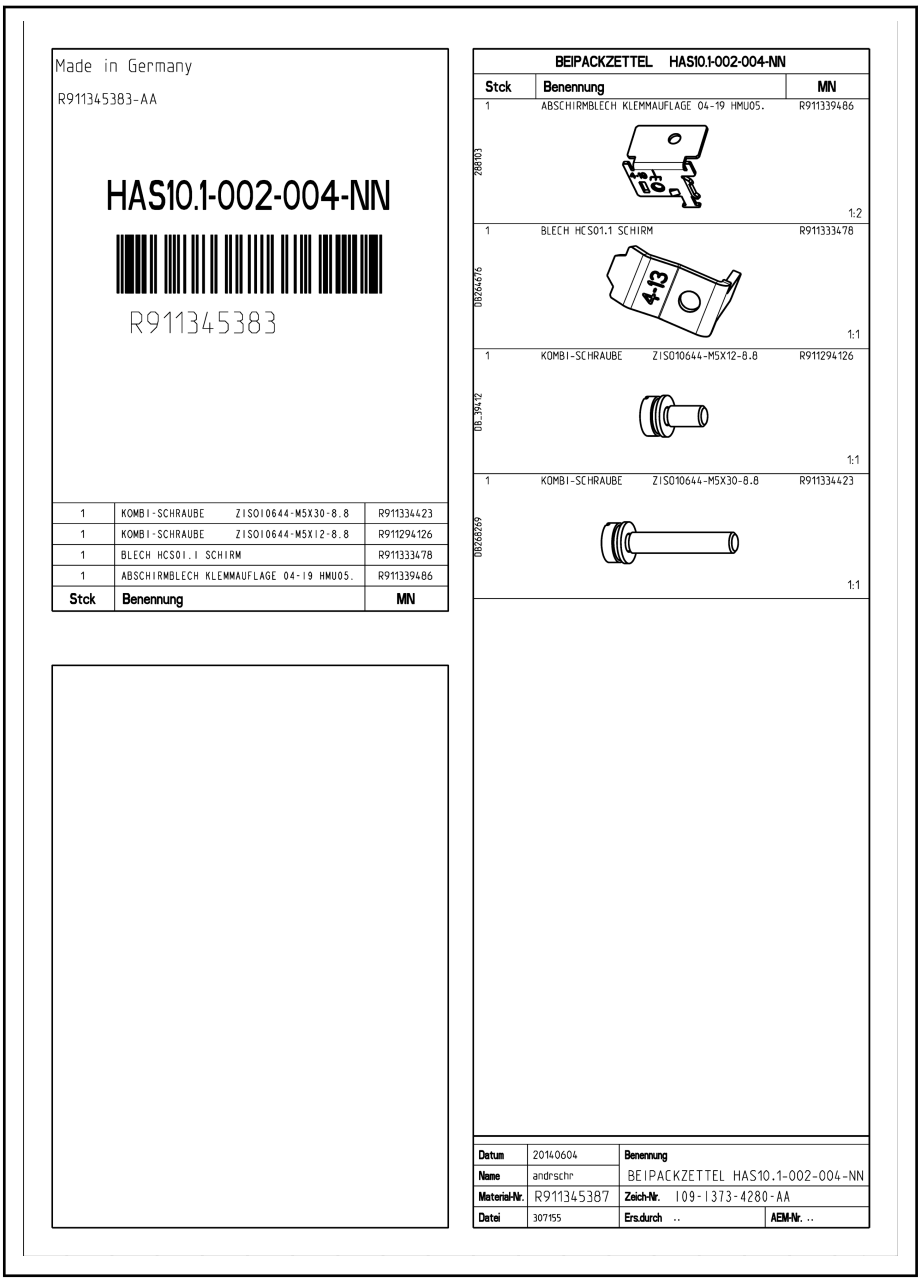
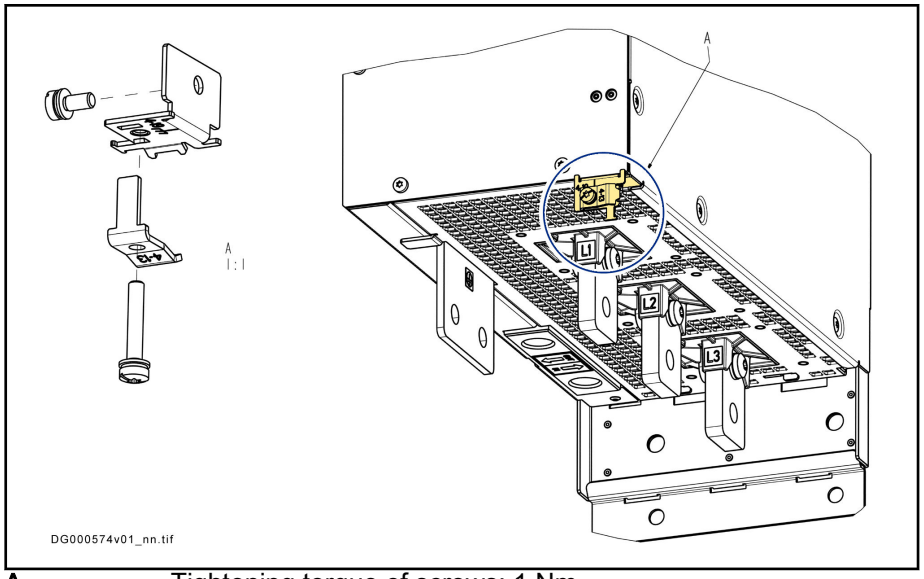


Fig. 8-3: Product insert (HAS10.1-002-004)



A Tightening torque of screws: 1 Nm

Fig. 8-4: Use (HAS10.1-002-004)

Mounting plate for device width 200 mm (HAS10.1-002-005)

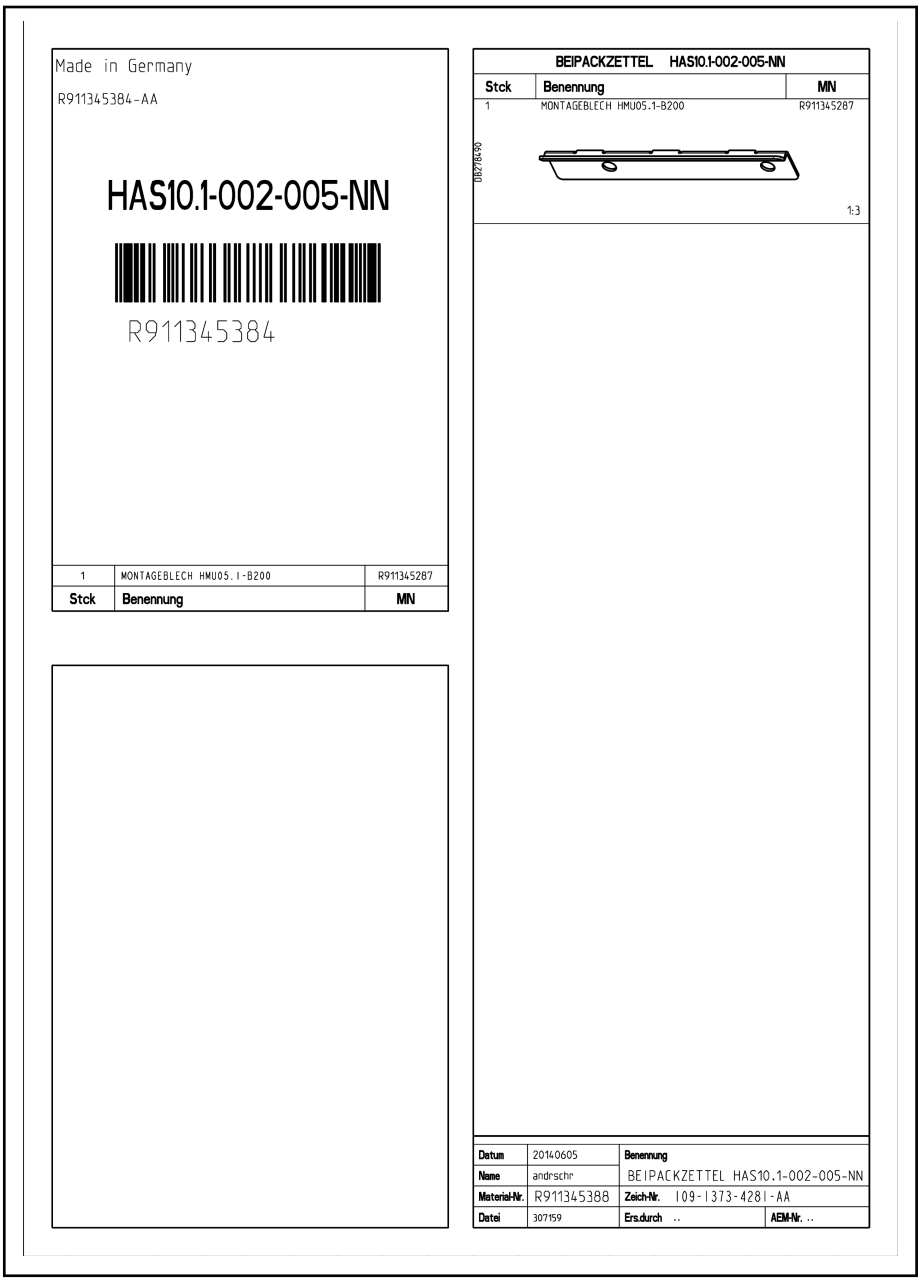
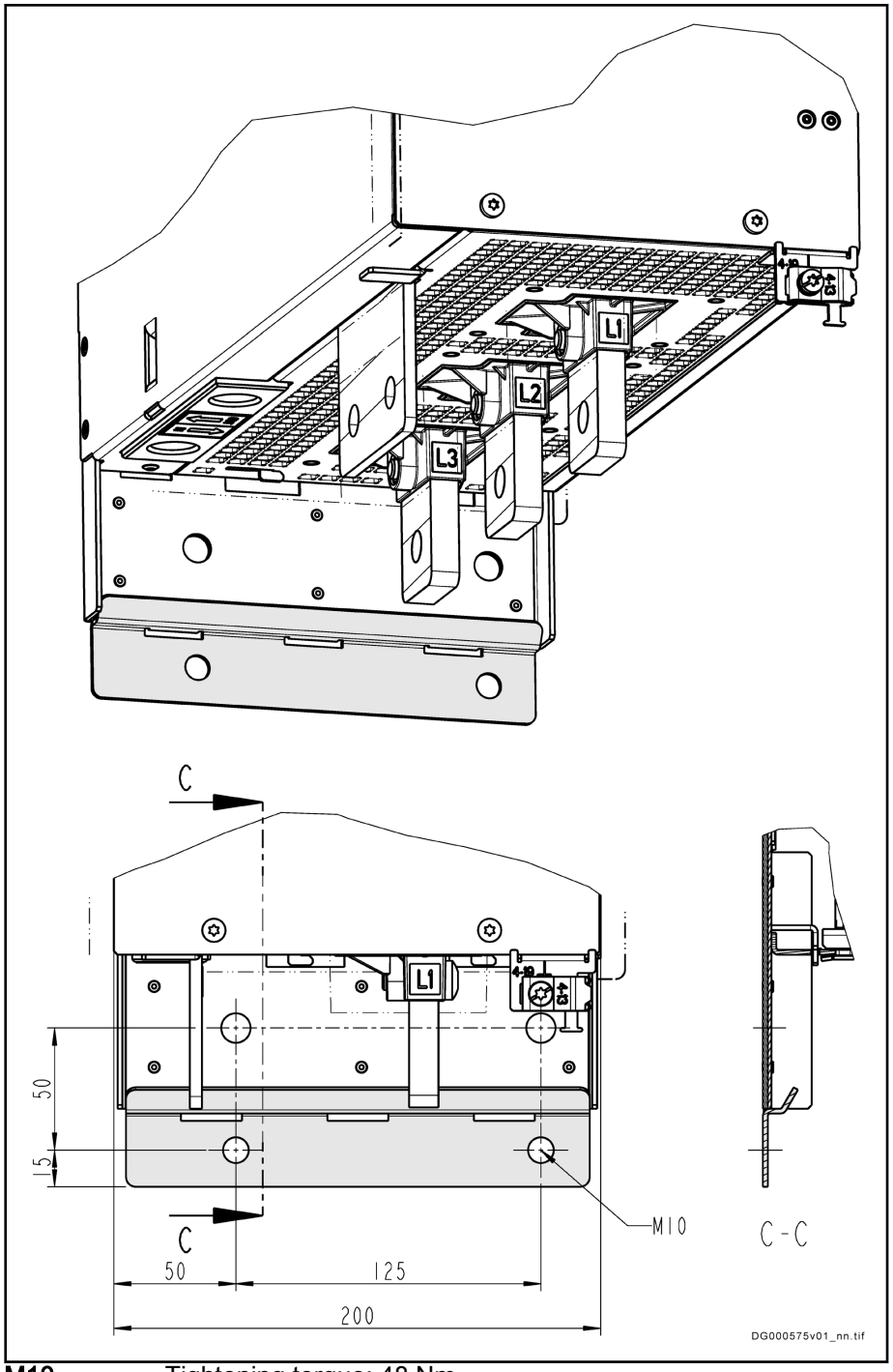


Fig. 8-5: Product insert (HAS10.1-002-005)



M10 Tightening torque: 48 Nm

Fig. 8-6: Use (HAS10.1-002-005)

Mounting plate for a device width of 220 mm (HAS10.1-002-006)

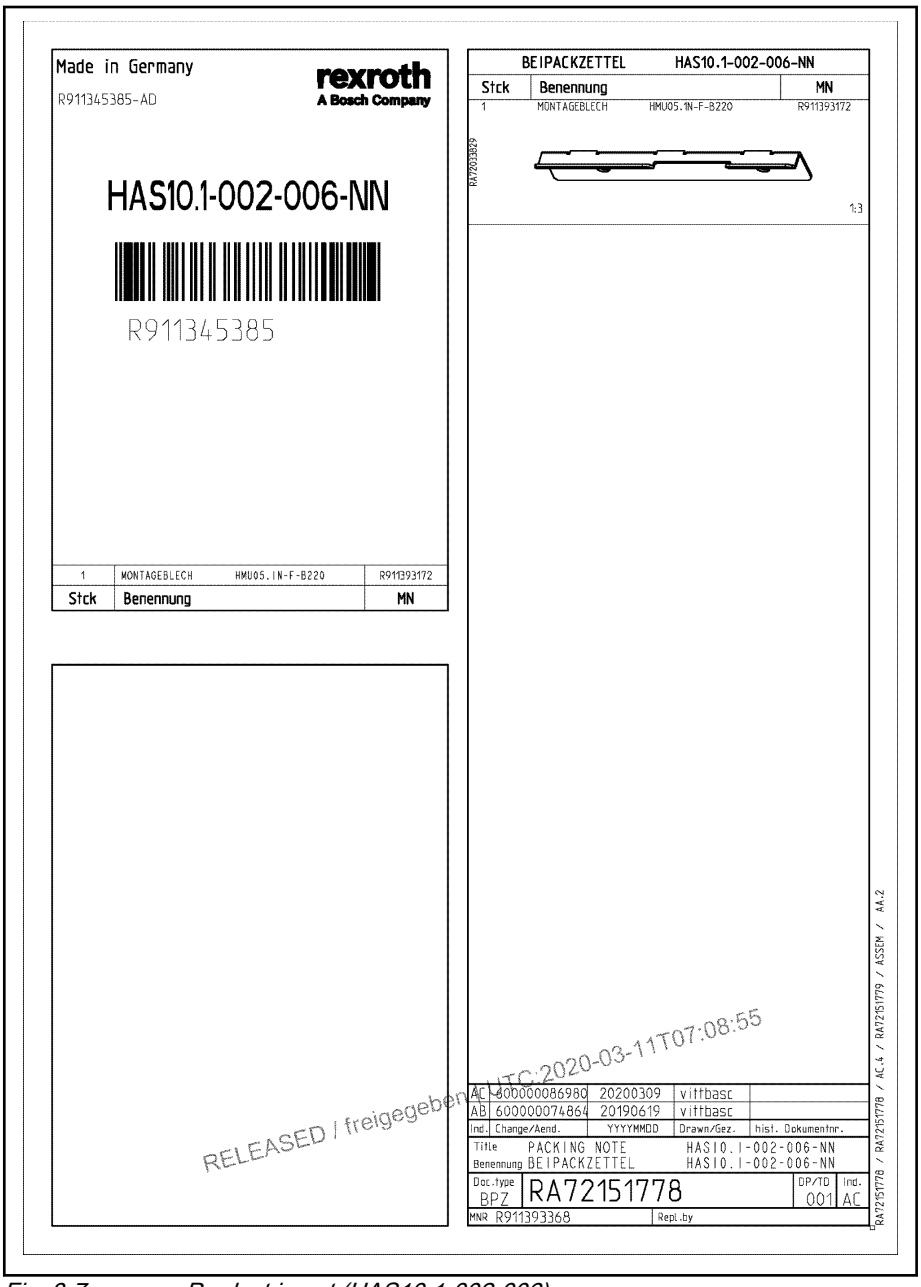
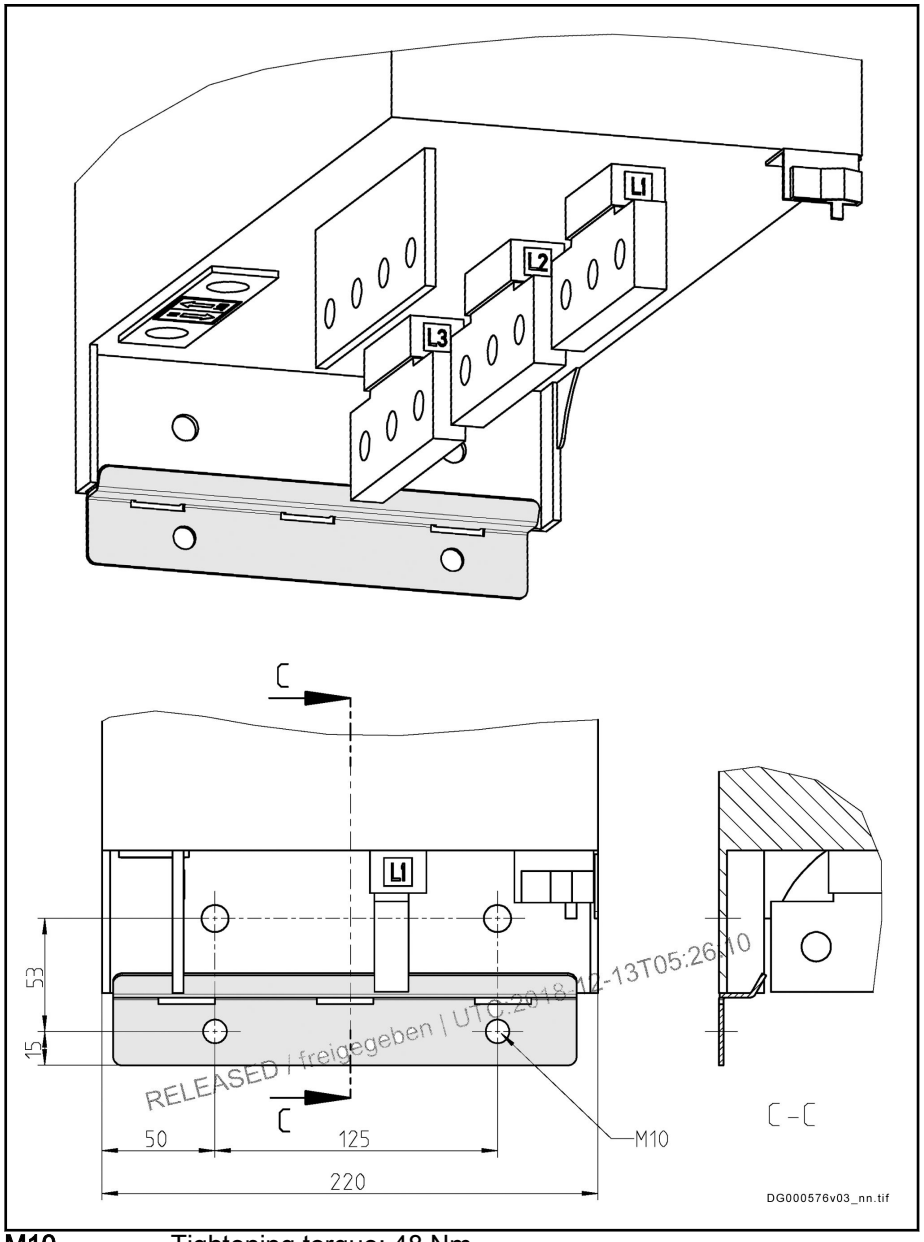


Fig. 8-7: Product insert (HAS10.1-002-006)



M10 Tightening torque: 48 Nm

Fig. 8-8: Use (HAS10.1-002-006)

Mounting frame, through-hole technology (HAS10.1-002-012/…)

rexroth
A Bosch Company

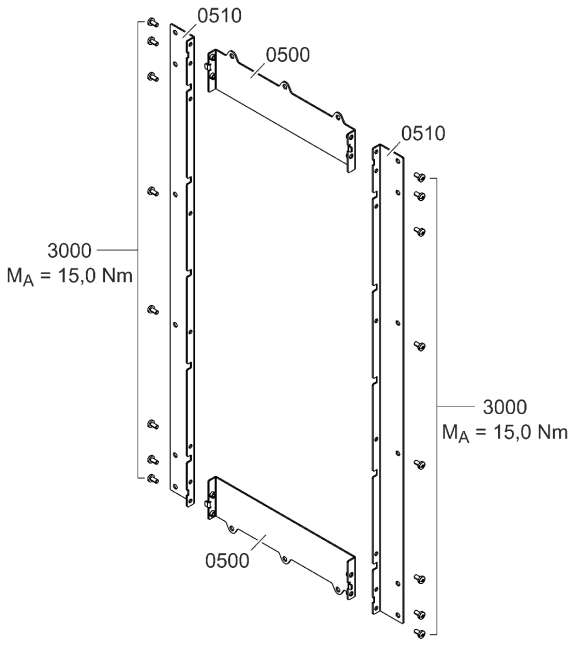
HAS10.1-002-012-NN

Beipackzettel

R911391894
AA 2018-07

R911391708

Position	Materialnummer	Benennung	Menge	Einheit
0500	R911389493	MONTAGEBLECH QUER HMU05.1N LUFTGE&	2	ST
0510	R911389497	MONTAGEBLECH LAENGS HMU05.1N-W014&	2	ST
3000	R911294188	FLACHKOPFSCHRAUBE ISO14583-M8X16-8.8-T&	16	ST



BEIPACKZETTEL HAS10.1-002-012-NN, R911391894, AA 2018-07, **Bosch Rexroth AG**

Fig. 8-9: HAS10.1-002-012

rexroth
A Bosch Company

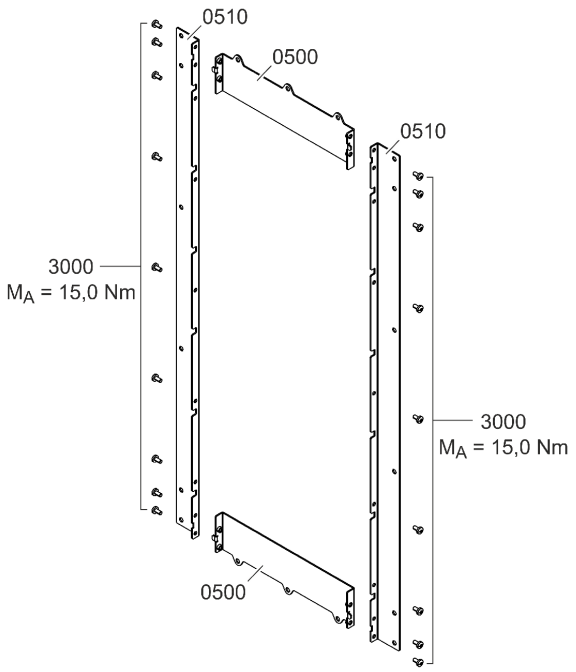
HAS10.1-002-013-NN

Beipackzettel

R911391893
AA 2018-07

R911391709

Position	Materialnummer	Benennung	Menge	Einheit
0500	R911389493	MONTAGEBLECH QUER HMU05.1N LUFTGE&	2	ST
0510	R911389495	MONTAGEBLECH LAENGS HMU05.1N-W022&	2	ST
3000	R911294188	FLACHKOPFSCHRAUBE ISO14583-M8X16-8.8-T&	18	ST



BEIPACKZETTEL HAS10.1-002-013-NN, R911391893, AA 2018-07, **Bosch Rexroth AG**

Fig. 8-10: HAS10.1-002-013

rexroth
A Bosch Company

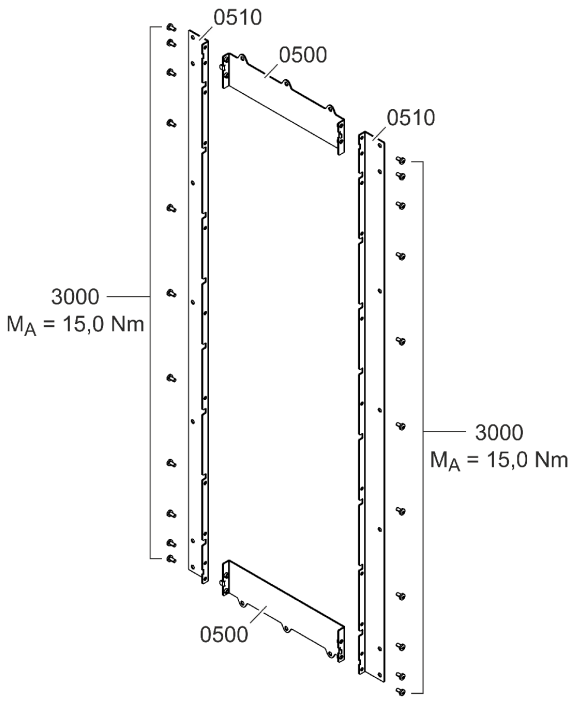
HAS10.1-002-014-NN

Beipackzettel

R911391892
AA 2018-07

R911391710

Position	Materialnummer	Benennung	Menge	Einheit
0500	R911389493	MONTAGEBLECH QUER HMU05.1N LUFTGE&	2	ST
0510	R911389496	MONTAGEBLECH LAENGS HMU05.1N-W034&	2	ST
3000	R911294188	FLACHKOPFSCHRAUBE ISO14583-M8X16-8.8-T&	22	ST



BEIPACKZETTEL HAS10.1-002-014-NN, R911391892, AA 2018-07, **Bosch Rexroth AG**

Fig. 8-11: HAS10.1-002-014

rexroth
A Bosch Company

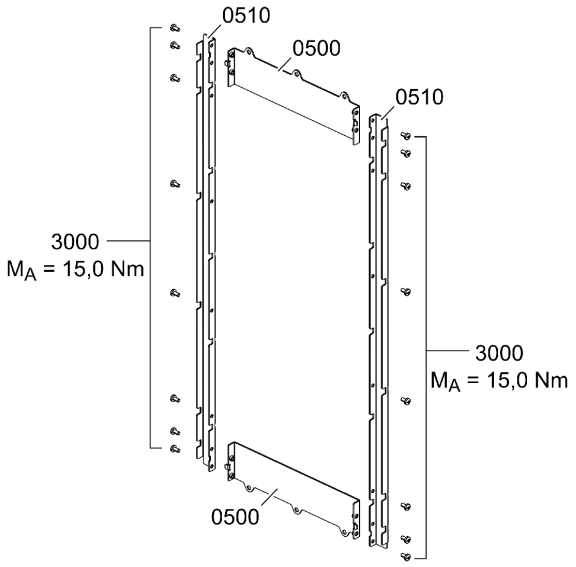
HAS10.1-002-015-NN

Beipackzettel

R911410078
AA 2021-02

R911408827

Position	Materialnummer	Benennung	Menge	Einheit
0500	R911389493	MONTAGEBLECH QUER HMU05.1N LUFTGEKUEHLT	2	ST
0510	R911408245	MONTAGEBLECH LAENGS HMU W0170 SCH&	2	ST
3000	R911294188	FLACHKOPFSCHRAUBE ISO14583-M8X16-8.8-I&	16	ST



BEIPACKZETTEL HAS10.1-002-015-NN, R911410078, AA 2021-02, **Bosch Rexroth AG**

Fig. 8-12: HAS10.1-002-015

rexroth
A Bosch Company

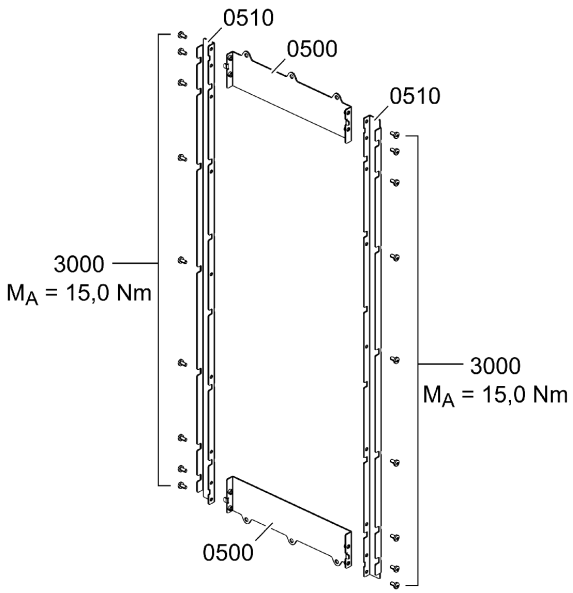
HAS10.1-002-016-NN

Beipackzettel

R911410079
AA 2021-02

R911408835

Position	Materialnummer	Benennung	Menge	Einheit
0500	R911389493	MONTAGEBLECH QUER HMU05.1N LUFTGEKUEHLT	2	ST
0510	R911408244	MONTAGEBLECH LAENGS HMU W0220 SCH&	2	ST
3000	R911294188	FLACHKOPFSCHRAUBE ISO14583-M8X16-8.8-I&	18	ST



BEIPACKZETTEL HAS10.1-002-016-NN, R911410079, AA 2021-02, **Bosch Rexroth AG**

Fig. 8-13: HAS10.1-002-016

rexroth
A Bosch Company

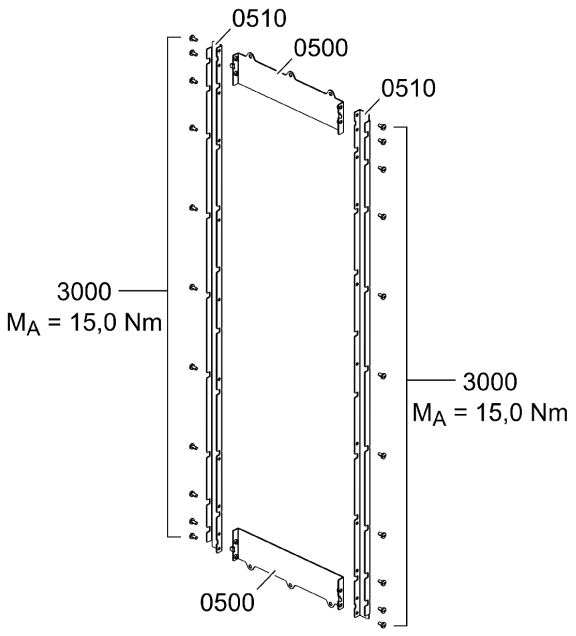
HAS10.1-002-017-NN

Beipackzettel

R911410080
AA 2021-02

R911408841

Position	Materialnummer	Benennung	Menge	Einheit
0500	R911389493	MONTAGEBLECH QUER HMU05.1N LUFTGEKUEHLT	2	ST
0510	R911408243	MONTAGEBLECH LAENGS HMU W0340 SCH&	2	ST
3000	R911294188	FLACHKOPFSCHRAUBE ISO14583-M8X16-8.8-I&	22	ST



BEIPACKZETTEL HAS10.1-002-017-NN, R911410080, AA 2021-02, **Bosch Rexroth AG**

Fig. 8-14: HAS10.1-002-017

8.3 Additional components

8.3.1 HNA05 mains connection module

HNA05 type code

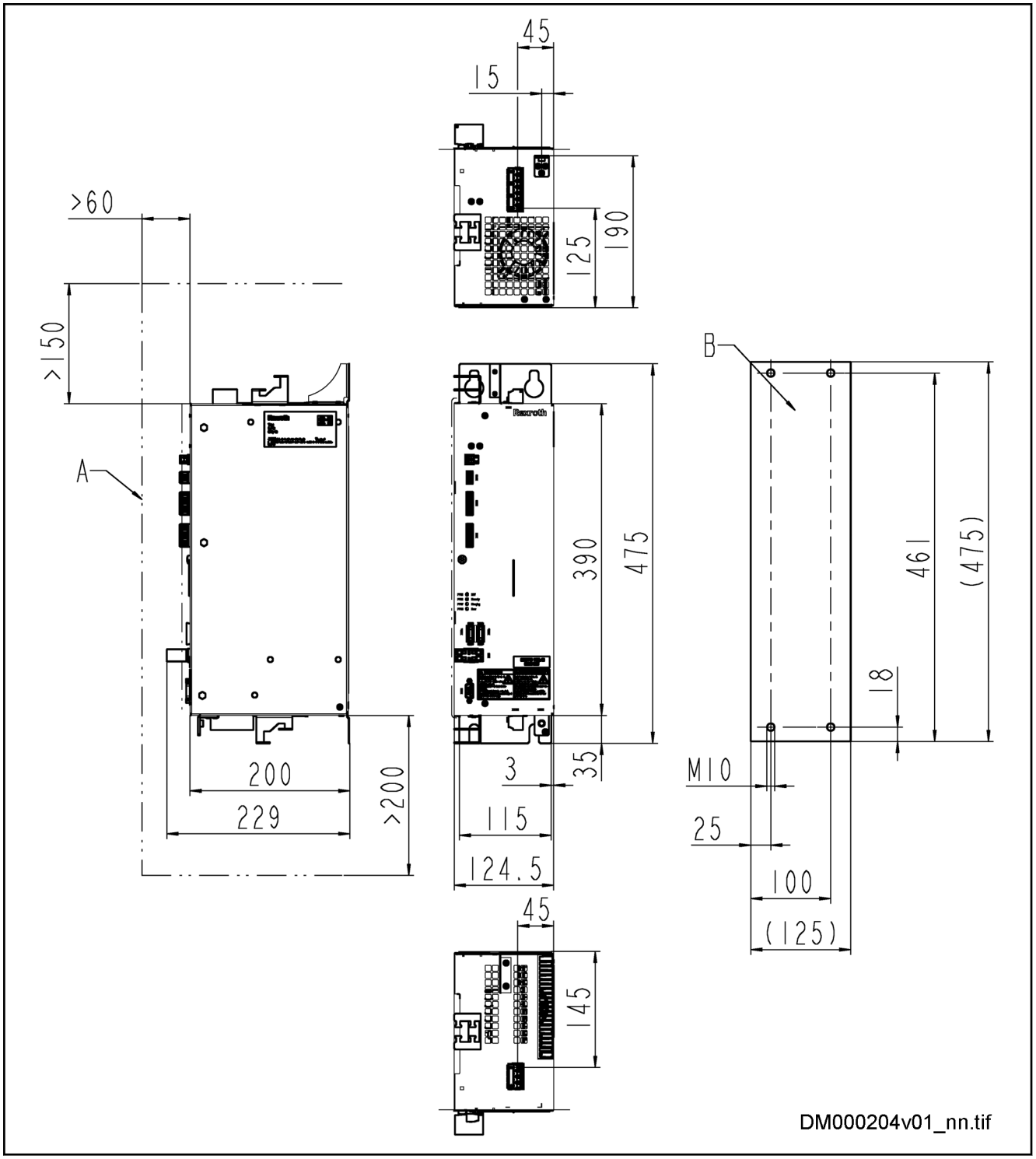
Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	N	A	0	5	.	1	N	-	W	R	0	2	F	5	-	A	4	-	A	-	N	N	N	N																
	①			②			③	④		⑤	⑥	⑦					⑧			⑨		⑩																			

①	**Product:** HNA = Mains connection module
②	**Series:** 05 = 05
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Application:** N = Standard
⑤	**Cooling type:** W = Air, internal
⑥	**Supply system:** R = For regenerative devices only
⑦	**Charging power:** 02F5 = 2.5 F (example)
⑧	**Mains connection voltage:** A4 = 3 × AC 380 V -15% ... 3 × AC 500 V +10% A5 = 3 × AC 380 V -15% ... 3 × AC 690 V +10%
⑨	**Degree of protection:** A = IP20
⑩	**Other design:** NNNN = None

Tab. 8-7: HNA05, type code

Dimensions

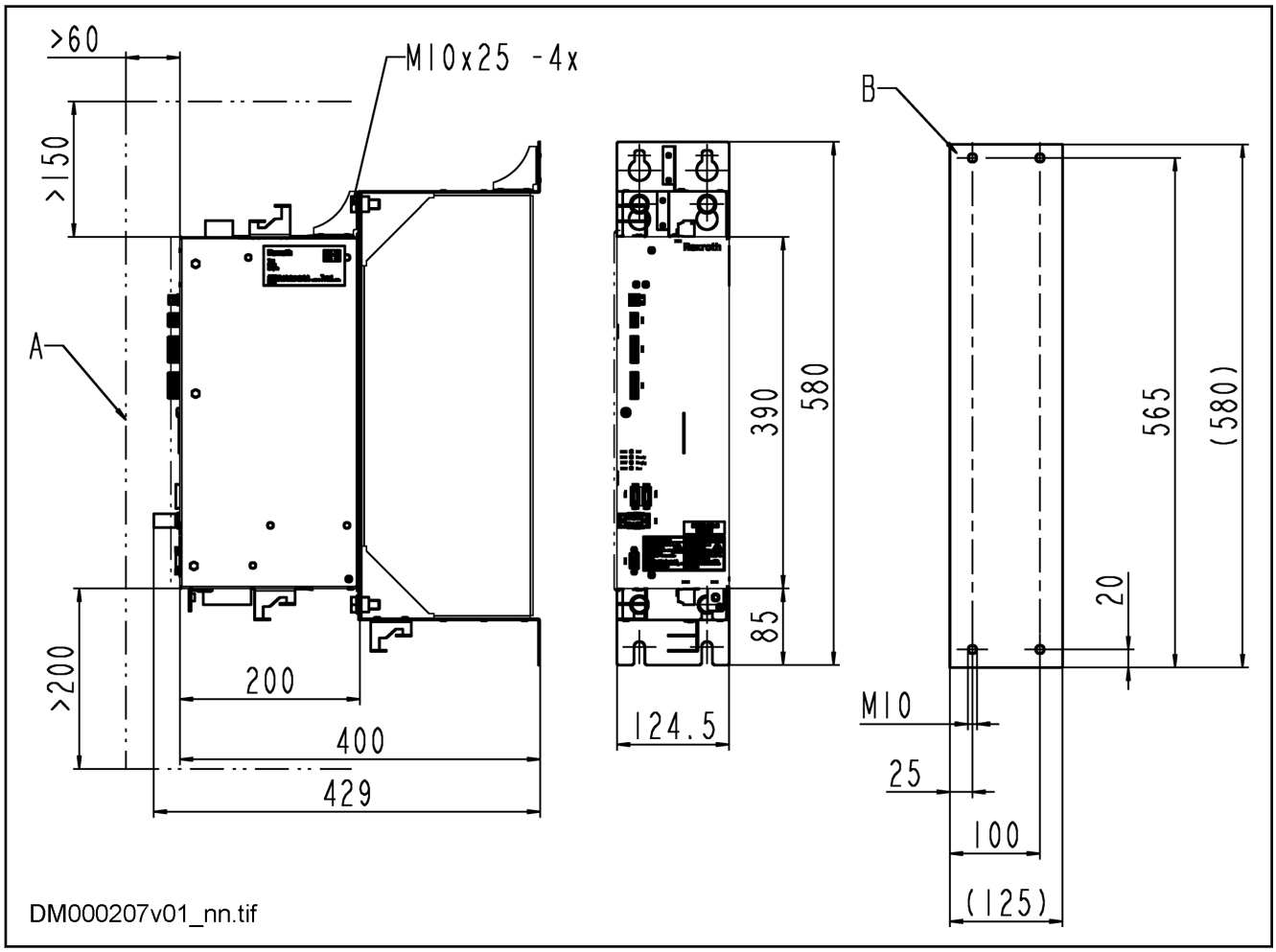
HNA05, dimensional drawing



M10 Tightening torque: 40 Nm

Fig. 8-15: HNA05, dimensional drawing

HNA05 with HAS03.1-006 mounting plate (200 mm), dimensional drawing

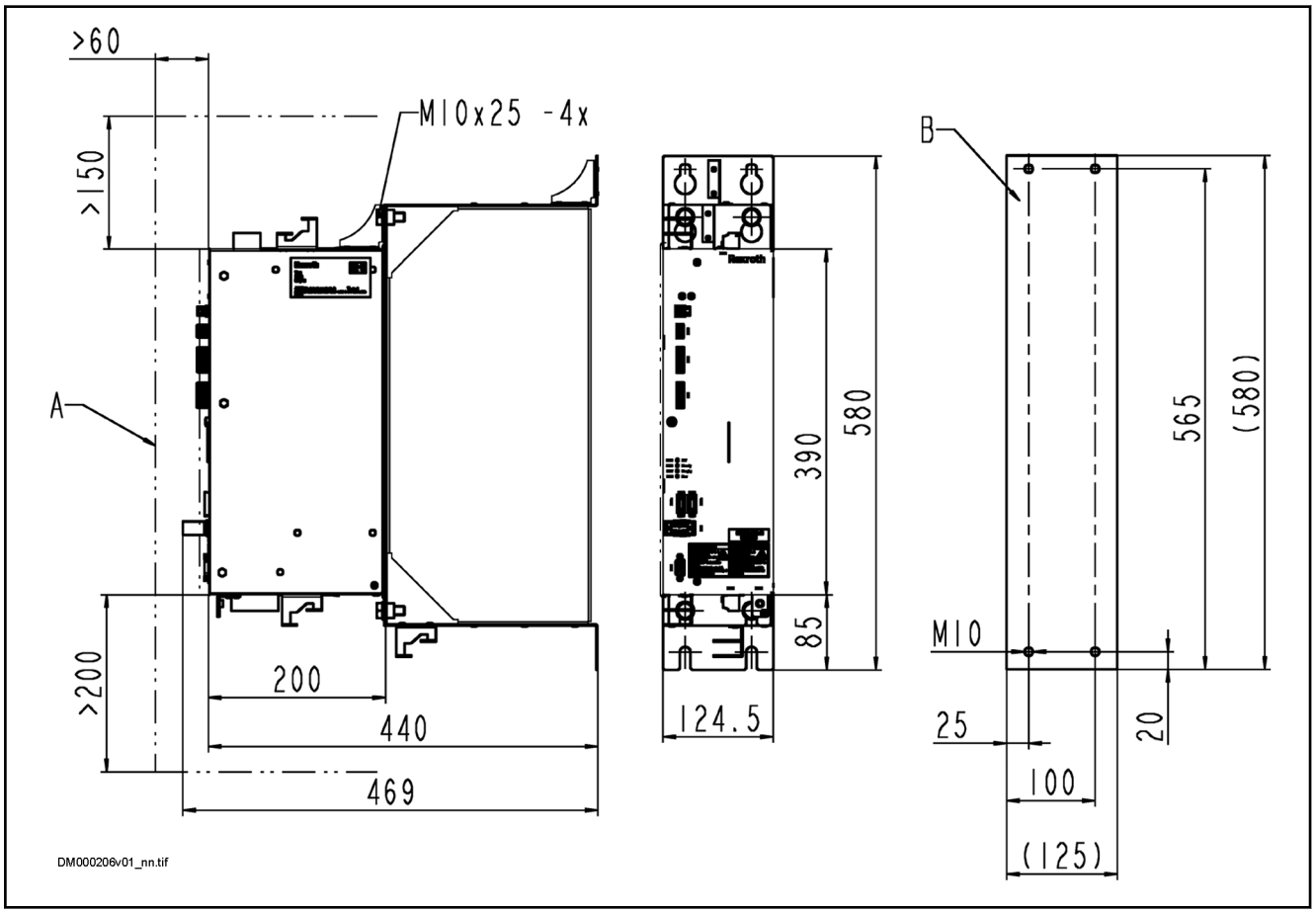


M10 Tightening torque: 40 Nm

Fig. 8-16: HNA05 with HAS03.1-006 mounting plate for height leveling and depth leveling to 400 mm depth, dimensional drawing

The mounting plate is used to combine HNA05 and **air-cooled HMU05 without push-through technology**.

HNA05 with HAS03.1-007 mounting plate (240 mm), dimensional drawing



M10 Tightening torque: 40 Nm

Fig. 8-17: HNA05 with HAS03.1-007 mounting plate for height leveling and depth leveling to 440 mm depth, dimensional drawing

The mounting plate is used to combine HNA05 and **liquid-cooled HMU05**.

Data

Description	Unit	HNA05.1N-WR02F5-…	
		A4	A5
Degree of protection		IP20	
Allowed mounting position		G1	
Ambient temperature range	°C	0 … 55	
Mass	kg	6.70	
Insulation resistance	MΩ	50	
Y-capacitance		-	
Installation height	mm	390	
Installation width	mm	124.5	
Cooling type		Air cooling	
Distance top	mm	80	
Distance bottom	mm	80	
Distance side	mm	0	
Charging power dissipation	W	150	
Basic power dissipation in operation	W	50	
Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3}	W	< 15	
Control voltage inrush current	A	< 3	
Inrush current duration	ms	< 2	
Control voltage U_{N3}	V	24	
Tolerance of control voltage U_{N3}	%	±20	
Input capacitance of control voltage U_{N3}	mF	0.05	
Control voltage input current	mA	500	
Rated mains input voltage U_{nenn}	V	AC 400	AC 690
Three-phase mains input voltage (TN-S, TN-C, TT mains)	V	AC 380 … 500	AC 380 … 690
Mains input voltage tolerance	%	+10 / -15	
Mains frequency	Hz	50 … 60	
Maximum allowed mains frequency change	Hz/s	1	
Tolerance input frequency	Hz	±2	
Rotating field condition		None	
Min. inductance of mains supply	µH	40 [1)]	
Charging mains input current	A	< 10	
Mains fuse	A	≤ 16	
Power mains input connection cross section	mm^2	2.5	
DC bus connection cross section	mm^2	2.5	

Description	Unit	HNA05.1N-WR02F5-…	
		A4	A5
DC bus connection cable length	m	< 2; twisted	
Upper DC bus voltage limit	V	900	1200
Output voltage	V	$U_{nenn} \times \sqrt{2} + 30$	
Nominal output current	A	10	
Max. chargeable energy	kWs	816	1512
Max. chargeable output voltage	V	808	1100
Max. charging time	s	202	275
maximum capacity	F	2.5	
Minimum capacitance at output	mF	1	
Short circuit current rating (SCCR)	kA rms	85	
The response time of the mains contactor between actuation and the feedback of the acknowledgement signals	s	< 2	

1) When n supply units are connected in parallel, the minimum inductance is reduced by a factor of 1/n.

Tab. 8-8: HNA05 data

Connection diagram

See chapter 4.6.2 "Overall connection diagram (HMU05 as supply unit)" on page 96

Maximum permissible switching frequency of the charging circuit

Worst-case scenario: **ON (4 × 3 min) + OFF (10 min)**

HNA05 may charge the maximum capacitance 4 times in a row. The charging process takes about 3 minutes. After about 12 minutes (4 × 3 minutes), a 10-minute break is necessary. This results in a cycle time of 22 minutes (12 + 10).

The maximum permissible switching frequency is therefore calculated based on the HNA05's maximum permissible duty cycle of 55% of the cycle time.

Instead of "ON(4 × 3 min) + OFF(10 min)", e.g. "ON(6 × 2 min) + OFF(10 min)" would also be possible.

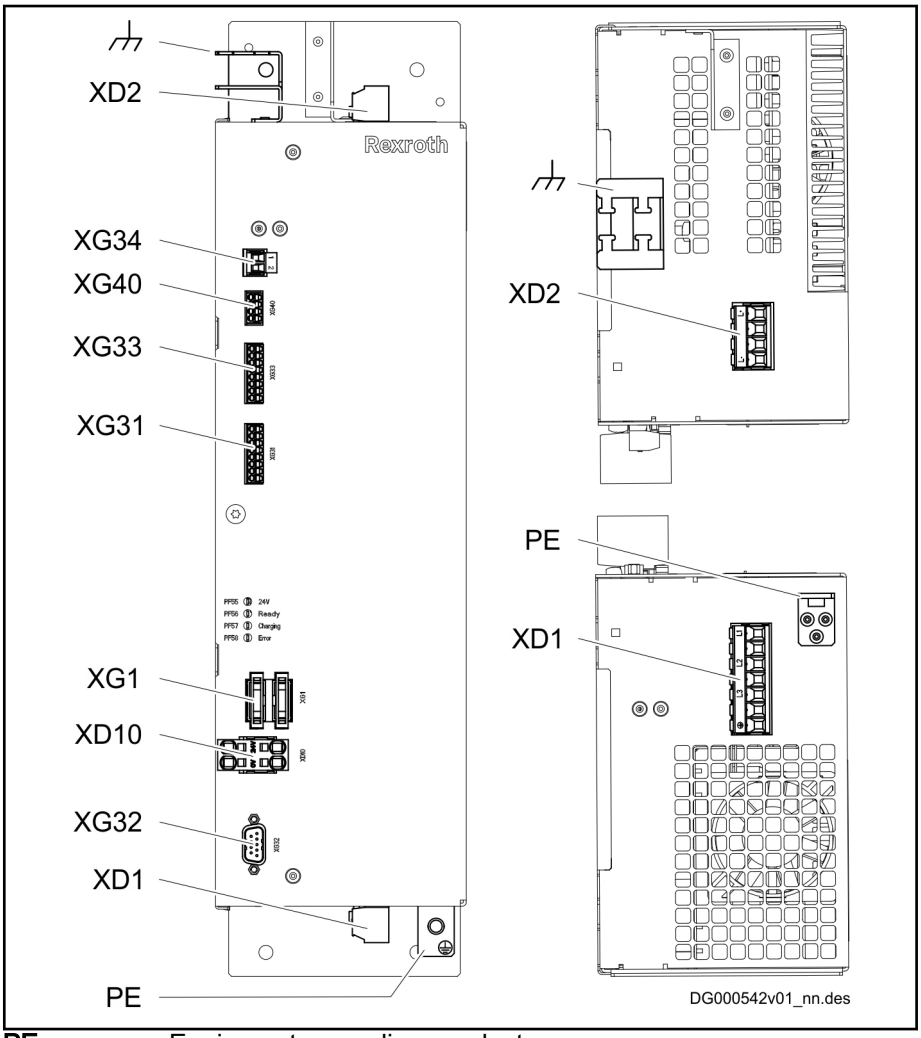
The exact value also depends on the available DC bus capacitance (number and frame size of the HMUs, connected additional capacitance).

☞ The DC bus capacitance is charged by a constant current source with nominal output current.

The end of the charging process depends on the mains voltage.

Connection points

Overview



PE	Equipment grounding conductor
XD1	Mains voltage, protective conductor (L1, L2, L3, PE)
XD2	DC bus (L+, L-)
XD10	Control voltage (0 V, 24 V)
XG1	IndraBus
XG31	Connection for messages
XG32	HNA bus
XG33	On, off, ZKS (DC bus short circuit) status
XG34	Contact for external mains contactor
XG40	Acknowledgment messages of mains contactor

Fig. 8-18: HNA05 connection points

Connection diagram: See chapter 4.6.2 "Overall connection diagram (HMU05 as supply unit)" on page 96

Protective conductor connection point

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

Connect the protective conductor terminal to the protective conductor system of the control cabinet.

Check the continuity of the protective conductors from the mains connection to the connected motors.

☞ **Protective conductor: Material and cross section**

Use the same metal (e.g., copper) for the equipment grounding conductor as for the outer conductors.

When connecting the protective conductor connection point of the device to the equipment grounding system within the control cabinet, take into account that a sufficient cable cross-section is required.

For outer conductors with a cross section greater than 16 mm², you can reduce the cross section of the equipment grounding connection according to the table "Equipment grounding conductor cross section".

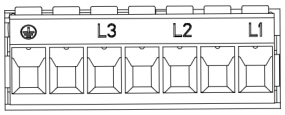
Cross-sectional area A of outer conductors	Minimum cross-sectional area A_{PE} of equipment grounding connection
A ≤ 16 mm²	A
16 mm² < A ≤ 35 mm²	16
35 mm² < A	A / 2

Tab. 8-9: Equipment grounding conductor cross section

View	Identification	Function	
	⏚	Connection to protective conductor system	
Screw connection	**Unit**	**min.**	**Max.**
Screw		M6 × 25	
Tightening torque	Nm	9.5	10.5

Tab. 8-10: Equipment grounding conductor connection point

XD1, mains voltage, equipment grounding conductor

View	Connection	Function
	⏚	Protective conductor
	L3	Connection to power grid (L3)
	L2	Connection to power grid (L2)
	L1	Connection to power grid (L1)

Tab. 8-11: XD1, mains voltage, ground

Mechanical data

Screw connection at connector	Unit	min.	max.
Tightening torque	Nm	0.8	
Connecting cable Solid wire	mm^2	0.2	10
Connecting cable multi-strand **without** wire end ferrule	mm^2	0.2	6
	AWG	24	10
Connecting cable multi-strand **with** wire end ferrule	mm^2	0.25	4
Stripping length	mm	10	

Tab. 8-12: Mechanical data

Electrical data

	Unit	min.	max.
Voltage	V		690
Current	A		41

Tab. 8-13: Electrical data

XD2, DC bus

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

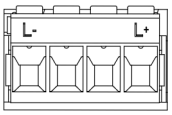
Before working with live parts: Disconnect the system and secure power switch against unintentional or unauthorized reconnection.

Make sure voltage has fallen below 50 V before touching live parts!

Before accessing the device, wait at least **30 minutes** after switching off the supply voltages to allow **discharging**.

When using DC bus ground capacitor pairs, the discharge time **to ground** may exceed 30 minutes.

Mount a **touch guard**!

View	Identification	Function
	L-	DC bus connection (-)
		n. c.
		n. c.
	L+	DC bus connection (+)

Tab. 8-14: XD2, DC bus

Mechanical data

Screw connection at connector	Unit	min.	max.
Tightening torque	Nm	0.8	
Connecting cable Solid wire	mm^2	0.2	10
Connecting cable multi-strand **without** wire end ferrule	mm^2	0.2	6
	AWG	24	10
Connecting cable multi-strand **with** wire end ferrule	mm^2	0.25	4
Stripping length	mm	10	

Tab. 8-15: Mechanical data

Electrical data

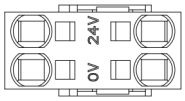
	Unit	min.	max.
Voltage	V		1200
Current	A		41

Tab. 8-16: Electrical data

XD10, 24 V supply (control voltage)

Function, pin assignment

The 24 V supply is applied externally via connection point XD10.

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
	24V	+24V	Power supply
		+24V	
	0V	0V	Reference potential for voltage supply
		0V	

Tab. 8-17: XD10, 24-V power supply

Mechanical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	min.	max.
Connecting cable Solid wire	mm^2	1	10
Connecting cable multi-strand **without** wire end ferrule	mm^2	1	6
	AWG	16	10
Connecting cable multi-strand **with** wire end ferrule	mm^2	1	4
Stripping length	mm	15	

Tab. 8-18: Mechanical data

Electrical data

	Unit	min.	max.
Voltage load capacity	V	-	U_{N3} 1)
Power consumption	W	-	P_{N3} 1)
Current carrying capacity (looping through)	A	-	40 (UL: 31)
Allowed inductance	µH	-	100 (2 twisted single strands, 75 m long)

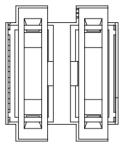
1) See chapter 7.2.1 "Control voltage" on page 147

Tab. 8-19: Electrical data

Installation instructions

Depending on the power consumption of the devices and the current carrying capacity of the connector XD10, check the number of devices through which one line for 24 V supply can be looped through. If required, connect another device directly to the 24 V supply and loop through the control voltage from this device to other devices.

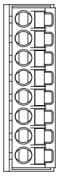
XG1, IndraBus

View	Connection	Function
	XG1a XG1b	Connects the components through a ribbon cable. • Output for quickly reporting critical errors to other devices • Input for detecting critical errors from other devices • Blocking and releasing DC bus short circuit by a braking resistor unit • Reporting DC bus availability *Cables* • Unshielded length: < 3 m Cable designation: RKB0036 • Shielded length: < 100 m Cable designation: RKB0035 In individual operation (that is to say not in combination with other devices of the Hxx05.1 series), both IndraBus **RBS0025 terminating plugs** must have been plugged in. In combination with other devices, the RBS0025 terminating plug on the first device (left) must be plugged in at the left side of XG1 and the terminating plug on the last device (right) must be plugged in at the right side.

Tab. 8-20: XG1, IndraBus

XG31, messages

Pin assignment

View	Connection	I/O	Function
	1	I	Supply voltage of inputs/outputs (**24VEA**)
	2	I	Reset input for resetting error messages: 1: Reset active 0: Reset is not active
	3	I	Input for selecting between **stand-alone mode** and **slave mode**: 1: Standalone mode 0: Slave mode
	4	O	Isolated **Bb contact** (N/O) N/O contact signals readiness for operation. **Closed** with: Readiness for operation of supply unit **Open** with: • Error messages: F2800 … F2899 • Error messages: F8069, F8070
	5		
	6	O	Isolated **warning contact** (N/C) N/C contact signals warning states. **Open**: Overtemperature at the supply unit
	7		
	8	I	Reference potential of supply voltage (**0VEA**)

Tab. 8-21: XG31, messages

☞ Operating HNA05 with HMU05 (slave mode) does not require XG31 to be connected.

Mechanical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	Min.	Max.
Connection cable Stranded wire **without** ferrule	mm^2	0.2	1.5
	AWG	24	16
Connection cable Stranded wire **with** ferrule	mm^2	0.25	0.75
Stripped length	mm	10	

Tab. 8-22: Mechanical data

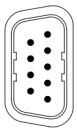
Electrical data

	Unit	Min.	Max.
Digital inputs	-	Digital inputs correspond to IEC 61131-2 Type 1	
Switching voltage	V	24 -6%	

	Unit	Min.	Max.
Output current	mA		500
Energy absorption capacity	mJ		700
Overload protection	-	Short circuit protection	
Bb and warning contact	-	Digital outputs correspond to IEC 61131-2 Type 1	
Switching voltage	V_{DC}	30	
Continuous current	A		1
Switching current	A		5
Load current	mA	10	
Switching cycles	-	3×10^5	

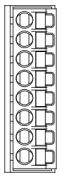
Tab. 8-23: Electrical data

XG32, HNA bus

View	Identification	Function	
	XG32	HNA bus	
D-Sub, 9-pin, male	**Unit**	**Min.**	**Max.**
Connection cross section	mm^2	0.25	0.5
Cable: RKB0037	m	0.5 or 0.66	1

Tab. 8-24: Function, pin assignment, properties

XG33, on, off, ZKS (DC bus short circuit) status

View	Connection	I/O	Function
	1	I	Supply voltage of inputs/outputs (24VEA*)
	2	A	ZKS1*: Output for connection to ZKS2
	3	I	DC bus short-circuit input for signaling an active DC bus short circuit (ZKS2*) **Not connected:** ZKS (DC bus short circuit protection device) active **Wired with 24VEA:** ZKS (DC bus short circuit protection device) inactive The mains contactor opens in the case of an active DC bus short circuit.
	4	A	OFF1*: 24-V output for connecting the input OFF2
	5	I	OFF input (OFF2*) Connection for N/C contact to switch off the supply unit The input is always available, irrespective of whether or not a master communication has been activated. Compared to the master communication, the input is of higher priority. The input can be used, for example, to loop in an emergency stop circuit or the like.
	6	A	Supply voltage for external ON output (ON1*) Output (24VEA) is used to connect input XG33.7
	7	I	ON input (ON2*) Connection for N/O contact to switch on the supply unit. The input is edge-controlled. The input is only available, if the master communication has been deactivated (P-0-4089.0.1).
	8	I	Reference potential of supply voltage (0VEA*)

* Description in connection diagram (see chapter 4.6.2 "Overall connection diagram (HMU05 as supply unit)" on page 96)

Tab. 8-25: Function, pin assignment

Operating HNA05 with HMU05 (slave mode) requires at least the OFF input and the DC bus short circuit input (ZKS) to be connected.

See chapter 4.6.2 "Overall connection diagram (HMU05 as supply unit)" on page 96.

Mechanical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	Min.	Max.
Connection cable Stranded wire **without** ferrule	mm^2	0.2	1.5
	AWG	24	16
Connection cable Stranded wire **with** ferrule	mm^2	0.25	0.75
Stripped length	mm	10	

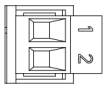
Tab. 8-26: Mechanical data

Electrical data

	Unit	Min.	Max.
Digital Inputs	-	Digital inputs correspond to IEC 61131-2 Type 1	
Supply outputs	-		
Total output current	mA		300

Tab. 8-27: Electrical data

XG34, mains contactor (contact)

View	Connection	Function
	1	Connection to outer conductor L
	2	Mains contactor connection

Tab. 8-28: Function, pin assignment, properties

Mechanical data

Screw connection at connector	Unit	min.	max.
Tightening torque	Nm	0.6	0.8
Connecting cable multi-strand **without** wire end ferrule	mm^2	0.2	2.5
	AWG	24	12
Connecting cable multi-strand **with** wire end ferrule	mm^2	0.25	2.5
Stripping length	mm	10	

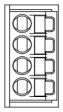
Tab. 8-29: Mechanical data

Electrical data

	Unit	min.	max.
Switching voltage	V	5Vac / 5Vdc	~250Vac / 50Vdc
Continuous current	A		1
Switching current	A		5
Load current	mA	10	
Switching cycles		3×10^5	

Tab. 8-30: Electrical data

XG40, mains contactor (acknowledgment messages)

View	Connection	I/O	Function
	1	I	Acknowledgment message: **N/O contact** of external mains contactor
	2	A	Output (24VEA)
	3	I	Acknowledgment message: **N/C contact** of external mains contactor
	4	A	Output (24VEA)

Tab. 8-31: Function, pin assignment

Mechanical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	min.	max.
Connecting cable multi-strand **without** wire end ferrule	mm^2	0.2	1.5
	AWG	24	16
Connecting cable multi-strand **with** wire end ferrule	mm^2	0.25	0.75
Stripping length	mm	10	

Tab. 8-32: Mechanical data

Electrical data

	Unit	min.	max.
Digital inputs	-	Digital inputs comply with IEC 61131-2 type 1	
Current load of auxiliary contacts	mA	3	
Supply outputs	-		
Total output current	mA		300

Tab. 8-33: Electrical data

Display elements

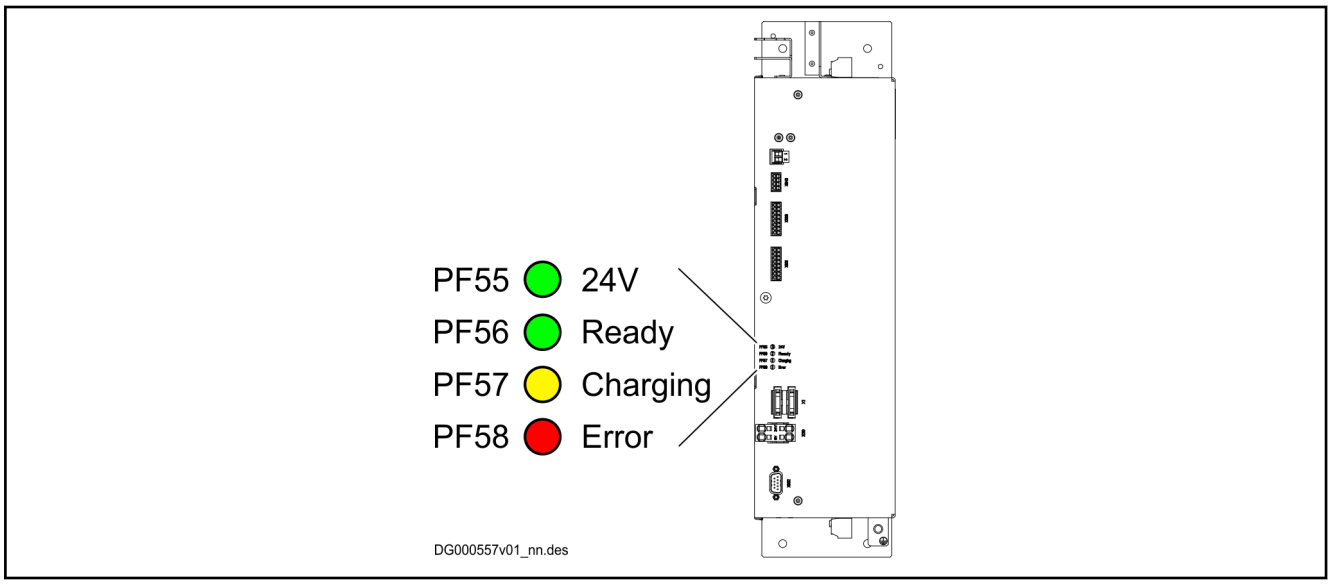


Fig. 8-19: LEDs at HNA05

LED	Color/status		Meaning
PF55		Green	24 V power supply applied
		Off	24 V power supply < 19.2 V
PF56		Green	HNA ready
		Flashing green	HNA ready; no mains voltage
		Off	HNA not ready
PF57		Yellow	Charging complete (DC bus capacitance charged)
		Flashing yellow	Charging
		Off	Charging interrupted
PF58		Red	Error
		Flashing red	Warning
		Off	No error, no warning

Tab. 8-34: LED displays

8.3.2 HNC05 mains capacitor

HNC05 type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	N	C	0	5	.	1	N	-	0	1	0	0	-	A	4	-	N	N	N	N																				
	①			②			③	④		⑤					⑥			⑦																								

①	**Product:** HNC = Mains capacitor
②	**Series:** 05 = 05
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Degree of protection:** N = IP00
⑤	**Capacitance value:** 0040 = 40 µF 0050 = 50 µF 0070 = 70 µF 0075 = 75 µF 0100 = 100 µF 0125 = 125 µF 0150 = 150 µF
⑥	**Mains voltage:** A4 = 3 x AC 380 V -15% ... 500 V +10% A5 = 3 x AC 525 V -15% ... 690 V +10%
⑦	**Other design:** NNNN = None C001 = Without ground capacitors

Tab. 8-35: HNC05, type code

Possible combinations:

Mains voltage	Other design	Capacitance						
		0040	0050	0070	0075	0100	0125	0150
A4	NNNN	–	✓	–	✓	✓	–	✓
	C001	–	✓	–	✓	✓	–	✓
A5	NNNN	✓	✓	✓	–	✓	✓	–
	C001	✓	✓	✓	–	✓	✓	–

Tab. 8-36: Possible combinations

Dimensions

	Overview
HNC05.1N-xxxx-A4	chapter "HNC05.1N-0050/0075/0100-A4" on page 220 chapter "HNC05.1N-0150-A4" on page 221
HNC05.1N-xxxx-A5	chapter "HNC05.1N-0040/0050-A5" on page 222 chapter "HNC05.1N-0070/0100-A5" on page 223 chapter "HNC05.1N-0125-A5" on page 224 chapter "HNC05.1N-0150-A5" on page 225

HNC05.1N-0050/0075/0100-A4

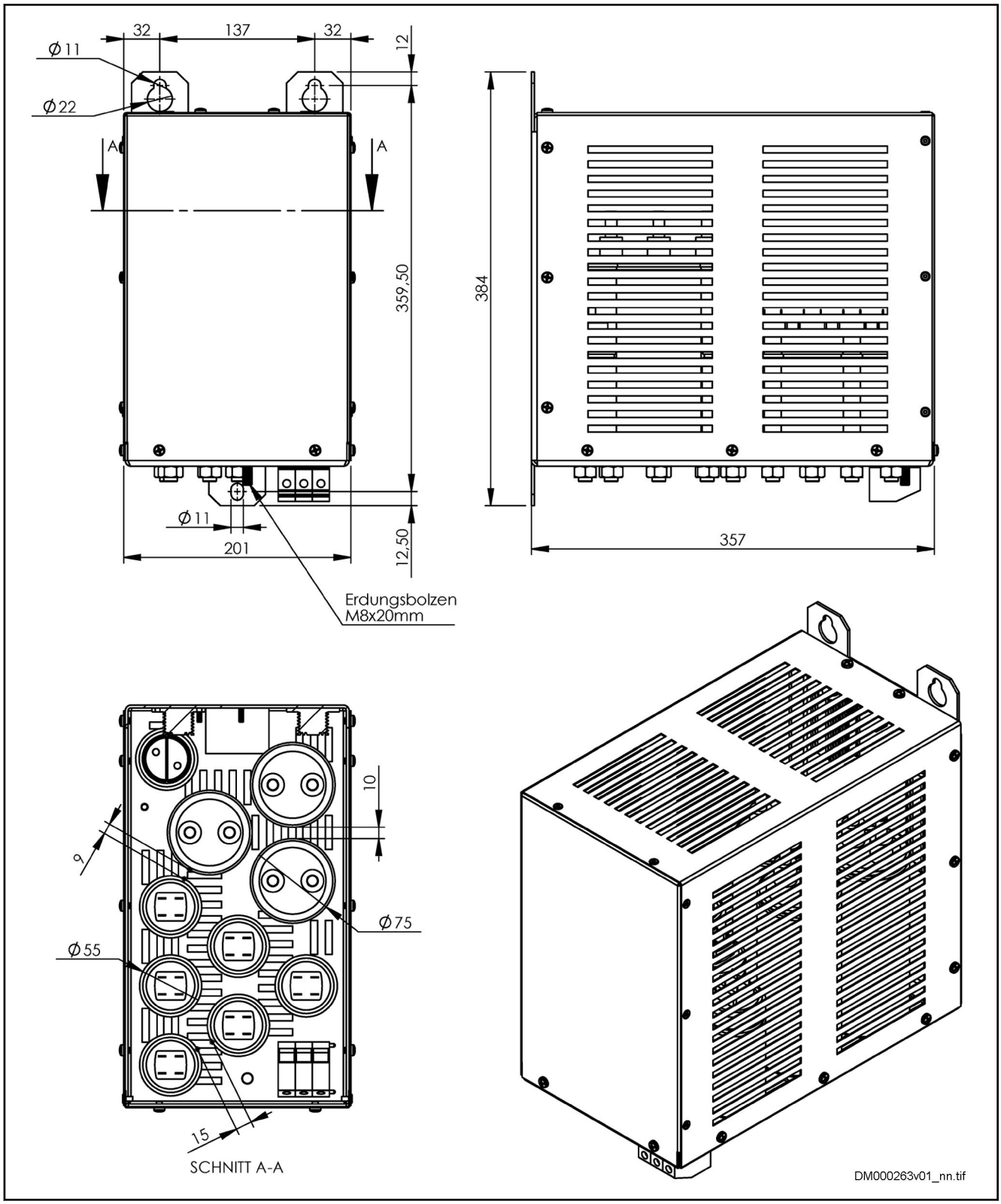


Fig. 8-20: HNC05.1N-0050/0075/0100-A4

HNC05.1N-0150-A4

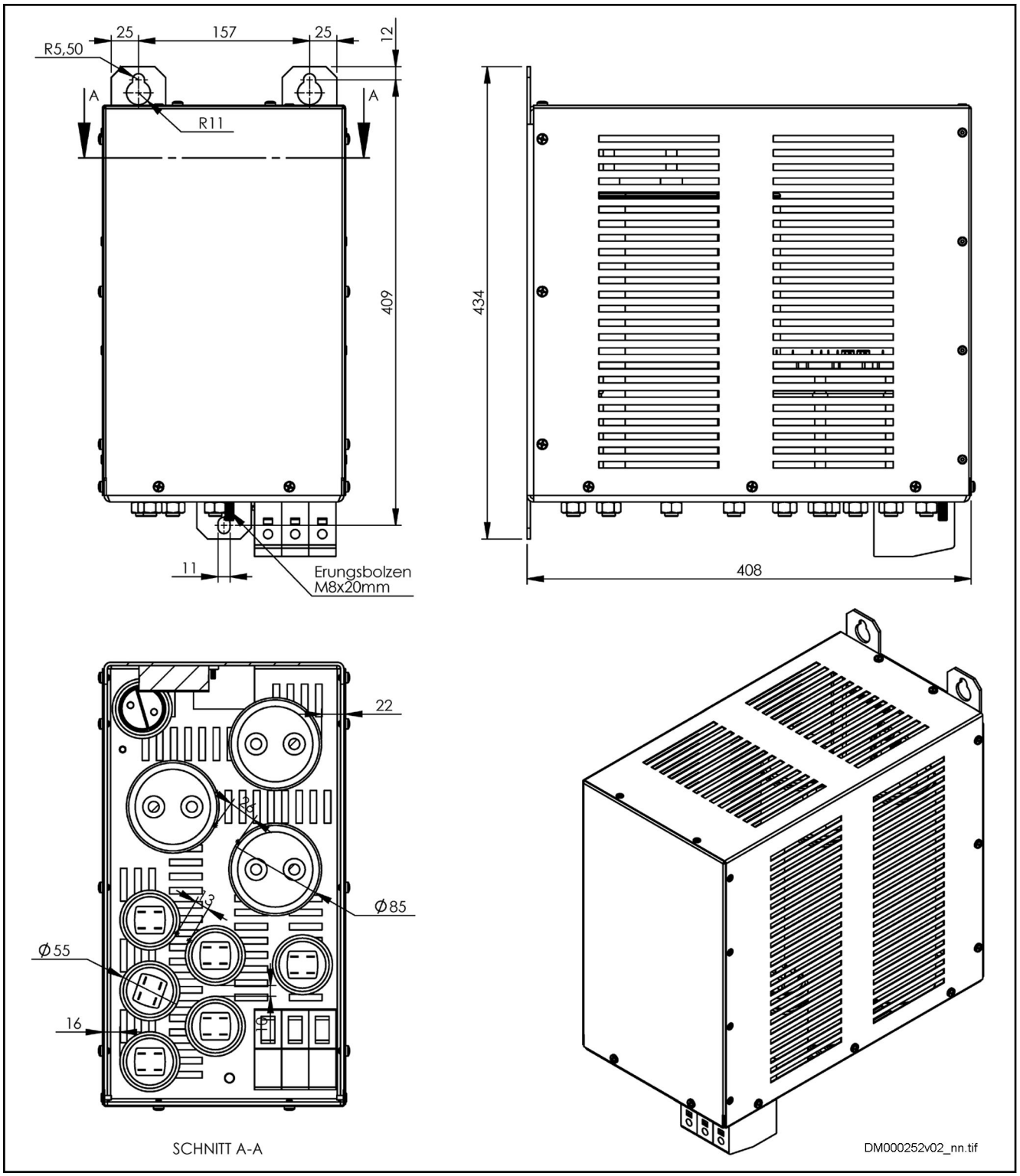


Fig. 8-21: HNC05.1N-0150

HNC05.1N-0040/0050-A5

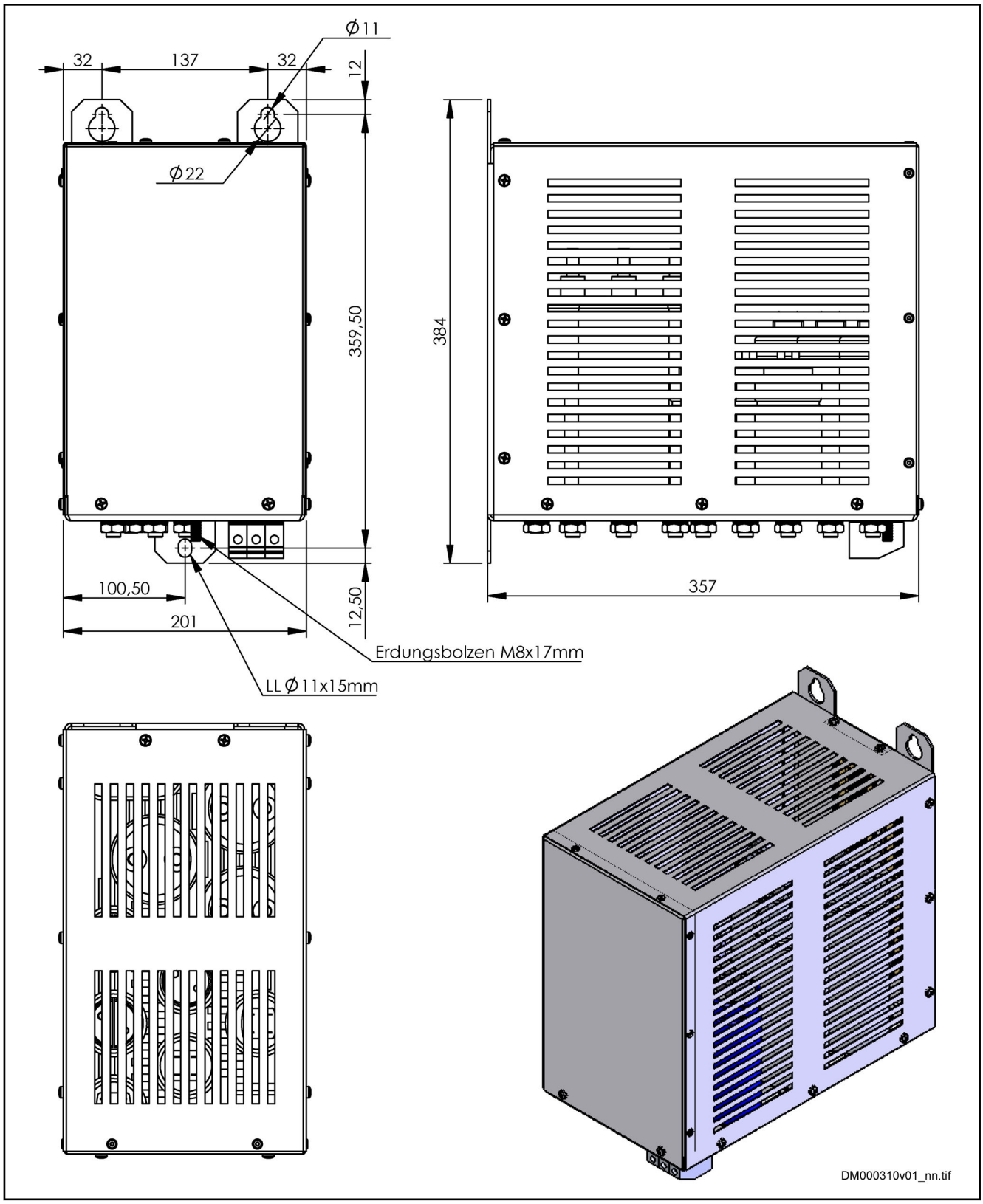


Fig. 8-22: HNC05.1N-0040/0050-A5

HNC05.1N-0070/0100-A5

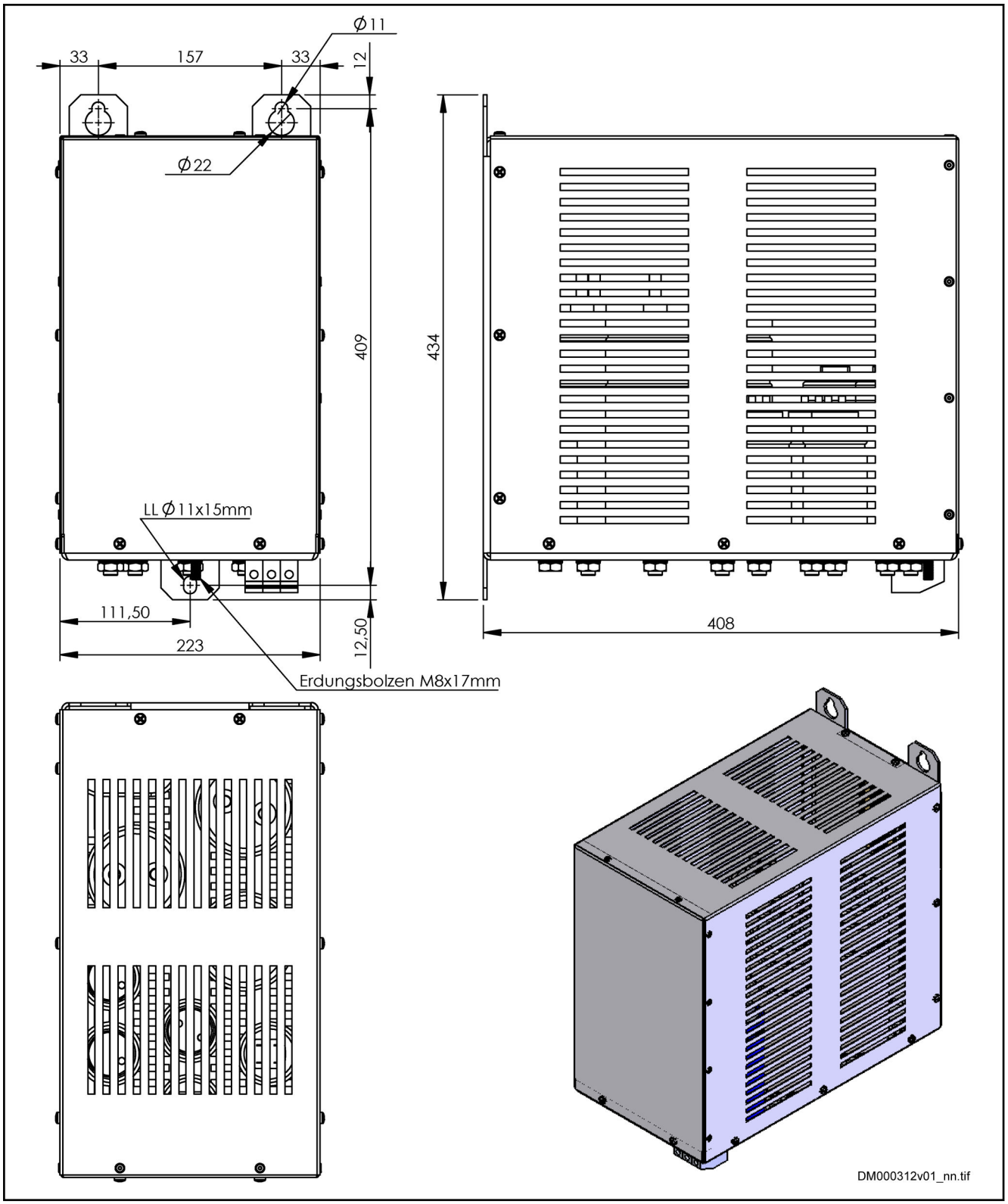


Fig. 8-23: HNC05.1N-0070/0100-A5

HNC05.1N-0125-A5

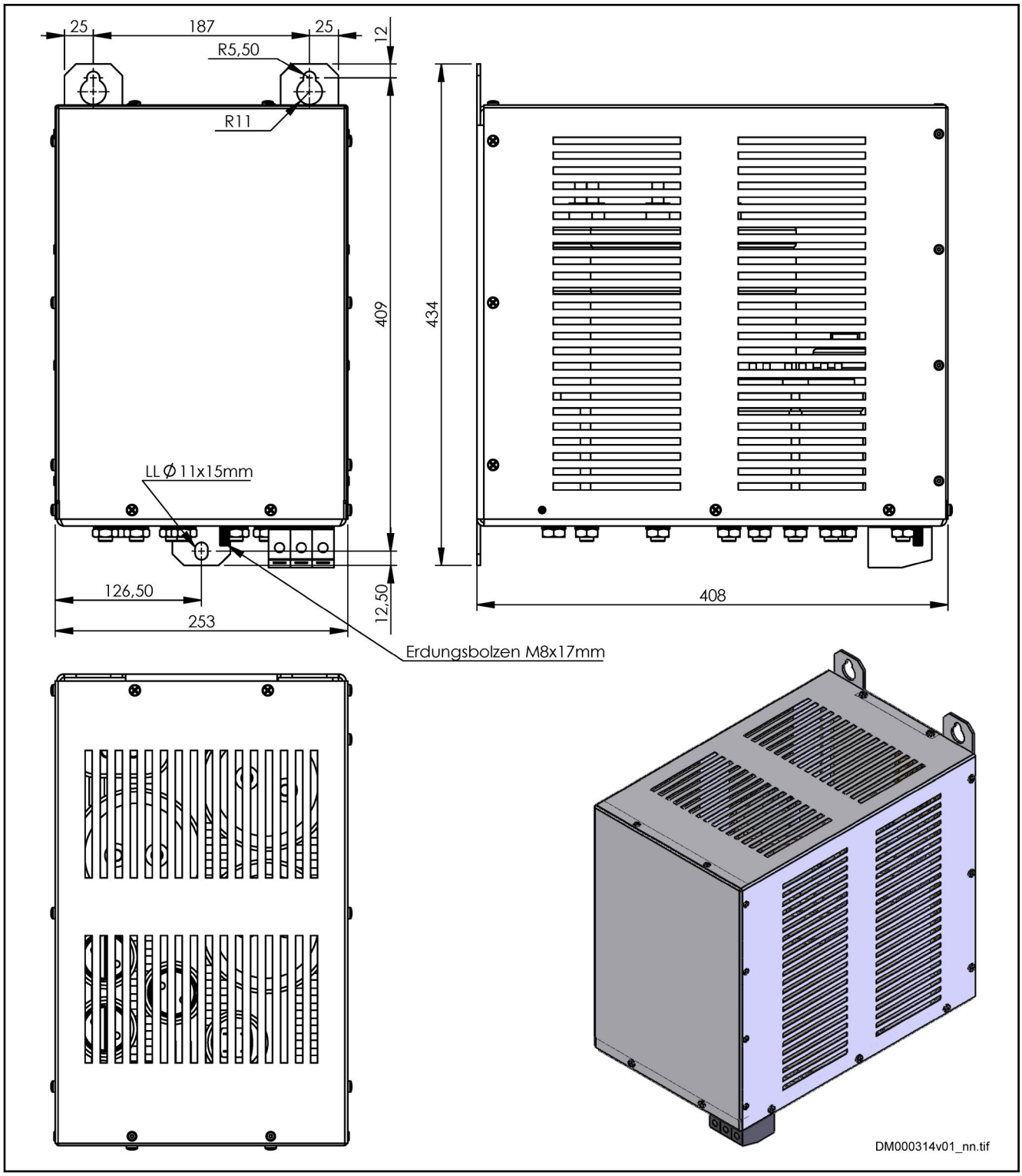


Fig. 8-24: HNC05.1N-0125-A5

HNC05.1N-0150-A5

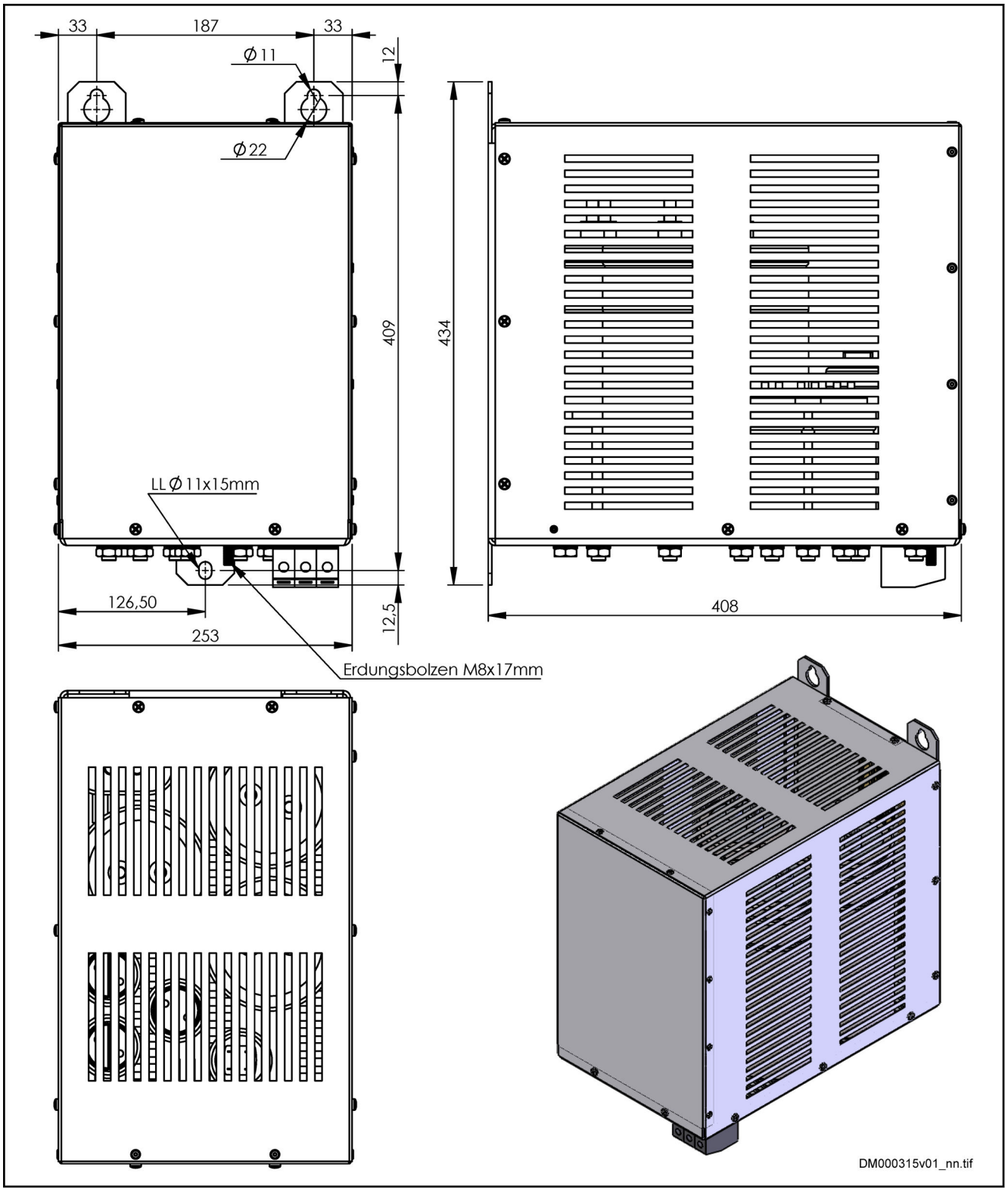
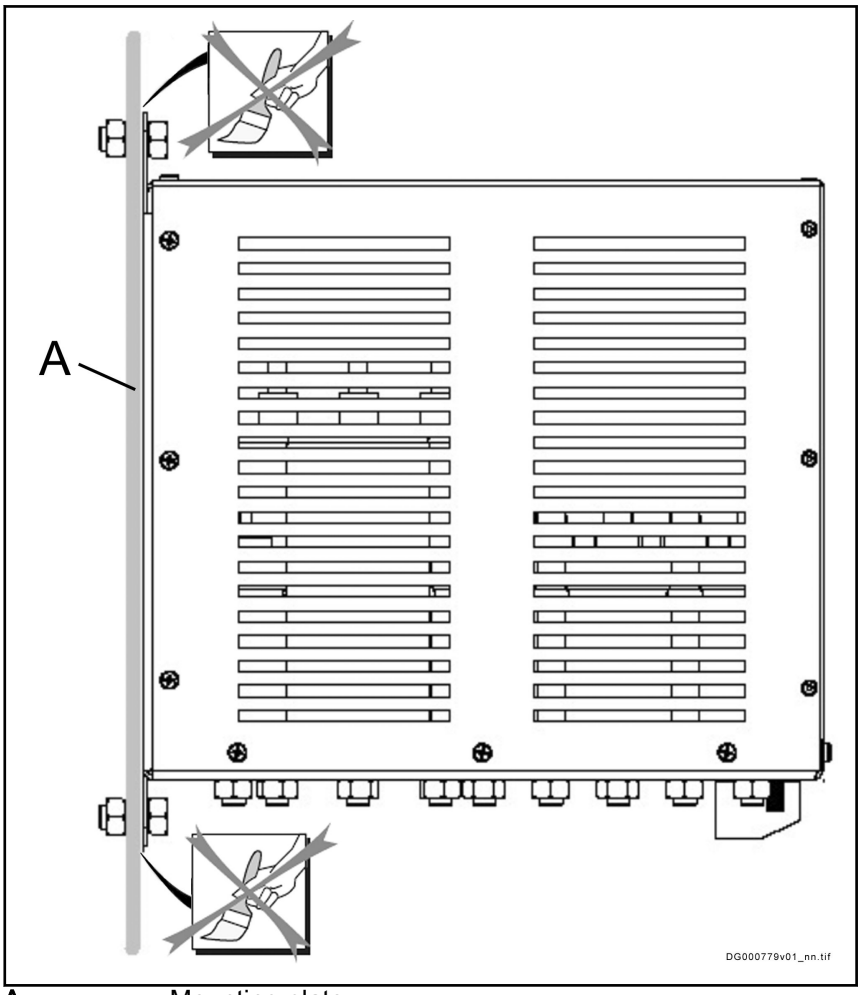


Fig. 8-25: HNC05.1N-0150-A5

Mounting

- Mount the component to the mounting plate so that its entire surface is in contact with it. Reason: EMC, heat dissipation

  (Not required for mains capacitors without ground capacitors (HNC05…-C001))
- Mounting position: G1 (hanging vertically)



A Mounting plate

Fig. 8-26: Mounting HNC05

⚠ WARNING **High ground leakage current! Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock!**

Always operate the component with the connected **equipment grounding conductor**!

Data

- **Cabling design: Comply with the rated current for cabling and the minimum cross-section (see data tables tab. 8-37 "HNC05.1N-…-A4, data" on page 229 and tab. 8-38 "HNC05.1N-…-A5, data" on page 230)**
- To protect the mains capacitor and its cabling from overcurrent in the event of line resonances or a fault, a circuit breaker with thermal and magnetic trip mechanisms can be installed at the cable branch.

  When tripped, the circuit breaker has to shut down the power supply unit by interrupting the “OFF1”–“OFF2” loop (HNA; XG33, pins 4, 5) via a coupled auxiliary contact (fig. 8-27 "Overcurrent monitoring" on page 228).

  The “rated current for cabling” (chapter "HNC05.1N-xxxx-A4" on page 229 or chapter "HNC05.1N-xxxx-A5" on page 230) is relevant for design and parameterization. For supply units in a parallel-connected system, connect the auxiliary contacts of all circuit breakers in series.

  When selecting a circuit breaker, comply with the applicable national standards (e.g., EN 60947; UL 489; CSA C22.2). The required short-circuit breaking capacity depends on the SCCR value at the system connection point. In some cases, backup fuses may need to be installed upstream of the circuit breaker as a backup protection measure. Comply with the instructions of the manufacturer regarding the circuit breaker. In the event of a short circuit, the circuit breaker has to trip first (sufficient selectivity).

  In addition to adequate insulation of the main current path from ground, a safe isolation from the auxiliary contact is required. In IT system applications, an operating voltage may arise between the neutral point and ground for which no circuit breaker is available (battery test stands with IndraDrive ML). In each individual case, it must be assessed whether a separate fuse for the branch circuit to the capacitor box can be omitted.
- **Protective conductor:**

  Due to the high earth current, the cross-sectional area of the protective conductor must be at least equal to that of the outer conductor.
- Keep **supply lines** as short as possible.

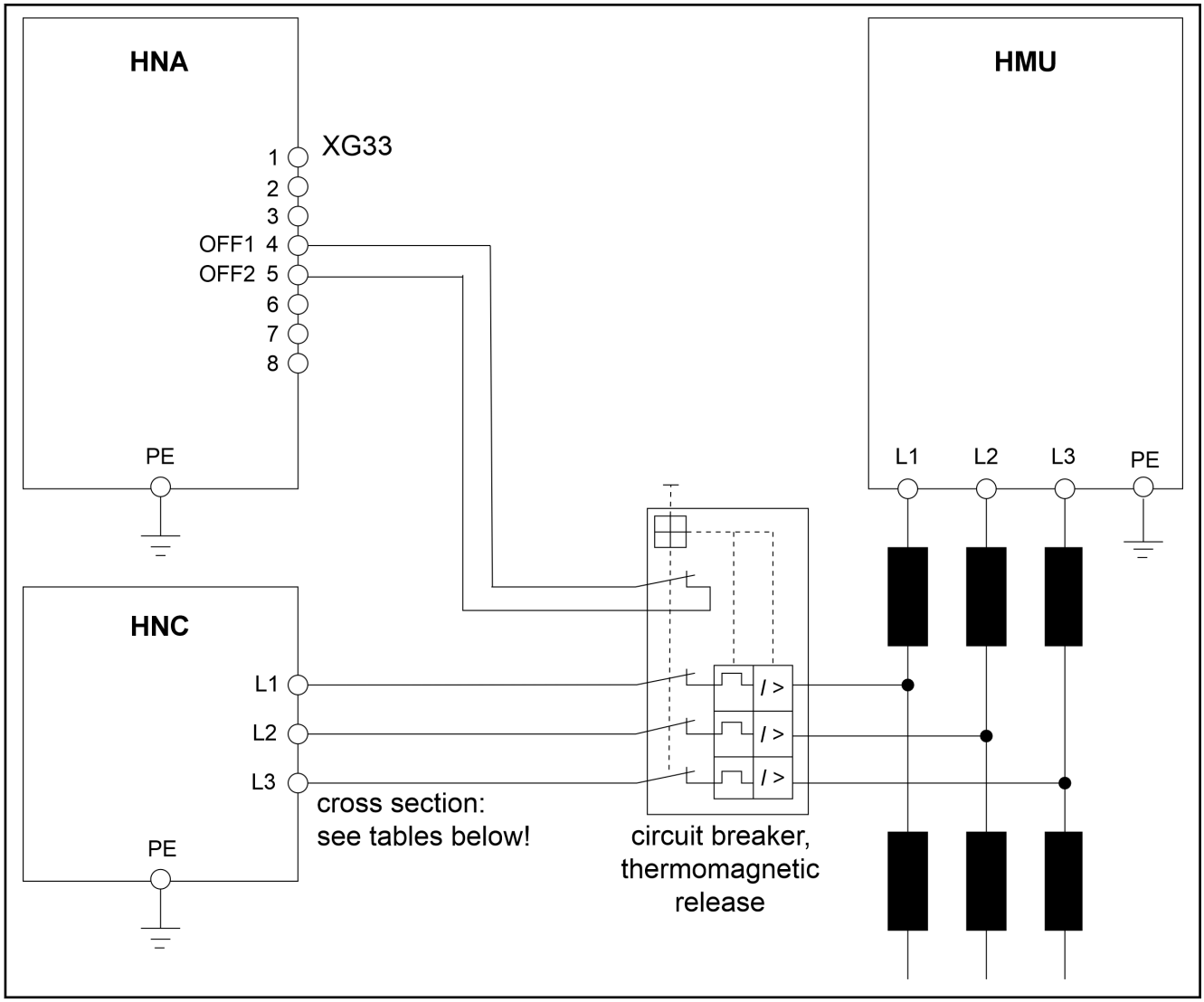


Fig. 8-27: Overcurrent monitoring

HNC05.1N-xxxx-A4

HNC05.1N-…-A4

Mains capacitor HNC05.1N-…	Capacitance [µF]	Nominal current [A]	Rated current for cabling [A]	Power dissipation [W]	Connection	Cable	Degree of protection	Weight [kg]
0050-A4-NNNN	3 × 50	60	60	100	Phases: Screw terminal, 25 mm² Tightening torque: 5 Nm Earth: Bolt, M8×20	≥ 25 mm² (AWG3)	IP10	12
0050-A4-C001				50				
0075-A4-NNNN	3 × 75	80	80	100	Phases: Screw terminal, 25 mm² Tightening torque: 5 Nm Earth: Bolt, M8×20	≥ 25 mm² (AWG3)	IP10	12
0075-A4-C001				50				
0100-A4-NNNN	3 × 100	80	80	150	Phases: Screw terminal, 25 mm² Tightening torque: 5 Nm Earth: Bolt, M8×20	≥ 25 mm² (AWG3)	IP10	12
0100-A4-C001				100				
0150-A4-NNNN	3 × 150	130	130	200	Phases: Screw terminal, 95 mm² Tightening torque: 15 Nm Earth: Bolt, M8×20	≥ 95 mm² (AWG4/0)	IP10	25
0150-A4-C001				150				

Tab. 8-37: HNC05.1N-…-A4, data

Discharge time 20 Minutes

HNC as wear part

- **Mains capacitors (HNC)** are operated directly at the power supply network. Industrial power grids have increased levels of harmonics and transients. This electrical and thermal stress causes the capacitors installed in the HNC to age gradually due to self-healing effects. HNCs are therefore **wear parts**.
- Over the course of their service life, capacitors deteriorate and lose some of their capacitance. This **loss of capacitance** can be determined and serves as an indicator of the capacitors' aging.
- It is recommended to **annually review** capacity values. This inspection can be ordered as a service or performed by trained and appropriately qualified personnel (comply with national regulations).

chapter "Loss of capacity" on page 235

HNC05.1N-xxxx-A5

HNC05.1N-…-A5

Mains capacitor HNC05.1N-…	Capacitance [µF]	Nominal current [A]	Rated current for cabling [A]	Power dissipation [W]	Connection	Cable	Degree of protection	Weight [kg]
0040-A5-NNNN	3 × 40	32	65	150	Phases: Screw terminal, 25 mm² Tightening torque: 5 Nm Earth: Bolt, M8×20	≥ 25 mm² (AWG3)	IP10	14
0040-A5-C001				70				
0050-A5-NNNN	3 × 50	37	65	150	Screw terminal, 25 mm² Tightening torque: 5 Nm Earth: Bolt, M8×20	≥ 25 mm² (AWG3)	IP10	15
0050-A5-C001				70				
0070-A5-NNNN	3 × 70	47	70	170	Screw terminal, 25 mm² Tightening torque: 5 Nm Earth: Bolt, M8×20	≥ 25 mm² (AWG3)	IP10	18
0070-A5-C001				80				
0100-A5-NNNN	3 × 100	66	80	200	Screw terminal, 25 mm² Tightening torque: 5 Nm Earth: Bolt, M8×20	≥ 25 mm² (AWG3)	IP10	18
0100-A5-C001				100				
0125-A5-NNNN	3 × 125	80	120	200	Screw terminal, 50 mm² Tightening torque: 6 Nm Earth: Bolt, M8×20	≥ 50 mm² (AWG1/0)	IP10	25
0125-A5-C001				150				

Tab. 8-38: HNC05.1N-…-A5, data

Discharge time 20 Minutes

HNC as wear part

- **Mains capacitors (HNC)** are operated directly at the power supply network. Industrial power grids have increased levels of harmonics and transients. This electrical and thermal stress causes the capacitors installed in the HNC to age gradually due to self-healing effects. HNCs are therefore **wear parts**.
- Over the course of their service life, capacitors deteriorate and lose some of their capacitance. This **loss of capacitance** can be determined and serves as an indicator of the capacitors' aging.
- It is recommended to **annually review** capacity values. This inspection can be ordered as a service or performed by trained and appropriately qualified personnel (comply with national regulations).

chapter "Loss of capacity" on page 235

IT mains

Mains capacitor HNC05.1N-…	Phase-to-ground capacitance, resulting [µF]	Phase-to-ground discharge resistors; per phase [kΩ]	Mains-side ground fault: Continued operation permitted for a limited time	Motor-side ground fault: Continued operation permitted for a limited time
0050-A4-NNNN	3 × 50	1000	–	–
0075-A4-NNNN				
0100-A4-NNNN				
0150-A4-NNNN		470		
0040-A5-NNNN	3 × 30	2000	✓	–
0050-A5-NNNN				
0070-A5-NNNN				
0100-A5-NNNN				
0125-A5-NNNN				
0050-A4-C001	-	-	✓	✓
0075-A4-C001				
0100-A4-C001				
0150-A4-C001				
0040-A5-C001	-	-	✓	✓
0050-A5-C001				
0070-A5-C001				
0100-A5-C001				
0125-A5-C001				

Tab. 8-39: Data for operation on the IT system

HNC05.1N-…-C001 (mains capacitor without ground capacitors)

Mains capacitors without ground capacitors (HNC05.1N-…-C001) are intended exclusively for use on an **IT-system**.

Operating these mains capacitors requires a thorough **analysis of the entire IT system**:

- Without ground capacitors, the drive system can cause high overvoltages to ground at the mains connection.
- The ground leakage current caused by the axis leakage capacitance flows into the mains as a common-mode current.

The following points have to be analyzed:

- Clearance and creepage distances
- Isolation
- EMC

Overload of filter branches to ground must be prevented throughout the entire IT-system. Also take into account the mains filters on all connected devices.

When combining this product with **other IndraDrive components**, please also note the following:

- If a mains capacitor without ground capacitors (HNC05.1N-…-C001) is to be operated with a mains filter (HNF05), the ground capacitors of the mains filter must not be overloaded by the earth current. Countermeasures to prevent potential overload: e.g., installing an isolating transformer or a mains filter on the primary side.
- When operating HLL05 DC bus chokes and DC bus ground capacitor pairs (HAS04.1-003), the clock frequencies must not induce any resonances.

HNC05.1N-…-C001	HMU05.1N-x…-A4-D7 supply unit							HMU05.1N-F…-A5-11 supply unit					
	F0140-0350	F0170-0430	F0220-0510	F0270-0660	F0340-0820	F0430-1040	F0540-1300	0140-0210	0170-0250	0220-0300	0270-0370	0400-0600	0540-0750
0050-A4	✓	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
0075-A4	–	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
0100-A4	–	–	–	✓	✓	✓ 1)	✓ 1)	–	–	–	–	–	–
0150-A4	–	–	–	–	–	(✓) 1)	(✓) 1)	–	–	–	–	–	–
0040-A5	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	✓	–	–	–	–
0050-A5	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–
0070-A5	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–
0100-A5	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–
0125-A5	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓

1) When operating the power supply unit at a clock frequency of 3.8 kHz (for a 7- or 8-way parallel configuration), use HNC05.1N-0150-A4.

Tab. 8-40: Component assignment

HNC, permissible clock frequencies:

- **4.2 kHz**: all
- **3.8 kHz**: HNC05.1N-**0150**-A4

Reactive current

When reactive power compensation is enabled (S-0-1709.0.160, bit 0 = 1, bit = 0), the power supply unit automatically compensates for the reactive current of the components during operation.

The specified reactive current refers to the situation in which the mains capacitor has already been connected to the mains, but the supply unit is still locked.

The reactive current of the HNF mains filter has to be added to the total reactive current of the drive system (see chapter "Reactive current with supply unit locked" on page 247). The effect of the chokes is negligible.

For mains capacitors without ground capacitors (HNC05…-C001), the size classification may differ due to UL/CSA certification.

In a parallel configuration consisting of 7 or 8 supply units HMU05.1N-…-A4-D7, the mains capacitors are assigned differently.

In this case, reactive current compensation has to be reconfigured manually in the device's parameters.

HNC05.1N-…-A4	Mains frequency 50 Hz			Mains frequency 60 Hz		
	3 × 400 V_{eff} [A_{eff}]	3 × 480 V_{eff} [A_{eff}]	3 × 500 V_{eff} [A_{eff}]	3 × 400 V_{eff} [A_{eff}]	3 × 480 V_{eff} [A_{eff}]	3 × 500 V_{eff} [A_{eff}]
0050	15	17	18	17	21	22
0075	20	24	25	24	29	30
0100	25	30	32	30	37	38
0150	36	44	45	44	52	54

Intermediate values can be calculated by interpolation or extrapolation.

Tab. 8-41: Capacitive reactive current HNC05.1N-…-A4

HNC05.1N-…-A5	Mains frequency 50 Hz		Mains frequency 60 Hz	
	3 × 600 V_{eff} [A_{eff}]	3 × 690 V_{eff} [A_{eff}]	3 × 600 V_{eff} [A_{eff}]	3 × 690 V_{eff} [A_{eff}]
0040	16	19	20	23
0050	20	23	23	27
0070	26	30	31	36
0100	36	41	43	50
0125	44	51	53	61

Intermediate values can be calculated by interpolation or extrapolation.

Tab. 8-42: Capacitive reactive current HNC05.1N-…-A5

See also chapter 11.2 "Reactive power" on page 627.

Assignment HNC05 to HMU05

See chapter "Combining a mains filter, mains choke, preconnected choke, and mains capacitor" on page 116.

Loss of capacity

HNC as wear part

- **Mains capacitors (HNC)** are operated directly at the power supply network. Industrial power grids have increased levels of harmonics and transients. This electrical and thermal stress causes the capacitors installed in the HNC to age gradually due to self-healing effects. HNCs are therefore **wear parts**.
- Over the course of their service life, capacitors deteriorate and lose some of their capacitance. This **loss of capacitance** can be determined and serves as an indicator of the capacitors' aging.
- It is recommended to **annually review** capacity values. This test can be purchased as a service or performed by trained and appropriately qualified personnel (comply with national regulations).

Please note that not every failure is preceded by a loss of capacity. To prevent damage, it is recommended that the HNC is protected by its own circuit breaker.

Components

	Standard version	Designed for IT systems only	Supply unit clock frequency
500 V	HNC05.1N-0050-A4-NNNN	HNC05.1N-0050-A4-C001	4.2 kHz
	HNC05.1N-0075-A4-NNNN	HNC05.1N-0075-A4-C001	4.2 kHz
	HNC05.1N-0100-A4-NNNN	HNC05.1N-0100-A4-C001	4.2 kHz
	HNC05.1N-0150-A4-NNNN	HNC05.1N-0150-A4-C001	4.2 kHz and 3.8 kHz
	HNC05.1N-0200-A4-NNNN	-	
690 V	HNC05.1N-0040-A5-NNNN	HNC05.1N-0040-A5-C001	4.2 kHz
	HNC05.1N-0050-A5-NNNN	HNC05.1N-0050-A5-C001	4.2 kHz
	HNC05.1N-0070-A5-NNNN	HNC05.1N-0070-A5-C001	4.2 kHz
	HNC05.1N-0100-A5-NNNN	HNC05.1N-0100-A5-C001	4.2 kHz
	HNC05.1N-0125-A5-NNNN	HNC05.1N-0125-A5-C001	4.2 kHz

Tab. 8-43: HNC, components

Checking the capacity

⚠ WARNING **High voltage! Danger to life!**

Only appropriately **qualified personnel** may perform the inspection (comply with national regulations).

Before starting work, make sure the system is **de-energized**!

In addition to the **mains connection**, also check the **DC bus**! In addition to checking the voltage between conductors, always check the voltage to ground as well!

Operate the HNC only with **the protective conductor** connected!

Preparation and measuring instruments

A multimeter with an appropriate capacitance measurement range (e.g., the Fluke 170 series) is suitable for checking capacitance. Optionally, use a special LCR measuring device.

Measuring frequency: 100 Hz to 120 Hz

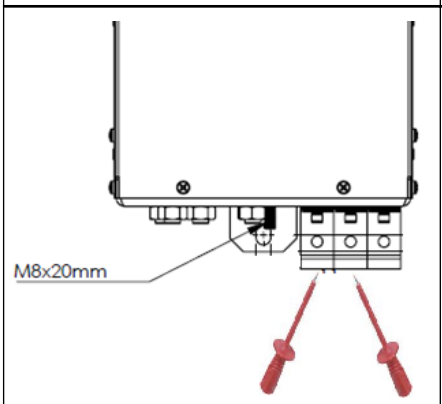
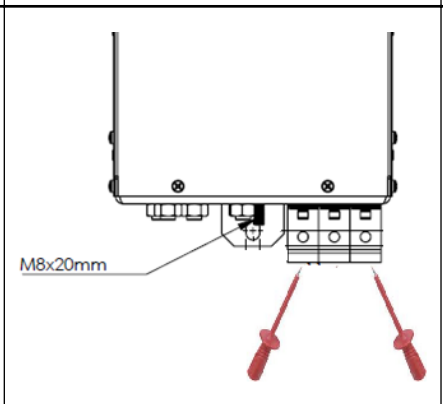
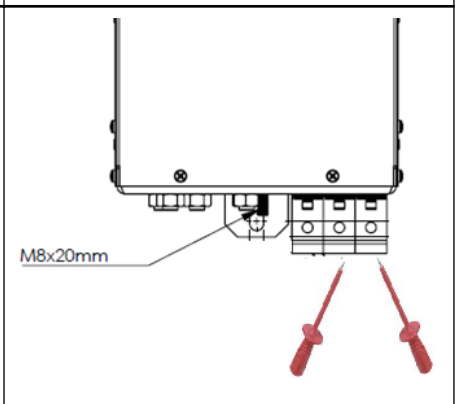
Perform measurements directly at the HNC terminals.

To avoid measurement errors, disconnect the three connecting cables from the screw terminals. If the HNC is directly connected to its own circuit breaker, disconnection is achieved by manually opening the power circuit-breaker.

Phase-to-phase capacitance

Measure each phase combination.

Even if the values are within the permissible range, a significant imbalance between the phases may indicate a defect.

L1-L2	L1-L3	L2-L3
		

Tab. 8-44: Measuring phase-to-phase capacitance values

	Phase-to-phase capacity			
	Tolerance range (new condition)	Remaining time until next inspection interval	Replacement (within 2 months)	immediate replacement prior to recommissioning
HNC05.1N-0050-A4-…	95…104 µF	80…104 µF	70…80 µF	< 70 µF
HNC05.1N-0075-A4-…	131…144 µF	105…144 µF	95…105 µF	< 95 µF
HNC05.1N-0100-A4-…	159…176 µF	130…176 µF	110…130 µF	< 110 µF
HNC05.1N-0150-A4-…	238…262 µF	190…262 µF	170…190 µF	< 170 µF
HNC05.1N-0200-A4-…	309…341 µF	250…341 µF	220…250 µF	< 220 µF
HNC05.1N-0040-A5-…	71…79 µF	60…79 µF	50…60 µF	< 50 µF
HNC05.1N-0050-A5-…	85…95 µF	70…95 µF	60…70 µF	< 60 µF
HNC05.1N-0070-A5-…	114…126 µF	95…126 µF	80…95 µF	< 80 µF
HNC05.1N-0100-A5-…	157…173 µF	125…173 µF	110…125 µF	< 110 µF
HNC05.1N-0125-A5-…	183…222 µF	150…222 µF	130…150 µF	< 130 µF

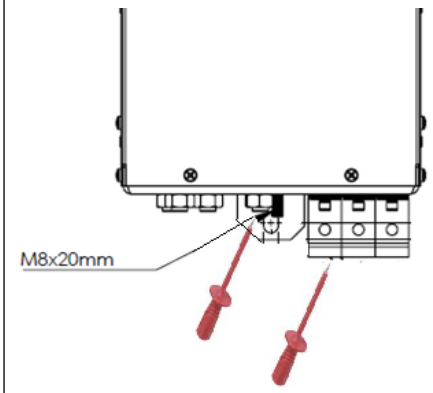
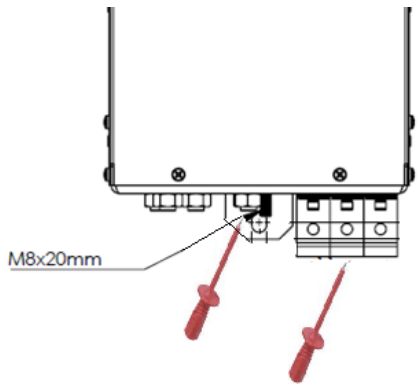
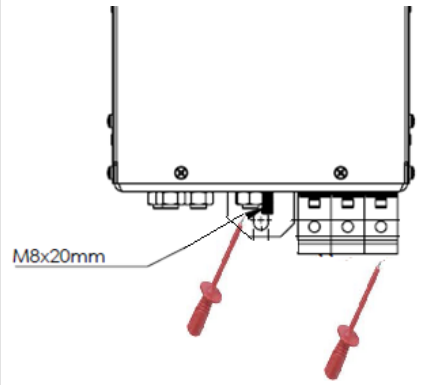
Tab. 8-45: Command values for phase-to-phase capacitance

When using an **LCR measuring device**, the measuring frequency has to be set to **100 Hz or 120 Hz**.

Phase-to-ground capacitance

Measure each phase combination. Even if the values are within the permissible range, a significant imbalance between the phases may indicate a defect.

For HNC05.1N-…-C001 (version without ground capacitors), only the phase-to-phase capacitance should be measured. There is no need to check the phase-to-ground capacitance.

L1 earth	L2 earth	L3 earth
		

Tab. 8-46: Measuring the phase-to-ground capacitance values

	Phase-to-ground capacitance			
	Tolerance range (new condition)	Remaining time until next inspection interval	Replacement (within 2 months)	immediate replacement prior to recommissioning
HNC05.1N-0050-A4-…	95..105 µF	80…105 µF	70…80 µF	< 70 µF
HNC05.1N-0075-A4-…	104..115 µF	85…115 µF	75…85 µF	< 75 µF
HNC05.1N-0100-A4-…	110..121 µF	90…121 µF	80…90 µF	< 80 µF
HNC05.1N-0150-A4-…	119..132 µF	95…132 µF	85…95 µF	< 85 µF
HNC05.1N-0200-A4-…	123..136 µF	100…136 µF	90…100 µF	< 90 µF
HNC05.1N-0040-A5-…	61..67 µF	50…67 µF	45…50 µF	< 45 µF
HNC05.1N-0050-A5-…	64..71 µF	55…71 µF	45…55 µF	< 45 µF
HNC05.1N-0070-A5-…	68..75 µF	55…75 µF	50…55 µF	< 50 µF
HNC05.1N-0100-A5-…	72..80 µF	60…80 µF	55…60 µF	< 55 µF
HNC05.1N-0125-A5-…	74..83 µF	60…83 µF	55…60 µF	< 55 µF

Tab. 8-47: Command values for phase-to-ground capacitance

When using an **LCR measuring device**, the measuring frequency has to be set to **100 Hz or 120 Hz**.

Reconnect the HNC

- Check that the terminals, cables, and wire end ferrules are in good condition!

- Follow the torque specifications listed on the HNC and make sure the cable is securely and correctly seated in the terminal!
- If necessary, close the power circuit-breaker installed on the supply line to the HNC! If necessary, reinsert any fuses that have been removed.
- Before turning on the system, install all protective covers and close the control cabinet door!

8.3.3 HNF05 mains filter

HNF05 type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	N	F	0	5	.	1	A	-	5	0	0	N	-	R	1	0	0	0	-	N	-	A	5	-	N	N	N	N												
	①			②			③	④		⑤					⑥	⑦					⑧		⑨			⑩															

①	**Product:** HNF = Mains filter
②	**Series:** 05 = 05
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**EMC area:** A = Category C3 in accordance with DIN EN 61800-3 B = Category C1 in accordance with DIN EN 61800-3 C = Category C2 in accordance with DIN EN 61800-3 D = Extended frequency range in accordance with EMC integration guidelines of the automotive industry for production environment E = DNVGL CP 0395
⑤	**Leakage capacitance:** 500N = 500 nF (example)
⑥	**Supply system:** R = For regenerative devices only
⑦	**Nominal current:** 0150 = 150 A 0180 = 180 A 0250 = 250 A 0320 = 320 A 0400 = 400 A 0600 = 600 A 1000 = 1000 A
⑧	**Degree of protection:** N = IP00
⑨	**Mains connection voltage:** A5 = 3 x AC 380 V -15% ... 690 V +10%
⑩	**Other design:** NNNN = None

Tab. 8-48: HNF05, type code

Possible combinations:

HNF05.1x-500N-Rxxxx-N-A5-NNNN[1]		Nominal current						
		0150	0180	0250	0320	0400	0600	1000
EMC area	A	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
EMC area	E[2]	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

1) HNF05.1…-A4 mains filters are no longer available. Instead, use type HNF05.1…-A5.

2) When used in conjunction with HLL05 DC bus chokes and HAS kits, the C2 limit values for conducted emissions can be met. Currently, there is no valid DNVGL certificate or UL/CSA approval. Technical data available upon request.

Tab. 8-49: Possible combinations

Dimensions

HNF05.1A-500N-R0150/R0180-N-A5

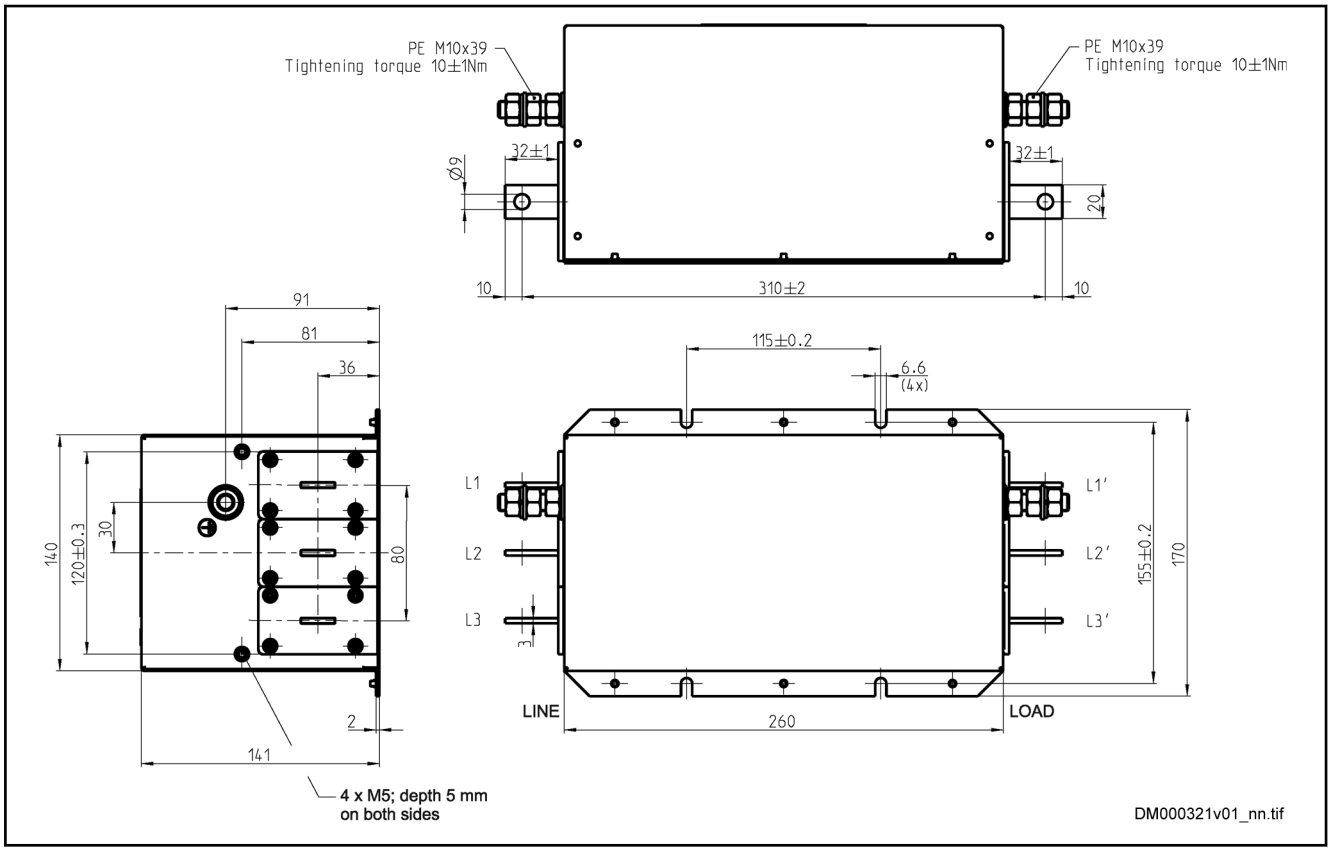


Fig. 8-28: HNF05.1A-500N-R0150/R0180-N-A5

HNF05.1A-500N-R0250-N-A5

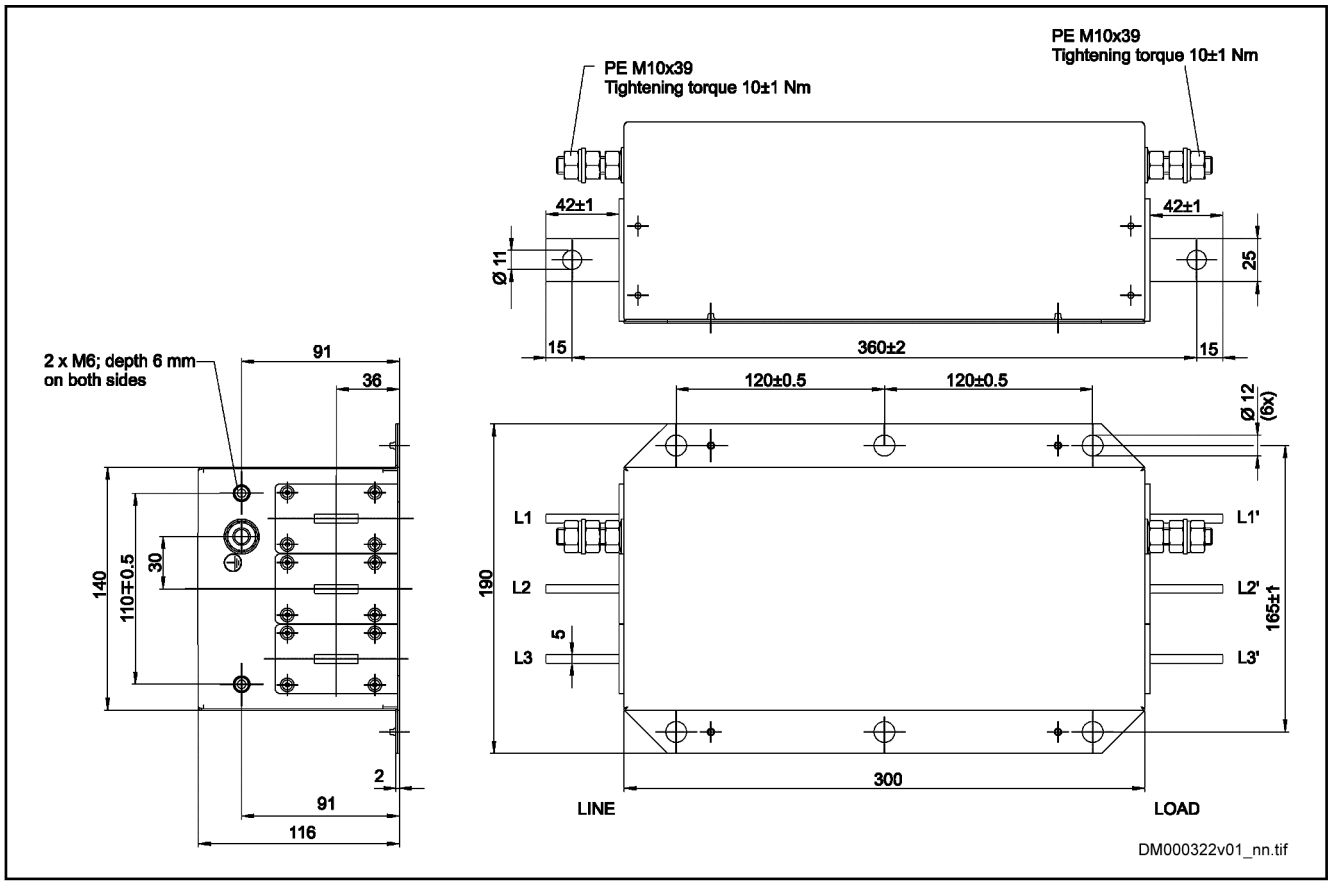


Fig. 8-29: HNF05.1A-500N-R0250-N-A5

HNF05.1A-500N-R0320/R0400-N-A5

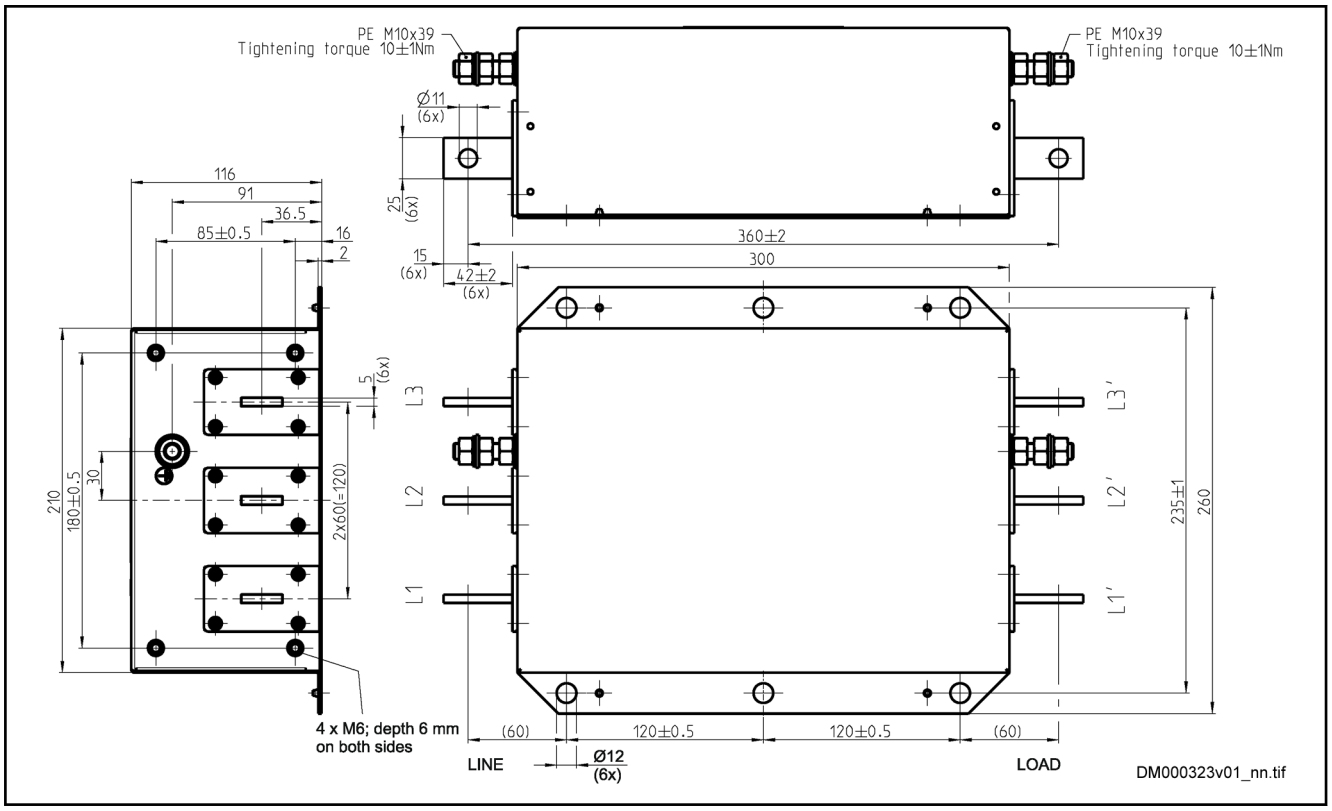


Fig. 8-30: HNF05.1A-500N-R0320/R0400-N-A5

HNF05.1A-500N-R0600-N-A5

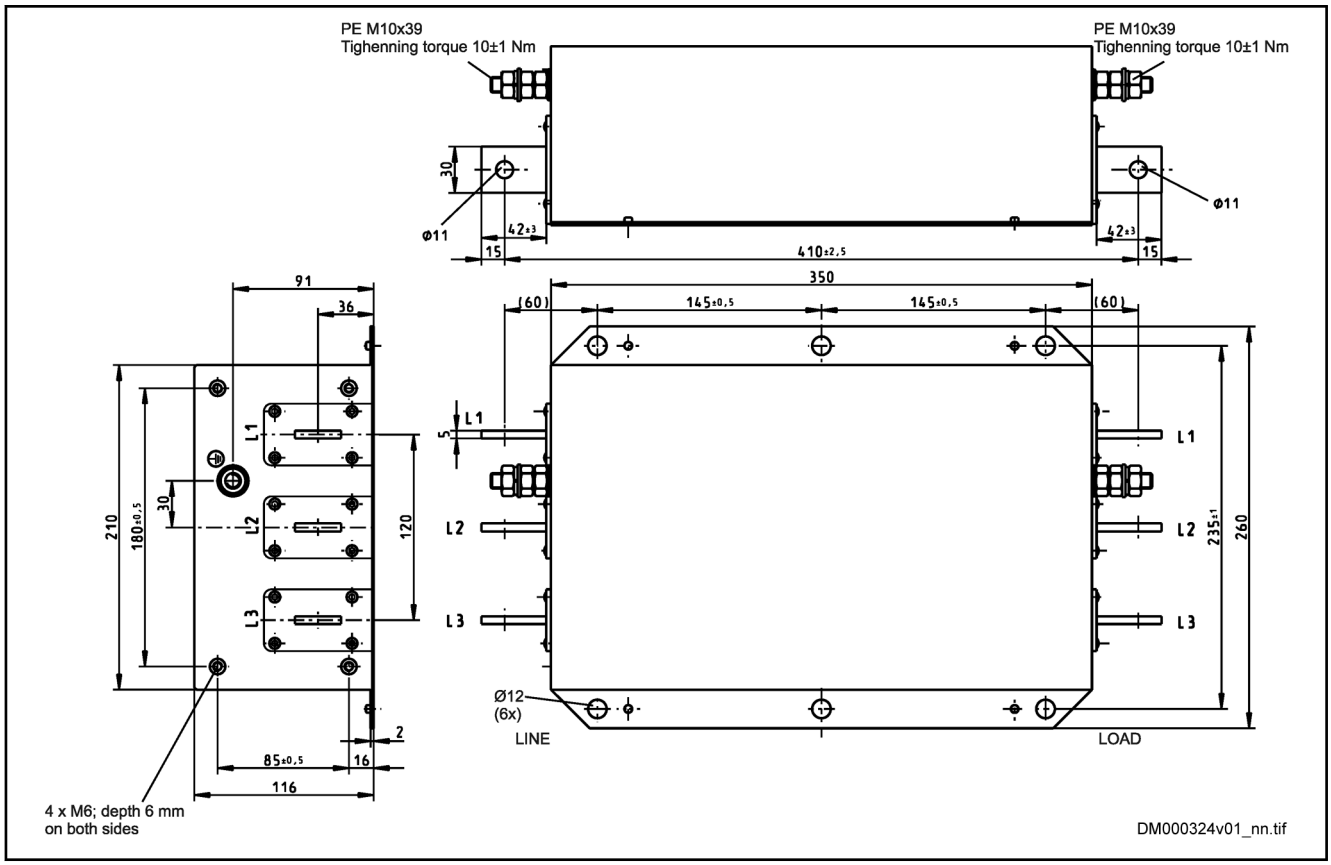


Fig. 8-31: HNF05.1A-500N-R0600-N-A5

HNF05.1A-500N-R1000-N-A5

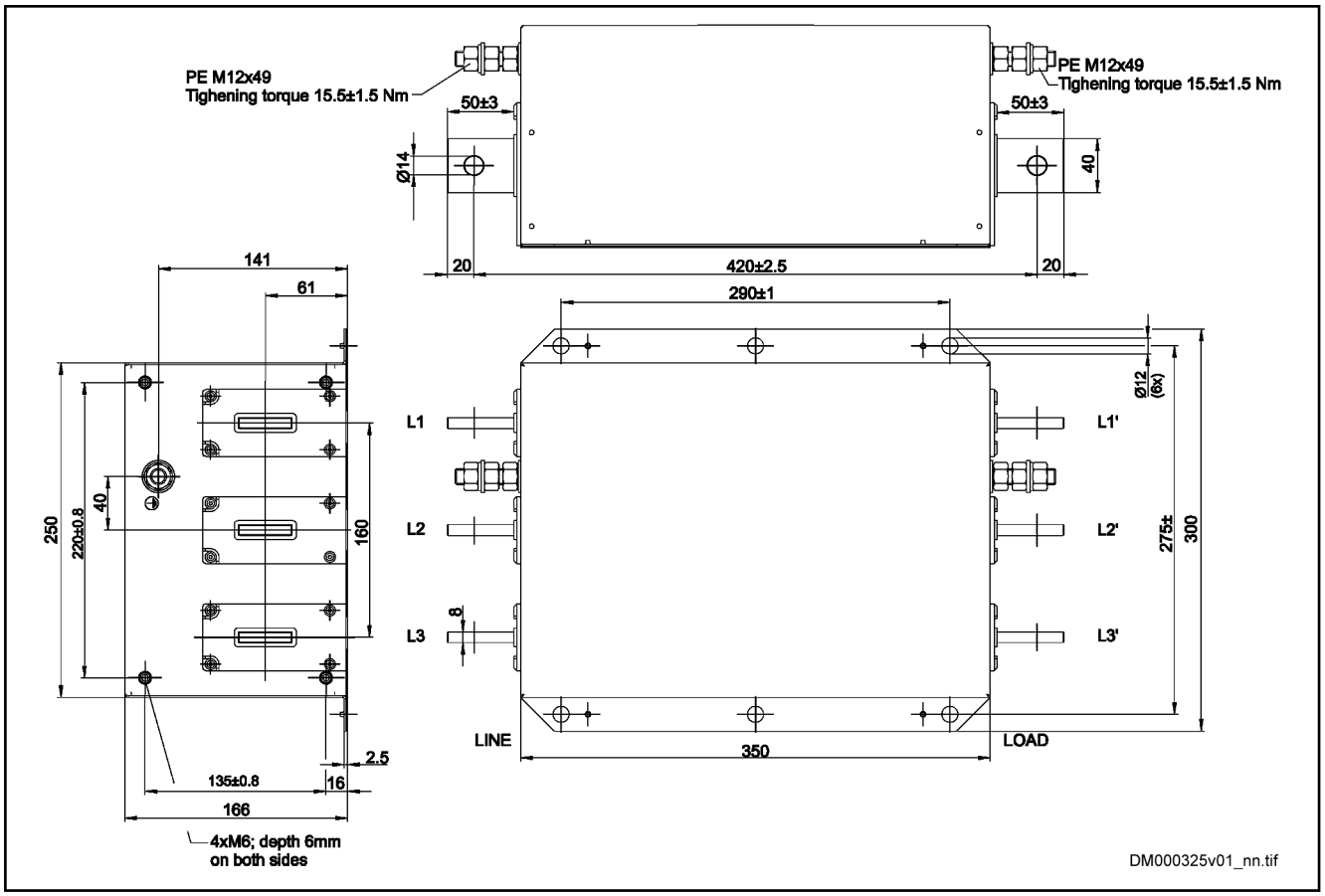


Fig. 8-32: HNF05.1A-500N-R1000-N-A5

Mounting

Mounting position

Observe the mounting position of the filters! Generally, mount the device in such a way that the natural convection is not impaired.

Mount the component to the mounting plate so that **its entire surface makes contact**.

Installation in a suspended position on the control cabinet roof is not permitted.

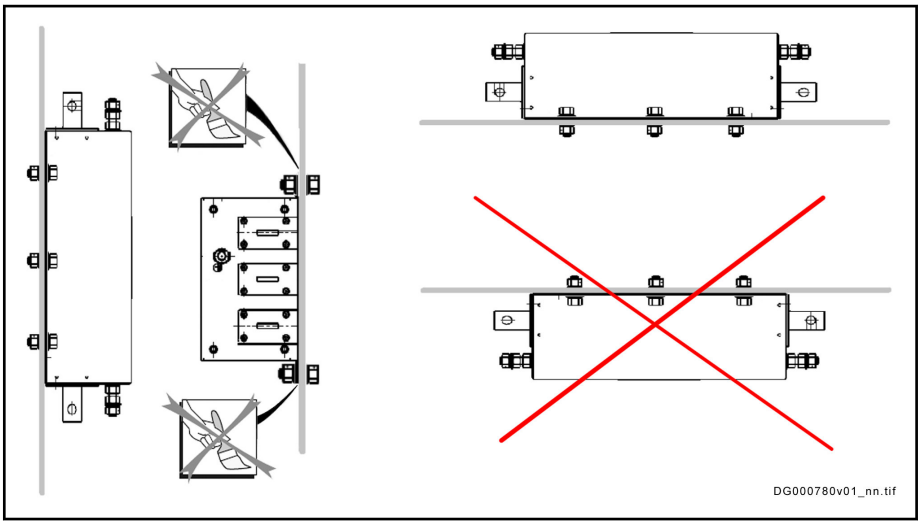


Fig. 8-33: Mounting positions for HNF05

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

Degree of protection of the component: **IP00**

Mount a **touch guard**!

Threaded bolt PE

Nominal size	Tightening torque [Nm]	Tolerance [Nm]
M10	10.0	9.0 … 11.0
M12	15.5	14.0 … 17.0
M16	30	27.0 … 33.0

Tab. 8-50: Threaded bolt PE

⚠ WARNING **High ground leakage current! Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock!**

Always operate the component with the connected **equipment grounding conductor**!

Data

HNF05.1A-500N-…-A5	Nominal voltage [V]	Nominal current [A]	Power dissipation [2] [W]	Leakage current [mA]	Resistance [µΩ]	Weight [kg]	Degree of protection
R0150	400/690, 50/60 Hz	150	28	< 905 [1]	140	13	IP00
R0180		180	34		140	13	
R0250		250	34		63	15	
R0320		320	36		67	21	
R0400		400	53		67	21	
R0600		600	86		52	22	
R1000		1000	166		33	42	

1) At rated voltage, 50 Hz
2) A component's power dissipation is virtually independent of the mains voltage

Tab. 8-51: HNF05.1A-…-A5, data

Reactive current with supply unit locked

The supply unit automatically compensates for the reactive current of the components during operation.

If the mains filter is supplied with mains voltage and the power supply unit is still disabled, a reactive current flows.

	Mains frequency 50 Hz				Mains frequency 60 Hz			
	400 V_{eff}	500 V_{eff}	600 V_{eff}	690 V_{eff}	400 V_{eff}	500 V_{eff}	600 V_{eff}	690 V_{eff}
Current [A_{eff}]	1.1	1.4	1.7	1.9	1.3	1.7	2.0	2.3

Intermediate values can be calculated by interpolation or extrapolation.

Tab. 8-52: HNF05, reactive current

See also chapter 11.2 "Reactive power" on page 627.

Assignment HNF05 to HMU05

See chapter "Combining a mains filter, mains choke, preconnected choke, and mains capacitor" on page 116.

8.3.4 HNL05 mains choke

HNL05 type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	N	L	0	5	.	1	R	-	0	1	8	2	-	N	0	8	1	1	-	N	-	A	4	-	N	N	N	F												
	①			②			③	④		⑤					⑥	⑦					⑧		⑨			⑩															

①	**Product:** HNL = Mains choke
②	**Series:** 05 = 05
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Supply system:** R = For regenerative devices only
⑤	**Nominal inductance:** 0040 = 40 µH 0043 = 43 µH 0045 = 45 µH 0050 = 50 µH 0054 = 54 µH 0080 = 80 µH 0100 = 100 µH 0113 = 113 µH 0117 = 117 µH 0125 = 125 µH 0130 = 130 µH 0135 = 135 µH 0139 = 139 µH 0175 = 175 µH 0182 = 182 µH 0219 = 219 µH 0234 = 234 µH 0346 = 346 µH 0434 = 434 µH 0542 = 542 µH 0649 = 649 µH
⑥	**Additional option:** N = None

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	N	L	0	5	.	1	R	-	0	1	8	2	-	N	0	8	1	1	-	N	-	A	4	-	N	N	N	F												
	①			②			③	④		⑤					⑥	⑦					⑧		⑨			⑩															

⑦	**Nominal current:** 0127 = 127 A 0152 = 152 A 0190 = 190 A 0218 = 218 A 0238 = 238 A 0262 = 262 A 0327 = 327 A 0352 = 352 A 0409 = 409 A 0471 = 471 A 0514 = 514 A 0592 = 592 A 0652 = 652 A 0811 = 811 A
⑧	**Degree of protection:** N = IP00
⑨	**Mains connection voltage:** A4 = 3 x AC 380 V – 15% … 500 V + 10% A5 = 3 x AC 525 V – 15% … 690 V + 10%
⑩	**Other design:** NNNF = Liquid cooling NNNN = None NNNW = Air, internal

Tab. 8-53: HNL05, type code

Possible combinations (mains connection voltage A4):

		Mains connection voltage															
		A4															
		Other design															
		NNNF							NNNN					NNNW			
		Nominal current															
		0218	0262	0327	0409	0514	0652	0811	0327	0409	0514	0652	0811	0262	0327	0409	0514
Nominal inductance	0040	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–	–
	0043	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–
	0045	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	0050	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–
	0054	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	0100	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	0113	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	0117	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–
	0130	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓
	0135	–	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–
	0182	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	0219	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–

Tab. 8-54: Possible combinations (mains connection voltage A4)

Possible combinations (mains connection voltage A5):

		Mains connection voltage												
		A5												
		Other design												
		NNNF							NNNN					
		Nominal current												
		0127	0152	0190	0238	0352	0471	0592	0152	0190	0238	0352	0471	0592
Nominal inductance	0032	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓
	0040	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–
	0054	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–
	0080	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–
	0100	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–	–
	0125	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–
	0139	–	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–
	0175	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	0234	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	0346	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	0434	–	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	0542	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	0649	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–

Tab. 8-55: Possible combinations (mains connection voltage A5)

Dimensions HNL05.1R-…-A4

HNL05.1R-0219-N0218-N-A4-NNNF

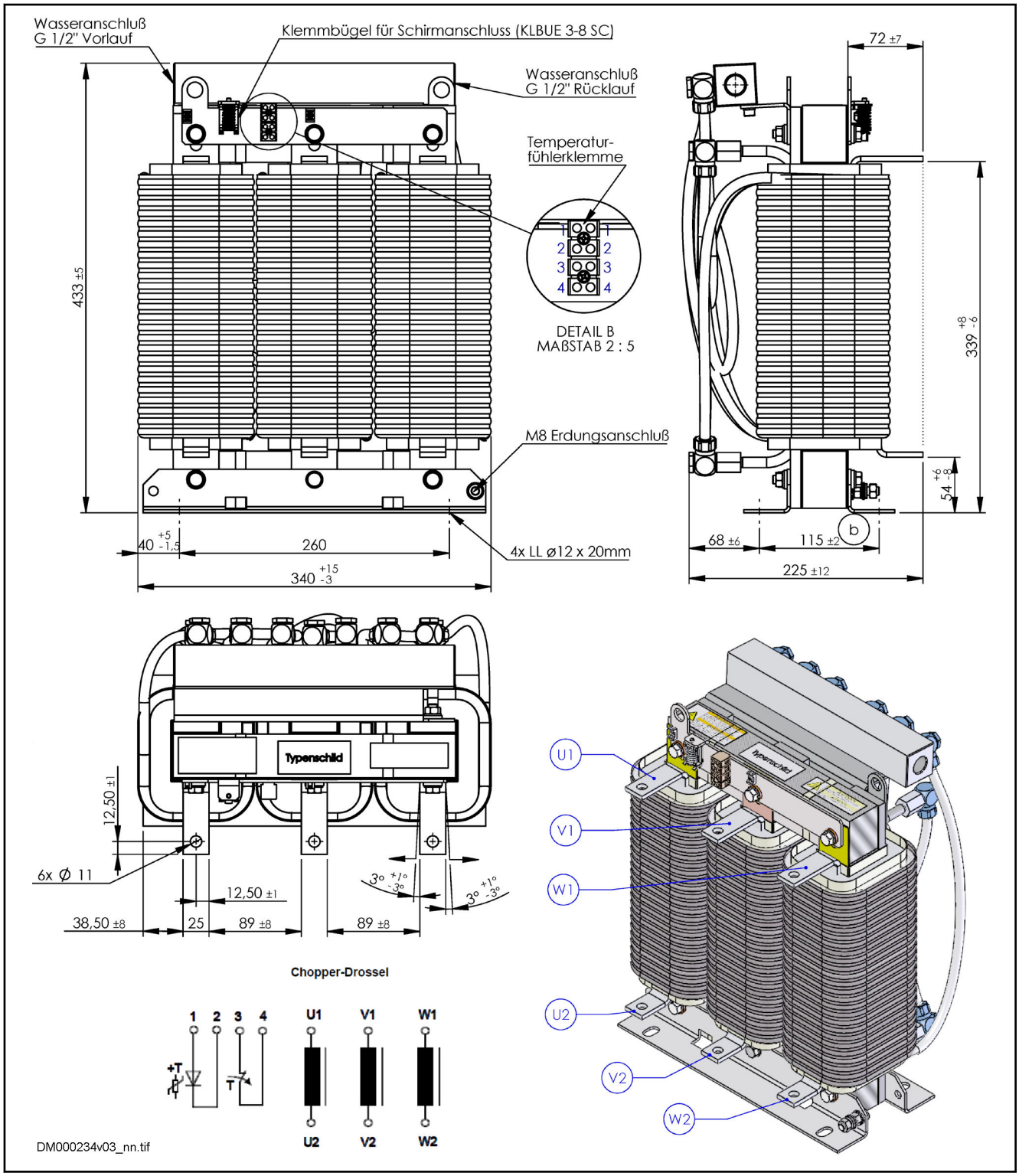


Fig. 8-34: HNL05.1R-0219-N0218-N-A4-NNNF

HNL05.1R-0182-N0262-N-A4-NNNF

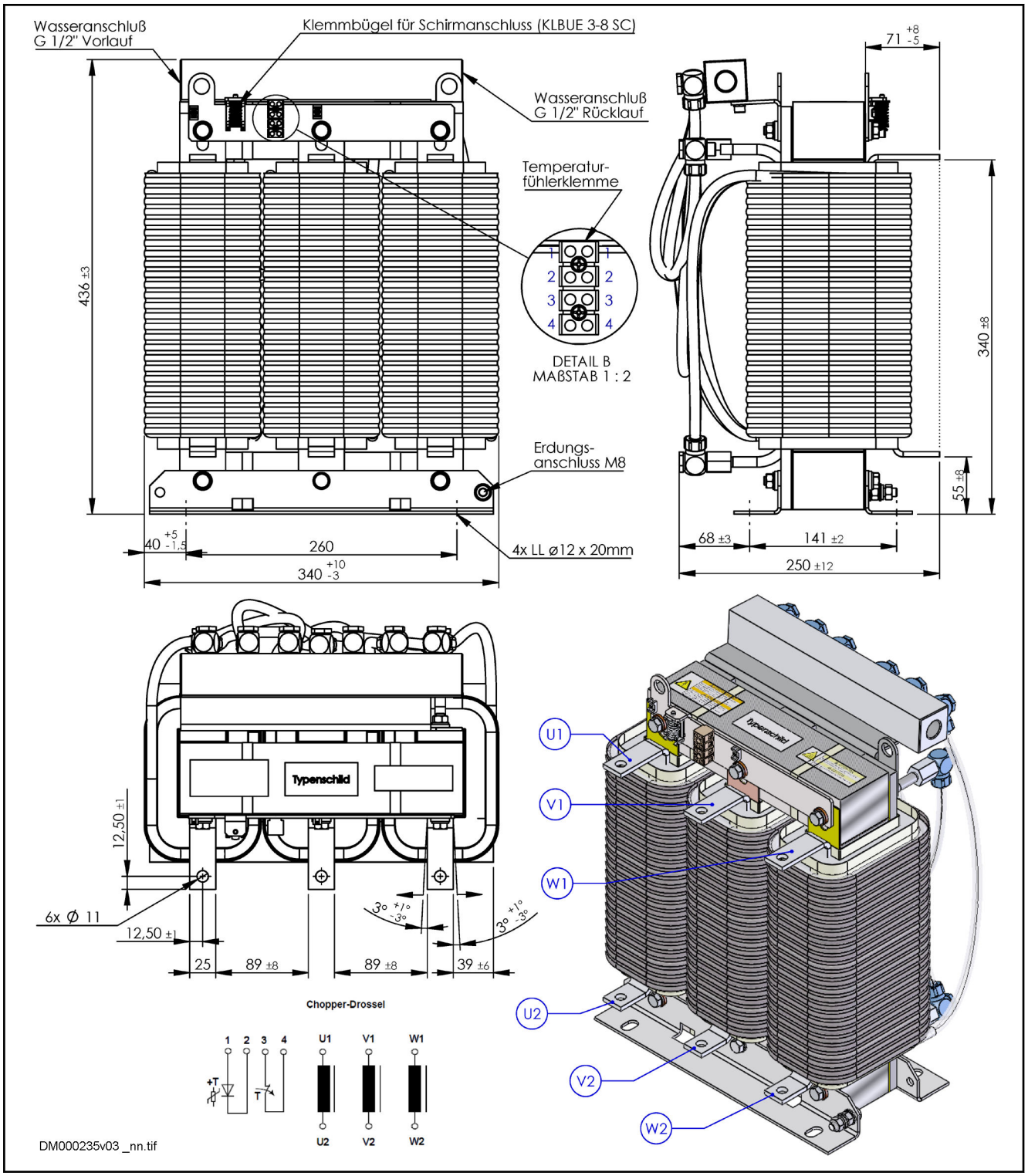


Fig. 8-35: HNL05.1R-0182-N0262-N-A4-NNNF

HNL05.1R-0219-N0262-N-A4-NNNW

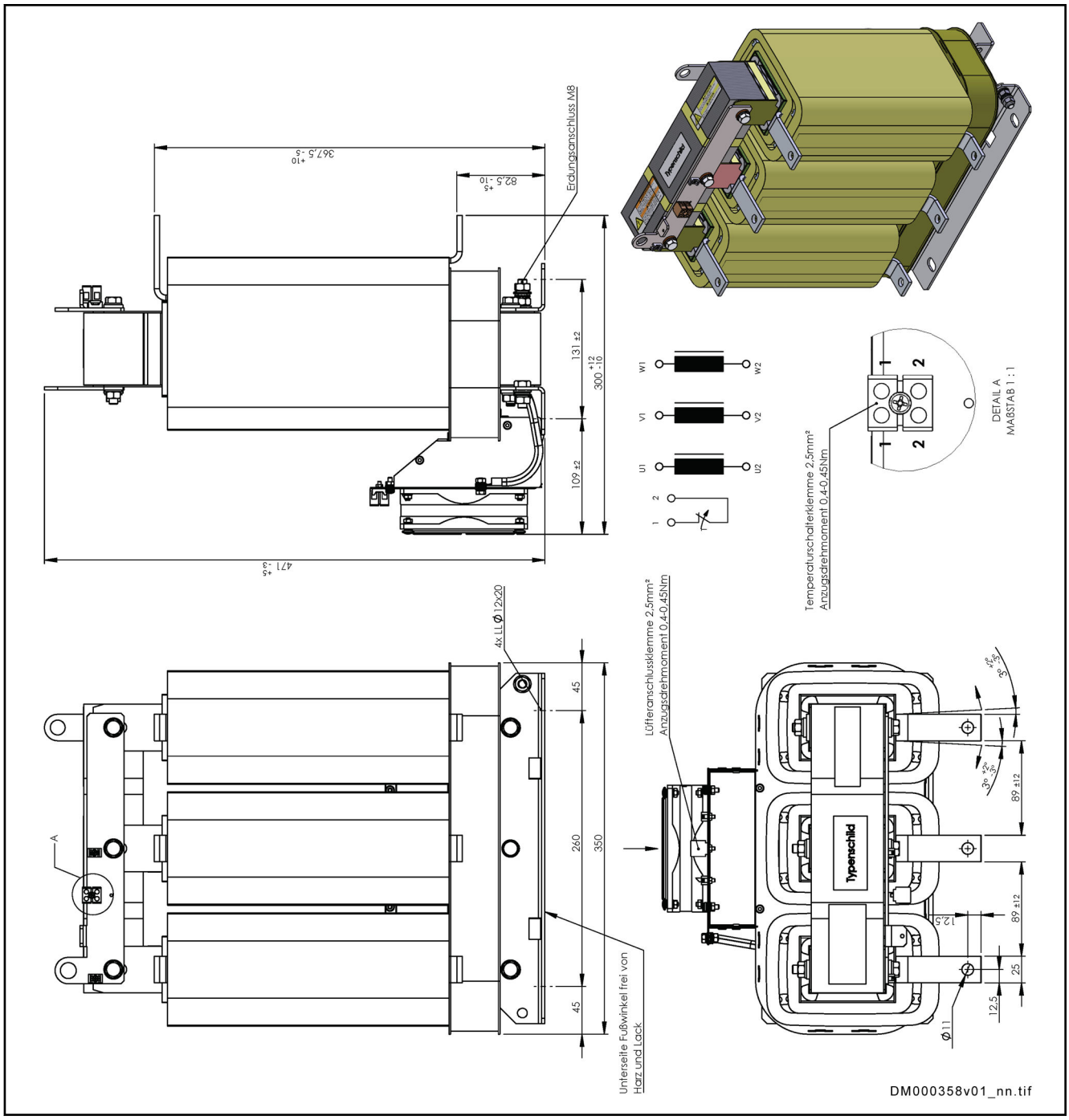


Fig. 8-36: HNL05.1R-0219-N0262-N-A4-NNNW

HNL05.1R-0135-N0327-N-A4-NNNW

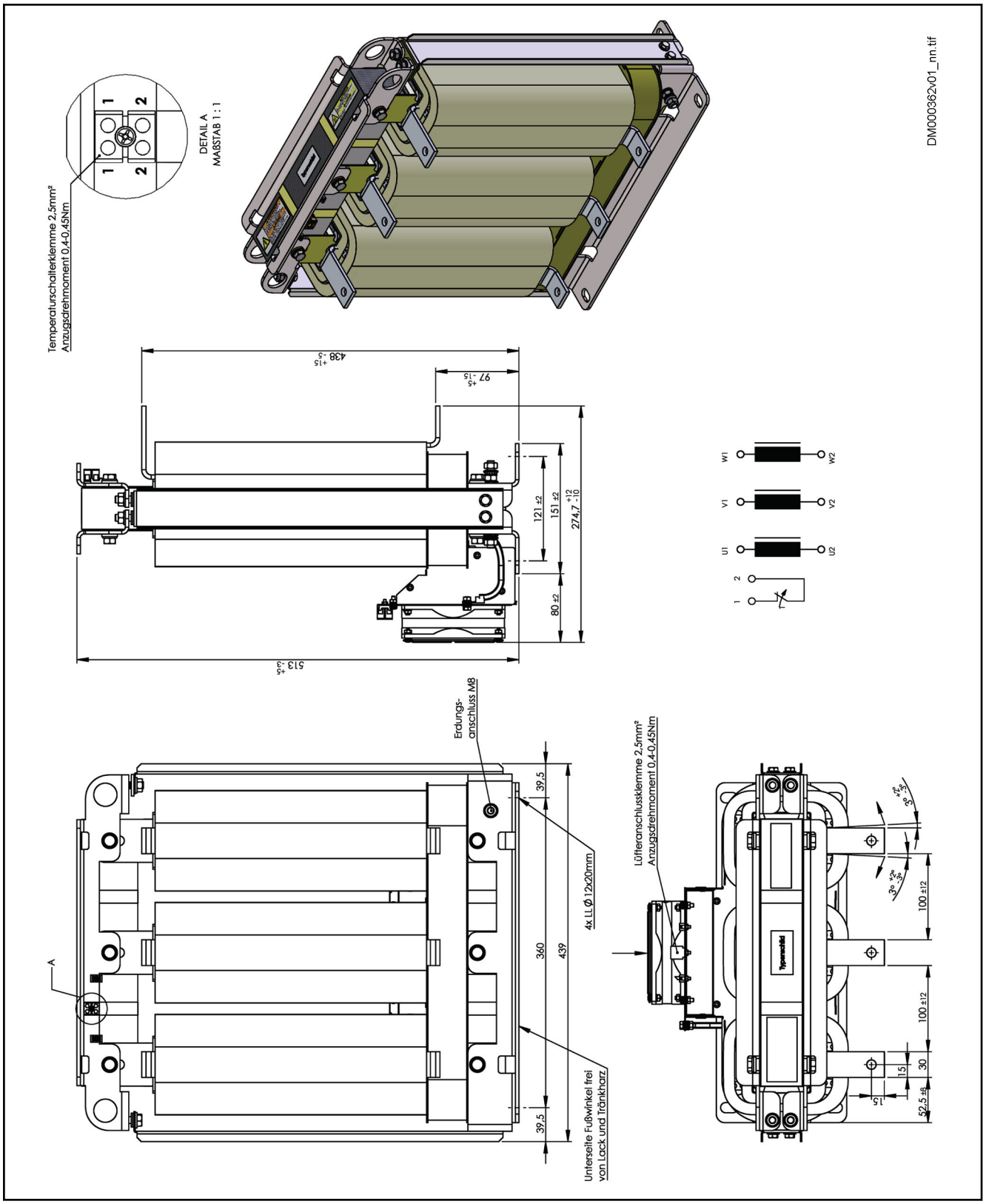


Fig. 8-37: HNL05.1R-0135-N0327-N-A4-NNNW

HNL05.1R-0135-N0327-N-A4-NNNF

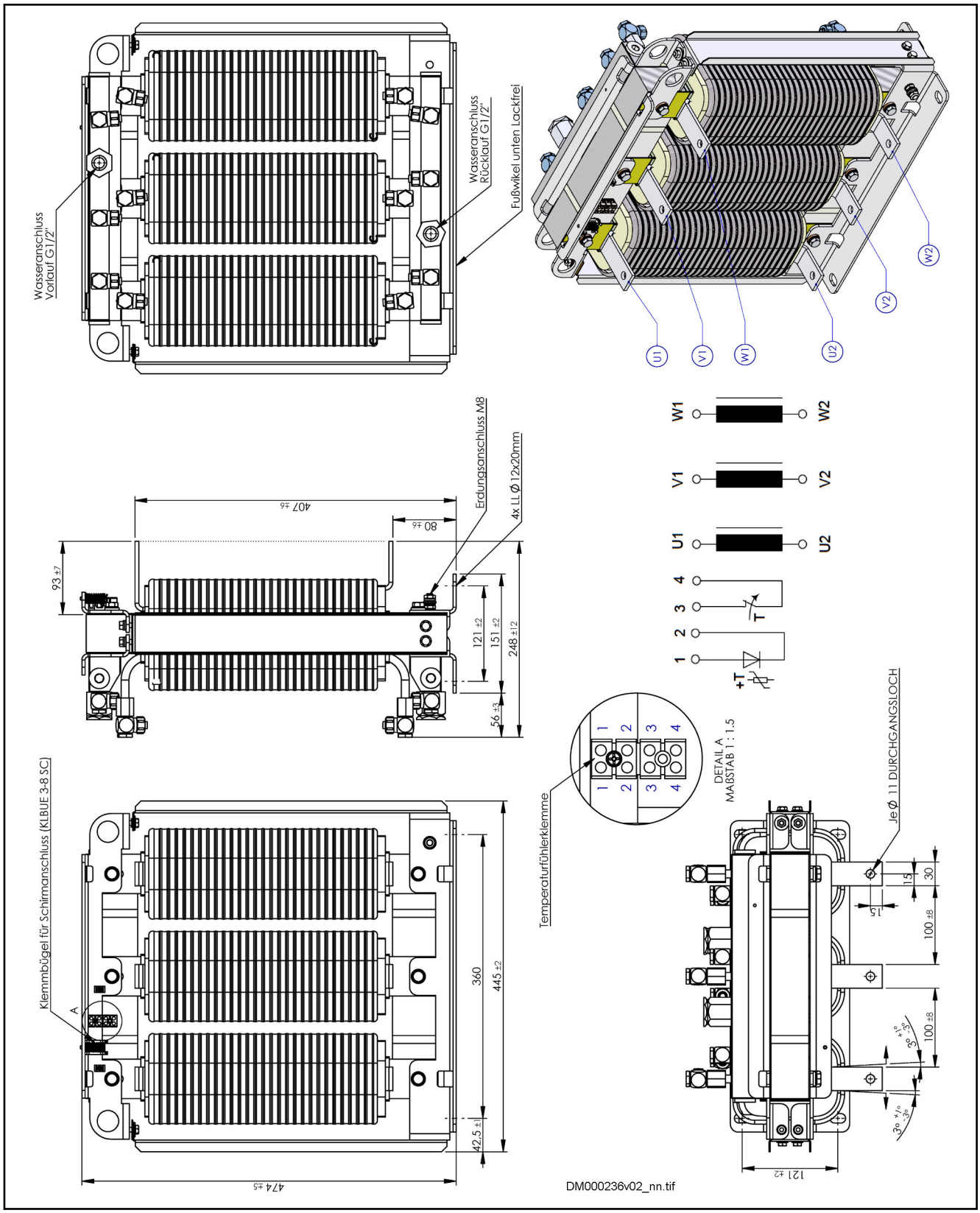


Fig. 8-38: HNL05.1R-0135-N0327-N-A4-NNNF

HNL05.1R-0045-N0327-N-A4-NNNN

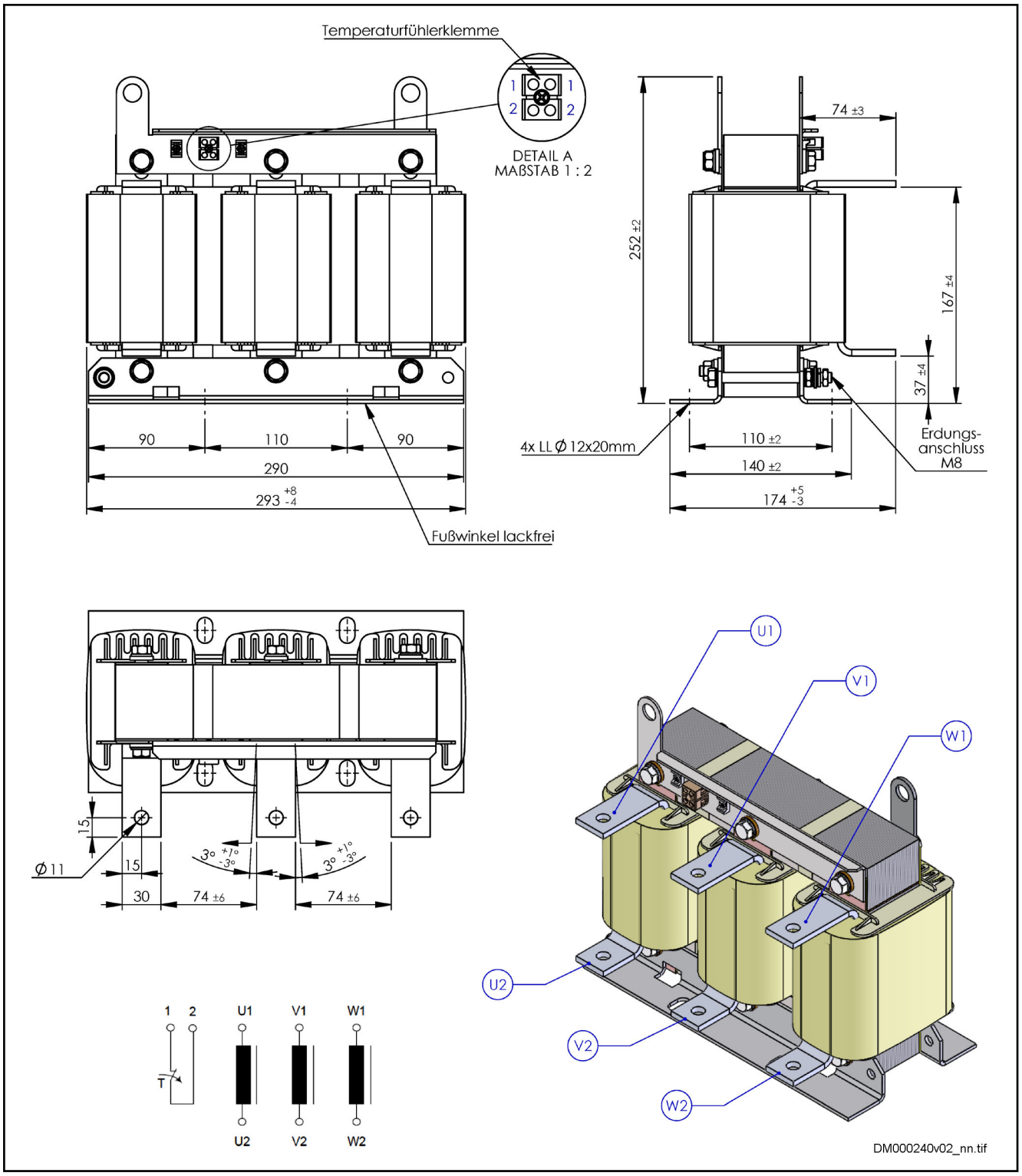


Fig. 8-39: HNL05.1R-0045-N0327-N-A4-NNNN

HNL05.1R-0054-N0409-N-A4-NNNN

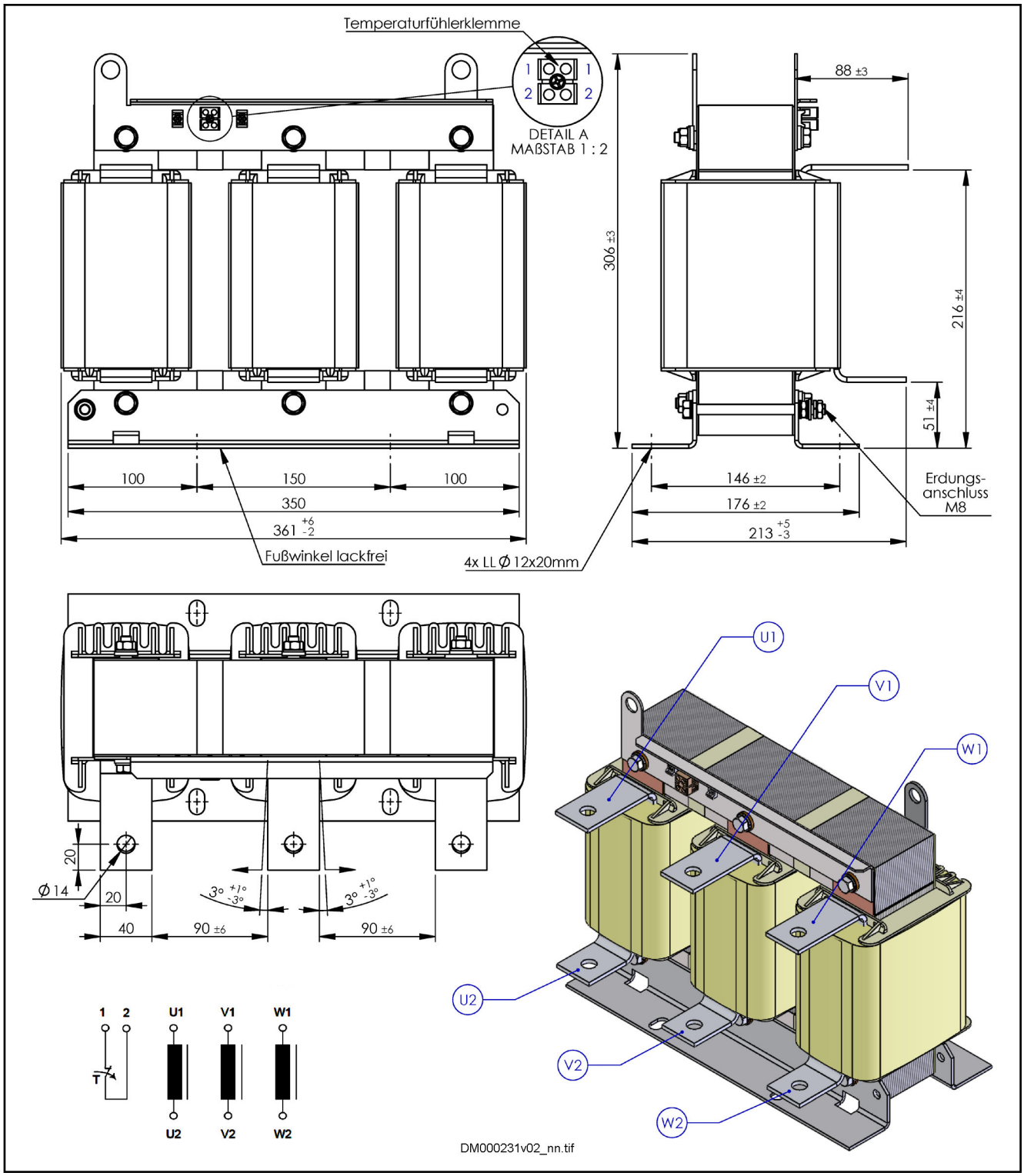


Fig. 8-40: HNL05.1R-0054-N0409-N-A4-NNNN

HNL05.1R-0117-N0409-N-A4-NNNW

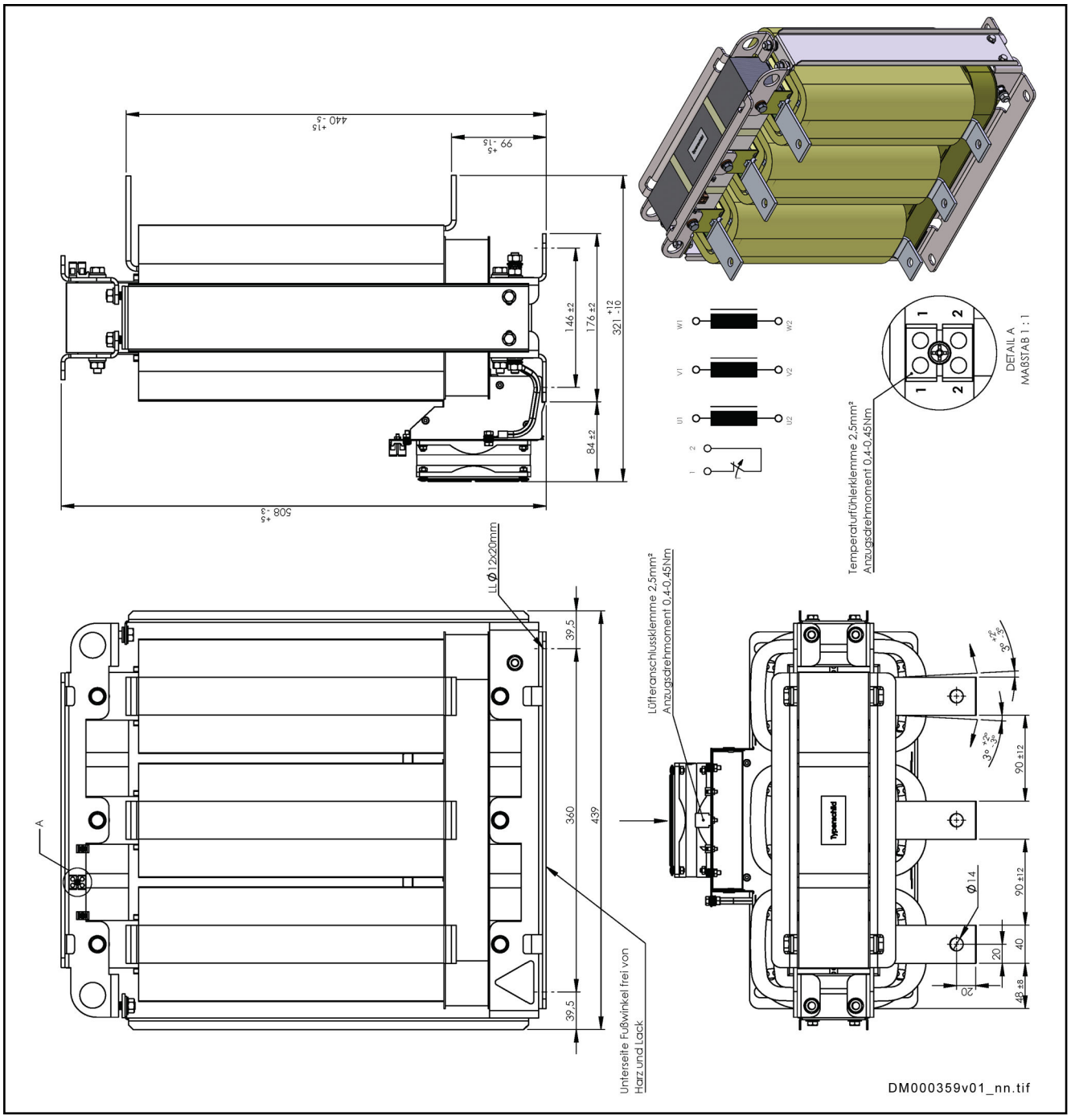


Fig. 8-41: HNL05.1R-0117-N0409-N-A4-NNNW

HNL05.1R-0117-N0409-N-A4-NNNF

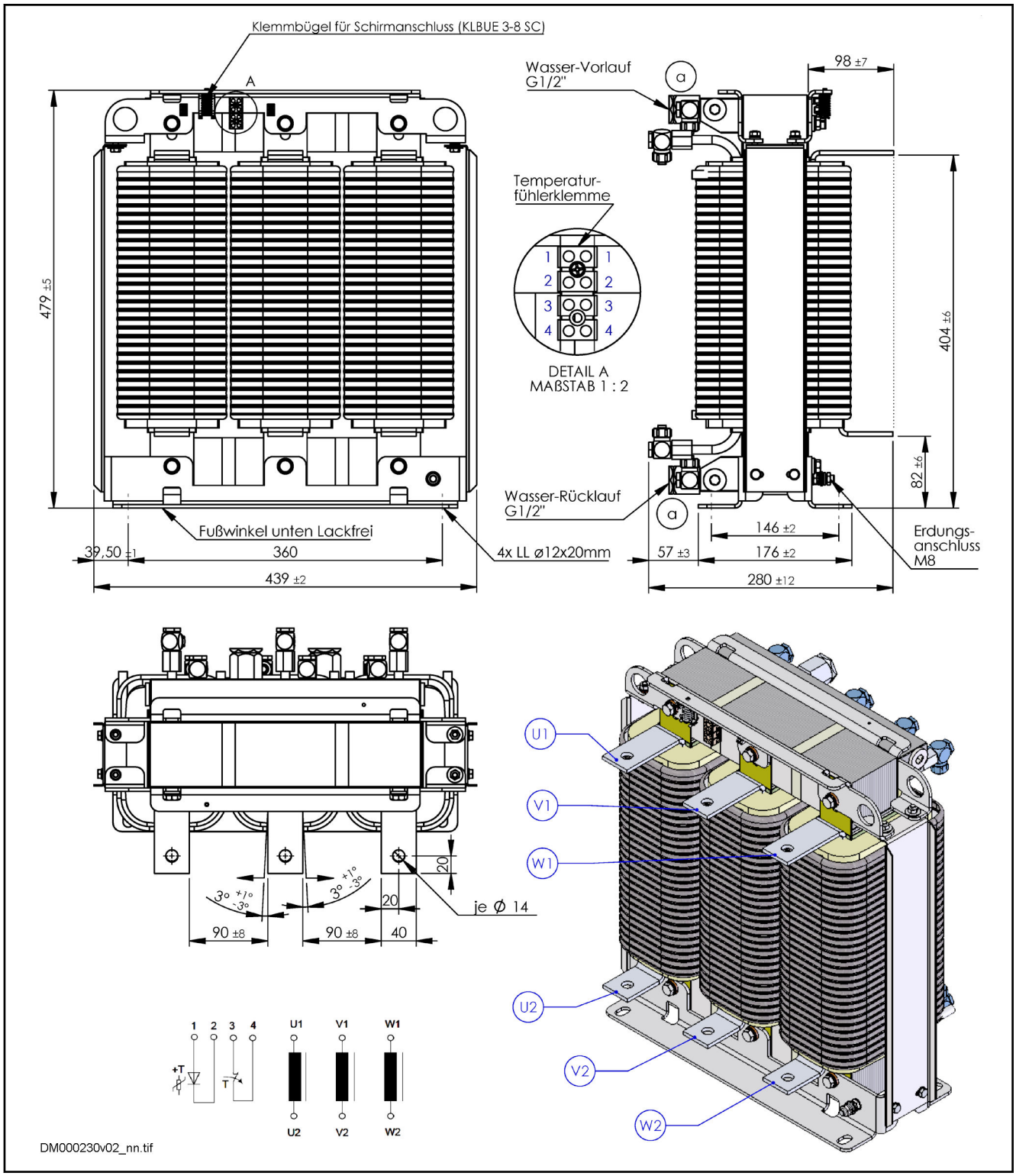


Fig. 8-42: HNL05.1R-0117-N0409-N-A4-NNNF

HNL05.1R-0043-N0514-N-A4-NNNN

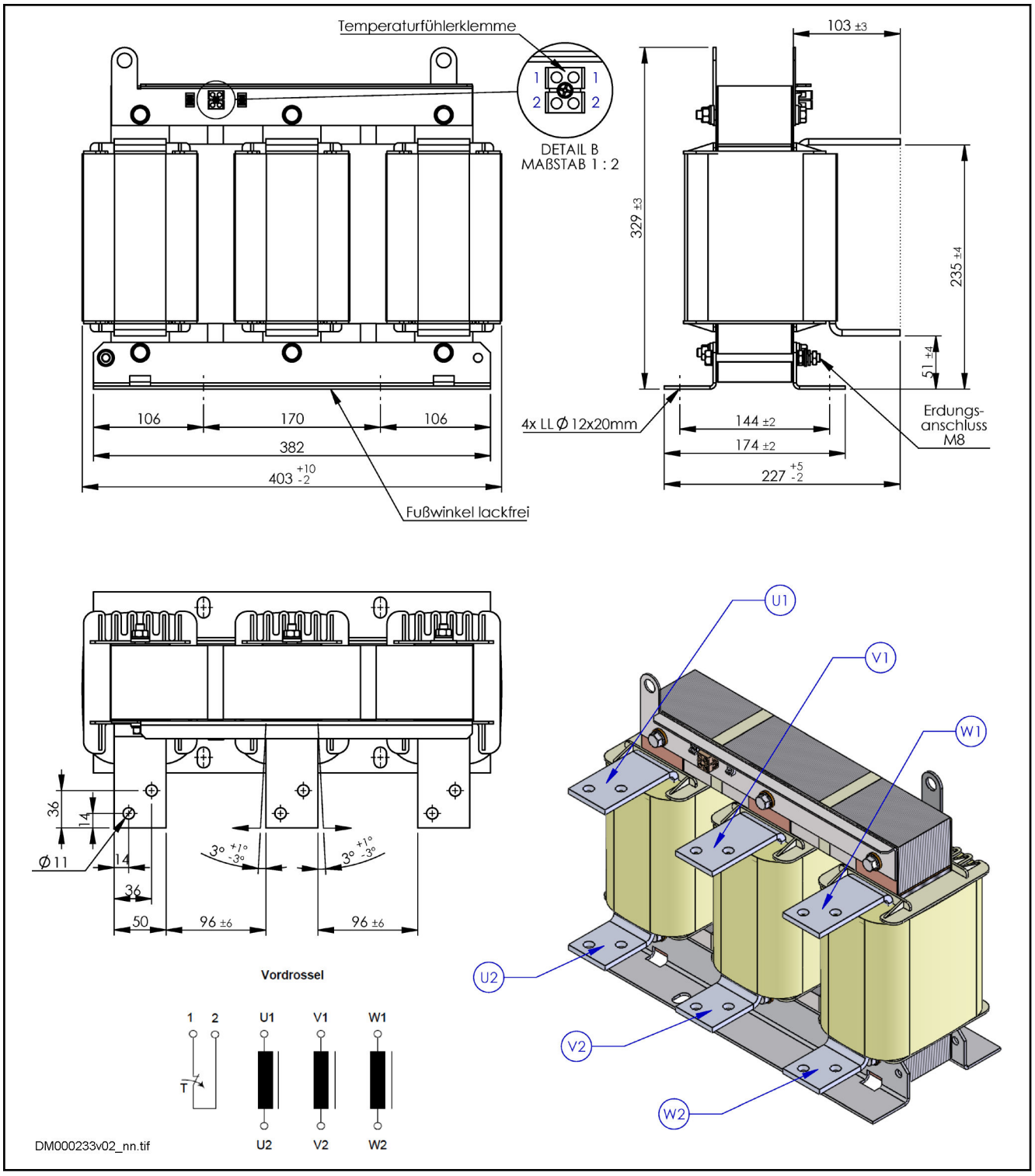


Fig. 8-43: HNL05.1R-0043-N0514-N-A4-NNNN

HNL05.1R-0130-N0514-N-A4-NNNW

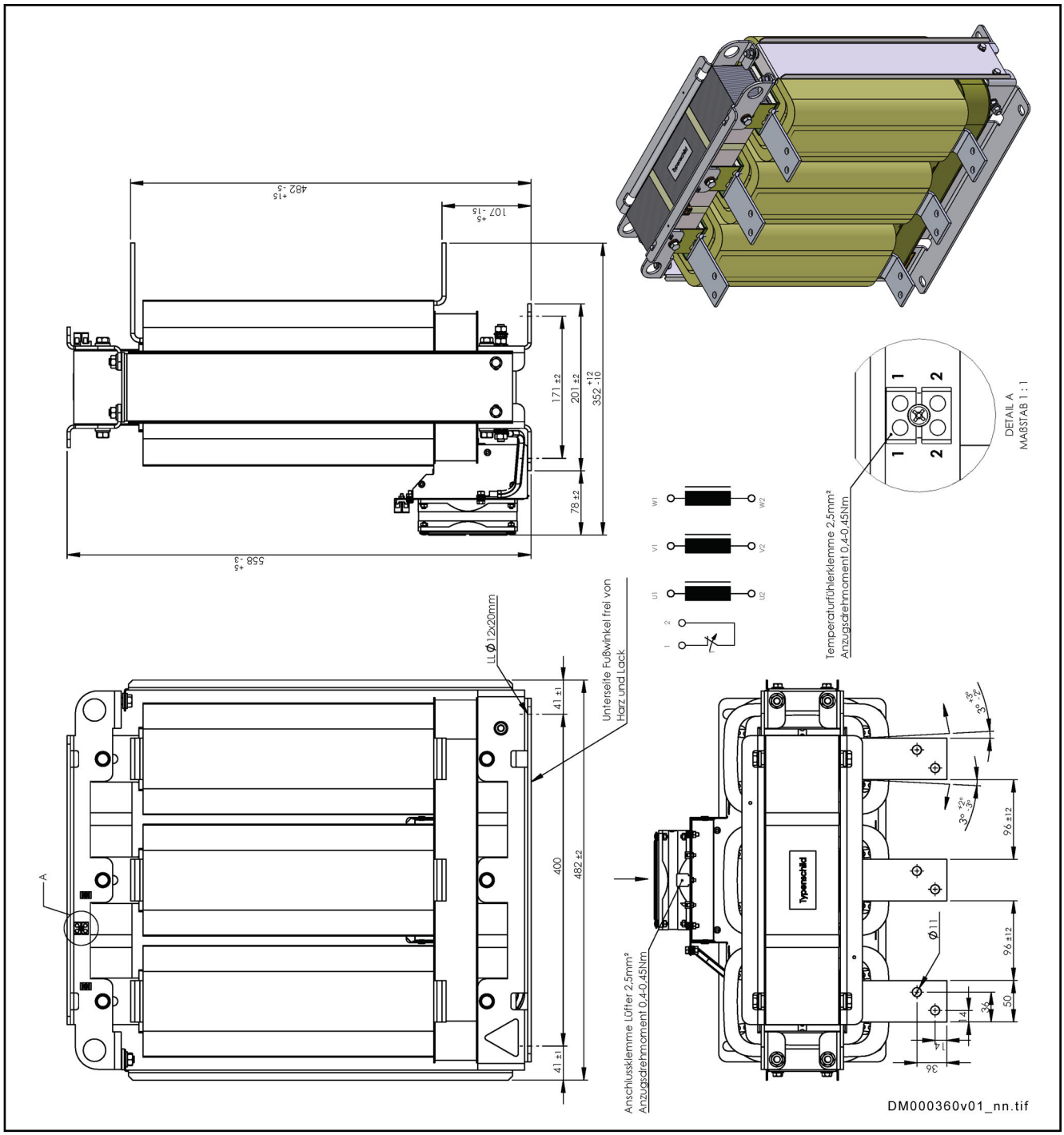


Fig. 8-44: HNL05.1R-0130-N0514-N-A4-NNNW

HNL05.1R-0130-N0514-N-A4-NNNF

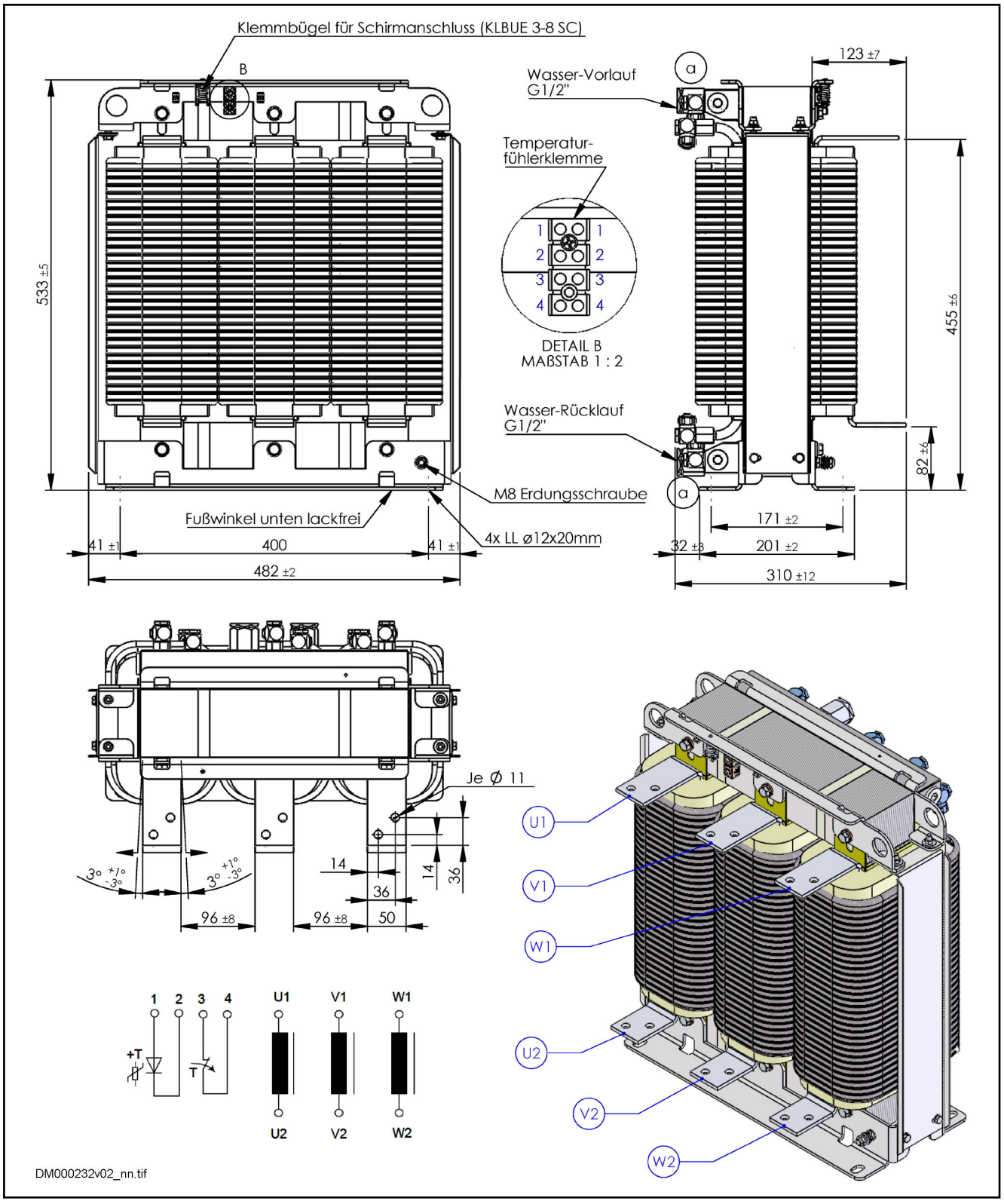


Fig. 8-45: HNL05.1R-0130-N0514-N-A4-NNNF

HNL05.1R-0050-N0652-N-A4-NNNN

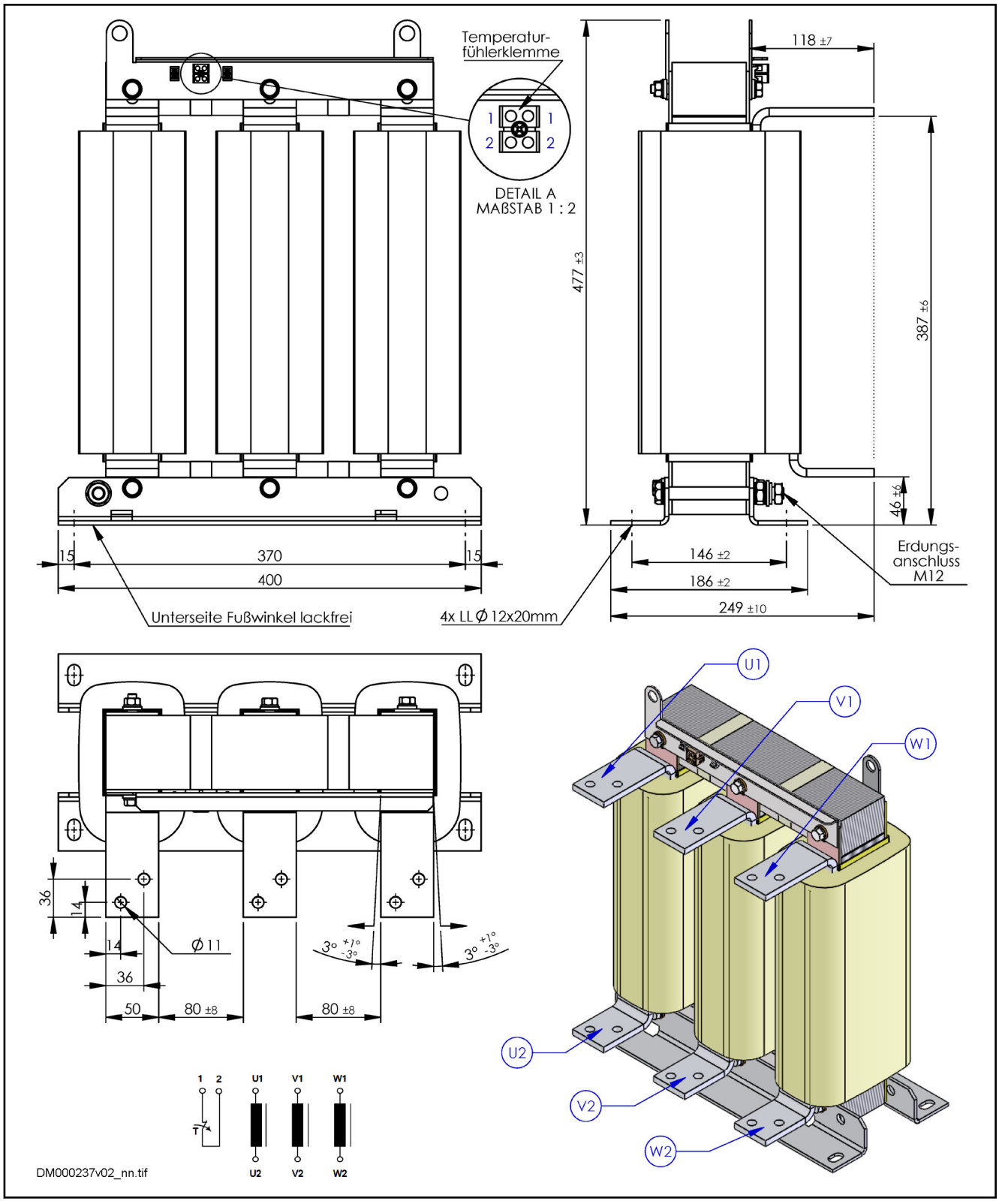


Fig. 8-46: HNL05.1R-0050-N0652-N-A4-NNNN

HNL05.1R-0113-N0652-N-A4-NNNF

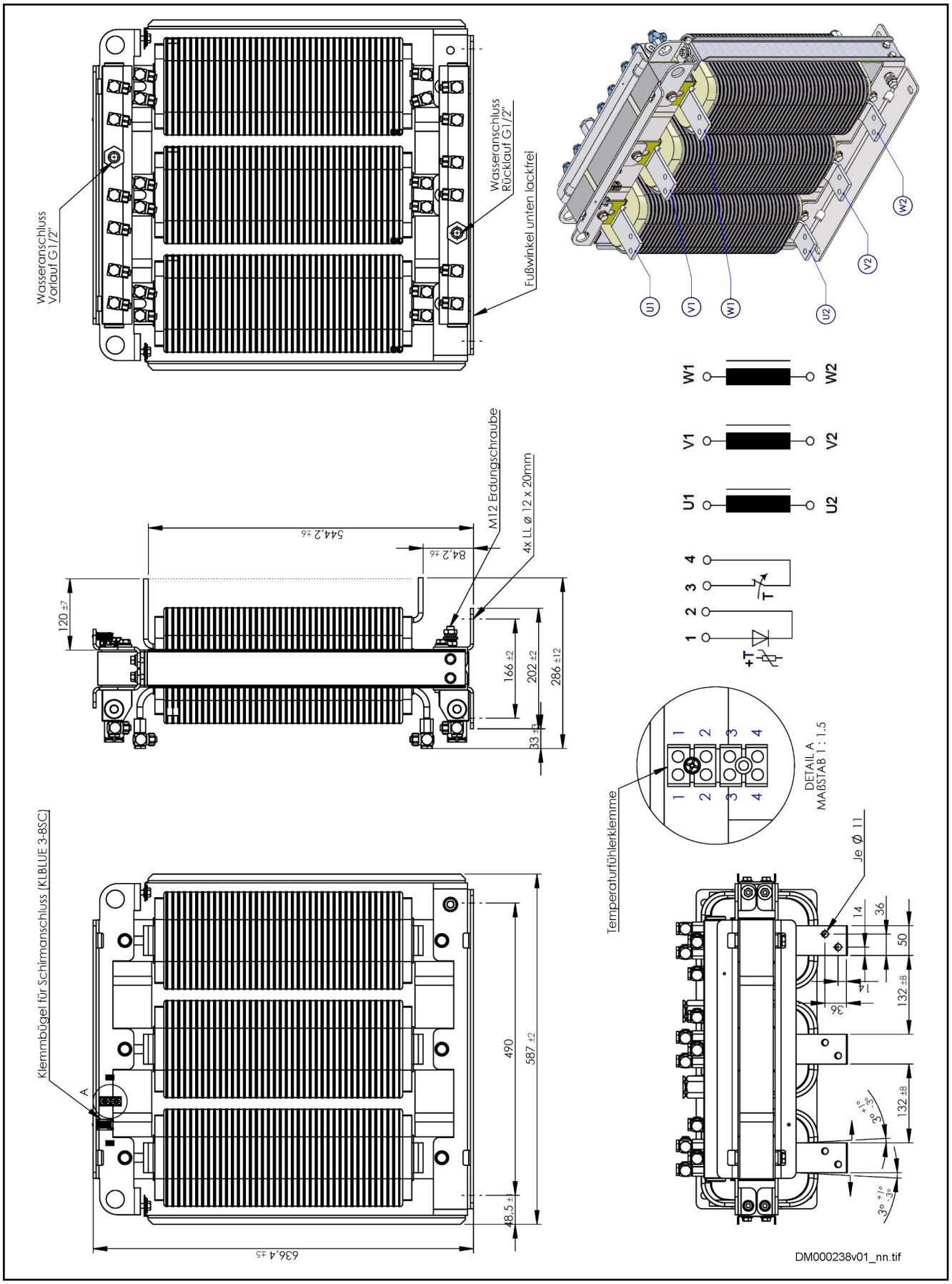


Fig. 8-47: HNL05.1R-0113-N0652-N-A4-NNNF

HNL05.1R-0040-N0811-N-A4-NNNN

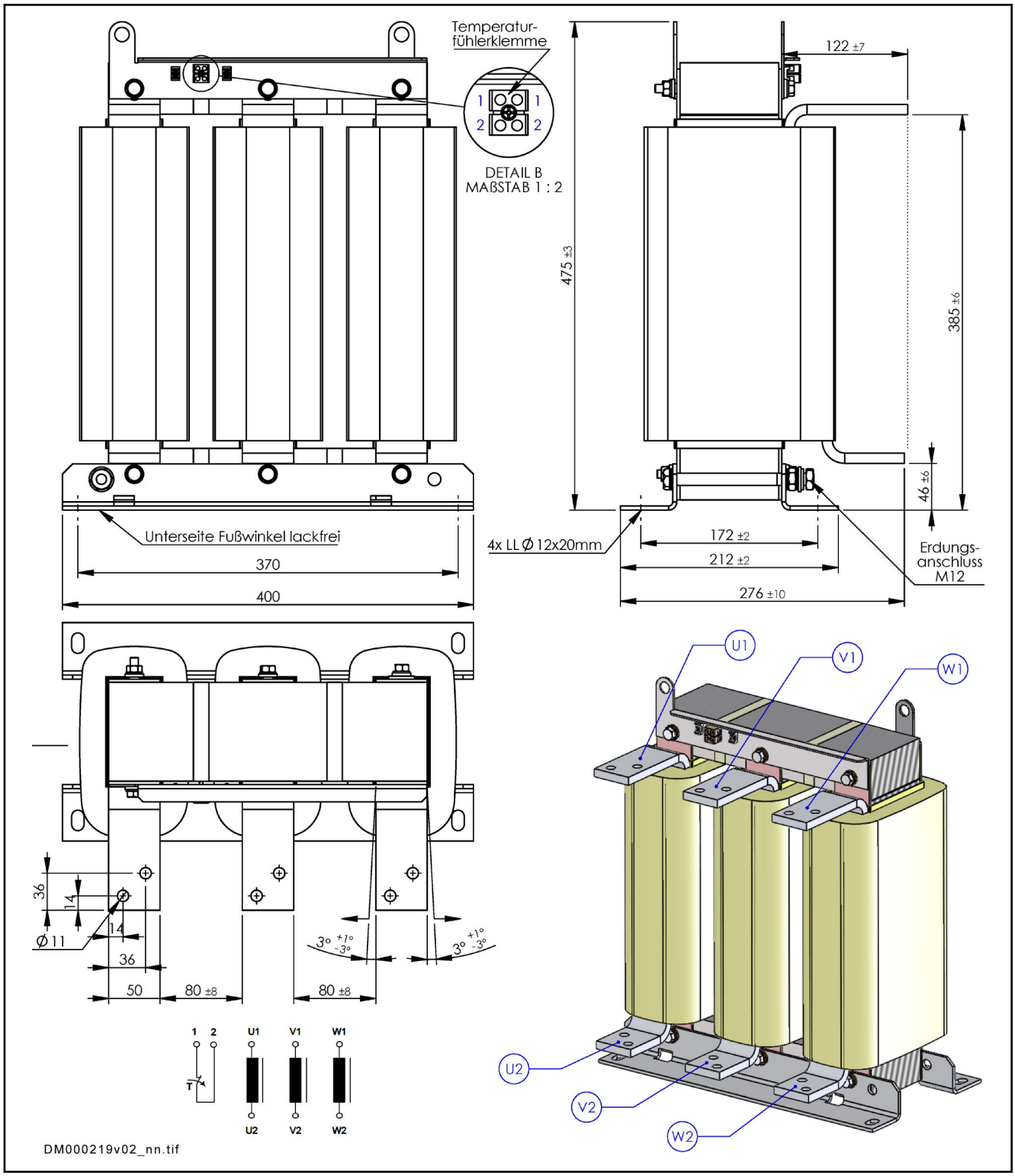


Fig. 8-48: HNL05.1R-0040-N0811-N-A4-NNNN

HNL05.1R-0100-N0811-N-A4-NNNF

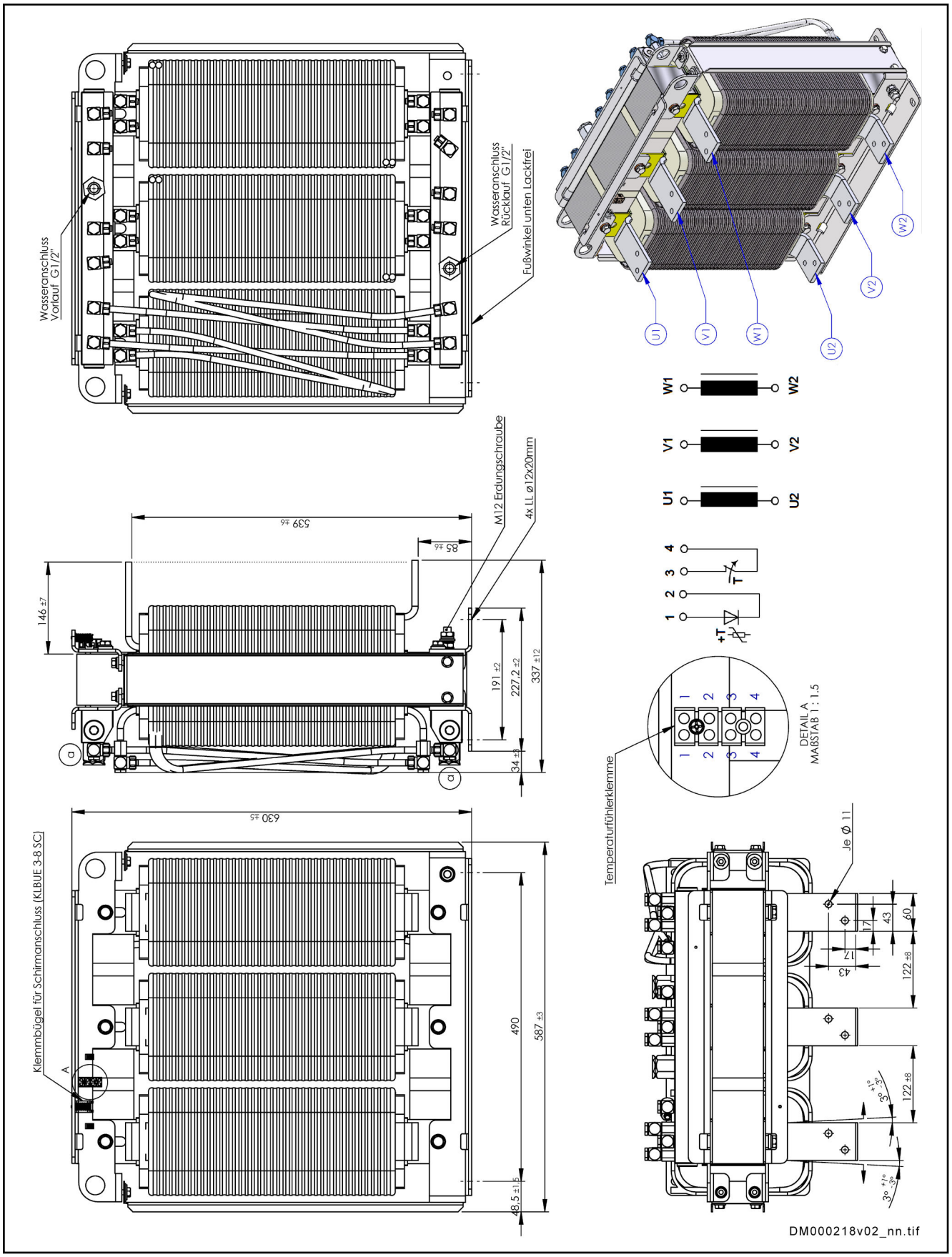


Fig. 8-49: HNL05.1R-0100-N0811-N-A4-NNNF

Dimensions HNL05.1R-…-A5

HNL05.1R-0649-N0127-N-A5-NNNF

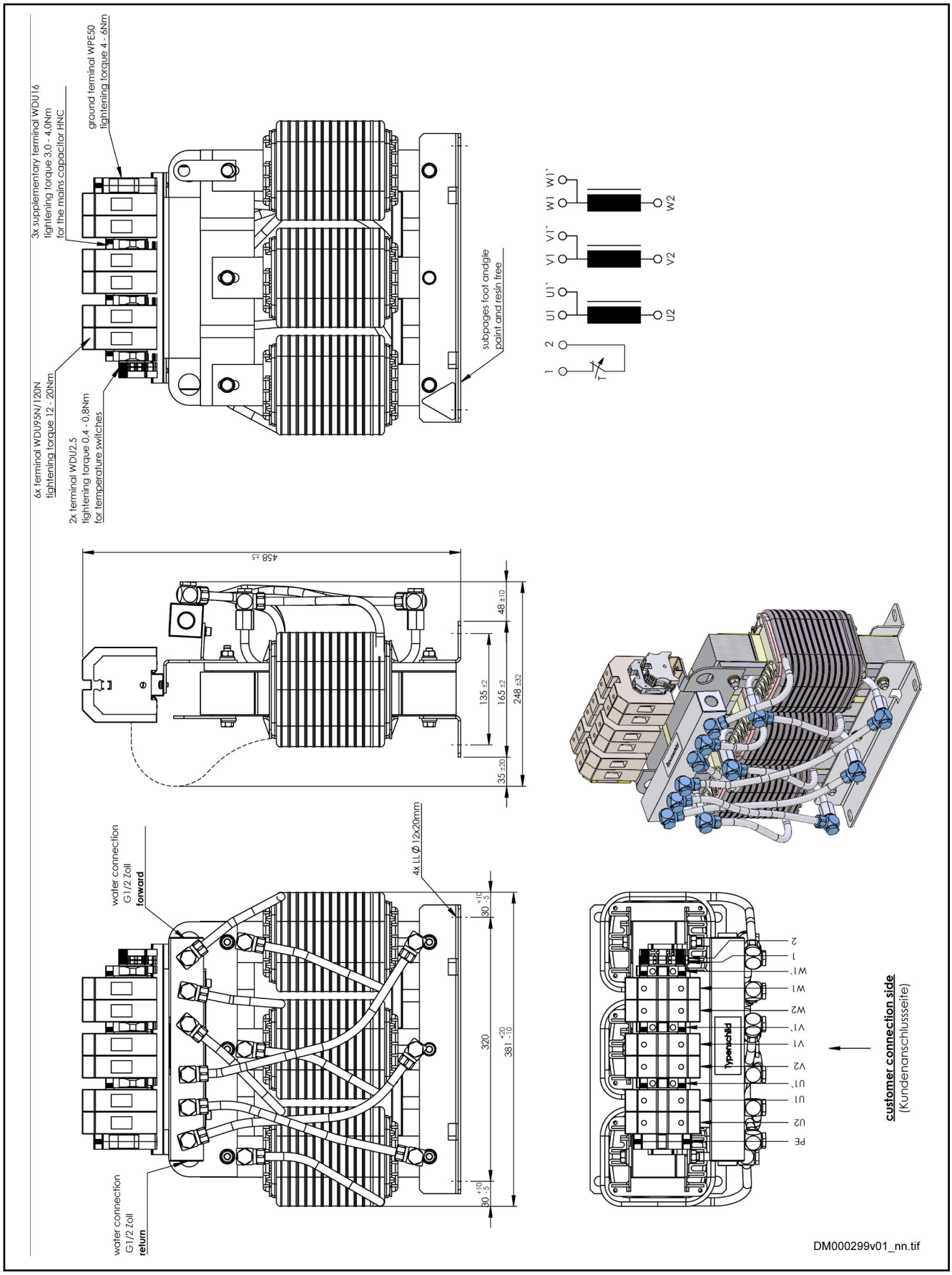


Fig. 8-50: HNL05.1R-0649-N0127-N-A5-NNNF

HNL05.1R-0125-N0152-N-A5-NNNN

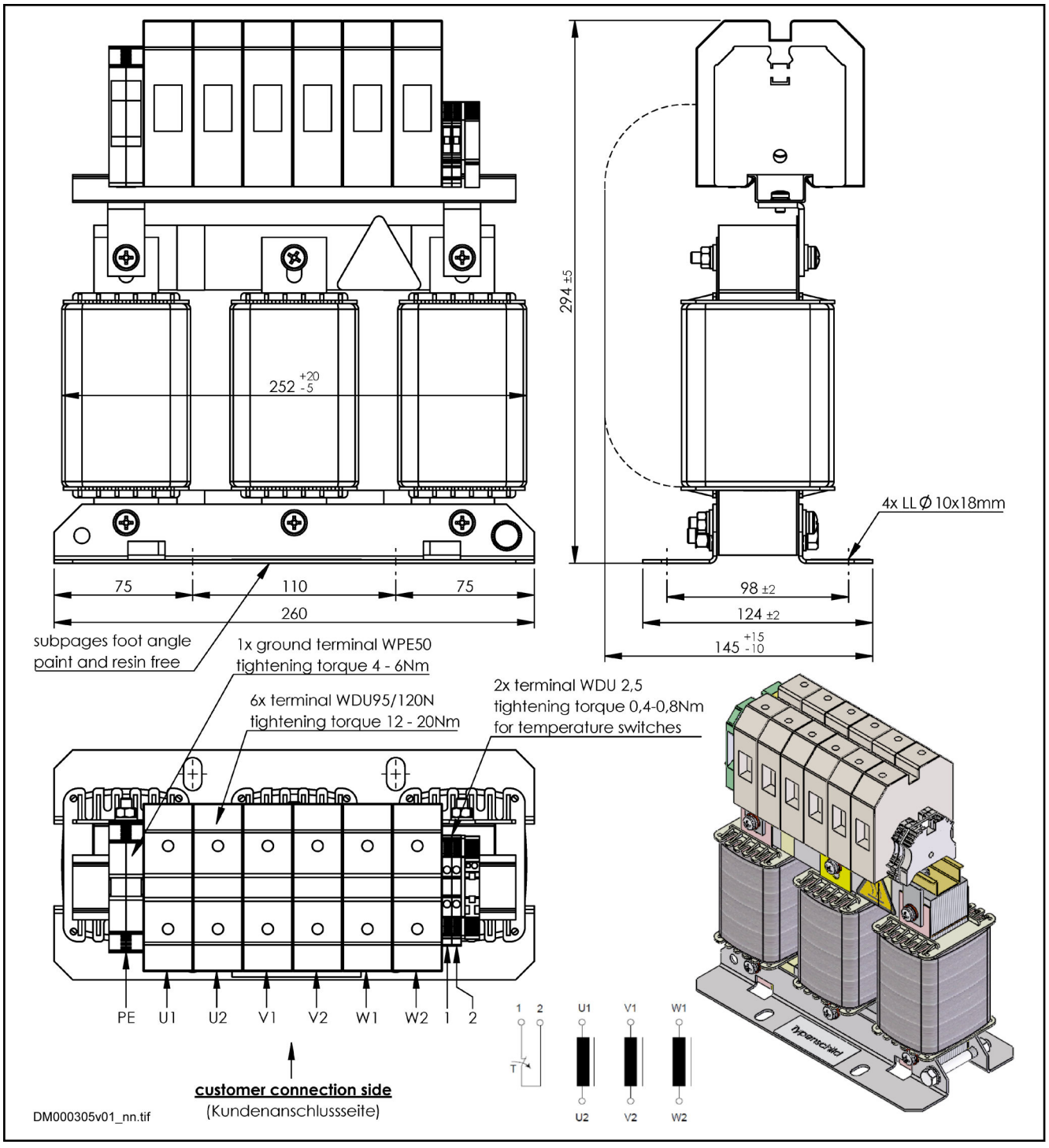


Fig. 8-51: HNL05.1R-0125-N0152-N-A5-NNNN

HNL05.1R-0542-N0152-N-A5-NNNF

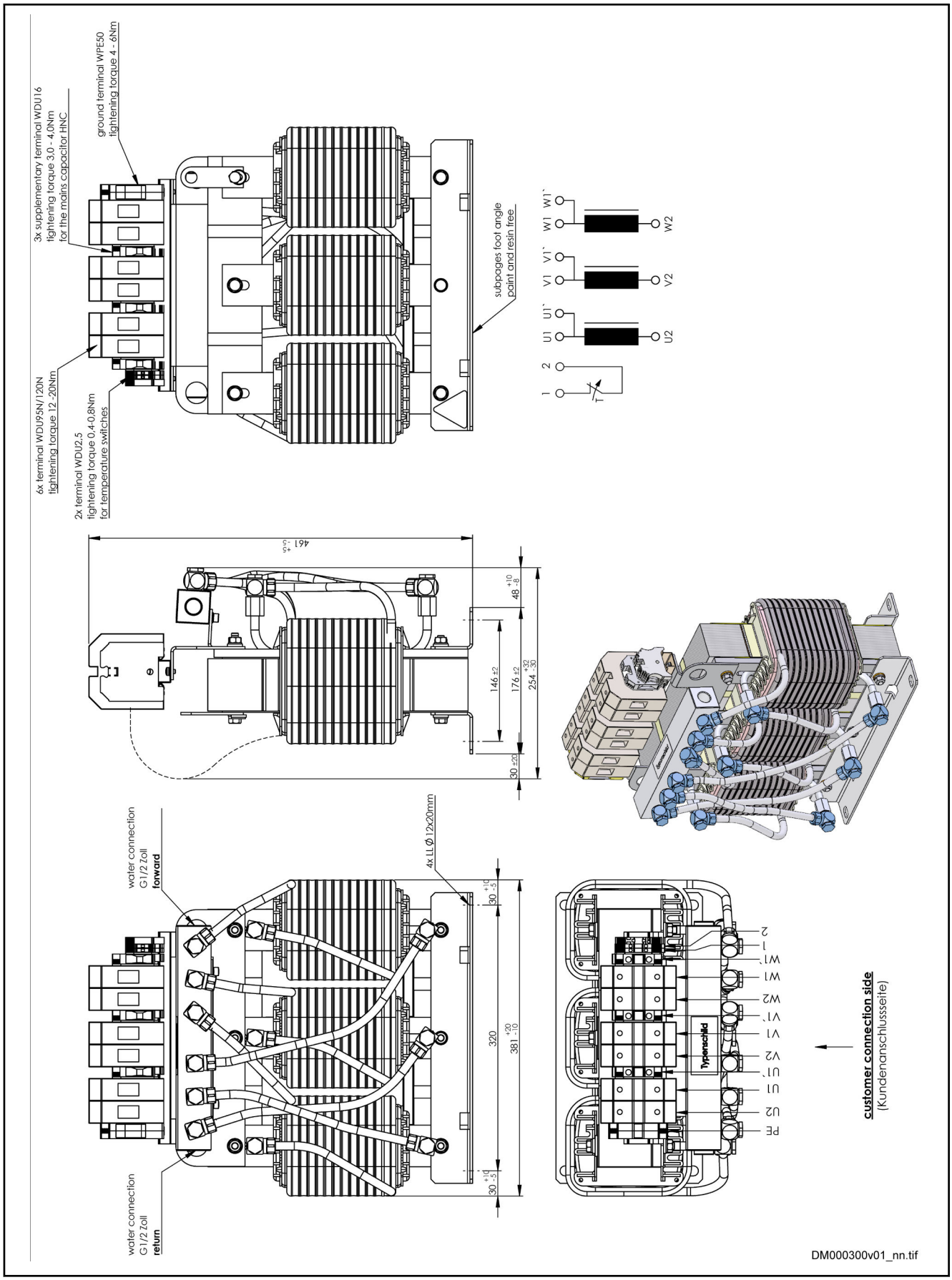


Fig. 8-52: HNL05.1R-0542-N0152-N-A5-NNNF

HNL05.1R-0100-N0190-N-A5-NNNN

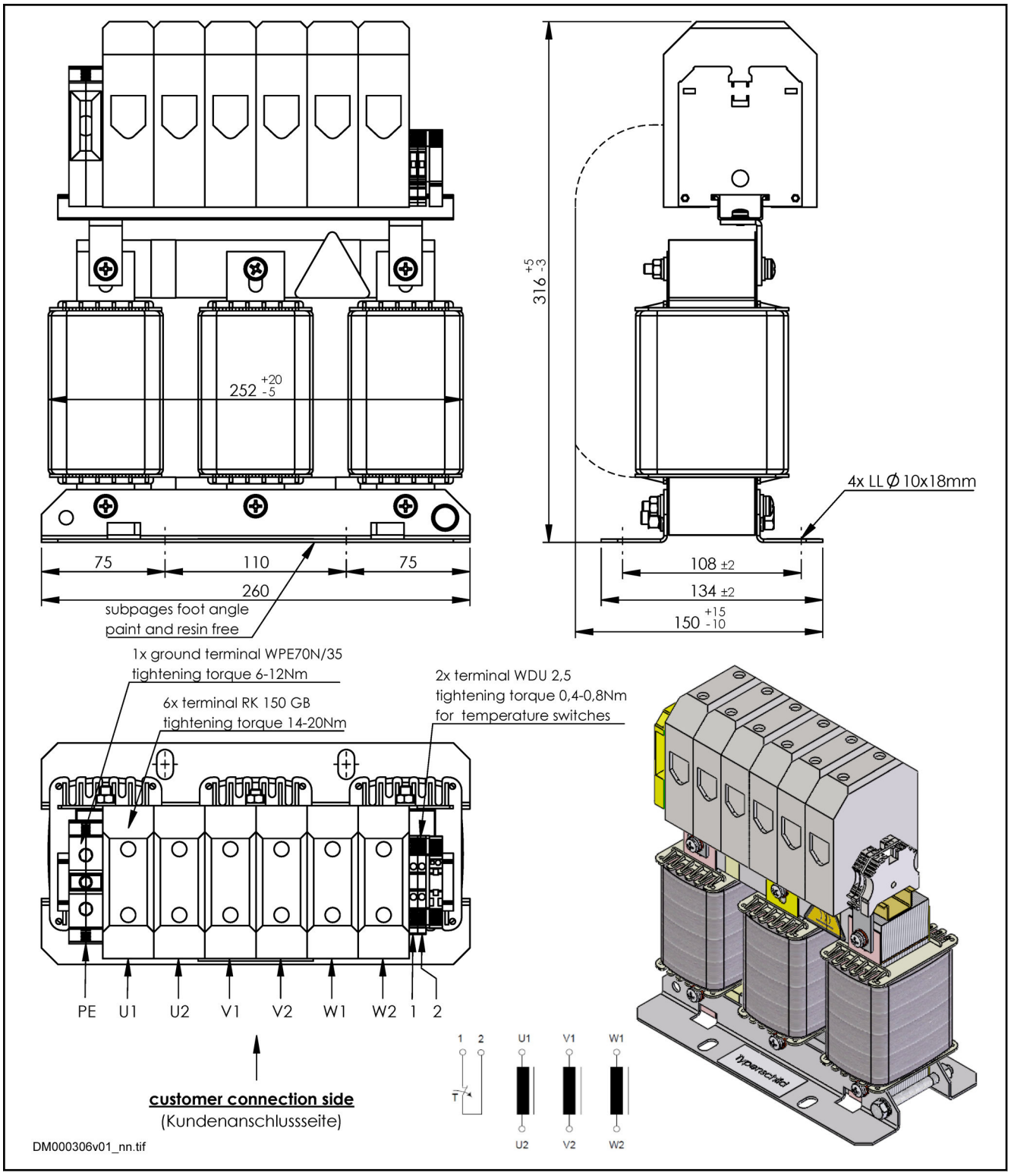


Fig. 8-53: HNL05.1R-0100-N0190-N-A5-NNNN

HNL05.1R-0434-N0190-N-A5-NNNF

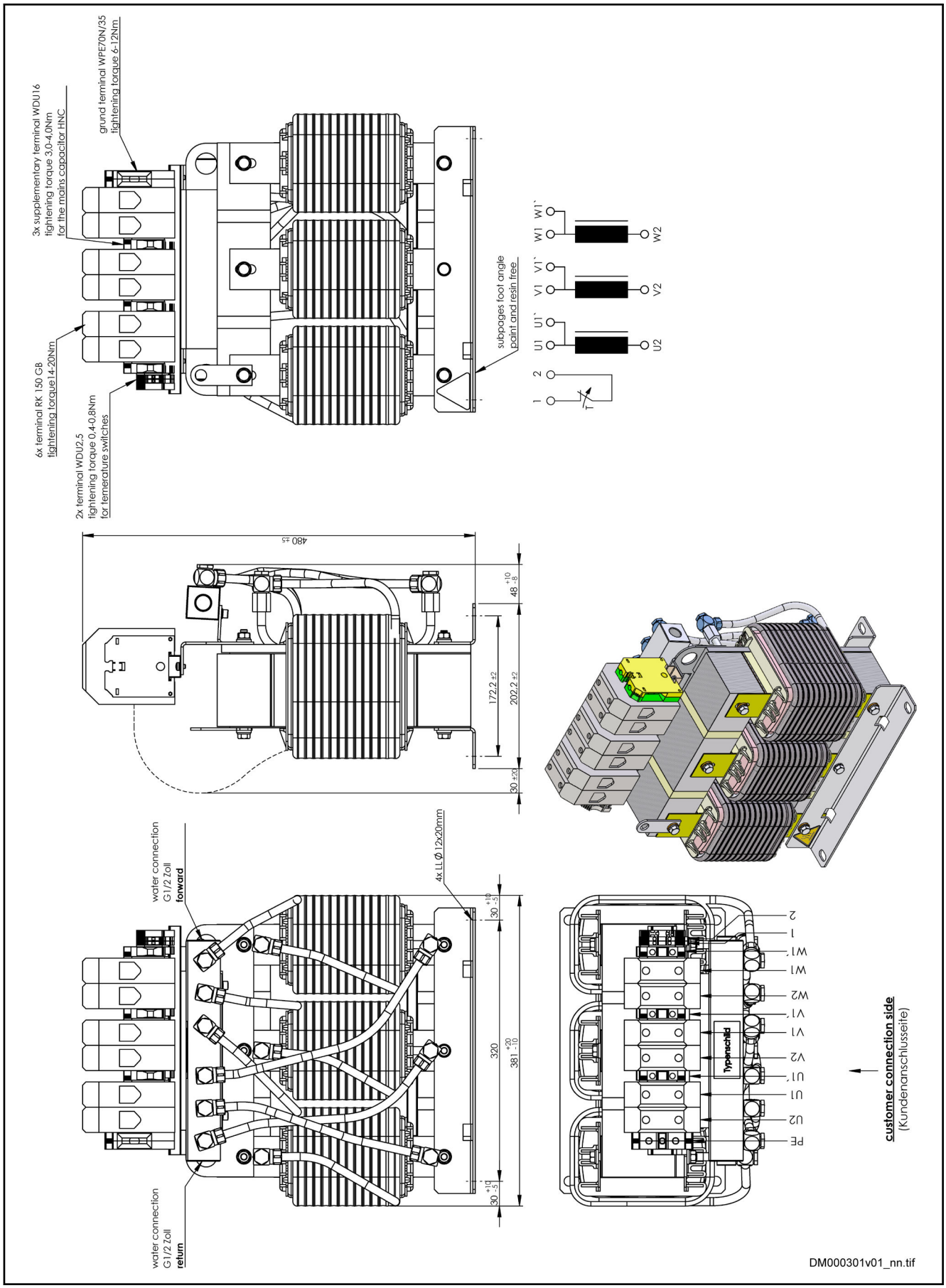


Fig. 8-54: HNL05.1R-0434-N0190-N-A5-NNNF

HNL05.1R-0080-N0238-N-A5-NNNN

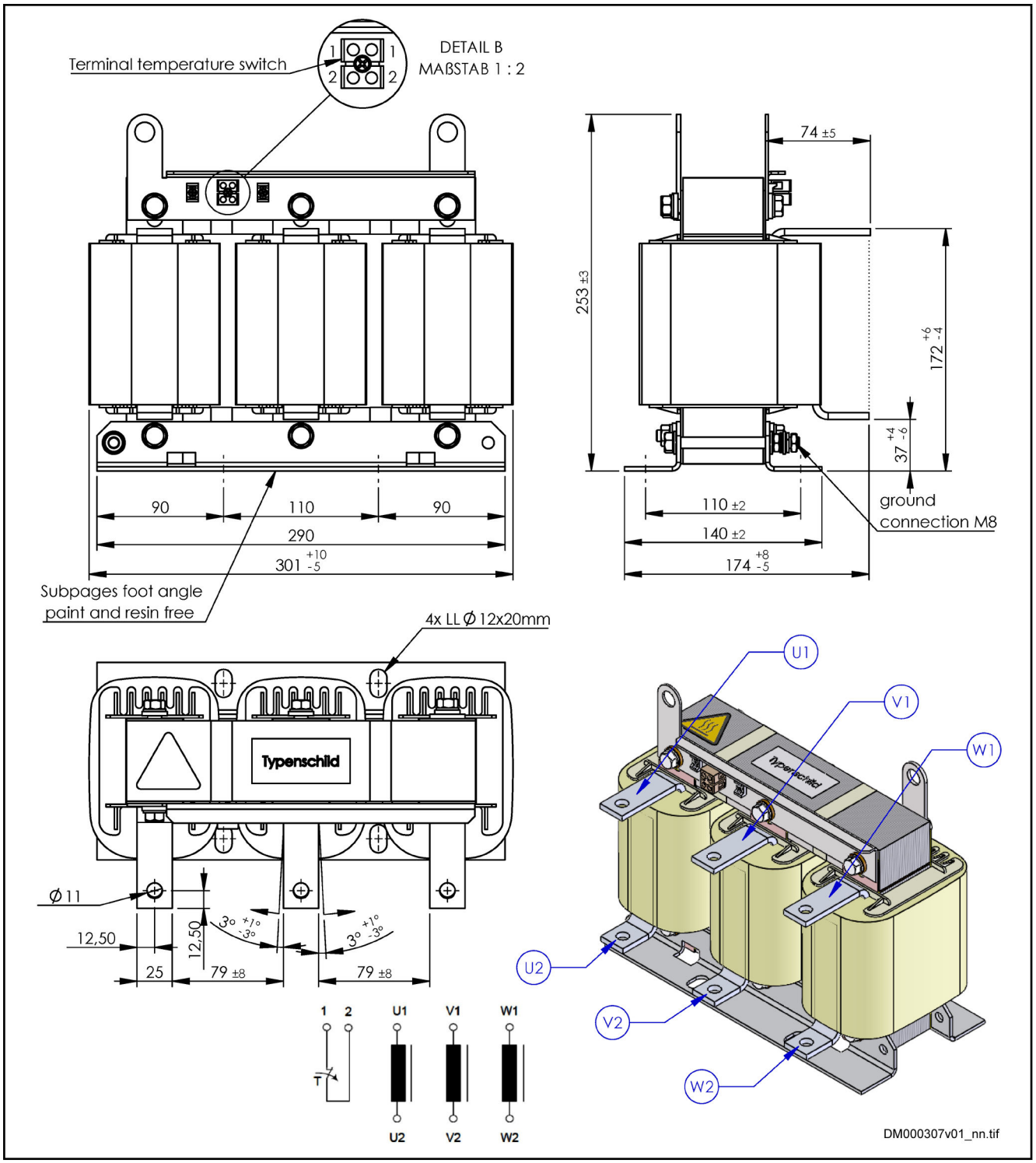


Fig. 8-55: HNL05.1R-0080-N0238-N-A5-NNNN

HNL05.1R-0346-N0238-N-A5-NNNF

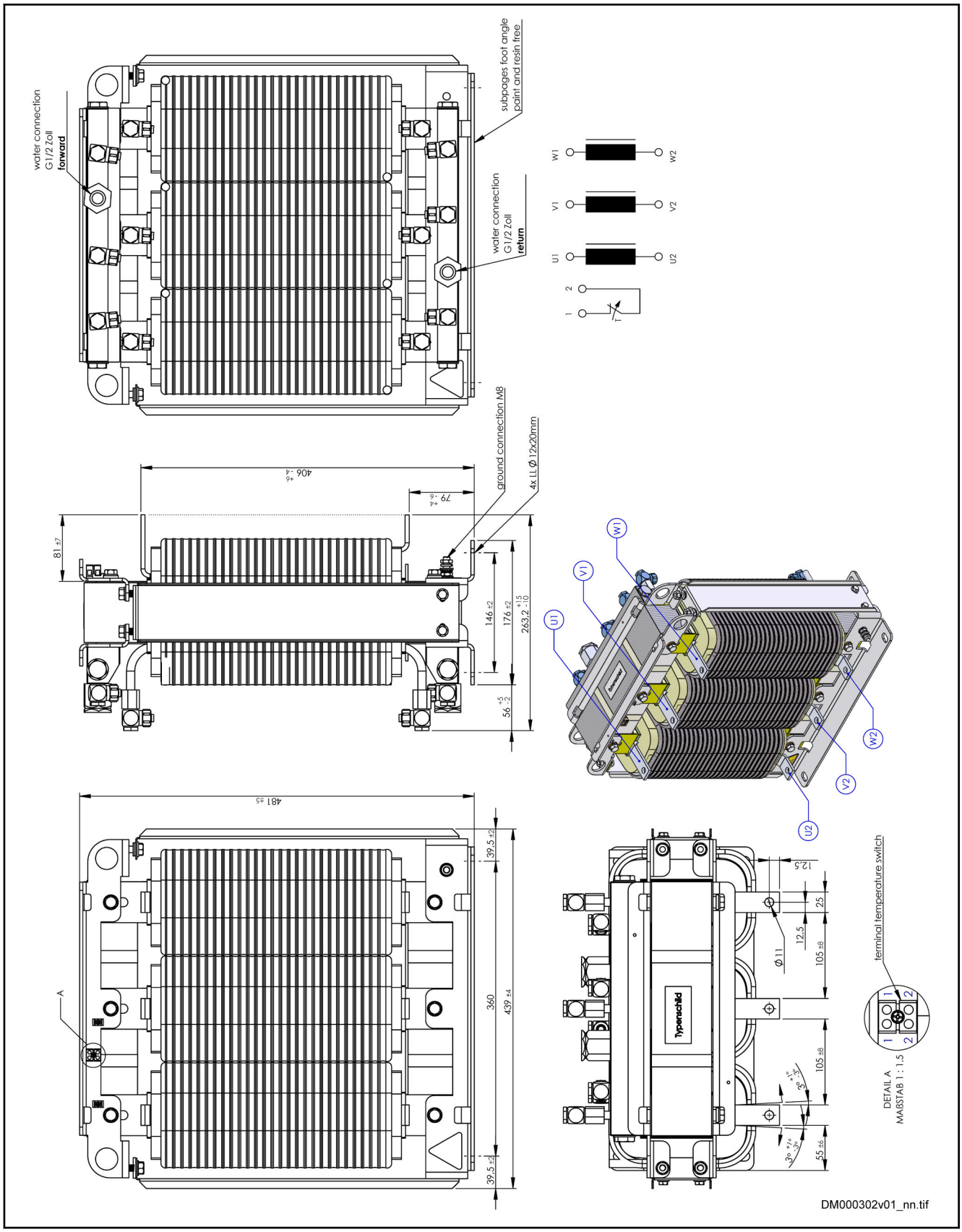


Fig. 8-56: HNL05.1R-0346-N0238-N-A5-NNNF

HNL05.1R-0054-N0352-N-A5-NNNN

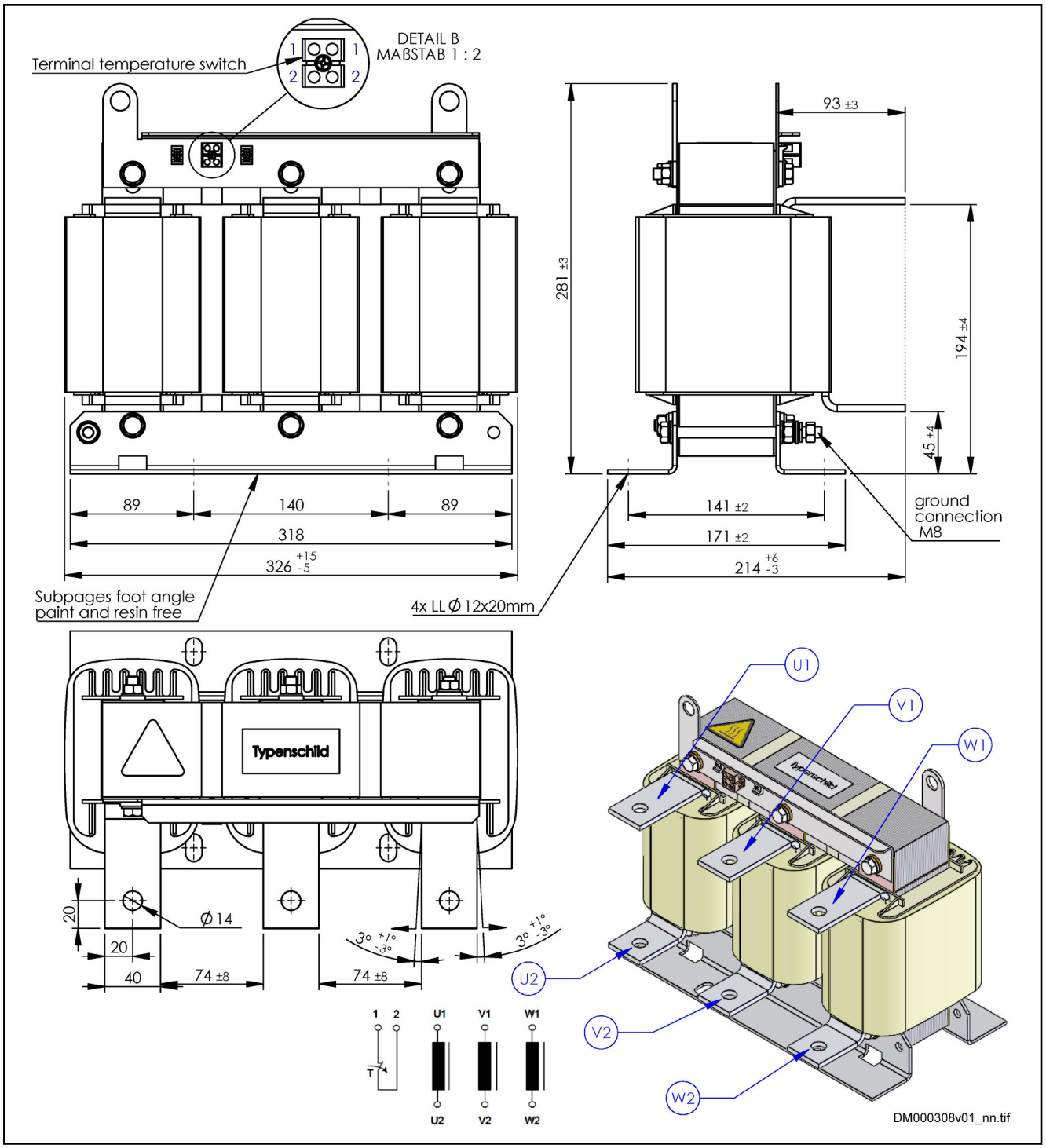


Fig. 8-57: HNL05.1R-0054-N0352-N-A5-NNNN

HNL05.1R-0234-N0352-N-A5-NNNF

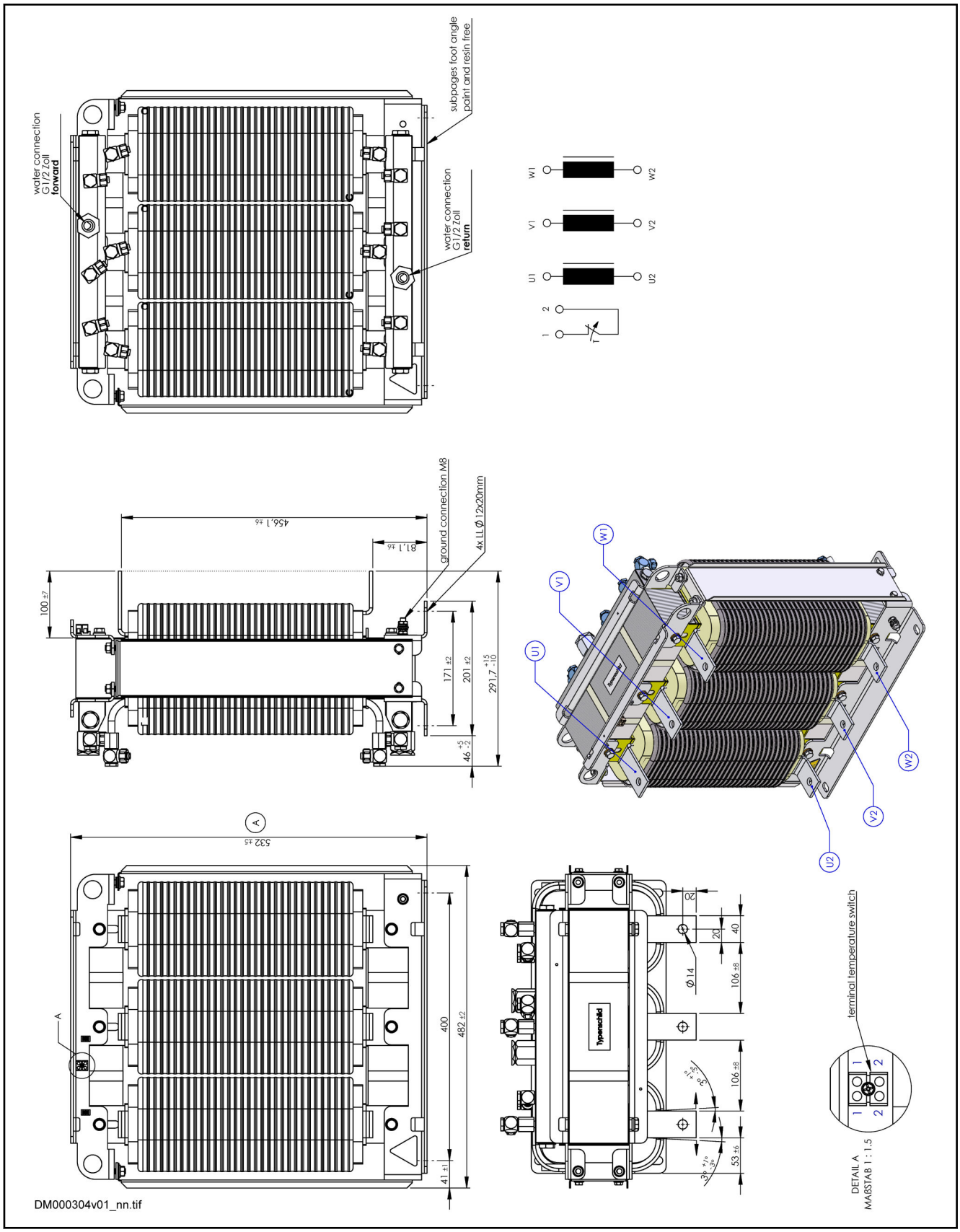


Fig. 8-58: HNL05.1R-0234-N0352-N-A5-NNNF

HNL05.1R-0040-N0471-N-A5-NNNN

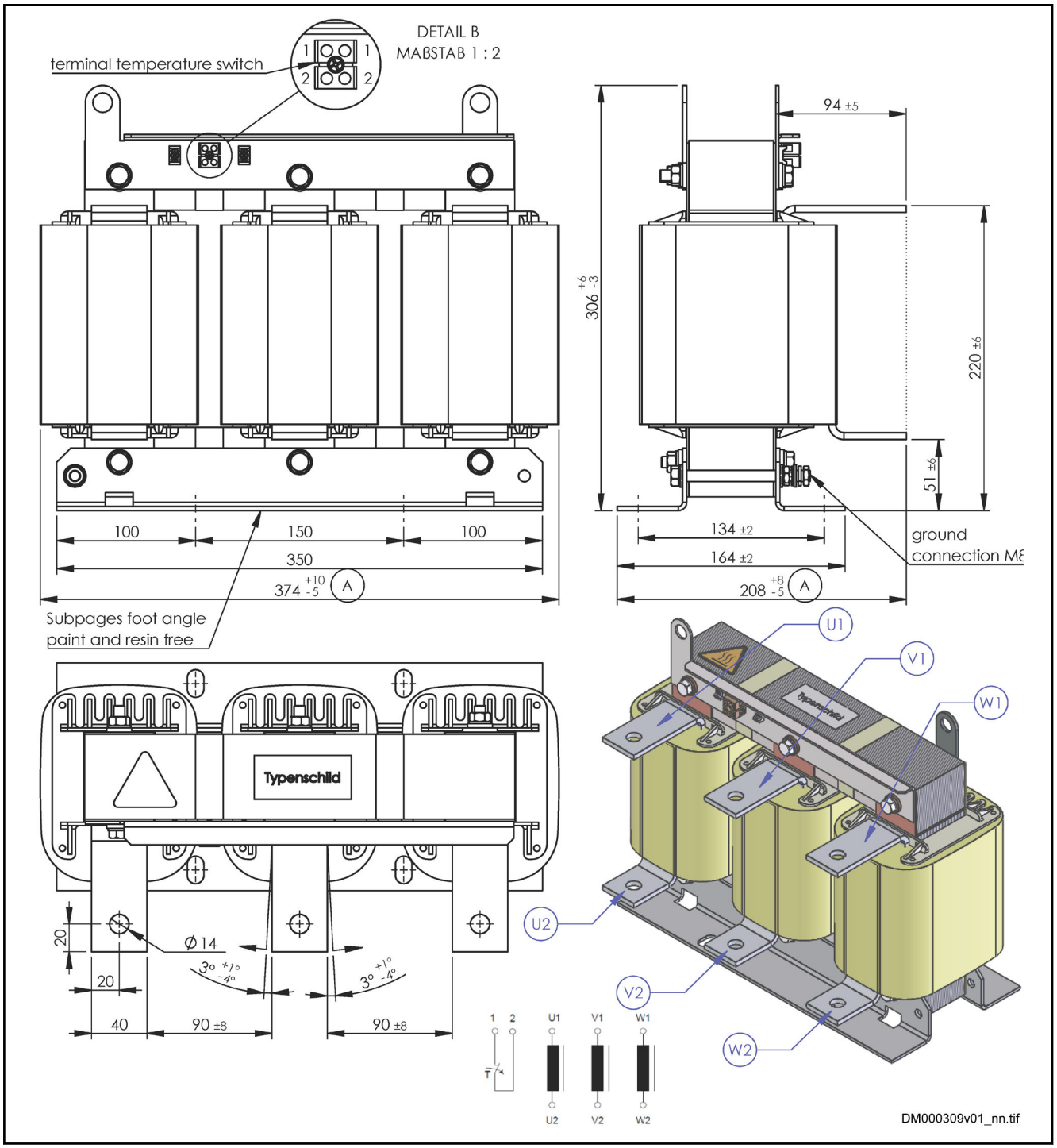


Fig. 8-59: HNL05.1R-0040-N0471-N-A5-NNNN

HNL05.1R-0175-N0471-N-A5-NNNF

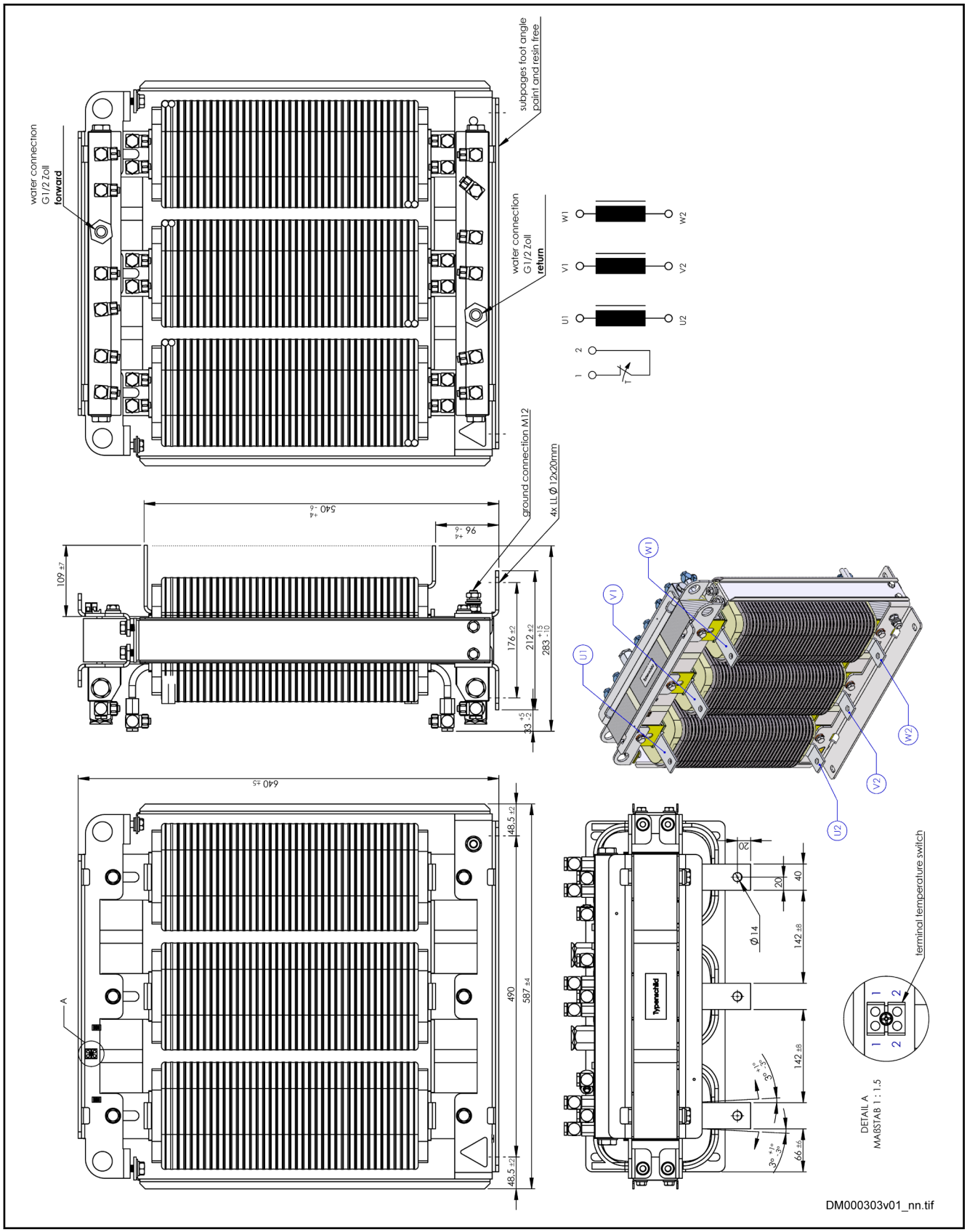


Fig. 8-60: HNL05.1R-0175-N0471-N-A5-NNNF

Data

HNL05.1R-…-A4	Use [4]	Inductance [µH]	Nominal current [A]	u_k [%]	Power dissipation [1] [W]		Degree of protection	Max. ambient temperature [2] [°C]	Weight [kg]
					Air	Water			
0219-N0218-…-NNNF [3]	C	219	218	6.5	1000	1000	IP00	40	37
0182-N0262-…-NNNF	C	182	262	6.5	1000	1000	IP00	40	53
0219-N0262-…-NNNW [5]	C	219	262	7.8	2300	-	IP00	40	60
0045-N0327-…-NNNN	V	45	327	2	230	-	IP00	40	21
0135-N0327-…-NNNF	C	135	327	6	900	1700	IP00	40	58
0135-N0327-…-NNNW [5]	C	135	327	6	2200	-	IP00	40	65
0054-N0409-…-NNNN	V	54	409	3	350	-	IP00	40	40
0117-N0409-…-NNNF	C	117	409	6.5	1200	2000	IP00	40	82
0117-N0409-…-NNNW [5]	C	117	409	6.5	2500	-	IP00	40	90
0043-N0514-…-NNNN	V	43	514	3	400	-	IP00	40	50
0130-N0514-…-NNNF	C	130	514	9.1	1350	2400	IP00	40	116
0130-N0514-…-NNNW [5]	C	130	514	9.1	3000	-	IP00	40	120
0050-N0652-…-NNNN	V	50	652	4.4	560	-	IP00	40	70
0113-N0652-…-NNNF	C	113	652	10	1500	2700	IP00	40	150
0040-N0811-…-NNNN	V	40	811	4.4	620	-	IP00	40	85
0100-N0811-…-NNNF	C	100	811	11	1650	3000	IP00	40	180

1) The air/water distribution was determined at an ambient temperature of 30 °C and a water inlet temperature of 50 °C

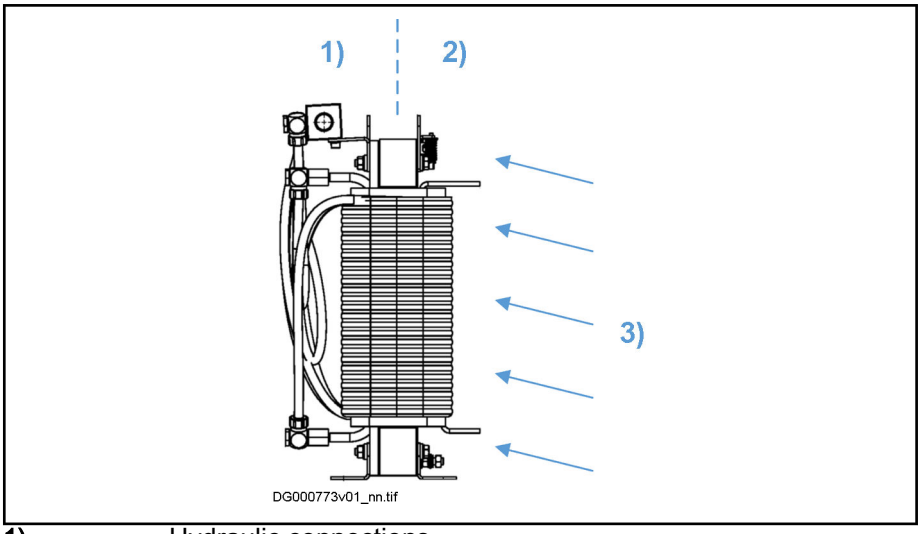
2) Up to 55°C with current derating

3) If the leakage capacitance > is 250 nF, the clock frequency of the axes >is 2 kHz, and the system is operated without a DC bus choke: Additional cooling of the choke via forced convection on the side of the electric connections is required (see fig. 8-61 "Forced convection" on page 280)

4) C: Chopper choke, V: Preconnected choke

5) Fan, power voltage: 24 V DC ±10%; 300 mA

Tab. 8-56: HNL05.1R-…-A4, data



1) Hydraulic connections
2) Electrical connections
3) Air current ≥ 3 m/s; reference plane: 10 cm from the front edge of the choke

Fig. 8-61: Forced convection

HNL05.1R-…-A5	Use [3]	Inductance [µH]	Nominal current [A]	u_k [%]	Power dissipation [1] [W]		Degree of protection	Max. ambient temperature [2] [°C]	Weight [kg]
					Air	Water			
0649-N0127	C	649	127	6.5	1000	1000	IP00	40	50
0125-N0152	V	125	152	1.5	180	-	IP00	40	17
0542-N0152	C	542	152	6.5	1000	1000	IP00	40	60
0100-N0190	V	100	190	1.5	180	-	IP00	40	25
0434-N0190	C	434	190	6.5	1100	1100	IP00	40	75
0080-N0238	V	80	238	1.5	260	-	IP00	40	25
0346-N0238	C	346	238	6.5	1300	1400	IP00	40	85
0054-N0352	V	54	352	1.5	350	-	IP00	40	35
0234-N0352	C	234	352	6.5	1300	1900	IP00	40	110
0040-N0471	V	40	471	1.5	430	-	IP00	40	40
0175-N0471	C	175	471	6.5	1500	2300	IP00	40	160

1) The air/water distribution was determined at an ambient temperature of 30 °C and a water inlet temperature of 50 °C
2) Up to 55°C with current derating
3) C: Chopper choke, V: Preconnected choke

Tab. 8-57: HNL05.1R-…-A5, data

Temperature monitoring contact

- Trigger temperature: 160 °C
- N/C in one of the windings
- Electric switching capacity:
  - 1 A
  - AC 250 V
  - DC 24 V

Semiconductor temperature sensor (only for HNL05.1R-…-A4-NNNF)

- KTY84/130 (medium-winding)
- do not connect (for service or commissioning only)
- led out to the temperature sensor terminal block; shield clamp spring

Water cooling

Requirements

- maximum ambient temperature: 40 °C (with derating: 55 °C)
- maximum inlet water temperature: 60 °C
- Maximum operating pressure: 4 bar

HNL05.1R-…-A4	Flow [l/min]	Filling capacity [l]	Pressure drop [bar]				
			5 l/min	6 l/min	7 l/min	8 l/min	9 l/min
0219-N0218	≥ 6	1.3	0.14	0.20	0.27	0.34	0.42
0182-N0262	≥ 6	1.5	0.15	0.22	0.29	0.37	0.46
0135-N0327	≥ 6	1.6	0.17	0.24	0.32	0.41	0.51
0117-N0409	≥ 6	2.0	0.21	0.29	0.39	0.49	0.62
0130-N0514	≥ 6	2.5	0.24	0.33	0.44	0.58	0.75
0113-N0652	≥ 8	3.4	0.03	0.04	0.06	0.08	0.10
0100-N0811	≥ 8	3.6	0.04	0.05	0.07	0.08	0.10

Tab. 8-58: HNL05.1R-…-A4, water cooling

HNL05.1R-…-A5	Flow [l/min]	Filling capacity [l]	Pressure drop [bar]				
			5 l/min	6 l/min	7 l/min	8 l/min	9 l/min
0649-N0127	≥ 6	0.9	0.07	0.10	0.12	0.15	0.19
0542-N0152	≥ 6	1.0	0.08	0.11	0.14	0.17	0.21
0434-N0190	≥ 6	1.1	0.08	0.11	0.14	0.18	0.23
0346-N0238	≥ 6	2.2	0.15	0.21	0.29	0.36	0.44
0234-N0352	≥ 6	2.6	0.20	0.29	0.38	0.48	0.58
0175-N0471	≥ 8	3.6	0.04	0.05	0.06	0.08	0.09

Tab. 8-59: HNL05.1R-…-A5, water cooling

Mounting

- Allowed mounting position: vertical
- Mount on a stable, highly conductive metal plate, ensuring full-surface electrical contact.



The components are dimensioned for operation in the control cabinet and may have a sound pressure level > 85 dBA.

When mounting the component outside a closed control cabinet, install a suitable noise protection.

Connection

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

Degree of protection of the component: **IP00**

Mount a **touch guard**!

HNL05.1R-…-A4	Connections
0219-N0218	Aluminum contact point [1)] Hole: 11 mm
0182-N0262	
0045-N0327	
0135-N0327	
0054-N0409	Aluminum contact point [1)] Hole: 14 mm
0117-N0409	
0043-N0514	Aluminum contact point [1)] Hole: 2 × 11 mm
0130-N0514	
0050-N0652	
0113-N0652	
0040-N0811	
0100-N0811	

1) Connection using Cupal washers: See chapter 11.6 "Aluminum contact points and cupal disks" on page 641.

Tab. 8-60: HNL05.1R-…-A4, connection points

HNL05.1R-…-A5	Connections
0649-N0127	Screw terminals: 95 mm^2/120 mm^2 Tightening torque: 12 … 20 Nm
0125-N0152	
0542-N0152	
0100-N0190	Screw terminals: 150 mm^2 Tightening torque: 14 … 20 Nm
0434-N0190	
0080-N0238	Aluminum contact point [1)] Hole: 11 mm
0346-N0238	
0054-N0352	Aluminum contact point [1)] Hole: 14 mm
0234-N0352	
0040-N0471	
0175-N0471	

1) Connection using Cupal washers: See chapter 11.6 "Aluminum contact points and cupal disks" on page 641.

Tab. 8-61: HNL05.1R-…-A5, connection points

Operation

⚠ CAUTION **Risk of burns and damage by hot surfaces!**

Chokes get hot during operation.

Let the choke cool down before working with the choke. Wear safety gloves.

Route cables and coolant hoses at a sufficient distance from the choke. Cables or coolant hoses must not come into contact with the choke.

Please note that the metal frame of the choke can also get hot.

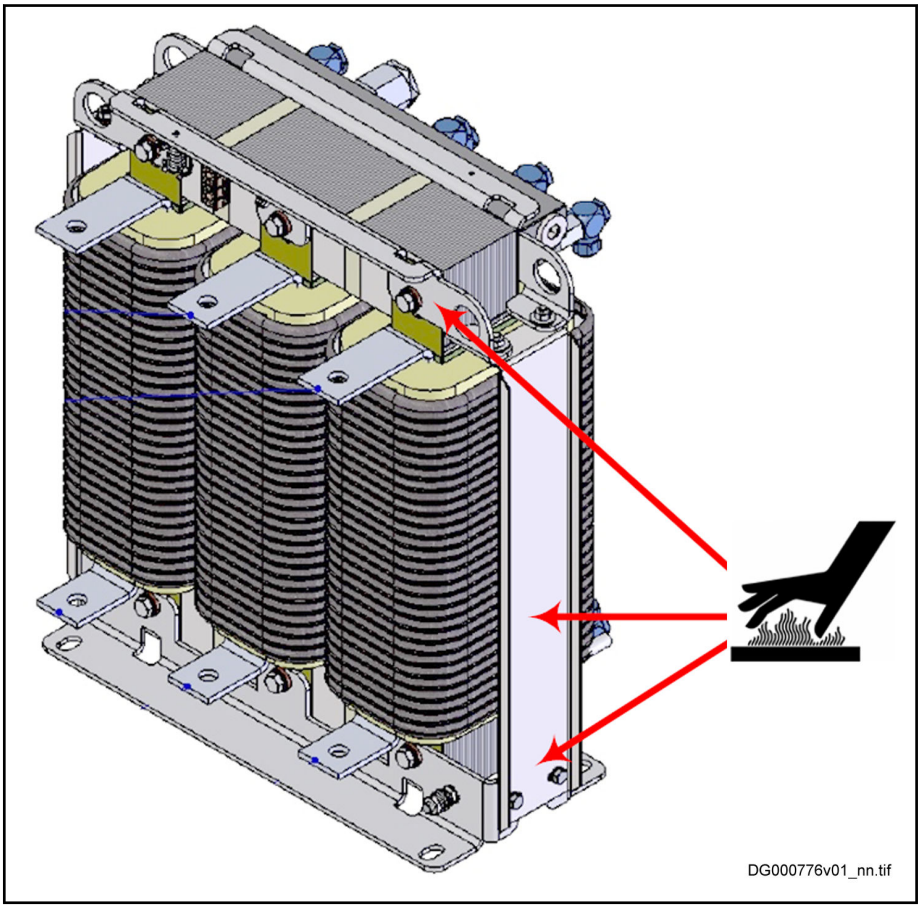


Fig. 8-62: Risk of burns from a choke

Assignment HNL05 to HMU05

See chapter "Combining a mains filter, mains choke, preconnected choke, and mains capacitor" on page 116.

8.3.5 Motor choke/balancing choke HML05

HML05 type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	M	L	0	5	.	1	W	-	D	9	8	0	U	-	N	1	0	0	2	-	N	-	5	0	0	-	N	N	N	N										
	①			②			③	④		⑤	⑥					⑦	⑧					⑨		⑩				⑪													

①	**Product:** HML = Motor choke/balancing choke
②	**Series:** 05 = 05
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Cooling type, type of construction:** F = Liquid cooling W = Air cooling
⑤	**Choke type:** D = dv/dt choke
⑥	**Nominal inductance:** 980U = 980 µH (example)
⑦	**Additional option:** C = with common-mode damping winding N = None
⑧	**Nominal current:** 1002 = 1002 A (example)
⑨	**Degree of protection:** N = IP00
⑩	**Rated voltage:** 500 = 3 × AC 500 V 690 = 3 × AC 690 V
⑪	**Other design:** NNNN = None

Tab. 8-62: HML05, type code

Dimensions

Overviewm on the motor choke/balancing choke

HML05.1W-...-500

chapter "HML05.1W-D021U-N0254-N-500" on page 287
chapter "HML05.1W-D018U-N0306-N-500" on page 288
chapter "HML05.1W-D014U-N0392-N-500" on page 289
chapter "HML05.1W-D009U-N0490-N-500" on page 290
chapter "HML05.1W-D009U-N0616-N-500" on page 291
chapter "HML05.1W-D007U-N0771-N-500" on page 292
chapter "HML05.1W-D006U-N1002-N-500" on page 293
chapter "HML05.1W-D004U-N1185-N-500" on page 294

HML05.1W-...-690

chapter "HML05.1W-D052U-N0147-N-690" on page 295
chapter "HML05.1W-D043U-N0177-N-690" on page 296
chapter "HML05.1W-D034U-N0227-N-690" on page 297
chapter "HML05.1W-D027U-N0284-N-690" on page 298
chapter "HML05.1W-D020U-N0374-N-690" on page 299
chapter "HML05.1W-D013U-N0581-N-690" on page 300

Motor chokes for high-speed motors

HML05.1F-...-500

chapter "HML05.1F-D200U-N0465-N-500" on page 301

HML05.1F-...-690

chapter "HML05.1F-D200U-N0269-N-690" on page 302
chapter "HML05.1F-D200U-C0269-N-690" on page 303

HML05.1W-D021U-N0254-N-500

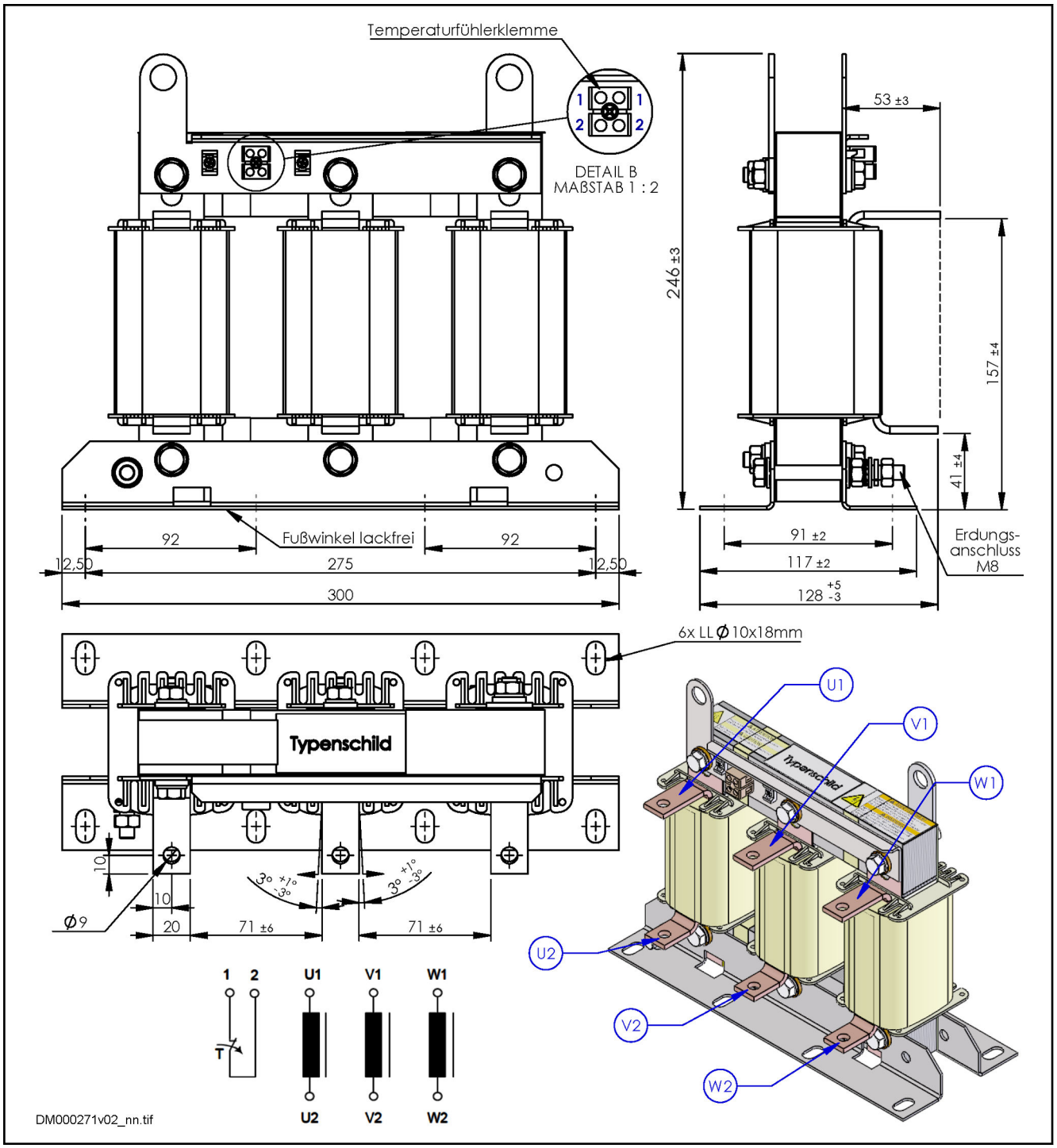


Fig. 8-63: HML05.1W-D021U-N0254-N-500, dimensions

HML05.1W-D018U-N0306-N-500

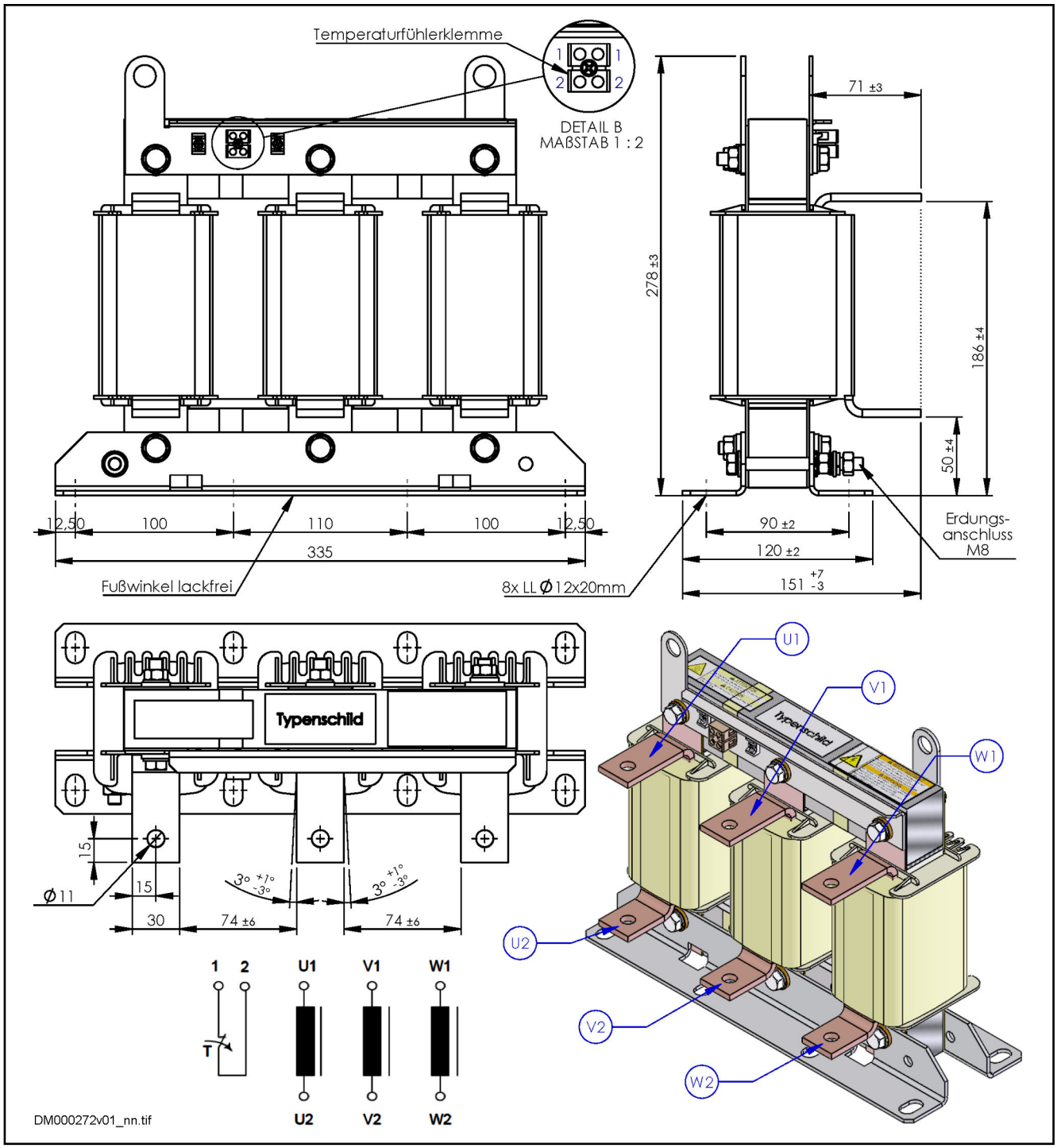


Fig. 8-64: HML05.1W-D018U-N0306-N-500, dimensions

HML05.1W-D014U-N0392-N-500

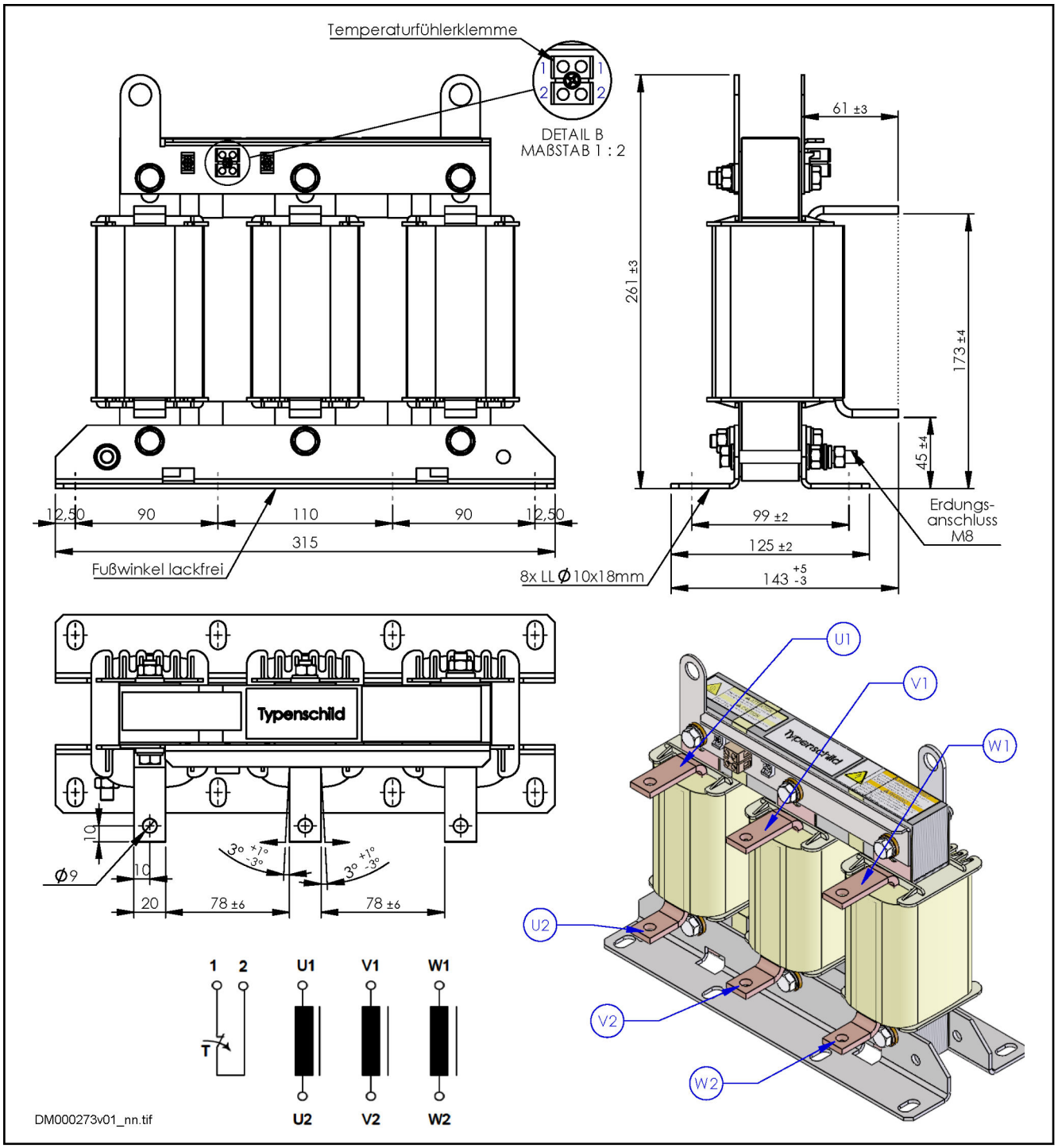


Fig. 8-65: HML05.1W-D014U-N0392-N-500, dimensions

HML05.1W-D009U-N0490-N-500

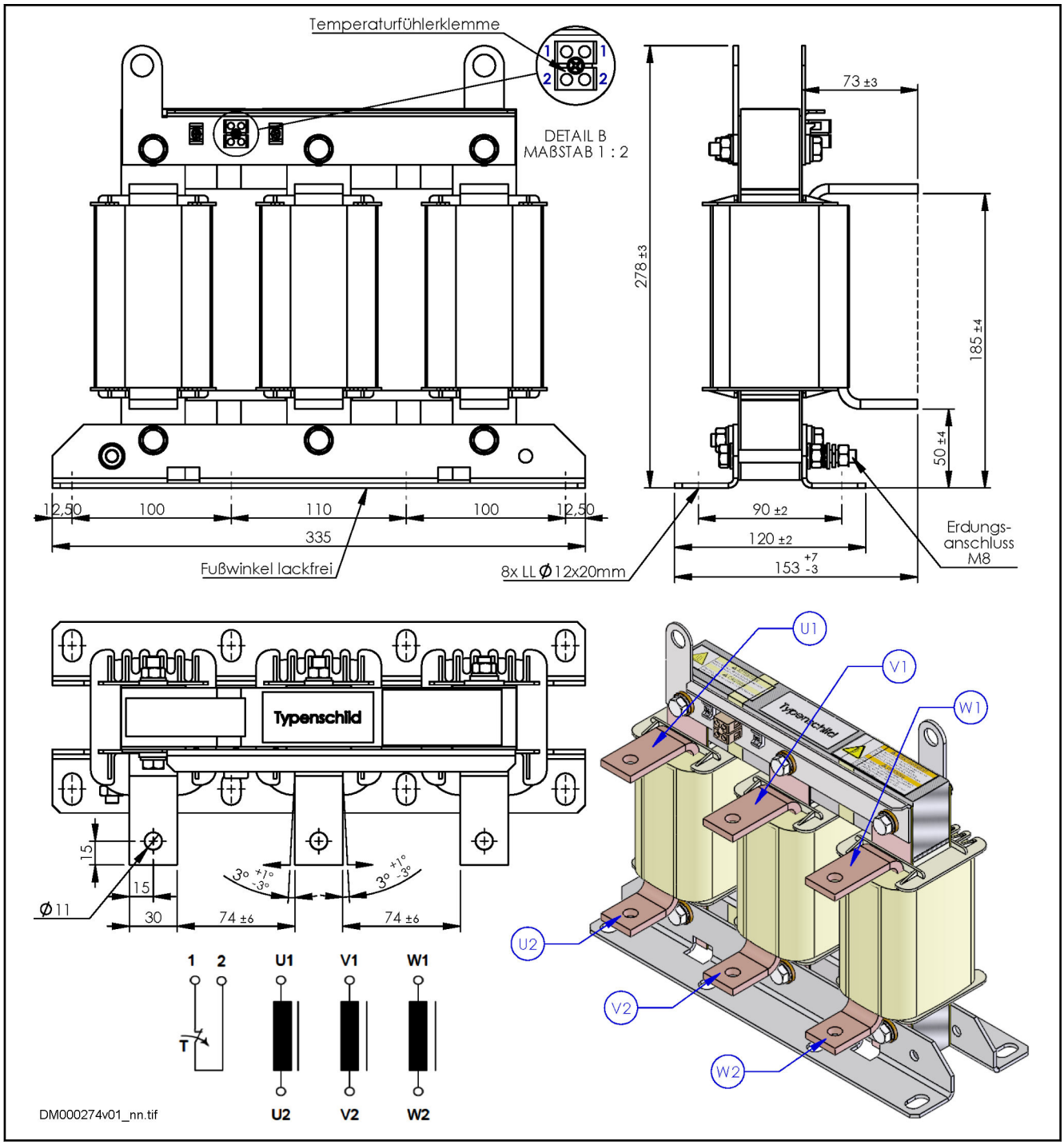


Fig. 8-66: HML05.1W-D009U-N0490-N-500, dimensions

HML05.1W-D009U-N0616-N-500

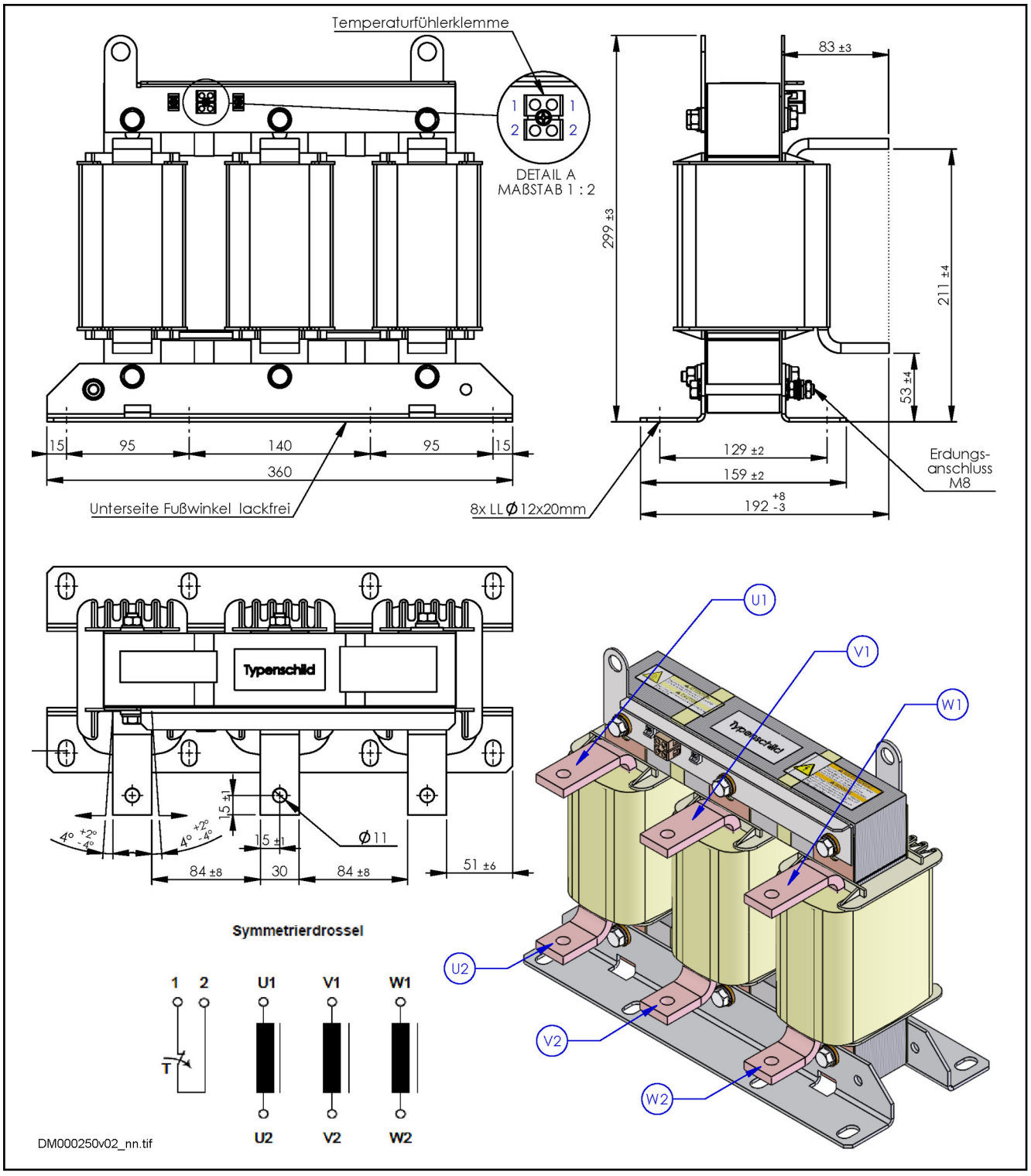


Fig. 8-67: HML05.1W-D009U-N0616-N-500, dimensions

HML05.1W-D007U-N0771-N-500

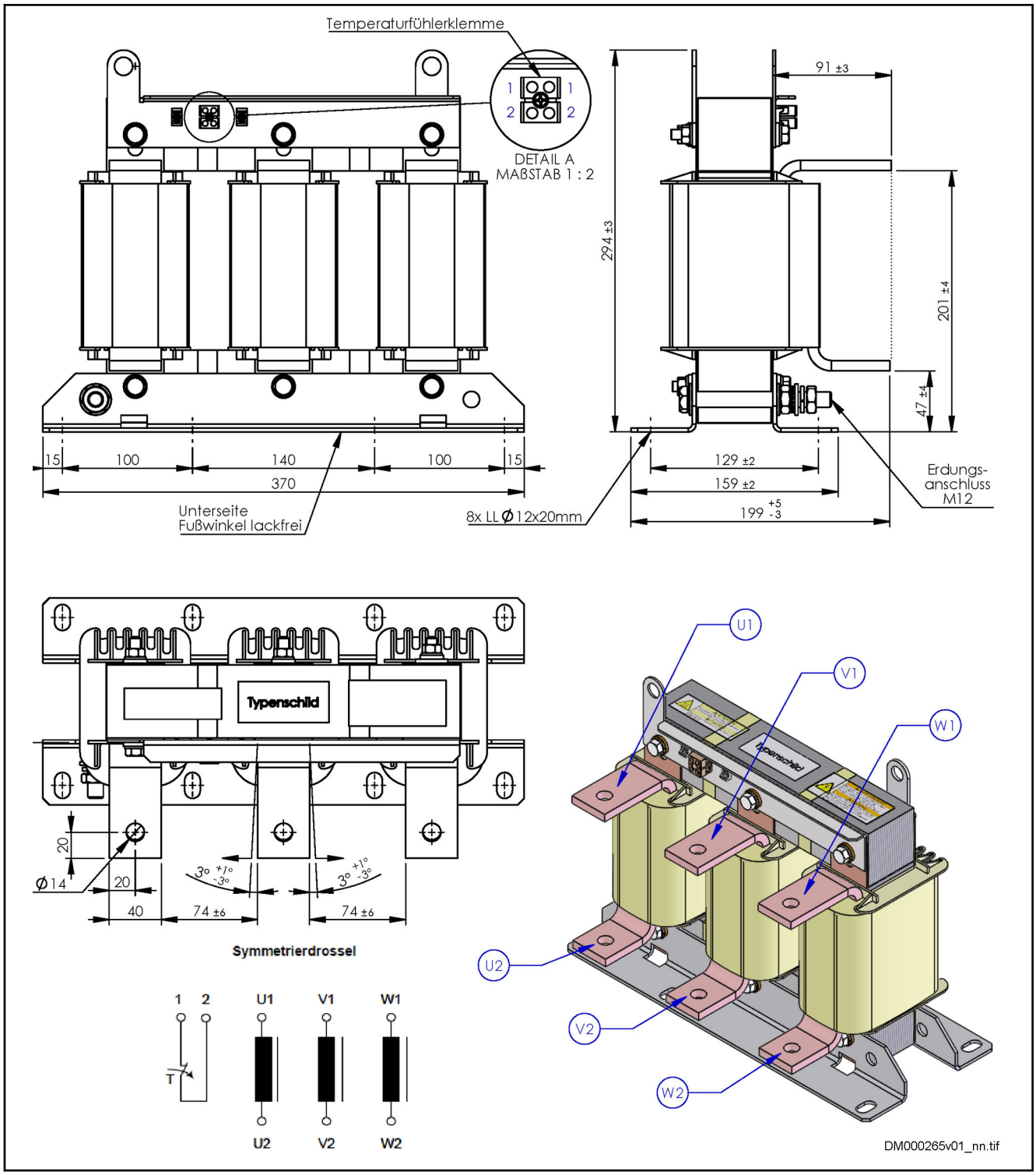


Fig. 8-68: HML05.1W-D007U-N0771-N-500, dimensions

HML05.1W-D006U-N1002-N-500

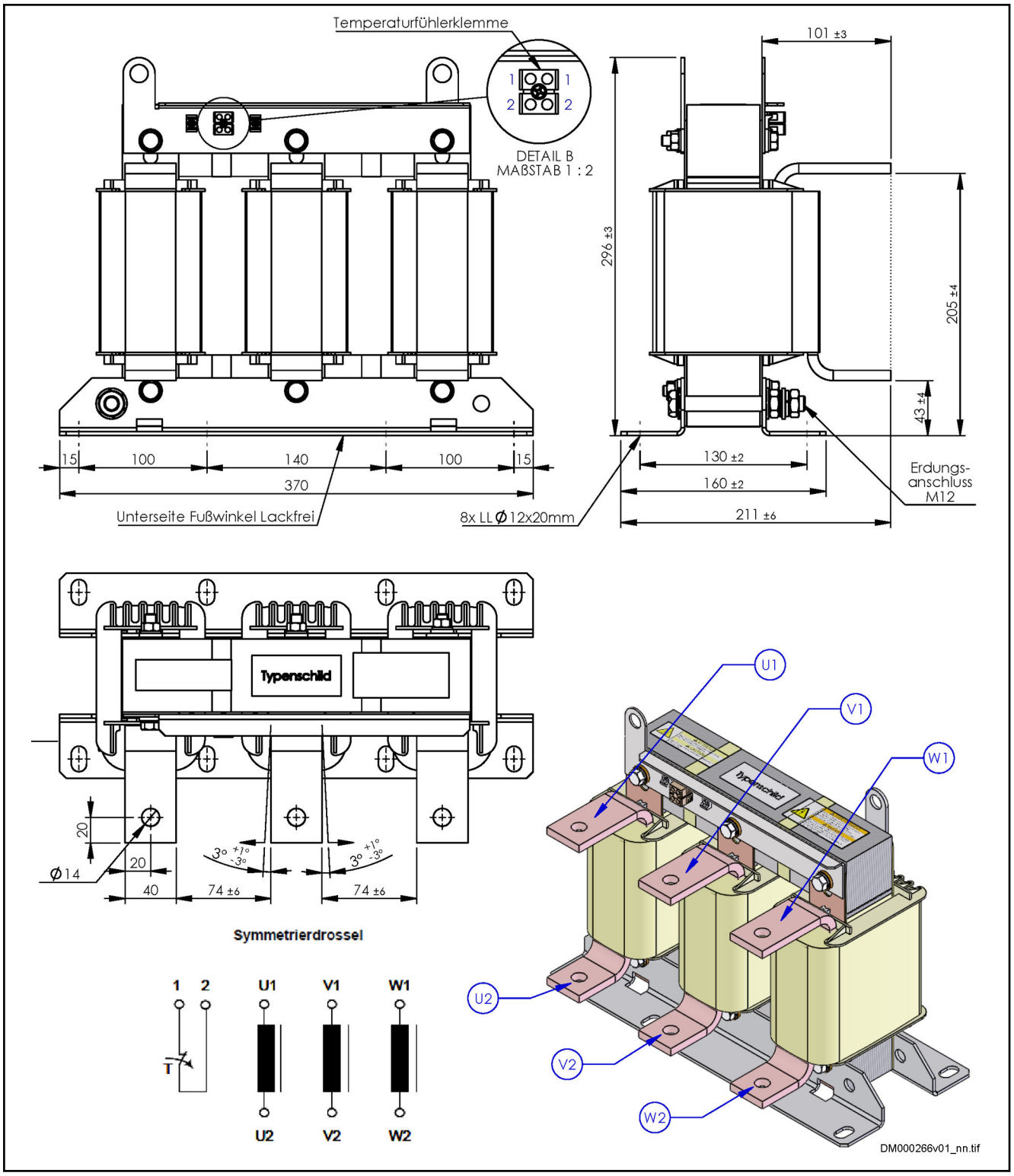


Fig. 8-69: HML05.1W-D006U-N1002-N-500, dimensions

HML05.1W-D004U-N1185-N-500

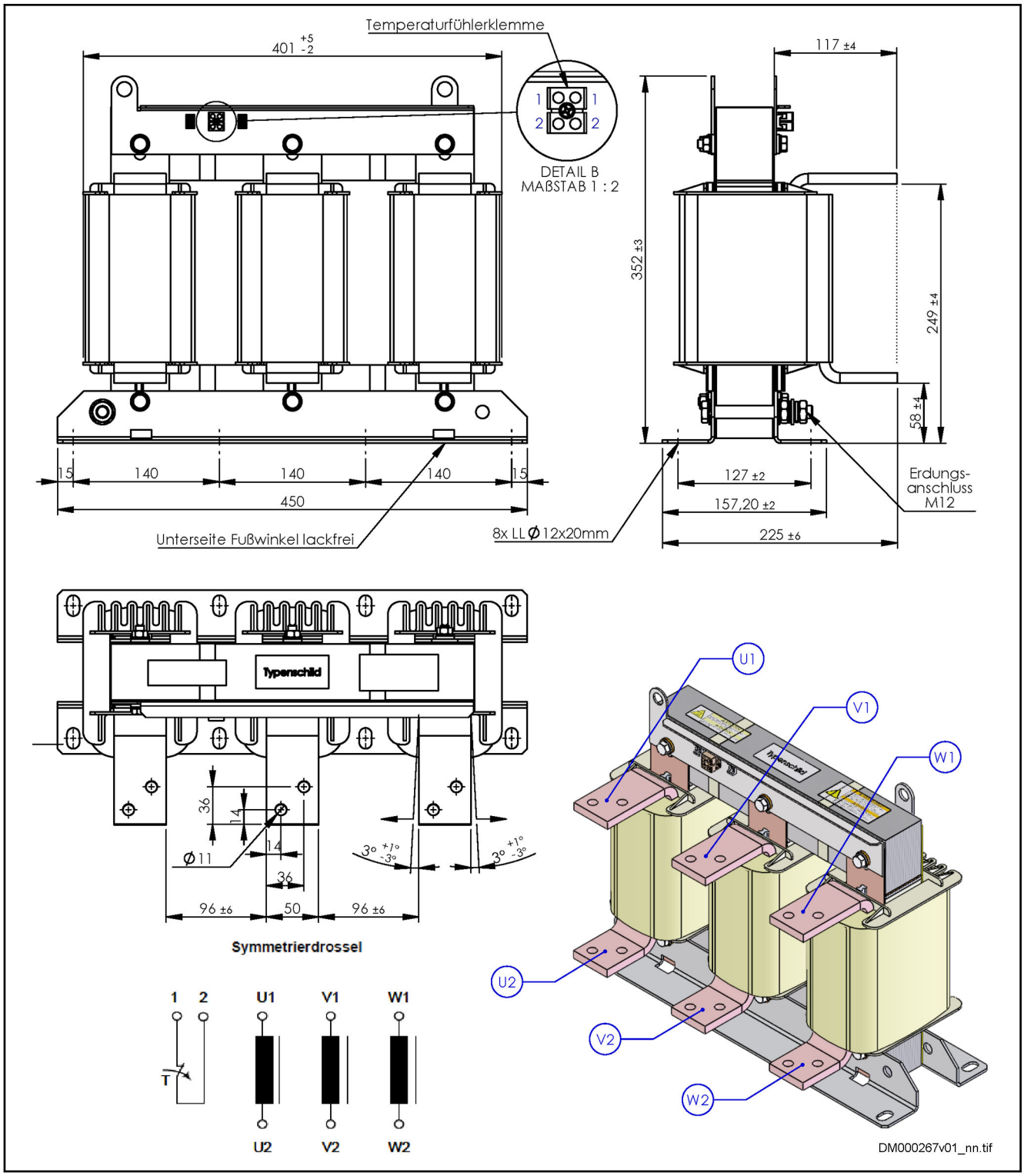


Fig. 8-70: HML05.1W-D004U-N1185-N-500, dimensions

HML05.1W-D052U-N0147-N-690

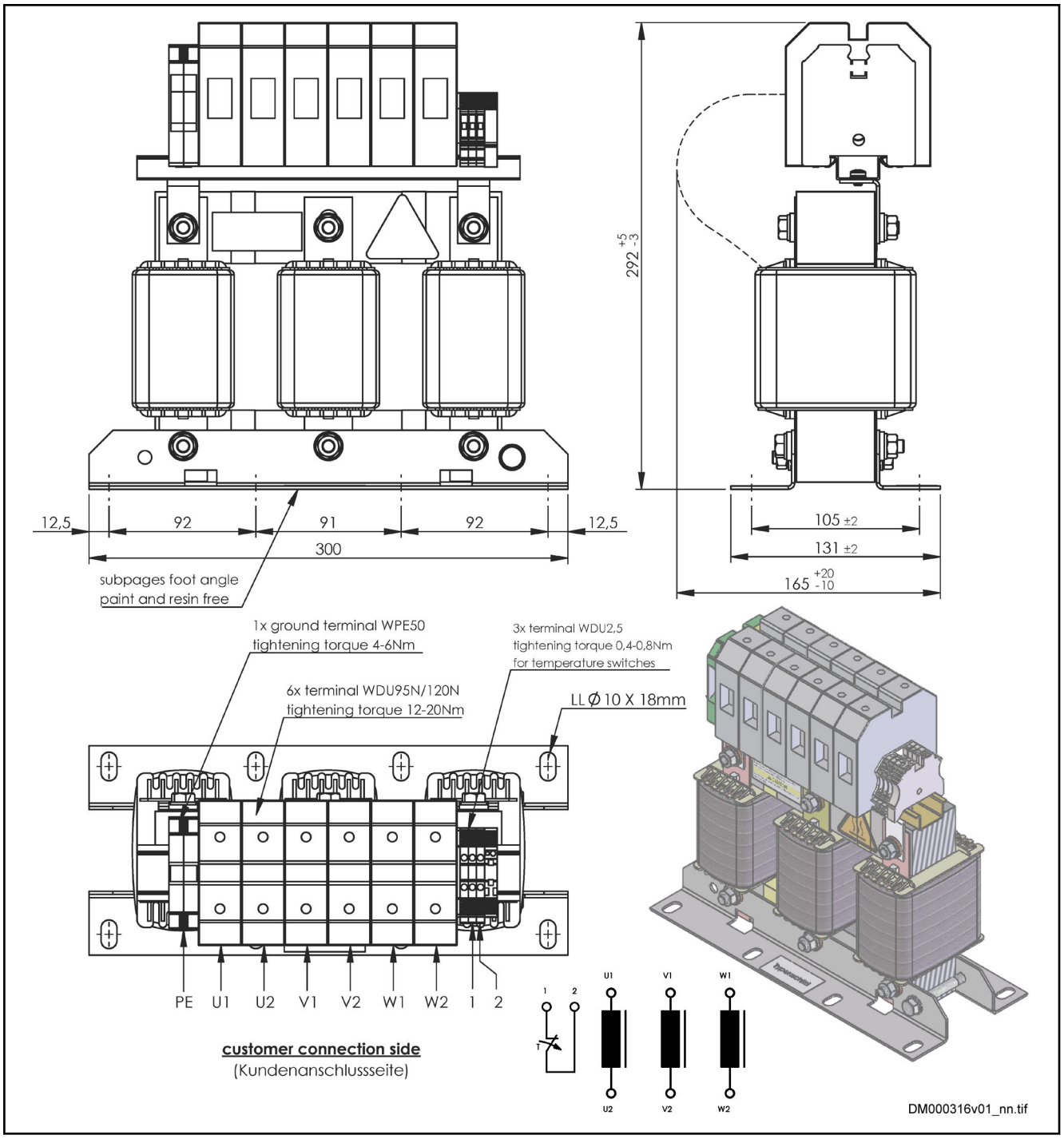


Fig. 8-71: HML05.1W-D052U-N0147-N-690

HML05.1W-D043U-N0177-N-690

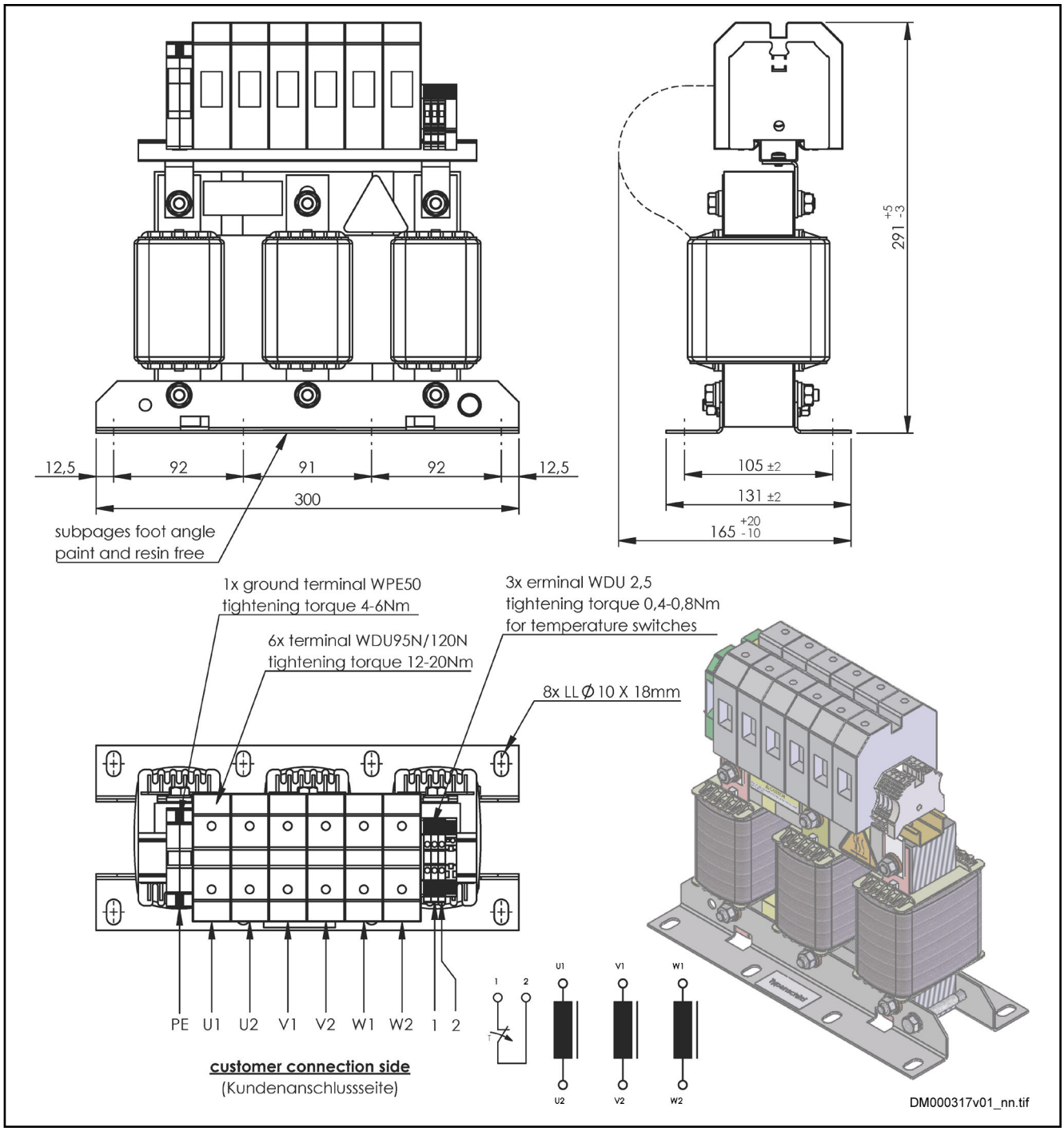


Fig. 8-72: HML05.1W-D043U-N0177-N-690

HML05.1W-D034U-N0227-N-690

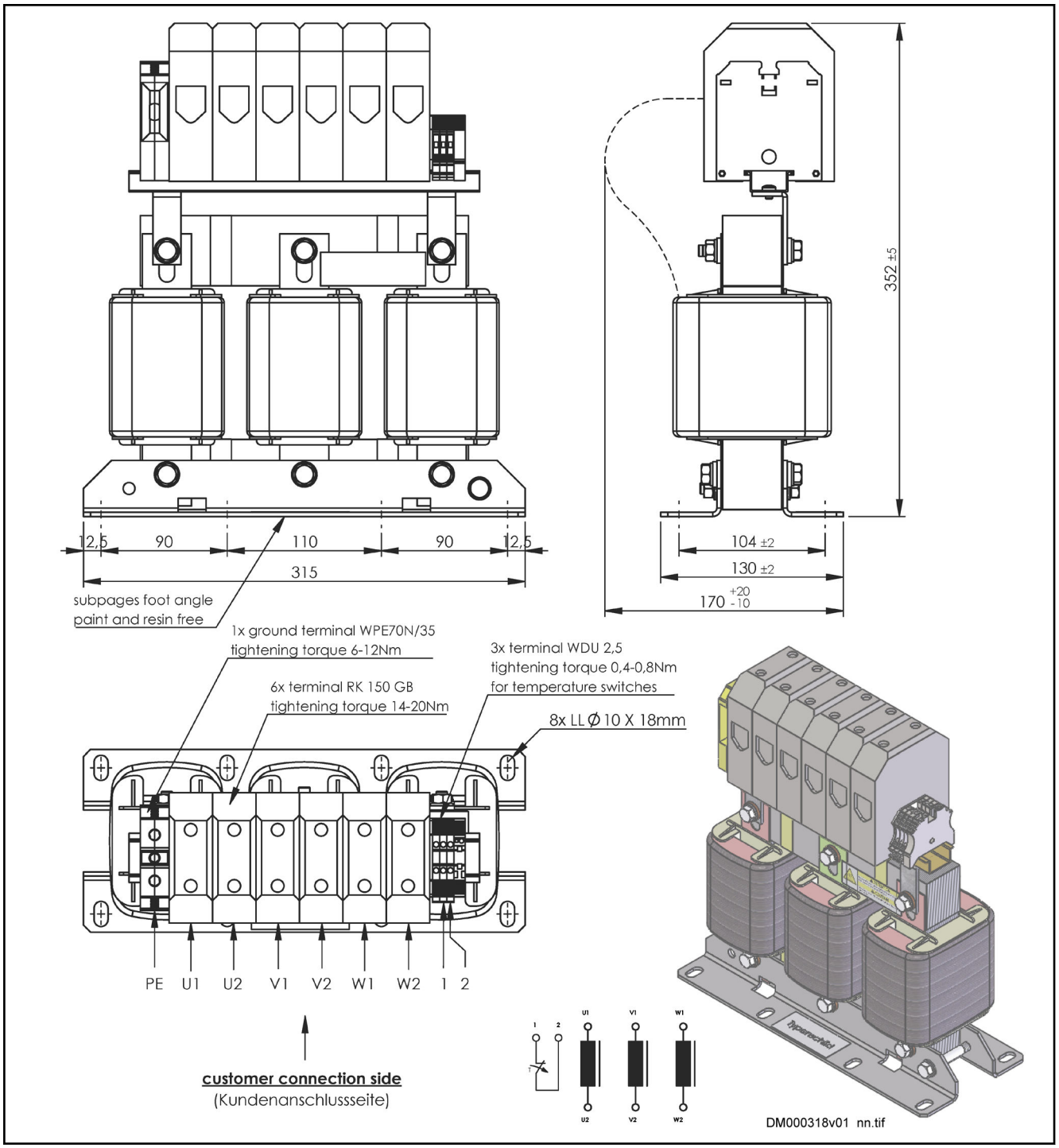


Fig. 8-73: HML05.1W-D034U-N0227-N-690

HML05.1W-D027U-N0284-N-690

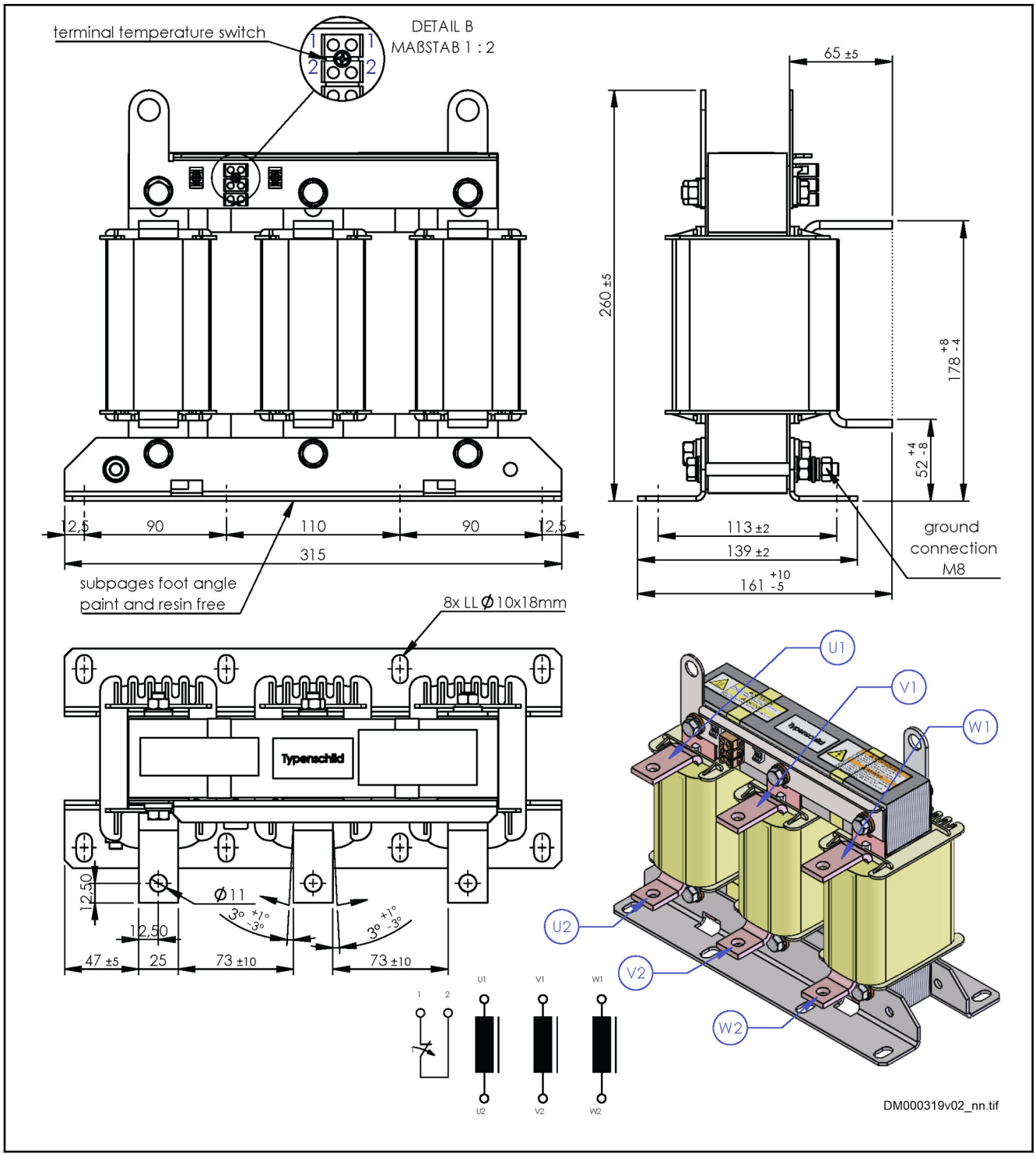


Fig. 8-74: HML05.1W-D027U-N0284-N-690

HML05.1W-D020U-N0374-N-690

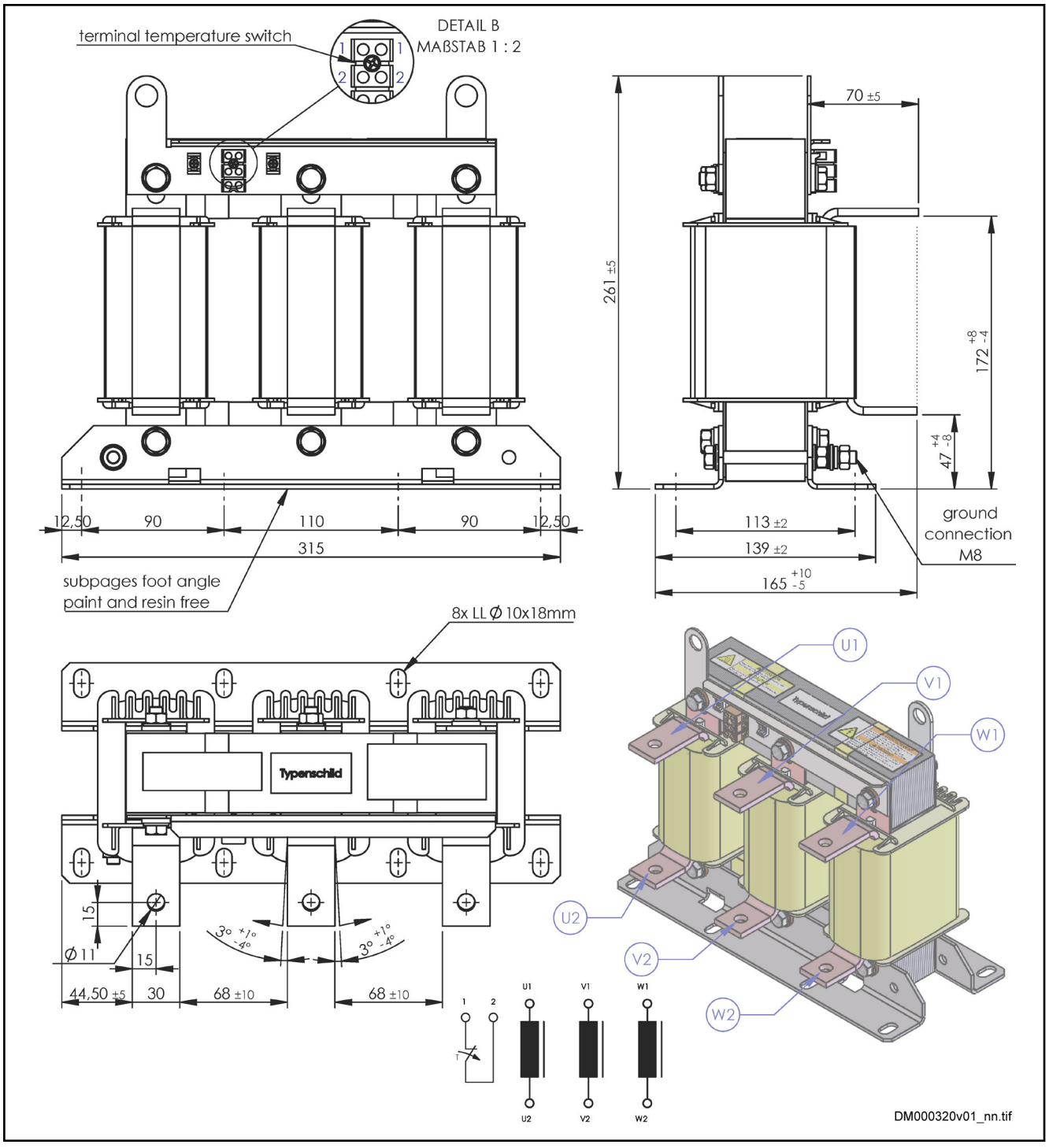


Fig. 8-75: HML05.1W-D020U-N0374-N-690

HML05.1W-D013U-N0581-N-690

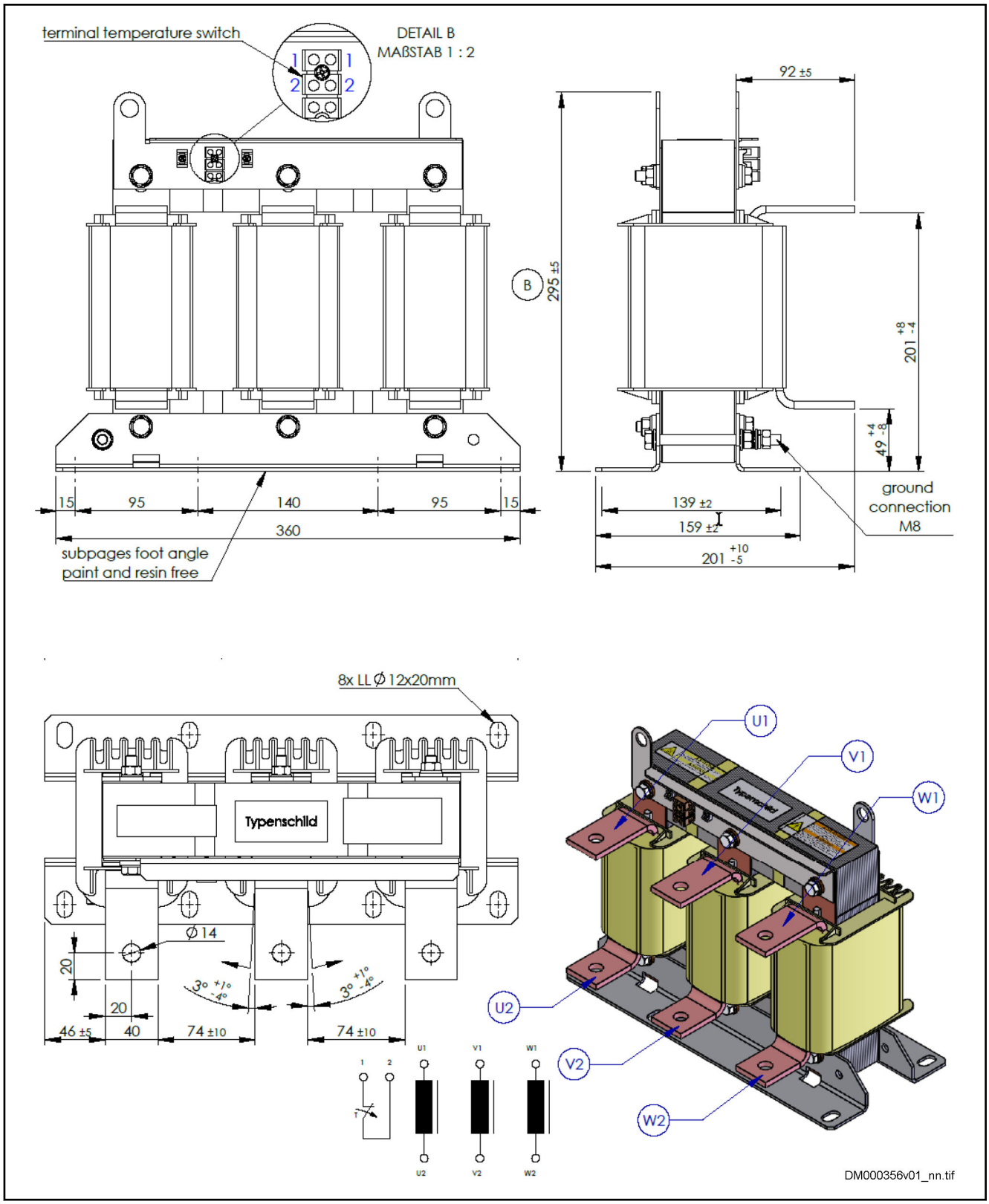


Fig. 8-76: HML05.1W-D013U-N0581-N-690

HML05.1F-D200U-N0465-N-500

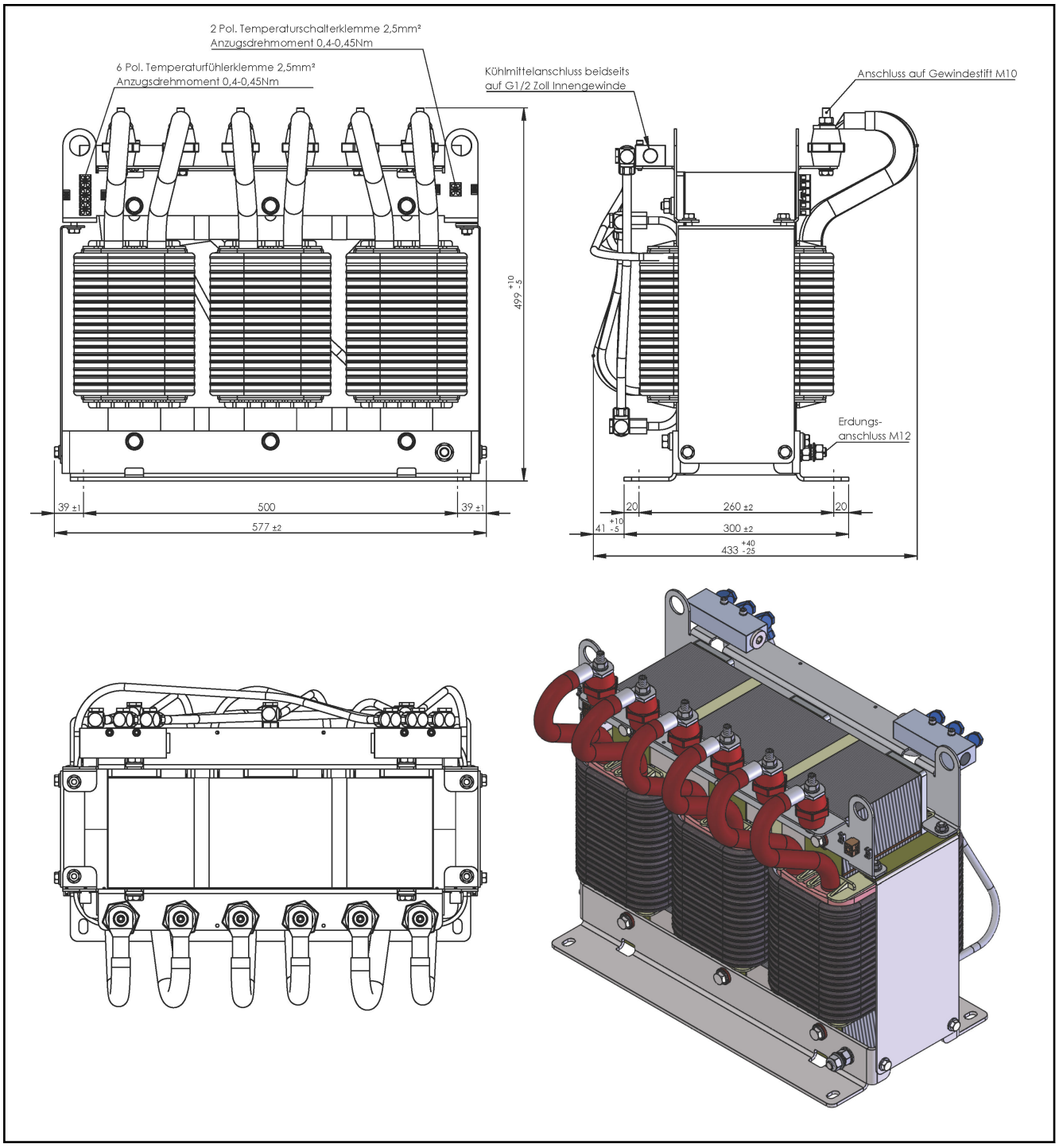


Fig. 8-77: HML05.1F-D200U-N0465-N-500

HML05.1F-D200U-N0269-N-690

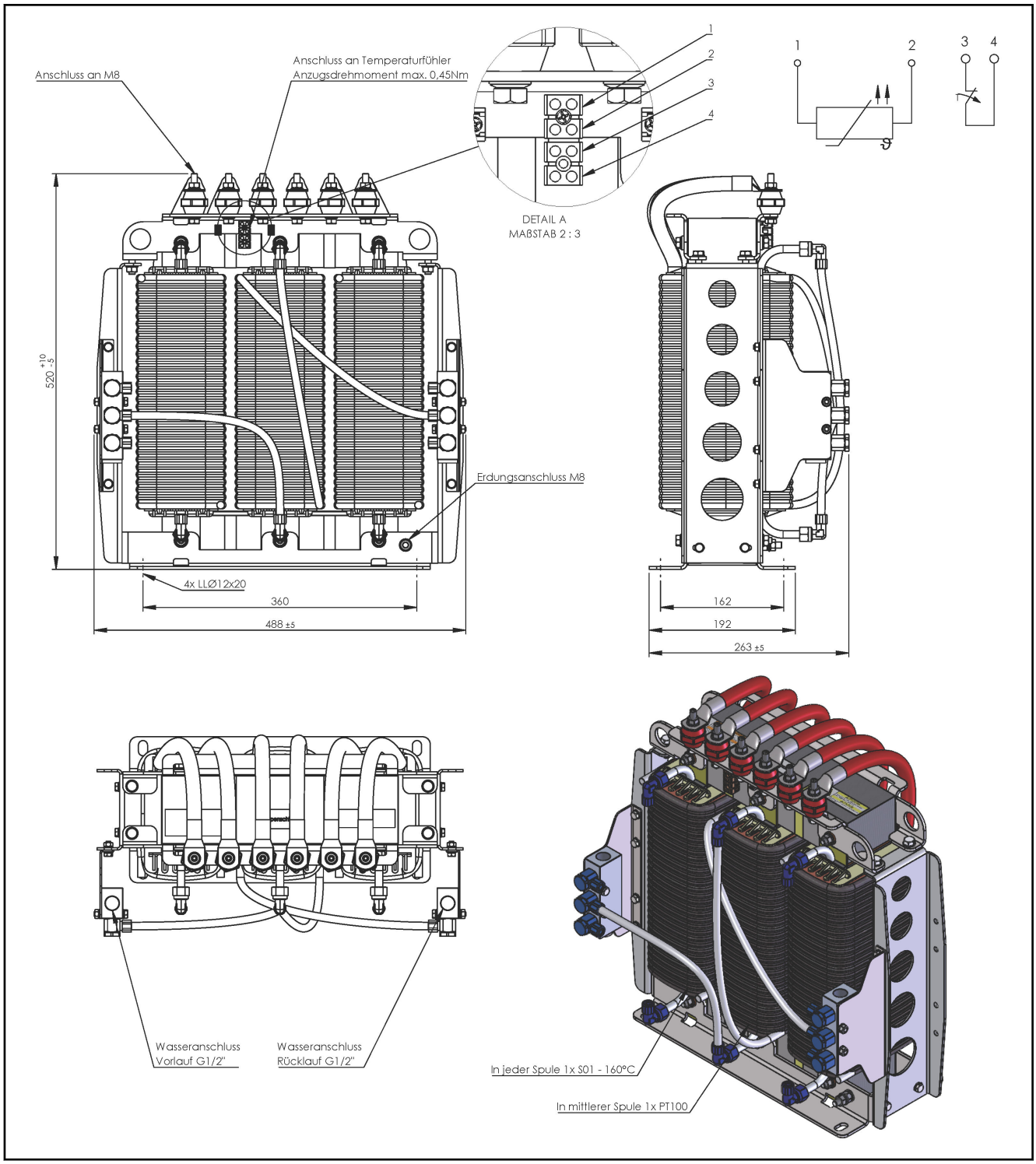


Fig. 8-78: HML05.1F-D200U-N0269-N-690

HML05.1F-D200U-C0269-N-690

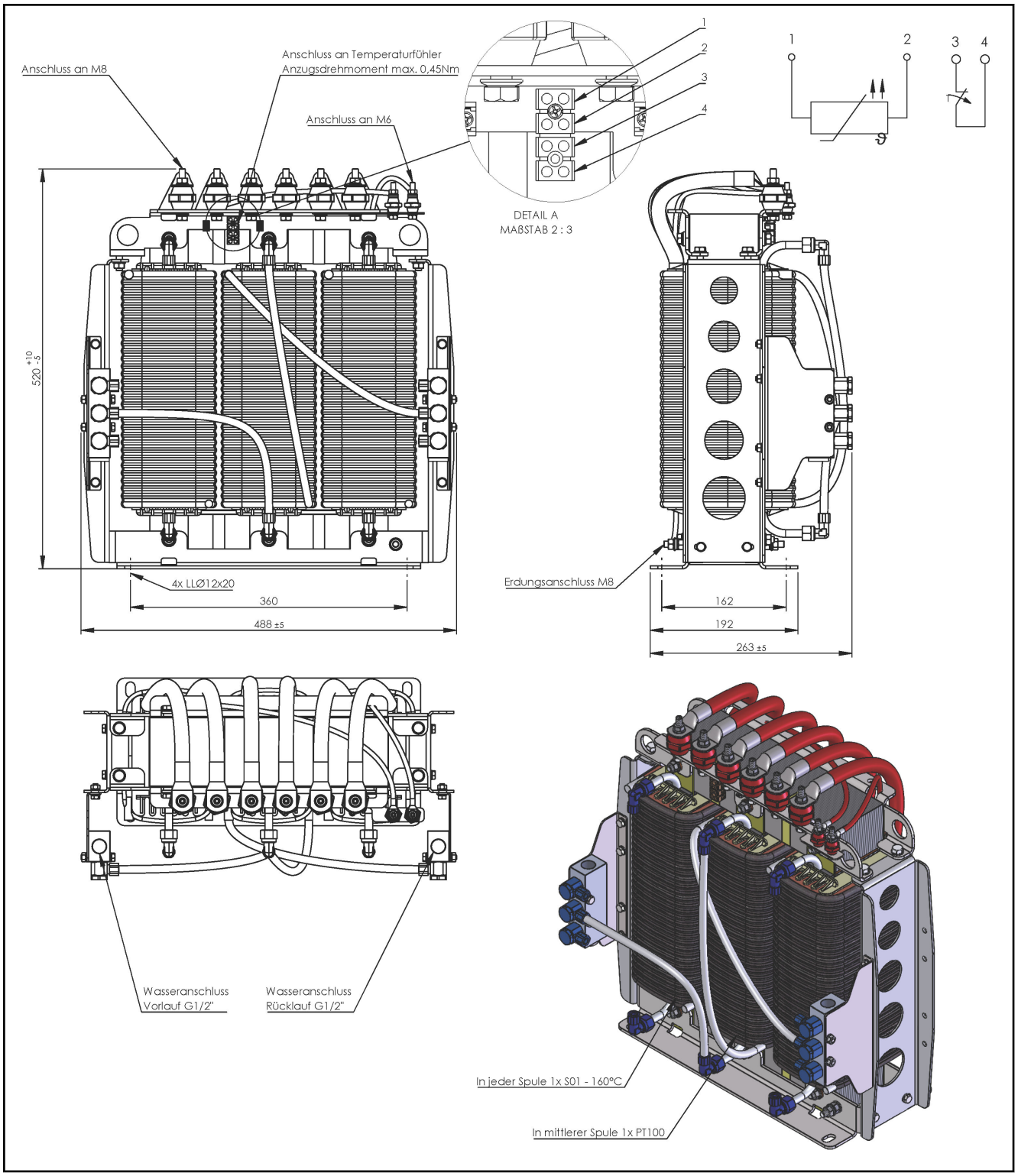
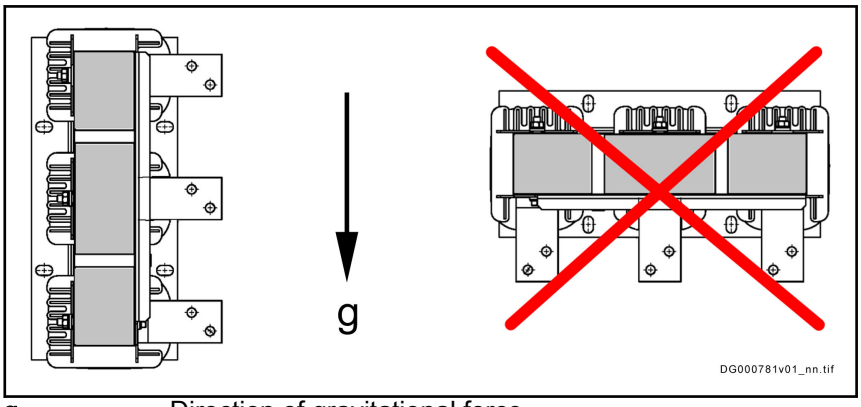


Fig. 8-79: HML05.1F-D200U-C0269-N-690

Mounting

Allowed mounting positions:

- standing
- For air-cooled chokes only (HML05.1**W**):
  suspended with the 3 windings oriented vertically



g Direction of gravitational force

*Fig. 8-80: Vertical mounting position (only for air-cooled chokes (HML05.**1W**)*

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

Degree of protection of the component: **IP00**

Mount a **touch guard**!

Motor choke/balancing choke data

HML05.1W-D … -N-500-NNNN

Designation		Unit	HML05.1W-D … -N-500-NNNN						
			021U-N0254	018U-N0306	014U-N0392	009U-N0490	009U-N0616	007U-N0771	006U-N1002
Relative u_k		%	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8
Inductance		µH	3 × 21	3 × 18	3 × 14	3 × 9.1	3 × 8.9	3 × 7.0	3 × 5.6
Motor inductance in operating point, typ.		µH	533	448	352	228	224	176	141
Operating point 1: Clock frequency 2 kHz; rotary field frequency ≤ 200 Hz	Nominal current	A_{rms}	254	306	392	490	616	771	1002
	allowed phase-to-phase capacitance (motor cable) per HML	nF	30	30	30	30	50	50	50
	allowed discharge capacity (motor cable + motor) per HML	nF	180	180	180	180	300	300	300
Operating point 2: Clock frequency 4 kHz; rotary field frequency ≤ 200 Hz	Nominal current	A_{rms}	254	306	392	490	546	632	775
	allowed phase-to-phase capacitance (motor cable) per HML	nF	20	20	20	20	30	30	30
	allowed discharge capacity (motor cable + motor) per HML	nF	120	120	120	120	180	180	180
Operating point 3: Clock frequency 4 kHz; rotary field frequency ≤ 400 Hz	Nominal current	A_{rms}	254	306	392	490	546	632	775
	allowed phase-to-phase capacitance (motor cable) per HML	nF	10	10	10	10	30	30	30
	allowed discharge capacity (motor cable + motor) per HML	nF	60	60	60	60	180	180	180
Inductance, saturation limit		A_{rms}	314	377	454	582	727	915	1144
Power dissipation		W	200	250	300	300	350	330	425
Nominal voltage		V	3 × 500						
Rise of voltage at output with U_{LN_nenn} and 6 m motor cable length phase-phase (10…90%)		kV/µs	2						
Rise of voltage at output with U_{LN_nenn} and 6 m motor cable length phase-ground (10 … 90%)		kV/µs	1.7						

Designation		HML05.1W-D … -N-500-NNNN						
	Unit	021U-N0254	018U-N0306	014U-N0392	009U-N0490	009U-N0616	007U-N0771	006U-N1002
Degree of protection	-	IP00						
Weight	kg	15	20	25	25	34	38	40

Tab. 8-63: HML05.1W-D … -N-500, data

HML05.1W-D … -690

Designation			HML05.1W-D … -N-690-NNNN					
		Unit	052U-N0147	043U-N0177	034U-N0227	027U-N0284	020U-N0374	013U-N0581
Relative u_k		%	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6
Inductance		µH	3 × 52	3 × 43	3 × 34	3 × 27	3 × 20	3 × 13
Motor inductance in operating point, typ.		µH	1308	1086	847	677	514	331
Clock frequency 2 kHz; rotary field frequency ≤ 200 Hz	Nominal current	A_{rms}	147	177	227	284	374	581
	allowed phase-to-phase capacitance (motor cable) per HML	nF	10	10	10	10	13	13
	allowed discharge capacity (motor cable + motor) per HML	nF	60	60	60	60	75	75
Operating point 1 [1]: Clock frequency 2 kHz; rotary field frequency ≤ 200 Hz	Nominal current	A_{rms}	147	177	227	284	374	581
	allowed phase-to-phase capacitance (motor cable) per HML	nF	60	60	60	60	65	80
	allowed discharge capacity (motor cable + motor) per HML	nF	360	360	360	360	400	500
Operating point 2 [1]: Clock frequency 4 kHz; rotary field frequency ≤ 200 Hz	Nominal current	A_{rms}	147	177	227	284	269	377
	allowed phase-to-phase capacitance (motor cable) per HML	nF	25	25	30	30	33	50
	allowed discharge capacity (motor cable + motor) per HML	nF	150	150	180	180	200	300

Designation		Unit	HML05.1W-D … -N-690-NNNN					
			052U-N0147	043U-N0177	034U-N0227	027U-N0284	020U-N0374	013U-N0581
Operating point 3 [1]: Clock frequency 4 kHz[1]; rotary field frequency ≤ 400 Hz	Nominal current	A_{rms}	147	177	227	284	269	377
	allowed phase-to-phase capacitance (motor cable) per HML	nF	25	25	30	30	33	40
	allowed discharge capacity (motor cable + motor) per HML	nF	150	150	180	180	200	240
Inductance, saturation limit		A_{rms}	207	248	298	367	600	751
Power dissipation		W	300	300	400	400	400	400
Power dissipation in forced convection[1]		W	800	800	1000	1000	1000	1000
Nominal voltage		V	3 × 780					
Rise of voltage at output with U_{LN_nenn} and 6 m motor cable length phase-phase (1090%)		kV/µs	tbd					
Rise of voltage at output with U_{LN_nenn} and 6 m motor cable length phase-ground (10 … 90%)		kV/µs	tbd					
Degree of protection		-	IP00					
Weight		kg	20	20	25	25	25	40

1) Forced convection is required (see fig. 8-81 "Forced convection (600m³/h)" on page 307)

Tab. 8-64: HML05.1W-D … -N-690-NNNN, data

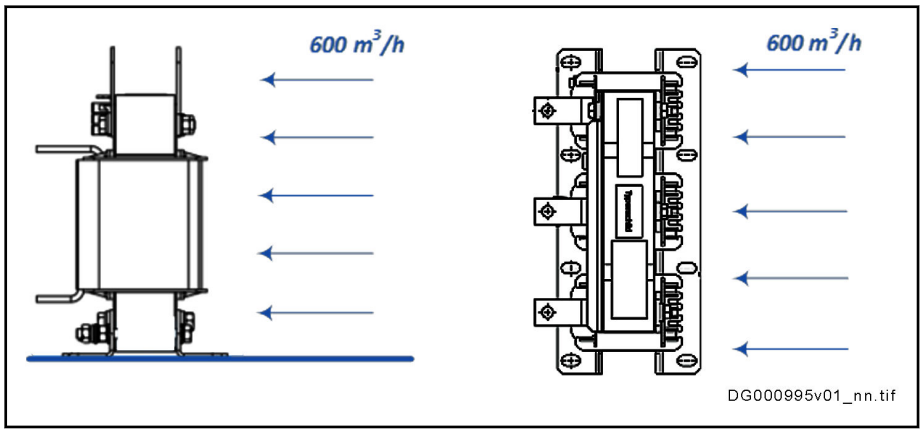


Fig. 8-81: Forced convection (600m³/h)

HML05.1W-D …**-N-690-NNNN** has an additional temperature contact on the core (N/C contact; connected in series with the temperature contact in the winding).

Temperature monitoring contact

- Trigger temperature: 160 °C
- N/C in one of the windings
- Electric switching capacity:
  - 1 A
  - AC 250 V
  - DC 24 V

NOTICE **Thermal overload of the chokes!**

Observe the specified maximum values of **cable and leakage capacitances**. Otherwise, the motor/balancing chokes are thermally overloaded.

The **motor inductance** should not fall significantly below the operating point. For axes connected in parallel via balancing chokes, the motor inductance may be reduced by the corresponding factor.

For **applications with a high continuous load**, thermally gauge the motor/balancing chokes during commissioning. In particular, this applies if all parameters are not reliably known (e.g., motor inductance in the working point).

In case of doubt, install a forced ventilation or use the next bigger size, if the rise of voltage at the motor allows this (bigger size has lower inductance).

Installing a **DC bus choke** does **not** relieve the motor/balancing chokes.

Data for motor chokes for high-speed motors

Designation		Unit	HML05.1F-D200U-N0465-N-500-NNNN
Inductance		µH	200
Nominal voltage		V_{rms}	500
Operating range 1: Active frequency 6 kHz; rotary field frequency 0...600 Hz	Continuous current	A_{rms}	456
	Power dissipation, Dissolution in coolant[1)]	W	≤ 2500
	Power dissipation, Dissolution in air[1)]	W	≤ 1800
Ambient temperature[2)]		°C	≤ 40
Liquid cooling	Inlet temperature	°C	≤ 60
	Flow rate	l/min	≥ 8
	Filling capacity	l	1.9
	Pressure loss	mbar	320 @8 l/min
	Operating pressure	bar	≤ 4
Temperature monitoring		-	1× overtemperature contact 160 °C (N/C contact); 3× Pt100

Designation	Unit	HML05.1F-D200U-N0465-N-500-NNNN
Common-mode damping winding	-	none
Weight	kg	220

1) Assumption for allocation: Ambient temperature: 30 °C; inlet temperature: 50 °C
2) for operation with reduced nominal data up to 55 °C

Tab. 8-65: HML05.1F-…-500-NNN, data

Designation		Unit	HML05.1F-D200U-N0269-N-690-NNNN	HML05.1F-D200U-C0269-N-690-NNNN
Inductance		µH	200	200
Nominal voltage		V_{rms}	780	780
Operating range 1: switching frequency 4–8 kHz; rotary field frequency 0–400 Hz	Continuous current	A_{rms}	269	269
	Power dissipation, dissipation in[1)]	W	≤ 850	≤ 850
	Power dissipation, dissipation in air[1)]	W	≤ 600	≤ 600
Operating range 2: switching frequency 6…8 kHz; rotary field frequency 0…600 Hz	Continuous current	A_{rms}	180	180
	Power dissipation, dissipation in[1)]	W	≤ 350	≤ 350
	Power dissipation, dissipation in air[1)]	W	≤ 250	≤ 250
Operating range 3: switching frequency 8 kHz; rotary field frequency 0…800 Hz	Continuous current	A_{rms}	139	139
	Power dissipation, dissipation in[1)]	W	≤ 300	≤ 300
	Power dissipation, dissipation in air[1)]	W	≤ 200	≤ 200
Ambient temperature[2)]		°C	≤ 40	≤ 40
Liquid cooling	Inlet temperature	°C	≤ 60	≤ 60
	Flow rate	l/min	≥ 6	≥ 6
	Filling capacity	l	3.5	3.5
	Pressure loss	mbar	600 @8 l/min	600 @8 l/min
	Operating pressure	bar	≤ 4	≤ 4

Designation		Unit	HML05.1F-D200U-N0269-N-690-NNNN	HML05.1F-D200U-C0269-N-690-NNNN
Temperature monitoring		-	3× overtemperature contact 160 °C (N/C contact) 1× Pt100	
Common-mode damping winding	Gear ratio (common mode)	-	-	1:1
	Current carrying capacity	A_{rms}	-	16
Weight		kg	115	120

1) Assumption for allocation: Ambient temperature: 30 °C; inlet temperature: 50 °C

2) for operation with reduced nominal data up to 55 °C

Tab. 8-66: HML05.1F-…-690-NNN, data

HML05 to HMU05 assignment

Balancing chokes are required when a higher-power drive controller is formed from multiple HMUs that can be connected in parallel. One balancing choke per HMU motor output.

Also refer to: chapter 4.6.5 "Running multiple HMU05s in parallel" on page 119

HMU05.1N-...-A4-D7	HML05.1W-...-500
F0140-0350	D021U-N0254
F0170-0430	D018U-N0306
F0220-0510	D014U-N0392
F0270-0660	D009U-N0490
F0340-0820	D009U-N0616
F0430-1040	D007U-N0771
F0540-1300	D006U-N1002

Tab. 8-67: HML05.1W-...-500 ↔ HMU05 assignment

HMU05.1N-...-A5-11	HML05.1W-...-690
F0140-0210	D052U-N0147
F0170-0250	D043U-N0177
F0220-0300	D034U-N0227
F0270-0370	D027U-N0284
F0400-0600	D020U-N0374
F0540-0750	D013U-N0581

Tab. 8-68: HML05.1W-...-690 ↔ HMU05 assignment

☞ Motor chokes for **high-speed motors** are not permanently assigned to any HMU.

8.3.6 HLL05 DC bus choke

HLL05 type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	L	L	0	5	.	1	F	-	0	4	M	0	-	S	0	7	2	0	-	N	-	D	7	-	0	1	U	2	-	N	N	N	N								
	①			②			③	④		⑤					⑥	⑦					⑧		⑨			⑩					⑪											

①	**Product:** HLL = DC bus choke
②	**Series:** 05 = 05
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Cooling type, type of construction:** F = Liquid cooling W = Air cooling
⑤	**Nominal inductance:** 01M0 = 1 mH 02M0 = 2 mH 04M0 = 4 mH 500U = 500 µH
⑥	**Additional option:** S = Current-compensated G = Smoothing choke
⑦	**Nominal current:** 0200 = 200 A 0202 = 202 A 0243 = 243 A 0303 = 303 A 0320 = 320 A 0380 = 380 A 0475 = 475 A 0600 = 600 A 0603 = 603 A 0720 = 720 A
⑧	**Degree of protection:** N = IP00
⑨	**Nominal DC bus voltage:** D7 = DC 750 V 11 = DC 1100 V

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	L	L	0	5	.	1	F	-	0	4	M	0	-	S	0	7	2	0	-	N	-	D	7	-	0	1	U	2	-	N	N	N	N							
	①			②			③	④		⑤					⑥	⑦					⑧		⑨			⑩					⑪										
⑩	**Leakage capacitance:** 01U2 = 1.2 µF NNNN = Not relevant																																							
⑪	**Other design:** NNNN = None																																							

Tab. 8-69: HLL05, type code

Nominal current						
0202	0243	0303	0380	0475	0603	0720
✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

*Tab. 8-70: Possible combinations for **liquid-cooled** DC bus chokes HLL05.1F-04M0-S….-N-11-01U2-NNNN*

Nominal current						
0202	0243	0303	0380	0475	0603	0720
✓	-	✓	-	✓	-	-

*Tab. 8-71: Possible combinations for **air-cooled** DC bus chokes HLL05.1W-04M0-S….-N-11-01U2-NNNN*

☞ **Smoothing chokes** HLL05.1x-xxxx-G: See the documentation for the DC/DC controller (IndraDrive ML, DC/DC controller with HMU05, Project Planning Manual R911398286).

Sizing

HMU05.1N-...-A4-D7 An HLL DC bus choke is always necessary if the leakage capacitance of the overall system incl. cable and motor capacitance is greater than **500 nF**.

HMU05.1N-...-A5-11 An HLL DC bus choke is **always** required.

See also chapter 4.3.4 "Leakage capacitances" on page 41.

- Sizing The DC bus choke is sized according to the DC bus current in each drive line.

The lowest DC bus voltage U_{DCmin} that occurs is always used to determine the DC bus current I_{DC}:

$I_{DC} = P_{DC} / U_{DCmin}$

An HLL DC bus choke is always necessary if IndraDrive M (HMS01, HMD01) components are connected to the DC bus.

See chapter "Operating HMU05 together with HMS01/HMD01" on page 44.

Dimensions

HLL05.1W-04M0-S0202

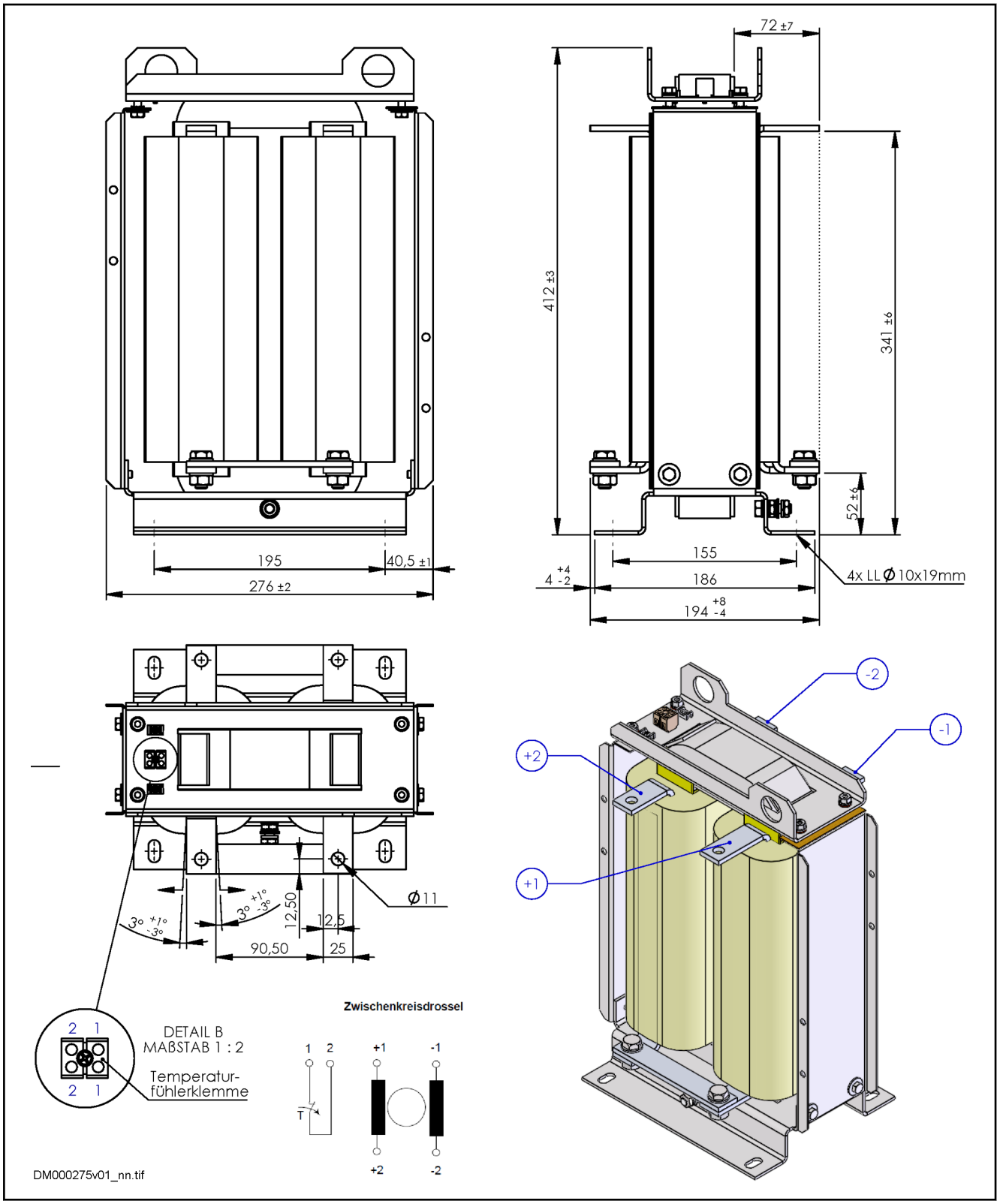


Fig. 8-82: HLL05.1W-04M0-S0202

HLL05.1F-04M0-S0202

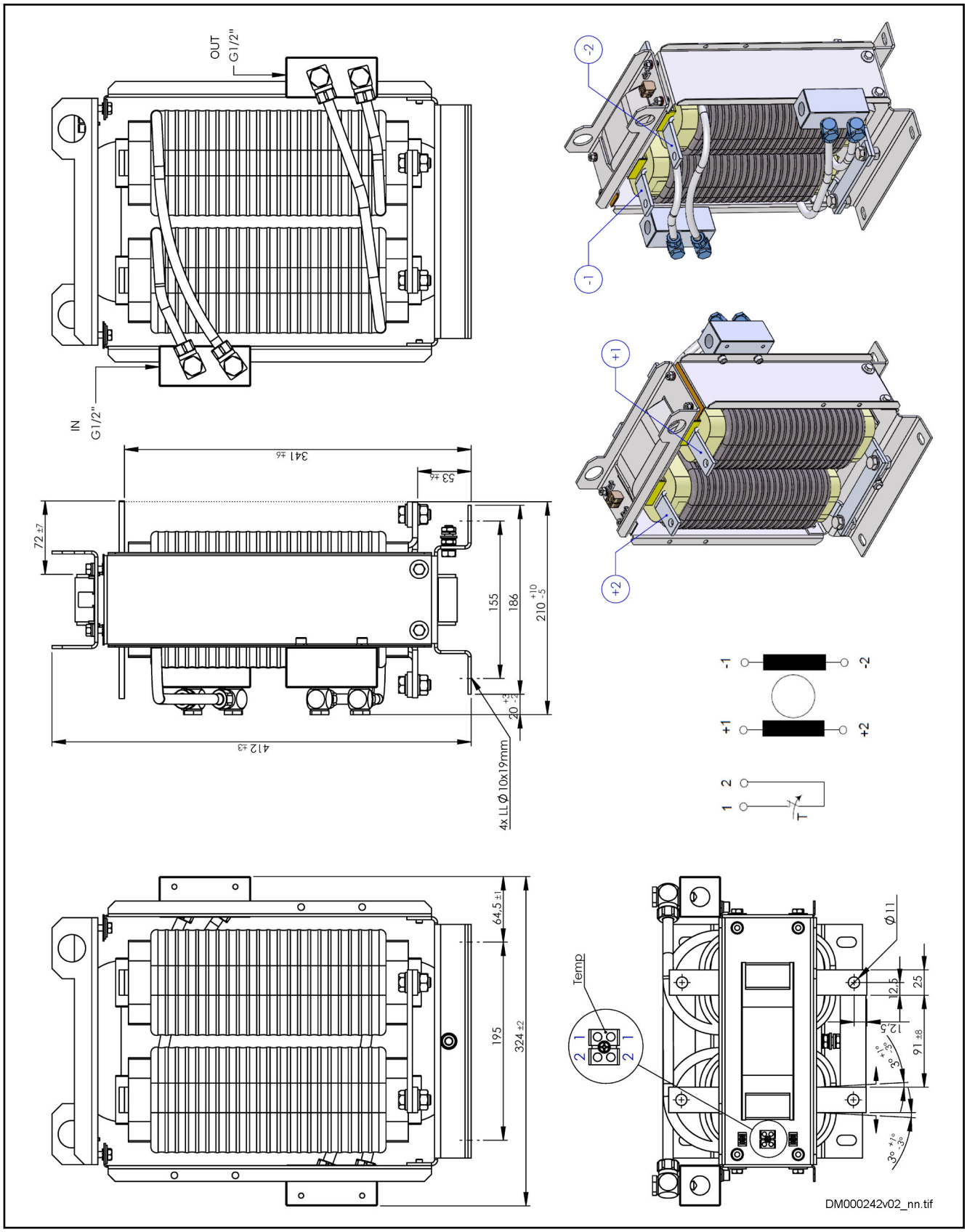


Fig. 8-83: HLL05.1F-04M0-S0202

HLL05.1F-04M0-S0243

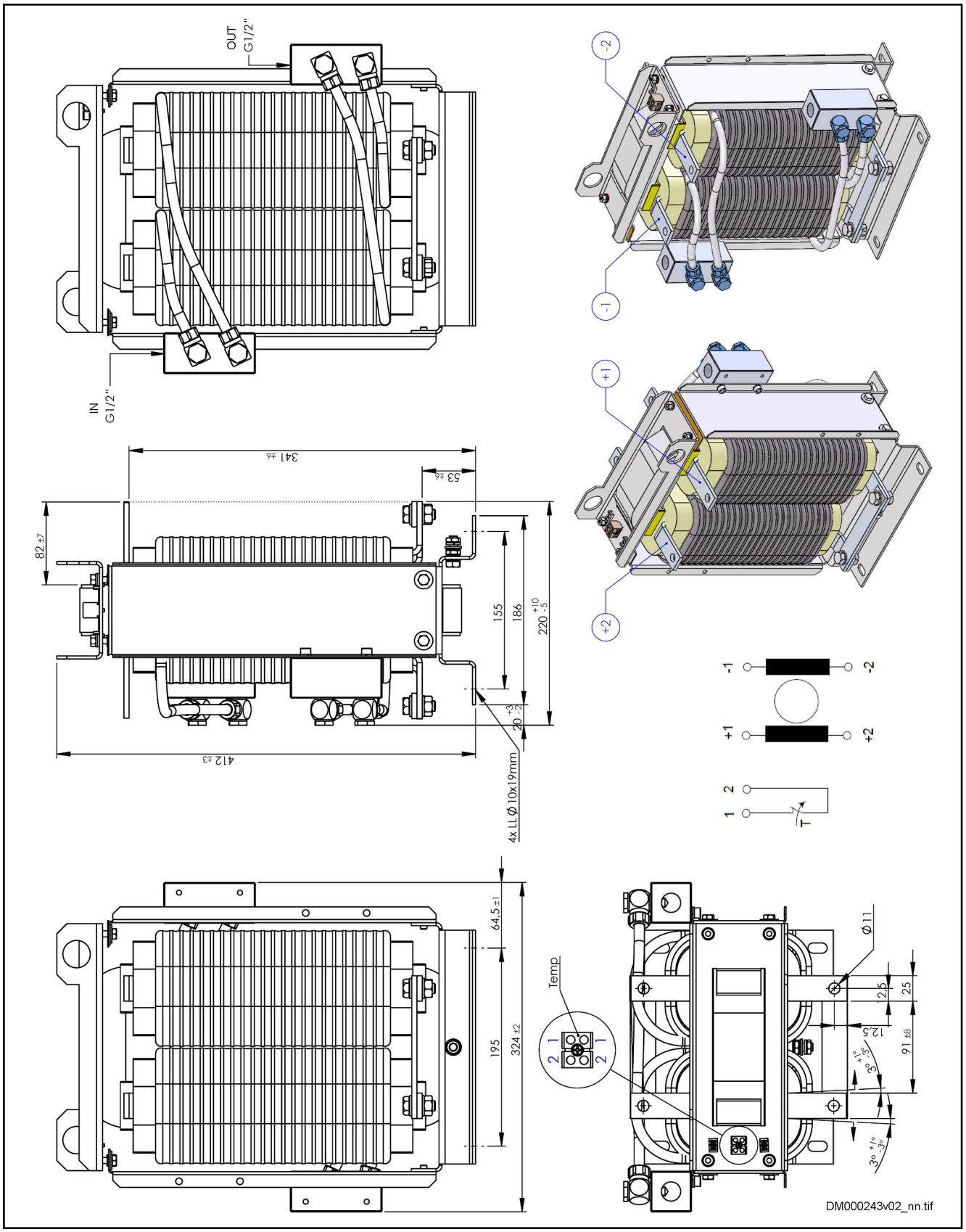


Fig. 8-84: HLL05.1F-04M0-S0243

HLL05.1W-04M0-S0303

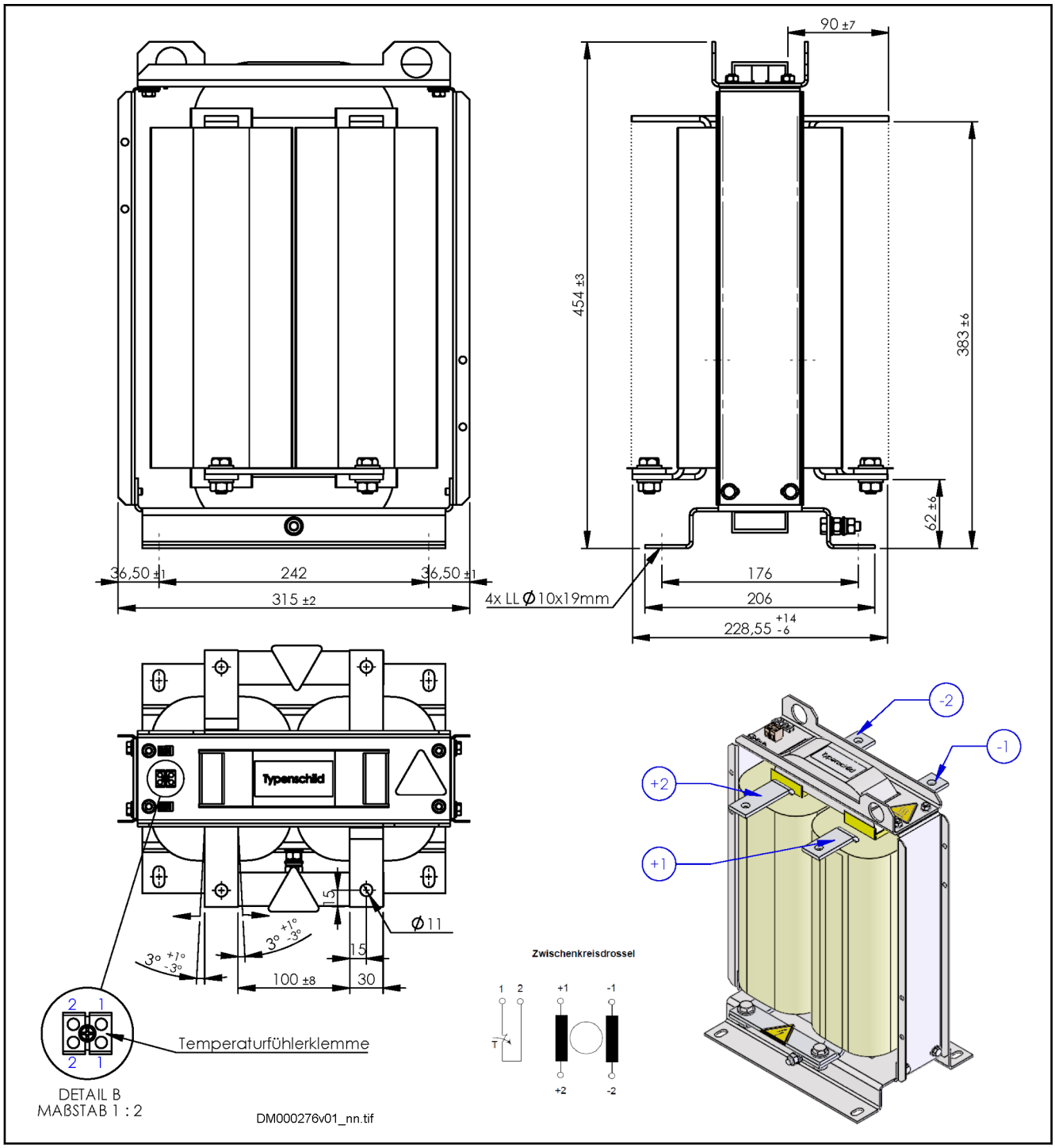


Fig. 8-85: HLL05.1W-04M0-S0303

HLL05.1F-04M0-S0303

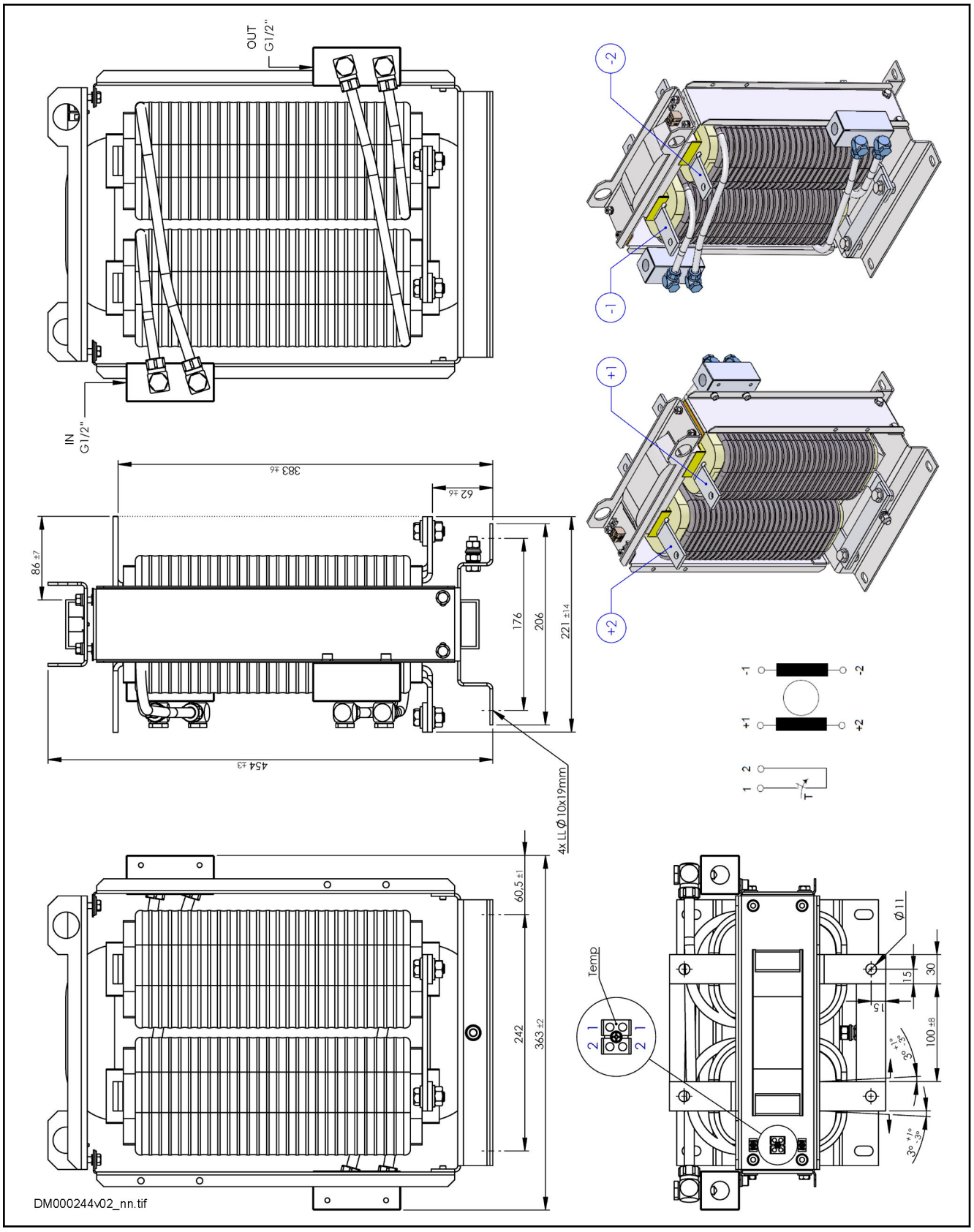


Fig. 8-86: HLL05.1F-04M0-S0303

HLL05.1F-04M0-S0380

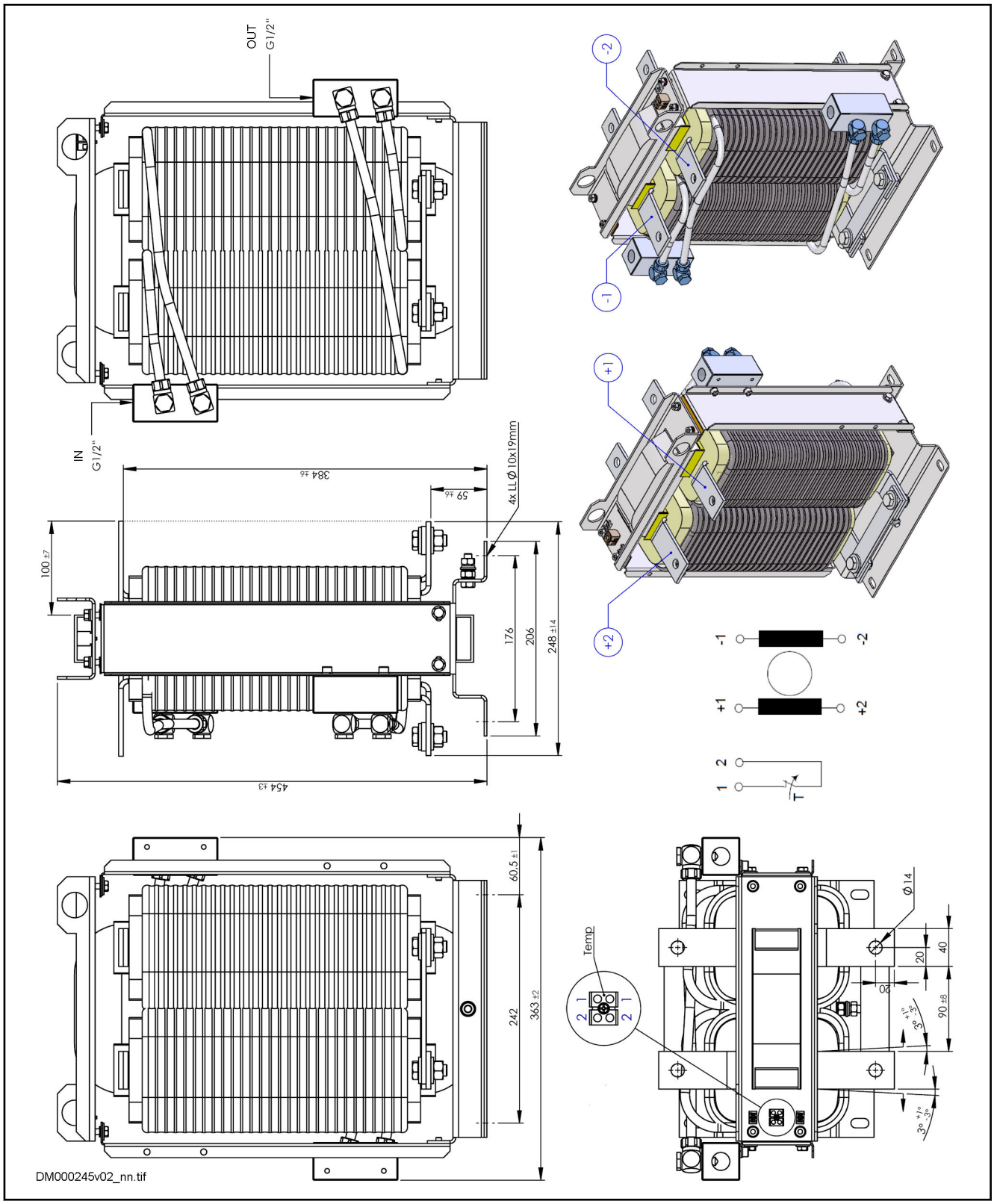


Fig. 8-87: HLL05.1F-04M0-S0380

HLL05.1F-04M0-S0475

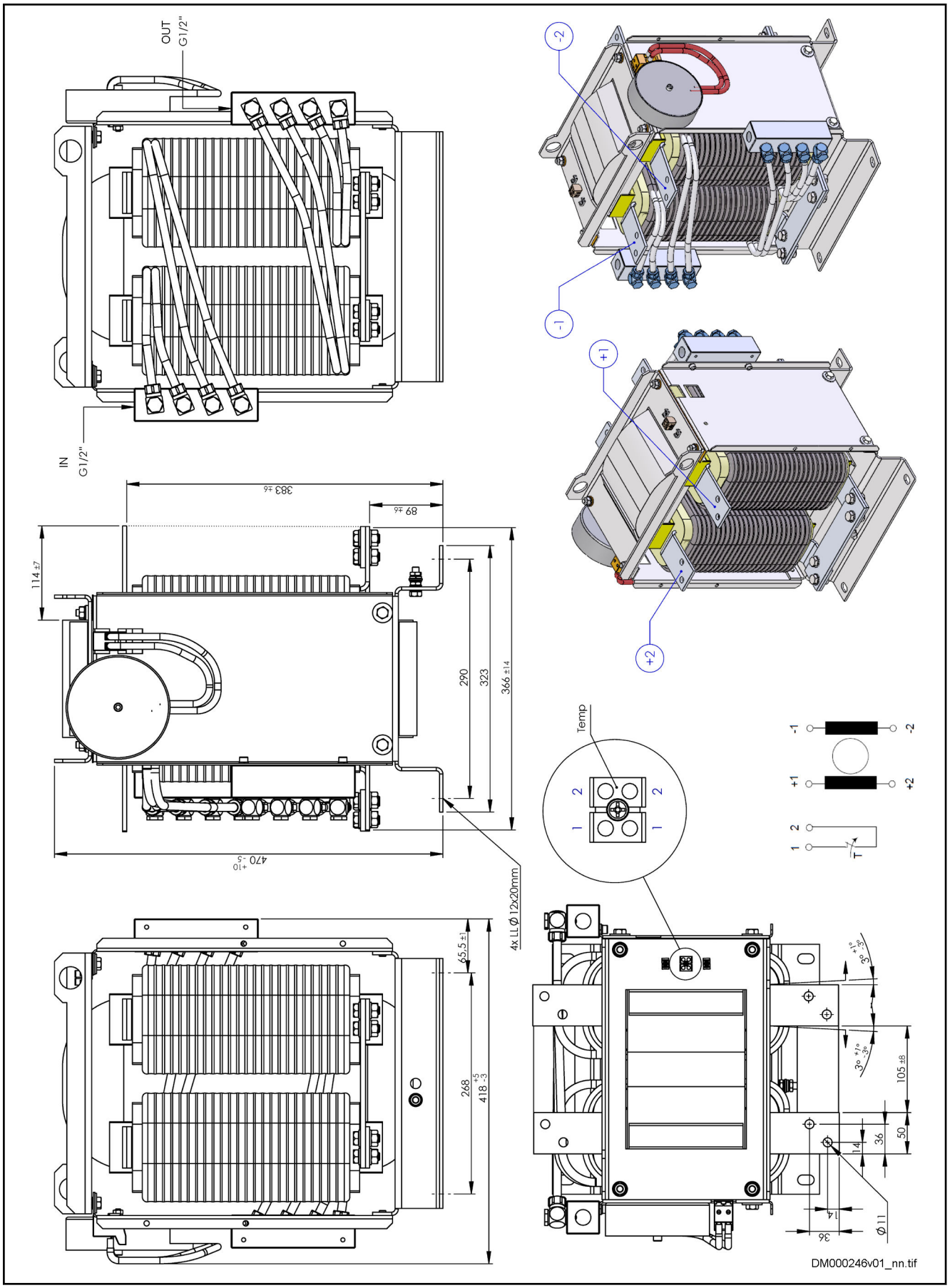


Fig. 8-88: HLL05.1F-04M0-S0475

HLL05.1W-04M0-S0475

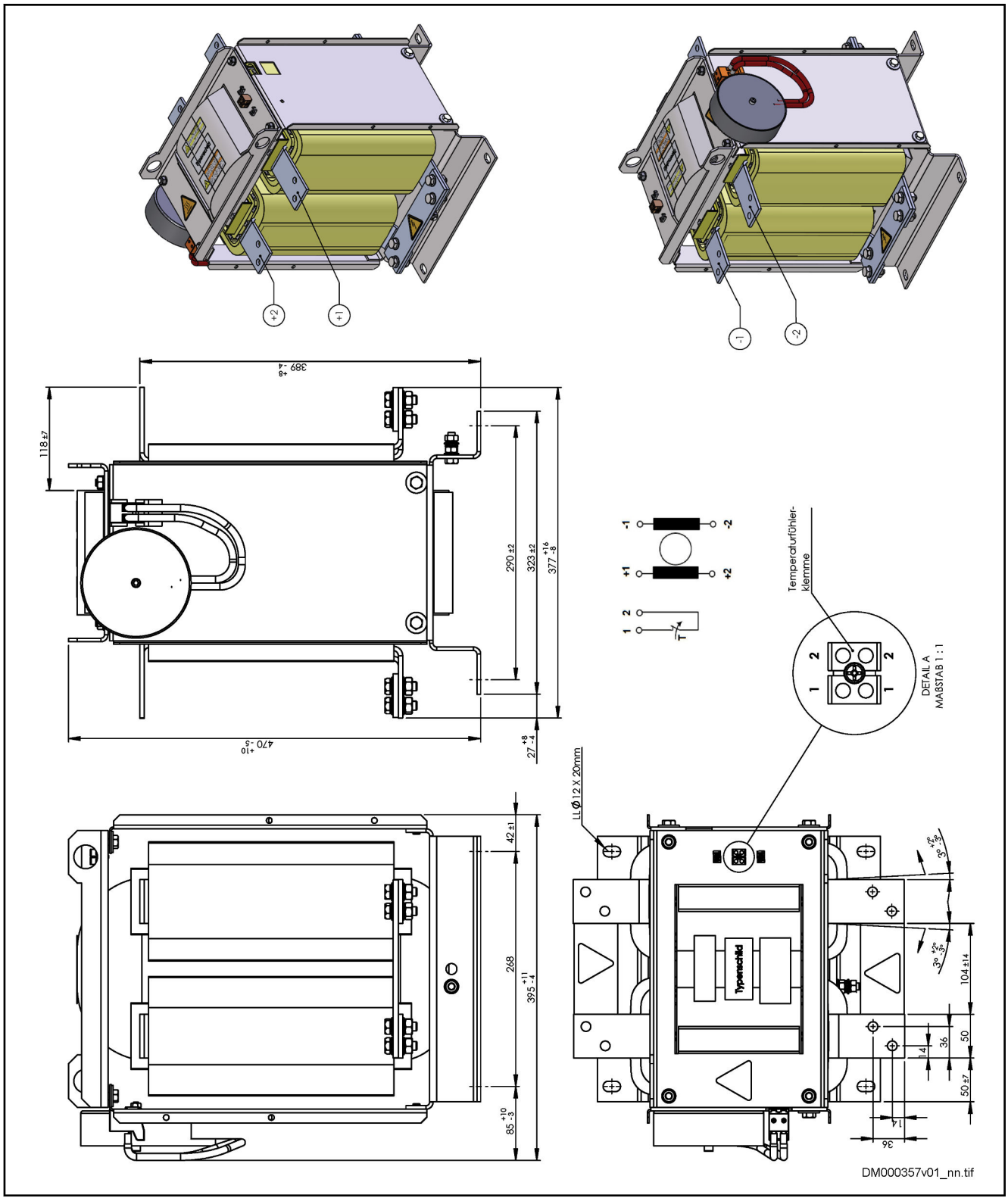


Fig. 8-89: HLL05.1W-04M0-S0475

HLL05.1F-04M0-S0603

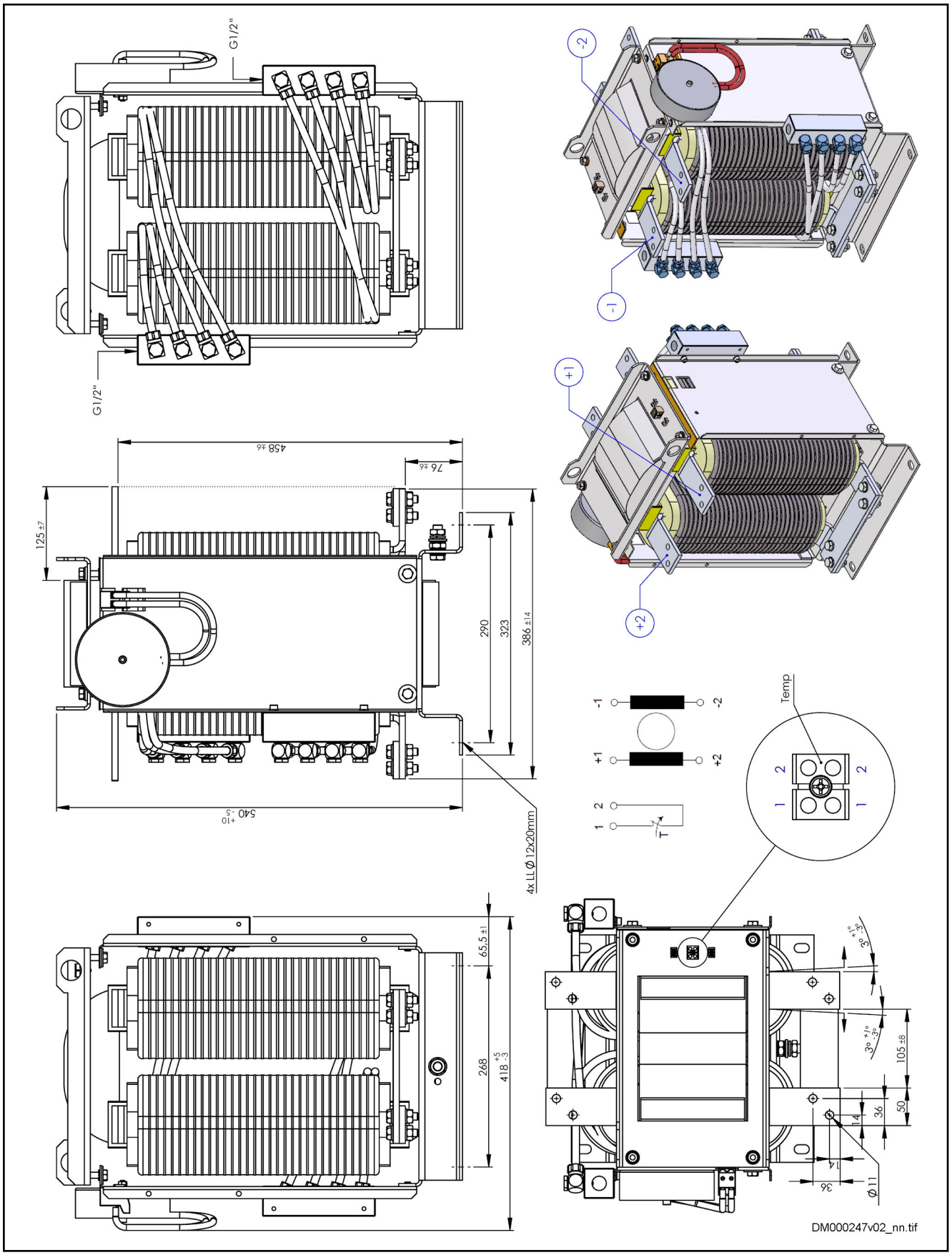


Fig. 8-90: HLL05.1F-04M0-S0603

HLL05.1F-04M0-S0720

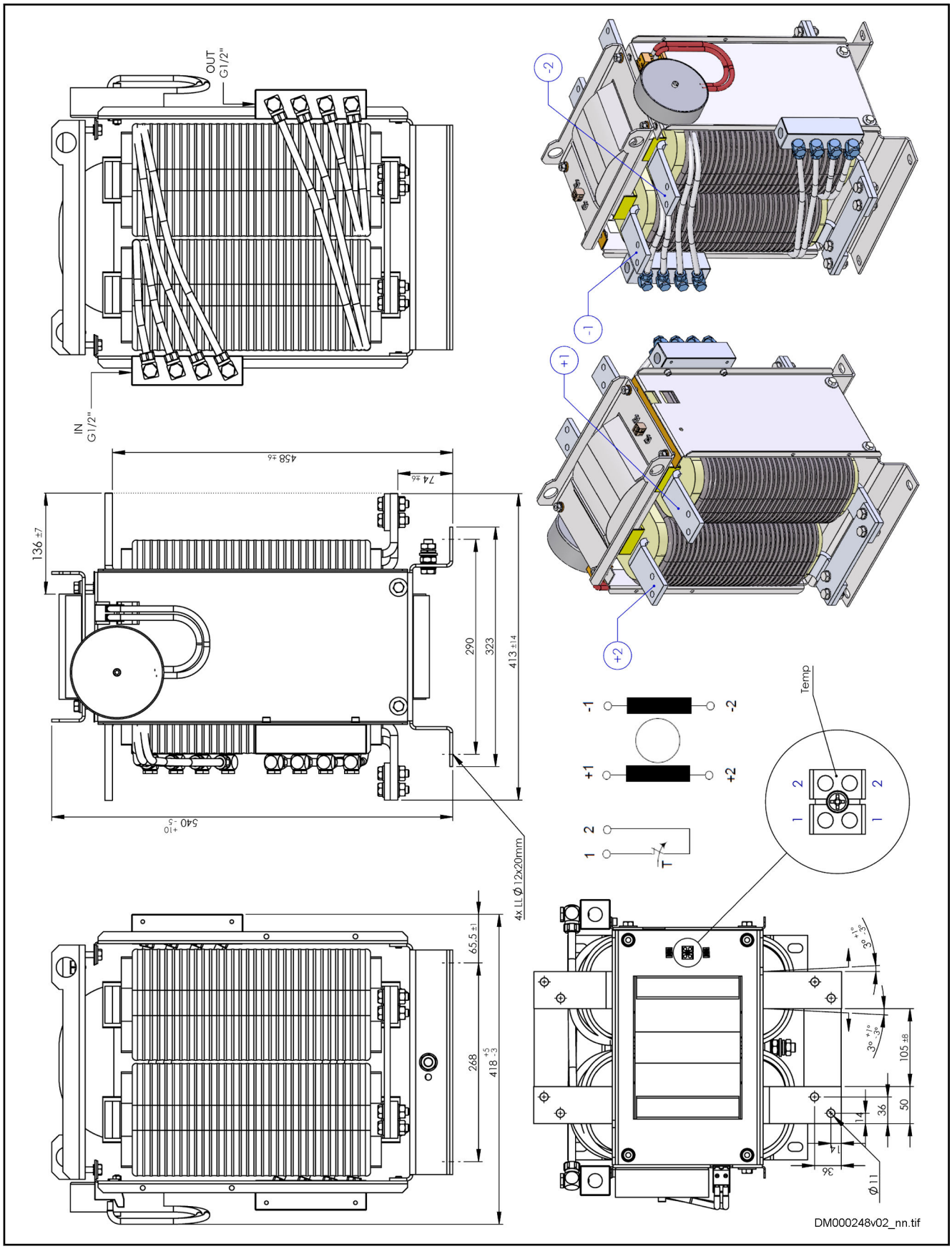


Fig. 8-91: HLL05.1F-04M0-S0720

Data

Choke HLL05.1x -04M0-…-N-11-01U2	Inductance [mH]	U_{DC} = 750 V		U_{DC} = 1100 V		Power dissipation [1] [W]		Weight [kg]
		Continuous current [A]	perm. Leakage capacitance [µF]	Continuous current [A]	perm. Leakage capacitance [µF]	Air	Water	
S0202 (air-cooled)	4	202	1.2	172	0.8	380	-	27
S0202 (water-cooled)	4	202	1.2	172	0.8	230	400	23
S0243 (water-cooled)	4	243	1.2	205	0.8	240	430	25
S0303 (air-cooled)	4	303	1.2	258	0.8	400	-	38
S0303 (water-cooled)	4	303	1.2	258	0.8	270	480	33
S0380 (water-cooled)	4	380	1.2	323	0.8	330	580	36
S0475 (air-cooled)	4	475	1.2	404	0.8	850	-	85
S0475 (water-cooled)	4	475	1.2	404	0.8	420	760	86
S0603 (water-cooled)	4	603	1.2	513	0.8	530	940	98
S0720 (water-cooled)	4	720	1.2	612	0.8	540	960	110

1) At an ambient temperature of 30 °C and a water supply temperature of 50 °C

Tab. 8-72: HLL05.1, data

Temperature monitoring contact

- Trigger temperature: 160 °C
- N/C in one of the windings
- Electric switching capacity:
  - 1 A
  - AC 250 V
  - DC 24 V

Water cooling

Requirements

- maximum ambient temperature: 40 °C (with derating: 55 °C)
- maximum inlet water temperature: 60 °C
- Maximum operating pressure: 4 bar

HLL05.1F-04M0-…-N-11	Flow rate [l/min]	Filling capacity [l]	Pressure drop [bar]				
			5 l/min	6 l/min	7 l/min	8 l/min	9 l/min
S0202	≥ 6	0.7	0.09	0.13	0.17	0.22	0.27
S0243	≥ 6	0.8	0.10	0.14	0.18	0.23	0.28
S0303	≥ 6	1.0	0.12	0.17	0.22	0.28	0.35
S0380	≥ 6	1.1	0.14	0.19	0.25	0.32	0.40
S0475	≥ 6	1.2	0.01	0.02	0.03	0.04	0.04
S0603	≥ 8	1.7	0.02	0.03	0.04	0.05	0.06
S0720	≥ 8	1.9	0.02	0.03	0.04	0.05	0.06

Tab. 8-73: Water cooling

Mounting

Allowed mounting position: vertical

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

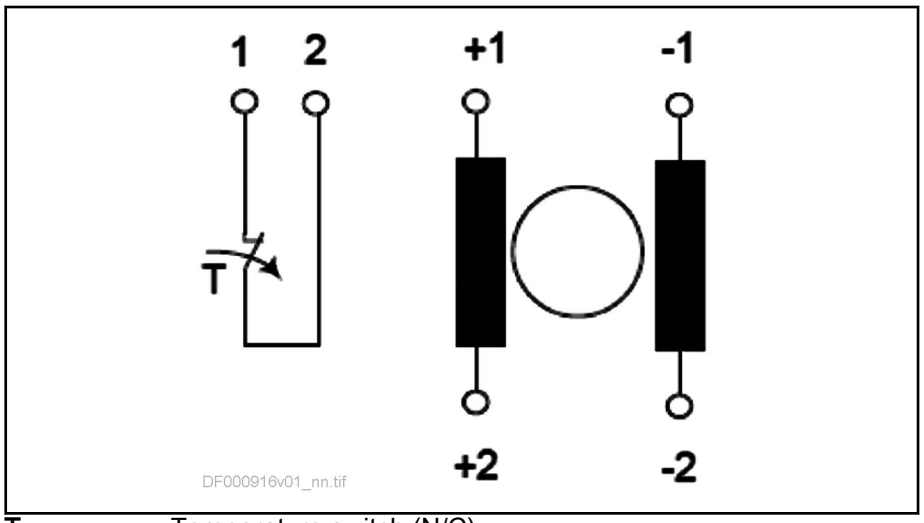
Degree of protection of the component: **IP00**

Mount a **touch guard**!

☞ The components are dimensioned for operation in the control cabinet and may have a sound pressure level > 85 dBA.

When mounting the component outside a closed control cabinet, install a suitable noise protection.

Circuit diagram



T Temperature switch (N/C)
+1 +2, -1 -2 DC bus connection
Fig. 8-92: Circuit diagram

The DC bus connections of the choke may be switched **on both sides**.

Connection

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

Before working with live parts: Disconnect the system and secure power switch against unintentional or unauthorized reconnection.

Make sure voltage has fallen below 50 V before touching live parts!

Before accessing the device, wait at least **30 minutes** after switching off the supply voltages to allow **discharging**.

When using DC bus ground capacitor pairs, the discharge time **to ground** may exceed 30 minutes.

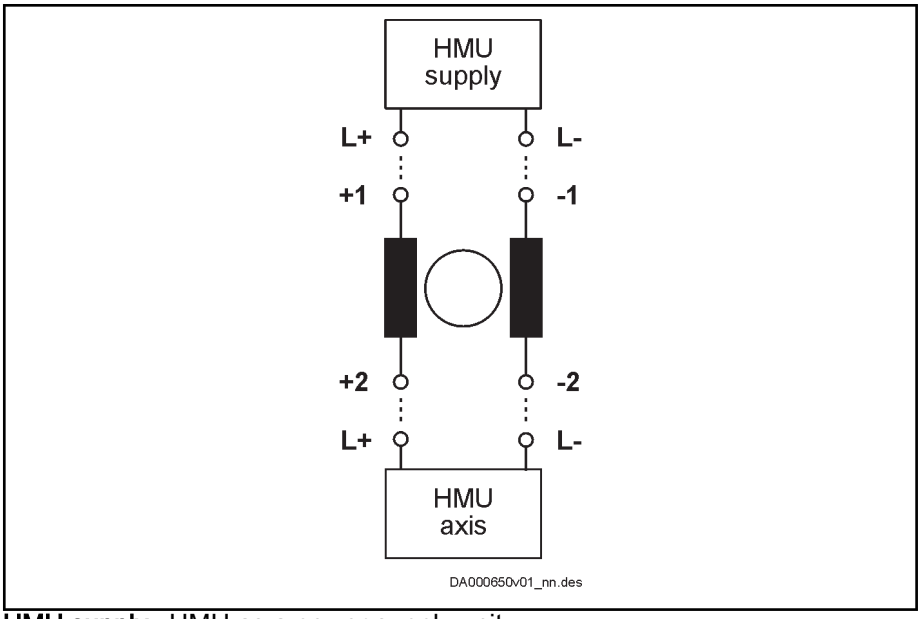
Mount a **touch guard**!

⚠ WARNING **Risk of burns and damage by hot surfaces!**

Chokes reach high temperatures during operation.

Let the choke cool down before working with the choke. Wear safety gloves.

Route cables and coolant hoses at a sufficient distance from the choke. Cables or hoses must not come into contact with the choke's sheet metal frame.



HMU supply HMU as a power supply unit
HMU axis HMU as a drive controller
Fig. 8-93: Wiring diagram

DC bus chokes should **not** be simultaneously connected in parallel at the input and at the output.

⚠ WARNING **High electrical voltage! Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock or serious bodily injury! Risk of burns!**

The bus bars of an DC bus choke carry high voltages and get hot.

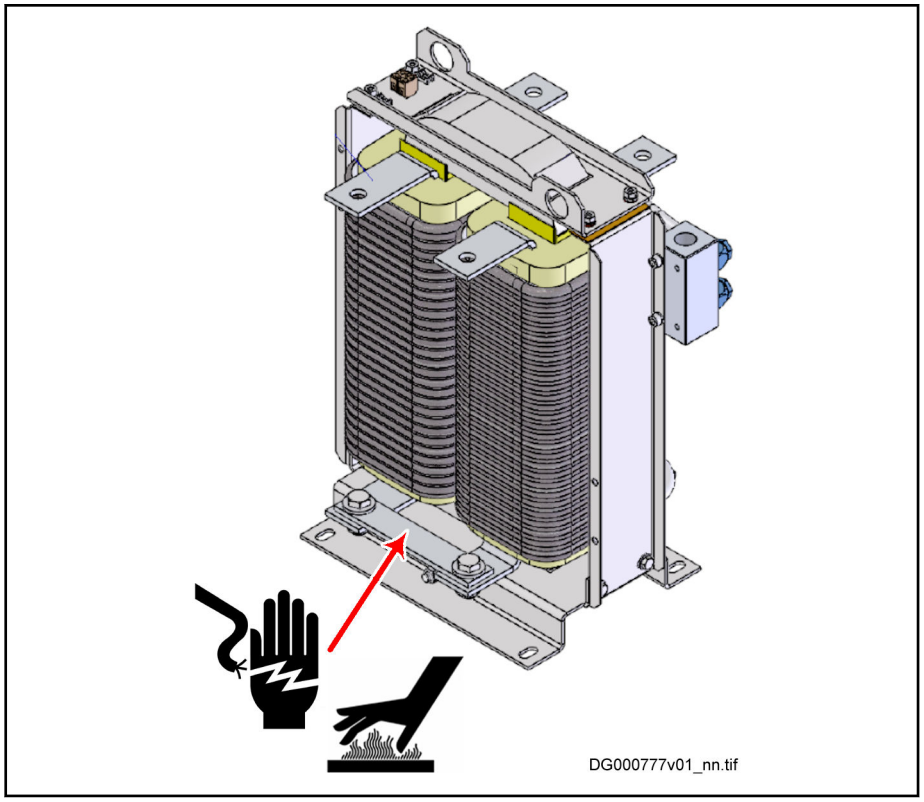


Fig. 8-94: DC bus choke

HLL05.1…	Connection points
W-04M0-S0202…	Aluminum contact point [1]; hole: 11 mm
F-04M0-S0202…	
F-04M0-S0243…	
W-04M0-S0303…	
F-04M0-S0303…	
F-04M0-S0380…	Aluminum contact point [1]; hole: 14 mm
W-04M0-S0475…	Aluminum contact point [1]; hole: 2 × 11 mm
F-04M0-S0475…	
F-04M0-S0603…	
F-04M0-S0720…	

1) Use cupal disks for the aluminum contact point connection: See chapter 11.6 "Aluminum contact points and cupal disks" on page 641.

Tab. 8-74: Connection points

HLL05 to HMU05 assignment

HLL05		HMU05.1N-…-A4-D7						
		F0140-0350	F0170-0430	F0220-0510	F0270-0660	F0340-0820	F0430-1040	F0540-1300
HLL05.1x-04M0-…-N-11	S0202							
	S0243	✓						
	S0303		✓					
	S0380			✓				
	S0475				✓			
	S0603					✓		
	S0720						✓	

Tab. 8-75: HLL05 ↔ HMU05.1N-…-A4-D7 assignment

HLL05		HMU05.1N-…-A5-11					
		F0140-0210	F0170-0250	F0220-0300	F0270-0370	F0400-0600	F0540-0750
HLL05.1x-04M0-…-N-11	S0202	✓					
	S0243		✓				
	S0303			✓			
	S0380				✓		
	S0475						
	S0603					✓	
	S0720						✓

Tab. 8-76: HLL05 ↔ HMU05.1N-…-A5-11 assignment

☞ HLL05 DC bus chokes must only be operated in conjunction with **DC bus ground capacitor pairs (HAS04.1-003)**.

8.3.7 DC bus ground capacitor pair (HAS04.1-003)

Type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	A	S	0	4	.	1	-	0	0	1	-	N	N	N	-	N	N																								
	①			②			③			④			⑤				⑥																									

①	**Product:** HAS = IndraDrive accessories
②	**Series:** 04 = Capacitor
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Capacitor:** 001 = 2 × 470 nF (HCS02.x) 002 = 2 × 470 nF (HCS03.x) 003 = 2 × 2.5 µF (HLL05)
⑤	**Other contents:** NNN = None NN1 = Without discharging resistors
⑥	**Other design:** NN = None

Tab. 8-77: HAS04, type code

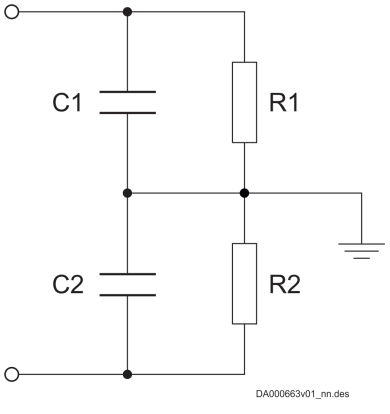
Data

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

Always wait **30 minutes** after switching off power to allow live capacitors to discharge before accessing an electrical component. Measure the electrical voltage of live parts before beginning to work to make sure that the equipment is safe to touch. Measure the electrical voltage both conductor against conductor and conductor against ground (PE).

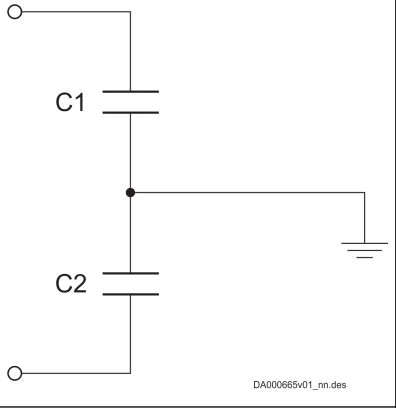
Particularly if **DC bus ground capacitor pairs without discharging resistors (HAS04.1-003-NN1-NN)** are used, dangerous voltages against ground may be present for more than **24 hours** after the power supply was switched off. Only when voltage cannot be measured anymore between the positive and the negative DC bus connections is it allowed to discharge the DC bus ground capacitor pairs against ground. For this purpose, use the appropriate high-resistance device (e.g., DUSPOL® by "Benning Elektrotechnik und Elektronik GmbH & Co. KG"; observe the Operating Manual!).

HAS04.1-003-NNN-NN (with discharging resistors)

Designation	Unit	Value	Circuit diagram	Degree of protection
Voltage	V	AC 500		IP00
		DC 1200		
		Superposition AC, DC $1.4 \times U_{eff,AC} + U_{DC} \leq 1200$ V f ≤ 1 kHz		
Maximum current (f ≥ 10 kHz)	A_{rms}	2 × 30		
Capacitance	µF	2 × 2.5 ±20%		
Discharging resistances	MΩ	2 × 10		

Tab. 8-78: Data, HAS04.1-003-NNN-NN

HAS04.1-003-NN1-NN (without discharging resistors)

Designation	Unit	Value	Circuit diagram	Degree of protection
Voltage	V	AC 550		IP00
		DC 1500		
		Superposition AC, DC $1.4 \times U_{eff,AC} + U_{DC} \leq 1500$ V f ≤ 1 kHz		
Maximum current (f ≥ 10 kHz)	A_{rms}	2 × 30		
Capacitance	µF	2 × 2.5 ±20%		

Tab. 8-79: Data, HAS04.1-003-NN1-NN

If **no IT network** is available, always use DC bus grounding capacitor pairs **with** discharge resistors (HAS04.1-003-**NNN**-NN)!

In **IT systems**, there are scenarios in which insulation monitoring does not allow for discharge resistors to ground. For this purpose, there are DC bus ground capacitor pairs **without** discharging resistors (HAS04.1-003-NN**1**-NN).

Depending on when the insulation monitor is activated and on the state of the system at the time of shutdown, a dangerous voltage to ground may remain present for a long time after shutdown if DC bus grounding capacitor banks without discharge resistors are used. If necessary, external discharge resistors should be provided, which are activated via a contactor as soon as the insulation monitoring is deactivated. As a compromise, higher external discharge resistors that are permanently connected can also be used. The applicable regulations and standards have to be complied with.

Place the provided warning label in a clearly visible location near the DC bus connections.

For IT systems, verify on a case-by-case basis whether the condition for voltage "AC, DC superposition" is met for the required fault scenarios (e.g., continued operation for a limited time in the event of a network-side ground fault) (see tab. 8-78 "Data, HAS04.1-003-NNN-NN" on page 332, tab. 8-79 "Data, HAS04.1-003-NN1-NN" on page 332).

In IT networks, HAS04.1-003-NNN-NN should be used whenever possible, provided that insulation monitoring and electric strength allow it!

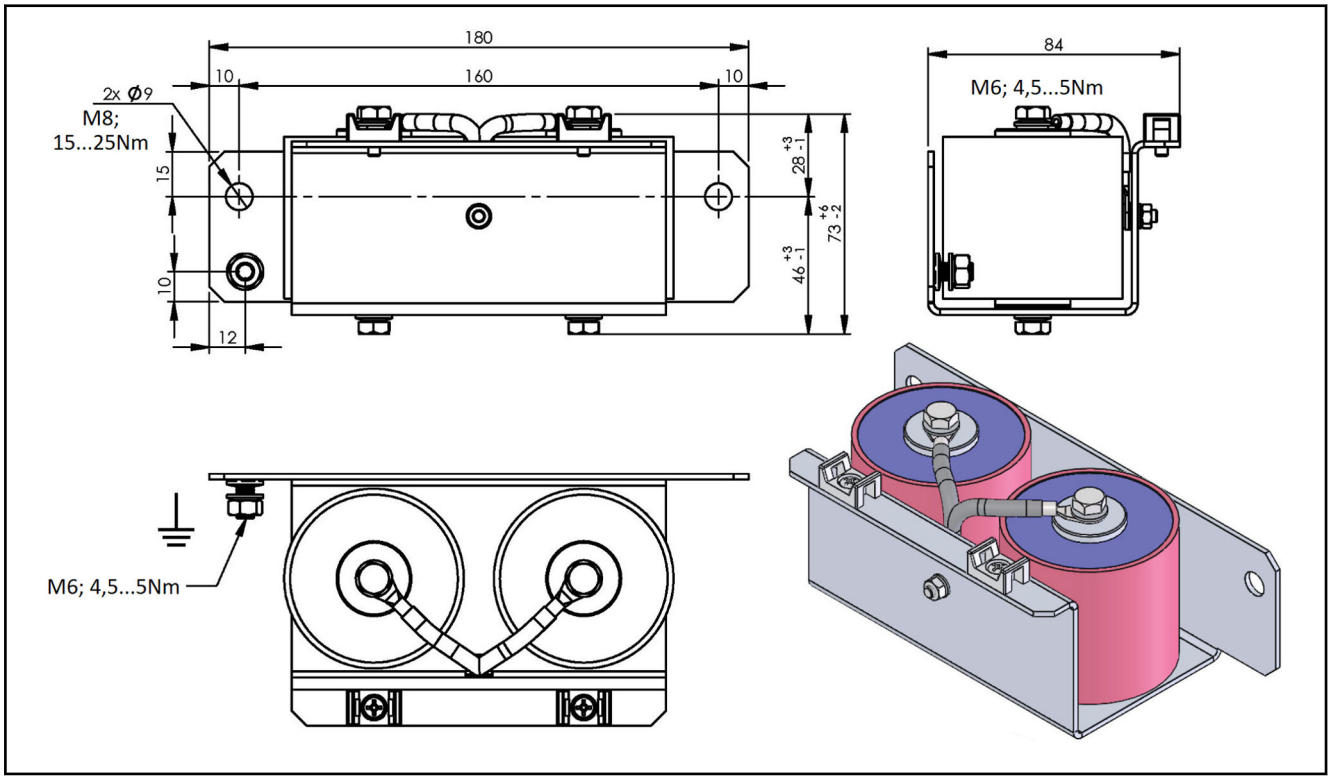


Fig. 8-95: HAS04.1-003-NNN-NN (with discharging resistors); dimensions

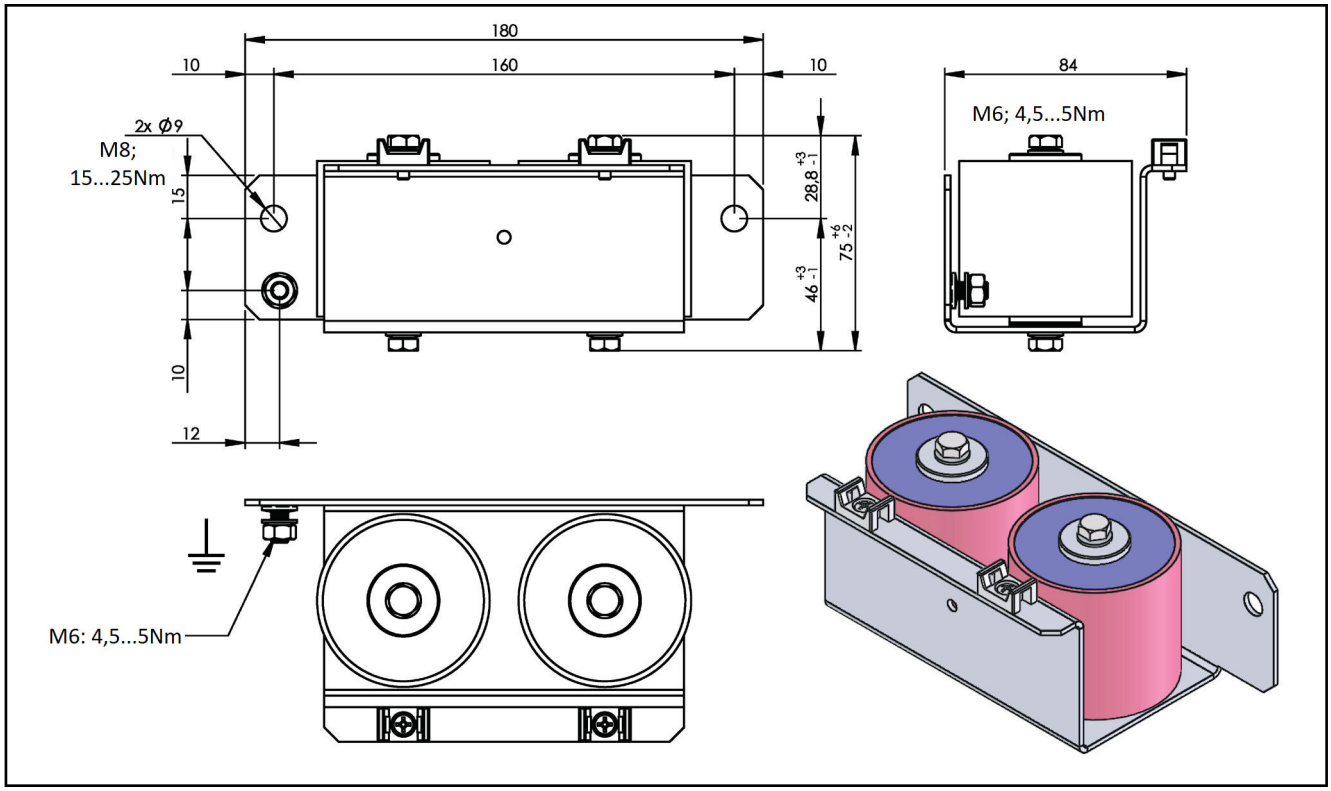


Fig. 8-96: HAS04.1-003-NN1-NN (without discharging resistors); dimensions

Mounting

⚠ WARNING **High ground leakage current! Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock!**

Always operate the component with the connected **equipment grounding conductor**!

Mounting the DC bus ground capacitor pairs

- Mount them as near as possible to the DC bus bars of the inverters.
- Mount the housing directly to the grounded back panel of the control cabinet. Make sure the connection is highly conductive.

  Screws: M8; tightening torque: 15 … 25 Nm
- Allowed mounting position: arbitrary
- Connect the DC bus ground capacitor pairs using cables as short as possible (length: < 30 cm; cross-sectional area: 25 mm^2) to the L+ and L- terminals of the DC bus bar.

  Connection: M6; tightening torque: 4,5 … 5 Nm
- Ground the DC bus grounding capacitor pairs at the grounding point using a copper conductor with a cross-sectional area of at least 10 mm^2
- Install the touch protection for the DC bus connections
- Each pair of DC bus grounding capacitors—HAS04.1-003-NN**1**-NN (version without discharge resistors) comes with an additional warning label. The warning notice indicates that the **entire** DC bus carries a charge, even to ground.

Place the individual warning labels in a clearly visible location near the DC bus connections (e.g., protective covers, HMU connections, DC bus choke).

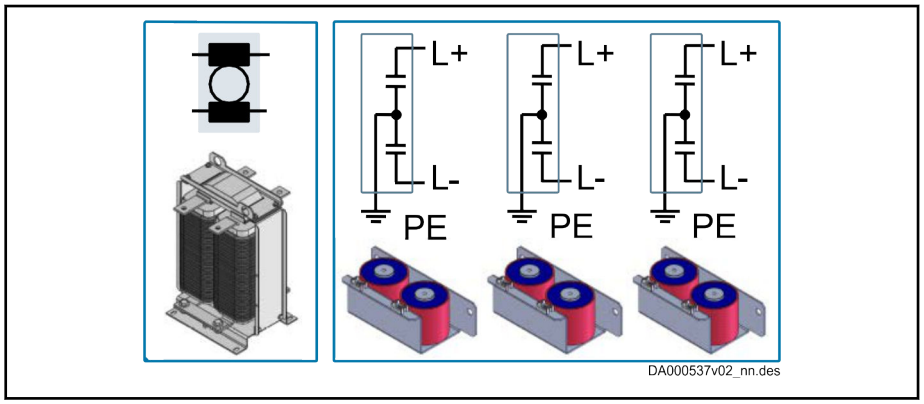
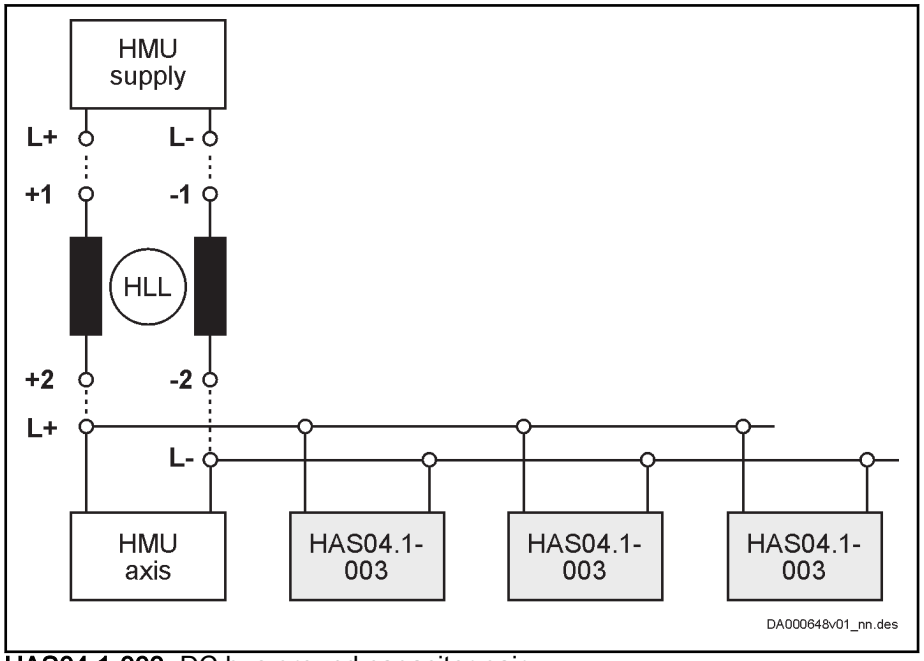


Fig. 8-97: HLL DC bus choke (left) and 3 pairs of DC bus ground capacitors (right)



HAS04.1-003 DC bus ground capacitor pair
HLL DC bus choke
HMU supply HMU as a power supply unit
HMU axis HMU as a drive controller

Fig. 8-98: Connection

See also chapter "DC bus choke, DC bus ground capacitor pairs" on page 42.

8.3.8 HLR05 external braking resistor

HLR05 type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	L	R	0	5	.	1	W	-	5	4	K	0	-	N	0	5	R	4	-	A	-	D	7	-	N	N	N	N												
	①			②			③	④		⑤					⑥	⑦					⑧		⑨			⑩															

①	**Product:** HLR = Braking resistor
②	**Series:** 05 = 05
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Cooling type, type of construction:** W = Air cooling
⑤	**Continuous power:** 54K0 = 54 kW [1)] 70K0 = 70 kW [2)]
⑥	**Additional option:** N = None
⑦	**Resistance value:** 04R0 = 4.0 ohm [2)] 05R4 = 5.4 ohm [1)]
⑧	**Degree of protection:** A = IP20
⑨	**Nominal DC bus voltage:** D7 = DC 750 V [1) 2)] 11 = DC 1100 V
⑩	**Other design:** NNNN = None

1) "54K0" continuous power only with "05R4" resistance value and "D7" nominal DC bus voltage

2) "70K0" continuous power only with "04R0" resistance value and "D7" nominal DC bus voltage

Tab. 8-80: HLR05, type code

Dimensions

HLR05.1W-54K0-N05R4, …-70K0-N04R0

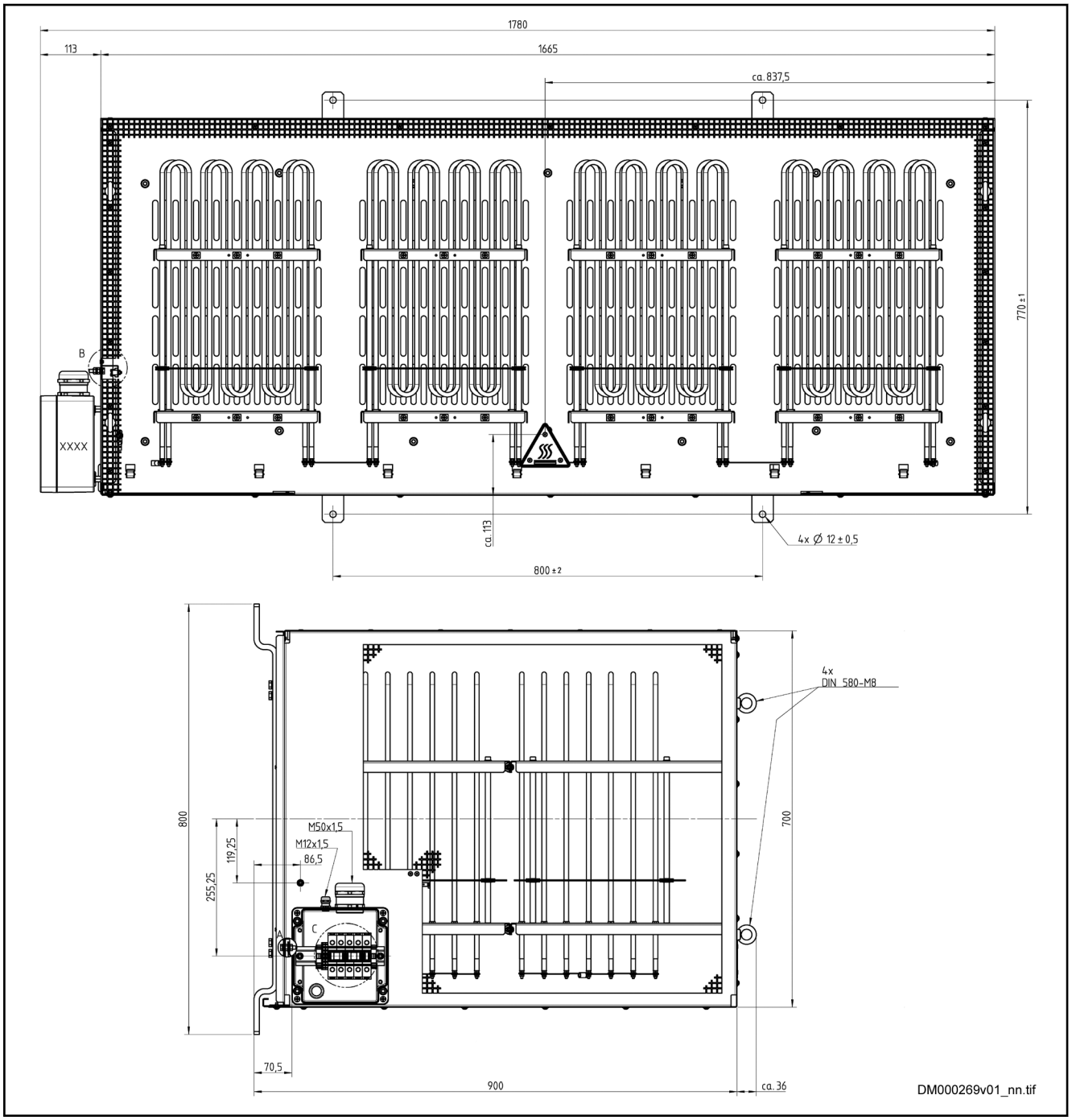


Fig. 8-99: HLR05.1W-54K0-N05R4, …-70K0-N04R0; dimensions in mm

Data

Description	Unit	HLR05.1W-…	
		54K0-N05R4	70K0-N04R0
Resistance	Ω	5.4 ±10%	4 ±10%
Continuous power	kW	54	70
820 V_{DC} peak power	kW	124	168
820 V_{DC} duty cycle peak power (120 s max. cycle)	%	38	41
Maximum energy absorption	kWs	6500	8400
Weight	kg	145	145
Power connections cross section	mm^2	25	35

Tab. 8-81: HLR05.1W, data

Installation

NOTICE **Property damage due to temperatures higher than 105 °C!**

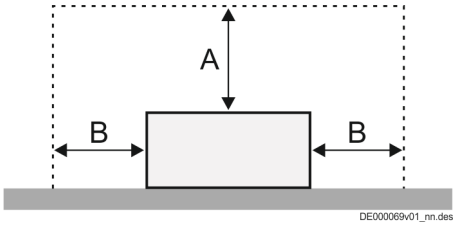
Observe the indicated minimum distances!

Above the devices there may only be such materials which

- are not combustible
- are insensitive to the occurring high temperatures

Mounting

- Mounting position: Upright on horizontal surfaces
  Do not mount on walls!
- Surface temperatures can reach 150 °C.
- Ensure unhindered entry of cooling air
- Ensure unhindered exit of heated air
- Do not mount below fire alarm sensors
- Do not mount near flammable materials
- Minimum distance to non-flammable, heat-sensitive components:



A: 1000 mm

B: 600 mm

Cables

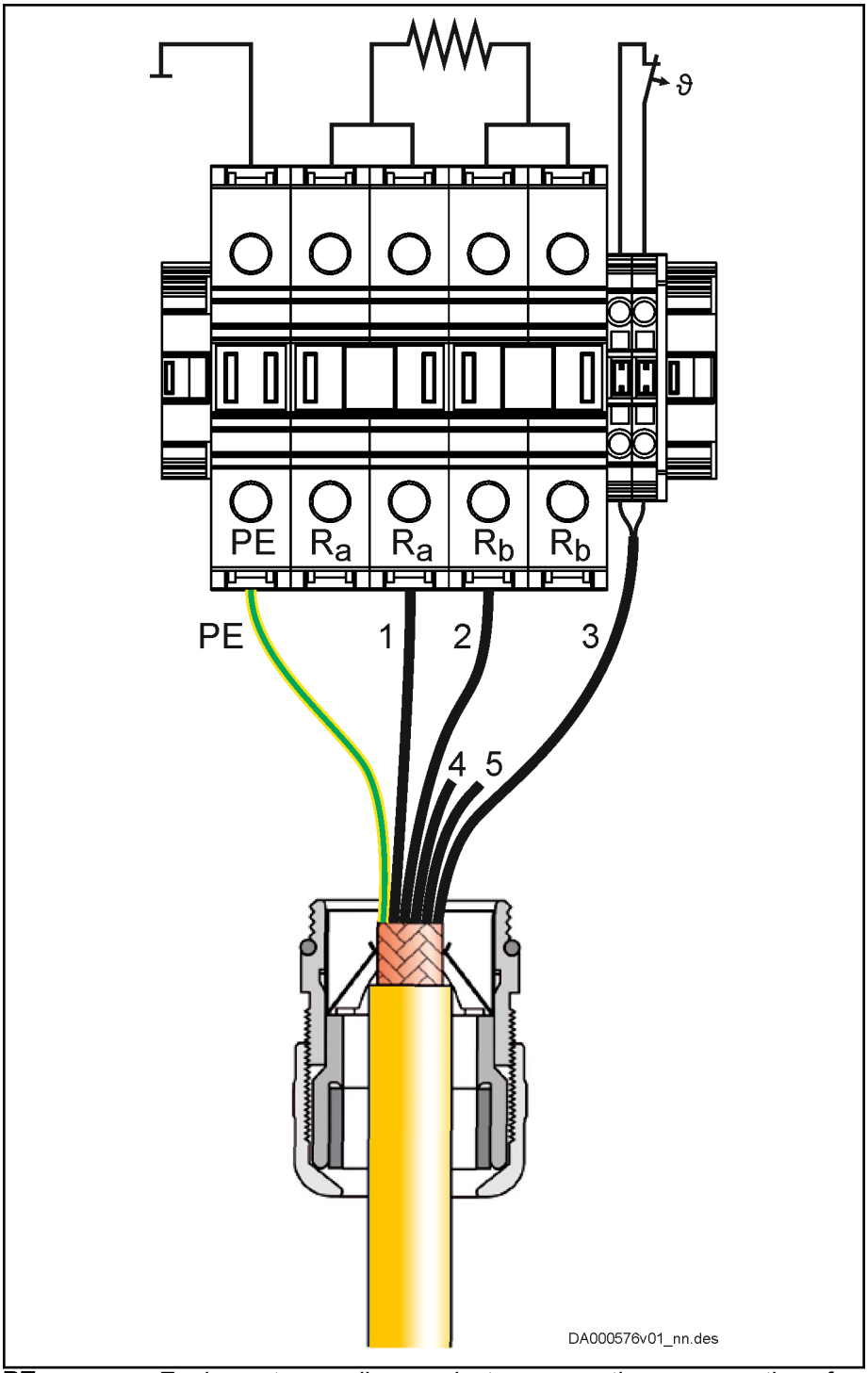
- Length: ≤ 100 m
- Keep supply and return lines in parallel and as close together as possible or twist them
- Place cables away from signal and data lines
- Place so they are protected against short-circuiting and ground faults

You can use Rexroth cables:

HLR05.1W-…	Cables
54K0-N05R4	INK0607, mat. no.: R911245289
70K0-N04R0	INK0667, mat. no.: R911245292

Tab. 8-82: Cables

Connection point



PE	Equipment grounding conductor; connection cross section of terminal: 6…35 mm^2
1	Stranded wire for HLT terminal connector XD4a; connection cross section of HLR terminal: 6…35 mm^2
2	Stranded wire for HLT terminal connector XD4b; connection cross section of HLR terminal: 6…35 mm^2
3	Stranded wires for HLT terminal connector XG3; connection cross section of HLR terminal: 0.25…2.5 mm^2
4	Wire not used

5	Filler strand not used

Fig. 8-100: Connection point

8.3.9 HLT05 braking unit

HLT05 type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	L	T	0	5	.	1	W	-	1	0	5	K	-	N	-	D	7	-	N	N	N	N																		
	①			②			③	④		⑤					⑥		⑦			⑧																					

①	**Product:** HLT = Braking unit
②	**Series:** 05 = 05
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Cooling type, type of construction:** W = Air cooling
⑤	**Nominal power:** 045K = 45 kW [1)] 105K = 105 kW 245K = 245 kW [1)]
⑥	**Degree of protection:** N = IP00
⑦	**Nominal DC bus voltage:** D7 = DC 750 V [1)] 11 = DC 1100 V
⑧	**Other design:** NNNN = None NNN1 = braking resistor switch-on threshold, DC 780 V [2)]

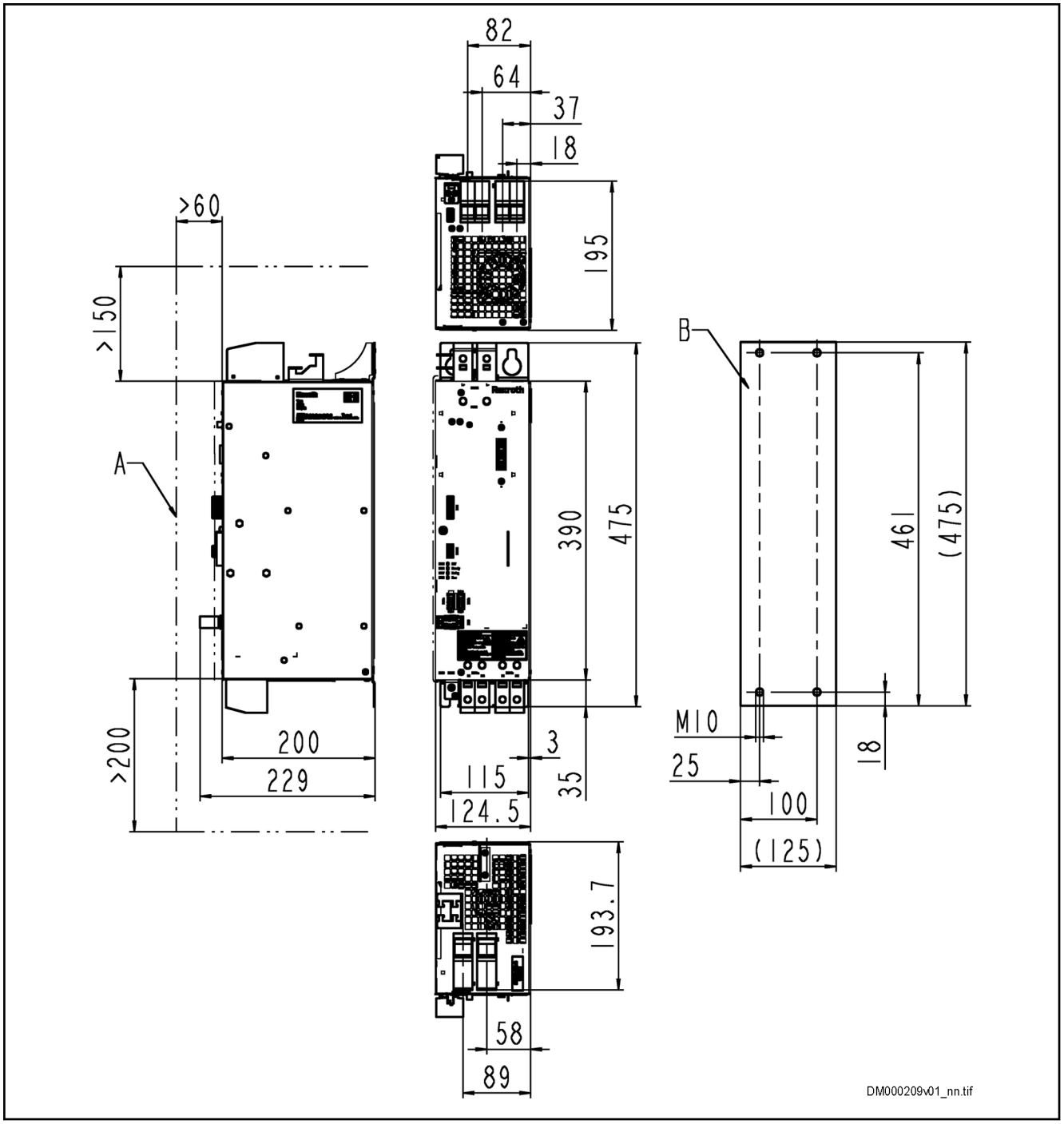
1) "045K" and "245K" nominal power only with "D7" nominal DC bus voltage

2) For "245K" nominal power only

Tab. 8-83: HLT05, type code

Dimensions HLT05

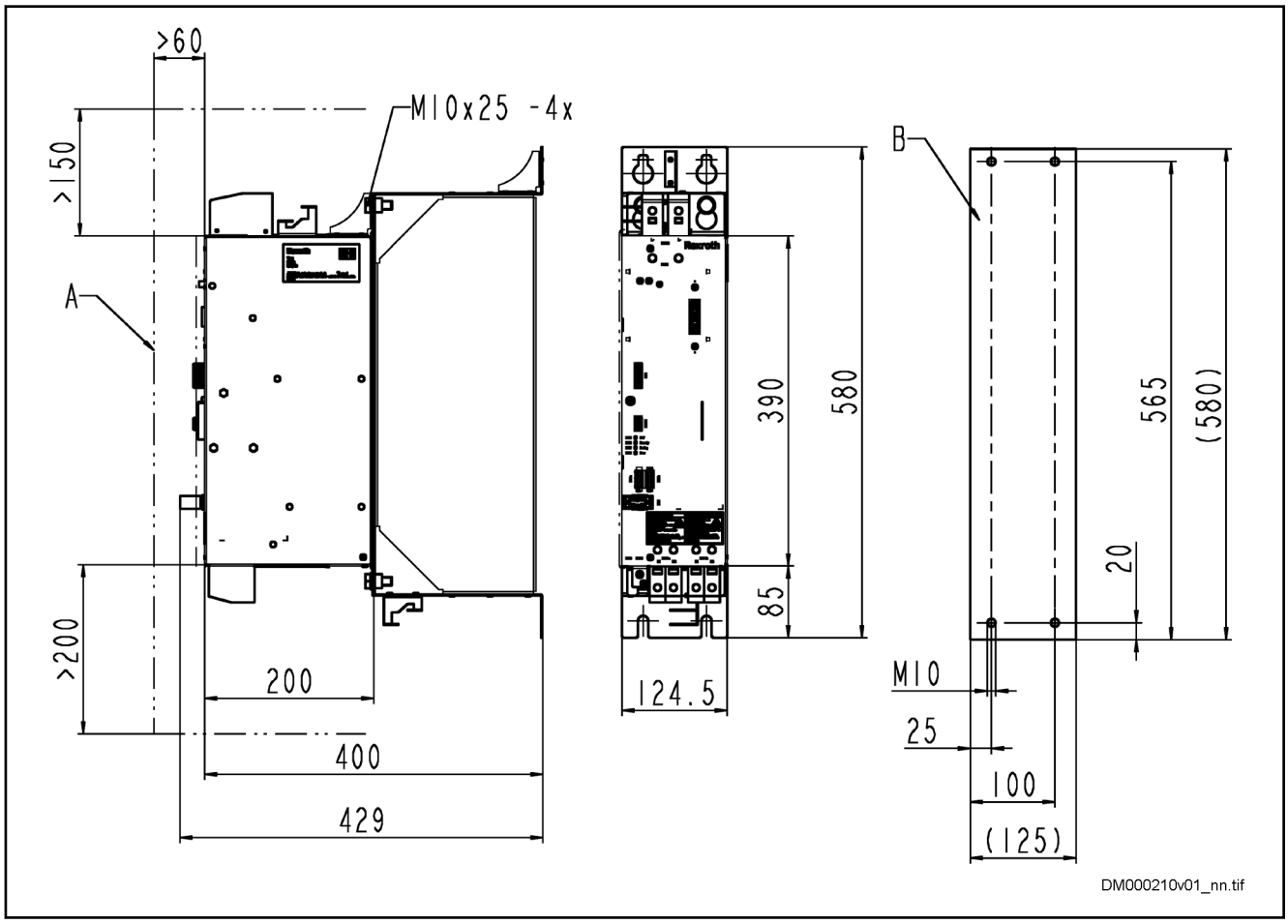
HLT05.1W-045K, -105K, dimensional drawing



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 8-101: HLT05.1W-045K, -105K, dimensional drawing

HLT05.1W-045K, -105K with HAS03.1-006 mounting plate (200 mm), dimensional drawing

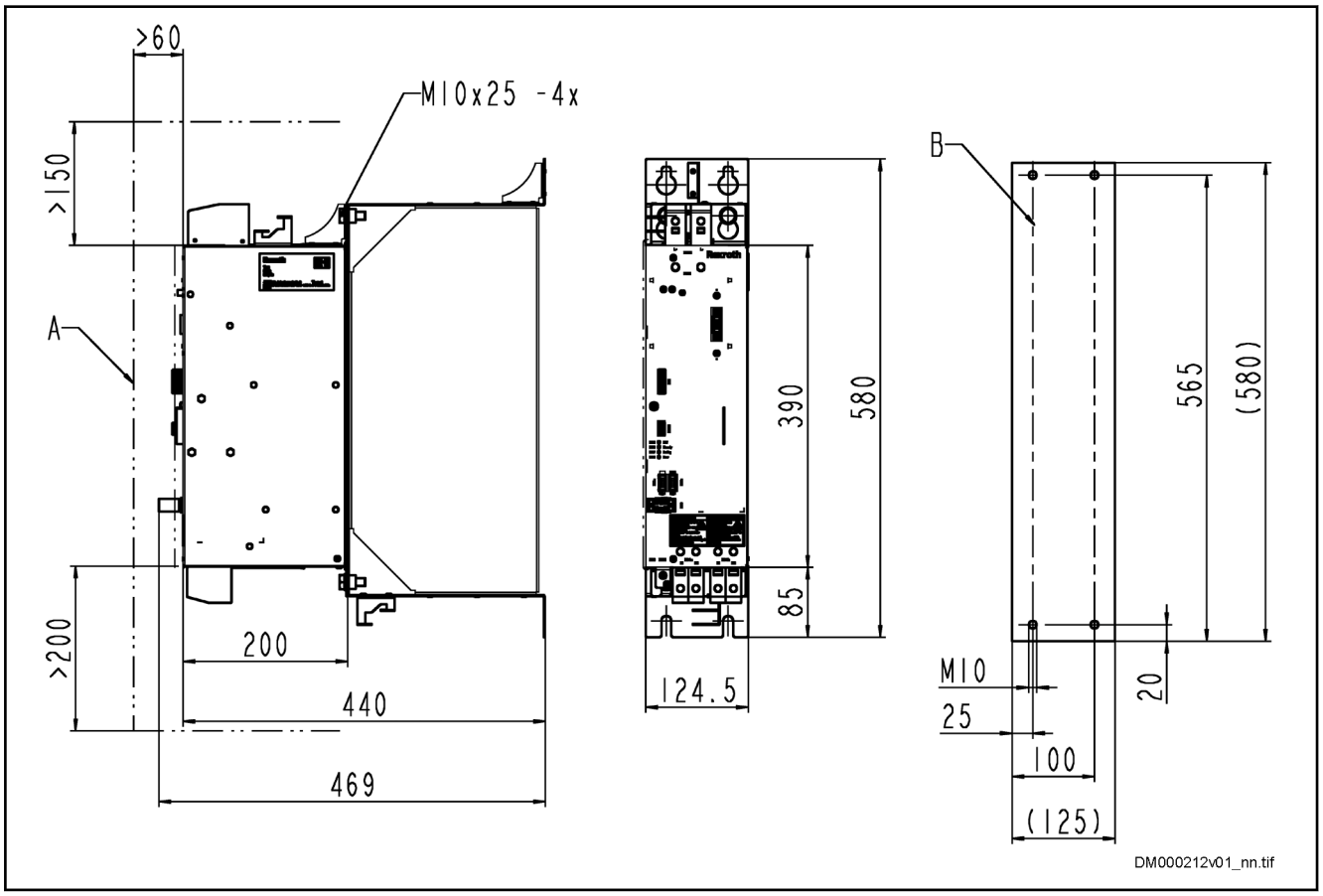


M10x25 Tightening torque = 40 Nm

Fig. 8-102: HLT05.1W-045K, -105K with mounting plate HAS03.1-006 for height leveling and depth leveling to 400 mm depth, dimensional drawing

The mounting plate is used to combine HNA05 and **air-cooled HMU05 without push-through technology**.

HLT05.1W-045K, -105K with HAS03.1-007 mounting plate (240 mm), dimensional drawing

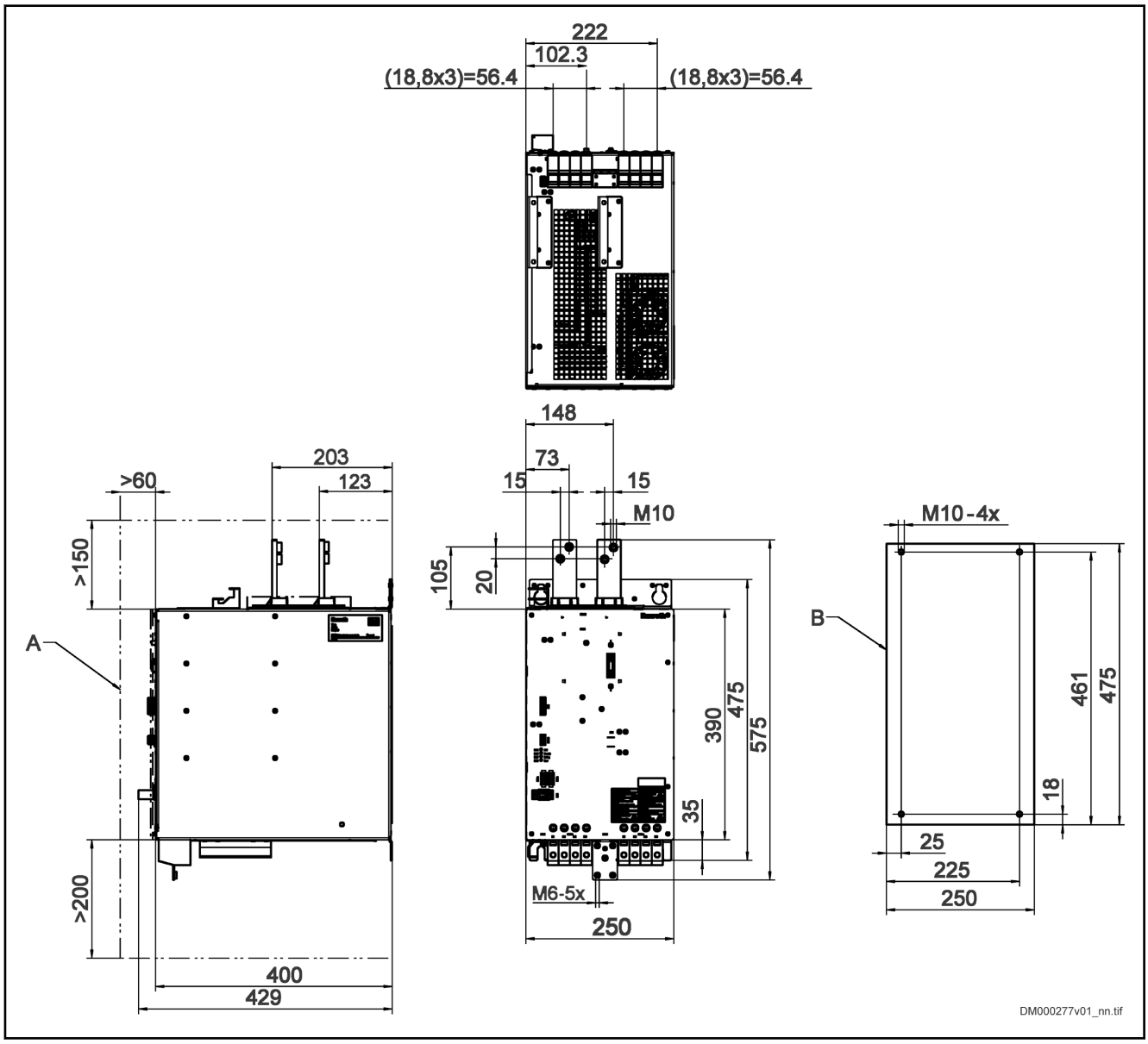


A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions
M10x25 Tightening torque = 40 Nm

Fig. 8-103: HLT05.1W-045K, -105K with mounting plate HAS03.1-007 for height leveling and depth leveling to 440 mm depth, dimensional drawing

The mounting plate is used to combine HNA05 and **liquid-cooled HMU05**.

HLT05.1W-245K, dimensional drawing



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 8-104: HLT05.1W-245K, dimensional drawing

Data HLT05

HLT05.1W- ... -D7

Designation	Symbol	Unit	HLT05.1W- ... -D7		
			45K	105K	245K
Continuous power	P_{BD}	kW	45	105	245
Short time power (60 s)	P_{BK}	kW	60	145	350
Peak power (2 s)	P_{BS}	kW	85	205	495
Minimum braking resistor	R_{min}	Ω	5.4	2.7	1.0
Balancing factor for P_{BD} (for parallel operation at common DC bus)	f		0.95		
Min. braking transistor switch-on threshold	$U_{HLT_On_min}$	V	820		820 780 [1)]
Max. braking transistor switch-on threshold	$U_{HLT_On_max}$	V	850		850 810 [1)]
Workload-based delay of braking transistor switch-on threshold	$U_{HLT_On_d}$	V	30		
Emergency comparator switch-on voltage	$U_{emergency}$	V	943 ±2.5%		
Max. input voltage	U_{max}	V	980		
Continuous current for DC connection points	I_{nom}	A	100	200	500
Power dissipation (full load)	P_{Diss_max}	W	250	400	1000
Power dissipation (standby)	P_{Diss_min}	W	20		
Rated control voltage input	U_{N3}	V	24 ±20%		
Control voltage input current	I_{N3}	mA	470		630
Short circuit current rating	SCCR	kA rms	85		
Weight	m	kg	7.5		23

1) HLT05.1W-245K-N-D7-NNN1

Tab. 8-84: HLT05.1W- ... -D7, data

HLT05.1W- ... -11

Designation	Symbol	Unit	HLT05.1W- ... -11
			105K
Continuous power	P_{BD}	kW	105
Short time power (60 s)	P_{BK}	kW	145
Peak power (2 s)	P_{BS}	kW	205
Minimum braking resistance	R_{min}	Ω	5.2
Balancing factor for P_{BD} (for parallel operation at common DC bus)	f		0.95
Min. braking transistor switch-on threshold	$U_{HLT_On_min}$	V	1150
Max. braking transistor switch-on threshold	$U_{HLT_On_max}$	V	1180
Workload-based delay of braking transistor switch-on threshold	$U_{HLT_On_d}$	V	30
Emergency comparator switch-on voltage	$U_{emergency}$	V	1255
Max. input voltage	U_{max}	V	1290
Continuous current for DC connection points	I_{nom}	A	150
Power dissipation (full load)	P_{Diss_max}	W	400
Power dissipation (standby)	P_{Diss_min}	W	20
Rated control voltage input	U_{N3}	V	24 ±20%
Control voltage input current	I_{N3}	mA	470
Short circuit current rating	SCCR	kA rms	85
Weight	m	kg	7.5

Tab. 8-85: HLT05.1W- ... -11, data

Connection diagram

HLT05

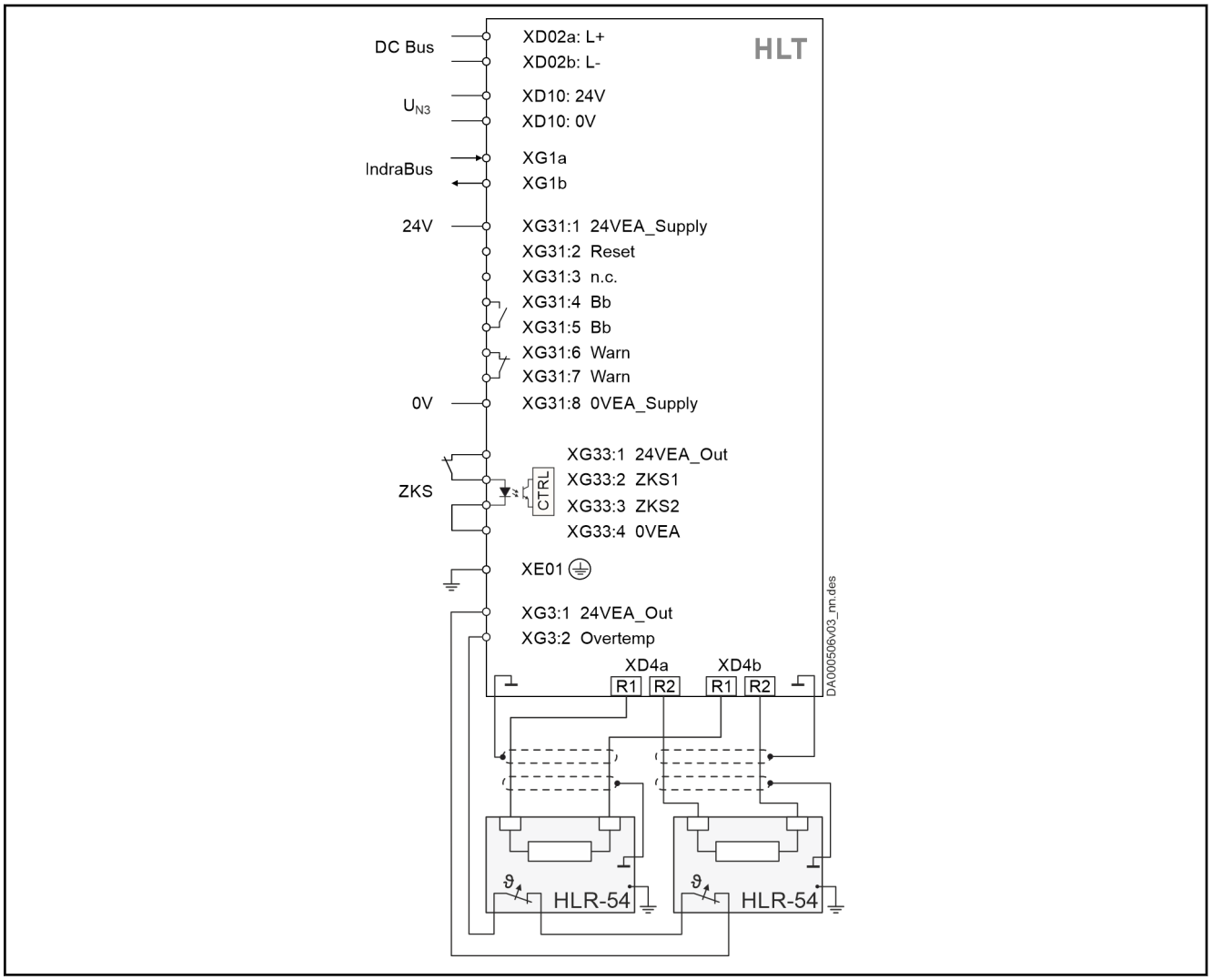


Fig. 8-105: HLT05.1W-045K, -105K connection diagram

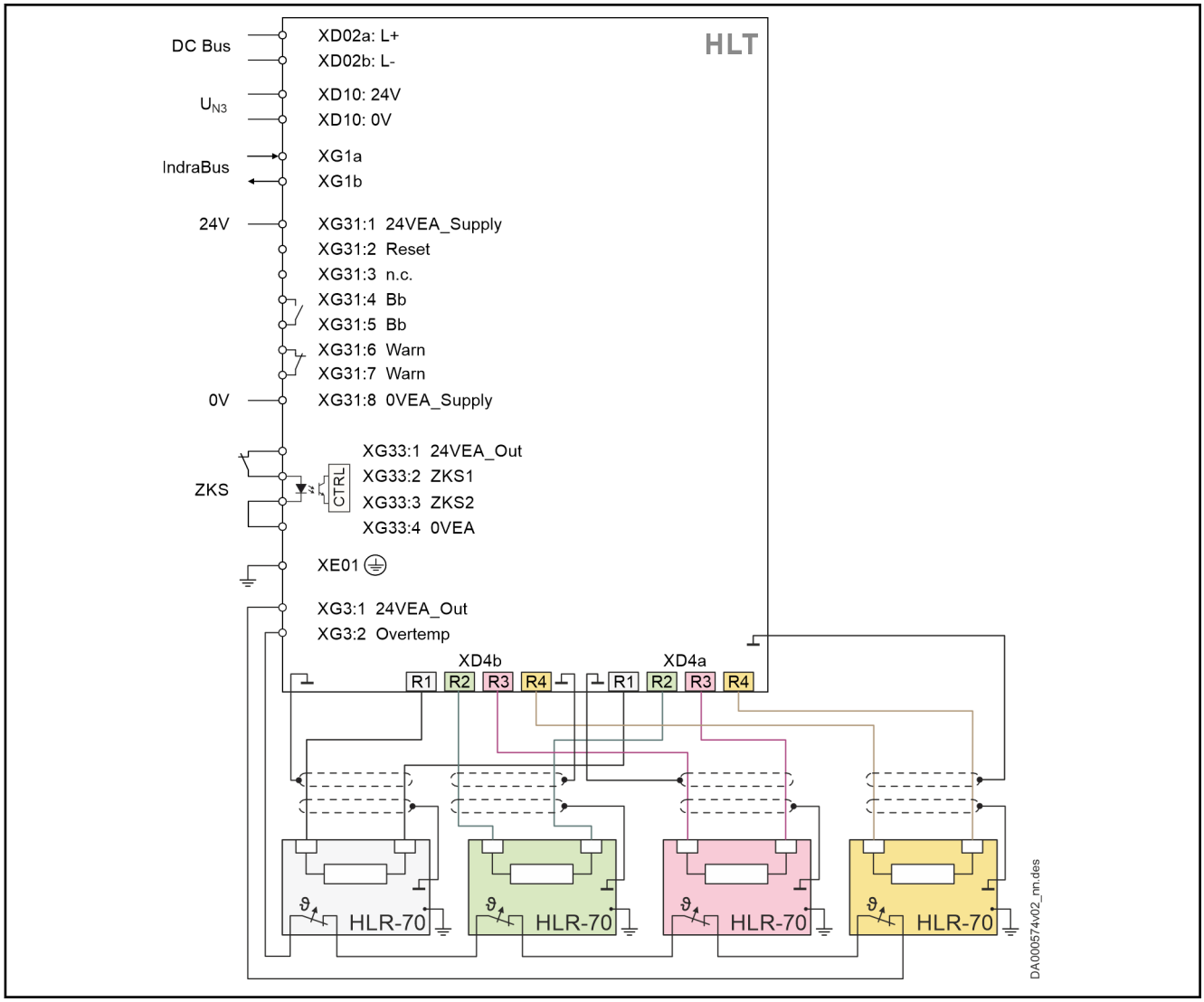


Fig. 8-106: HLT05.1W-245K connection diagram

Internal wiring of connection points XD02 and XD4:

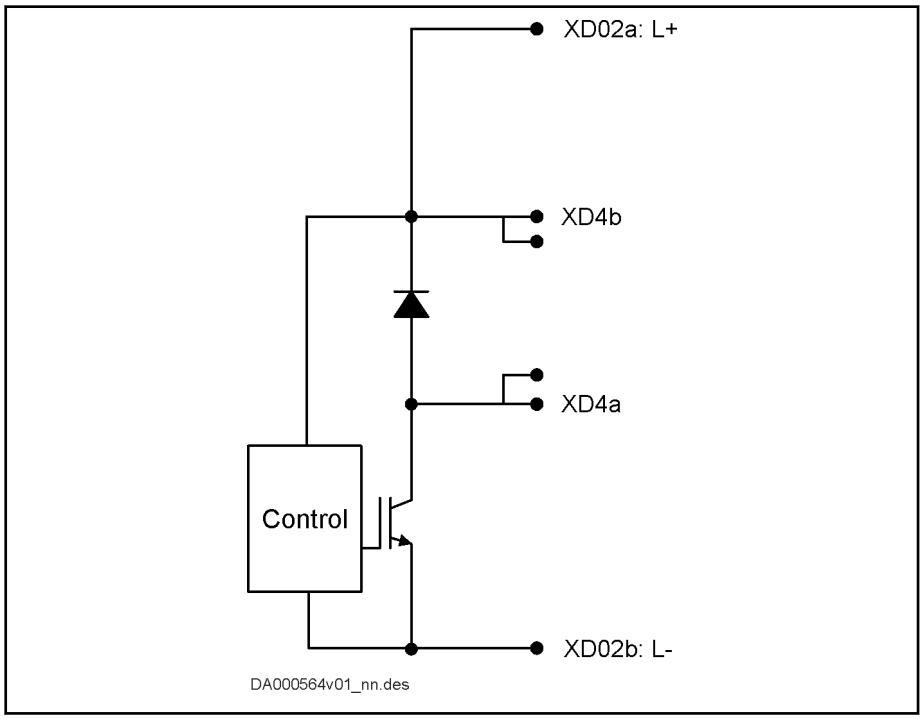


Fig. 8-107: Internal wiring of connection points XD02 and XD4

HLT05 / HNA05 / HMU05

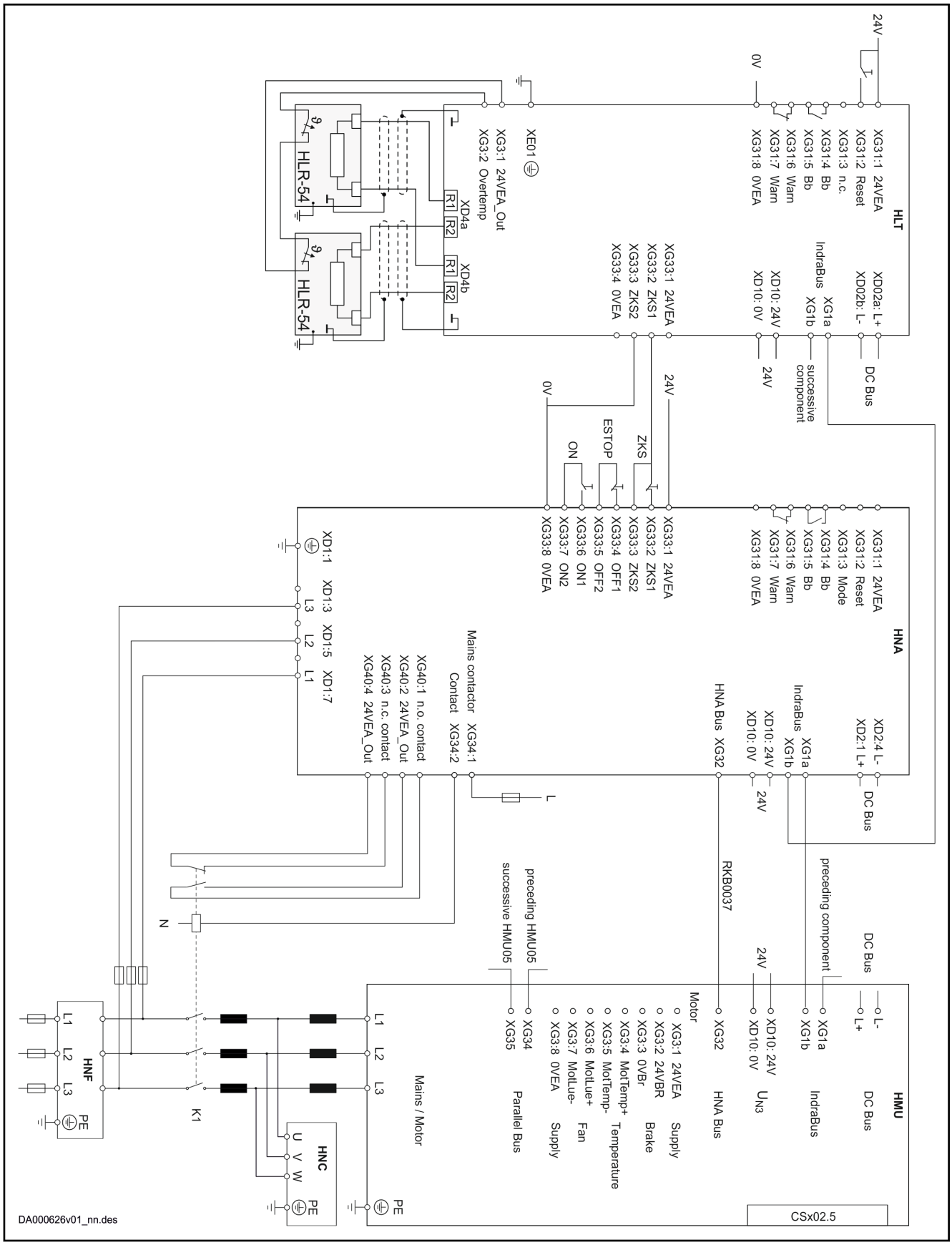
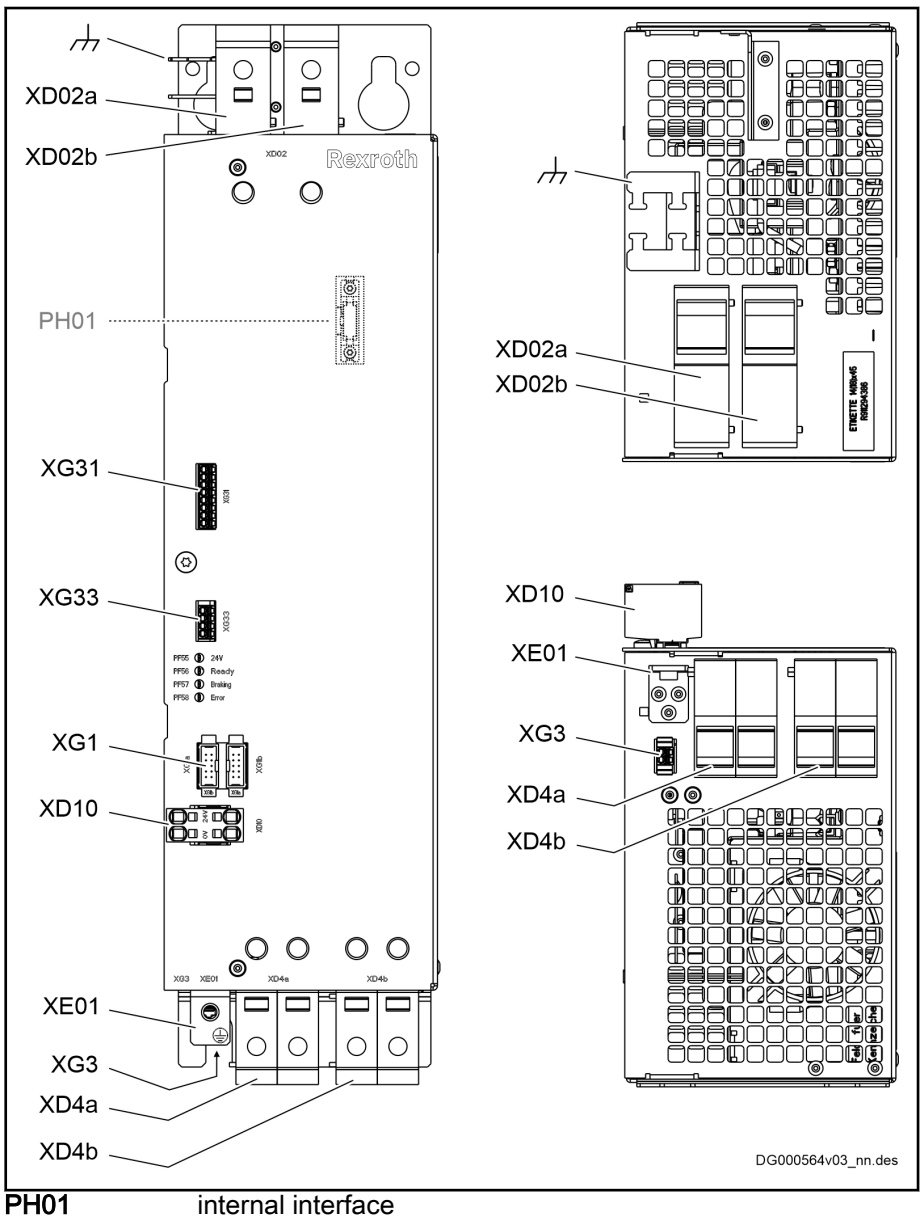


Fig. 8-108: Wiring diagram HLT05, HNA05, HMU05

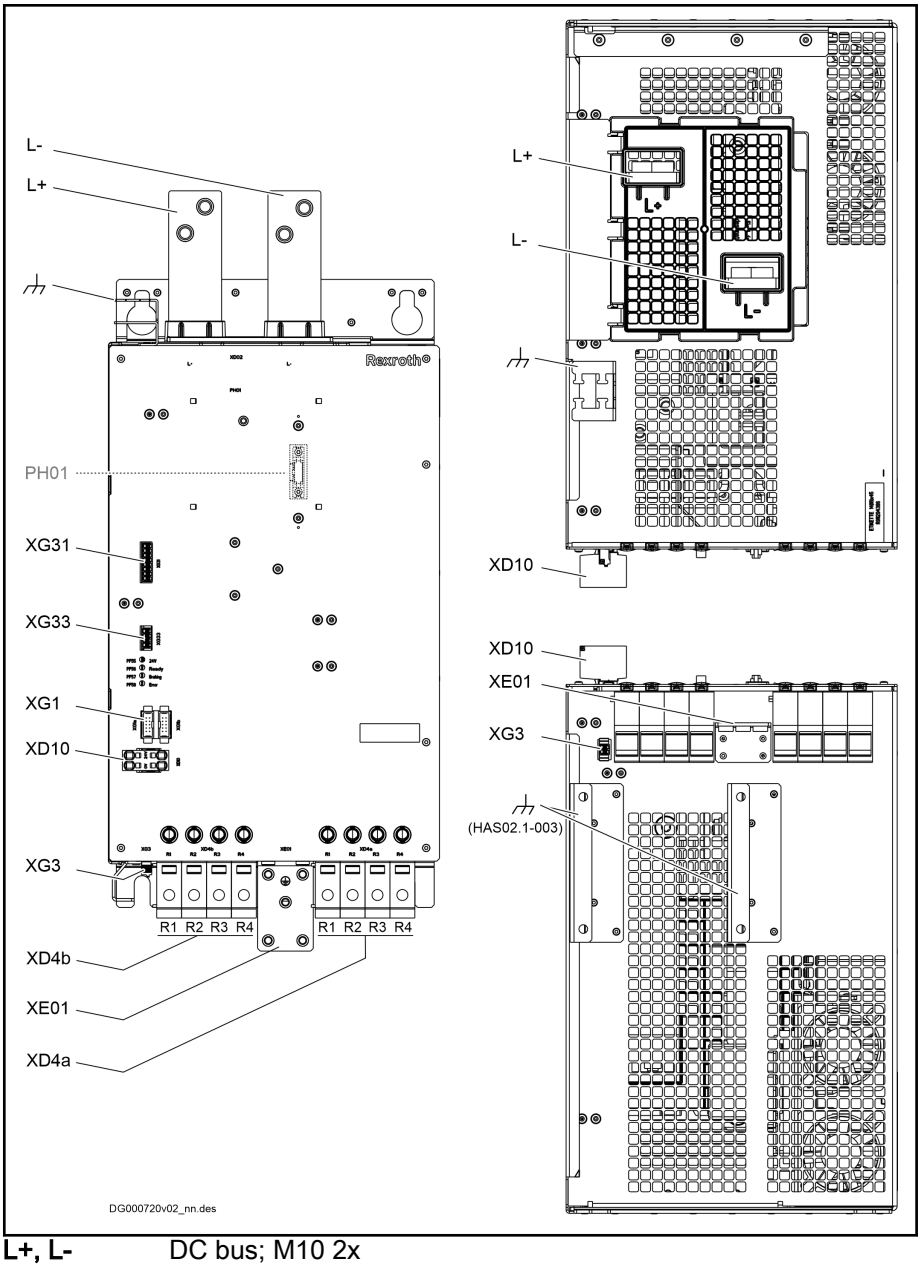
Connection points

Overview



PH01	internal interface
XD02a, XD02b	DC bus (L+: XD02a, L-: XD02b)
XD4a, XD4b	Braking resistor
XD10	Control voltage (0 V, 24 V)
XE01	Equipment grounding conductor
XG1	IndraBus; (In individual operation (i.e. not in combination with Hxx05 devices) plug in both RBS0025 terminating plugs at XG1.)
XG3	Braking resistor overtemperature signal contact (N/C contact)
XG31	Feedback contact (Bb, warning) and reset input for resetting error messages
XG33	DC bus short-circuit (ZKS) function

Fig. 8-109: HLT05.1W-045K, -105K connection points



L+, L-	DC bus; M10 2x
PH01	internal interface
XD4a, XD4b	Braking resistor
XD10	Control voltage (0 V, 24 V)
XE01	Equipment grounding conductor; M6 5x
XG1	IndraBus; (In individual operation (i.e. not in combination with Hxx05 devices) plug in both RBS0025 terminating plugs at XG1.)
XG3	Braking resistor overtemperature signal contact (N/C contact)
XG31	Feedback contact (Bb, warning) and reset input for resetting error messages
XG33	DC bus short-circuit (ZKS) function
Shield	Shield connection on the bottom with HAS02.1-003 accessories

Fig. 8-110: HLT05.1W-245K connection points

XE01, equipment grounding conductor connection point

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

Connect the protective conductor terminal to the protective conductor system of the control cabinet.

Check the continuity of the protective conductors from the mains connection to the connected motors.

☞ **Protective conductor: Material and cross section**

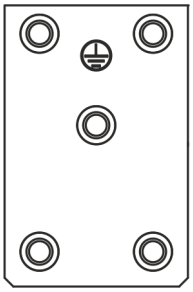
Use the same metal (e.g., copper) for the equipment grounding conductor as for the outer conductors.

When connecting the protective conductor connection point of the device to the equipment grounding system within the control cabinet, take into account that a sufficient cable cross-section is required.

For outer conductors with a cross section greater than 16 mm², you can reduce the cross section of the equipment grounding connection according to the table "Equipment grounding conductor cross section".

Cross-sectional area A of outer conductors	Minimum cross-sectional area A_{PE} of equipment grounding connection
A ≤ 16 mm²	A
16 mm² < A ≤ 35 mm²	16
35 mm² < A	A / 2

Tab. 8-86: Equipment grounding conductor cross section

View	Identification	Function	
HLT05.1W-045K, -105K:  HLT05.1W-245K: 	⏚	Connection to protective conductor system	
Screw connection	**Unit**	**min.**	**Max.**
Screw		M6 × 25	
Tightening torque	Nm	9.5	10.5

Tab. 8-87: Equipment grounding conductor connection point

XD02, DC bus

HLT05.1W-045K, -105K

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

Before working with live parts: Disconnect the system and secure power switch against unintentional or unauthorized reconnection.

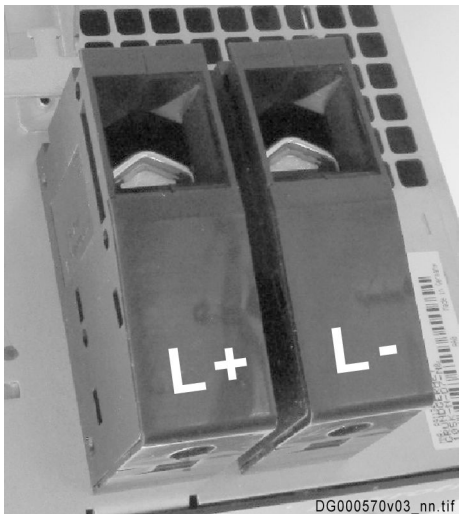
Make sure voltage has fallen below 50 V before touching live parts!

Before accessing the device, wait at least **30 minutes** after switching off the supply voltages to allow **discharging**.

When using DC bus ground capacitor pairs, the discharge time **to ground** may exceed 30 minutes.

Mount a **touch guard**!

HLT05.1W-045K, -105K

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
	XD02a	L+	DC bus voltage positive pole
	XD02b	L-	DC bus voltage negative pole

Tab. 8-88: XD02: DC bus

Mechanical data

Screw connection	Unit	min.	max.
Connecting cable	mm^2	85	95
	AWG	3/0	4/0
Cable length [1)]	m		1
Stripping length	mm	27	
Tightening torque (M8)	Nm	15	

1) Place the HLT05 braking unit close to the DC bus capacitors. If this is impossible, connect an external capacitor (e.g., HLC) to the braking unit.

Tab. 8-89: Mechanical data

HLT05.1W-245K

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

Before working with live parts: Disconnect the system and secure power switch against unintentional or unauthorized reconnection.

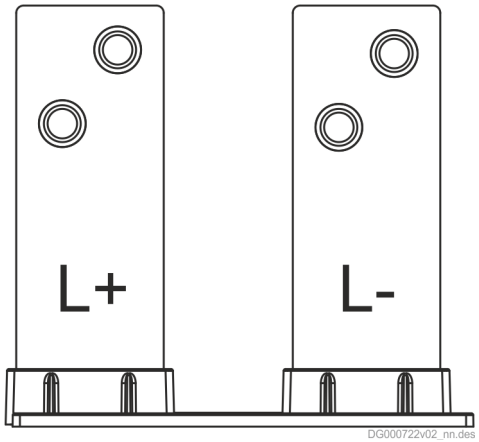
Make sure voltage has fallen below 50 V before touching live parts!

Before accessing the device, wait at least **30 minutes** after switching off the supply voltages to allow **discharging**.

When using DC bus ground capacitor pairs, the discharge time **to ground** may exceed 30 minutes.

Mount a **touch guard**!

HLT05.1W-245K

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
	L+	L+	DC bus voltage positive pole
	L-	L-	DC bus voltage negative pole

Tab. 8-90: XD02: DC bus

Mechanical data

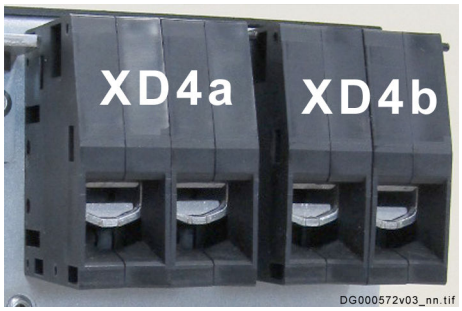
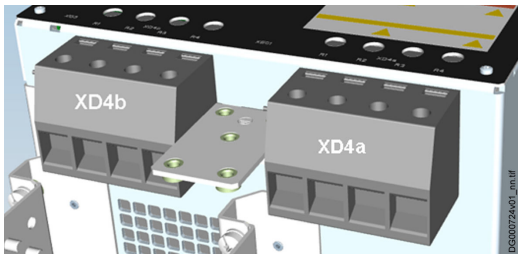
Screw connection	Unit	min.	max.
Contact bar	mm^2	288	-
Connecting cable	mm^2	2 × 120	-
	kcmil	2 × 250	-
Cable length [1)]	m	-	1
Tightening torque (M10)	Nm	48	

1) Place the HLT05 braking unit close to the DC bus capacitors. If this is impossible, connect an external capacitor (e.g., HLC) to the braking unit.

Tab. 8-91: Mechanical data

XD4, braking resistor

Function, pin assignment Braking resistors are connected to the XD4 connection point.

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
HLT05.1W-045K, -105K:  HLT05.1W-245K: 	XD4a	E	Braking resistor
	XD4b	E	Braking resistor

Tab. 8-92: XD04, Braking resistor

Mechanical data

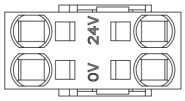
Screw connection	Unit	min.	max.
HLT05.1W-045K, -105K connection cable	mm^2	25	50
	AWG	4	1/0
HLT05.1W-245K connection cable	mm^2	50	
	AWG	1/0	
Stripping length	mm	24	
Tightening torque (M6)	Nm	6	

Tab. 8-93: Mechanical data

XD10, 24 V supply (control voltage)

Function, pin assignment

The 24 V supply is applied externally via connection point XD10.

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
	24V	+24V	Power supply
		+24V	
	0V	0V	Reference potential for voltage supply
		0V	

Tab. 8-94: XD10, 24-V power supply

Mechanical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	min.	max.
Connecting cable Solid wire	mm^2	1	10
Connecting cable multi-strand **without** wire end ferrule	mm^2	1	6
	AWG	16	10
Connecting cable multi-strand **with** wire end ferrule	mm^2	1	4
Stripping length	mm	15	

Tab. 8-95: Mechanical data

Electrical data

	Unit	min.	max.
Voltage load capacity	V	-	U_{N3} 1)
Power consumption	W	-	P_{N3} 1)
Current carrying capacity (looping through)	A	-	40 (UL: 31)
Allowed inductance	µH	-	100 (2 twisted single strands, 75 m long)

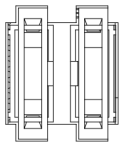
1) See chapter 7.2.1 "Control voltage" on page 147

Tab. 8-96: Electrical data

Installation instructions

Depending on the power consumption of the devices and the current carrying capacity of the connector XD10, check the number of devices through which one line for 24 V supply can be looped through. If required, connect another device directly to the 24 V supply and loop through the control voltage from this device to other devices.

XG1, IndraBus

View	Connection	Function
	XG1a XG1b	Connects the components through a ribbon cable. • Output for quickly reporting critical errors to other devices • Input for detecting critical errors from other devices • Blocking and releasing DC bus short circuit by a braking resistor unit • Reporting DC bus availability *Cables* • Unshielded length: < 3 m Cable designation: RKB0036 • Shielded length: < 100 m Cable designation: RKB0035 In individual operation (that is to say not in combination with other devices of the Hxx05.1 series), both IndraBus **RBS0025 terminating plugs** must have been plugged in. In combination with other devices, the RBS0025 terminating plug on the first device (left) must be plugged in at the left side of XG1 and the terminating plug on the last device (right) must be plugged in at the right side.

Tab. 8-97: XG1, IndraBus

XG3, braking resistor overtemperature feedback contact

Pin assignment

View	Connection	I/O	Function
	1	A	Supply voltage of the overtemperature contact
	2	E	Digital input for the overtemperature contact

Tab. 8-98: XG3, braking resistor signal contact

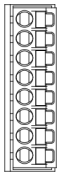
Mechanical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	Min.	Max.
Connection cable Stranded wire **without** ferrule	mm^2	0.2	1.5
	AWG	24	16
Connection cable Stranded wire **with** ferrule	mm^2	0.25	0.75
Stripped length	mm	10	

Tab. 8-99: Mechanical data

XG31, feedback contact (Bb, warning) and reset input

Pin assignment

View	Connection	I/O	Function
	1	E	Supply voltage of inputs/outputs (24VEA_Supply)
	2	E	Reset input for resetting error messages 1: Reset active 0: Reset is not active
	3	-	n. c.
	4	A	N/O contact signals readiness for operation Closed with: Readiness for operation of device Open: Error messages: F****
	5		
	6	A	N/C contact signals warning states Open: Overtemperature at device/braking resistor
	7		
	8	E	Reference potential of supply voltage (0VEA_Supply)

Tab. 8-100: XG31, messages

Mechanical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	Min.	Max.
Connection cable Stranded wire **without** ferrule	mm^2	0.2	1.5
	AWG	24	16
Connection cable Stranded wire **with** ferrule	mm^2	0.25	0.75
Stripped length	mm	10	

Tab. 8-101: Mechanical data

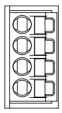
Electrical data

	Unit	Min.	Max.
Digital inputs	-	Digital inputs correspond to IEC 61131-2 Type 1	
Switching voltage	V	24 -6%	
Output current	mA		500
Energy absorption capacity	mJ		700
Overload protection	-	Short circuit protection	
Bb and warning contact	-	Digital outputs correspond to IEC 61131-2 Type 1	
Switching voltage	V_{DC}	30	
Continuous current	A		1
Switching current	A		5

	Unit	Min.	Max.
Load current	mA	10	
Switching cycles	-	3×10^5	

Tab. 8-102: Electrical data

XG33, DC BUS SHORT-CIRCUIT (ZKS)

View	Connection	I/O	Function
	1	A	DC bus short-circuit input supply voltage (24VEA_Out)
	2	E	ZKS1 – positive terminal for controlling the ZKS (DC bus short circuit) function Typical wiring: Connect XG33.1 to XG33.2 using an N/C contact
	3	E	ZKS2 – negative terminal for controlling the ZKS (DC bus short circuit) function Typical wiring: Connect XG33.4 to XG33.3
	4	A	Reference potential of supply voltage (0VEA)

Tab. 8-103: Function, pin assignment

The ZKS function (DC bus short circuit) requires a 24-V control voltage.

The DC bus is not automatically discharged in case of a control voltage failure.

Mechanical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	Min.	Max.
Connection cable Stranded wire **without** ferrule	mm^2	0.2	1.5
	AWG	24	16
Connection cable Stranded wire **with** ferrule	mm^2	0.25	0.75
Stripped length	mm	10	

Tab. 8-104: Mechanical data

Electrical data

	Unit	Min.	Max.
Digital Inputs	-	Digital inputs correspond to IEC 61131-2 Type 1	
Supply outputs	-		
Total output current	mA		300

Tab. 8-105: Electrical data

Display elements

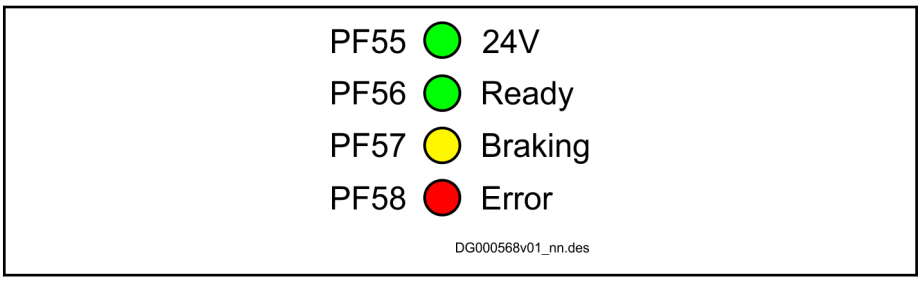


Fig. 8-111: LEDs at HLT05

LED	Color / status		Significance
PF55		Green	A voltage supply of 24 V is applied
		off	24 V power supply < 19.2 V
PF56		Green	Ready for operation
		off	not operational
PF57		Yellow	active
		off	Inactive
PF58		Red	Error
		Flashing red	Warning
		off	No error, no warning

Tab. 8-106: LED displays HLT05

8.3.10 24V power supply unit

Features

The following PULS products are suitable for IndraDrive ML systems:

Product	Use
QT20.241	24V power supply unit; supply via mains Output current: 20 A
QTD20.241	24V power supply unit; supply via DC bus Output current: 20 A
QT40.241	24V power supply unit; supply via mains Output current: 40 A
YR40.241	Redundancy module for establishing a redundant power supply. 2 × 20 A input, 1 × 40 A output
YR80.241	Redundancy module for establishing a redundant power supply. 2 × 40 A input, 1 × 80 A output

Tab. 8-107: Power supply units, redundancy modules

Important properties:

- SELV/PELV power supply unit[1)]
- Overvoltage protection available
- Overtemperature protection available
- Exclusively 3-phase operation allowed
- UL approval (E198865)

Documentation

Product documentations can be found online:
http://www.pulspower.com/index.php?reqNav=download

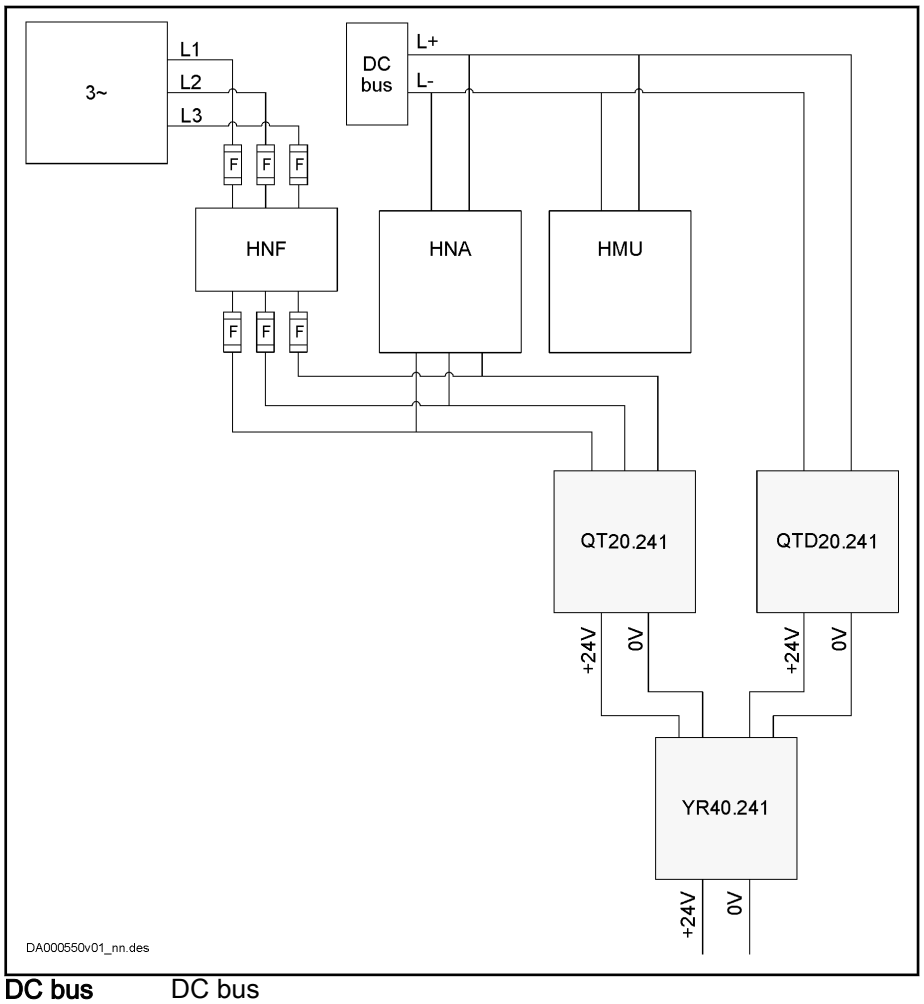
[1)] *SELV: Safety Extra Low Voltage; PELV: Protected Extra Low Voltage*

Data

Description	Unit	QT20.241	QTD20.241	QT40.241
Mains input voltage	V	3 AC 380 … 480 -15%/+20%	-	3 AC 380 … 480 -15%/+20%
DC bus input voltage	V_{DC}	-	480 … 840 (continuously) 360 … 480 (< 60 s) 840 … 900 (< 60 s)	-
Input current	A	0.79 (400 V)	0.85 (600 V_{DC})	1.65 (400 V)
Output voltage	V_{DC}	DC 24		
Output current (24 V)	A_{DC}	20 (continuously) 30 (< 4 s)	20 (continuously) 25 (< 4 s)	40 (continuously) 60 (< 4 s)
Output power (24 V)	W	480 600 (< 4 s)	480 720 (< 4 s)	960 1440 (< 4 s)
Input line fuses	-	-	Present (2 ×)	Present (3 ×)
Degree of protection	-	IP20		
Weight	kg	0.87	0.89	1.5
Dimensions	mm (W×H×D)	65×124×127		110×124×127
Mounting	-	Top-hat rail Wall-mounted (with optional accessories)		

Tab. 8-108: Data

24V/20A connection diagram

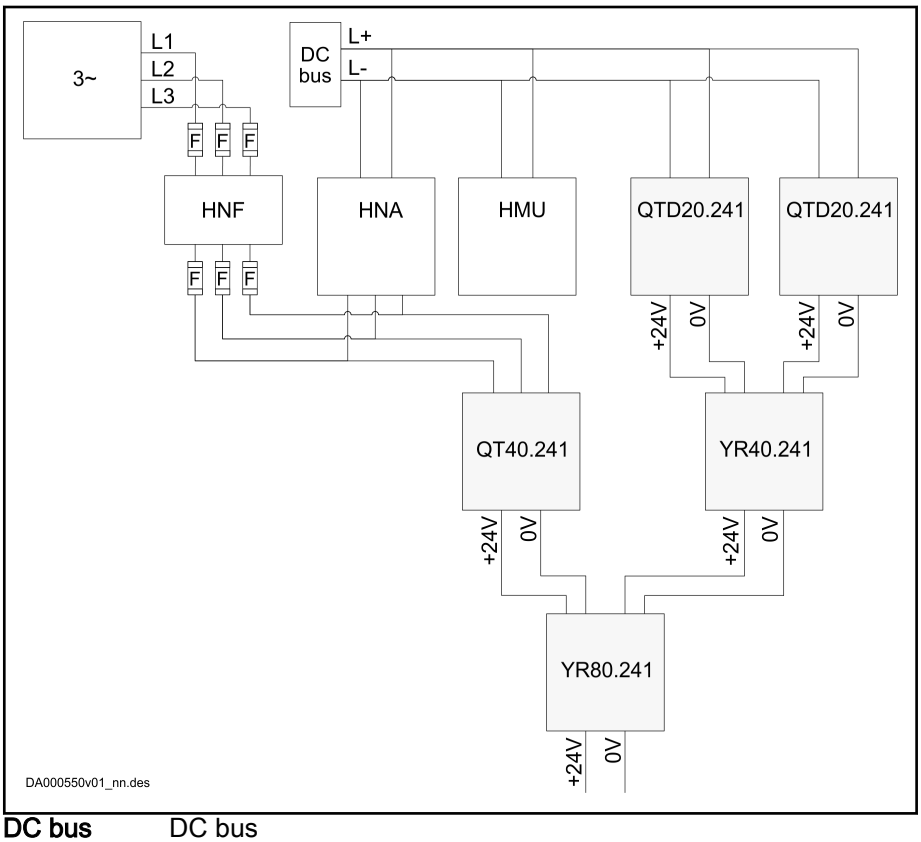


DC bus DC bus
QT20.241 Power supply unit
QTD20.241 DC bus power supply unit
YR40.241 Redundancy module
Fig. 8-112: 24V/20A connection diagram

Setting the output voltage:

- QT20.241: 25.5 V
- QTD20.241: 24 V

24V/40A connection diagram



DC bus DC bus
QT20.241 Power supply unit
QT40.241 Power supply unit
QTD20.241 DC bus power supply unit
YR40.241 Redundancy module
YR80.241 Redundancy module

Fig. 8-113: 24V/40A connection diagram

Setting the output voltage:

- QT40.241: 25.5 V
- QTD20.241: 24 V

8.3.11 HAH02 heat exchanger

HAH02 Type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	A	H	0	2	.	1	-	W	A	0	3	5	-	0	9	0	-	1	5	-	S	1	-	1	-	4	8	-	N	N	N	N								
	①			②			③		④	⑤	⑥				⑦				⑧			⑨			⑩		⑪			⑫											

①	**Product:** HAH = Heat exchanger
②	**Series:** 02 = 2
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Cooling medium drive side circuit:** W = Water
⑤	**Cooling medium customer side circuit** [a]**:** A = Air W = Water
⑥	**Cooling capacity** [a]**:** 008 = 8 kW 012 = 12 kW 020 = 20 kW 025 = 25 kW 035 = 35 kW 060 = 60 kW
⑦	**Flow rate drive side circuit** [a]**:** 020 = 20 liter/minute 060 = 60 liter/minute 090 = 90 liter/minute 180 = 180 liter/minute
⑧	**Pressure drive side circuit** [a]**:** 15 = 1,5 bar 20 = 2.0 bar
⑨	**Structure** [a]**:** C1 = Chassis unit S1 = Stand-alone
⑩	**Heating** [a]**:** N = without heating 1 = heating in drive side circuit and cabinet heating 2 = heating in drive side circuit and reinforced cabinet heating

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	A	H	0	2	.	1	-	W	A	0	3	5	-	0	9	0	-	1	5	-	S	1	-	1	-	4	8	-	N	N	N	N								
	①			②			③		④	⑤	⑥				⑦				⑧			⑨			⑩		⑪			⑫											
⑪	**Mains voltage** [a]**:** 48 = 3 × AC 380 - 480 V 50 = 3 × AC 380 - 500 V 69 = 3 × AC 525 - 690 V																																							
⑫	**Other design:** NNNN = none S001 = reduced height S002 = extended temperature range -40 … 45 °C MNNN = Suited for maritime applications																																							

a) Available combinations: See following tables

Tab. 8-109: HAH02, type code

⑥ Cooling capacity	⑦ Flow rate drive side circuit	⑤ Cooling medium customer side circuit
008	020	W
012	020	A
020	090	A
025	060	W
035	090	A, W
060	180	W

Tab. 8-110: Combination regarding cooling capacity

⑩ Heating	⑤ Cooling medium customer side circuit	⑥ Cooling capacity
1	A	035
2	A	020

Tab. 8-111: Combination regarding heating

⑪ Mains voltage	⑤ Cooling medium customer side circuit
48	A
50	A
48	W
50	W
69	-

Tab. 8-112: Combination regarding mains voltage

⑨ Structure	⑤ Cooling medium customer side circuit
S1	A
C1	W

Tab. 8-113: Combination regarding structure

⑧ Pressure drive side circuit	⑥ Cooling capacity	⑦ Flow rate drive side circuit
15	008	020
15	012	020
20	020	090
15	025	060
15	035	090
15	060	180

Tab. 8-114: Combination regarding pressure drive side circuit

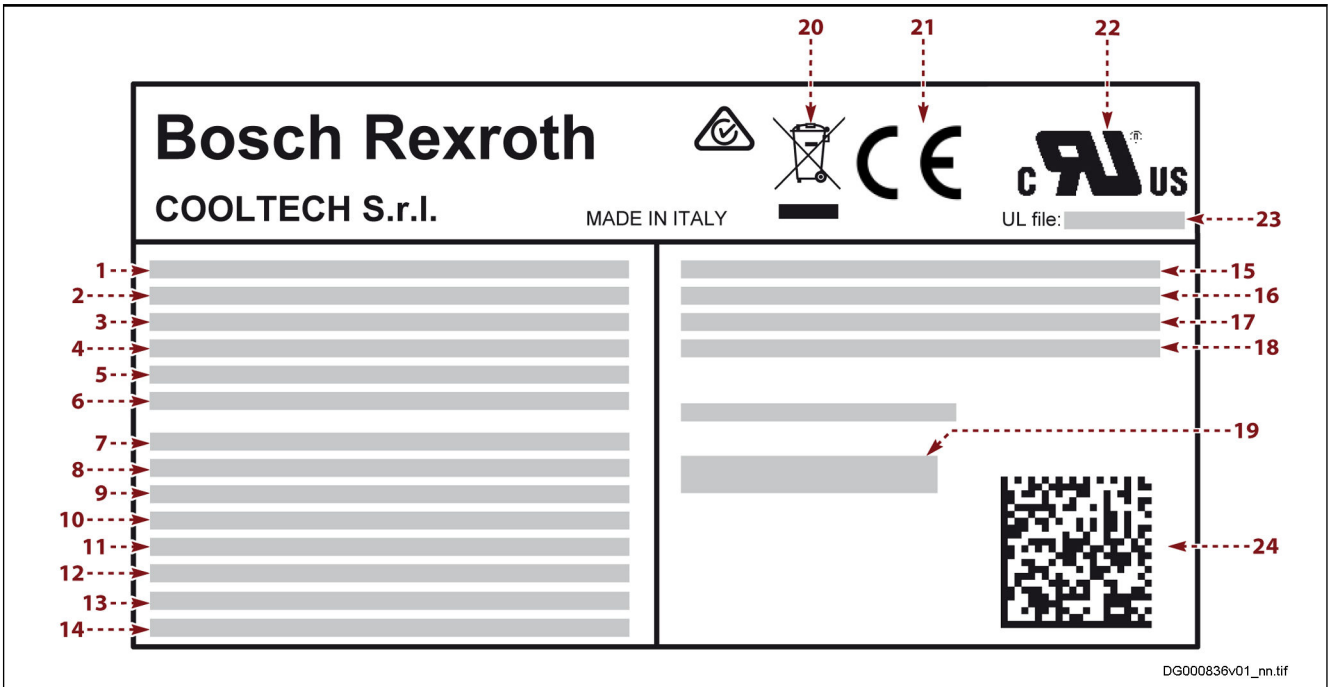
⑫ Other design	HAH02.1
MNNN	HAH02.1-WA025-060-15-C1-N-48-MNNN
S001	HAH02.1-WA035-090-15-S1-1-48-S001
S002	HAH02.1-WA020-090-20-S1-2-48-S002

Tab. 8-115: Combination regarding design

General information

Manufacturer's details and machine identification details

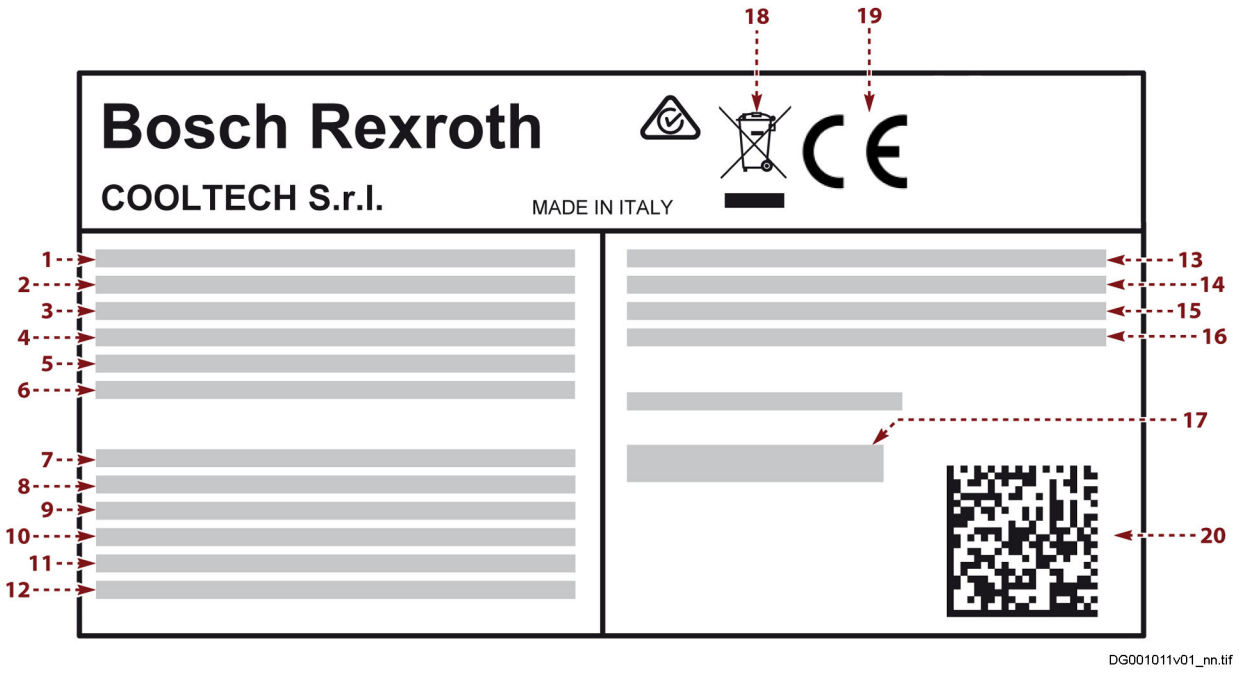
Water-water heat exchanger (HAH02.1-WW)



1	Model (Bosch Rexroth)		13	Fluid temperature range "drive side"
2	Model (Cooltech)		14	Ambient temperature range
3	Device number (Cooltech)		15	Power voltage
4	Device number (Bosch Rexroth)		16	Power voltage frequency
5	Serial number		17	Phases
6	Date of production		18	Input current
7	Coolant		19	Place of production
8	Weight		20	EEEW (RAEE) marking concerning the obligation to dispose of electrical and electronic equipment separately from household waste
9	Maximum fluid pressure "customer side"		21	CE marking of conformity
10	Maximum fluid pressure output "drive side"		22	UL conformity marking (file number SA44341)
11	Maximum fluid pressure input "drive side"		23	UL file number
12	Fluid temperature range "customer side"		24	QR code

Tab. 8-116: Manufacturer's details and machine identification details (HAH02.1-WW)

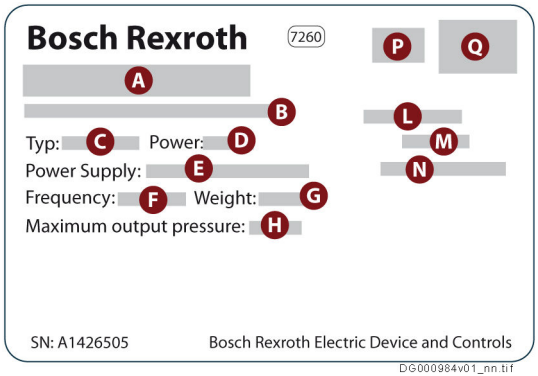
Air-water heat exchanger (HAH02.1-WA020-090, -WA035-090)



1	Model (Bosch Rexroth)		11	Fluid temperature range
2	Model (Cooltech)		12	Ambient temperature range
3	Device number (Cooltech)		13	Power voltage
4	Device number (Bosch Rexroth)		14	Power voltage frequency
5	Serial number		15	Phases
6	Date of production		16	Input current
7	Coolant		17	Place of production
8	Weight		18	EEEW (RAEE) marking concerning the obligation to dispose of electrical and electronic equipment separately from household waste
9	Maximum fluid pressure output side		19	CE marking of conformity
10	Maximum fluid pressure input side		20	QR code

Tab. 8-117: Manufacturer's details and machine identification details (HAH02.1-WA020-090, -WA035-090)

Air-water heat exchanger (HAH02.1-WA012-020)



A	Manufacturer		**H**	Maximum output pressure
B	Product		**L**	Product code
C	Type of machine		**M**	Date of production
D	performance		**N**	Device number
E	Power voltage		**P**	EEEW (RAEE) marking concerning the obligation to dispose of electrical and electronic equipment separately from household waste
F	Power voltage frequency		**Q**	CE marking of conformity
G	Weight			

Tab. 8-118: Manufacturer's details and machine identification details (HAH02.1-WA012-020)

Disclaimer notice

The manufacturer cannot be held responsible for the following:

- machine misuse
- unauthorised modifications and/or repairs
- missing or inadequate maintenance
- use of non-original spare parts or parts not designed specifically for the model concerned

Safety information

General safety warnings

The majority of accidents at work are due to lack of attention, non-compliance with the most basic safety rules and improper use of tools and equipment.

Being prudent and attentive when operating the machine is the best way to prevent accidents and injuries.

Read the instruction manual provided carefully and strictly follow the instructions, particularly those related to safety.

All specialised technicians that perform work on the machine must have technical skills, ability and experience to perceive the risks and dangers that may result from the specific activity to be performed.

Familiarise yourself with the meanings of the symbols on the stickers: their shape and colour are important for safety purposes; make sure they are always legible and always observe the information given.

Do not tamper with, circumvent, eliminate or bypass the locking and safety devices; failure to comply with this requirement may cause serious risks to the health and safety of persons.

Strictly follow the regulations and laws valid for your workplace.

Waste (coolant, etc.) must be disposed of correctly to prevent ecological and environmental damage.

Dispose of all packing materials according to their composition in compliance with the laws in force.

Water-water heat exchanger (WW008-020, WW035-090)

Technical information

General description of the machine

The machine is designed and manufactured for the purpose of cooling devices or equipment using a liquid solution made of glycol and demineralized water.

The cooling system is mainly based on the exchange of heat between two fluids that circulate in two independent circuits (customer side circuit and drive circuit) and a heat exchanger.

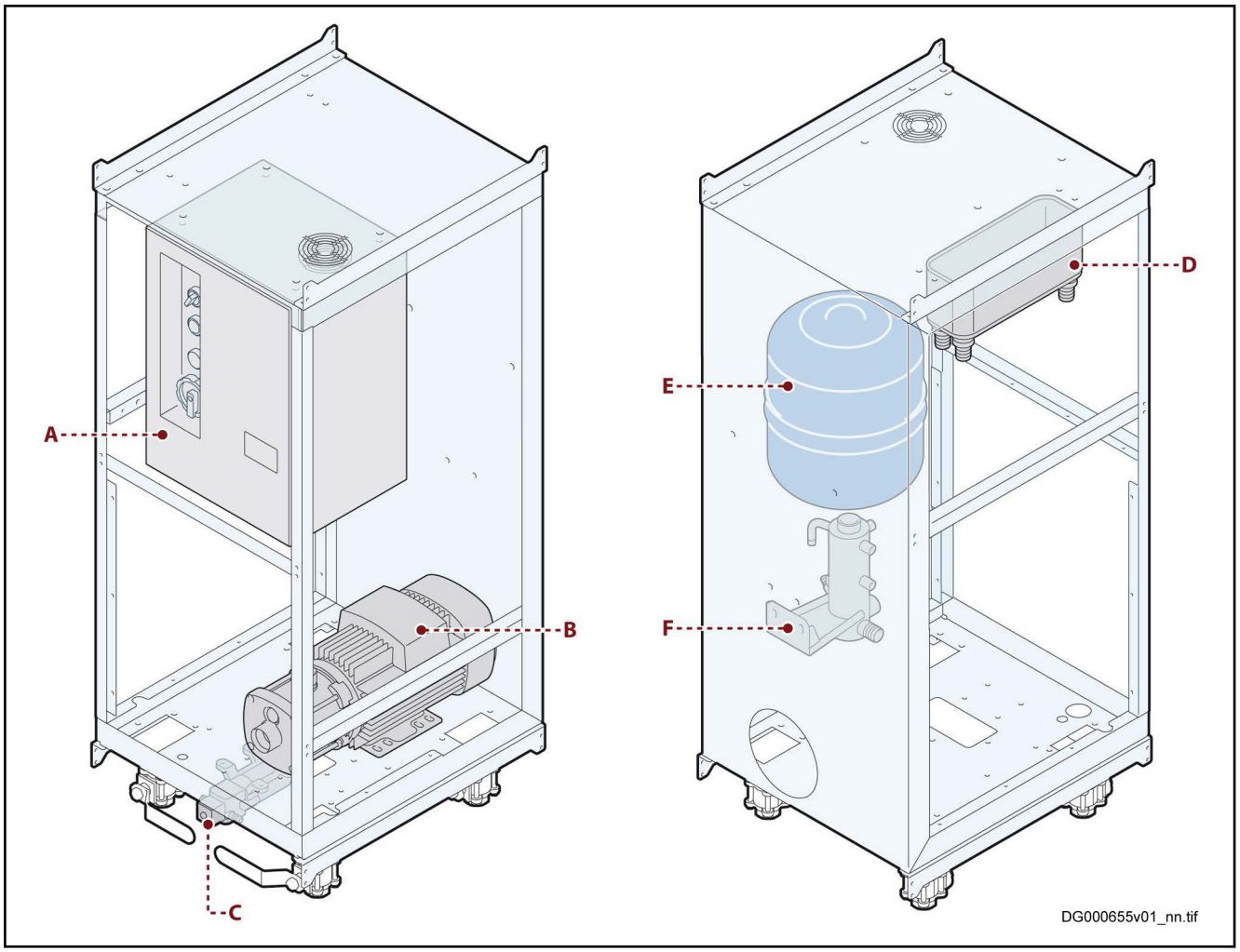
The cold liquid, provided by the owner, flows in the customer side circuit and through the heat exchanger it cools the liquid in the drive circuit.

The equipment or machine to be cooled is connected to the drive circuit.

Pressure and temperature are controlled via IndraMotion MLD, the drive-integrated Motion Logic Control system compliant with IEC 61131-3. See chapter "Control using MLD" on page 418.

See also chapter "Liquid cooling" on page 53.

Main parts



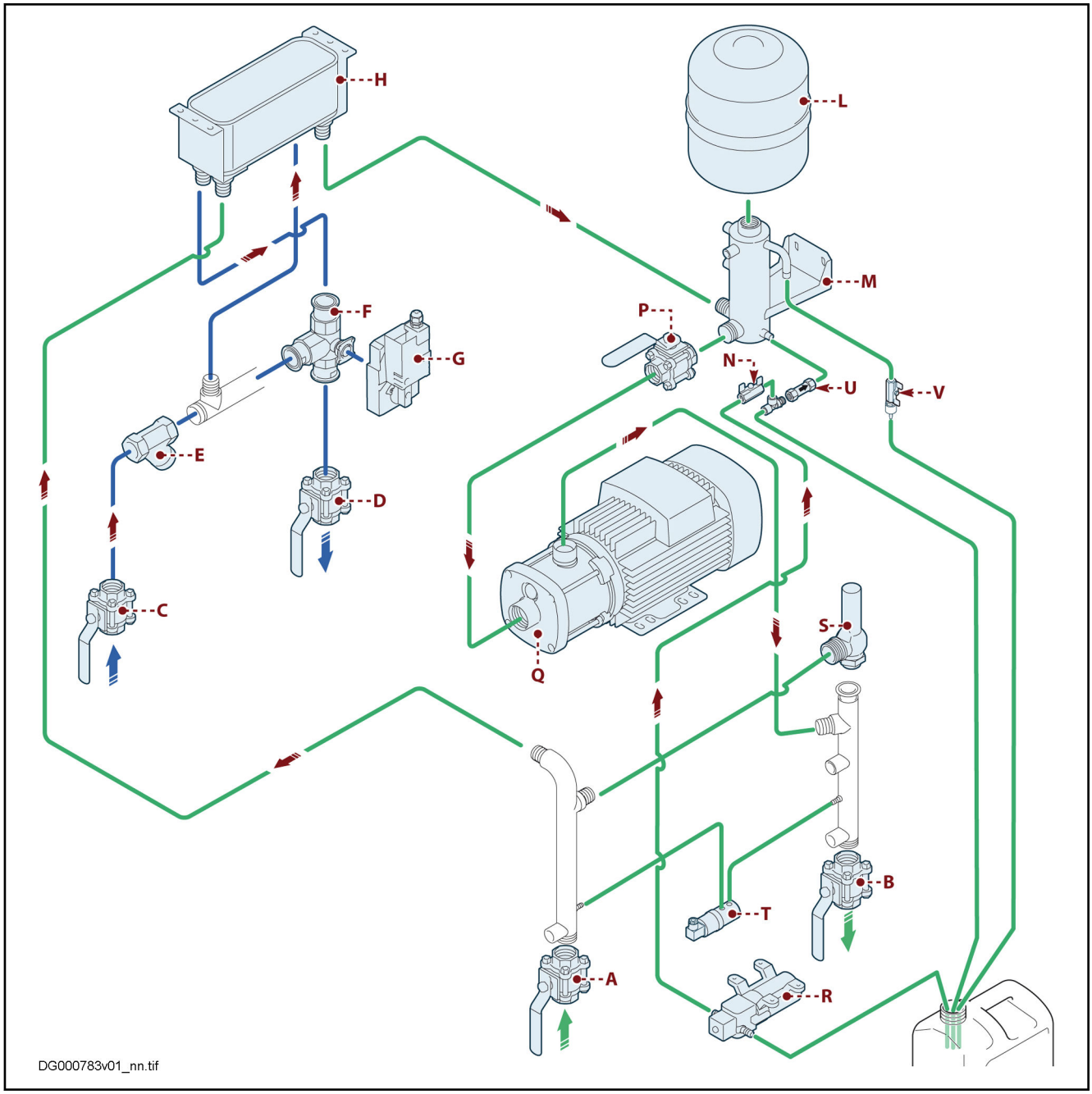
A	Terminal box
B	Main pump
C	Filling pump
D	Heat exchanger
E	Expansion tank
F	Coolant manifold

Fig. 8-114: Main components

Operational cycle and component description

In the customer side circuit, the cold liquid coming from the owner’s external system, via the heat exchanger, cools the fluid in the drive circuit and consequently the machine to be cooled.

The temperature of the fluid in the drive circuit is controlled by the mixing valve of the primary circuit that adjusts the flow of the cold liquid into the heat exchanger.



A	**Ball valve:** It opens and closes the return fluid from the equipment to be cooled
B	**Ball valve:** It opens and closes the delivery fluid to the equipment to be cooled
C	**Ball valve:** It opens and closes the flow of the coolant from the owner's system
D	**Ball valve:** It opens and closes the flow of the coolant towards the owner's system
E	**Filter:** It filters the incoming liquid
F	**Mixing valve:** It automatically varies the flow rate of the coolant in the heat exchanger in order to increase or decrease the temperature of the fluid in the drive circuit
G	**Actuator:** It controls the mixing valve in order to adjust the cold liquid in the heat exchanger

H	**Heat exchanger:** It lowers the temperature of the coolant in the drive circuit
L	**Expansion tank:** It maintains the pressure in the drive circuit constant
M	**Coolant manifold**
N	**Valve:** This is used to release any backpressure in the filling pump delivery line and facilitate priming.
P	**Valve:** It is used to open and close the flow of the main pump
Q	**Main pump:** It makes the coolant circulate in the drive circuit
R	**Filling pump:** Fills the cooling circuit
S	**Bypass valve:** It limits the pressure of the output liquid
T	**Pressure sensor:** It measures the differential pressure between the intake and the outlet of the machine to be cooled
U	**Check valve:** It prevents the liquid from flowing into the filling pump when it is being primed or is deactivated.
V	**Bleed valve:** To bleed air from the system

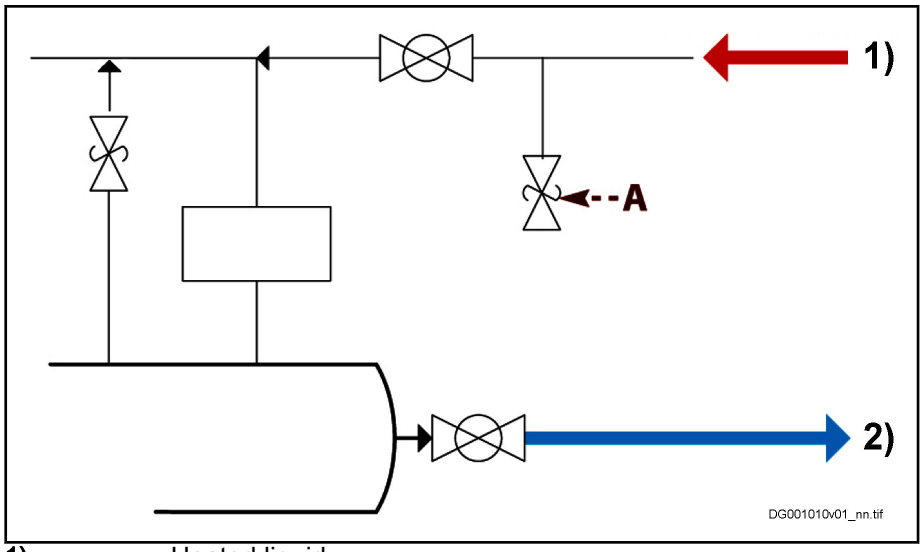
Fig. 8-115: Operating cycle and component description

Guards

The owner has to fit the machine with suitable guards in conformity with the regulations in force, in order to prevent the risk of injury.

Overpressure devices

If additional pumps (external to the machine) are installed on the circuit or if the drop in pressure of the hydraulic load is less than 1.5 bar, the owner has to fit a pressure limiting valve. The valve has to limit the pressure to a maximum of 2 bar in the return pipe to the machine.



1)	Heated liquid
2)	Cooled liquid
A	Pressure limiting valve

Fig. 8-116: Positioning of the pressure limiting valve (A)

Overall dimensions

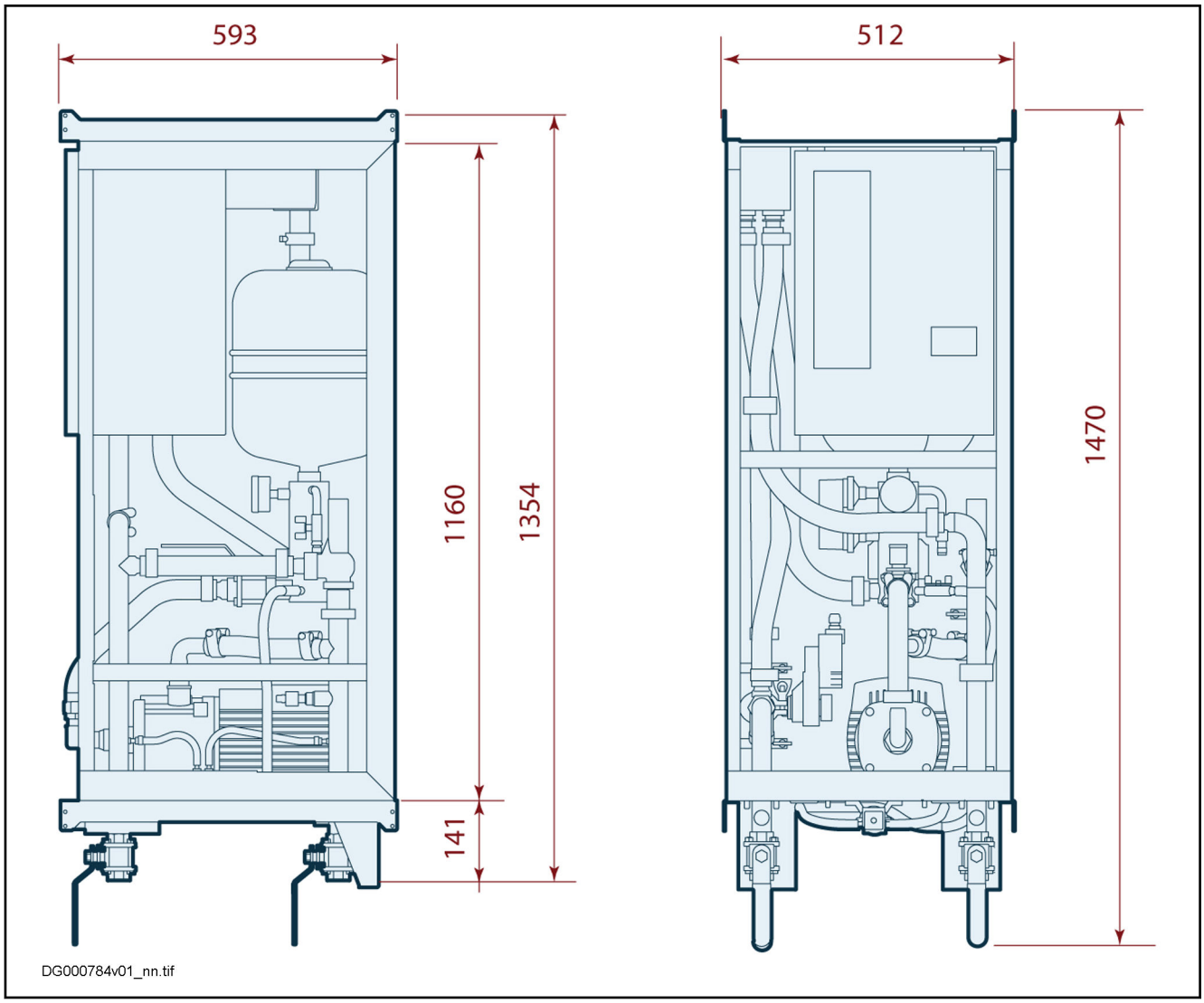


Fig. 8-117: Overall dimensions

Data

Technical data - machine

Designation	Unit	WW008-020	WW035-090
Power voltage	Vac	380 (-15%) … 500 (+10%)	
Frequency	Hz	50/60	
Input current	A	2.3	3.5
Maximum cooling capacity	kW	8	35
Maximum inlet flow rate in the customer's circuit	l/min	30	120
Maximum output flow rate in the drive circuit	l/min	20	90
Maximum input pressure of the coolant in the customer's circuit	bar	7	
Maximum input pressure of the coolant in the drive circuit	bar	2	
Maximum outlet pressure of the coolant in the drive circuit	bar	4.5	
Maximum coolant temperature (customer circuit)	°C	50	
Minimum coolant temperature (customer circuit)	°C	10	
Maximum coolant temperature (drive circuit)	°C	70 [1)]	
Minimum coolant temperature (drive circuit)	°C	30	
Drive circuit coolant (monoethyl glycol and demineralized water solution) See also chapter "Liquid cooling" on page 53.	-	20% glycol	
Estimated amount of coolant (heat exchanger only)	l	approx. 30	
Coolant in the customer's circuit	-	See tab. 8-120 "Water quality specification" on page 384	
Ambient temperature during operation	°C	+5 … +55	
Ambient temperature during operation (compliant with UL)	°C	+5 … +40	
Maximum relative humidity without condensation	%	95	
Maximum installation height	m	2000	
Weight	kg	115	120

1) comply with the maximum permissible temperature of the coolant used

Tab. 8-119: Technical data - machine

Water quality specification

Pos.	Chemical element	Unit	Request
1	pH value	Section	7 … 8.5
2	Temporary hardness	°fH	< 5.0
3	Total hardness	°fH	< 10.0
4	Conductivity	µS/cm	150 … 1000
5	Particle size	mm	0.02
6	Suspended particles	mg/l	< 0.2
7	Residue at 105 °C	mg/l	< 450
8	$KMnO_4$ usage	mg/l	< 0.1
9	Ammonia	mg/l	< 0.1
10	Mineral oil	mg/l	< 0.1
11	Iron (FE)	mg/l	< 0.5
12	Zinc (Zn)	mg/l	< 0.5
13	Manganese (Mn)	mg/l	< 0.2
14	Phosphorus (P)	mg/l	< 1.0
15	Copper (Cu)	mg/l	< 0.2
16	Fluoride (F^-)	mg/l	< 1.0
17	Nitrate (NO_3^-)	mg/l	< 10.0
18	Free carbon dioxide	mg/l	8 … 15
19	Oxygen (O)	mg/l	< 0.2
20	Alkalinity ($CaCO_3$)	mg/l	< 200
21	Sulfate (SO_4^{2-})	mg/l	< 100
22	Chloride (Cl^-)	mg/l	< 50

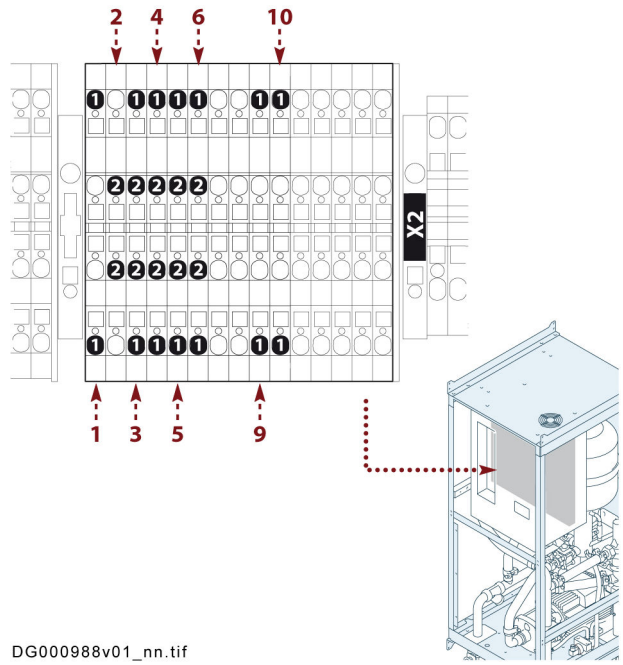
Tab. 8-120: Water quality specification

ENABLE, UNIT ERROR and UNIT WARNING connections

The signals used to enable the relative machine status via the operator's control terminal are transmitted via the terminal block shown in the figure.

Connect the lines to the terminals shown in the "terminal connections" table.

Terminal box X2

Pos.	Significance	Terminals
9.1 - 2.2	Terminals for machine enable via the operator's control terminal (ENABLE)	
3.1 - 3.2 4.1 - 4.2	Machine error signal terminals Closed contact: no error	
5.1 - 5.2 6.1 - 6.2	Warning signal terminals Closed contact: no warning	
10.1 - 1.1	Terminals for remote alarm reset.	

Tab. 8-121: Connection terminals (terminal box X2)

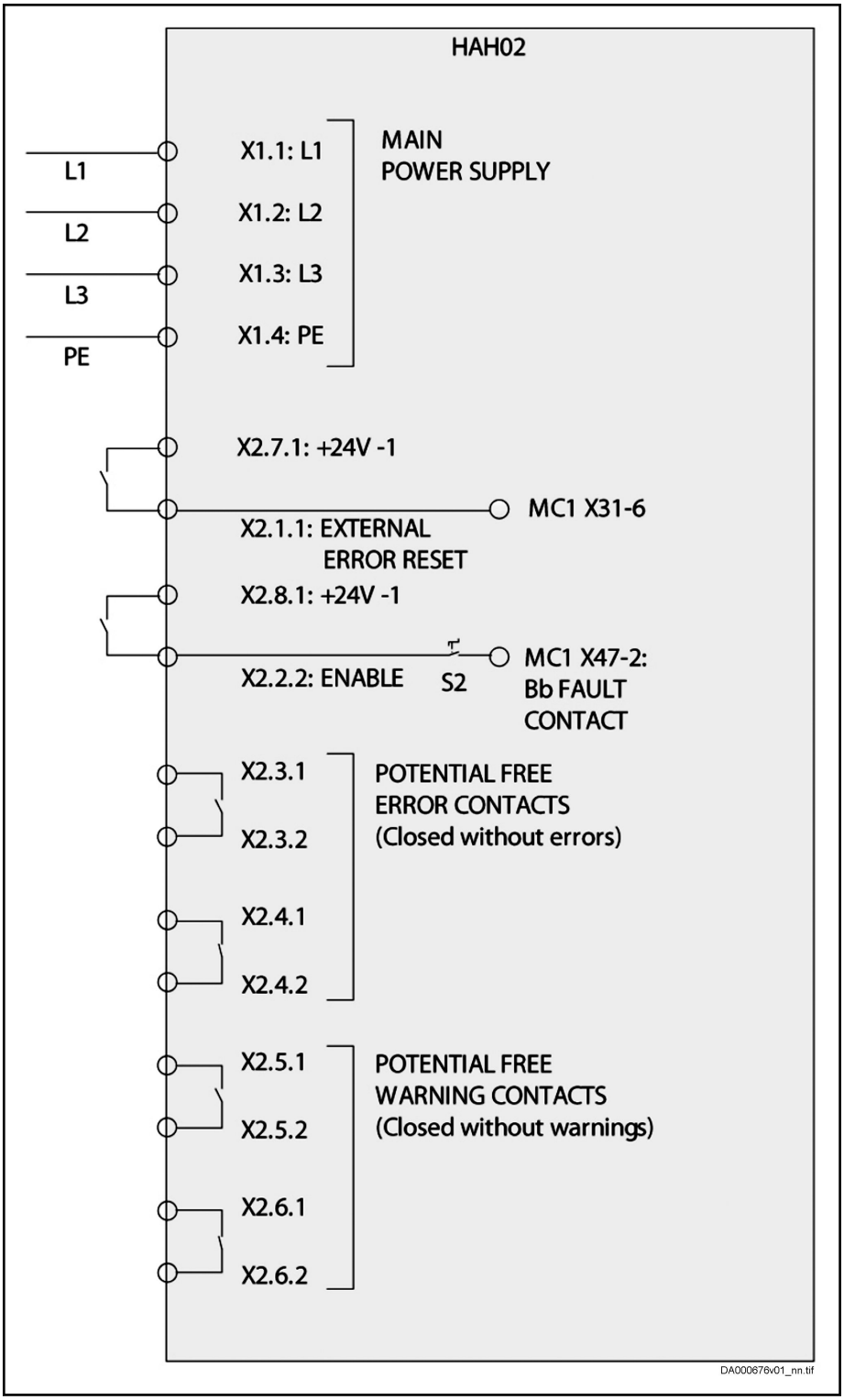
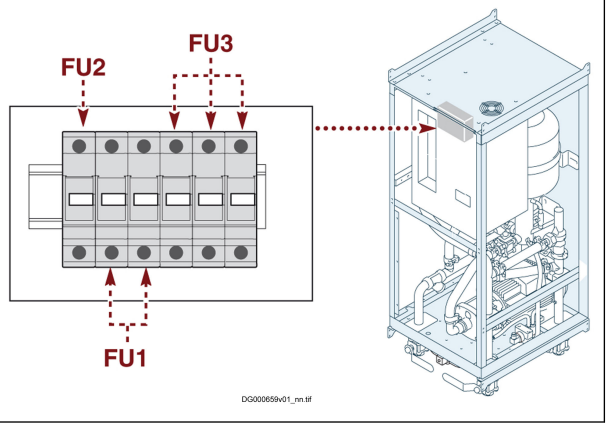


Fig. 8-118: Circuit diagram

Fuses

Name	Current (A)		Type	Rated voltage (Vac)	Inter-ruption capacity (kW)	Fuse	Position
	35-90	08-20					
FU1	1	1	CC	600	200	Delayed	
FU2	4	4					
FU3	6	3					

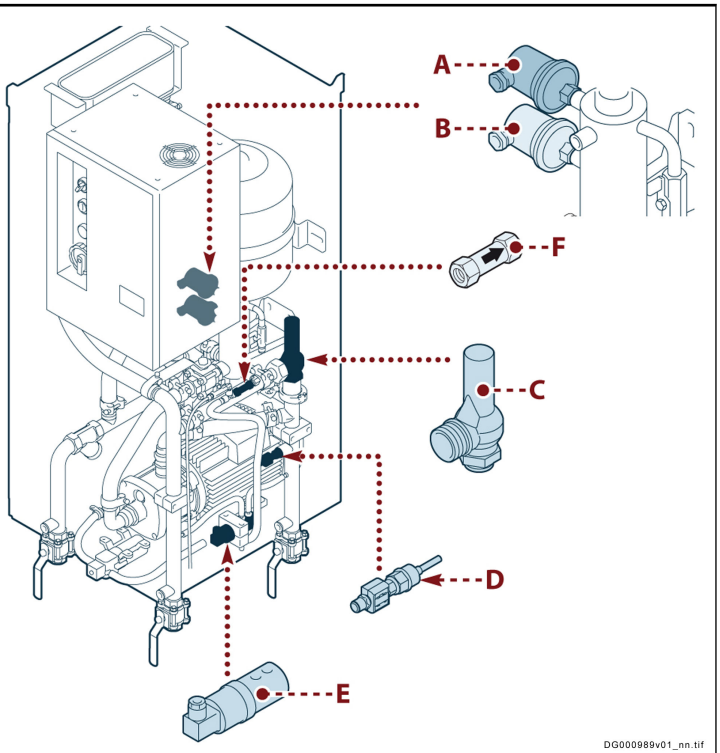
Tab. 8-122: Fuses

Processing and protection devices

⚠ WARNING **Serious health and safety risks**

Do not tamper with, circumvent, remove or bypass processing and protection devices; Failure to comply with this requirement may cause serious health and safety risks.

A	**Pressure switch (0.5 bar):** This detects the pressure level in the intake manifold. The pressure switch allows a warning to be signaled when the pressure falls below 0.5 bar.
B	**Pressure switch (0.2 bar):** This detects the pressure level in the intake manifold. The pressure switch allows an "error" to be signaled when the pressure falls below 0.2 bar and stops machine operation.
C	**Bypass valve:** This is used to keep the fluid pressure in the drive circuit outlet pipe within the maximum limit allowed.
D	**Temperature sensor:** This detects the coolant temperature in the drive circuit outlet pipe. Depending on the temperature detected, the system will signal either a "warning"(temperature too high) or an "error" (temperature continues to rise, resulting in machine shutdown).
E	**Pressure sensor:** This detects, in real time, the differential pressure between the intake pipe and the drive circuit outlet pipe. The sensor helps maintain a constant pressure in the outlet line of the drive circuit.
F	**Check valve:** It prevents the liquid from flowing into the filling pump when it is being primed or is deactivated.



Tab. 8-123: Operating and safety equipment

Ambient conditions for operation

The machine operates properly under the specified ambient conditions (chapter "Data" on page 383).

The machine is able to function properly at installation altitudes up to 2000 m above sea level.

Intended use

The machine is designed and manufactured to cool electric or electronic equipment or machines.

The machine has to be installed in enclosed spaces and protected from environmental influences.

Any other form of use that is not specified or included in this project planning manual, or that cannot be inferred from them, is considered unintended and is therefore not permitted.

Unintended and unauthorized uses

The use of coolants with properties other than the coolants specified by the manufacturer is not permitted.

The machine must not be used in a flammable or hazardous environment.

The machine may only be commissioned after it has been verified that the system or machine in which it is installed complies with applicable national and local regulations.

Residual risks

Risk of crushing: When moving the machine, incorrect manoeuvres or improper handling of the load may pose a risk of injury to the operators involved.

Risk of electric shock: Maintenance operations or replacement of components may involve a risk of electric shock due to accidental contact with live electrical components.

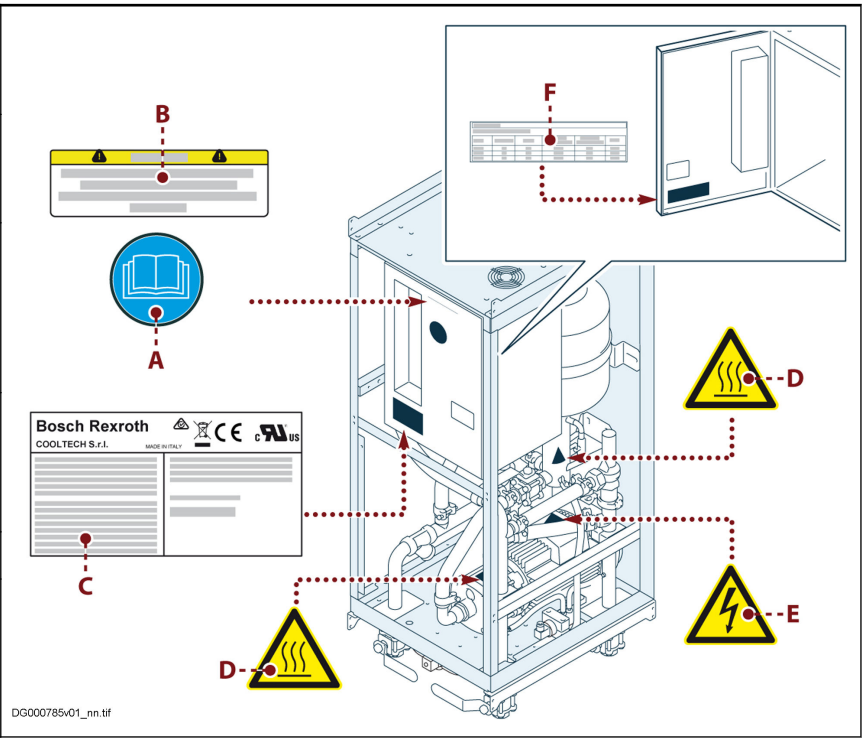
Thermal risk: Contact with hot surfaces can cause burns. Allow the machine to cool down before any operation.

Information and safety signs

⚠ WARNING

Check that all the plates are legible. If they are not, clean them or - if they are damaged - replace them, applying the new ones in the same place as the old one.

A	This indicates the obligation for operators to read the instruction manual before operating the machine.
B	Risk of serious injury or death. Disconnect the machine from the power supply before starting work.
C	Technical data of the machine and manufacturer's specification (chapter "Manufacturer's details and machine identification details" on page 374).
D	This indicates that there is the risk of burns due to contact with hot surfaces. Allow the machine to cool down before any operation.
E	Risk of electric shock
F	Shows the technical properies of the fuses



Tab. 8-124: Warning and safety signs

Transporting and installing

Transport and installation safety recommendations

Personnel responsible for transport of the load must have the required qualification and experience and must be trained in handling the lifting gear used.

Use lifting gear with suitable load capacity in order to lift and move the load.

Persons authorized for transport must take appropriate measures to ensure their own safety and the safety of persons directly involved.

Place the package on a stable surface.

Observe the specified limit when stacking packages in order to prevent sudden shifts.

Upon reception, each package must be inspected to verify the integrity and the exact quantity of its contents. In case items are damaged or missing, contact the importer or the manufacturer directly to discuss the procedure to be adopted.

Packaging

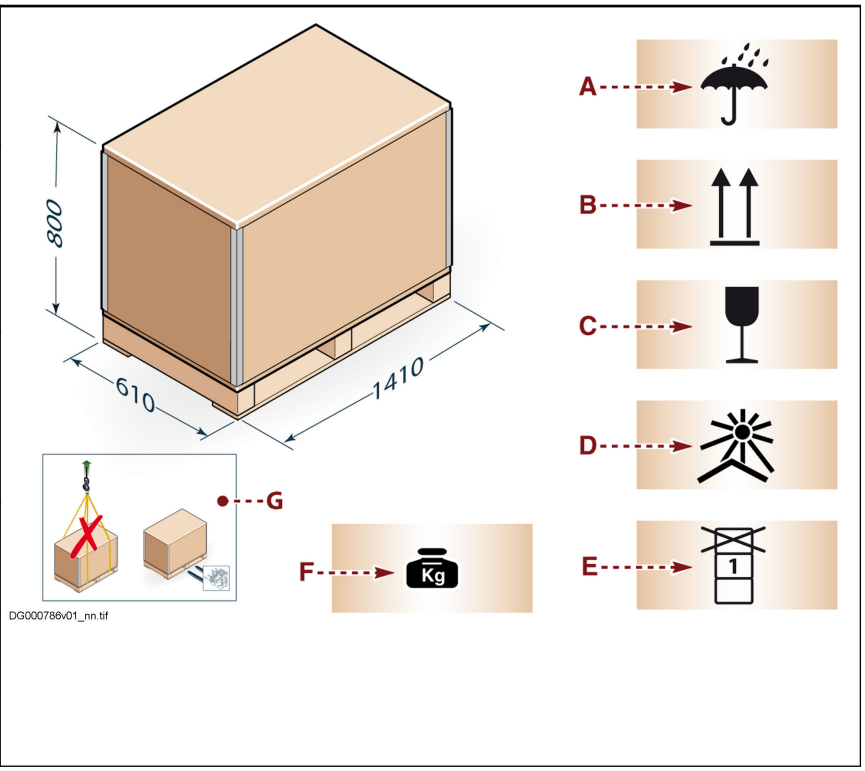
The packaging is selected according to the selected means of transport and the destination.

Packages can either be loaded directly onto a means of transport or into suitable containers if shipped by sea or air or to far-off destinations.

In order to facilitate transport, some components are removed and properly protected.

The figure shows the type of packaging most frequently used and the maximum dimensions as well as the warning symbols and notices attached to the packages.

A	This symbol means the packed machine must be stored in a dry place: its contents may be damaged by dampness.
B	This symbol means the packed machine must be kept upright.
C	This symbol means the packed machine must be handled with care: its contents are fragile.
D	This symbol indicates that the package must be kept away from direct sunlight and heat sources to avoid exposing its content to excessively high temperatures.
E	This symbol indicates the maximum number of packages that can be stacked.
F	This symbol indicates the overall weight of the package.
G	The plate shows the procedure for lifting the package.



Tab. 8-125: Package description

Transporting and lifting the packed machine

The figure shows how to lift the package.

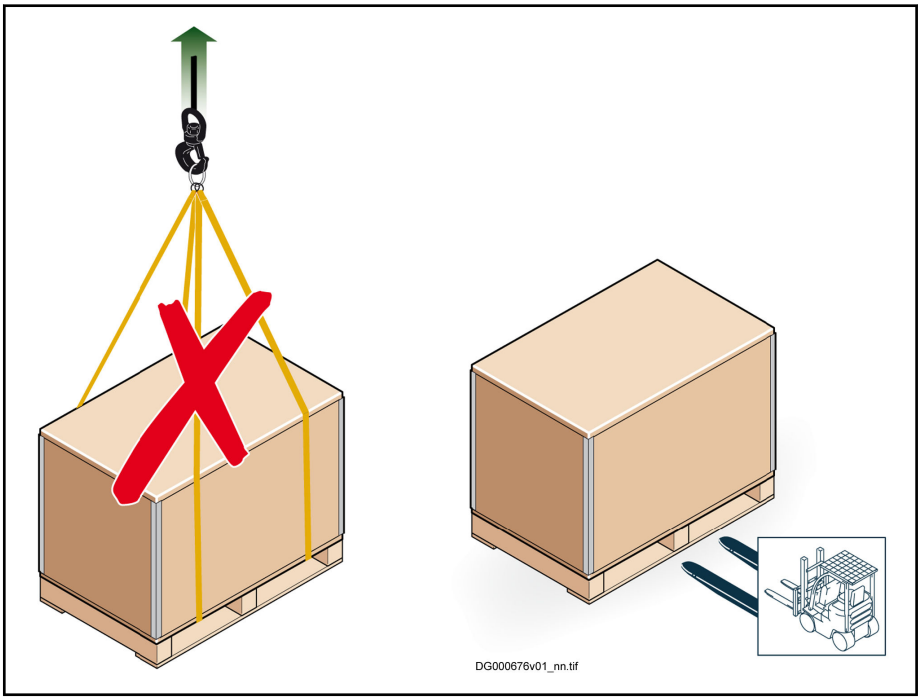


Fig. 8-119: Transporting and lifting the packed machine

Storage

If the machine is not going to be used for an extended period, it should be stored (possibly without unpacking it, or at least adequately protected) in a sheltered place protected from atmospheric agents at a temperature between -20 and +60 °C.

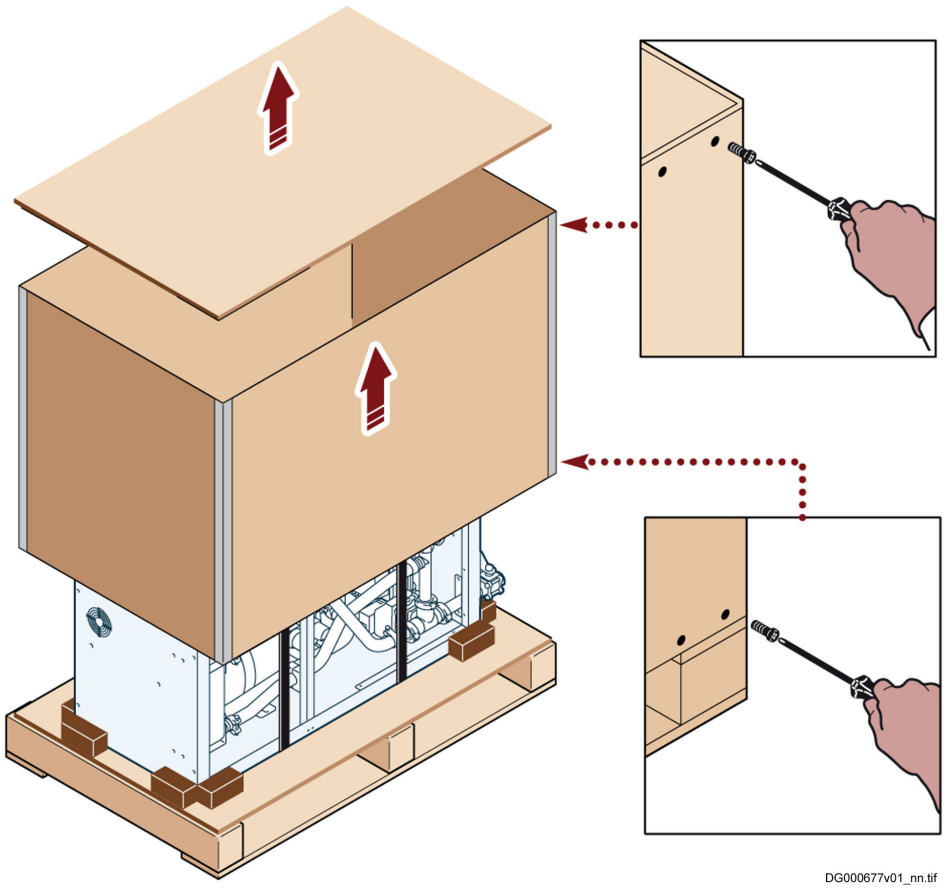
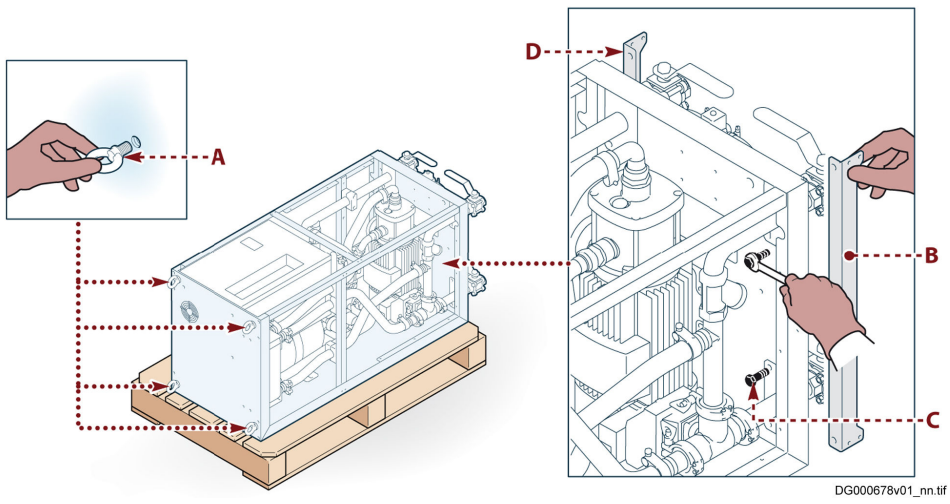
Avoid storing the machine in places where weather conditions could prejudice its good working order.

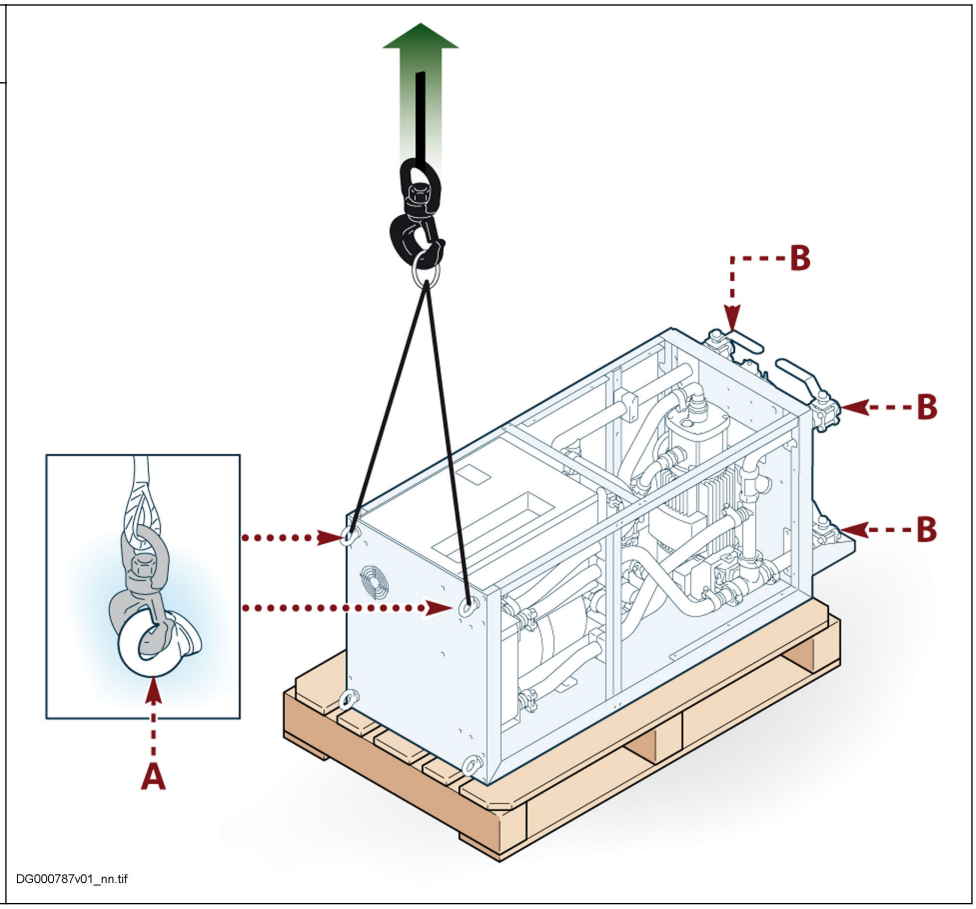
Unpacking

It is advisable to unpack the machine near the installation area to facilitate assembly.

The figure shows how to unpack the machine properly.

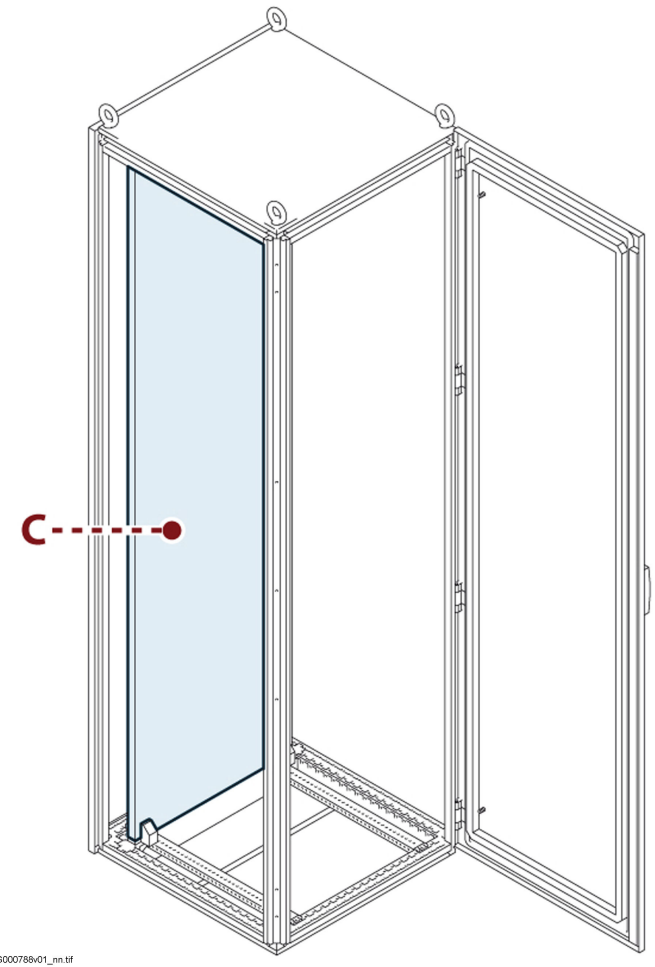
Proceed as described.

1	Unscrew the screws.	
2	Remove the cover.	
3	Lift the side walls of the packaging.	
4	Remove the locking items and retaining straps.	
5	Screw in the eyebolts (**A**).	
6	Position the bracket (**B**).	
7	Tighten the screws (**C**).	
8	Fit the bracket (**D**) with the relevant screws.	

9	Hook the ropes onto the eyebolts (**A**).	
10	**WARNING!** When lifting pay attention to the machine swinging movement as the lifting point is never perfectly barycentric. Sudden movements may injure the people involved in the operations. **NOTICE!** When lifting, take care not to damage the valves (**B**). Lift the machine. The packaging material (wood, propylene, etc,.) can be kept for future use or properly disposed of according to the regulations in force.	

Tab. 8-126: Unpacking

Mounting the machine

The machine is intended for installation into a RITTAL cabinet (model TS8 8006-500). Before mounting the machine, remove the wall (**C**).	

Tab. 8-127: Control cabinet

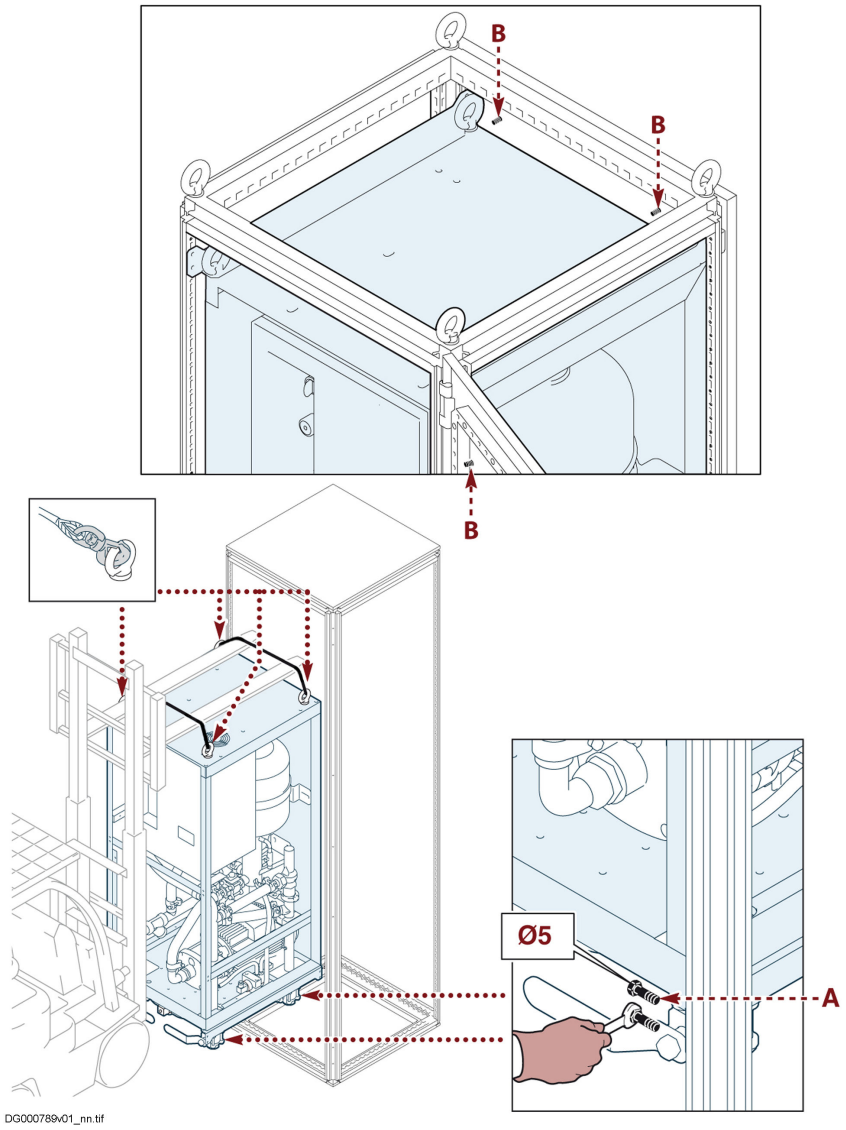
The installation area has to be provided with electrical connections and connections for transmission of machine enabling/status signals.

Carry out the following work as described.

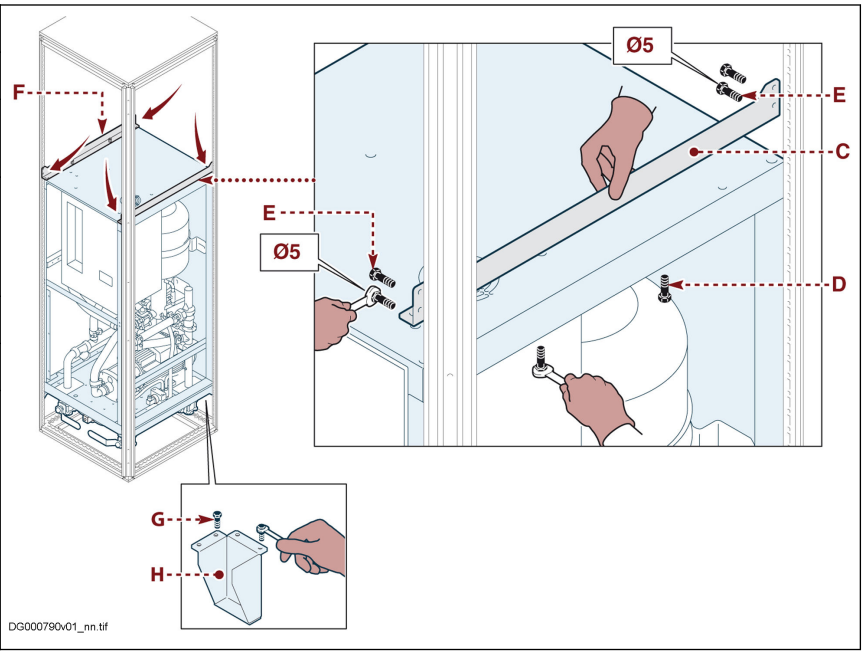
There must be enough space above the machine to connect the grounding points (B) of the cabinet.

Align the holes for attaching the machine in accordance with the nearest holes of the cabinet so that the required space above the machine is available.

1	Strap up the machine as shown in the figure.
2	Lift the machine and place the machine in the installation area.
3	Screw in the self-tapping screws (**A**) to lock the machine onto the support.
4	Lock the machine in the same way on the opposite side.
5	Unscrew the eyebolts.



6	Position the bracket (**C**).
7	Tighten the screws (**D**).
8	Screw in the self-tapping screws (**E**).
9	Fit the bracket (**F**) in the same way. Decide whether the valve caps can be removed or not.
10	Unscrew the screws (**G**).
11	Remove the protection device (**H**).
12	Repeat the process for removing the other protection device.



Tab. 8-128: Mounting the machine

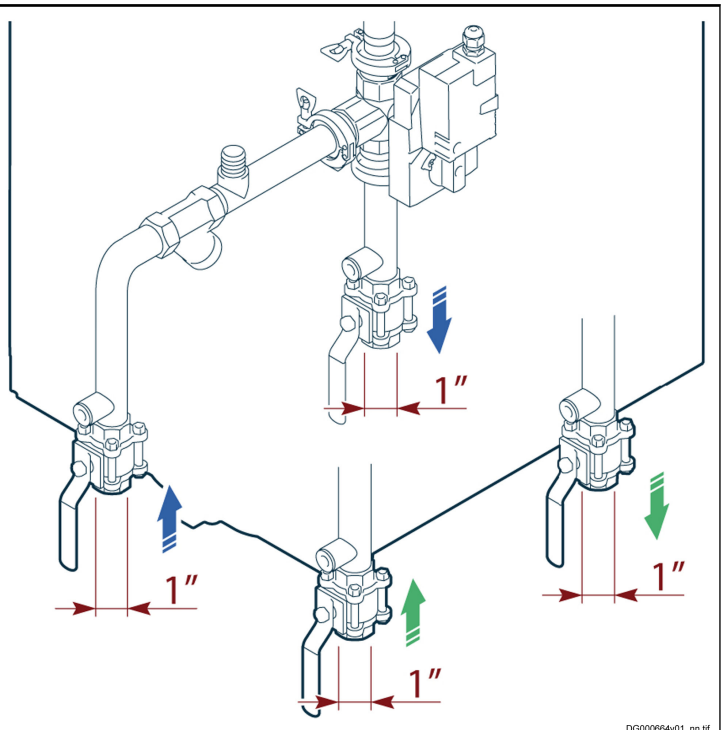
Electrical connection

The electrical connections must be performed at professional standards in compliance with all legislative requirements and regulations.

Use a 4 G-AWG 12 cable (three-phase conductors + equipment grounding conductor).

Connect the three phases (L1, L2 and L3) and the equipment grounding conductor to the relevant terminals inside the terminal box.

Hose connections

The owner has to install devices to adjust the pressure and discharge in the intake pipe of the customer side circuit and in the return pipe of the drive circuit. Set the pressure in the intake and return pipes to the values shown in chapter "Data" on page 383. Use flexible tubes with an internal diameter of not less than 25 mm. Use connectors with an internal diameter of not less than 20 mm.	

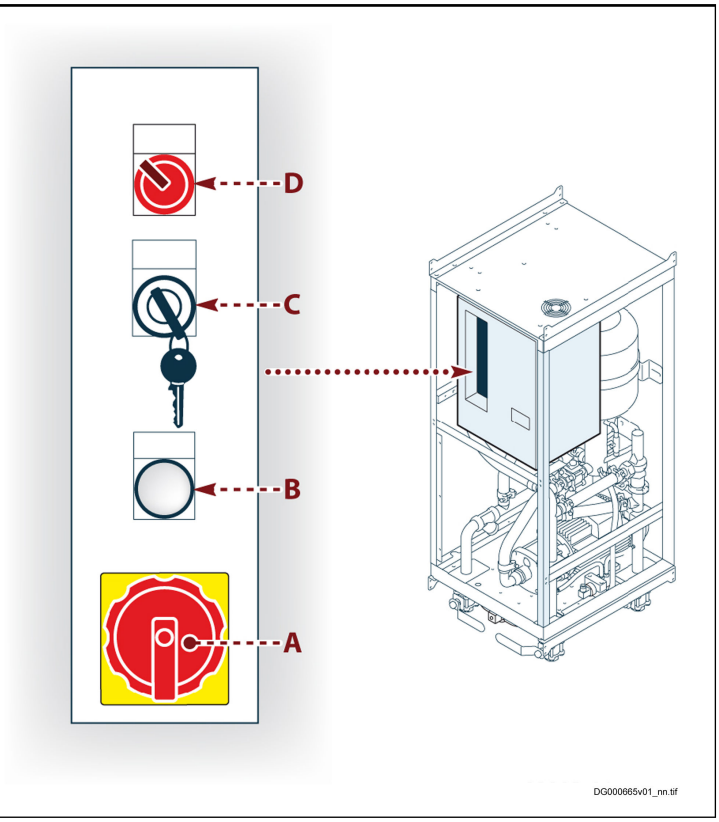
Tab. 8-129: Hose connections

Usage

Safety instruction regarding Usage replacement

Before commissioning the machine, ensure that the system or machine in which it is installed complies with applicable local regulations and directives.

Control elements and indicator lamps

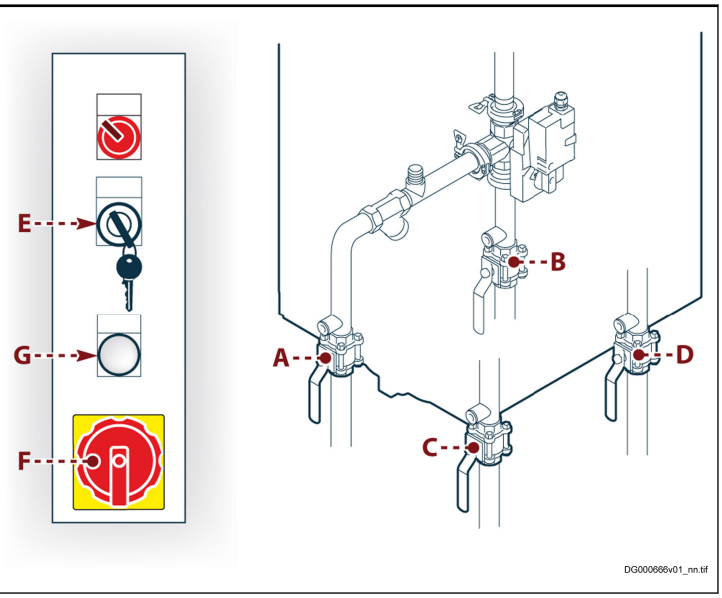
A	**Main switch:** It is used for connecting and disconnecting the power supply to machine. The indicator lamp (**B**) lights up.	
B	**Indicator lamp (white light):** Indicates that the power supply to the machine has been enabled.	
C	**Key-operated two-position stay-put selector switch:** To enable or disable the main pump. The key has to be kept by the designated staff member and available to the staff responsible for technical servicing.	
D	**Two-position stay-put back-lit switch (red light):** This is used to switch the filling pump on and off.	

Tab. 8-130: Warning and safety signs

Switching on

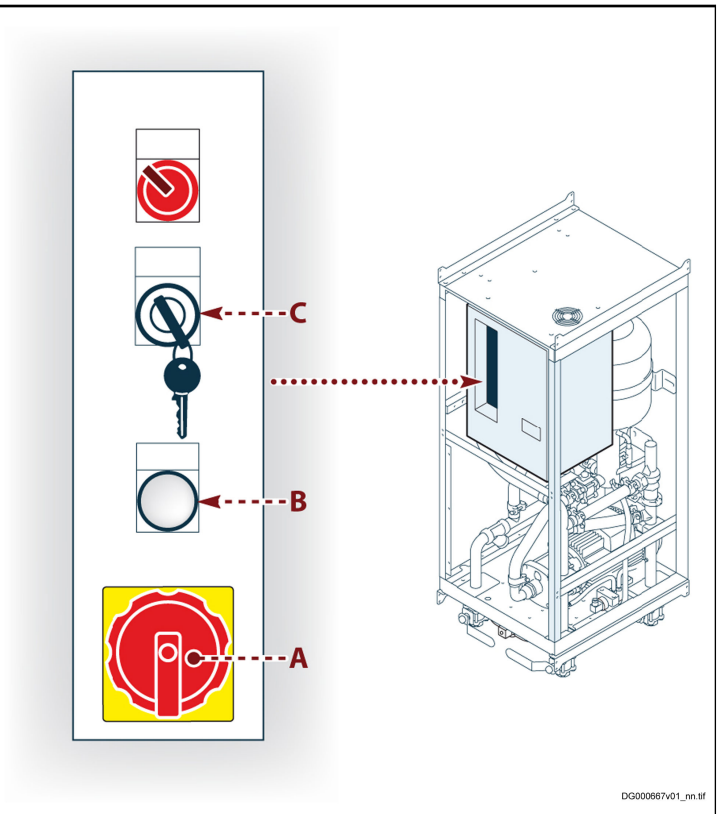
When starting the machine for the first time fill the drive circuit (see chapter "Filling the drive circuit" on page 402).

To turn on the machine, follow these steps.

1	Open the ball valves (**A - B - C - D**).	
2	Ensure that liquid is flowing through the customer's circuit.	
3	Turn the main switch (**F**) to the "ON" position. The indicator light (**G**) lights up.	
4	Turn the key selector (**E**) to the "ON" position. Machine start-up has to be performed using the operator terminal of the machine to be cooled, via the "ENABLE" connection (see chapter "ENABLE, UNIT ERROR and UNIT WARNING connections" on page 577).	

Tab. 8-131: Switching on

Switching off

Switching off with the main switch 1. Turn the main switch (A) to the "OFF" position. • The indicator lamp (B) will switch off. • Machine operation is stopped, and the power supply to the terminal box is cut off. • The supply terminals remain live.	
Switching off with the key-operated switch This switch-off mode is reserved for authorized personnel. 1. Insert the key into the selector switch (**C**). 2. Turn the selector switch to the "OFF" position. • Operation of the main pump stops. • The terminal box at the machine remains live.	
Remote-controlled switch-off Remote-controlled switch-off has to be performed using the owner's operator terminal, via the "ENABLE" connection. • Operation of the main pump stops. • The terminal box at the machine remains live.	
Switching off automatically The machine stops automatically if the pressure in the cooling circuit drops below 0.2 bar and the temperature of the cooling liquid exceeds the preset upper limit (parameter P-0-1318).	

Tab. 8-132: Switching off

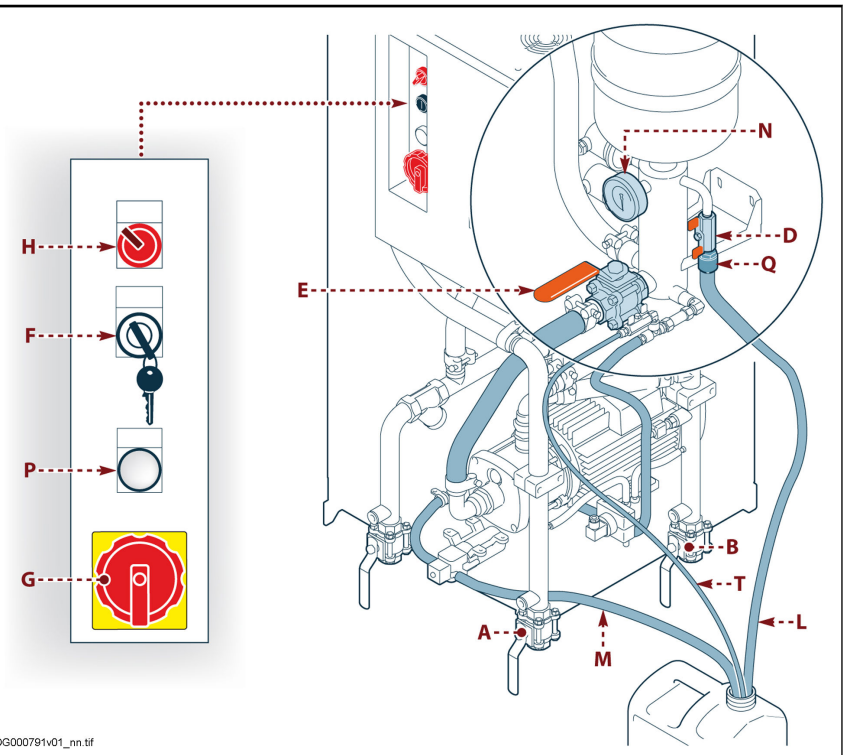
Switching off in emergency conditions

To switch off the device in the event of imminent danger (emergency stop), turn the main switch (**A**) to the "OFF" position.

Resolve the cause of the emergency off before turning the machine back on.

Filling the drive circuit

Check to make sure that the installation and the electrical and hydraulic connections have been performed properly in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

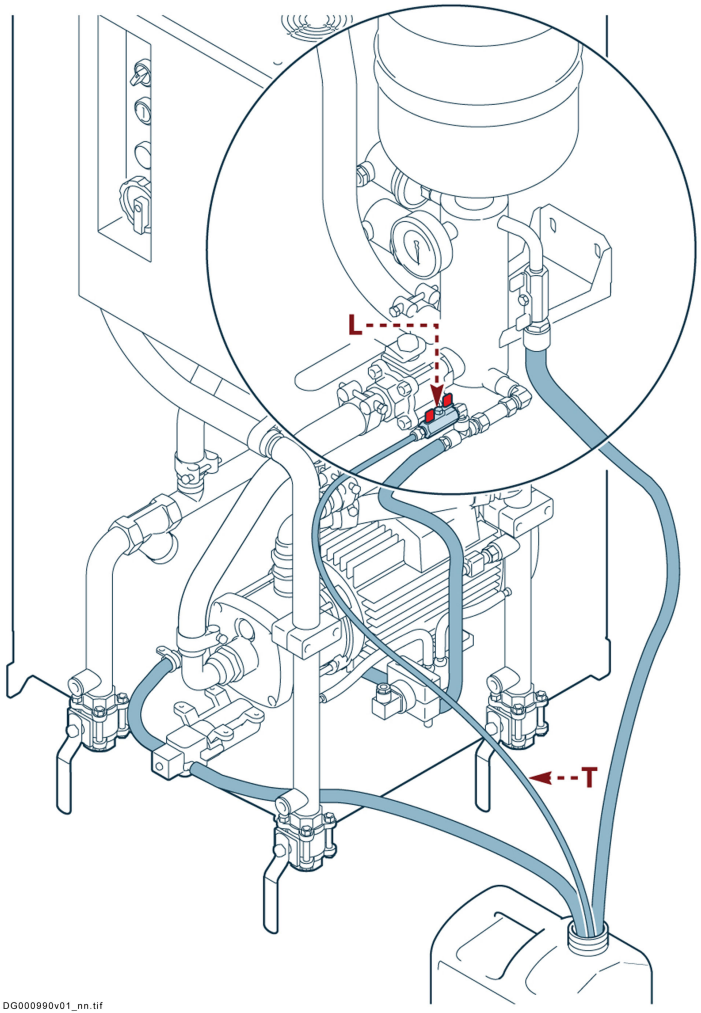
1	Fill a tank with an appropriate amount of fluid solution (see chapter "Data" on page 383).	
2	Fit the pipes (**L - M - T**) into the tank.	
3	Open the ball valve (**A**).	
4	Open the ball valve (**B**).	
5	Open the valve (**D**). If no coolant comes out, clean the connector (**Q**) (see chapter "Cleaning the connector of the bleed valve" on page 409).	
6	Open the valve (**E**).	
7	Turn the key-operated selector switch (**F**) to the "OFF" position to prevent unexpected activation of the main pump.	
8	Ensure that the remote-controlled "ENABLE" function has been activated.	
9	**NOTICE!** Do **not** turn the key-operated selector switch (F) to the "ON" position since this could cause damage to the main pump. Open any valves that may be installed outside the machine as part of the cooling circuit for the machine.	
10	Turn the main switch (**G**) to the "ON" position. The indicator light (**P**) lights up.	
11	Turn the selector switch (**H**) to activate the fill pump. Ensure that there is always sufficient fluid in the tank. If the filling pump does not prime automatically, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 404).	
12	When the fluid is running out of the clear tube (**L**) in a steady stream (no bubbles) and the pressure has reached 1.4 … 2.2 bar, turn the key-operated selector switch (F) to the "ON" position to activate the main pump in the automatic mode. The pressure is displayed on the pressure gauge (**N**). **NOTICE!** The filling pump turns on and off automatically and maintains the pressure at 1.4 … 2.2 bar. The main pump is activated only when the circuit pressure reaches over 0.2 bar. During this stage, a sudden drop in pressure may occur. The pressure drop is caused by the air pumped into the circuit as a result of activation of the main pump. Make sure that the key-operated switch is set to "ON".	

13	Let the fill pump and the main pump run for at least 30 minutes to thoroughly flush the cooling circuit. **NOTICE!** If it is hard for the system to get up to pressure, close the valve (**D**). If the pressure exceeds 1.5 bar, turn off the filling pump and temporarily open the valve (**D**) until the correct pressure is reached. **NOTICE!** If the filling pump priming stops during the filling stage, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 404).
14	Turn the selector switch (**H**) to turn off the fill pump.
15	Close the valve (**D**) when the pressure in the circuit has reached 1.5 bar.
16	Remove the pipes from the tank.
17	Remove the key from the key switch (**F**) and store it in a safe place. After one hour of operation, check that the pressure is correct. If it is not correct, carry out the pressure restore procedure (see chapter "Restoring the pressure" on page 405).

Tab. 8-133: Fill the drive circuit

Filling pump priming procedure

If the filling pump does not prime automatically, proceed as described:

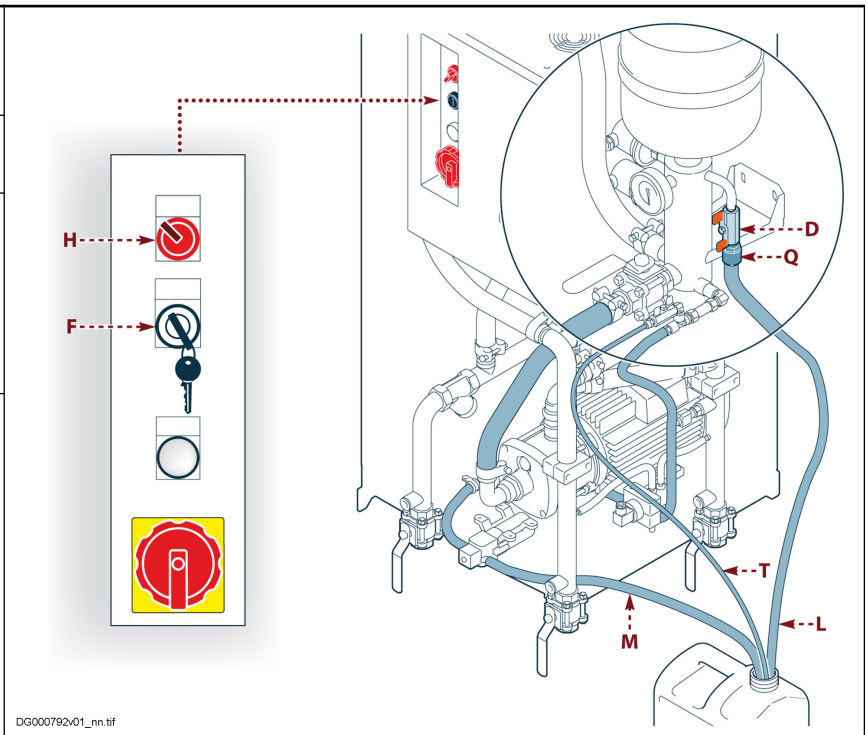
1	When the filling pump is active, open the valve (**L**).	
2	Wait for the coolant to start flowing out of the transparent hose (**T**).	
3	Close the valve (**L**) and leave the filling pump working. The filling pump is primed and starts pumping the coolant into the cooling circuit.	

Tab. 8-134: Perform the filling pump priming procedure

Restoring the pressure

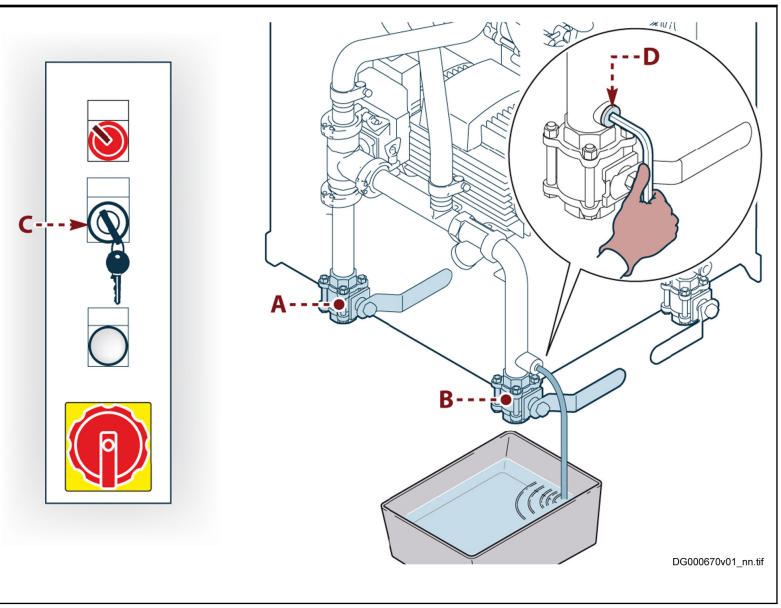
This procedure can be carried out only if the pressure is above 0.8 bar and the main pump is activated.

If the pressure is below this level, carry out the circuit filling procedure (see chapter "Filling the drive circuit" on page 402).

1	Fill a tank with an appropriate amount of fluid solution (see chapter "Data" on page 383).	
2	Fit the pipes (**L - M - T**) into the tank.	
3	Turn the selector switch (**H**) to activate the fill pump. If the filling pump does not prime automatically, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 404).	
4	Open the spigot (**D**) and keep open until the fluid is running out of the clear tube (**L**) in a steady stream (no bubbles) and the pressure has reached 1.5 bar. If no coolant comes out, clean the connector (**Q**) (see chapter "Cleaning the connector of the bleed valve" on page 409).	
5	**NOTICE!** If the pressure exceeds 1.5 bar, turn off the filling pump and temporarily open the valve (D) until the correct pressure is reached. **NOTICE!** If the filling pump priming stops during the filling stage, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 404). Turn the selector switch (**H**) to turn off the fill pump.	
6	Remove the pipes from the tank.	
7	Remove the key from the key switch (**F**) and store it in a safe place.	

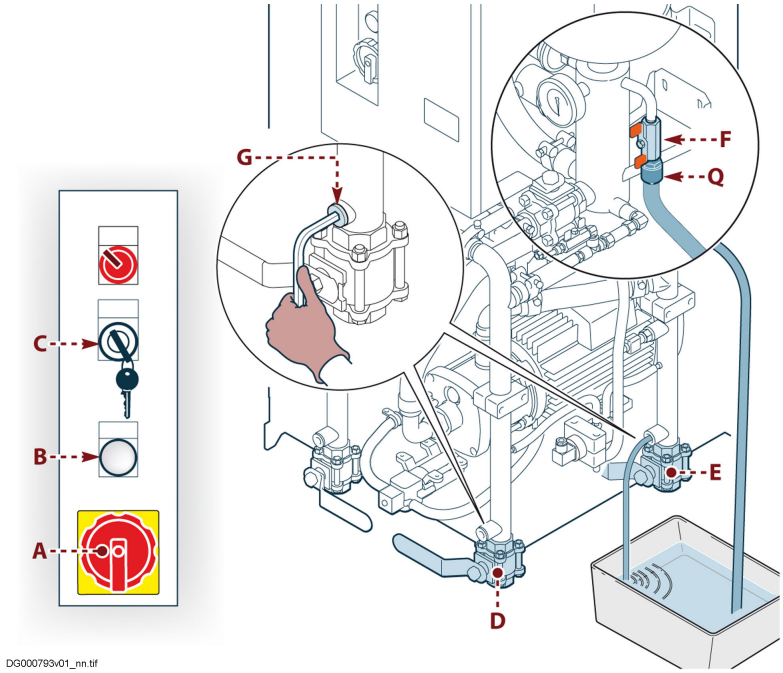
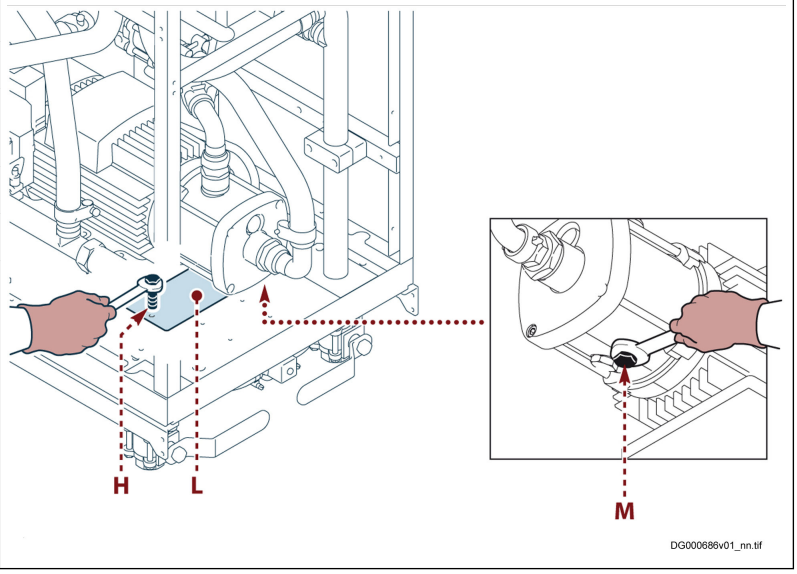
Tab. 8-135: Restoring pressure

Draining the customer circuit

1	Position a suitable container underneath to catch the coolant.	
2	Turn off the machine (see chapter "Switching off" on page 401).	
3	Turn the key selector (**C**) to the "OFF" position.	
4	Close the ball valves (**A**–**B**).	
5	Unscrew the cap (**D**).	
6	Drain the coolant completely.	
7	Screw the cap (**D**) back on. **NOTICE!** Dispose of the coolant in an environmentally friendly manner in accordance with applicable laws and regulations.	

Tab. 8-136: Drain the customer circuit

Draining the drive circuit

1	Position a suitable container underneath to catch the coolant.	
2	Turn off the machine (see chapter "Switching off" on page 401).	
3	Turn the key selector (**C**) to the "OFF" position.	
4	Turn the main switch (**A**) to the "OFF" position.	
5	The indicator lamp (**B**) will switch off.	
6	Close the ball valves (**D–E**).	
7	Open the valve (**F**). If no coolant comes out, clean the connector (**Q**) (siehe chapter "Cleaning the connector of the bleed valve" on page 409).	
8	Unscrew the caps (**G**).	
9	Drain the coolant completely.	
10	Close the valve (**F**).	
11	Screw the caps (**G**) back on.	
12	Loosen the screws (**H**).	
13	Remove the cover (**L**).	
14	Unscrew the cap (**M**) and drain the coolant from the main pump.	
15	Screw the cap (**M**) back on.	
16	Setting the cover (**L**).	
17	Tighten the screws (**H**). **NOTICE!** Dispose of the coolant in an environmentally friendly manner in accordance with applicable laws and regulations.	

Tab. 8-137: Drain the drive circuit

Maintenance

Safety advice for maintenance

For personal safety reasons, before conducting maintenance interventions, check that all safety devices are activated and warn the people present in the workplace that such intervention is underway.

In particular, disconnect the power supply to the machine.

Ensure that the voltage cannot be switched on again unintentionally.

Allow the machine to cool down before any operation to prevent burns.

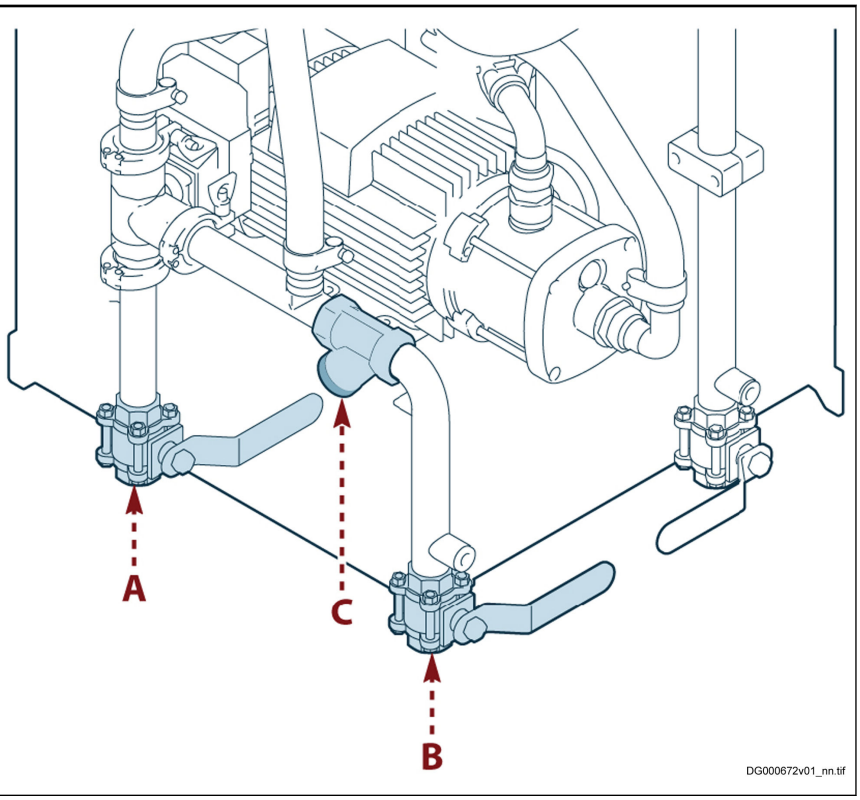
Maintenance schedule

Interval		Component	Type of work	Cross reference
Every 1600 operating hours	Every 30,000 operating hours	–	–	–
✓	–	Filter	Cleaning	See chapter "Filter cleaning in the customer side circuit" on page 408
–	✓	Main pump	Replacement	See chapter "Replacing the main pump" on page 414
–	✓	Coolant	Replacement	

Tab. 8-138: Maintenance schedule

Filter cleaning in the customer side circuit

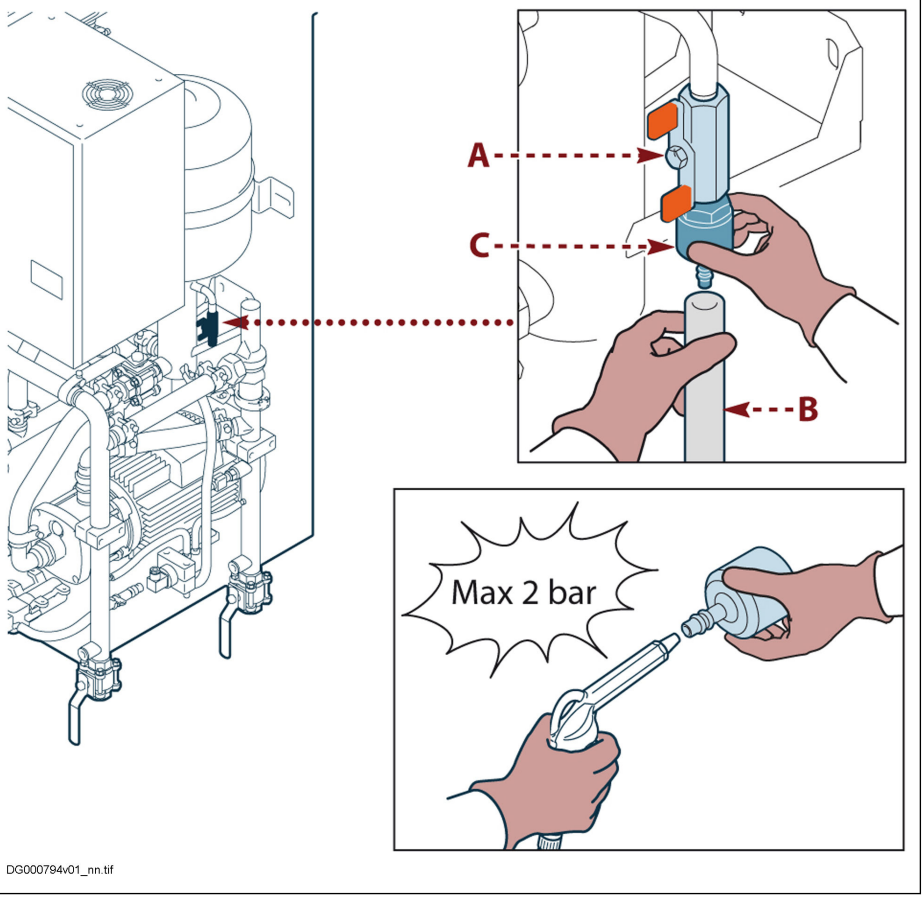
1	Drain the cooling liquid from the customer side circuit.
2	Close the intake and outlet ball valves (**A - B**).
3	Unscrew the cap (**C**).
4	Remove and clean the filter. Do not use aggressive, flammable or toxic detergents.
5	Reinsert the filter.
6	Screw the cap (**C**) back on.
7	Open the ball valves (**A - B**).



Tab. 8-139: Filter cleaning in the customer side circuit

Cleaning the connector of the bleed valve

1	Close the bleed valve (**A**).
2	Remove the hose (**B**).
3	Unscrew the connector (**C**).
4	Clean the connector with compressed air. Keep the pressure on the level indicated in the picture.
5	Screw on the connector (**C**).
6	Attach the hose (**B**) to the connector.
7	Open the bleed valve (**A**).



Tab. 8-140: Cleaning the connector

Cleaning the machine

Clean the machine with detergents that are approved in accordance with the applicable legal regulations.

Troubleshooting

The following table contains a number of faults that may occur during operation as well as appropriate corrective measures.

Code	Type	Malfunction	Likely cause	Remedy
E2011	Warning 1	Low pressure, please refill	For at least 0.5 s, the system pressure is lower than 0.5 bar (loss of water, maintenance)	Refill cooling system up to 1.5 bar
E2012	Warning 2	Unable to start drive	Motor does not start in velocity control operation	Switch off the start command for at least 10 seconds Ensure that the system has the status "AF" before starting
E2013	Warning 3	Mixing valve is not following	3MV mixing valve may have a mechanical defect or the electrical connecting cable may be damaged	Check 3MV mixing valve Check feedback signal
E2014	Warning 4	Overtemperature	Temperature exceeds the defined value (P-0-1316) of the maximum permissible deviation from required temperature (T_{set}) for a defined duration (P-0-1317)	Check cooling system Adjust parameter P-0-1316 and/or P-0-1317
E2016	Warning 6	Lower motor speed limitation active	Motor velocity < 360 min^{-1}	Increase the value of parameter P-0-1374 (> 360 min^{-1}) Ensure that the motor can run with a velocity > 360 min^{-1}
F2011	Error 1	System pressure	System pressure lower than 0.2 bar	Refill cooling system up to 1.5 bar
F2012	Error 2	Overtemperature	The fluid temperature (on the drive side) has exceeded the maximum allowed temperature limit (see parameter P-0-1318)	Check cooling system Change the value of parameter P-0-1318 if too low
		Slight leakage of cooling liquid between pump and motor	Start after long inactivity of the machine Changing the ambient conditions	Start pump [1)]

Code	Type	Malfunction	Likely cause	Remedy
		The filling pump does not start priming automatically	Suction hose empty following long period of machine disuse No coolant in the tank High backpressure in the filling pump delivery line	Perform the filling pump priming procedure
		The filling pump does not inject the coolant into the circuit	The filling pump is not primed The filling pump bleed valve is open	Perform the filling pump priming procedure Close the filling pump bleed valve

1) The pump is mechanically sealed by the cooling liquid. This type of seal (mechanical) may lead to a slight leakage of cooling liquid under certain conditions. It takes some time to minimize the leakage if the pump is started after stopping the machine or after being inactive. The required time depends on the operating conditions. The leaked cooling liquid usually evaporates immediately. The leaked cooling liquid is not visible then. **This type of leakage is not a malfunction.** Contact the service if the leakage persists for a longer period of time.

Tab. 8-141: Errors and warnings

Replacing the component

Safety advice for component exchange

For personal safety reasons, before conducting maintenance interventions, check that all safety devices are activated and warn the people present in the workplace that such intervention is underway.

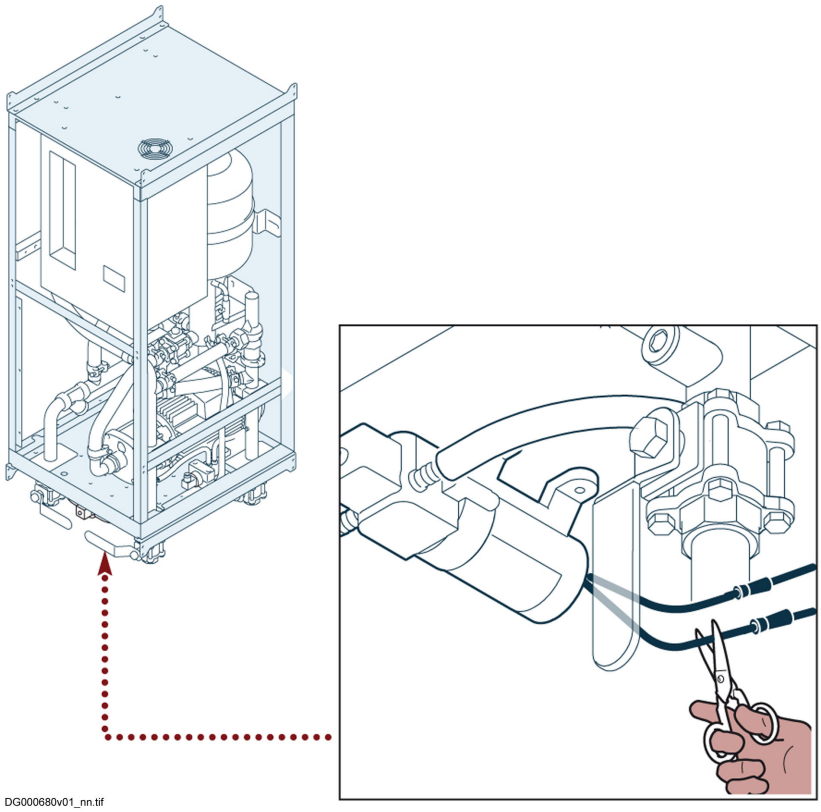
In particular, disconnect the power supply to the machine.

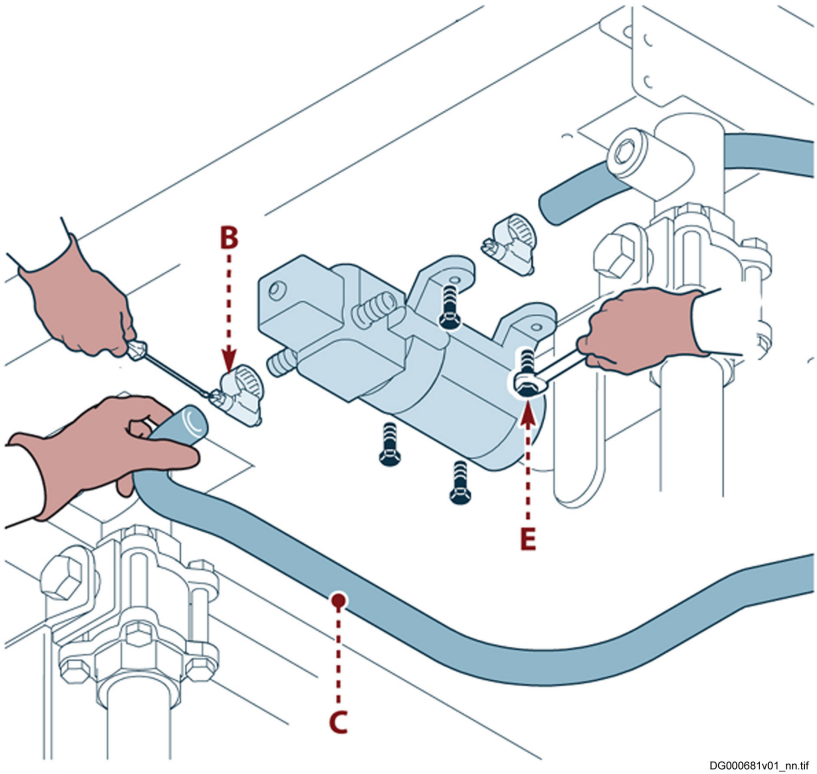
Ensure that the voltage cannot be switched on again unintentionally.

Allow the machine to cool down before any operation to prevent burns.

Replace worn or damaged parts by original spare parts.

Replacing the filling pump

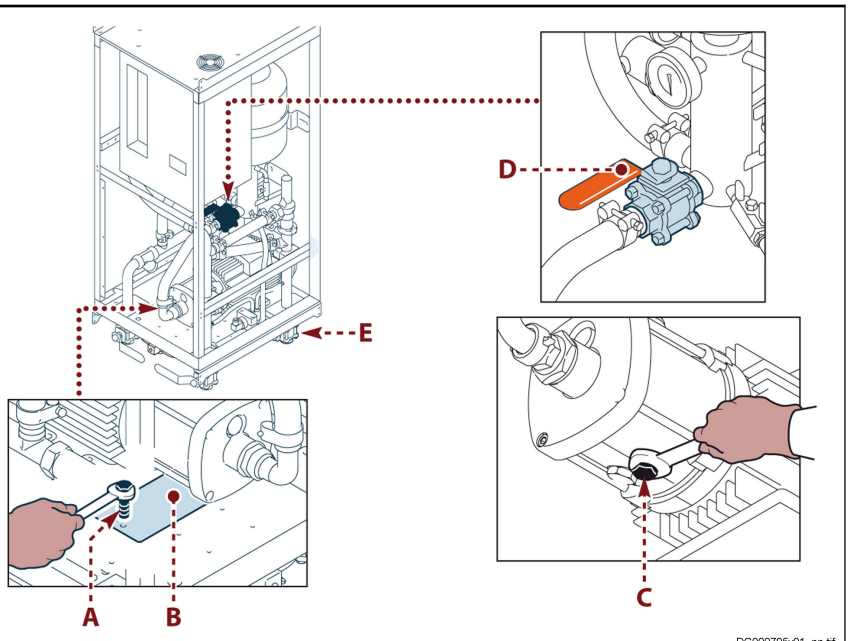
1	Disconnect the machine from the power supply source.	
2	Cut the mains cables.	

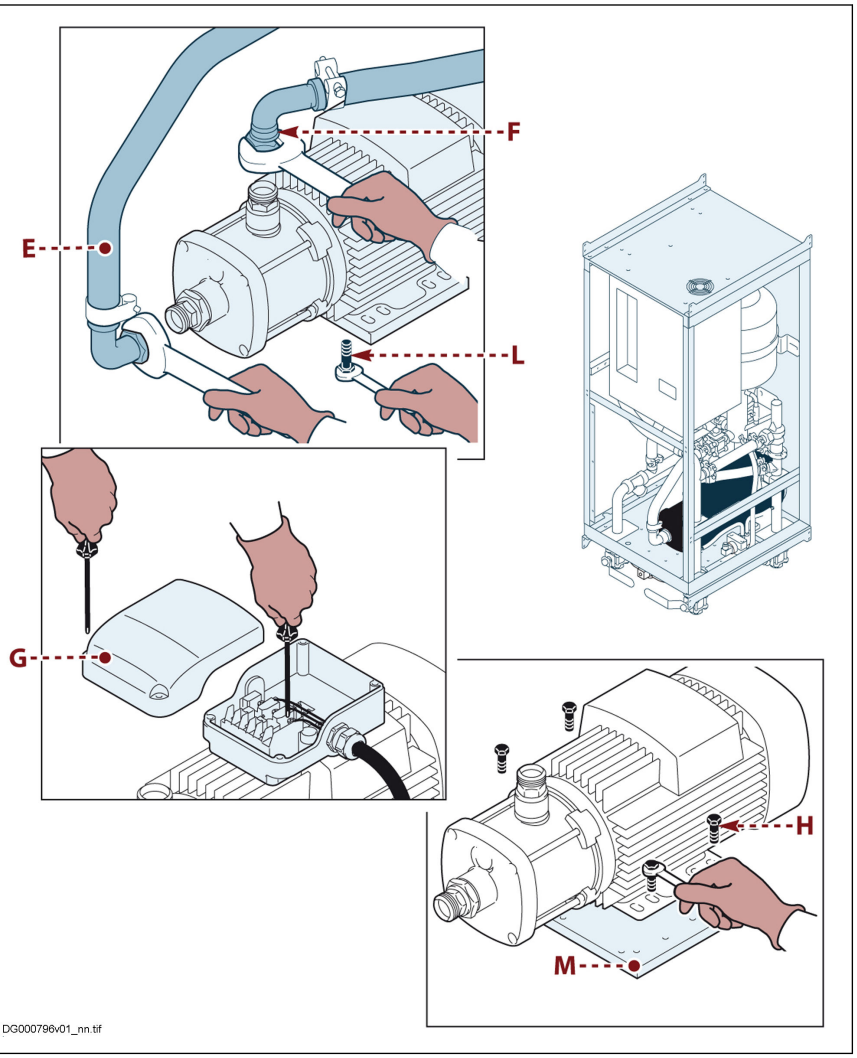
3	Undo the screw and remove the strap (**B**).	
4	Extract the hose (**C**).	
5	Repeat the same operations to remove the other flexible tube.	
6	Unscrew the screws (**E**).	
7	Remove the pump.	
8	Install the new pump. In order to install the new pump, proceed in reverse order to the removal of the pump.	
9	Fill the drive circuit (see chapter "Filling the drive circuit" on page 402).	

Tab. 8-142: Replacing the filling pump

Replacing the main pump

1	Disconnect the machine from the power supply source.
2	Allow the machine to cool down.
3	Close the valve (**D**).
4	Close the ball valve (**E**).
5	Unscrew the screws (**A**).
6	Remove the fixed guard (**B**).
7	Unscrew the cap (**C**).

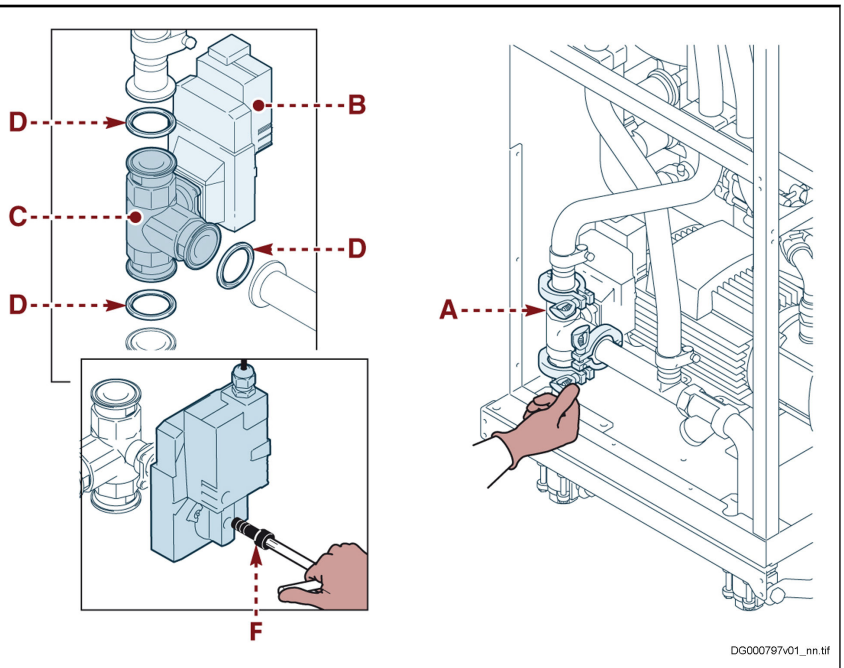


8	Disconnect the hosing (**E**).	
9	Remove the hose (**F**).	
10	Remove the cover (**G**).	
11	Disconnect the cables from the terminals.	
12	Unscrew the screws (**L**).	
13	Remove the pump.	
14	Unscrew the screws (**H**).	
15	Remove the plate (**M**).	
16	Install the new pump. In order to install the new pump, proceed in reverse order to the removal of the pump. **NOTICE!** The spare pump is supplied with the fittings mounted. Do not remove the fittings as this could cause liquid leakage.	
17	Fill the drive circuit (see chapter "Filling the drive circuit" on page 402).	

Tab. 8-143: Replacing the main pump

Replacing the mixing valve

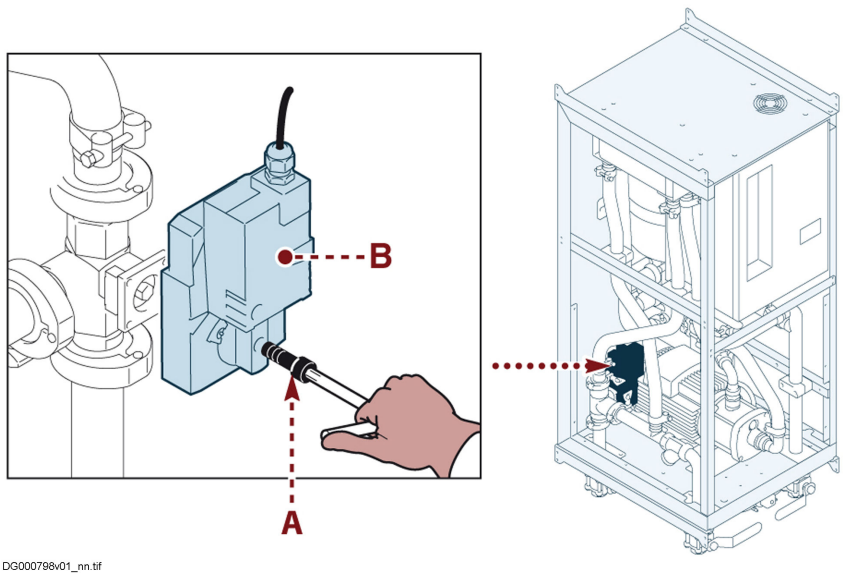
1	Disconnect the machine from the power supply source.
2	Allow the machine to cool down.
3	Unscrew the clamps (**A**).
4	Remove the valve (**C**) and the actuator (**B**).
5	Remove the gaskets (**D**).
6	Unscrew the screw (**F**).
7	Disconnect the valve from the actuator.
8	Connect the new valve with the actuator.
9	Position the gaskets (**D**). Replace the gaskets if they are damaged or worn.
10	Bring the valve and the actuator to correct position.
11	Screw on the clamps (**A**). In order to install the new valve, proceed in reverse order to the removal of the valve.



Tab. 8-144: Replacing the mixing valve

Replacing the actuator

1	Disconnect the machine from the power supply source.
2	Allow the machine to cool down.
3	Disconnect the electric cables from the actuator (see wiring diagram).
4	Unscrew the screw (**A**).
5	Remove the actuator (**B**). In order to install the new actuator, proceed in reverse order to the removal of the actuator.



Tab. 8-145: Replacing the actuator

Replacing the fuses

☞ Before replacing the fuse, fix the cause of the malfunction.

Only replace the interrupted fuse with a fuse with the same characteristics.

For the characteristics of the fuses see chapter "Fuses" on page 387.

Disposing of old equipment

Scrapping operations must be handled by specialized personnel with suitable skills for the job.

In accordance with the applicable regulations, all individual components must be collected separately for disposal according to their chemical properties when dismantling the machine.

With reference to the European Directive (RAEE), electric and electronic components must either be disposed of in authorized landfill sites or the machine, complete of the said parts, must be returned to the dealer in case of a new purchase.

The owner is responsible for delivering the machine, at the end of its working life, to the appropriate collection structures. Failure to comply shall lead to penalties foreseen by the regulations in force.

Control using MLD

Pressure control

The differential pressure between the machine's intake and its outlet has to be kept at a constant rate (1.5 bar, for example) so that the cooling liquid flow to the devices to be cooled can be easily set.

To control the pressure, the pump speed is varied based on the intake/outlet differential pressure.

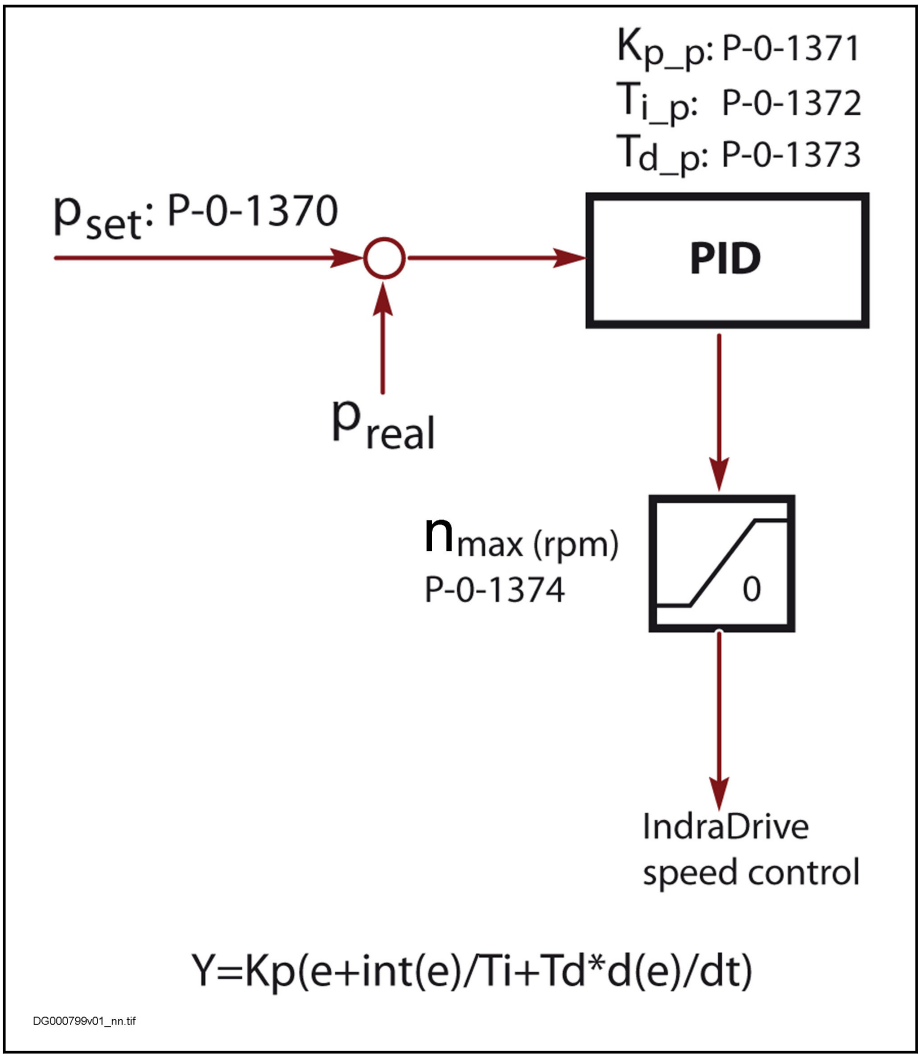


Fig. 8-120: Pressure control

Name	Parameter	Unit
p_{set}	P-0-1370	bar
K_{p_p}	P-0-1371	min^{-1} /bar
T_{i_p}	P-0-1372	s
T_{d_p}	P-0-1373	s
n_{max}	P-0-1374	min^{-1}

Tab. 8-146: Pressure control parameters

Temperature control

When selecting the coolant temperature in the drive circuit, the climatic conditions of the system have to be taken into account to prevent condensation on the equipment being cooled.

The temperature of the fluid is set using a three-way mixing valve.

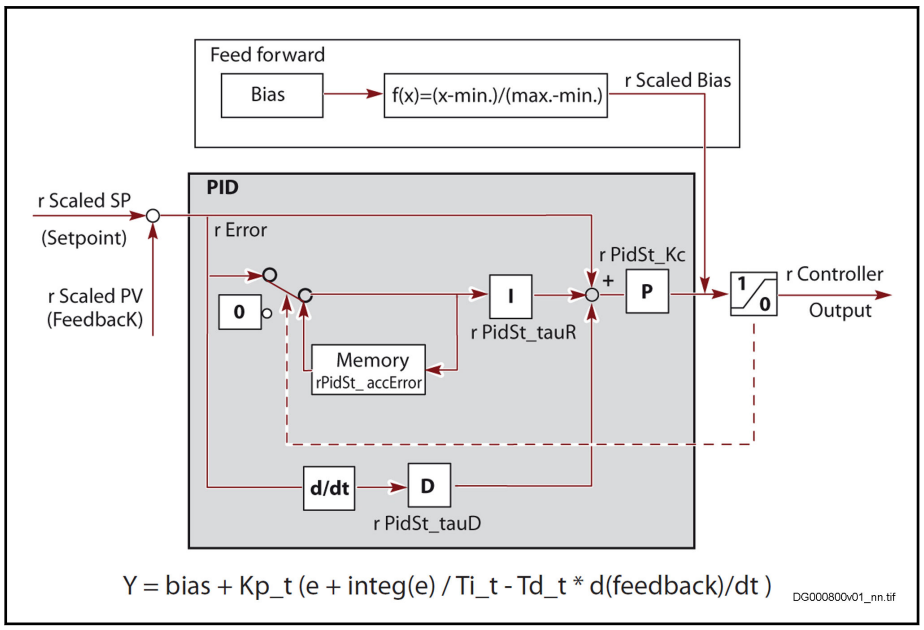


Fig. 8-121: Temperature control

Feed forward (P-0-1379)

The "feed forward" feature allows the temperature regulation system to adjust more quickly when the machine is started up.

The "feed forward" feature adds a value at the regulator output so that the cooling process can begin before the command value is signaled to have been exceeded.

When the "feed forward" feature is used (P-0-1379 > 0), it is important to make sure the temperature rise at machine start-up is not too high. An empirical method for calculating the "feed forward" is shown below:

$FF = [X - K_{p_t} \times (t_{set} - t_{act})] \div 10$
FF: Feed forward
X 30 … 60

Tab. 8-147: Calculating the "feed forward"



The "feedforward" shown here is different from the "feedforward" implemented in an IndraDrive drive controller.

Name	Parameter	Unit	Default value
p_{set}	P-0-1370	bar	1.5
K_{p_p}	P-0-1371	min^{-1} /bar	40
T_{i_p}	P-0-1372	s	0.05

Name	Parameter	Unit	Default value
T_{d_p}	P-0-1373	s	0
n_{max}	P-0-1374	min^{-1}	3000
t_{set}	P-0-1375	°C	50
K_{p_t}	P-0-1376	V / °C	-5
T_{i_t}	P-0-1377	s	40
T_{d_t}	P-0-1378	s	0
Feed forward	P-0-1379	V	0

Tab. 8-148: Temperature control parameters

Starting the machine

The machine is started (as per the predefined setting) solely with the digital command:

ENABLE (X31.1, P-0-1390)

You can set the type of machine enabling (starting via digital input or starting via the communication).

Start	Parameters	Input
Start selection 1	P-0-1380	digital
Start selection 2	P-0-1381	digital
Start command via communication	P-0-1382	digital

Tab. 8-149: Start options

The parameters **P-0-1380 and P-0-1381** can be set to "0" or "1".

If both parameters are set to the **same value** (0 or 1), the machine can be started via the digital input with **P-0-1390** (0 = off, 1 = on).

If both parameters are set to **different values**, the machine can be started via the communication with **P-0-1382** (0 = off, 1 = on).

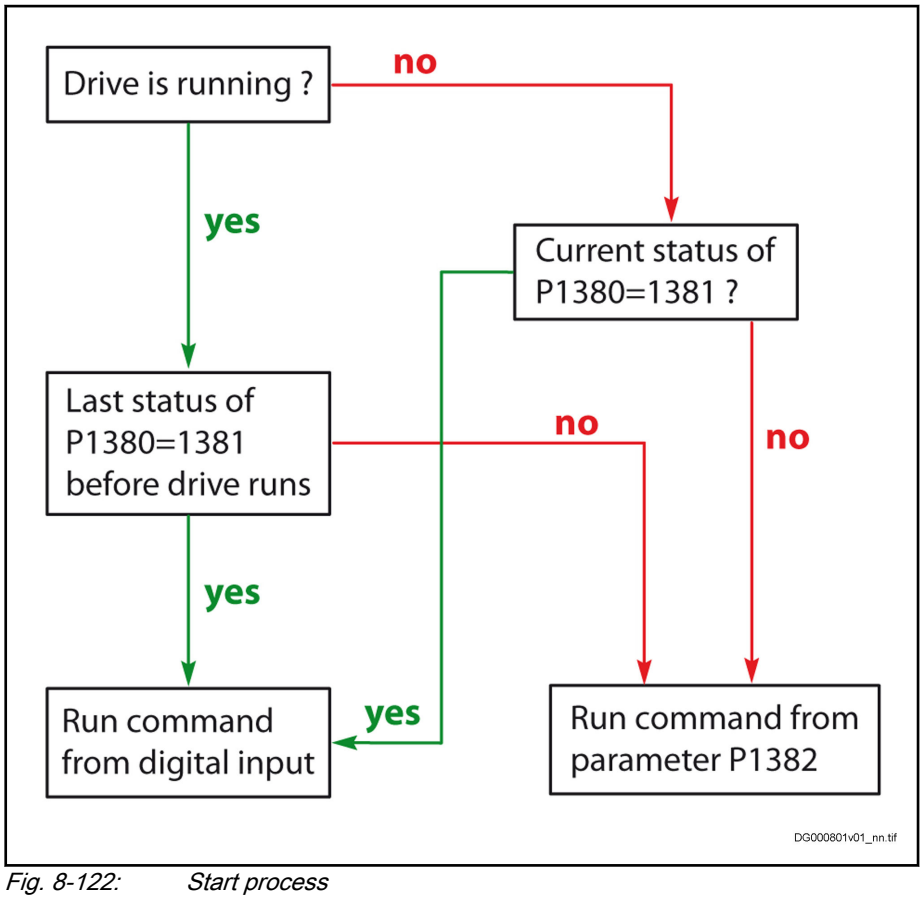


Fig. 8-122: Start process

Example: By setting the parameter P-0-1380 as a digital input and monitoring the parameters P-0-1381 and P-0-1382 via the PLC, the power-up command

for the machine can be transmitted either via the digital input or the PLC, from two different workstations.

Parameters

Hardware designation on the electronic type plate

Name	Parameters	008-020	035-090	060-180	150-450
Application type	S-0-1302.0.3	HAH02.1-WW008	HAH02.1-WW035	HAH02.1-WW060	HAH02.1-WW150

Tab. 8-150: Hardware designation on the electronic type plate (from software version ≥ 03V07)

Name	Parameter	Unit	Minimum value	Maximum value	Default value WW008/035/060/150
$_{pset}$ (pressure command value)	P-0-1370	bar	0	2.0	1.5
$_{Kp_p}$ (pressure control)	P-0-1371	min^{-1} /bar	0	10000	40
T_{i_p} (pressure control)	P-0-1372	s	0.0	1000.0	0.05
T_{d_p} (pressure control)	P-0-1373	s	0.0	1000.0	0.0
n_{max}	P-0-1374	min^{-1}	0	8000	3000
Target temperature value	P-0-1375	°C	0	60	40
$_{Kp_T}$ (temperature control)	P-0-1376	V / °C	-1000	0	-5
T_{i_T} (temperature control)	P-0-1377	s	0	10000	40
T_{d_T} (temperature control)	P-0-1378	s	0	1000	0
Feed forward	P-0-1379	V	0	1000	0
Start selection 1	P-0-1380	-	0	1	0
Start selection 2	P-0-1381	-	0	1	0
Start command via communication	P-0-1382	-	0	1	0
p_{set_2} (pressure command value 2)	P-0-1385	bar	0.0	2.0	0.2
Control word switching to p_{set_2} (see also "Switching the pressure command value" on page 424)	P-0-1295	bit	-	-	0
High temperature warning differential value	P-0-1316	°C	0	20	10
High temperature warning time	P-0-1317	s	0	100	3
Overtemperature limit value	P-0-1318	°C	40	100	90
Tolerance in pressure control	P-0-1320	bar	0.0	10.0	0.5
Low engine speed - Deceleration	P-0-1321	s	0	100	5
Overpressure limit value	P-0-1322	bar	0.0	7.0	2.5

Tab. 8-151: Parameters

Name	Parameter	Unit	Type *	Scaling
Analog I/O monitoring parameters (read-only) with analog Hall sensors				
3-way mixing valve with control voltage	P-0-1270	V	AO	2-10 V, 0-100% open
Pressure (difference between inlet and outlet)	P-0-1271	bar	-	-
Coolant temperature in °C	P-0-1272	°C	-	-
Coolant temperature in °F	P-0-1273	°F	-	-
Pressure sensor	P-0-1280	V	AI	0-10 V, 0-6 bar
Temperature sensor	P-0-1281	V	AI	0-10 V, 0-100 °C
3-way mixing valve with position feedback	P-0-1282	V	AI	2-10 V, 0-100% open
Digital I/O parameters				
Drive enable	P-0-1390	bit 0	DI	
>, 0.5 bar pressure monitoring	P-0-1391	bit 0	DI	
>, 0.2 bar pressure monitoring	P-0-1391	bit 1	DI	
Status word machine	P-0-1410			
Cooler is running	P-0-1410	bit 0		Start command + P-0-1410.4 + no warning + no error
Command pressure value reached	P-0-1410	bit 1		abs(P-0-1370 - P-0-1271) < P-0-1320
The radiator is running (ignores warning)	P-0-1410	bit 3		Start command + P-0-1410.4 + no error
Motor running	P-0-1410	bit 4		Motor velocity (S40) ≥ 360
Drive warning	P-0-1412	bit 0	DO	"high" for no warning
Drive error	P-0-1412	bit 1	DO	"high" for no error

* AI: analog input; AO: analog output; DI: digital input; DO: digital output

Tab. 8-152: Parameters

Switching the pressure command value

The pressure command value can be switched via control word (P-0-1295.0). This function can be used for a more economical operation (lower energy consumption, less wear) if the new pressure command value is set to a lower value.

Pressure command value (p_{set})	P-0-1370
Pressure command value 2 (p_{set_2})	P-0-1385
Control word	P-0-1295.0
P-0-1295.0 = 0	Pressure command value: P-0-1370
P-0-1295.0 = 1	Pressure command value: P-0-1385

Tab. 8-153: Switching the pressure command value

With a pressure command value of 0.2 bar instead of 1.5 bar, laboratory measurements showed energy savings of 92% (40 W instead of 500 W). The

motor speed decreased from 2200 min^{-1} to 760 min^{-1} resulting in a longer service life of the motor.

Water-water heat exchanger (WW060-180)

Technical information

General description of the machine

The machine is designed and manufactured for the purpose of cooling devices or equipment using a liquid solution made of glycol and demineralized water.

The cooling system is mainly based on the exchange of heat between two fluids that circulate in two independent circuits (customer side circuit and drive circuit) and a heat exchanger.

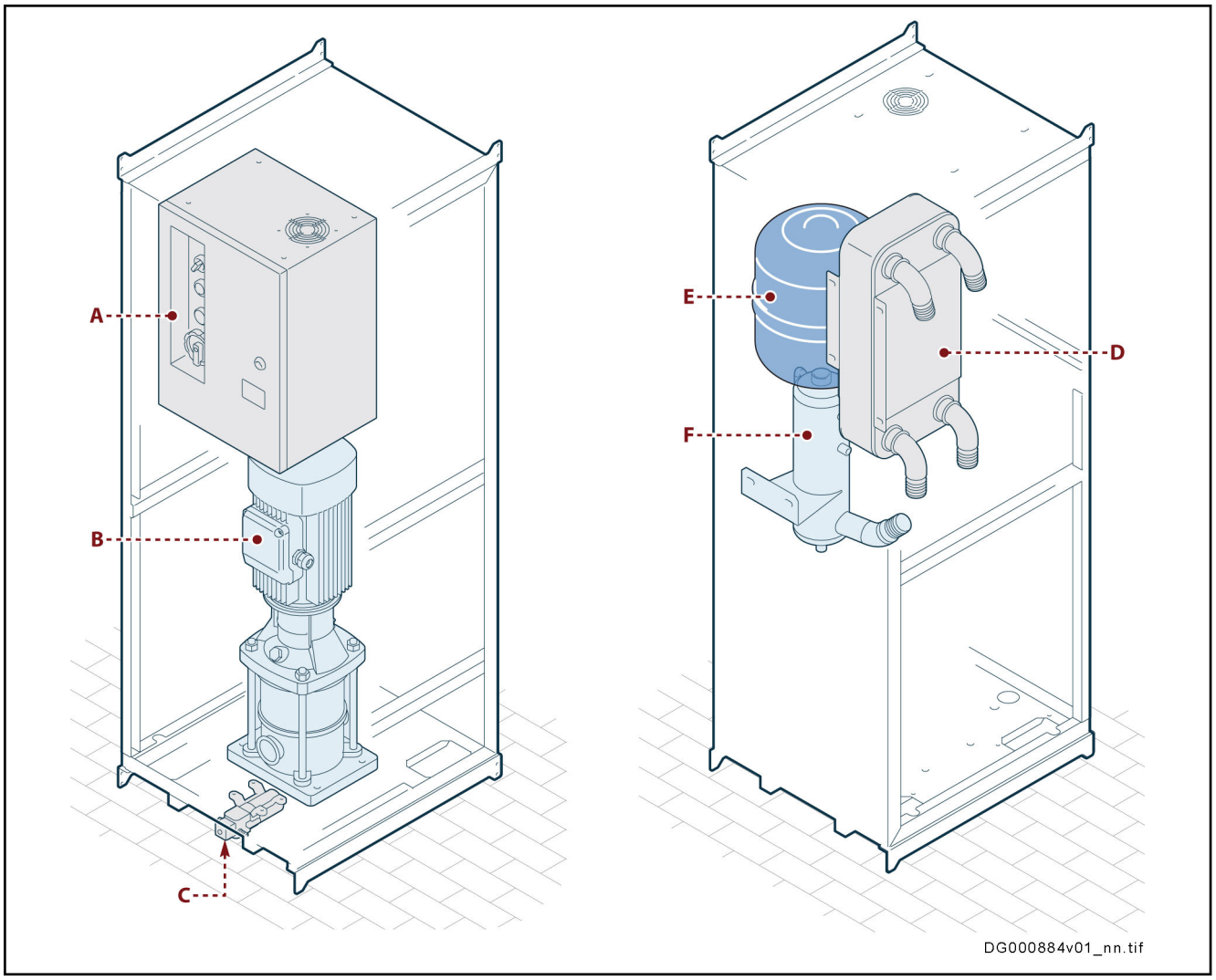
The cold liquid, provided by the owner, flows in the customer side circuit and through the heat exchanger it cools the liquid in the drive circuit.

The equipment or machine to be cooled is connected to the drive circuit.

Pressure and temperature are controlled via IndraMotion MLD, the drive-integrated Motion Logic Control system compliant with IEC 61131-3. See chapter "Control using MLD" on page 418.

See also chapter "Liquid cooling" on page 53.

Main components



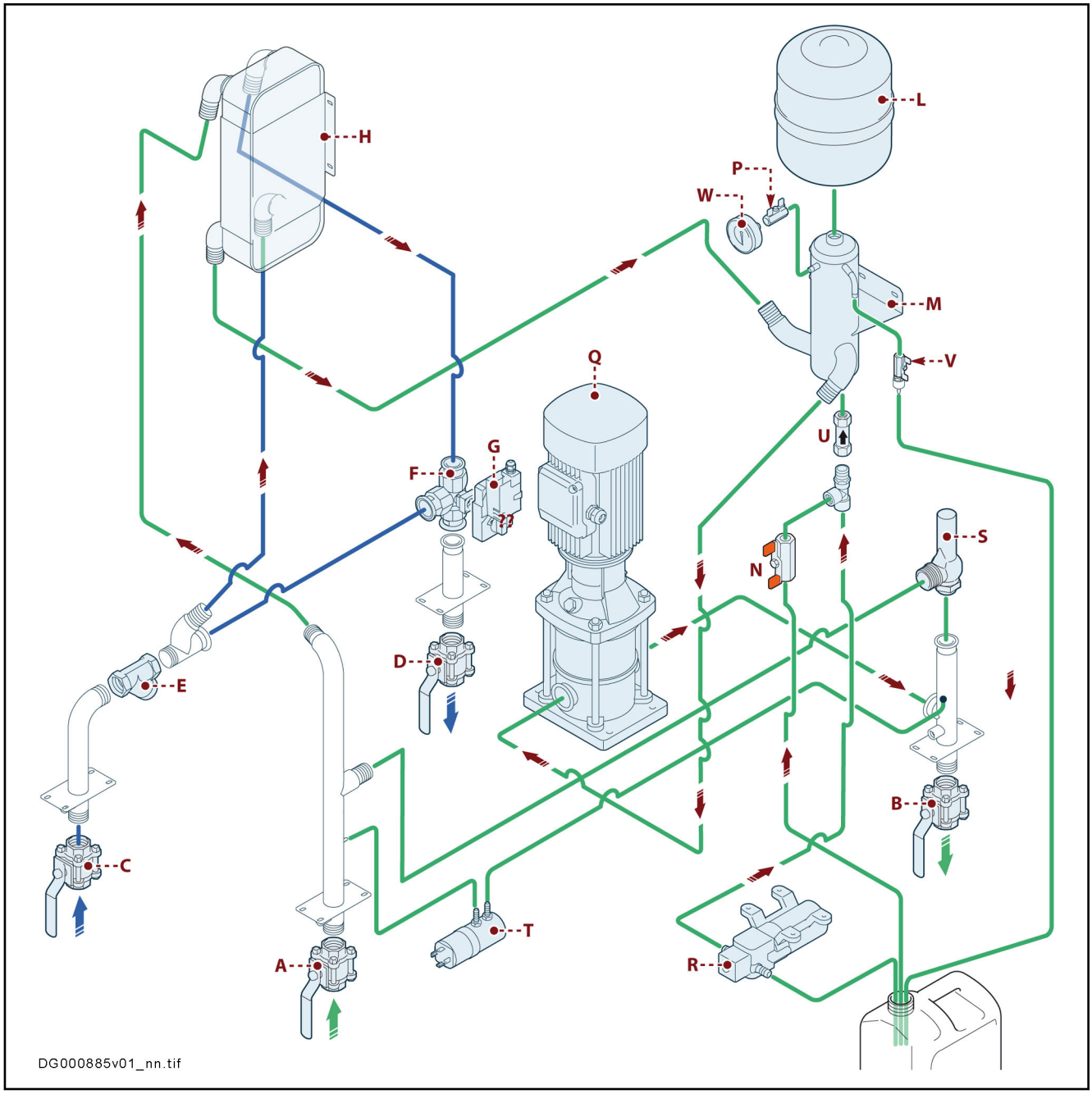
A	Terminal box
B	Main pump
C	Filling pump
D	Heat exchanger
E	Expansion tank
F	Coolant manifold

Fig. 8-123: Main components

Operating cycle and component description

In the customer side circuit, the cold liquid coming from the owner's external system, via the heat exchanger, cools the fluid in the drive circuit and consequently the machine to be cooled.

The temperature of the fluid in the drive circuit is controlled by the mixing valve of the primary circuit that adjusts the flow of the cold liquid into the heat exchanger.



A	**Ball valve:** It opens and closes the return fluid from the equipment to be cooled
B	**Ball valve:** It opens and closes the delivery fluid to the equipment to be cooled
C	**Ball valve:** It opens and closes the flow of the coolant from the owner's system
D	**Ball valve:** It opens and closes the flow of the coolant towards the owner's system
E	**Filter:** It filters the incoming liquid
F	**Mixing valve:** It automatically varies the flow rate of the coolant in the heat exchanger in order to increase or decrease the temperature of the fluid in the drive circuit
G	**Actuator:** It controls the mixing valve in order to adjust the cold liquid in the heat exchanger

H	**Heat exchanger:** It lowers the temperature of the coolant in the drive circuit
L	**Expansion tank:** It maintains the pressure in the drive circuit constant
M	**Coolant manifold**
N	**Valve:** This is used to release any backpressure in the filling pump delivery line and facilitate priming.
P	**Valve:** It is used to open and close the flow of the main pump
Q	**Main pump:** It makes the coolant circulate in the drive circuit
R	**Filling pump:** It fills the cooling circuit of the owner's equipment
S	**Bypass valve:** It limits the pressure of the output liquid
T	**Pressure sensor:** It measures the differential pressure between the intake and the outlet of the machine to be cooled
U	**Check valve:** It prevents the liquid from flowing into the filling pump when it is being primed or is deactivated.
V	**Bleed valve:** To bleed air from the system
W	**Pressure gauge:** Indicates the pressure of the coolant in the coolant manifold.

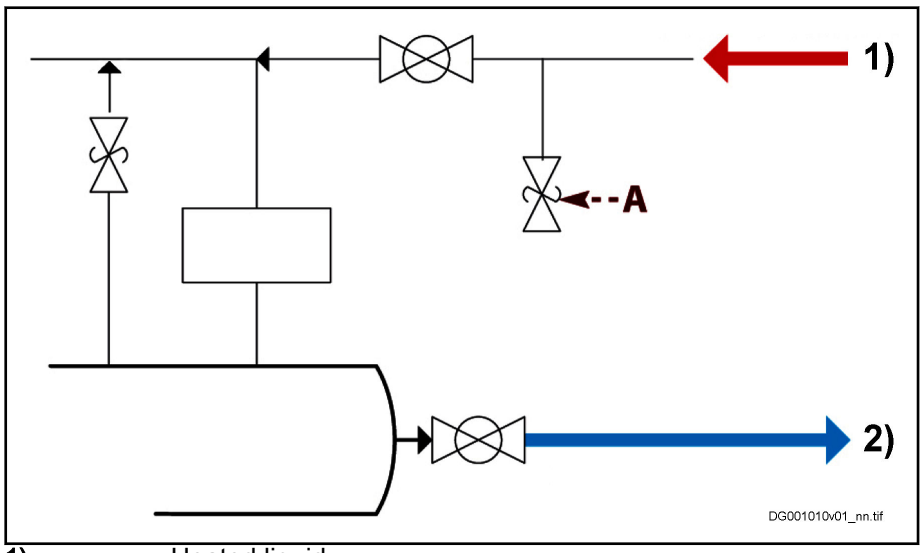
Fig. 8-124: Operating cycle and component description

Guards

The owner has to fit the machine with suitable guards in conformity with the regulations in force, in order to prevent the risk of injury.

Overpressure devices

If additional pumps (external to the machine) are installed on the circuit or if the drop in pressure of the hydraulic load is less than 1.5 bar, the owner has to fit a pressure limiting valve. The valve has to limit the pressure to a maximum of 2 bar in the return pipe to the machine.



1)	Heated liquid
2)	Cooled liquid
A	Pressure limiting valve

Fig. 8-125: Positioning of the pressure limiting valve (A)

Overall dimensions

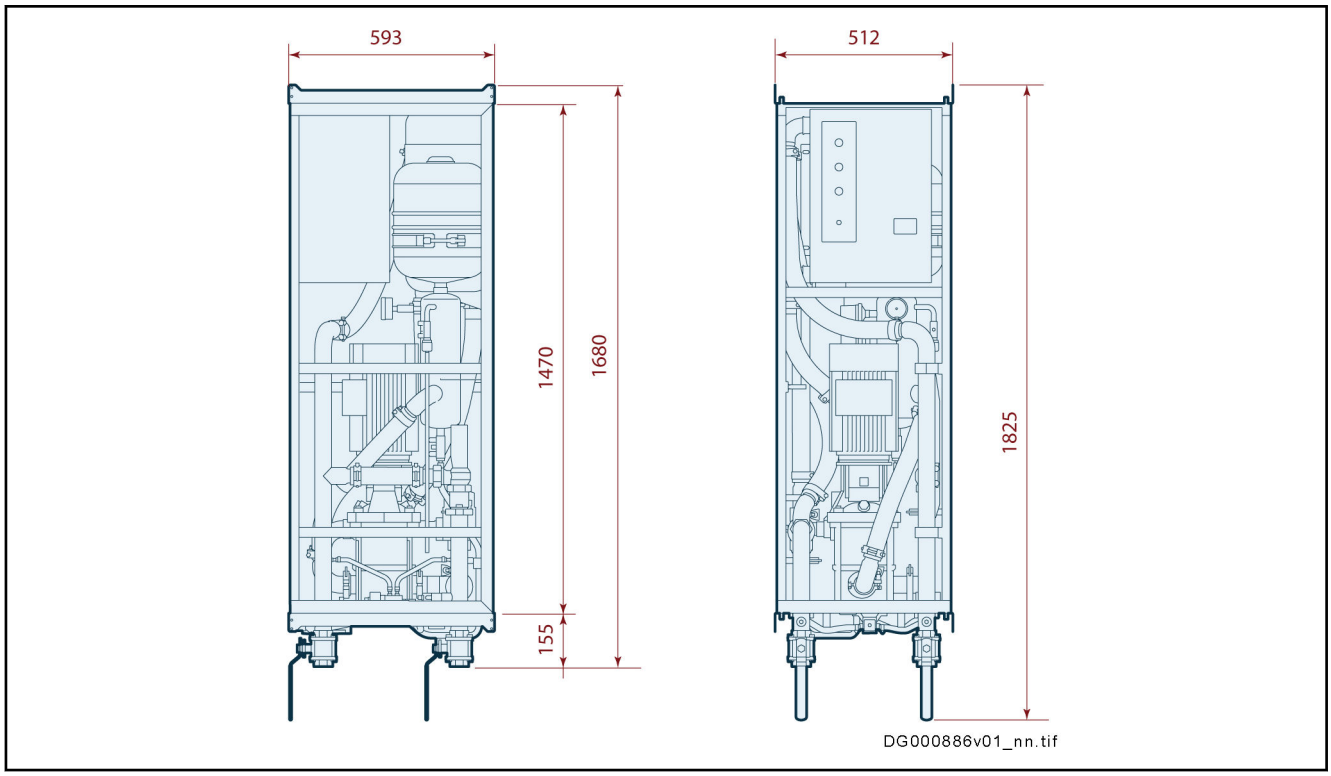


Fig. 8-126: Overall dimensions

Data

Technical data - machine

Designation	Unit	WW060-180
Power voltage	Vac	380 (-15%) … 500 (+10%)
Frequency	Hz	50/60
Input current	A	4.5
Maximum cooling capacity	kW	60
Maximum inlet flow rate in the customer's circuit	l/min	300
Maximum output flow rate in the drive circuit	l/min	180
Maximum input pressure of the coolant in the customer's circuit	bar	7
Maximum input pressure of the coolant in the drive circuit	bar	2
Maximum outlet pressure of the coolant in the drive circuit	bar	4.5
Maximum coolant temperature (customer circuit)	°C	50
Minimum coolant temperature (customer circuit)	°C	10
Maximum coolant temperature (drive circuit)	°C	70 1)
Minimum coolant temperature (drive circuit)	°C	30
Drive circuit coolant (monoethyl glycol and demineralized water solution) See also chapter "Liquid cooling" on page 53.	-	20% glycol
Estimated amount of coolant (heat exchanger only)	l	approx. 30
Coolant in the customer's circuit		See tab. 8-155 "Water quality specification" on page 432
Ambient temperature during operation	°C	+5 … +55
Ambient temperature during operation (compliant with UL)	°C	+5 … +40
Relative humidity without condensation	%	95
Maximum installation altitude	m	2000
Weight	kg	150

1) comply with the maximum permissible temperature of the coolant used

Tab. 8-154: Technical data - machine

Water quality specification

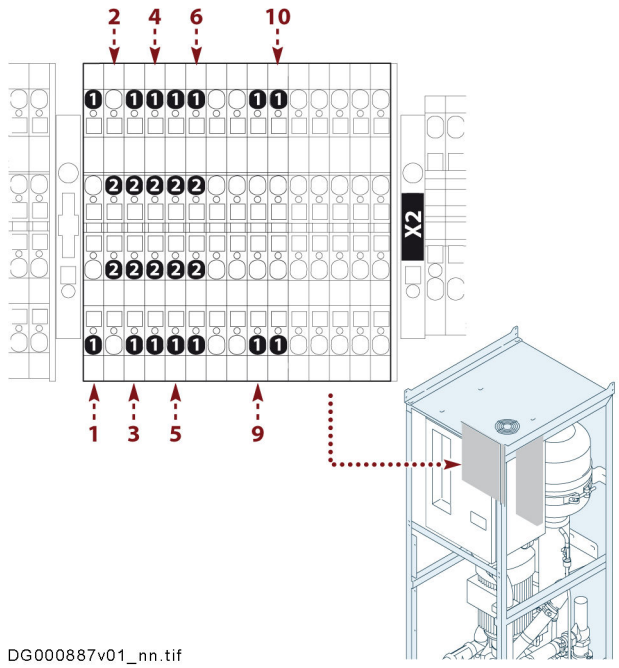
Pos.	Chemical element	Unit	Request
1	pH value	Section	7 … 8.5
2	Temporary hardness	°FH	< 5.0
3	Total hardness	°FH	< 10.0
4	Conductivity	IS/cm	150 … 1000
5	Particle size	mm	0.02
6	Suspended particles	mg/l	< 0.2
7	Residue at 105 °C	mg/l	< 450
8	$KINO_4$ usage	mg/l	< 0.1
9	Ammonia	mg/l	< 0.1
10	Mineral oil	mg/l	< 0.1
11	Iron (FE)	mg/l	< 0.5
12	Zinc (Zn)	mg/l	< 0.5
13	Manganese (Mn)	mg/l	< 0.2
14	Phosphorus (P)	mg/l	< 1.0
15	Copper (Cu)	mg/l	< 0.2
16	Fluoride (F^-)	mg/l	< 1.0
17	Nitrate (NO_3^-)	mg/l	< 10.0
18	Free carbon dioxide	mg/l	8 … 15
19	Oxygen (O)	mg/l	< 0.2
20	Alkalinity ($CaCO_3$)	mg/l	< 200
21	Sulfate (SO_4^{2-})	mg/l	< 100
22	Chloride (Cl^-)	mg/l	< 50

Tab. 8-155: Water quality specification

ENABLE, UNIT ERROR and UNIT WARNING connections

The signals used to enable the relative machine status via the operator's control terminal are transmitted via the terminal block shown in the figure.

Connect the lines to the terminals shown in the "terminal connections" table.

X2	Significance	Terminals
9.1 - 2.2	Terminals for machine enable via the operator's control terminal (ENABLE)	
3.1 - 3.2 4.1 - 4.2	Machine error signal terminals. Closed contact: no error.	
5.1 - 5.2 6.1 - 6.2	Warning signal terminals. Closed contact: no warning.	
10.1 - 1.1	Terminals for remotely resetting the warning signal	

Tab. 8-156: Terminal connection

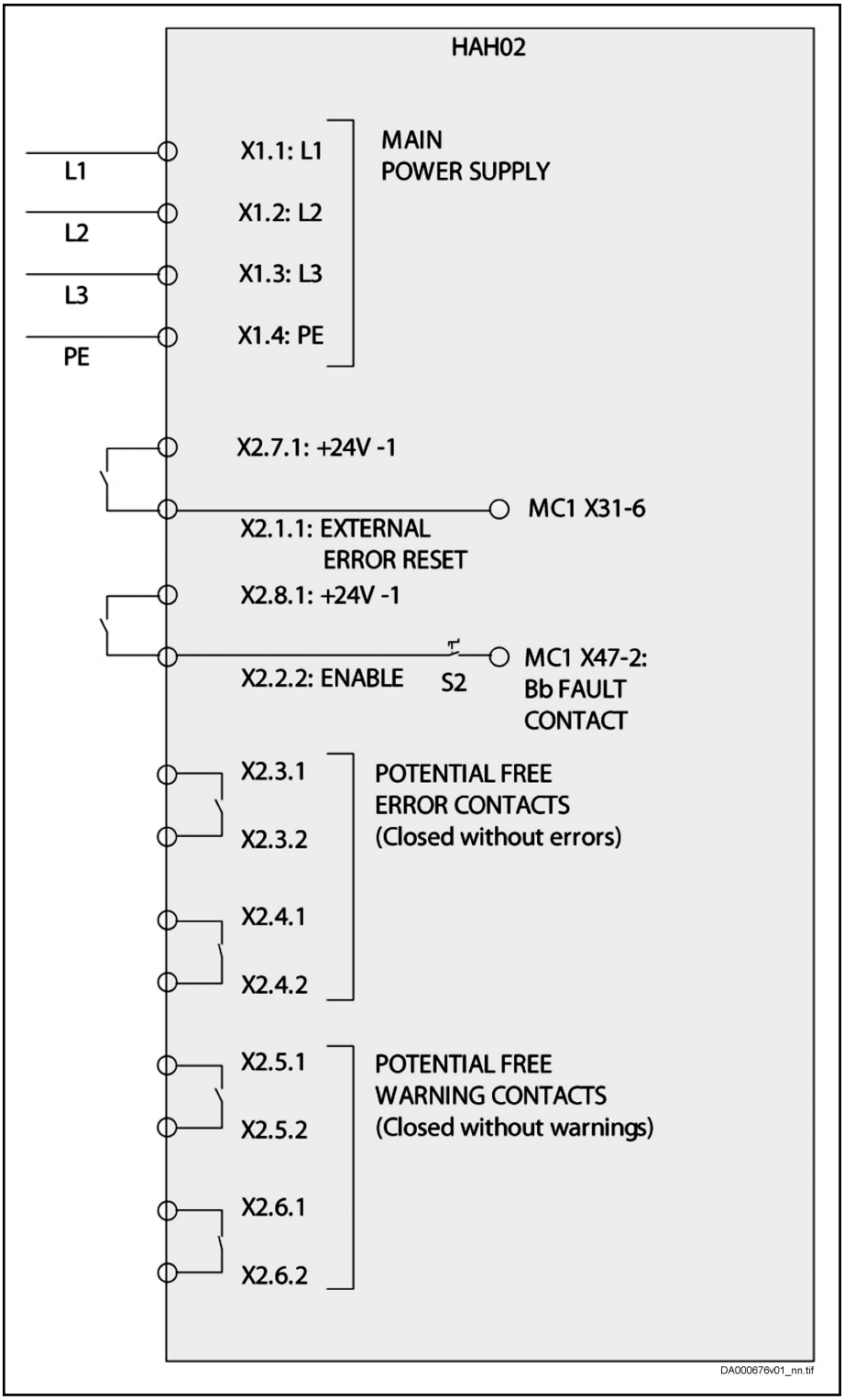
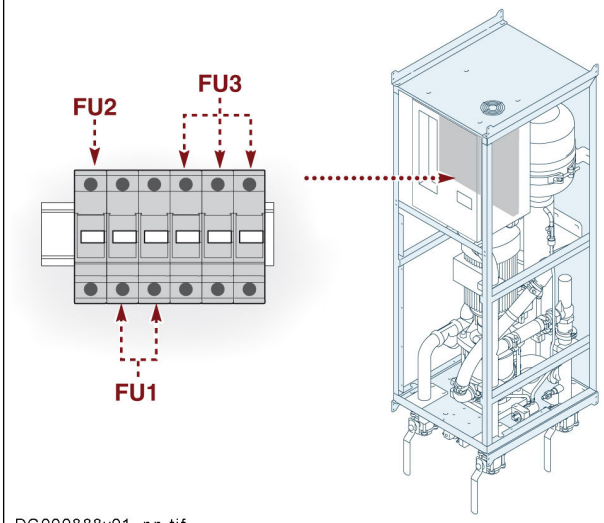


Fig. 8-127: Circuit diagram

Fuses

Name	Current (A)	Type	Rated voltage (Vac)	Inter-ruption capacity (kW)	Fuse	Position
FU1	1	CC	600	200	Delayed	
FU2	4					
FU3	7					

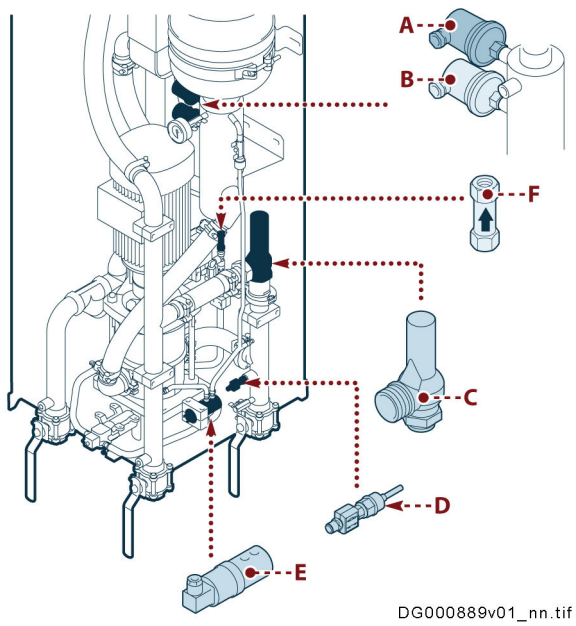
Tab. 8-157: Fuses

Operational and safety equipment

⚠ WARNING **Serious health and safety risks**

Do not tamper with, circumvent, remove or bypass processing and protection devices; Failure to comply with this requirement may cause serious health and safety risks.

A	**Pressure switch (0.5 bar):** This detects the pressure level in the intake manifold. The pressure switch allows a warning to be signaled when the pressure falls below 0.5 bar.
B	**Pressure switch (0.2 bar):** This detects the pressure level in the intake manifold. The pressure switch allows an "error" to be signaled when the pressure falls below 0.2 bar and stops machine operation.
C	**Bypass valve:** This is used to keep the fluid pressure in the drive circuit outlet pipe within the maximum limit allowed.
D	**Temperature sensor:** This detects the coolant temperature in the drive circuit outlet pipe. Depending on the temperature detected, the system will signal either a "warning"(temperature too high) or an "error" (temperature continues to rise, resulting in machine shutdown).
E	**Pressure sensor:** This detects, in real time, the differential pressure between the intake pipe and the drive circuit outlet pipe. The sensor helps maintain a constant pressure in the outlet line of the drive circuit.
F	**Check valve:** It prevents the liquid from flowing into the filling pump when it is being primed or is deactivated.



Tab. 8-158: Operating and safety equipment

Ambient conditions for operation

The machine operates properly under the specified ambient conditions (chapter "Data" on page 431).

The machine is able to function properly at installation altitudes up to 2000 m above sea level.

Intended use

The machine is designed and manufactured to cool electric or electronic equipment or machines.

The machine has to be installed in enclosed spaces and protected from environmental influences.

Any other form of use that is not specified or included in this project planning manual, or that cannot be inferred from them, is considered unintended and is therefore not permitted.

Unintended and unauthorized uses

The use of coolants with properties other than the coolants specified by the manufacturer is not permitted.

The machine must not be used in a flammable or hazardous environment.

The machine may only be commissioned after it has been verified that the system or machine in which it is installed complies with applicable national and local regulations.

Residual risks

Risk of crushing: When moving the machine, incorrect manoeuvres or improper handling of the load may pose a risk of injury to the operators involved.

Risk of electric shock: Maintenance operations or replacement of components may involve a risk of electric shock due to accidental contact with live electrical components.

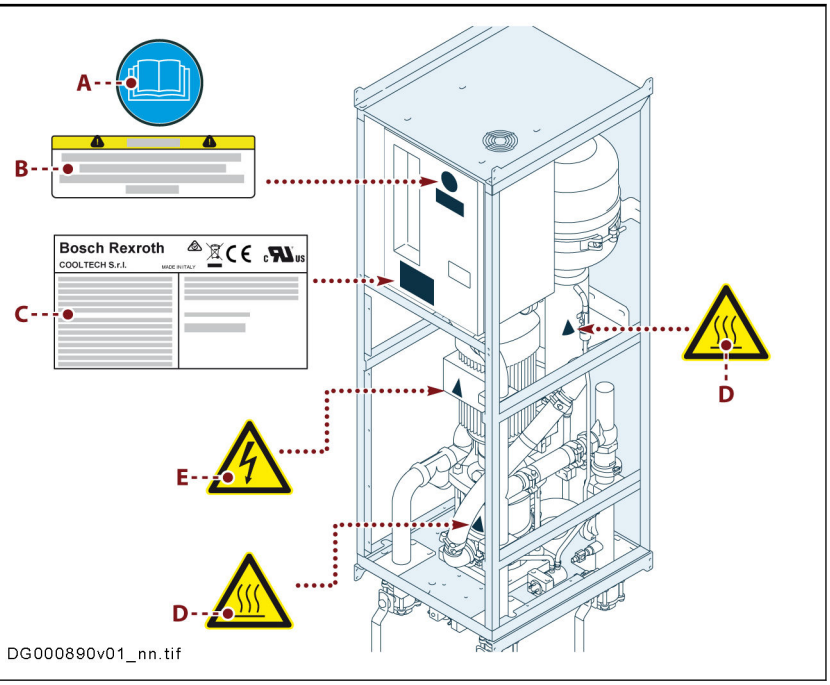
Thermal risk: Contact with hot surfaces can cause burns. Allow the machine to cool down before any operation.

Warning and safety signs

⚠ WARNING

Check that all the plates are legible. If they are not, clean them or - if they are damaged - replace them, applying the new ones in the same place as the old one.

A	This indicates the obligation for operators to read the instruction manual before operating the machine.
B	Risk of serious injury or death. Disconnect the machine from the power supply before starting work.
C	Technical data of the machine and manufacturer's specification (chapter "Manufacturer's details and machine identification details" on page 374).
D	This indicates that there is the risk of burns due to contact with hot surfaces. Allow the machine to cool down before any operation.
E	Risk of electric shock



Tab. 8-159: Warning and safety signs

Transporting and installing

Transport and installation safety recommendations

Personnel responsible for transport of the load must have the required qualification and experience and must be trained in handling the lifting gear used.

Use lifting gear with suitable load capacity in order to lift and move the load.

Persons authorized for transport must take appropriate measures to ensure their own safety and the safety of persons directly involved.

Place the package on a stable surface.

Observe the specified limit when stacking packages in order to prevent sudden shifts.

Upon reception, each package must be inspected to verify the integrity and the exact quantity of its contents. In case items are damaged or missing, contact the importer or the manufacturer directly to discuss the procedure to be adopted.

Packaging

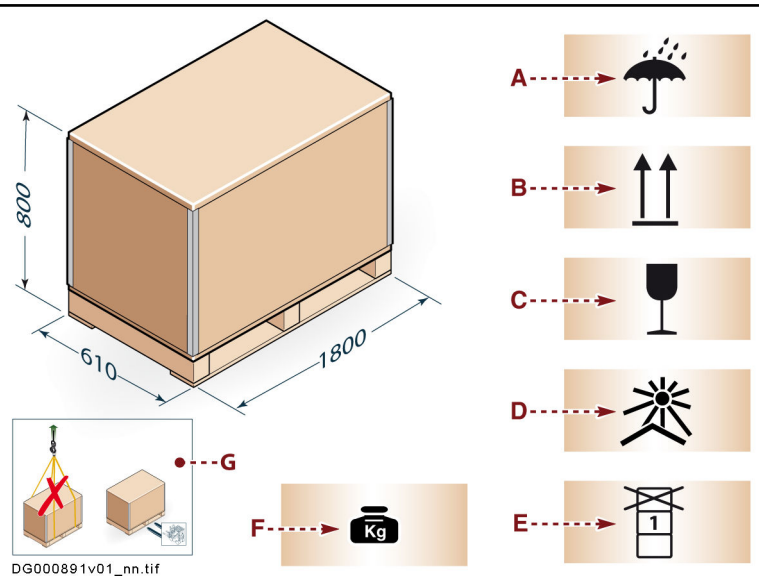
The packaging is selected according to the selected means of transport and the destination.

Packages can either be loaded directly onto a means of transport or into suitable containers if shipped by sea or air or to far-off destinations.

In order to facilitate transport, some components are removed and properly protected.

The figure shows the type of packaging most frequently used and the maximum dimensions as well as the warning symbols and notices attached to the packages.

A	This symbol means the packed machine must be stored in a dry place: its contents may be damaged by dampness.
B	This symbol means the packed machine must be kept upright.
C	This symbol means the packed machine must be handled with care: its contents are fragile.
D	This symbol indicates that the package must be kept away from direct sunlight and heat sources to avoid exposing its content to excessively high temperatures.
E	This symbol indicates the maximum number of packages that can be stacked.
F	This symbol indicates the overall weight of the package.
G	The plate shows the procedure for lifting the package.



Tab. 8-160: Package description

Transporting and lifting the packed machine

The figure shows how to lift the package.

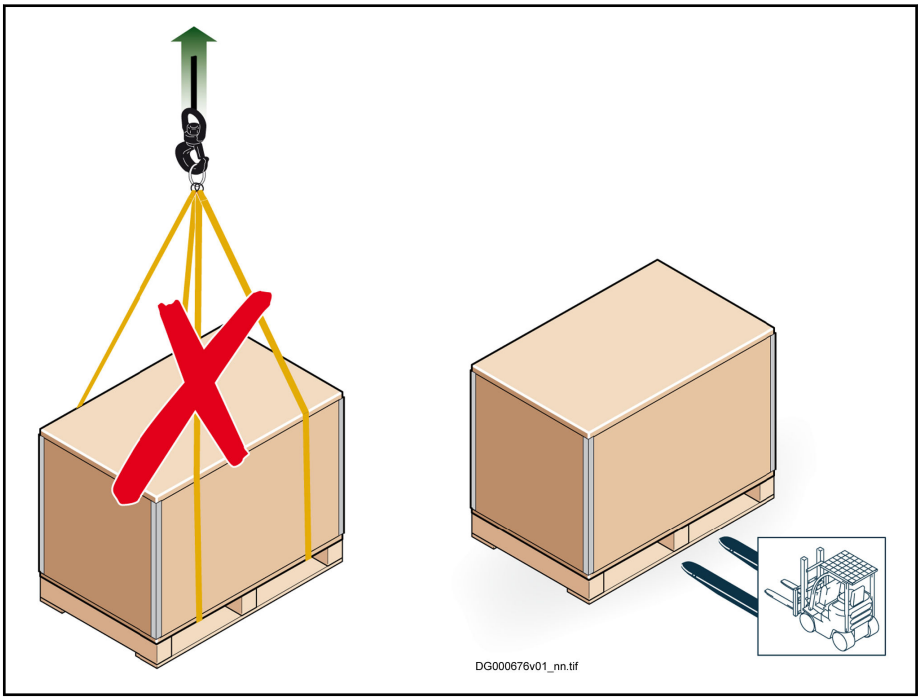


Fig. 8-128: Transporting and lifting the packed machine

Storage

If the machine is not going to be used for an extended period, it should be stored (possibly without unpacking it, or at least adequately protected) in a sheltered place protected from atmospheric agents at a temperature between -20 and +60 °C.

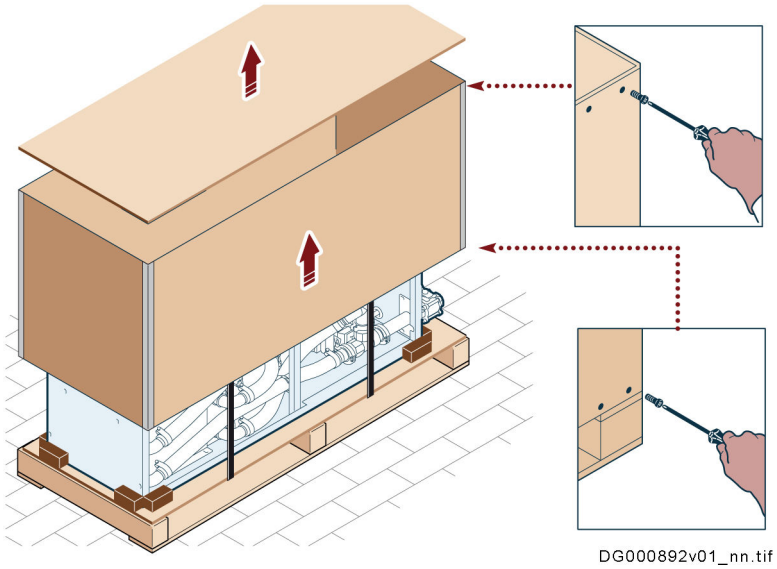
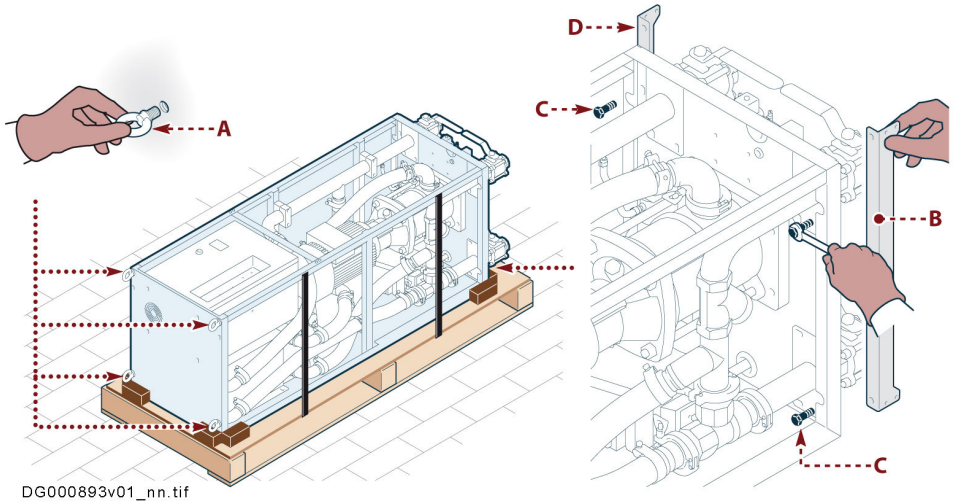
Avoid storing the machine in places where weather conditions could prejudice its good working order.

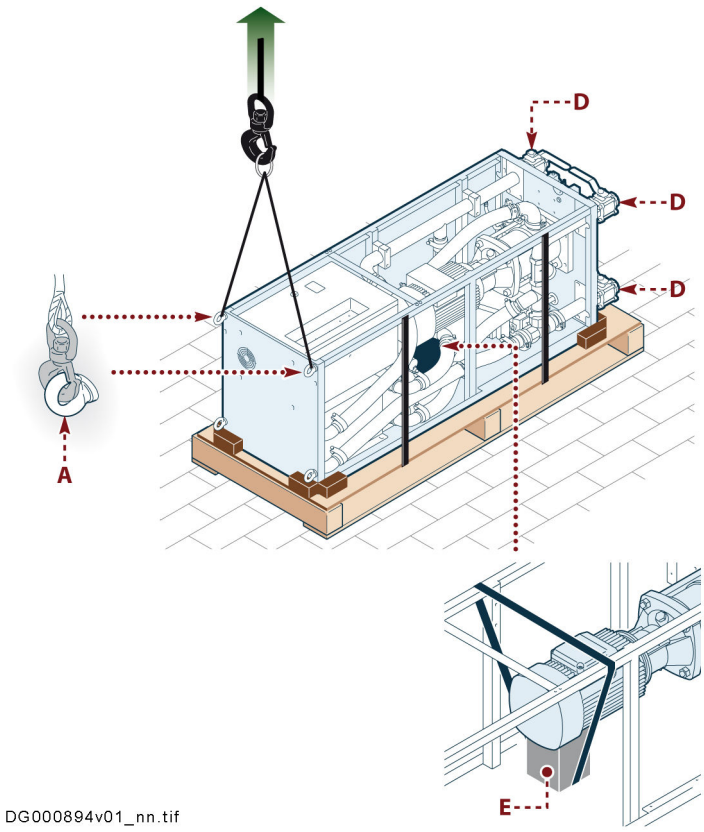
Unpacking

It is advisable to unpack the machine near the installation area to facilitate assembly.

The figure shows how to unpack the machine properly.

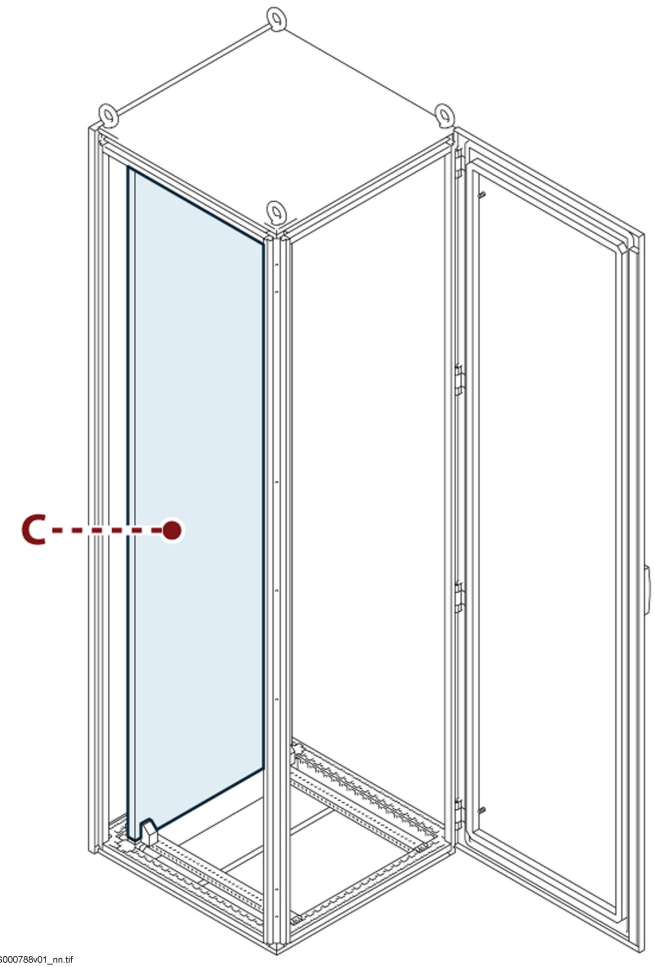
Proceed as described.

1	Unscrew the screws.	 DG000892v01_nn.tif
2	Remove the cover.	
3	Lift the side walls of the packaging.	
4	Remove the locking items and retaining straps.	
5	Screw in the eyebolts (**A**).	 DG000893v01_nn.tif
6	Attach the bracket (**B, D**) using the corresponding screws (**C**).	

7	Hook the ropes onto the eyebolts (**A**).	
8	**WARNING!** When lifting pay attention to the machine swinging movement as the lifting point is never perfectly barycentric. Sudden movements may injure the people involved in the operations. **NOTICE!** When lifting, take care not to damage the valves (**D**). Lift the machine. Remove the clamping device (**E**). The packaging material (wood, propylene, etc,.) can be kept for future use or properly disposed of according to the regulations in force.	

Tab. 8-161: Unpacking

Mounting the machine

The machine is intended for installation into a RITTAL cabinet (model TS8 8006-500). Before mounting the machine, remove the wall (**C**).	

Tab. 8-162: Control cabinet

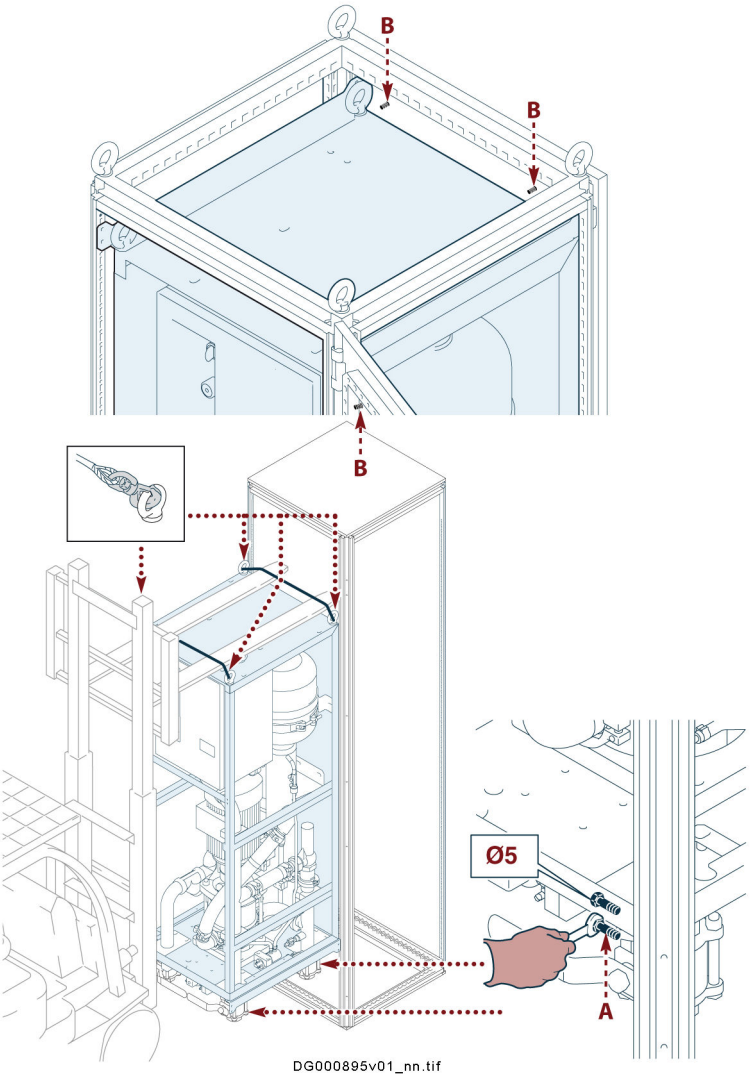
The installation area has to be provided with electrical connections and connections for transmission of machine enabling/status signals.

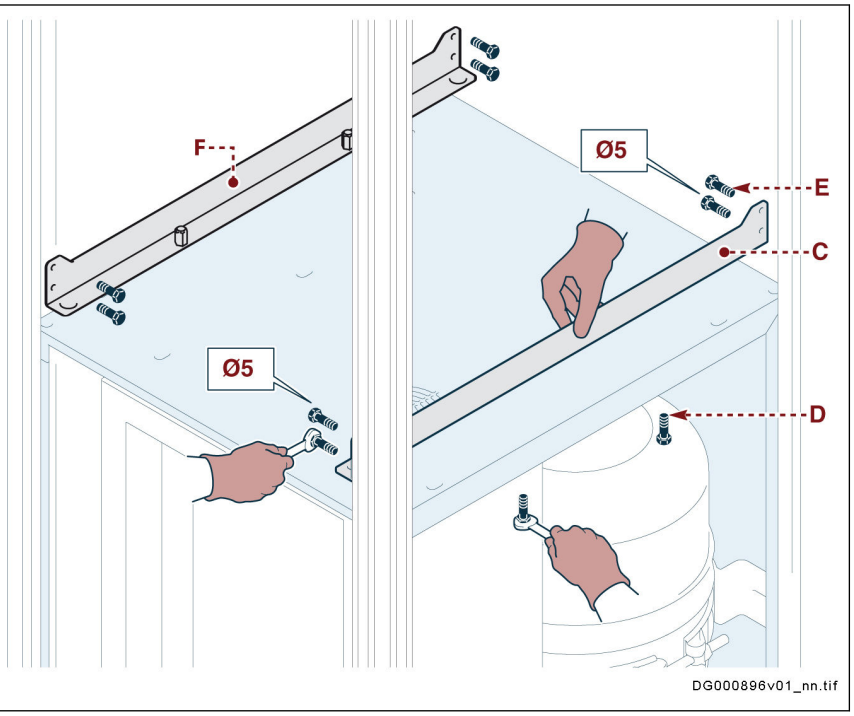
Carry out the following work as described.

There must be enough space above the machine to connect the grounding points (B) of the cabinet.

Align the holes for attaching the machine in accordance with the nearest holes of the cabinet so that the required space above the machine is available.

1	Strap up the machine as shown in the figure.
2	Lift the machine and place the machine in the installation area.
3	Screw in the self-tapping screws (**A**) to lock the machine onto the support.
4	Lock the machine in the same way on the opposite side.
5	Unscrew the eyebolts.



6	Position the bracket (**C**).	
7	Tighten the screws (**D**).	
8	Screw in the self-tapping screws (**E**).	
9	Fit the bracket (**F**) in the same way.	

Tab. 8-163: Mounting the machine

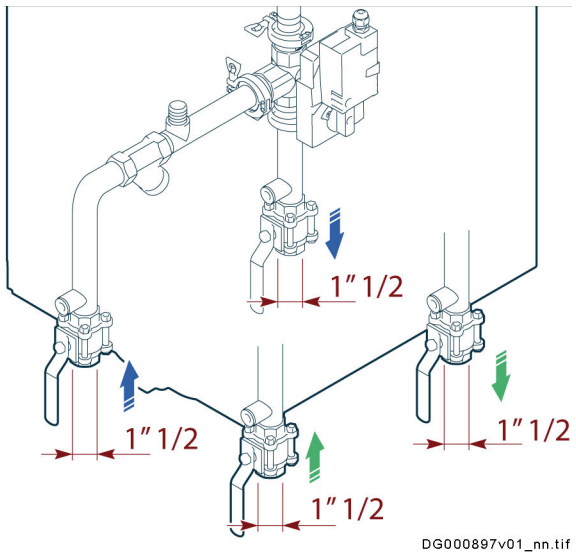
Electrical connection

The electrical connections must be performed at professional standards in compliance with all legislative requirements and regulations.

Use a 4 G-AWG 12 cable (three-phase conductors + equipment grounding conductor).

Connect the three phases (L1, L2 and L3) and the equipment grounding conductor to the relevant terminals inside the terminal box.

Hose connections

The owner has to install devices to adjust the pressure and discharge in the intake pipe of the customer side circuit and in the return pipe of the drive circuit. Set the pressure in the intake and return pipes to the values shown in chapter "Data" on page 431. Use flexible tubes with an internal diameter of not less than 44.3 mm. Use connectors with an internal diameter of not less than 40 mm.	

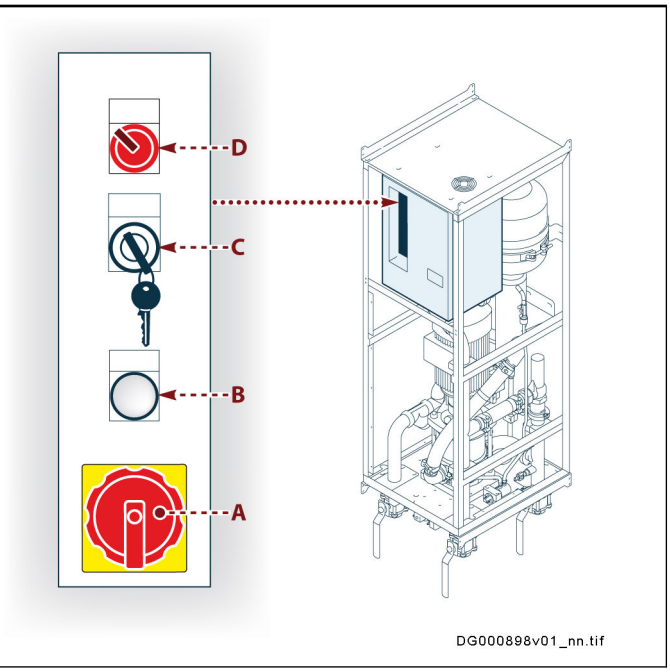
Tab. 8-164: Hose connections

Use

Safety advice for use

Before starting the machine, ensure that the system or the machine in which it has been fitted complies with applicable local regulations and directives.

Control elements and indicator lamps

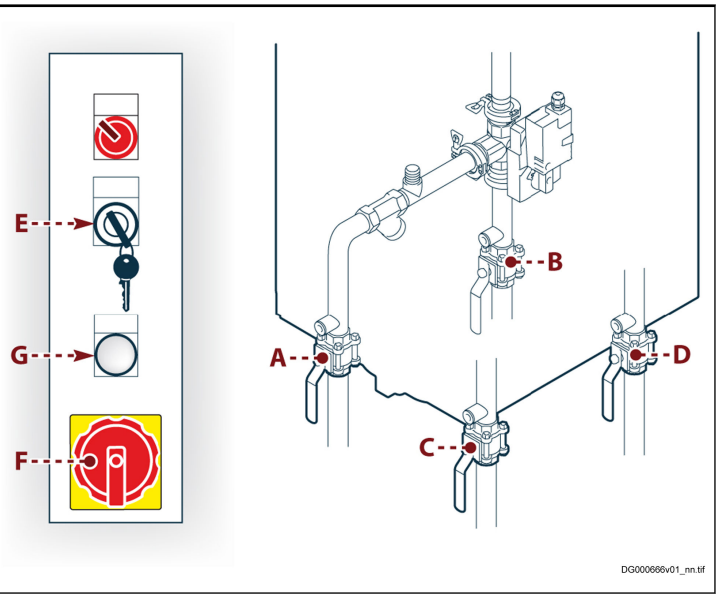
A	**Main switch:** It is used for connecting and disconnecting the power supply to machine. The indicator lamp (**B**) lights up.	
B	**Indicator lamp (white light):** Indicates that the power supply to the machine has been enabled.	
C	**Key-operated two-position stay-put selector switch:** For releasing or locking the main pump. The key has to be kept by the designated staff member and available to the staff responsible for technical servicing.	
D	**Two-position stay-put back-lit switch (red light):** This is used to switch the filling pump on and off.	

Tab. 8-165: Control elements and indicator lamps

Switching on

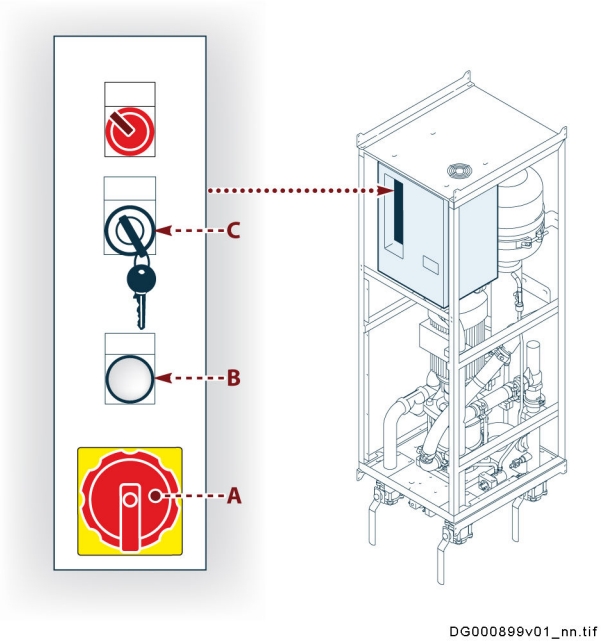
When starting the machine for the first time fill the drive circuit (see chapter "Filling the drive circuit" on page 450).

To start the machine, proceed as follows.

1	Open the ball valves (**A - B - C - D**).	
2	Ensure that liquid flows through the customer side circuit.	
3	Turn the main switch (**F**) to the "ON" position. The indicator lamp (**G**) lights up.	
4	Turn the key selector (**E**) to the "ON" position. Machine start-up has to be performed using the operator terminal of the machine to be cooled, via the "ENABLE" connection (see chapter "ENABLE, UNIT ERROR and UNIT WARNING connections" on page 433).	

Tab. 8-166: Switching on

Switching off

Switching off with the main switch 1. Turn the main switch (**A**) to the "OFF" position. • The indicator lamp (**B**) will switch off. • Machine operation stops and the voltage supply to the terminal box is interrupted. • The supply terminals remain live.	
Switching off with the key-operated switch This switch-off mode is reserved for authorized personnel. 1. Insert the key into the selector switch (**C**). 2. Turn the selector switch to the "OFF" position. • Operation of the main pump stops. • The terminal box at the machine remains live.	
Remote-controlled switch-off Remote-controlled switch-off has to be performed using the owner's operator terminal, via the "ENABLE" connection. • Operation of the main pump stops. • The terminal box at the machine remains live.	
Switching off automatically The machine stops automatically if the pressure in the cooling circuit drops below 0.2 bar and the temperature of the cooling liquid exceeds the preset upper limit (parameter P-0-1318).	

Tab. 8-167: Switching off

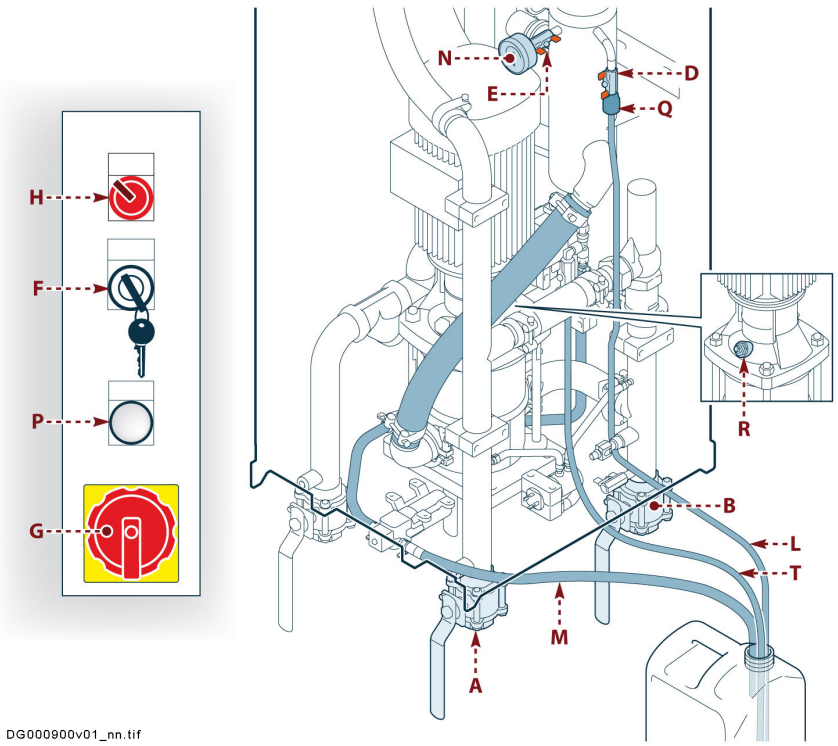
Switching off in emergency conditions

To switch off the device in the event of imminent danger (emergency stop), turn the main switch (**A**) to the "OFF" position.

Fix the cause for the emergency stop before restarting the machine.

Filling the drive circuit

Check if the installation as well as electrical and hydraulic connections are executed professionally in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

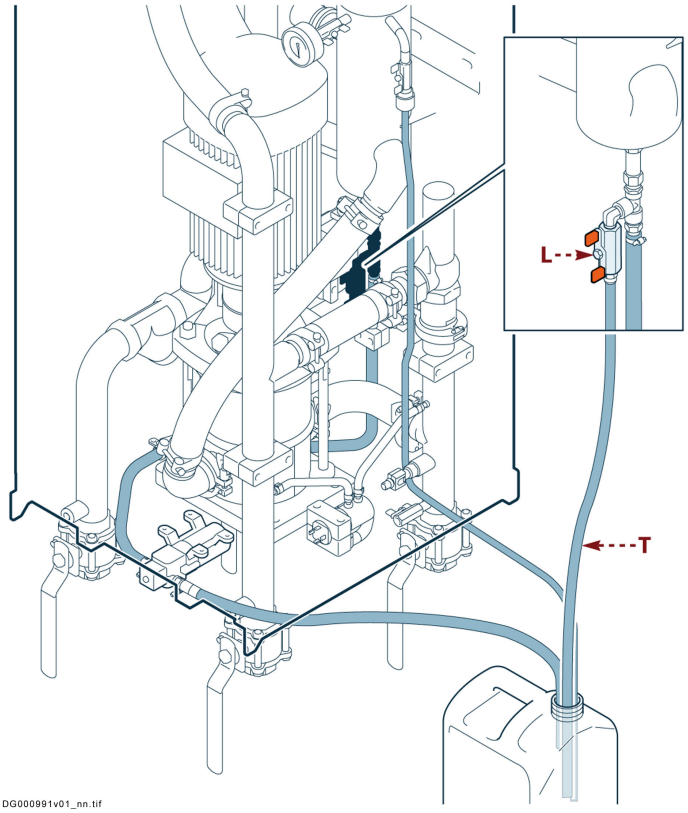
1	Fill a tank with an appropriate amount of fluid solution (see chapter "Data" on page 431).	
2	Fit the pipes (**L - M - T**) into the tank.	
3	Open the ball valve (**A**).	
4	Open the ball valve (**B**).	
5	Open the valve (**E**).	
6	Open the valve (**D**). If there is no liquid coming, clean the connector (**Q**) (see chapter "Cleaning the connector of the bleed valve" on page 457).	
7	Turn the key-operated selector switch (**F**) to the "OFF" position to prevent unexpected activation of the main pump.	
8	Ensure that the remote-controlled "ENABLE" function is activated.	
9	**NOTICE!** Do **not** turn the key-operated selector switch (F) to the "ON" position since this could cause damage to the main pump. Open any existing valves that are installed outside the machine on the circuit of the machine to be cooled.	
10	Turn the main switch (**G**) to the "ON" position. The indicator lamp (**P**) lights up.	
11	Turn the selector switch (**H**) to activate the filling pump. Make sure that there is always enough liquid in the tank. If the filling pump does not prime automatically, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 452).	
12	When the fluid is running out of the clear tube (**L**) in a steady stream (no bubbles) and the pressure has reached 1.4 … 2.2 bar, turn the key-operated selector switch (F) to the "ON" position to activate the main pump in the automatic mode. The pressure is indicated on the pressure gauge (**N**). **NOTICE!** The filling pump is activated and deactivated automatically and keeps the pressure at 1.4 … 2.2 bar. The main pump is activated only when the circuit pressure reaches over 0.2 bar. During this stage, a sudden drop in pressure may occur. The pressure drop is caused by the air pumped into the circuit as a result of activation of the main pump. Make sure that the key-operated switch is set to "ON".	
13	Keep the filling pump and the main pump running for at least 30 minutes in order to rinse the cooling circuit thoroughly.	

14	Remove the valve (**R**) to release the air from the inside of the main pump. When the fluid is running in a steady stream, close the valve (**R**). **NOTICE!** If it is hard for the system to get up to pressure, close the valve (**D**). If the pressure exceeds 1.5 bar, turn off the filling pump and temporarily open the valve (**D**) until the correct pressure is reached. **NOTICE!** If the filling pump priming stops during the filling stage, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 452).
15	Turn the selector switch (**H**) to deactivate the filling pump.
16	Close the valve (**D**) when the pressure in the circuit has reached 1.5 bar.
17	Remove the pipes from the tank.
18	Close the valve (**E**).
19	Remove the key from the selector switch (**F**) and store in a safe place. After one hour of operation, check that the pressure is correct. If it is not correct, carry out the pressure restore procedure (see chapter "Restoring the pressure" on page 453). **NOTICE!** Limit operation of the pressure gauge to the time necessary to perform the pressure reading. During operation, deactivate the pressure gauge to avoid damaging it.

Tab. 8-168: Filling the drive circuit

Filling pump priming procedure

If the filling pump does not prime automatically, proceed as described:

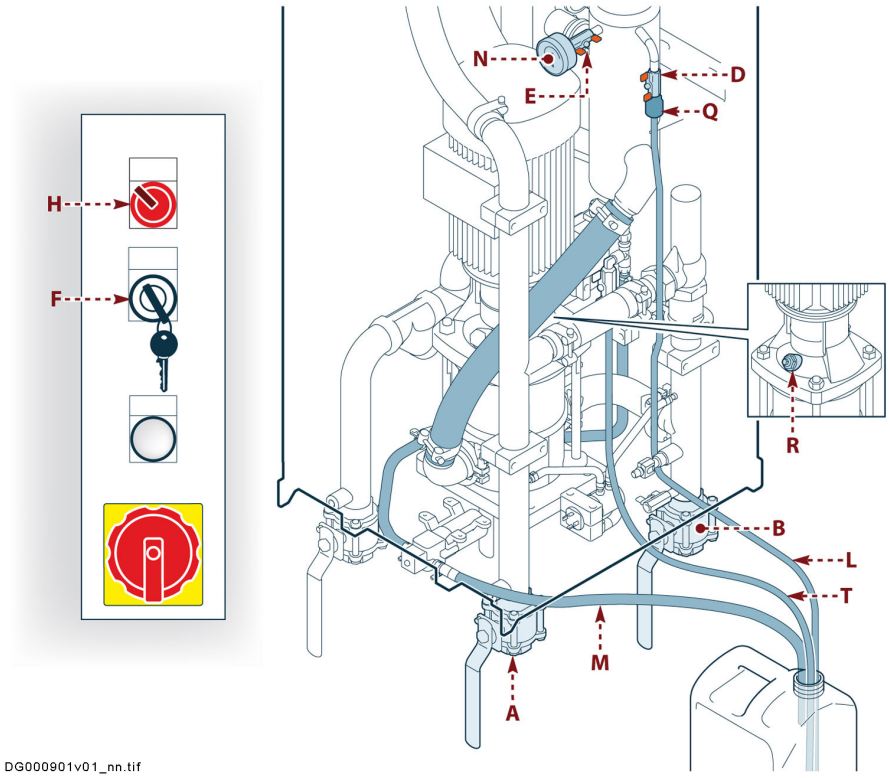
1	When the filling pump is active, open the valve (**L**).	
2	Wait for the coolant to start flowing out of the transparent hose (**T**).	
3	Close the valve (**L**) and leave the filling pump working. The filling pump is primed and starts pumping the coolant into the hydraulic circuit.	

Tab. 8-169: Perform the filling pump priming procedure

Restoring the pressure

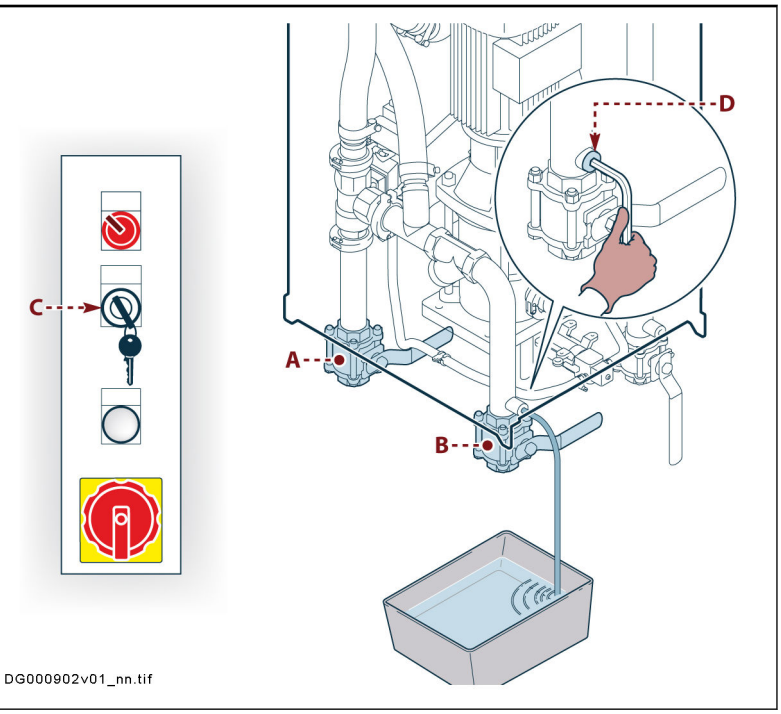
This procedure can be carried out only if the pressure is above 0.8 bar and the main pump is activated.

If the pressure is below this level, carry out the circuit filling procedure (see chapter "Filling the drive circuit" on page 450).

1	Fill a tank with an appropriate amount of fluid solution (see chapter "Data" on page 431).	
2	Fit the pipes (**L - M - T**) into the tank.	
3	Open the valve (**E**).	
4	Turn the selector switch (**H**) to activate the filling pump. If the filling pump does not prime automatically, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 452).	
5	Open the spigot (**D**) and keep open until the fluid is running out of the clear tube (**L**) in a steady stream (no bubbles) and the pressure has reached 1.5 bar. If there is no liquid coming, clean the connector (**Q**) (see chapter "Cleaning the connector of the bleed valve" on page 457).	
6	Remove the valve (**R**) to release the air from the inside of the main pump.	
7	**NOTICE!** If the pressure exceeds 1.5 bar, turn off the filling pump and temporarily open the valve (**D**) until the correct pressure is reached. **NOTICE!** If the filling pump priming stops during the filling stage, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 452). Turn the selector switch (**H**) to deactivate the filling pump.	
8	Remove the pipes from the tank.	
9	Remove the key from the selector switch (**F**) and store in a safe place.	
10	Close the valve (**E**). **NOTICE!** Limit operation of the pressure gauge to the time necessary to perform the pressure reading. During operation, deactivate the pressure gauge to avoid damaging it.	

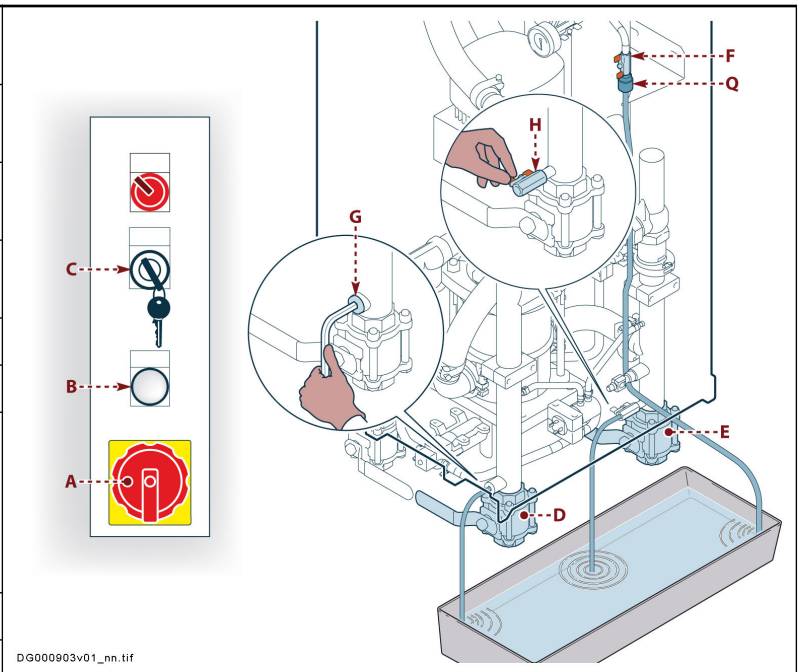
Tab. 8-170: Restoring the pressure

Emptying the customer side circuit

1	Position a suitable container for collecting the coolant.	
2	Switch off the machine (see chapter "Switching off" on page 449).	
3	Turn the key selector (**C**) to the "OFF" position.	
4	Close the ball valves (**A - B**).	
5	Unscrew the cap (**D**).	
6	Drain out all the coolant.	
7	Screw the cap (**D**) back on. **NOTICE!** Dispose of the coolant in an environmentally friendly manner in accordance with the applicable legal regulations.	

Tab. 8-171: Emptying the customer side circuit

Emptying the drive circuit

1	Position a suitable container for collecting the coolant.	
2	Switch off the machine (see chapter "Switching off" on page 449).	
3	Turn the key selector (**C**) to the "OFF" position.	
4	Turn the main switch (**A**) to the "OFF" position.	
5	The indicator lamp (**B**) will switch off.	
6	Close the ball valves (**D - E**).	
7	Open the valve (**F**). If there is no liquid coming, clean the connector (**Q**) (see chapter "Cleaning the connector of the bleed valve" on page 457).	
8	Open the valve (**H**).	
9	Unscrew the caps (**G**).	
10	Drain out all the coolant.	
11	Close the valve (**F**).	
12	Screw the caps (**G**) back on.	
13	Close the valve (**H**). **NOTICE!** Dispose of the coolant in an environmentally friendly manner in accordance with the applicable legal regulations.	

Tab. 8-172: Emptying the drive circuit

Maintenance

Safety advice for maintenance

For personal safety reasons, before conducting maintenance interventions, check that all safety devices are activated and warn the people present in the workplace that such intervention is underway.

In particular, disconnect the power supply to the machine.

Ensure that the voltage cannot be switched on again unintentionally.

Allow the machine to cool down before any operation to prevent burns.

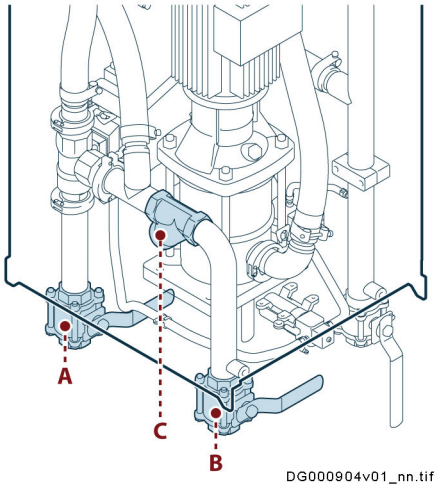
Maintenance schedule

Interval		Component	Type of work	Cross reference
Every 1600 operating hours	Every 30,000 operating hours	–	–	–
✓	–	Filter	Cleaning	See chapter "Filter cleaning in the customer side circuit" on page 456
–	✓	Main pump	Replacement	See chapter "Replacing the main pump" on page 463
–	✓	Coolant	Replacement	

Tab. 8-173: Maintenance schedule

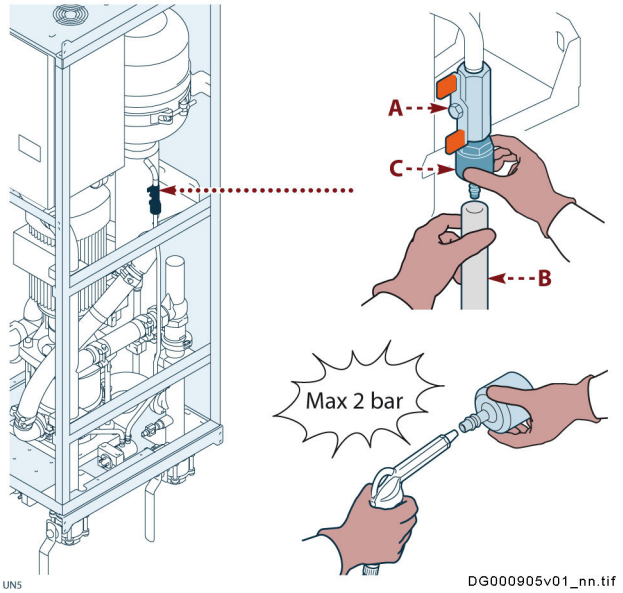
Filter cleaning in the customer side circuit

1	Drain the cooling liquid from the customer side circuit.
2	Close the intake and outlet ball valves (**A - B**).
3	Unscrew the cap (**C**).
4	Remove and clean the filter. Do not use aggressive, flammable or toxic detergents.
5	Reinsert the filter.
6	Screw the cap (**C**) back on.
7	Open the ball valves (**A - B**).



Tab. 8-174: Filter cleaning in the customer side circuit

Cleaning the connector of the bleed valve

1	Close the bleed valve (**A**).	
2	Remove the hose (**B**).	
3	Unscrew the connector (**C**).	
4	Clean the connector with compressed air. Keep the pressure on the level indicated in the picture.	
5	Screw on the connector (**C**).	
6	Attach the hose (**B**) to the connector.	
7	Open the bleed valve (**A**).	

Tab. 8-175: Cleaning the connector

Cleaning the machine

Clean the machine with detergents that are approved in accordance with the applicable legal regulations.

Troubleshooting

The following table contains a number of faults that may occur during operation as well as appropriate corrective measures.

Code	Type	Malfunction	Likely cause	Remedy
E2011	Warning 1	Low pressure, please refill	For at least 0.5 s, the system pressure is lower than 0.5 bar (loss of water, maintenance)	Refill cooling system up to 1.5 bar
E2012	Warning 2	Unable to start drive	Motor does not start in velocity control operation	Switch off the start command for at least 10 seconds Ensure that the system has the status "AF" before starting
E2013	Warning 3	Mixing valve is not following	3MV mixing valve may have a mechanical defect or the electrical connecting cable may be damaged	Check 3MV mixing valve Check feedback signal
E2014	Warning 4	Overtemperature	Temperature exceeds the defined value (P-0-1316) of the maximum permissible deviation from required temperature (T_{set}) for a defined duration (P-0-1317)	Check cooling system Adjust parameter P-0-1316 and/or P-0-1317
E2016	Warning 6	Lower motor speed limitation active	Motor velocity < 360 min^{-1}	Increase the value of parameter P-0-1374 (> 360 min^{-1}) Ensure that the motor can run with a velocity > 360 min^{-1}
F2011	Error 1	System pressure	System pressure lower than 0.2 bar	Refill cooling system up to 1.5 bar
F2012	Error 2	Overtemperature	The fluid temperature (on the drive side) has exceeded the maximum allowed temperature limit (see parameter P-0-1318)	Check cooling system Change the value of parameter P-0-1318 if too low
		Slight leakage of cooling liquid between pump and motor	Start after long inactivity of the machine Changing the ambient conditions	Start pump [1)]

Code	Type	Malfunction	Likely cause	Remedy
		The filling pump does not start priming automatically	Suction hose empty following long period of machine disuse No coolant in the tank High backpressure in the filling pump delivery line	Perform the filling pump priming procedure
		The filling pump does not inject the coolant into the circuit	The filling pump is not primed The filling pump bleed valve is open	Perform the filling pump priming procedure Close the filling pump bleed valve

1) The pump is mechanically sealed by the cooling liquid. This type of seal (mechanical) may lead to a slight leakage of cooling liquid under certain conditions. It takes some time to minimize the leakage if the pump is started after stopping the machine or after being inactive. The required time depends on the operating conditions. The leaked cooling liquid usually evaporates immediately. The leaked cooling liquid is not visible then. **This type of leakage is not a malfunction.** Contact the service if the leakage persists for a longer period of time.

Tab. 8-176: Errors and warnings

Replacing the component

Safety advice for component exchange

For personal safety reasons, before conducting maintenance interventions, check that all safety devices are activated and warn the people present in the workplace that such intervention is underway.

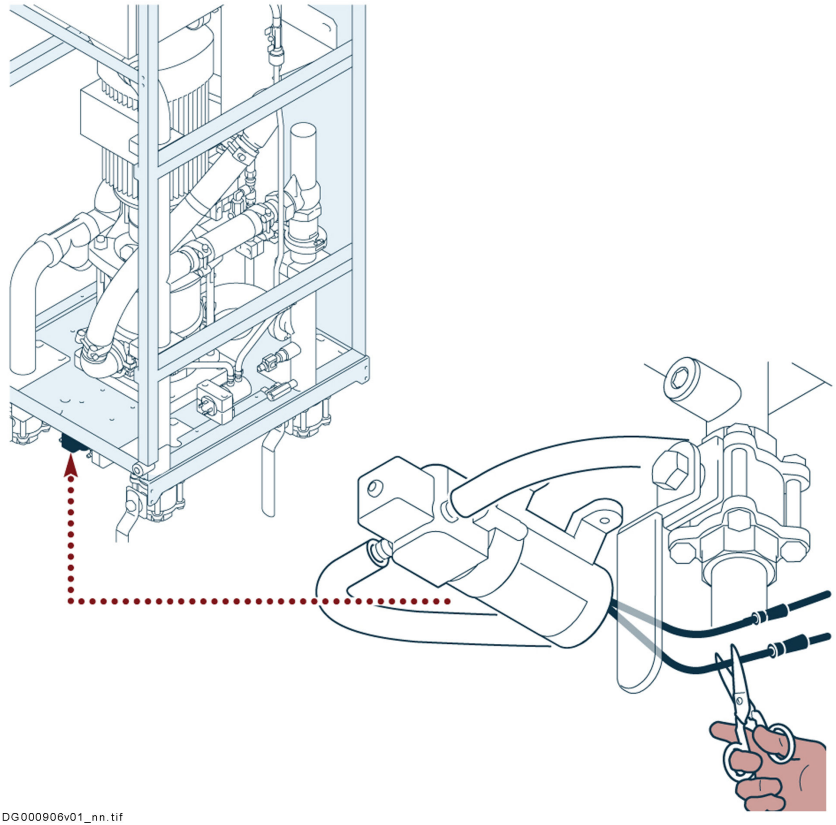
In particular, disconnect the power supply to the machine.

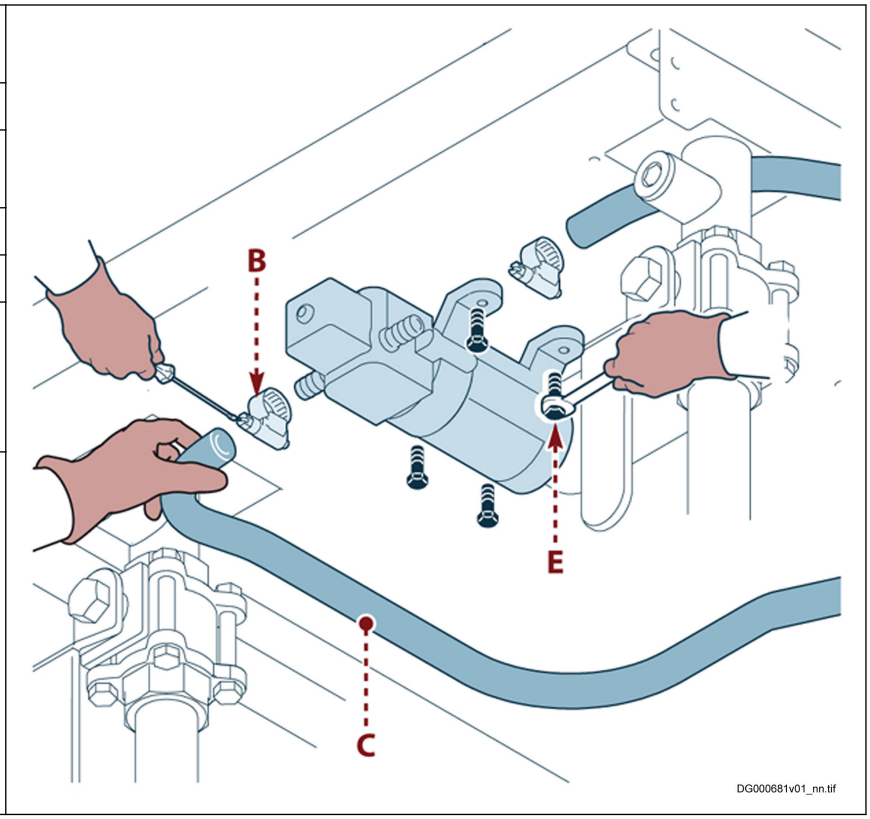
Ensure that the voltage cannot be switched on again unintentionally.

Allow the machine to cool down before any operation to prevent burns.

Replace worn or damaged parts by original spare parts.

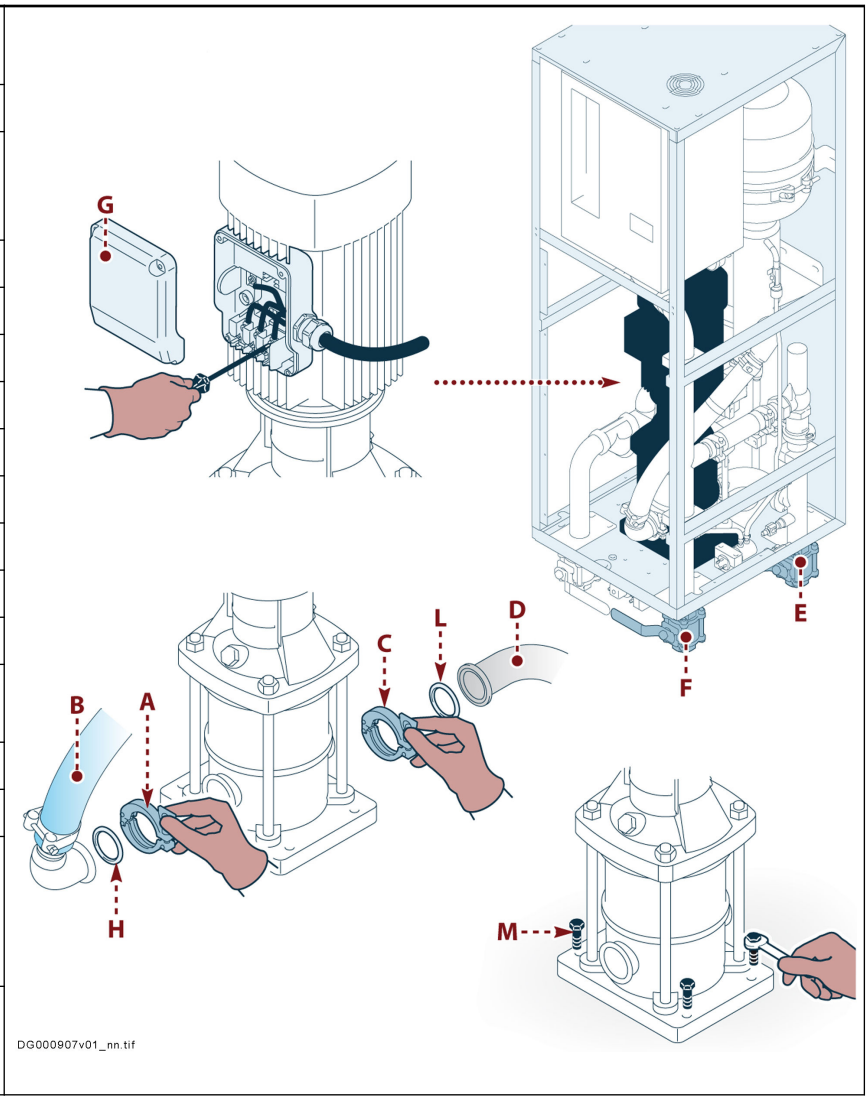
Replacing the filling pump

1	Disconnect the machine from the power supply source.	
2	Cut the mains cables.	

3	Undo the screw and remove the strap (**B**).	
4	Extract the hose (**C**).	
5	Repeat the same operations to remove the other flexible tube.	
6	Unscrew the screws (**E**).	
7	Remove the pump.	
8	Install the new pump. In order to install the new pump, proceed in reverse order to the removal of the pump.	
9	Fill the drive circuit (see chapter "Filling the drive circuit" on page 450).	

Tab. 8-177: Replacing the filling pump

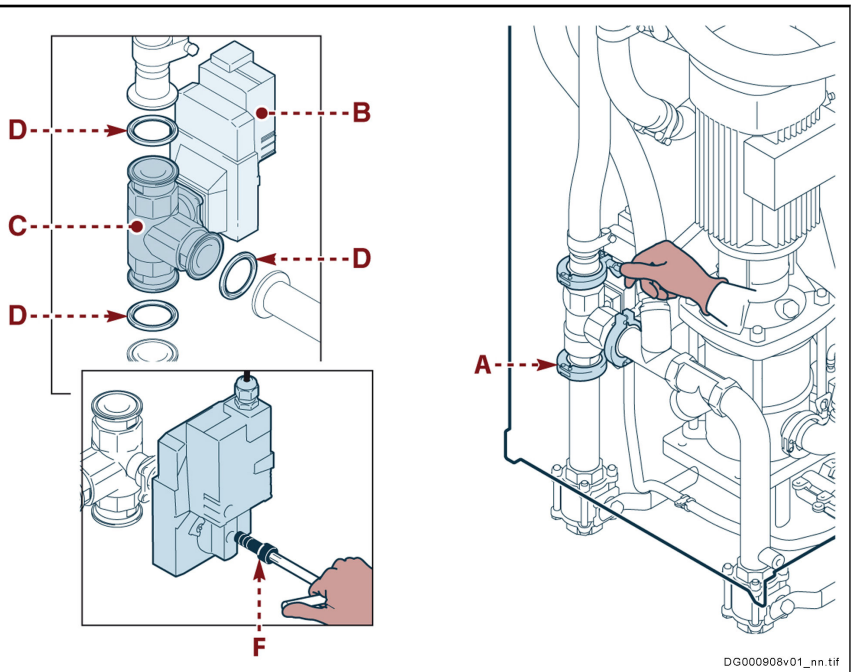
Replacing the main pump

1	Disconnect the machine from the power supply source.	
2	Allow the machine to cool down.	
3	Empty the drive circuit (see chapter "Emptying the drive circuit" on page 455).	
4	Close the valve (**E**).	
5	Close the valve (**F**).	
6	Remove the clamp (**A**).	
7	Disconnect the hosing (**B**).	
8	Remove the gasket (**H**).	
9	Remove the clamp (**C**).	
10	Remove the pipe (**D**).	
11	Remove the gasket (**L**).	
12	Remove the cover (**G**).	
13	Disconnect the cables from the terminals.	
14	Unscrew the screws (**M**).	
15	Remove the pump.	
16	Install the new pump. In order to install the new pump, proceed in reverse order to the removal of the pump.	
17	Fill the drive circuit (see chapter "Filling the drive circuit" on page 450).	

Tab. 8-178: Replacing the main pump

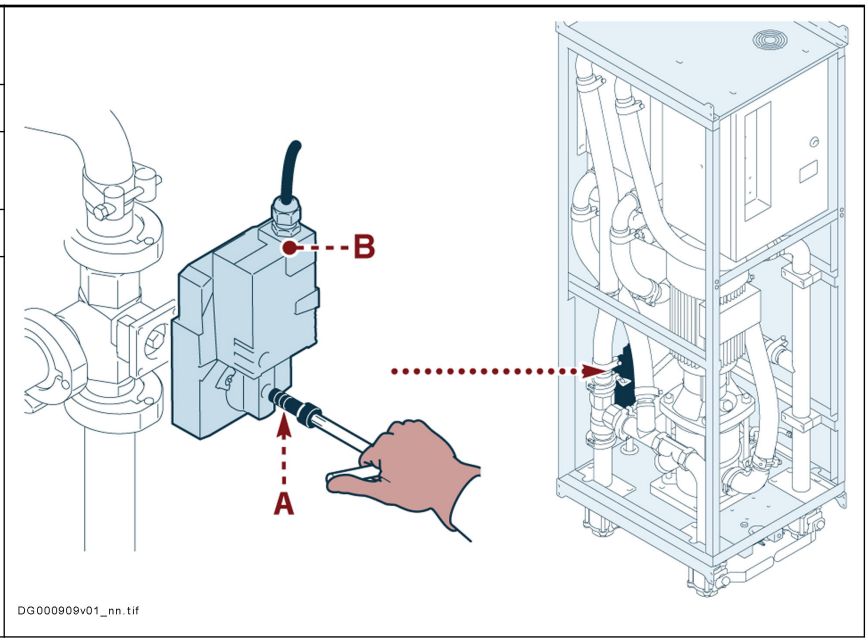
Replacing the mixing valve

1	Disconnect the machine from the power supply source.
2	Allow the machine to cool down.
3	Unscrew the clamps (**A**).
4	Remove the valve (**C**) and the actuator (**B**).
5	Remove the gaskets (**D**).
6	Unscrew the screw (**F**).
7	Disconnect the valve from the actuator.
8	Connect the new valve with the actuator.
9	Position the gaskets (**D**). Replace the gaskets if they are damaged or worn.
10	Bring the valve and the actuator to correct position.
11	Screw on the clamps (**A**). In order to install the new valve, proceed in reverse order to the removal of the valve.



Tab. 8-179: Replacing the mixing valve

Replacing the actuator

1	Disconnect the machine from the power supply source.	
2	Allow the machine to cool down.	
3	Disconnect the electric cables from the actuator (see wiring diagram).	
4	Unscrew the screw (**A**).	
5	Remove the actuator (**B**). In order to install the new actuator, proceed in reverse order to the removal of the actuator.	

Tab. 8-180: Replacing the actuator

Replacing the fuses

Before replacing the fuse, fix the cause of the malfunction.

Only replace the interrupted fuse with a fuse with the same characteristics.

For the characteristics of the fuses see chapter "Fuses" on page 435.

Disposing of old equipment

Scrapping operations must be handled by specialized personnel with suitable skills for the job.

In accordance with the applicable regulations, all individual components must be collected separately for disposal according to their chemical properties when dismantling the machine.

With reference to the European Directive (RAEE), electric and electronic components must either be disposed of in authorized landfill sites or the machine, complete of the said parts, must be returned to the dealer in case of a new purchase.

The owner is responsible for delivering the machine, at the end of its working life, to the appropriate collection structures. Failure to comply shall lead to penalties foreseen by the regulations in force.

Control using MLD

Pressure control

The differential pressure between the machine's intake and its outlet has to be kept at a constant rate (1.5 bar, for example) so that the cooling liquid flow to the devices to be cooled can be easily set.

To control the pressure, the pump speed is varied based on the intake/outlet differential pressure.

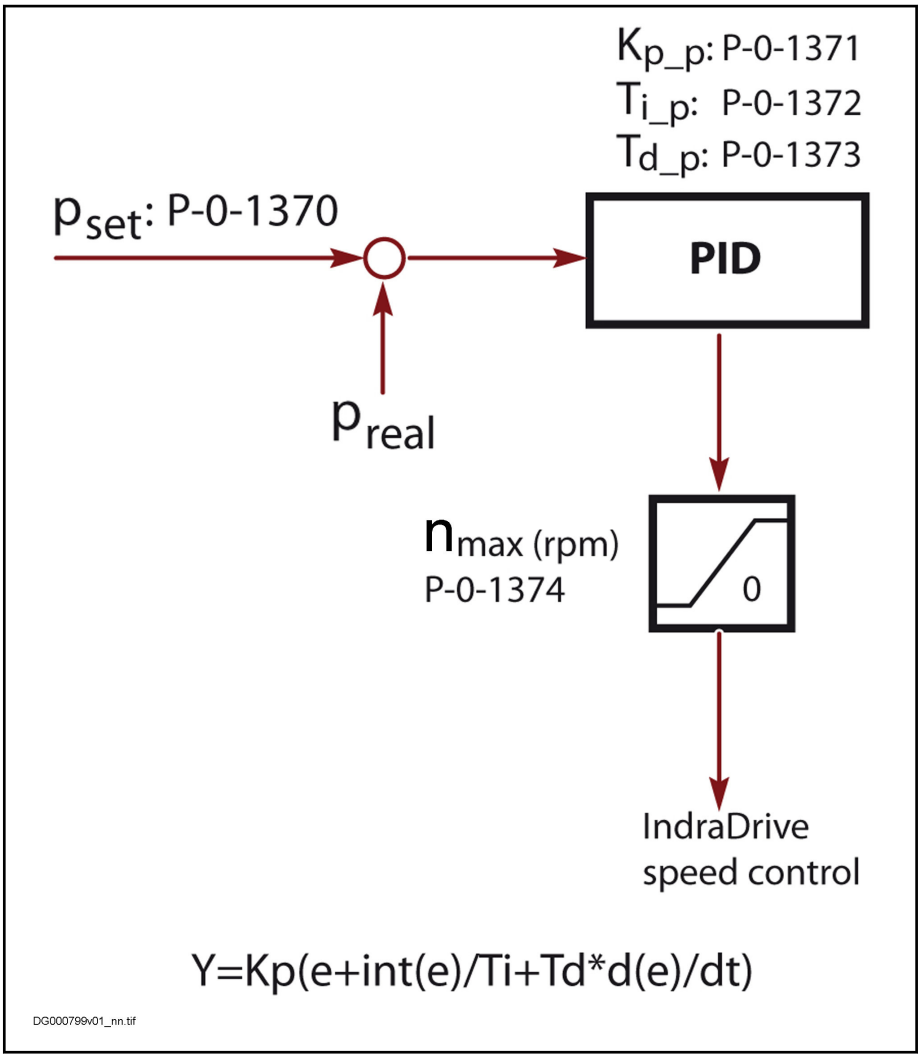


Fig. 8-129: Pressure control

Name	Parameter	Unit
p_{set}	P-0-1370	bar
K_{p_p}	P-0-1371	min^{-1} /bar
T_{i_p}	P-0-1372	s
T_{d_p}	P-0-1373	s
n_{max}	P-0-1374	min^{-1}

Tab. 8-181: Pressure control parameters

Temperature control

When selecting the coolant temperature in the drive circuit, the climatic conditions of the system have to be taken into account to prevent condensation on the equipment being cooled.

The temperature of the fluid is set using a three-way mixing valve.

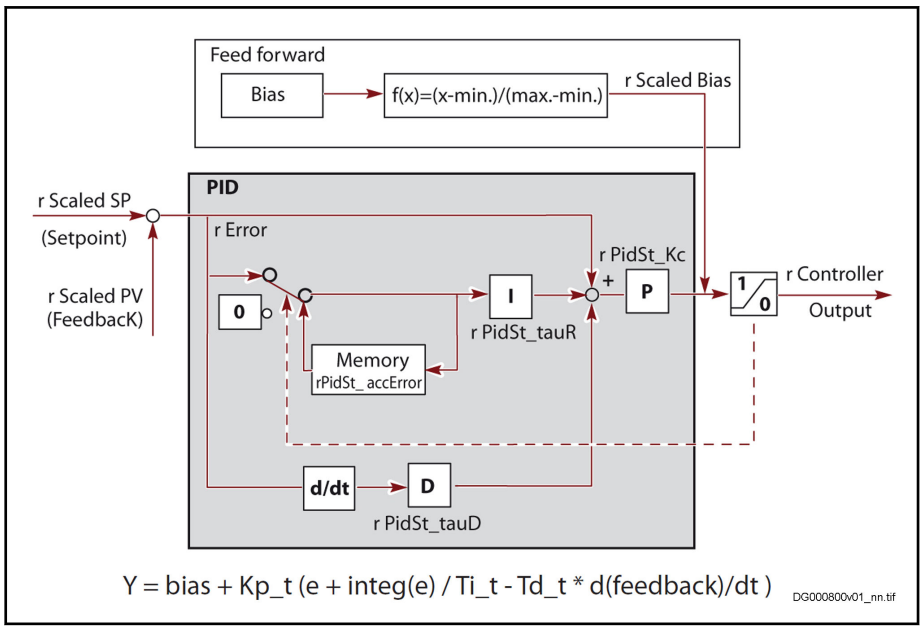


Fig. 8-130: Temperature control

Feed forward (P-0-1379)

The "feed forward" feature allows the temperature regulation system to adjust more quickly when the machine is started up.

The "feed forward" feature adds a value at the regulator output so that the cooling process can begin before the command value is signaled to have been exceeded.

When the "feed forward" feature is used (P-0-1379 > 0), it is important to make sure the temperature rise at machine start-up is not too high. An empirical method for calculating the "feed forward" is shown below:

$FF = [X - K_{p_t} \times (t_{set} - t_{act})] \div 10$
FF: Feed forward
X 30 … 60

Tab. 8-182: Calculating the "feed forward"



The "feedforward" shown here is different from the "feedforward" implemented in an IndraDrive drive controller.

Name	Parameter	Unit	Default value
p_{set}	P-0-1370	bar	1.5
K_{p_p}	P-0-1371	min^{-1} /bar	40
T_{i_p}	P-0-1372	s	0.05

Name	Parameter	Unit	Default value
T_{d_p}	P-0-1373	s	0
n_{max}	P-0-1374	min^{-1}	3000
t_{set}	P-0-1375	°C	50
K_{p_t}	P-0-1376	V / °C	-5
T_{i_t}	P-0-1377	s	40
T_{d_t}	P-0-1378	s	0
Feed forward	P-0-1379	V	0

Tab. 8-183: Temperature control parameters

Starting the machine

The machine is started (as per the predefined setting) solely with the digital command:

ENABLE (X31.1, P-0-1390)

You can set the type of machine enabling (starting via digital input or starting via the communication).

Start	Parameters	Input
Start selection 1	P-0-1380	digital
Start selection 2	P-0-1381	digital
Start command via communication	P-0-1382	digital

Tab. 8-184: Start options

The parameters **P-0-1380 and P-0-1381** can be set to "0" or "1".

If both parameters are set to the **same value** (0 or 1), the machine can be started via the digital input with **P-0-1390** (0 = off, 1 = on).

If both parameters are set to **different values**, the machine can be started via the communication with **P-0-1382** (0 = off, 1 = on).

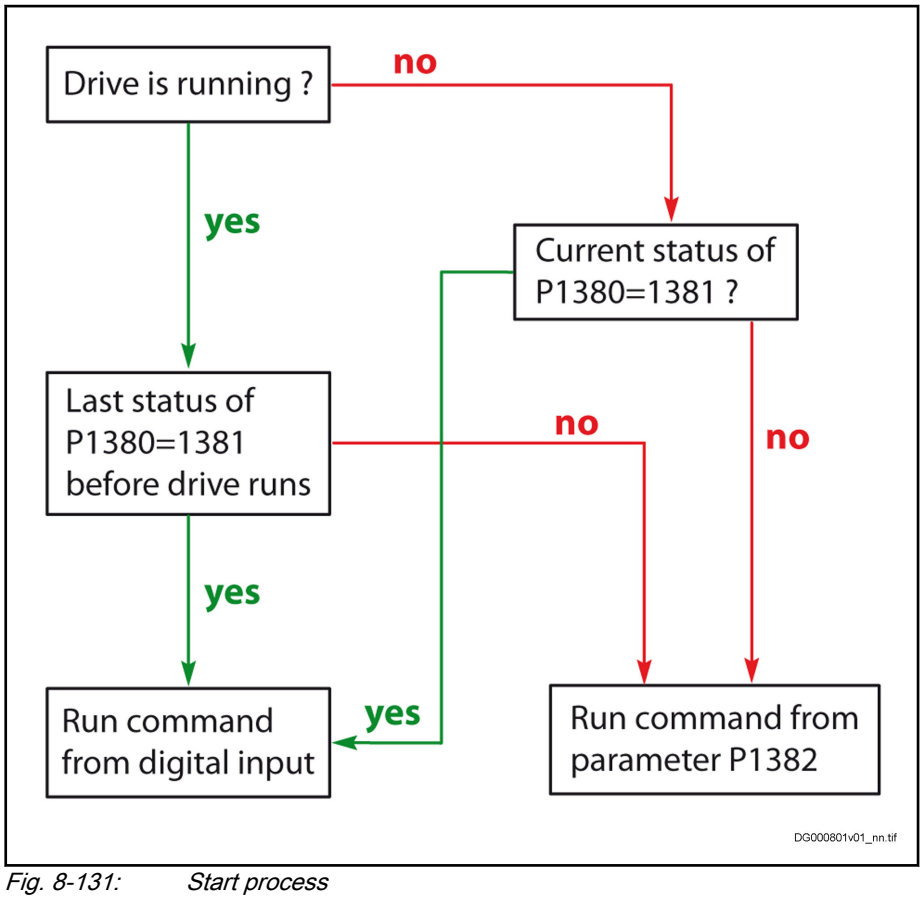


Fig. 8-131: Start process

Example: By setting the parameter P-0-1380 as a digital input and monitoring the parameters P-0-1381 and P-0-1382 via the PLC, the power-up command

for the machine can be transmitted either via the digital input or the PLC, from two different workstations.

Parameters

Hardware designation on the electronic type plate

Name	Parameters	008-020	035-090	060-180	150-450
Application type	S-0-1302.0.3	HAH02.1-WW008	HAH02.1-WW035	HAH02.1-WW060	HAH02.1-WW150

Tab. 8-185: Hardware designation on the electronic type plate (from software version ≥ 03V07)

Name	Parameter	Unit	Minimum value	Maximum value	Default value WW008/035/060/150
$_{pset}$ (pressure command value)	P-0-1370	bar	0	2.0	1.5
$_{Kp_p}$ (pressure control)	P-0-1371	min^{-1} /bar	0	10000	40
T_{i_p} (pressure control)	P-0-1372	s	0.0	1000.0	0.05
T_{d_p} (pressure control)	P-0-1373	s	0.0	1000.0	0.0
n_{max}	P-0-1374	min^{-1}	0	8000	3000
Target temperature value	P-0-1375	°C	0	60	40
$_{Kp_T}$ (temperature control)	P-0-1376	V / °C	-1000	0	-5
T_{i_T} (temperature control)	P-0-1377	s	0	10000	40
T_{d_T} (temperature control)	P-0-1378	s	0	1000	0
Feed forward	P-0-1379	V	0	1000	0
Start selection 1	P-0-1380	-	0	1	0
Start selection 2	P-0-1381	-	0	1	0
Start command via communication	P-0-1382	-	0	1	0
p_{set_2} (pressure command value 2)	P-0-1385	bar	0.0	2.0	0.2
Control word switching to p_{set_2} (see also "Switching the pressure command value" on page 424)	P-0-1295	bit	-	-	0
High temperature warning differential value	P-0-1316	°C	0	20	10
High temperature warning time	P-0-1317	s	0	100	3
Overtemperature limit value	P-0-1318	°C	40	100	90
Tolerance in pressure control	P-0-1320	bar	0.0	10.0	0.5
Low engine speed - Deceleration	P-0-1321	s	0	100	5
Overpressure limit value	P-0-1322	bar	0.0	7.0	2.5

Tab. 8-186: Parameters

Name	Parameter	Unit	Type *	Scaling
Analog I/O monitoring parameters (read-only) with analog Hall sensors				
3-way mixing valve with control voltage	P-0-1270	V	AO	2-10 V, 0-100% open
Pressure (difference between inlet and outlet)	P-0-1271	bar	-	-
Coolant temperature in °C	P-0-1272	°C	-	-
Coolant temperature in °F	P-0-1273	°F	-	-
Pressure sensor	P-0-1280	V	AI	0-10 V, 0-6 bar
Temperature sensor	P-0-1281	V	AI	0-10 V, 0-100 °C
3-way mixing valve with position feedback	P-0-1282	V	AI	2-10 V, 0-100% open
Digital I/O parameters				
Drive enable	P-0-1390	bit 0	DI	
>, 0.5 bar pressure monitoring	P-0-1391	bit 0	DI	
>, 0.2 bar pressure monitoring	P-0-1391	bit 1	DI	
Status word machine	P-0-1410			
Cooler is running	P-0-1410	bit 0		Start command + P-0-1410.4 + no warning + no error
Command pressure value reached	P-0-1410	bit 1		abs(P-0-1370 - P-0-1271) < P-0-1320
The radiator is running (ignores warning)	P-0-1410	bit 3		Start command + P-0-1410.4 + no error
Motor running	P-0-1410	bit 4		Motor velocity (S40) ≥ 360
Drive warning	P-0-1412	bit 0	DO	"high" for no warning
Drive error	P-0-1412	bit 1	DO	"high" for no error

* AI: analog input; AO: analog output; DI: digital input; DO: digital output

Tab. 8-187: Parameters

Switching the pressure command value

The pressure command value can be switched via control word (P-0-1295.0). This function can be used for a more economical operation (lower energy consumption, less wear) if the new pressure command value is set to a lower value.

Pressure command value (p_{set})	P-0-1370
Pressure command value 2 (p_{set_2})	P-0-1385
Control word	P-0-1295.0
P-0-1295.0 = 0	Pressure command value: P-0-1370
P-0-1295.0 = 1	Pressure command value: P-0-1385

Tab. 8-188: Switching the pressure command value

With a pressure command value of 0.2 bar instead of 1.5 bar, laboratory measurements showed energy savings of 92% (40 W instead of 500 W). The

motor speed decreased from 2200 min^{-1} to 760 min^{-1} resulting in a longer service life of the motor.

Air-water heat exchanger (WA012-020)

Technical information

General description of the machine

The machine is designed and manufactured for the purpose of cooling devices or equipment using a liquid solution made of glycol and demineralized water.

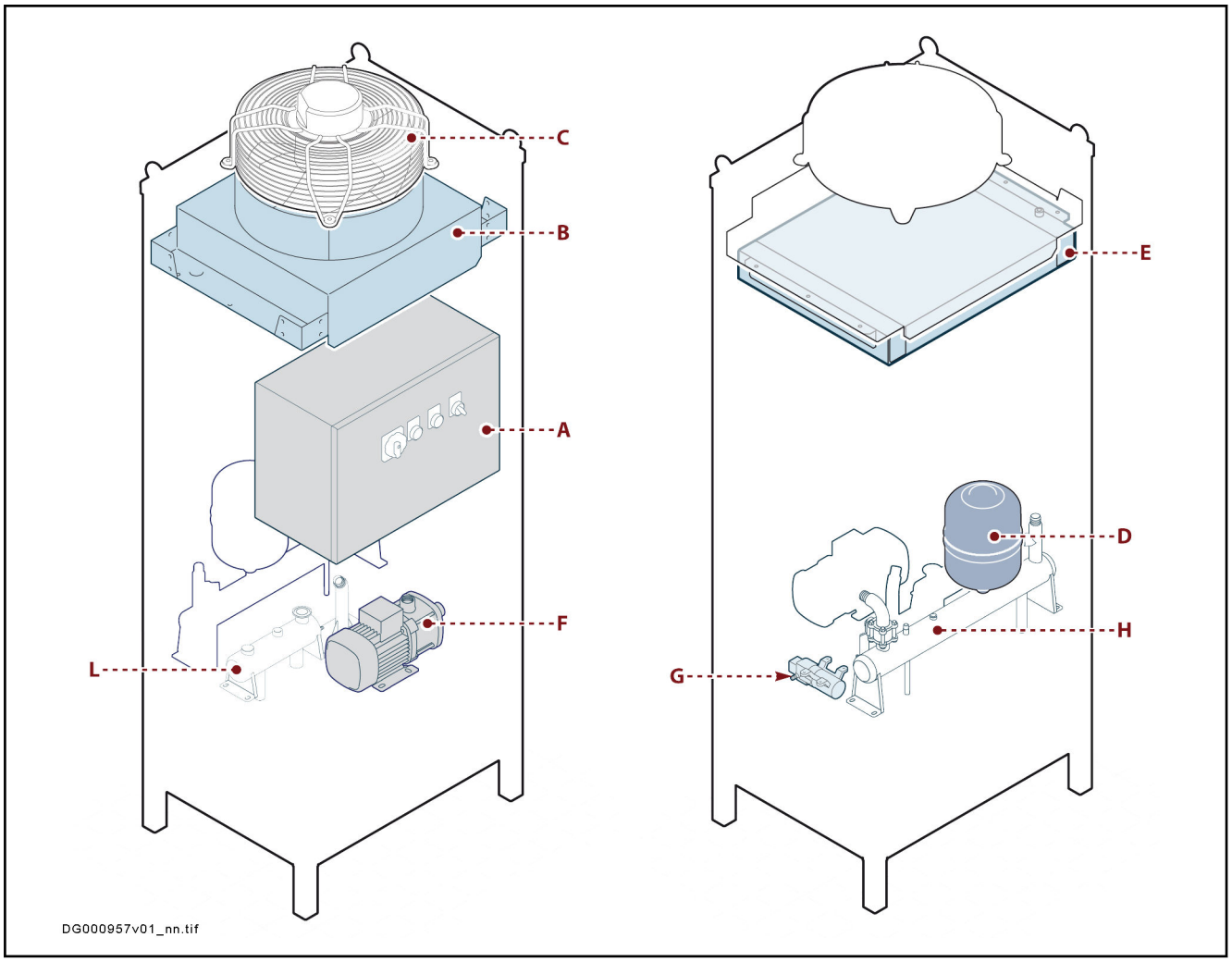
The underlying principle of this cooling method is the transfer of heat between air and water via a heat exchanger.

A pump in the radiator circulates the fluid, and the air current generated by an electric fan cools the fluid.

Pressure and temperature are controlled via IndraMotion MLD, the drive-integrated Motion Logic Control system compliant with IEC 61131-3. See chapter "Control using MLD" on page 514.

See also chapter "Liquid cooling" on page 53.

Main components

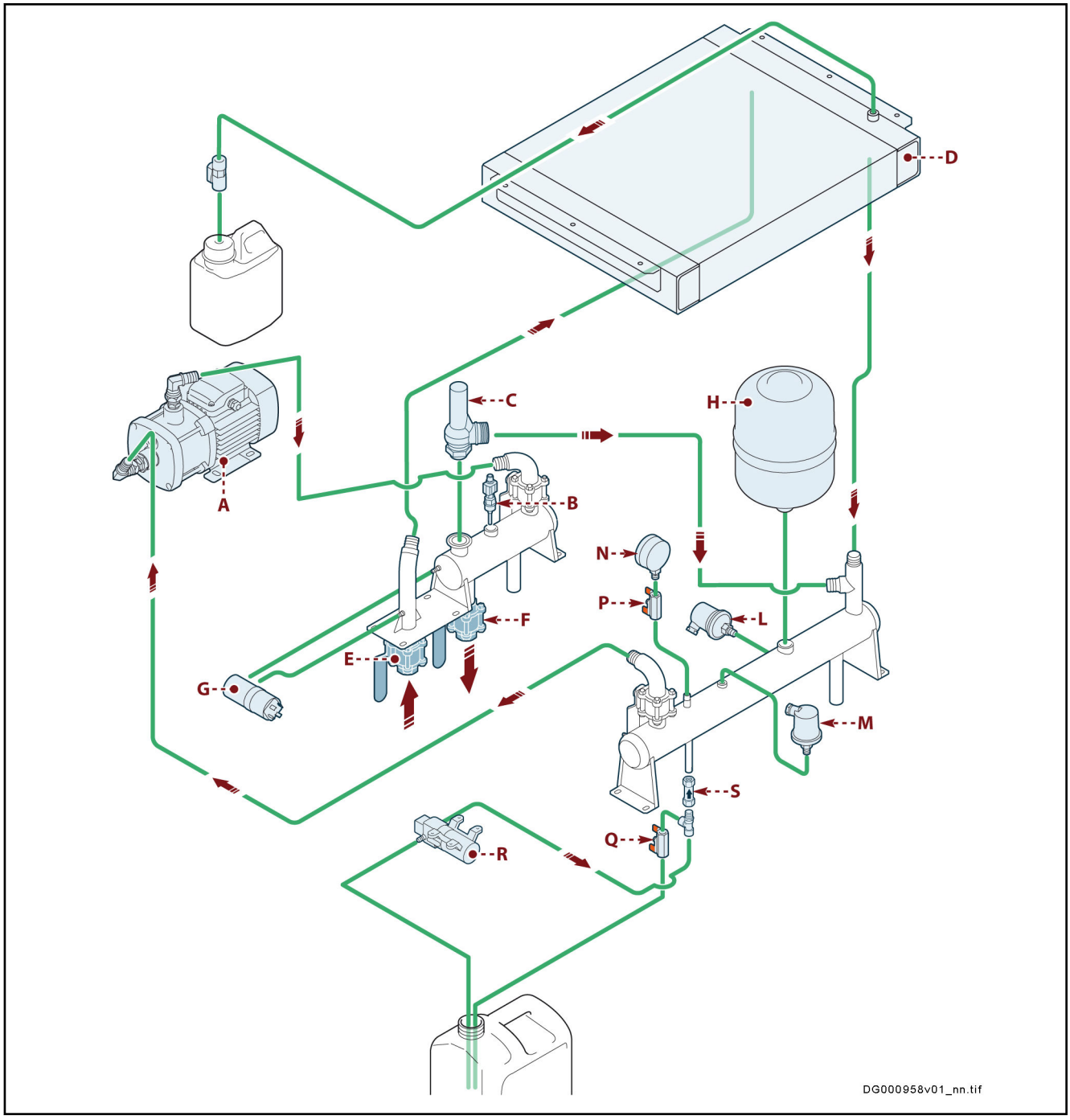


A	Terminal box
B	Suction channel
C	Electric fan
D	Expansion tank
E	Heat exchanger
F	Main pump
G	Filling pump
H	Intake manifold
L	Exhaust manifold

Fig. 8-132: Main components

Operational cycle and component description

The following figure illustrates the operating principle.



A	**Main pump:** Circulates the coolant through the hydraulic circuit.
B	**Temperature sensor:** Measures the coolant temperature in the outlet pipe.
C	**Bypass valve:** It limits the pressure of the output liquid.
D	**Heat exchanger:** Reduces the temperature of the coolant.
E	**Ball valve:** It opens and closes the flow of the coolant from the owner's system.
F	**Ball valve:** It opens and closes the flow of the coolant towards the owner's system.
G	**Pressure sensor:** This detects, in real time, the differential pressure between the intake pipe and the outlet pipe.
H	**Expansion tank:** Ensures consistent pressure in the circuit.

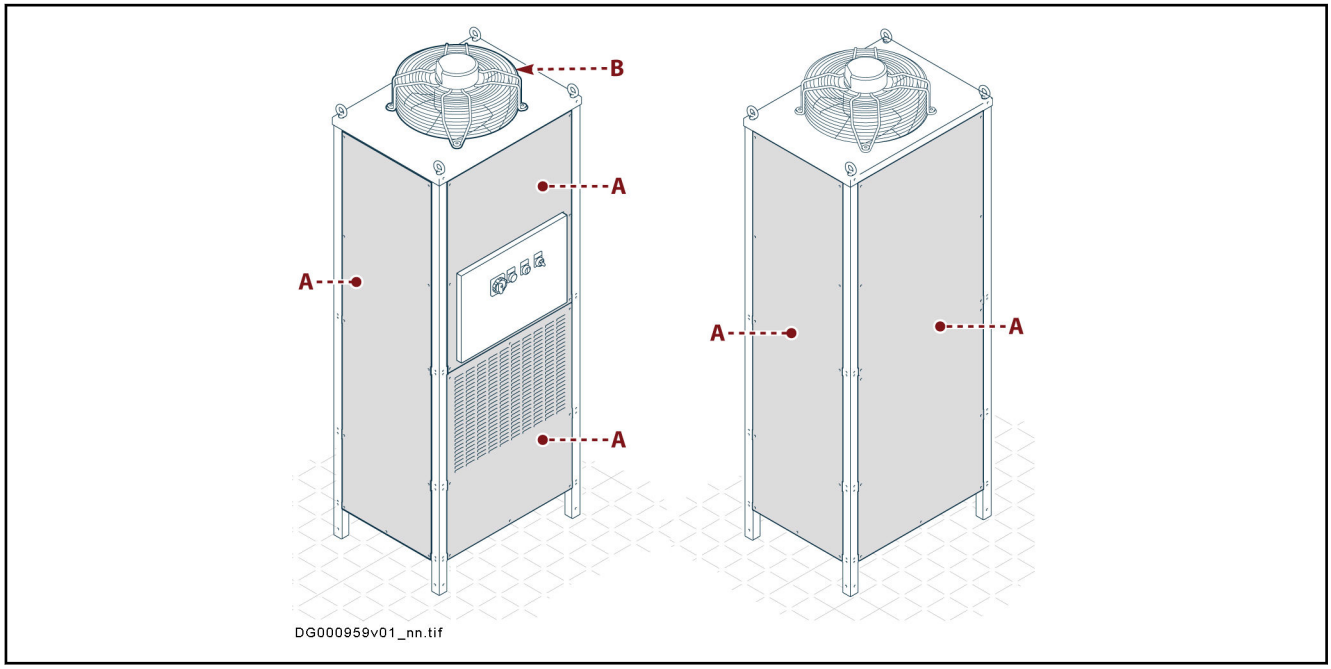
L	**Pressure switch (0.2 bar):** This detects the pressure level in the intake manifold.
M	**Pressure switch (0.5 bar):** This detects the pressure level in the intake manifold.
N	**Pressure gauge:** Measures the fluid pressure in the intake manifold.
P	**Valve:** Regulates the flow to the pressure gauge (**N**).
Q	**Valve:** This is used to release any backpressure in the filling pump delivery line and facilitate priming.
R	**Filling pump:** Fills the cooling circuit.
S	**Check valve:** It prevents the liquid from flowing into the filling pump when it is being primed or is deactivated.

Fig. 8-133: Operating cycle and component description

Guards

⚠ WARNING **Risk of injury!**

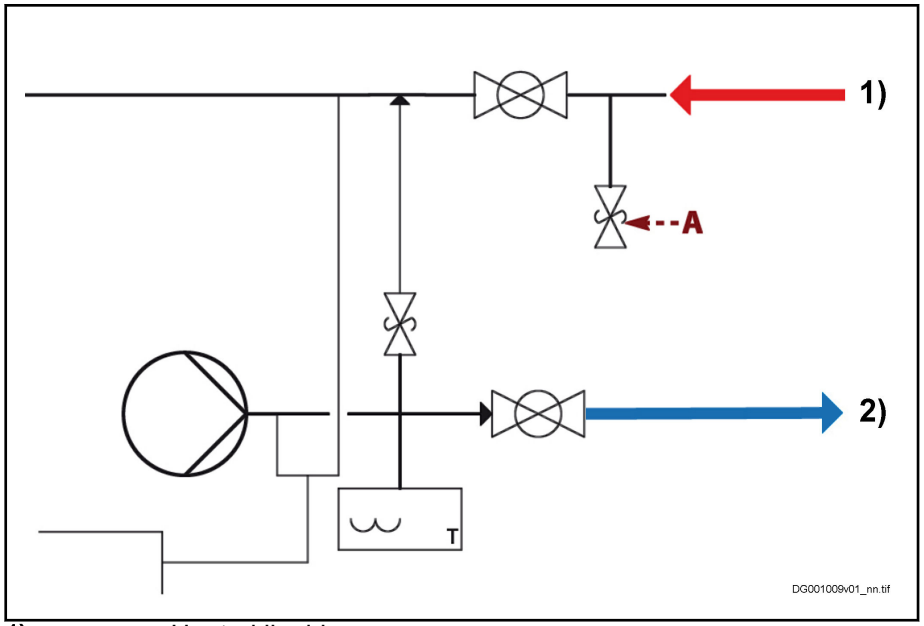
Always use the machine with the safety guards in place.



A **Guards** Prevents unauthorized access to machine parts.
B **Guards:** Prevents accidental contact with the fan.
Fig. 8-134: Guards

Overpressure devices

If additional pumps (external to the machine) are installed on the circuit or if the drop in pressure of the hydraulic load is less than 1.5 bar, the owner has to fit a pressure limiting valve. The valve has to limit the pressure to a maximum of 2 bar in the return pipe to the machine.



1) Heated liquid
2) Cooled liquid
A Pressure limiting valve

Fig. 8-135: Positioning of the pressure limiting valve (A)

Overall dimensions

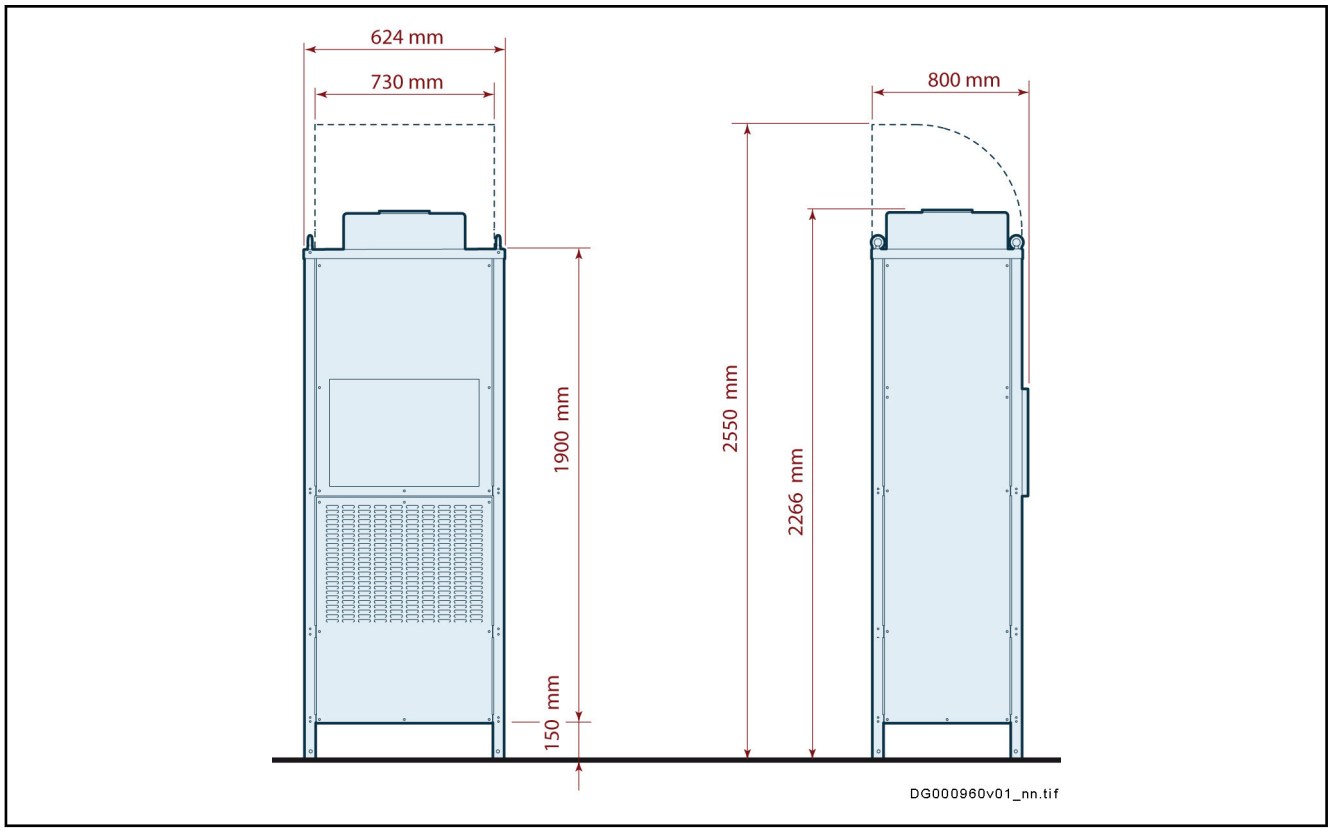


Fig. 8-136: Overall dimensions

Data

Technical data - Machine

Designation	Unit	Value
Power voltage	Vac	380 (-15%) … 500 (+10%)
Frequency	Hz	50/60
Current	A	5
Maximum cooling capacity	kW	12
Maximum output flow rate	l/min	20
Maximum pressure of the incoming coolant	bar	2
Maximum pressure of the leaking coolant	bar	4.5
Maximum coolant temperature	°C	70 [1)]
Minimum coolant temperature	°C	5
Drive circuit coolant (monoethyl glycol and demineralized water solution) See also chapter "Liquid cooling" on page 53.	-	20% glycol
Estimated amount of coolant (heat exchanger only)	l	approx. 50
Degree of protection	IP	54
Ambient temperature	°C	-20 … +40
Maximum relative humidity without condensation	%	95
Maximum installation altitude	m	2000
Weight (heat exchanger)	kg	180

1) comply with the maximum permissible temperature of the coolant used

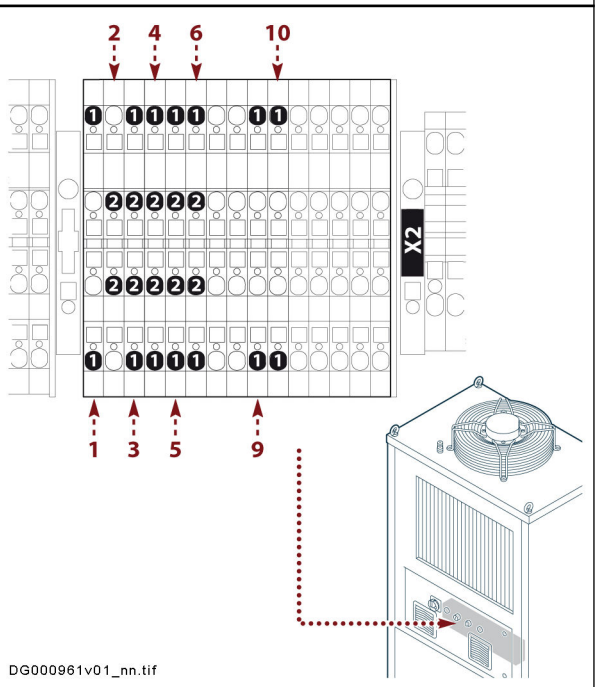
Tab. 8-189: Technical data - machine

ENABLE, UNIT ERROR, UNIT WARNING, ERROR RESET

The signals used to enable the relative machine status via the operator's control terminal are transmitted via the terminal block shown in the figure.

Connect the wires to the terminals shown in the "connection terminal" table.

Connection terminals

Pos.	Significance	Terminals
9.1 - 2.2	Terminals for machine enable via the operator's control terminal (ENABLE)	
3.1 - 3.2 4.1 - 4.2	Machine error signal terminals Closed contact: no error	
5.1 - 5.2 6.1 - 6.2	Warning signal terminals Closed contact: no warning	
10.1 - 1.1	Terminals for remote alarm reset	

Tab. 8-190: Connection terminals

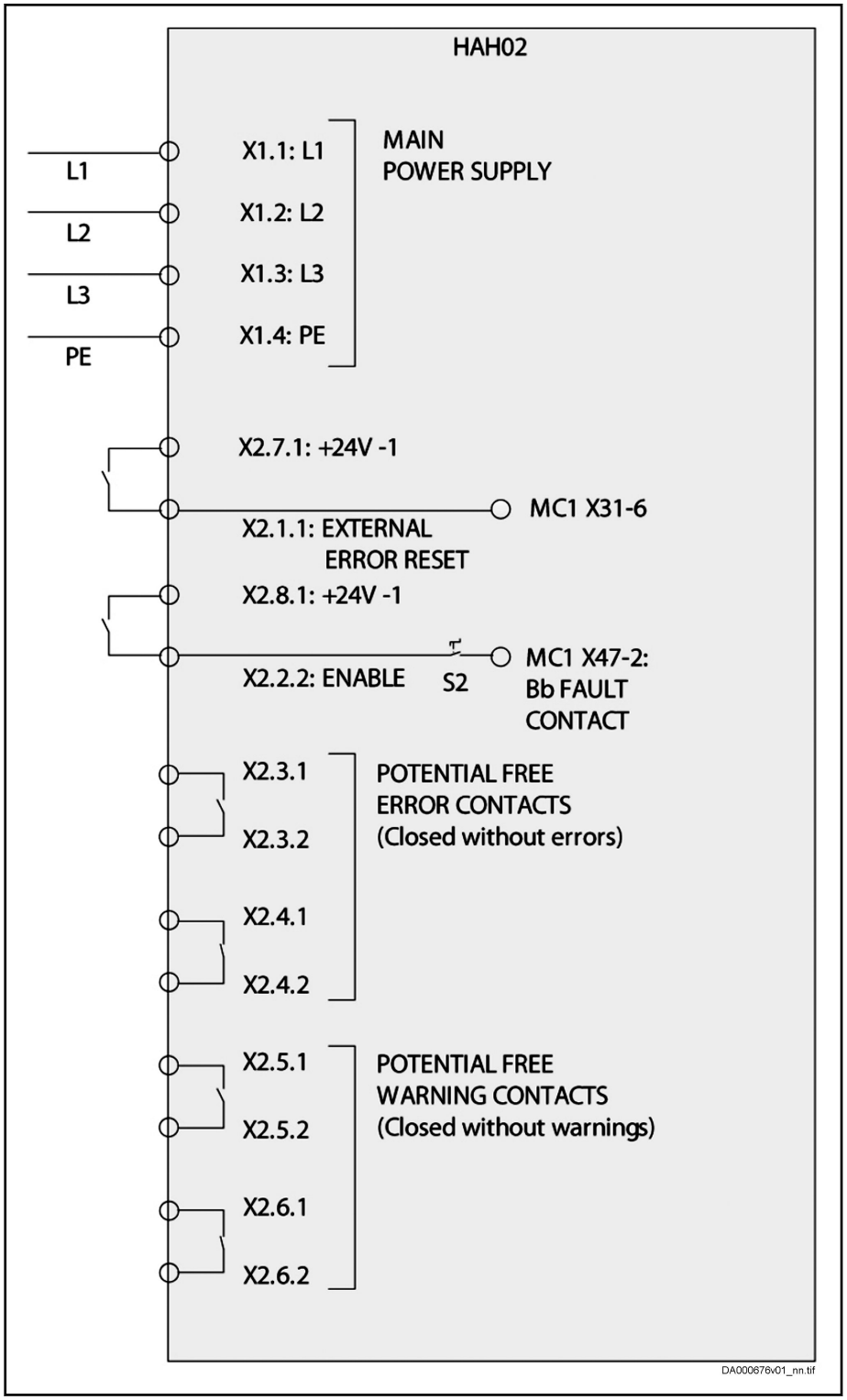
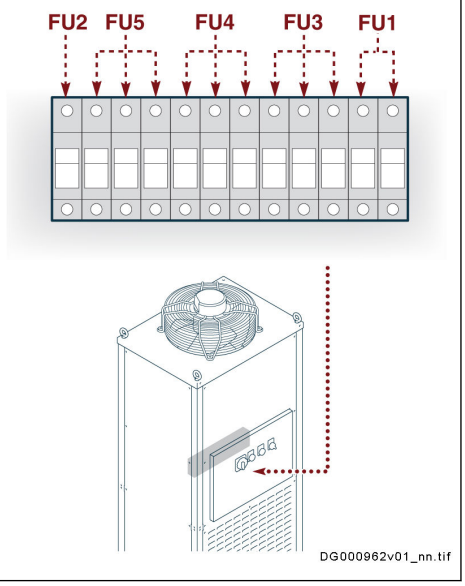


Fig. 8-137: Circuit diagram

Description of the fuses

Name	Current (A)	Type	Rated voltage (Vac)	Interruption capacity (kW)	Fuse	Position
FU1	1	CC	600	200	Delayed	
FU2	4					
FU3	3					
FU4	4					
FU5	4					

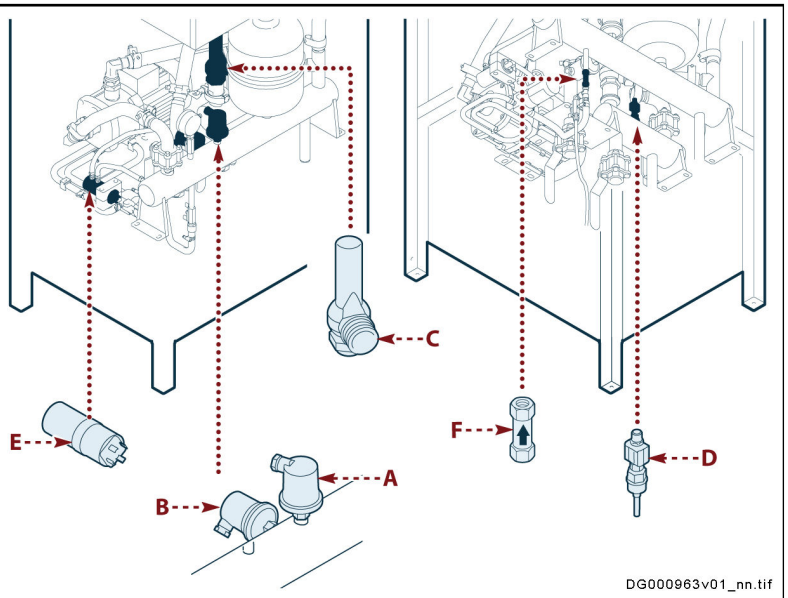
Tab. 8-191: Fuses

Processing and protection devices

⚠ WARNING **Serious health and safety risks!**

Do not tamper with, circumvent, remove or bypass processing and protection devices; Failure to comply with this requirement may cause serious health and safety risks.

A	**Pressure switch (0.5 bar):** This detects the pressure level in the intake manifold. The pressure switch allows a "warning" to be signaled when the pressure falls below 0.5 bar.
B	**Pressure switch (0.2 bar):** This detects the pressure level in the intake manifold. The pressure switch allows an "error" to be signaled when the pressure falls below 0.2 bar and stops machine operation.
C	**Bypass valve:** Limits the fluid pressure in the outlet line to the maximum allowable value.
D	**Temperature sensor:** Measures the coolant temperature in the outlet pipe. Depending on the temperature detected, the system will signal either a "warning"(temperature too high) or an "error" (temperature continues to rise, resulting in machine shutdown).
E	**Pressure sensor:** This detects, in real time, the differential pressure between the intake pipe and the outlet pipe. The sensor helps maintain a constant pressure in the outlet line.
F	**Check valve:** It prevents the liquid from flowing into the filling pump when it is being primed or is deactivated.



Tab. 8-192: Operating and safety equipment

Ambient conditions for operation

The machine operates properly under the specified ambient conditions (see chapter "Data" on page 481).

Intended use

The machine is designed and manufactured to cool electric or electronic equipment or machines.

The machine has to be used in accordance with its technical specifications. It is prohibited to make any modifications to the machine or to use it for purposes other than the intended use.

The machine can be used either indoors or outdoors, in areas exposed to the weather.

Any other use than that specified, or not included or inferable from this project planning manual, should be considered as unintended use and is therefore not permitted.

Unintended and unauthorized uses

The use of coolants with properties other than the coolants specified by the manufacturer is not permitted.

The machine must not be used in a flammable or hazardous environment.

The machine may only be commissioned after it has been verified that the system or machine in which it is installed complies with applicable national and local regulations.

Residual risks

Risk of crushing: When moving the machine, incorrect manoeuvres or improper handling of the load may pose a risk of injury to the operators involved.

Risk of electric shock: Maintenance operations or replacement of components may involve a risk of electric shock due to accidental contact with live electrical components.

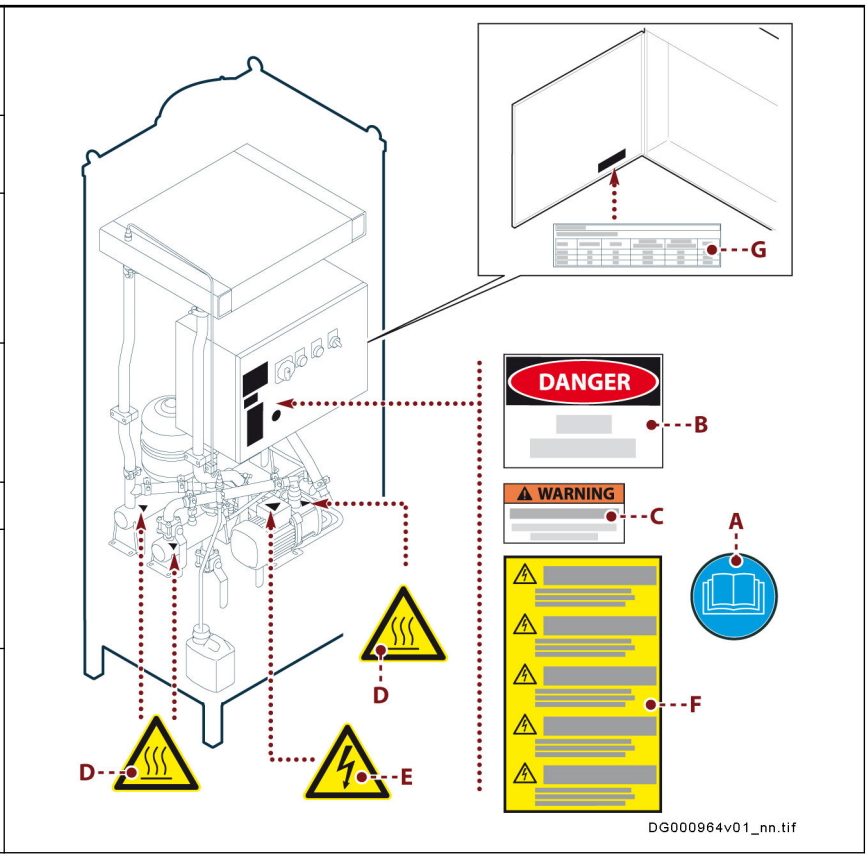
Thermal risk: Contact with hot surfaces can cause burns. Allow the machine to cool down before any operation.

Warning and safety signs

⚠ WARNING

Check that all the plates are legible. If they are not, clean them or - if they are damaged - replace them, applying the new ones in the same place as the old one.

A	This indicates the obligation for operators to read the instruction manual before operating the machine.
B	This shows that the voltage inside the terminal box is hazardous.
C	Risk of arc flashes and electric shock. Wear appropriate personal protective equipment.
D	This indicates that there is the risk of burns due to contact with hot surfaces. Allow the machine to cool down before any operation.
E	Risk of electric shock
F	Risk of electric shock: Do not perform any work on live parts.
G	Backup data



Tab. 8-193: Warning and safety signs

Transporting and installing

Transport and installation safety recommendations

Personnel responsible for transport of the load must have the required qualification and experience and must be trained in handling the lifting gear used.

Use lifting gear with suitable load capacity in order to lift and move the load.

Persons authorized for transport must take appropriate measures to ensure their own safety and the safety of persons directly involved.

Place the package on a stable surface.

Do not place packed machines on top of each other as they are not intended for stacking.

Upon reception, each package must be inspected to verify the integrity and the exact quantity of its contents. In case items are damaged or missing, contact the importer or the manufacturer directly to discuss the procedure to be adopted.

Package description

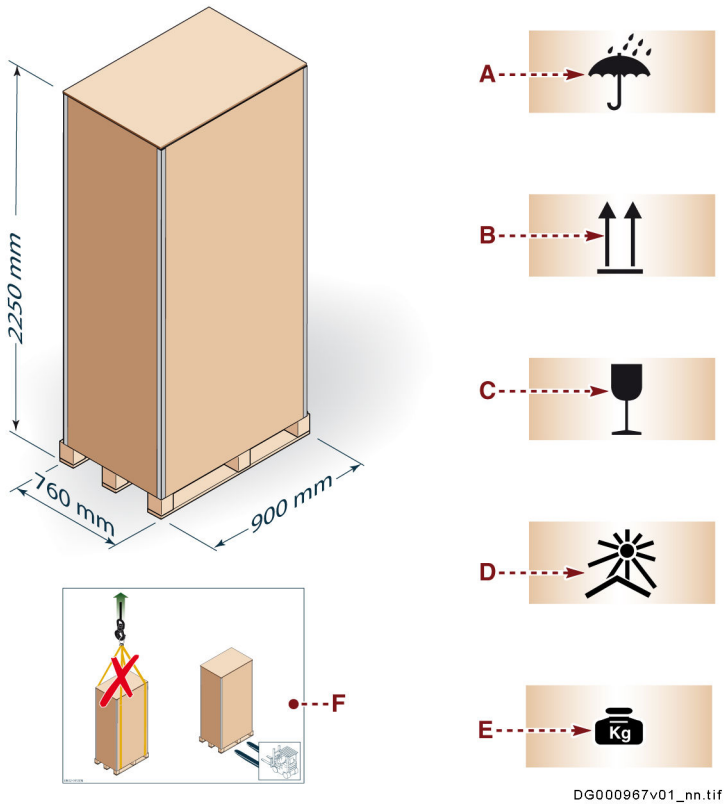
The packaging is selected according to the selected means of transport and the destination.

Packages can either be loaded directly onto a means of transport or into suitable containers if shipped by sea or air or to far-off destinations.

In order to facilitate transport, some components are removed and properly protected.

The figure shows the type of packaging most frequently used and the maximum dimensions as well as the warning symbols and notices attached to the packages.

A	This symbol means the packed machine must be stored in a dry place: its contents may be damaged by dampness.
B	This symbol means the packed machine must be kept upright.
C	This symbol means the packed machine must be handled with care: its contents are fragile.
D	This symbol indicates that the package must be kept away from direct sunlight and heat sources to avoid exposing its content to excessively high temperatures.
E	This symbol indicates the overall weight of the package.
F	The plate shows the procedure for lifting the package.



Tab. 8-194: Package description

Transporting and lifting the packed machine

The figure shows how to lift the package.

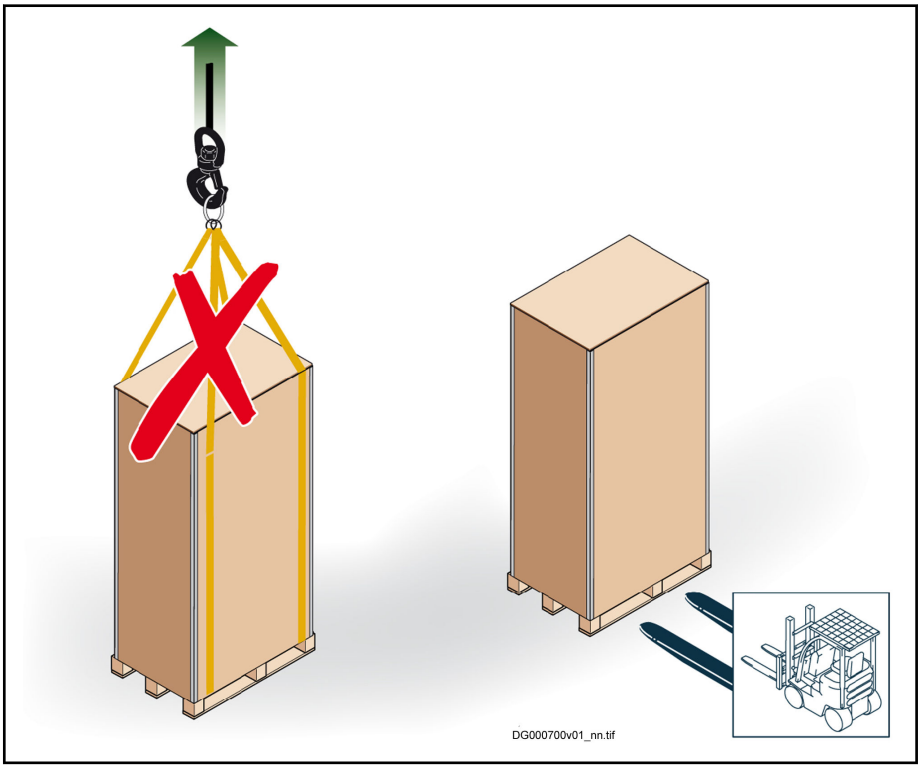


Fig. 8-138: Transporting and lifting the packed machine

Storage

If the machine is not going to be used for an extended period, it should be stored (possibly without unpacking it, or at least adequately protected) in a sheltered place protected from atmospheric agents at a temperature between -20 and +60 °C.

Avoid storing the machine in places where weather conditions could prejudice its good working order.

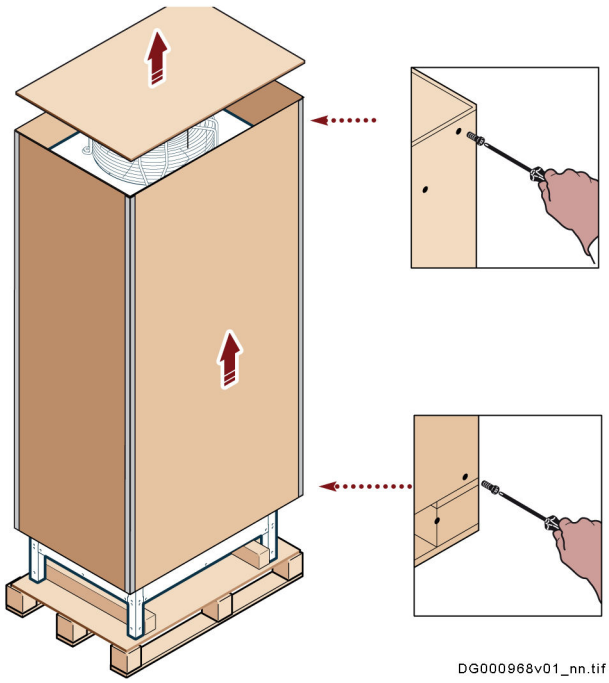
Unpacking

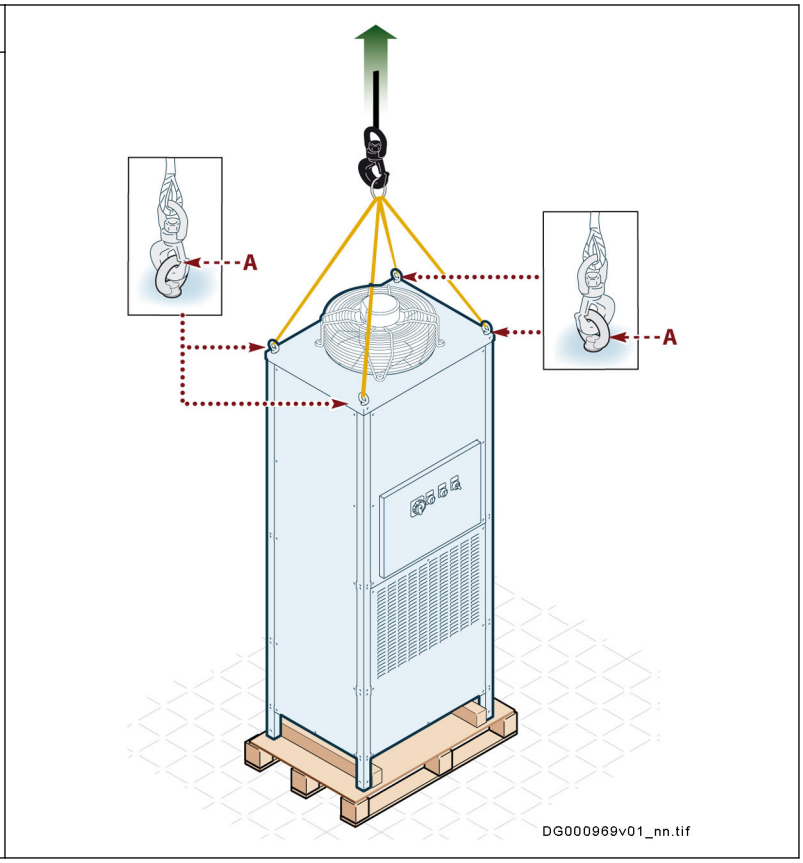
It is advisable to unpack the machine near the installation area to facilitate assembly.

The figure shows how to unpack the machine properly.

Proceed as described.

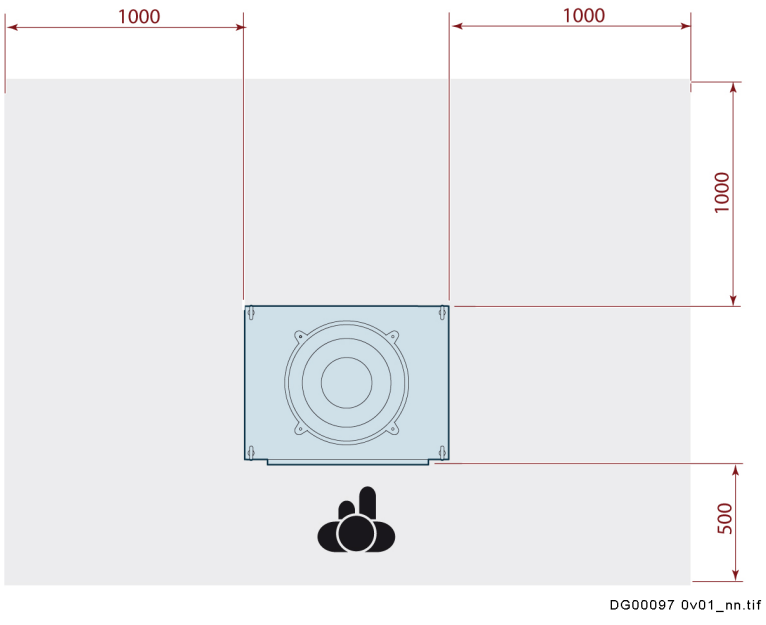
1	Unscrew the screws.
2	Remove the cover.
3	Lift the side walls of the packaging.



4	Hook the ropes onto the eyebolts (**A**).	
5	Lift the machine. **WARNING!** When lifting pay attention to the machine swinging movement as the lifting point is never perfectly barycentric. Sudden movements may injure the people involved in the operations. The packaging material (wood, propylene, etc,.) can be kept for future use or properly disposed of according to the regulations in force.	

Tab. 8-195: Unpacking

Installation

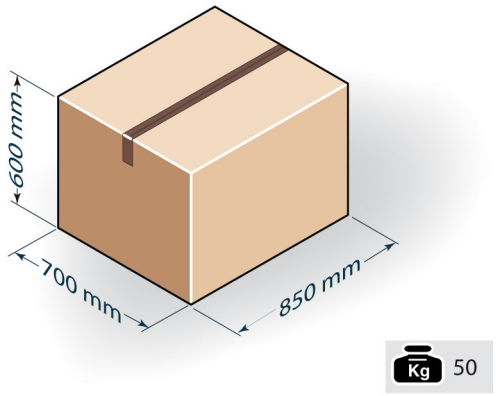
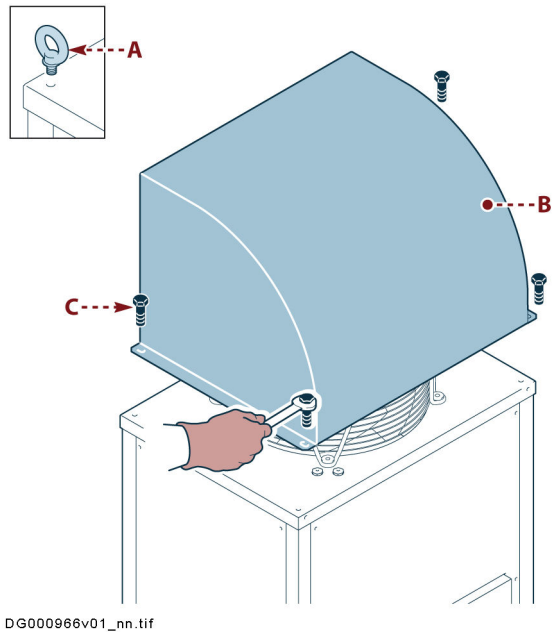
Installation area The installation area must be flat and horizontal and correspond to the default load factor. Electrical connections as well as the possibility of transmitting the signals "ENABLE", "UNIT ERROR", "UNIT WARNING", "ERROR RESET" must be available. Furthermore, all hydraulic connections must be available in accordance with legal regulations. According to the relevant regulations concerning health and safety at the working place, the area must have sufficient ventilation and lighting. Make sure that there is enough space around the installation area so that all work can be carried out safely.	

Tab. 8-196: Installation area

Fan cover

The fan cover serves for lateral flow of the intake air of the machine's electric fan.

The fan cover is usually delivered in special packaging.

Packaging	
Mounting: Remove the lifting rings (**A**). Position the fan cover (**B**). Tighten the screws (**C**).	

Tab. 8-197: Fan cover

Electrical connection

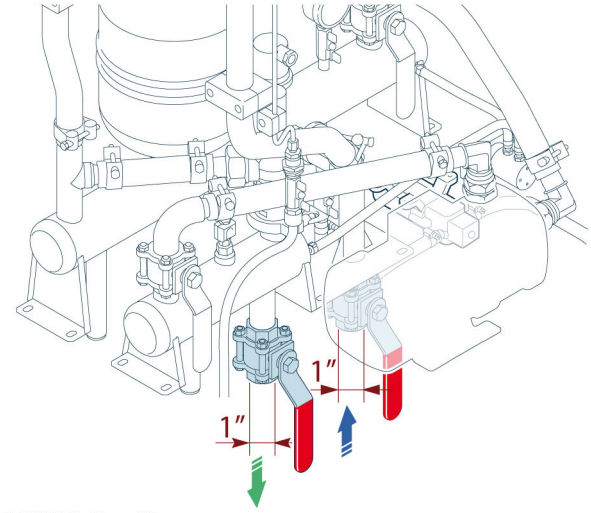
Electrical connections must be executed according to the manufacturer's specifications in the wiring diagram.

The electrical connections must be performed at professional standards in compliance with all legislative requirements and regulations.

Use a 4 G-AWG 12 cable (three-phase conductors + equipment grounding conductor).

Connect the three phases (L1, L2, L3) and the equipment grounding conductor to the relevant terminals inside the terminal box.

Hose connections

The owner has to install a pressure regulating device in the return pipe. Set the pressure in the intake and return pipes to the values shown in chapter "Data" on page 481. Use flexible tubes with an internal diameter of not less than 25 mm. Use connectors with an internal diameter of not less than 20 mm.	

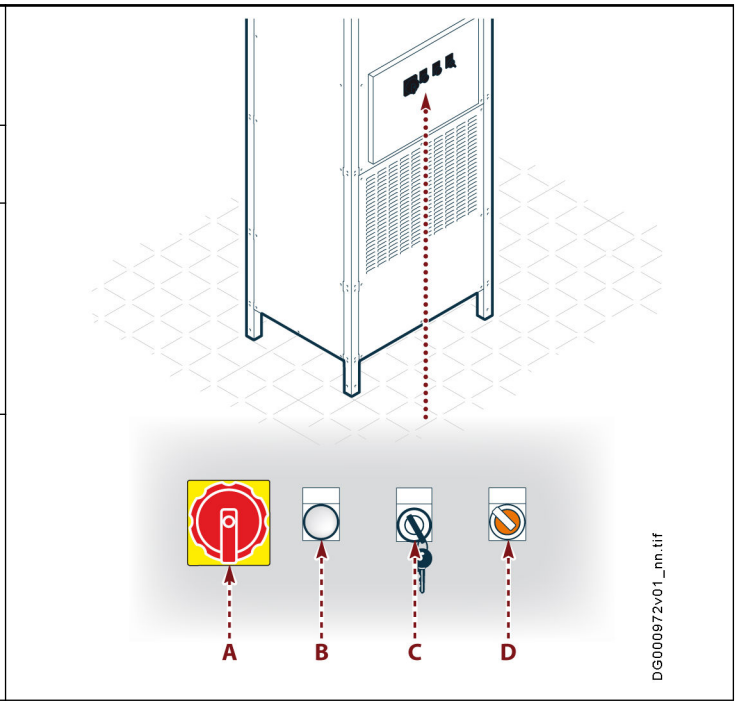
Tab. 8-198: Hose connections

Use

Safety advice for use

Before starting the machine, ensure that the system or the machine in which it has been fitted complies with applicable local regulations and directives.

Control elements and indicator lamps

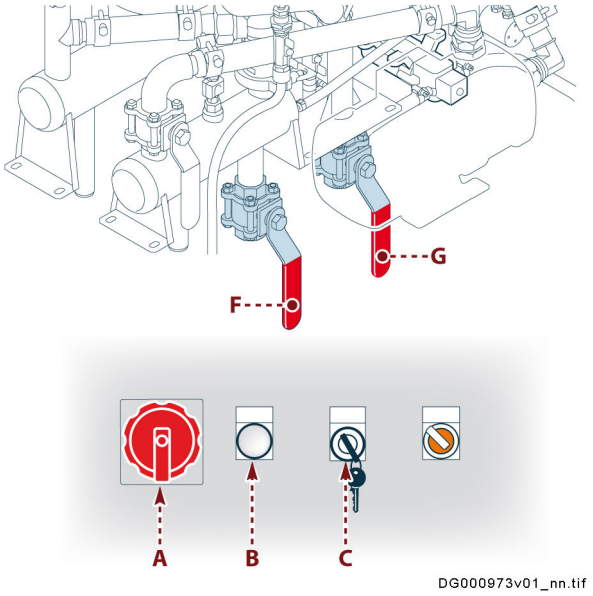
A	**Main switch:** It is used for connecting and disconnecting the power supply to machine. The indicator lamp (**B**) lights up.	
B	**Indicator lamp (white light):** Indicates that the power supply to the machine has been enabled.	
C	**Key-operated two-position stay-put selector switch:** This is used to switch the main pump operation on and off. The key has to be kept by the designated staff member and available to the staff responsible for technical servicing.	
D	**Two-position stay-put back-lit switch (red light):** This is used to switch the filling pump on and off.	

Tab. 8-199: Control elements and indicator lamps

Switching on

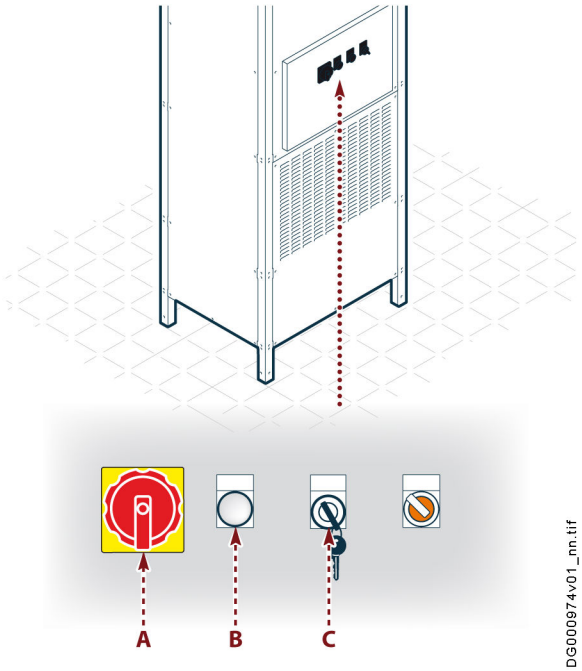
During the first run-up, carry out the circuit filling procedure (see chapter "Filling the hydraulic circuit" on page 498).

To start the machine, proceed as follows.

1	Open the ball valves (**F - G**).	
2	Turn the main switch (**A**) to the "ON" position. The indicator lamp (**B**) lights up.	
3	Turn the key selector (**C**) to "automatic" position. Machine start-up has to be performed using the operator terminal of the machine to be cooled, via the "ENABLE" connection (see chapter "ENABLE, UNIT ERROR, UNIT WARNING, ERROR RESET" on page 482).	

Tab. 8-200: Switching on

Switching off

Switching off with the main switch 1. Turn the main switch (**A**) to the "OFF" position. • The indicator lamp (**B**) will switch off. • Machine operation stops and the voltage supply to the terminal box is interrupted. • The supply terminals remain live.	
Switching off with the key-operated switch This switch-off mode is reserved for authorized personnel. 1. Insert the key into the selector switch (**C**). 2. Turn the selector switch to the "OFF" position. • Operation of the main pump stops. • The terminal box at the machine remains live.	
Remote-controlled switch-off • Remote-controlled switch-off has to be performed using the owner's operator terminal, via the "ENABLE" connection. • Operation of the main pump stops. • The terminal box at the machine remains live.	
Switching off automatically • The machine switches off automatically if the pressure in the circuit falls below 0.2 bar and the temperature of the liquid exceeds the preset limit (see parameter P-0-1318).	

Tab. 8-201: Switching off

Switching off in emergency conditions

To switch off the device in the event of imminent danger (emergency stop), turn the main switch (**A**) to the "OFF" position.

Fix the cause for the emergency stop before restarting the machine.

Filling the hydraulic circuit

Check if the installation as well as electrical and hydraulic connections are executed professionally in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

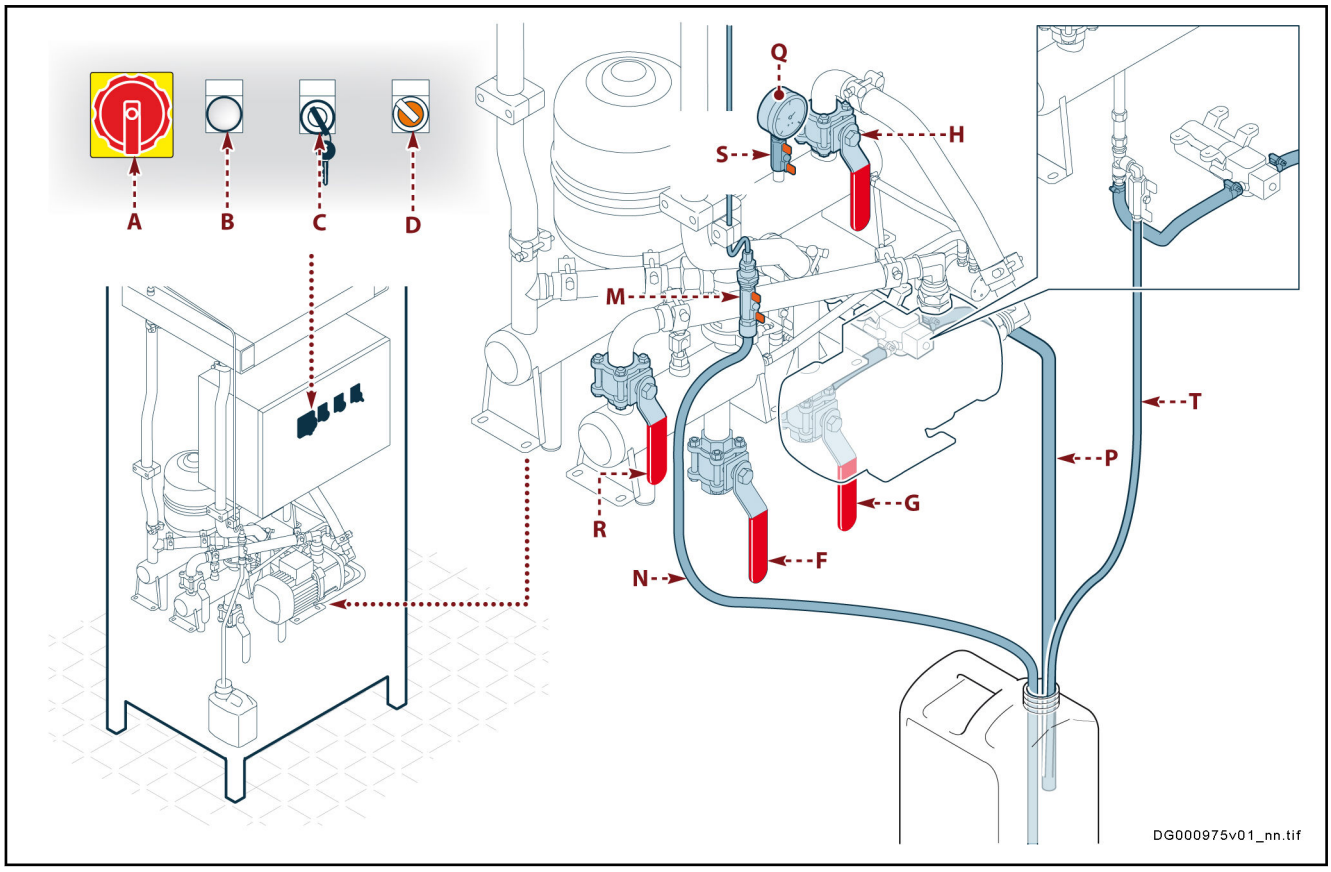


Fig. 8-139: Fill the hydraulic circuit

1. Fill a tank with an appropriate amount of fluid solution (see chapter "Data" on page 481).
2. Fit the pipes (**P - N - T**) into the tank.
3. Open the ball valve (**G**).
4. Open the ball valve (**F**).
5. Open the valve (**M**).
6. Open the valve (**S**).
7. Open the valve (**H**).
8. Open the valve (**R**).
9. Turn the key-operated selector switch (**C**) to the "OFF" position to prevent unexpected activation of the main pump.
10. Ensure that the remote-controlled "ENABLE" function is activated.
11. **NOTICE!** Do **not** turn the key-operated selector switch (**C**) to the "ON" position since this could cause damage to the main pump.

    Open any existing valves that are installed outside the machine on the circuit of the machine to be cooled.
12. Turn the main switch (**A**) to the "ON" position.

    The indicator lamp (**B**) lights up.
13. Turn the selector switch (**D**) to activate the filling pump.

Make sure that there is always enough liquid in the tank.

If the filling pump does not prime automatically, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 500).

14. When the fluid is running out of the clear tube (**N**) in a steady stream (no bubbles) and the pressure has reached 1.5 bar, close the valve (**M**).

    The pressure is indicated on the (**Q**) pressure gauge.

15. Open the valve (**M**).
16. Turn the key-operated switch (**C**) to the "ON" position the activate the main pump in the automatic mode.
17. **NOTICE!** The main pump is activated only when the circuit pressure reaches over 0.2 bar. During this stage, a sudden drop in pressure may occur. The pressure drop is caused by the air pumped into the circuit as a result of activation of the main pump. Switch the main pump on and off with the key-operated switch (C) from time to time to achieve venting and pressure build-up. Make sure that the key-operated switch (**C**) is set to "ON".

    If it is hard for the system to get up to pressure, close the valve (**M**).

    If the pressure exceeds 1.5 bar, turn off the filling pump and temporarily open the valve (**M**) until the correct pressure is reached.

    NOTICE! If the filling pump priming procedure stops during the filling stage, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 500).

18. Turn the selector switch (**D**) to deactivate the filling pump.
19. Close the valve (**M**) when the pressure in the circuit has reached 1.5 bar.
20. Close the valve (**S**).
21. Remove the pipes from the tank.
22. Remove the key from the selector switch (**C**) and store in a safe place.

    After one hour of operation, check that the pressure is correct. Perform the restore operation if the pressure is not correct (see chapter "Restoring the pressure" on page 501).

NOTICE **Risk of damage to the pressure gauge!**

Limit operation of the pressure gauge to the time necessary to perform the pressure reading. During operation, deactivate the pressure gauge to avoid damaging it.

Filling pump priming procedure

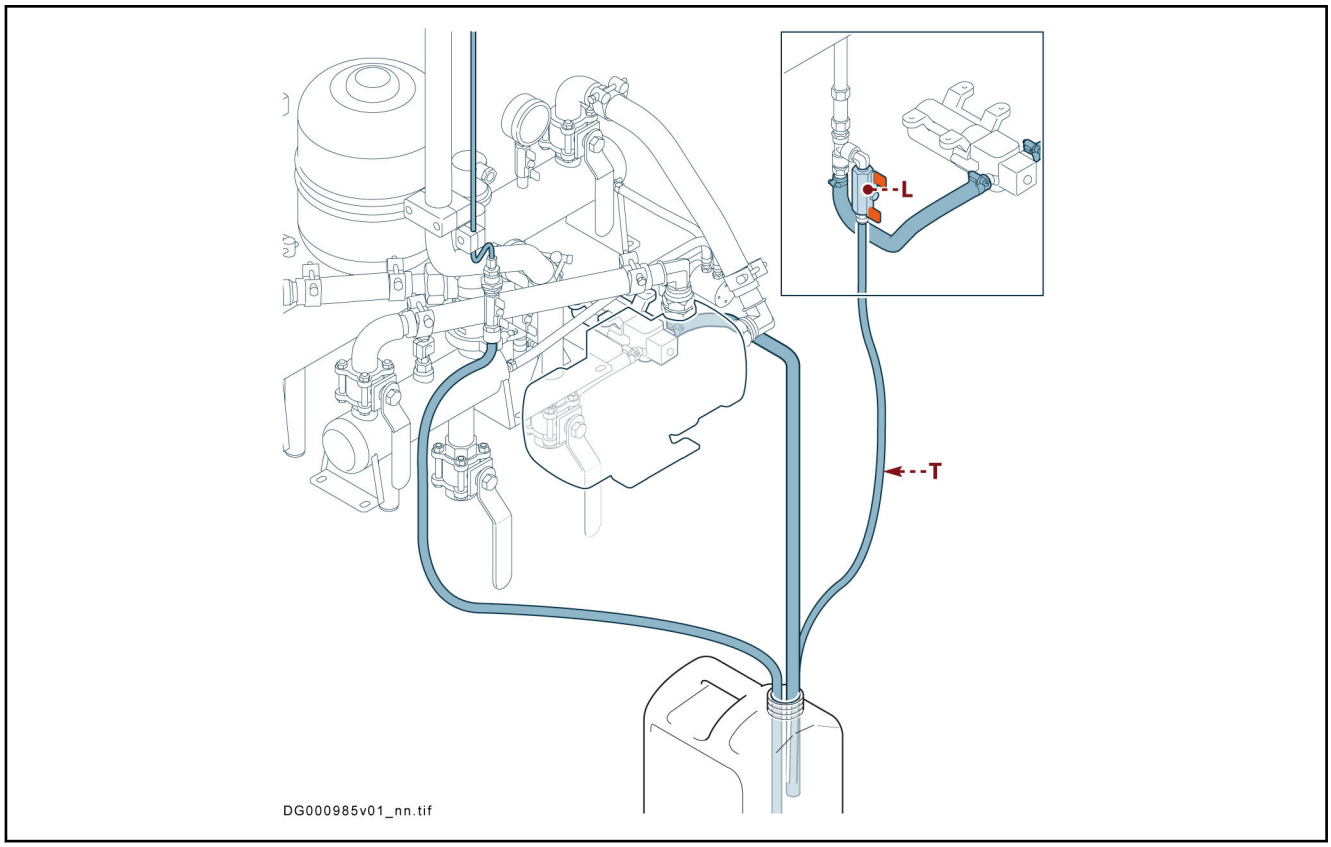


Fig. 8-140: Perform the filling pump priming procedure

If the filling pump does not prime automatically, proceed as described:

1. When the filling pump is active, open the valve (**L**).
2. Wait for the coolant to start flowing out of the transparent hose (**T**).
3. Close the valve (**L**) and leave the filling pump working.

The filling pump is primed and starts pumping the coolant into the hydraulic circuit.

Restoring the pressure

This procedure can be carried out only if the pressure is above 0.8 bar and the main pump is activated.

If the pressure is below this level, carry out the circuit filling procedure (see chapter "Filling the hydraulic circuit" on page 498).

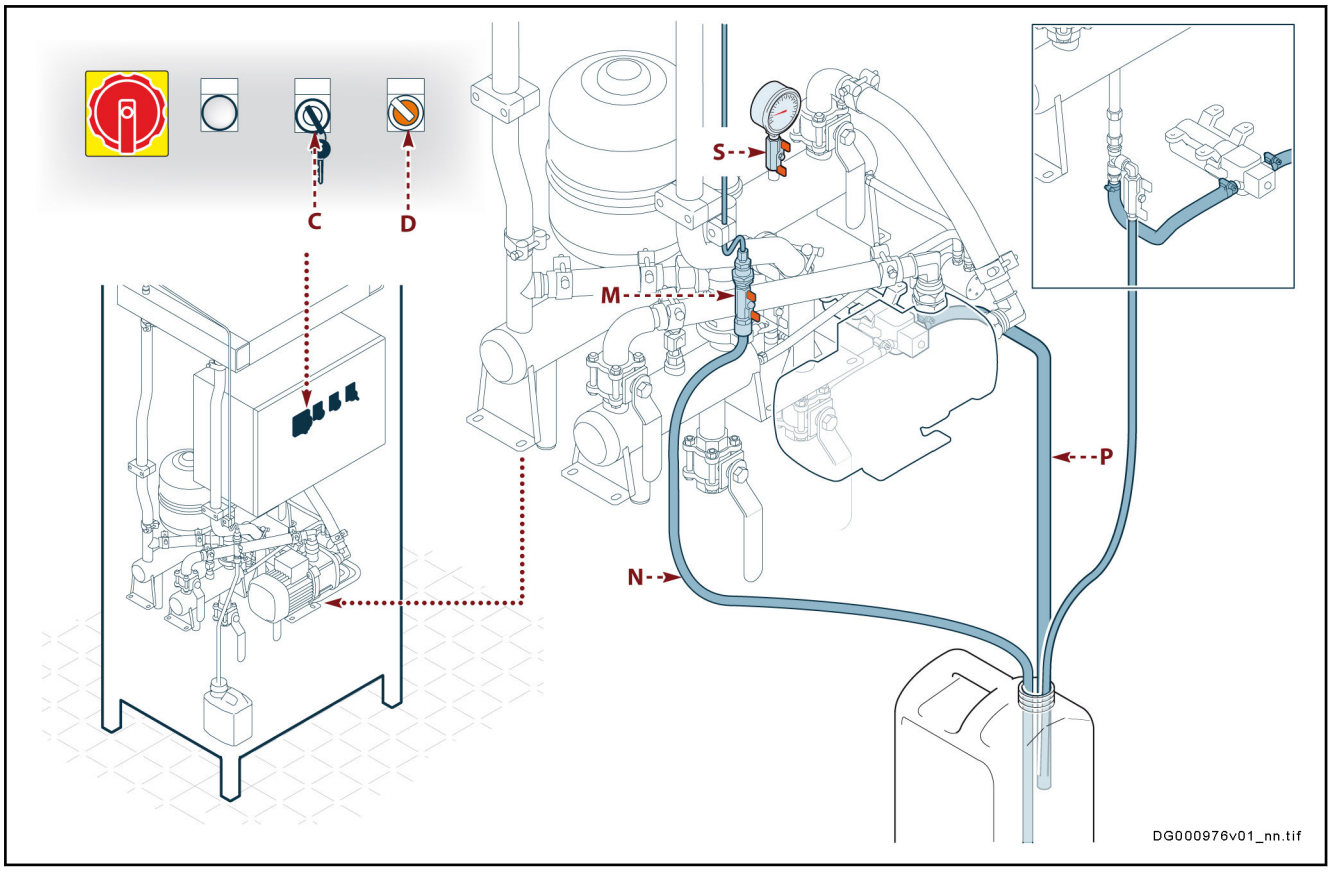


Fig. 8-141: Restoring the pressure

1. Fill a tank with an appropriate amount of fluid solution (see chapter "Data" on page 481).
2. Fit the pipes (**N - P - T**) into the tank.
3. Open the valve (**S**).
4. Turn the selector switch (**D**) to activate the filling pump.

   If the filling pump does not start priming, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 500).
5. Open the valve (**M**) and keep open until the fluid is running out of the clear tube (**N**) in a steady stream (no bubbles) and the pressure has reached 1.5 bar.
6. **NOTICE!** If the pressure exceeds 1.5 bar, turn off the filling pump and temporarily open the valve (**M**) until the correct pressure is reached.

   NOTICE! If the filling pump priming stops during the filling stage, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 500).

   Close the valve (**M**).
7. Turn the selector switch (**D**) to deactivate the filling pump.

8. Close the valve (**S**).
9. Remove the pipes from the tank.
10. Remove the key from the selector switch (**C**) and store in a safe place.

NOTICE **Risk of damage to the pressure gauge!**

Limit operation of the pressure gauge to the time necessary to perform the pressure reading. During operation, deactivate the pressure gauge to avoid damaging it.

Emptying the hydraulic circuit

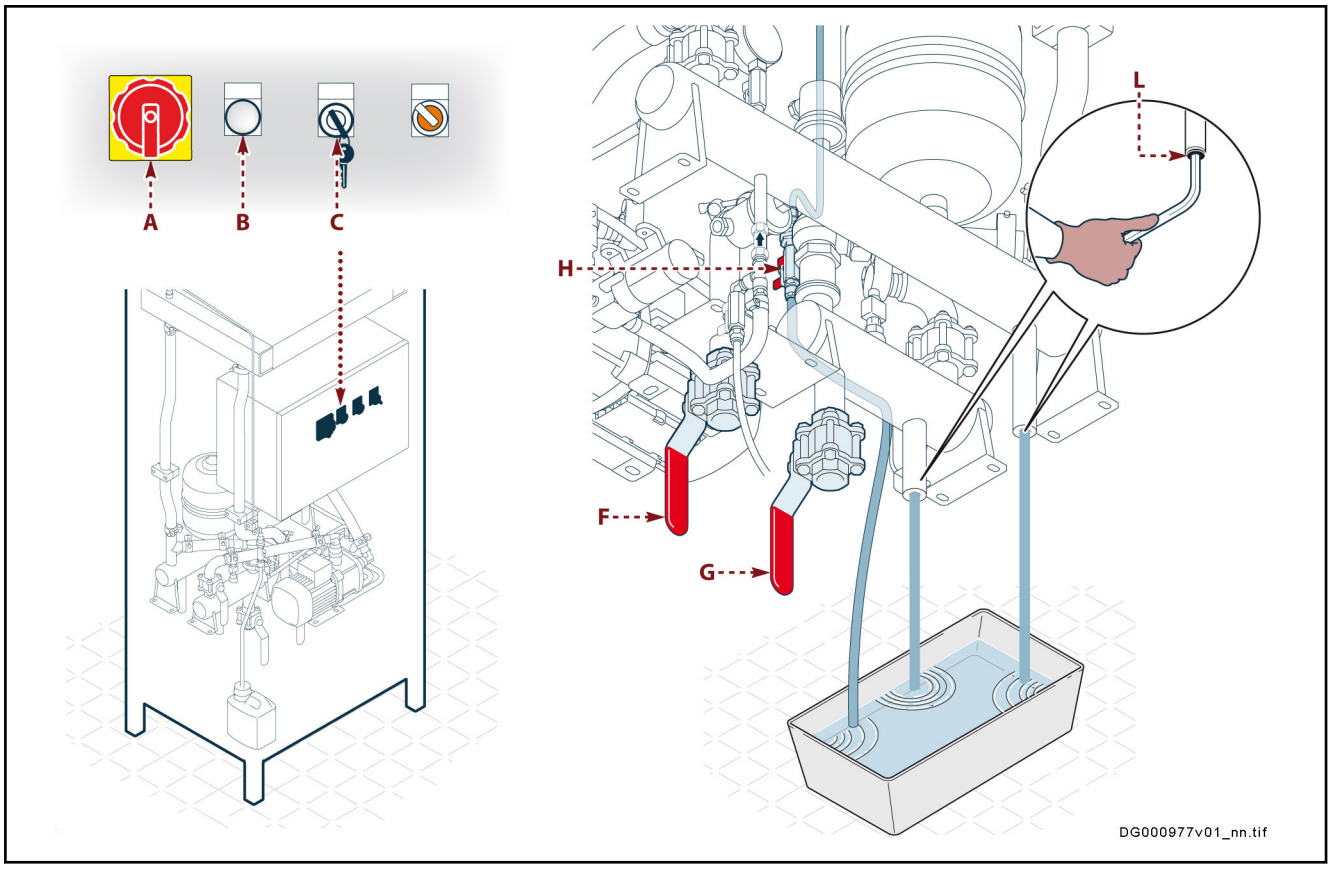


Fig. 8-142: Emptying the hydraulic circuit

1. Position a suitable container for collecting the coolant.
2. Switch off the machine (see chapter "Switching off" on page 497).
3. Turn the key selector (**C**) to the "OFF" position.
4. Turn the main switch (**A**) to the "OFF" position.
5. The indicator lamp (**B**) will switch off.
6. Close the ball valves (**F - G**).
7. Open the valve (**H**).
8. Open the caps (**L**).
9. Drain out all the coolant.
10. Close the valve (**H**).
11. Close the caps (**L**).
12. **NOTICE!** Dispose of the coolant in an environmentally friendly manner in accordance with the applicable legal regulations.

Maintenance

Safety instruction regarding maintenance

For personal safety reasons, before conducting maintenance interventions, check that all safety devices are activated and warn the people present in the workplace that such intervention is underway.

In particular, the power supply of the machine must be turned off.

Ensure that the power cannot be turned back on accidentally.

Allow the machine to cool down before performing any work to prevent burns.

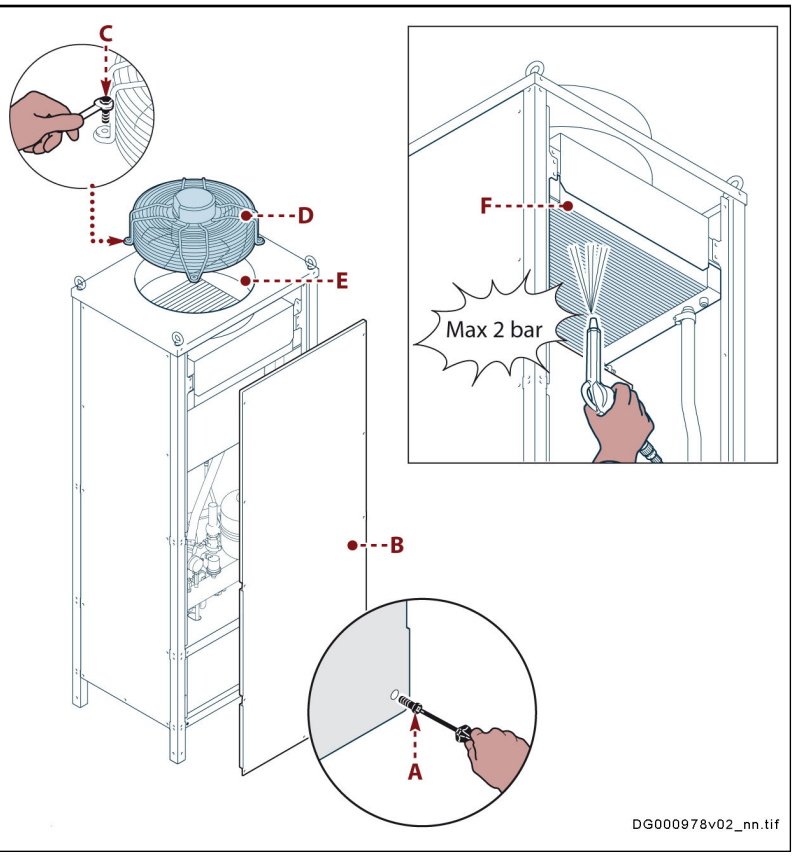
Maintenance schedule

Interval			Component	Type of work	Cross reference
Every 5000 operating hours	Every 30,000 operating hours	Every 10 years of operation	–	–	–
✓	–	–	Cooler - Core duct	Cleaning	See chapter "Cleaning the radiator and cooling channel" on page 505
–	✓	–	Main pump	Replacement	See chapter "Replacing the main pump" on page 511
–	✓	–	Fan	Replacement	See chapter "Replacing the fan" on page 512
–	✓	–	Coolant	Replacement	See chapter "Exchanging the coolant" on page 512
–	–	✓	EPDM rubber hoses	Replacement	–

Tab. 8-202: Maintenance schedule

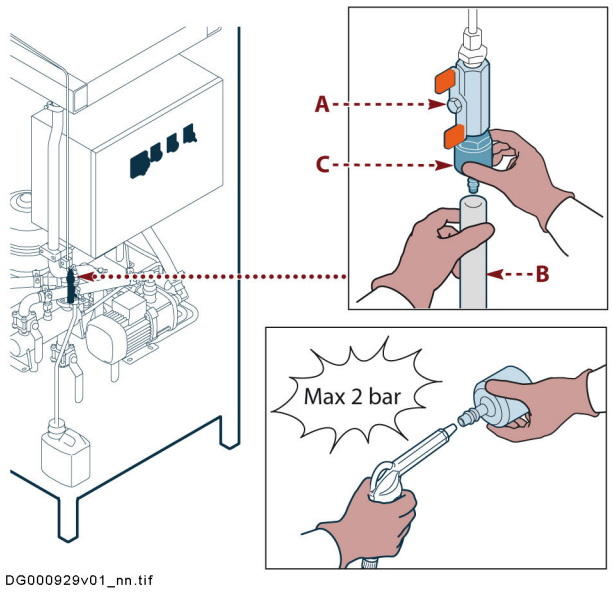
Cleaning the radiator and cooling channel

1	Disconnect the machine from the voltage source.
2	Loosen the screws (**A**).
3	Remove the protective device (**B**).
4	Loosen the screws (**C**).
5	Remove the fan (**D**) and support it.
6	Vacuum out dust and debris from the cooling channel (**E**).
7	Clean the inside of the cooler (**F**) with compressed air.
8	Vacuum out dust and debris from the channel (**E**) again.
9	Position the fan (**D**).
10	Tighten the screws (**C**).
11	Position the protective device (**B**).
12	Tighten the screws (**A**).



Tab. 8-203: Cleaning the cooler and the core duct

Cleaning the bleed valve connector

1	Close the bleed valve (**A**).	
2	Remove the hose (**B**).	
3	Unscrew the connector (**C**).	
4	Clean the connector with compressed air. Maintain the pressure at the level shown in the figure.	
5	Screw on the connector (**C**).	
6	Attach the hose (**B**) to the connector.	
7	Open the bleed valve (**A**).	

Tab. 8-204: Clean the connector

Cleaning the machine

Clean the machine with cleaning agents that are approved in accordance with applicable legal regulations.

Troubleshooting

The following table contains a number of faults that may occur during operation as well as appropriate corrective measures.

Code	Type	Malfunction	Likely cause	Remedy
E2011	Warning 1	Low pressure, please refill	The system pressure is lower than 0.5 bar (loss of water, maintenance)	Refill cooling system up to 1.5 bar
E2012	Warning 2	Unable to start drive	Motor does not start in velocity control operation	Ensure that the system has the status "AF" before starting
E2013	Warning 3	Heater works	The heater switches on if the temperature of the liquid falls below 0°C.	Check operating temperature Check signal of the temperature sensor
E2014	Warning 4	Overtemperature	Temperature exceeds the defined value (P-0-1316) of the maximum permissible deviation from required temperature (t_{set}) for a defined duration (P-0-1317)	Check cooling system Clean cooling system, if necessary Reduce the level of the heat to be dissipated. If required, change the settings in the parameters P-0-1316 and/or P-0-1317
E2015	Warning 5	Fan	Fan signals error	Check fan and feedback signal
E2016	Warning 6	Lower motor speed limitation active	Motor velocity of the pressure control < 360 min^{-1}	Increase the value of parameter P-0-1374 (> 360 min^{-1}) Ensure that the motor can run with a velocity > 360 min^{-1}
F2011	Error 1	System pressure	System pressure lower than 0.2 bar	Refill cooling system up to 1.5 bar
F2012	Error 2	Overtemperature	The fluid temperature (on the drive side) has exceeded the maximum allowed temperature limit (see parameter P-0-1318)	If required, change the value of parameter P-0-1318 Clean fan Reduce the quantity of heat to be emitted
		Temperature of the heater is too high (yellow signal lamp lights up)	Thermostat of the heater is triggered	Check signal of the temperature sensor
		Heater does not heat	Thermostat of the heater was triggered in order to enable operation without liquid	Check the pressure of the cooling circuit and restore, if applicable
F2013	Error 3	Fan	Defective fan Fuses defective	Replace fan Replace fuses
		Slight leakage of cooling liquid between pump and motor	Start after long inactivity of the machine Changing the ambient conditions	Start pump [1)]

Code	Type	Malfunction	Likely cause	Remedy
		The filling pump does not start priming automatically	Suction hose empty following long period of machine disuse No coolant in the tank High backpressure in the filling pump delivery line	Perform the filling pump priming procedure
		The filling pump does not inject the coolant into the circuit	The filling pump is not primed The filling pump bleed valve is open	Perform the filling pump priming procedure Close the filling pump bleed valve

1) The pump is mechanically sealed by the cooling liquid. This type of seal (mechanical) may lead to a slight leakage of cooling liquid under certain conditions. It takes some time to minimize the leakage if the pump is started after stopping the machine or after being inactive. The required time depends on the operating conditions. The leaked cooling liquid usually evaporates immediately. The leaked cooling liquid is not visible then. **This type of leakage is not a malfunction.** Contact the service if the leakage persists for a longer period of time.

Tab. 8-205: Errors and warnings

Replacing the component

Safety advice for component exchange

For personal safety reasons, before conducting maintenance interventions, check that all safety devices are activated and warn the people present in the workplace that such intervention is underway.

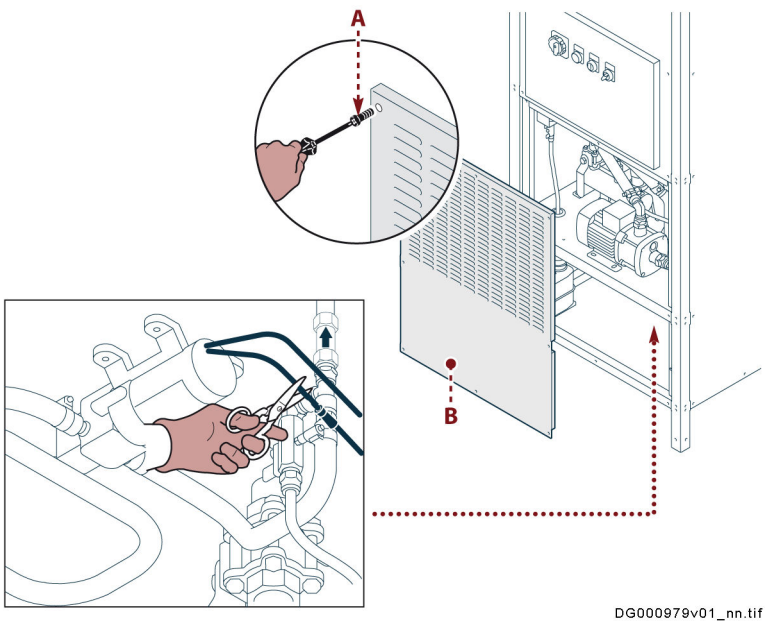
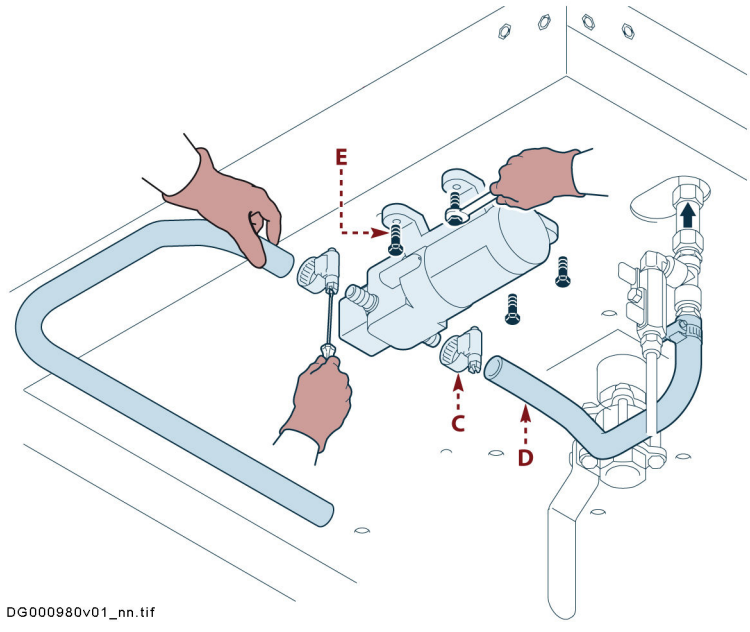
In particular, disconnect the power supply to the machine.

Ensure that the voltage cannot be switched on again unintentionally.

Allow the machine to cool down before any operation to prevent burns.

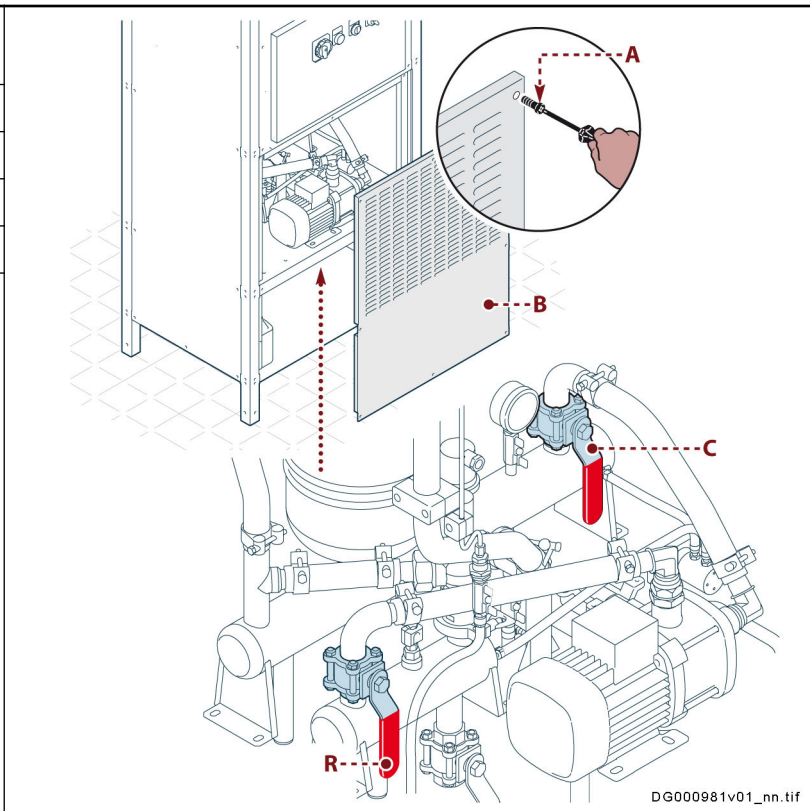
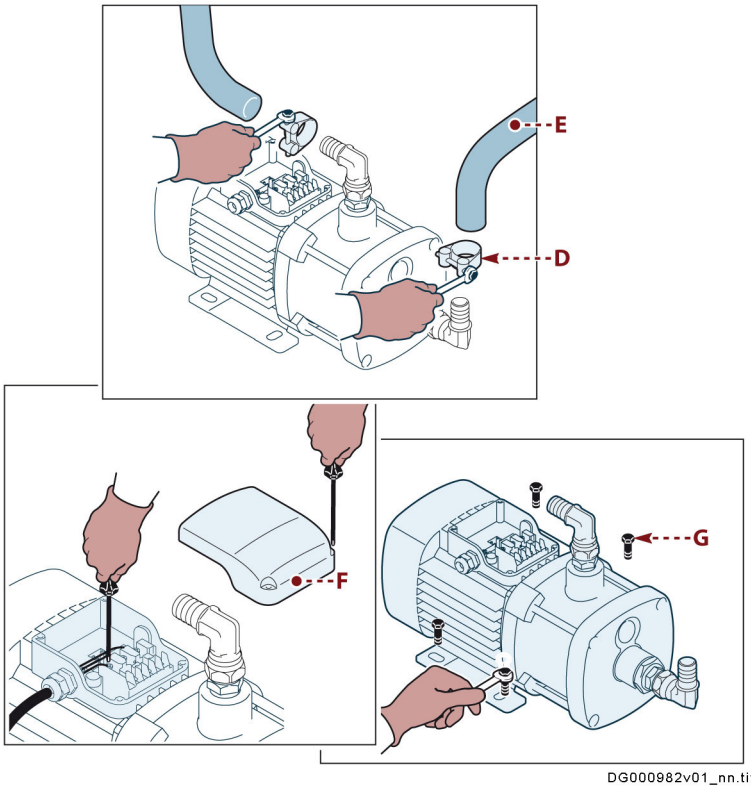
Replace worn or damaged parts by original spare parts.

Replacing the filling pump

1	Disconnect the machine from the power supply source.	
2	Unscrew the screws (**A**).	
3	Remove the guard (**B**).	
4	Cut the mains cables.	
5	Undo the screw and remove the strap (**C**).	
6	Disconnect the hosing (**D**).	
7	Repeat the process for the other hose.	
8	Unscrew the screws (**E**).	
9	Remove the pump.	
10	Install the new pump. In order to install the new pump, proceed in reverse order to the removal of the pump.	

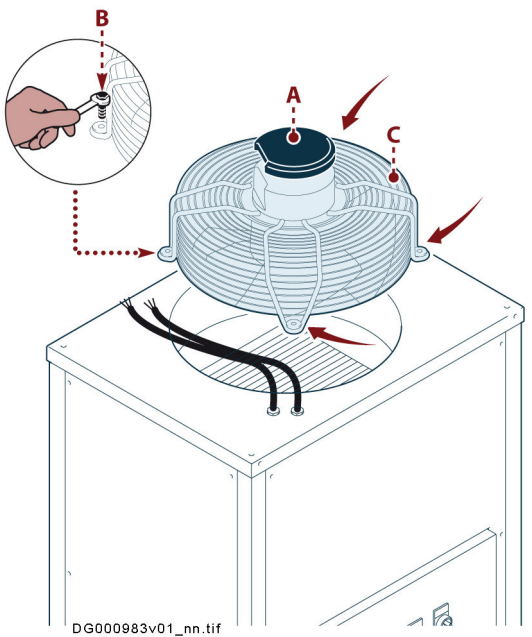
Tab. 8-206: Replacement of the filling pump

Replacing the main pump

1	Disconnect the machine from the power supply source.	
2	Allow the machine to cool down.	
3	Unscrew the screws (**A**).	
4	Remove the guard (**B**).	
5	Close the valve (**C**).	
6	Close the valve (**R**).	
7	Undo the screw and remove the strap (**D**).	
8	Disconnect the hosing (**E**).	
9	Repeat the process for the other hose.	
10	Remove the cover (**F**).	
11	Disconnect the cables from the terminals.	
12	Unscrew the screws (**G**).	
13	Remove the pump.	
14	Install the new pump. In order to install the new pump, proceed in reverse order to the removal of the pump. **NOTICE!** The spare pump is supplied with the fittings mounted. Do not remove the fittings as this could cause liquid leakage.	

Tab. 8-207: Replacement of the main pump

Replacing the fan

1	Disconnect the machine from the power supply source.	
2	Remove the cover (**A**).	
3	Disconnect the cables from the terminals.	
4	Unscrew the screws (**B**).	
5	Remove the fan (**C**).	
6	Insert the replacement fan.	
7	Tighten the screws (**B**).	
8	Connect the cables (using the wiring diagram).	
9	Reattach the cover (**A**).	

Tab. 8-208: Replacement of the electric fan

Replacing the fuses

Before replacing the fuse, fix the cause of the malfunction.

Only replace the interrupted fuse with a fuse with the same characteristics.

For the characteristics of the fuses see chapter "Description of the fuses" on page 484.

Exchanging the coolant

Empty the hydraulic circuit of the machine (see chapter "Emptying the hydraulic circuit" on page 503).

Fill the hydraulic circuit (see chapter "Filling the hydraulic circuit" on page 498).

Disposing of old equipment

Scrapping operations must be handled by specialized personnel with suitable skills for the job.

In accordance with the applicable regulations, all individual components must be collected separately for disposal according to their chemical properties when dismantling the machine.

With reference to the European Directive (RAEE), electric and electronic components must either be disposed of in authorized landfill sites or the machine, complete of the said parts, must be returned to the dealer in case of a new purchase.

The owner is responsible for delivering the machine, at the end of its working life, to the appropriate collection structures. Failure to comply shall lead to penalties foreseen by the regulations in force.

Control using MLD

Pressure control

The differential pressure between the machine's intake and its outlet has to be kept at a constant rate (1.5 bar, for example) so that the flow to the devices to be cooled can be easily set.

To control the pressure, the pump speed is varied based on the intake/outlet differential pressure.

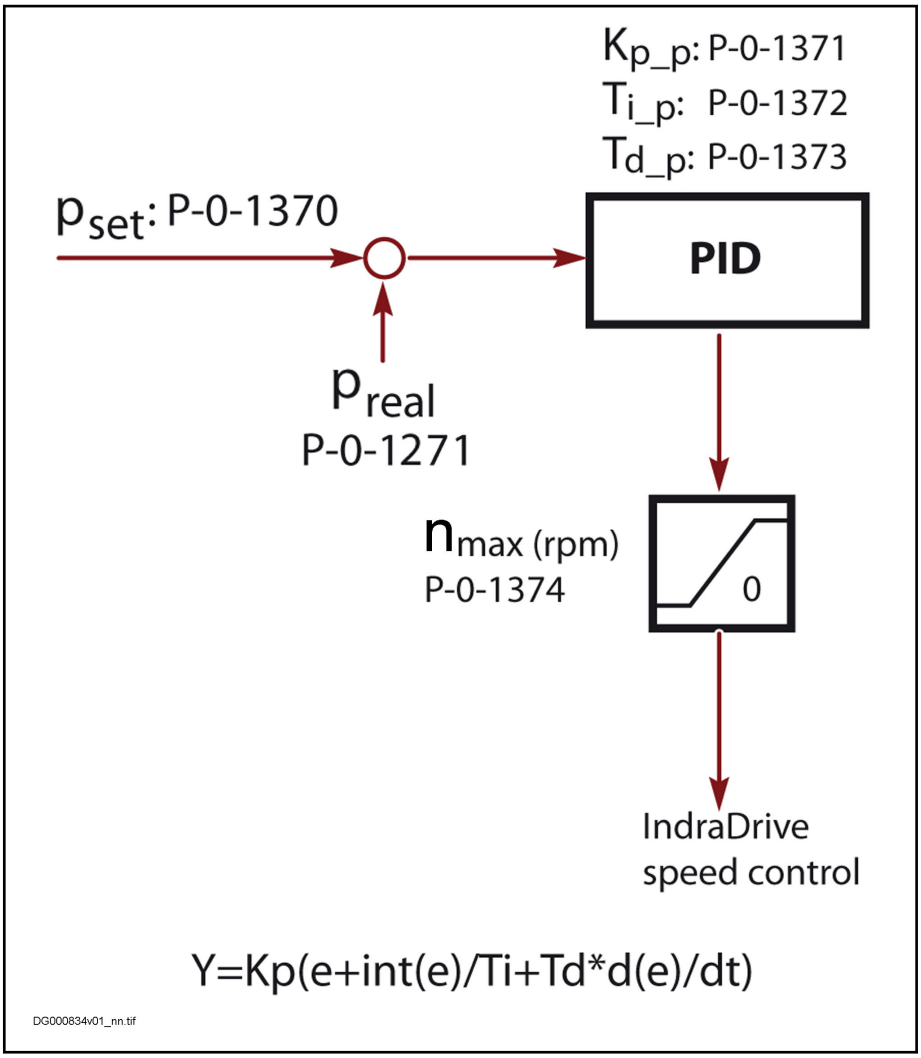


Fig. 8-143: Pressure control

Name	Parameter	Unit
p_{set}	P-0-1370	bar
K_{p_p}	P-0-1371	min^{-1} /bar
T_{i_p}	P-0-1372	s
T_{d_p}	P-0-1373	s

Name	Parameter	Unit
n_{max}	P-0-1374	min^{-1}
p_{real} (*)	P-0-1271	bar

* Read-only

Tab. 8-209: Pressure control parameters

Temperature control

When selecting the coolant temperature in the drive circuit, the climatic conditions of the system must be taken into account to prevent condensation on the equipment being cooled.

The temperature of the fluid is controlled by a variable speed electric fan which cools the fluid flowing through the heat exchanger.

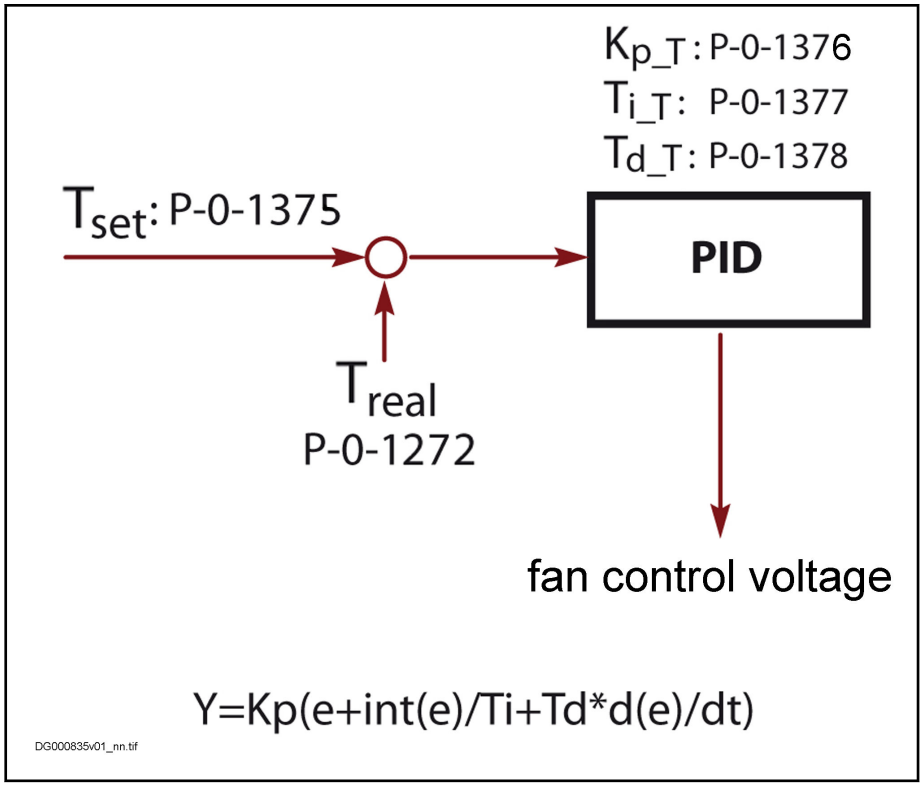


Fig. 8-144: Temperature control

Name	Parameter	Unit
T_{set}	P-0-1375	°C
K_{p_T}	P-0-1376	V / °C
T_{i_T}	P-0-1377	s
T_{d_T}	P-0-1378	s
T_{real} (*)	P-0-1272	°C
T_{real} (*)	P-0-1273	°F

* Read-only

Tab. 8-210: Temperature control parameters

Starting the machine

The machine is started (as per the predefined setting) solely with the digital command:

ENABLE (X31.1, P-0-1390)

You can set the type of machine enabling (starting via digital input or starting via the communication).

Start	Parameters	Input
Start selection 1	P-0-1380	digital
Start selection 2	P-0-1381	digital
Start command via communication	P-0-1382	digital

Tab. 8-211: Start options

The parameters **P-0-1380 and P-0-1381** can be set to "0" or "1".

If both parameters are set to the **same value** (0 or 1), the machine can be started via the digital input with **P-0-1390** (0 = off, 1 = on).

If both parameters are set to **different values**, the machine can be started via the communication with **P-0-1382** (0 = off, 1 = on).

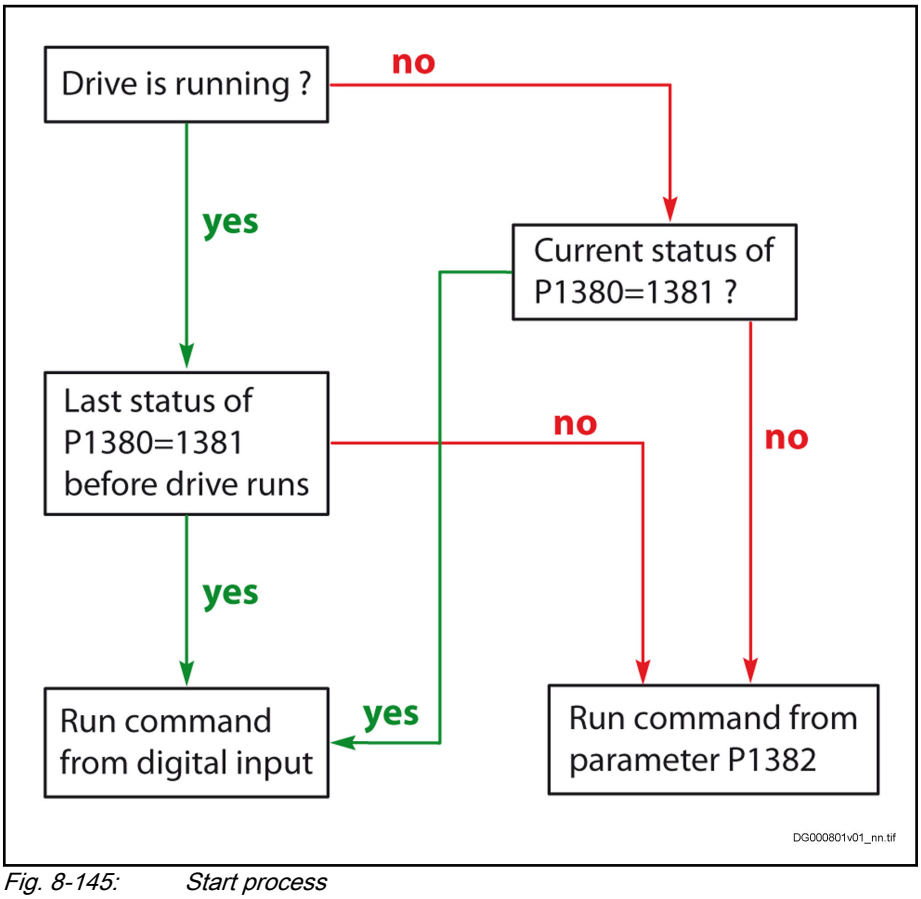


Fig. 8-145: Start process

Example: By setting the parameter P-0-1380 as a digital input and monitoring the parameters P-0-1381 and P-0-1382 via the PLC, the power-up command

for the machine can be transmitted either via the digital input or the PLC, from two different workstations.

Parameters

Hardware designation on the electronic type plate

Name	Parameters	012-020	020-090	022-090	035-090
Application type	S-0-1302.0.3	HAH02.1-WA012	HAH02.1-WA020	HAH02.1-WA022	HAH02.1-WA035

Tab. 8-212: Hardware designation on the electronic type plate (from software version ≥ 03V07)

Name	Parameter	Unit	Minimum value	Maximum value	012-020	020-090	022-090	035-090
$_{pset}$ (pressure command value)	P-0-1370	bar	0	2.0	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
$_{Kp}$ (pressure control)	P-0-1371	min^{-1} /bar	0	10000	40	40	40	40
T_i (pressure control)	P-0-1372	s	0.0	1000.0	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05
T_d (pressure control)	P-0-1373	s	0.0	1000.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
n_{max}	P-0-1374	min^{-1}	0	8000	3000	3000	3000	3000
Target temperature value	P-0-1375	°C	0	60	60	60	60	60
$_{Kp}$ (temperature control)	P-0-1376	V / °C	-1000.0	0.0	-0.5	-0.5	-0.5	-5.0
T_i (temperature control)	P-0-1377	s	0	10000	10	10	10	40
T_d (temperature control)	P-0-1378	s	0.0	1000.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Start selection 1	P-0-1380	-	0	1	0	0	0	0
Start selection 2	P-0-1381	-	0	1	0	0	0	0
Start command via communication	P-0-1382	-	0	1	0	0	0	0
p_{set_2} (pressure command value 2)	P-0-1385	bar	0.0	2.0	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2
Control word switching to p_{set_2}	P-0-1295	bit	-	-	0	0	0	0
High temperature warning differential value	P-0-1316	°C	0	20	10	10	10	10
High temperature warning time	P-0-1317	s	0	100	3	3	3	3
Overtemperature limit value	P-0-1318	°C	40	100	90	90	90	90
Control cabinet fan switch-on temperature	P-0-1319	°C	0	70	50	50	50	50
Tolerance in pressure control	P-0-1320	bar	0.0	10.0	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5
Low engine speed - Deceleration	P-0-1321	s	0	100	5	5	5	5

Tab. 8-213: Parameters

Name	Parameter	Unit	Type *	Scaling
Analog I/O monitoring parameters (read-only) with analog Hall sensors				
Fan control voltage	P-0-1270	V	AO	0-10 V, 0-100%
Pump differential pressure	P-0-1271	bar	-	-
Coolant temperature	P-0-1272	°C	-	-
Coolant temperature	P-0-1273	°F	-	-
Pressure sensor	P-0-1280	V	AI	0-10 V, 0-6 bar
Temperature sensor	P-0-1281	V	AI	0-10 V, -50-100 °C
Digital I/O parameters				
Drive enable	P-0-1390	bit 0	DI	
>, 0.5 bar pressure monitoring	P-0-1391	bit 0	DI	
>, 0.2 bar pressure monitoring	P-0-1391	bit 1	DI	
Fan monitoring	P-0-1391	bit 2	DI	TRUE for “Fan OK”
Status word machine	P-0-1410			
Cooler is running	P-0-1410	bit 0		Start command + P-0-1410.4 + no warning + no error
Command pressure value reached	P-0-1410	bit 1		abs(P-0-1370 - P-0-1271) < P-0-1320
The radiator is running (ignores warning)	P-0-1410	bit 3		Start command + P-0-1410.4 + no error
Motor running	P-0-1410	bit 4		Motor velocity (S40) ≥ 360
Drive warning	P-0-1412	bit 0	DO	"high" for no warning
Drive error	P-0-1412	bit 1	DO	"high" for no error
Heater enable	P-0-1412	bit 2	DO	
Fan approval	P-0-1412	bit 3	DO	
Housing fan enable	P-0-1412	bit 4	DO	

* AI: analog input; AO: analog output; DI: digital input; DO: digital output

Tab. 8-214: Parameters

Switching the pressure command value

The pressure command value can be switched via control word (P-0-1295.0). This function can be used for a more economical operation (lower energy consumption, less wear) if the new pressure command value is set to a lower value.

Pressure command value (p_{set})	P-0-1370
Pressure command value 2 (p_{set_2})	P-0-1385
Control word	P-0-1295.0
P-0-1295.0 = 0	Pressure command value: P-0-1370
P-0-1295.0 = 1	Pressure command value: P-0-1385

Tab. 8-215: Switching the pressure command value

With a pressure command value of 0.2 bar instead of 1.5 bar, laboratory measurements showed energy savings of 92% (40 W instead of 500 W). The motor speed decreased from 2200 min^{-1} to 760 min^{-1} resulting in a longer service life of the motor.

Cabinet fan control

The cabinet fan control applies only to units with cabinet heating (HAH02.**1-WAxxx-xxx-xx-xx-2**)

The cabinet fan will be turned on if the cabinet temperature (S-0-0384) is higher than the value in P-0-1319.

The cabinet fan will be turned off if the cabinet temperature (S-0-0384) is 5 °C/°F lower than value in P-0-1319.

Air-water heat exchanger (WA020-090)

Technical information

General description of the machine

The machine is designed and manufactured for the purpose of cooling devices or equipment using a liquid solution made of glycol and demineralized water.

The underlying principle of this cooling method is the transfer of heat between air and water via a heat exchanger.

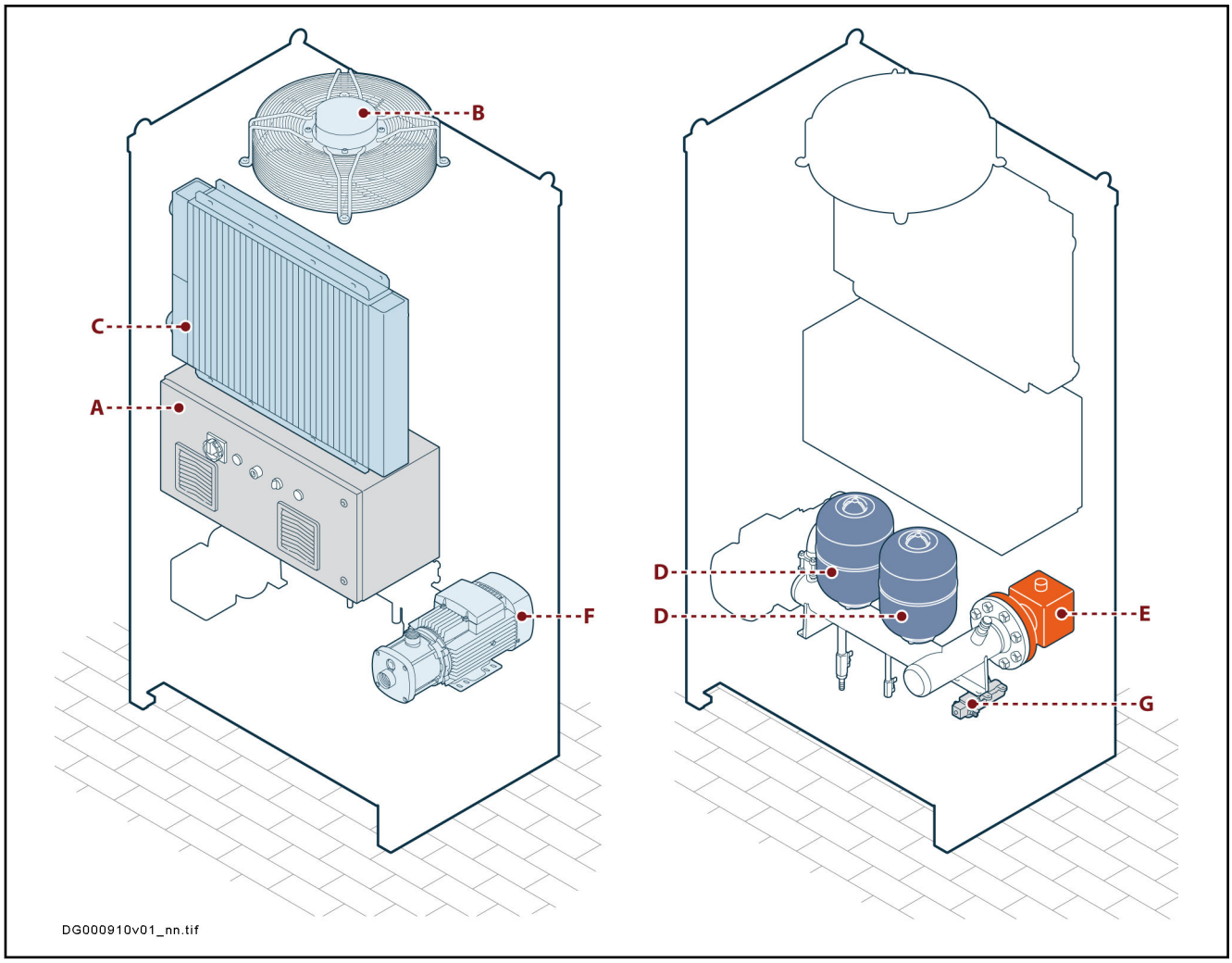
A pump in the radiator circulates the fluid, and the air current generated by an electric fan cools the fluid.

The machine is equipped with a heater to raise the temperature of the incoming liquid.

Pressure and temperature are controlled via IndraMotion MLD, the drive-integrated Motion Logic Control system compliant with IEC 61131-3. See chapter "Control using MLD" on page 514.

See also chapter "Liquid cooling" on page 53.

Main components

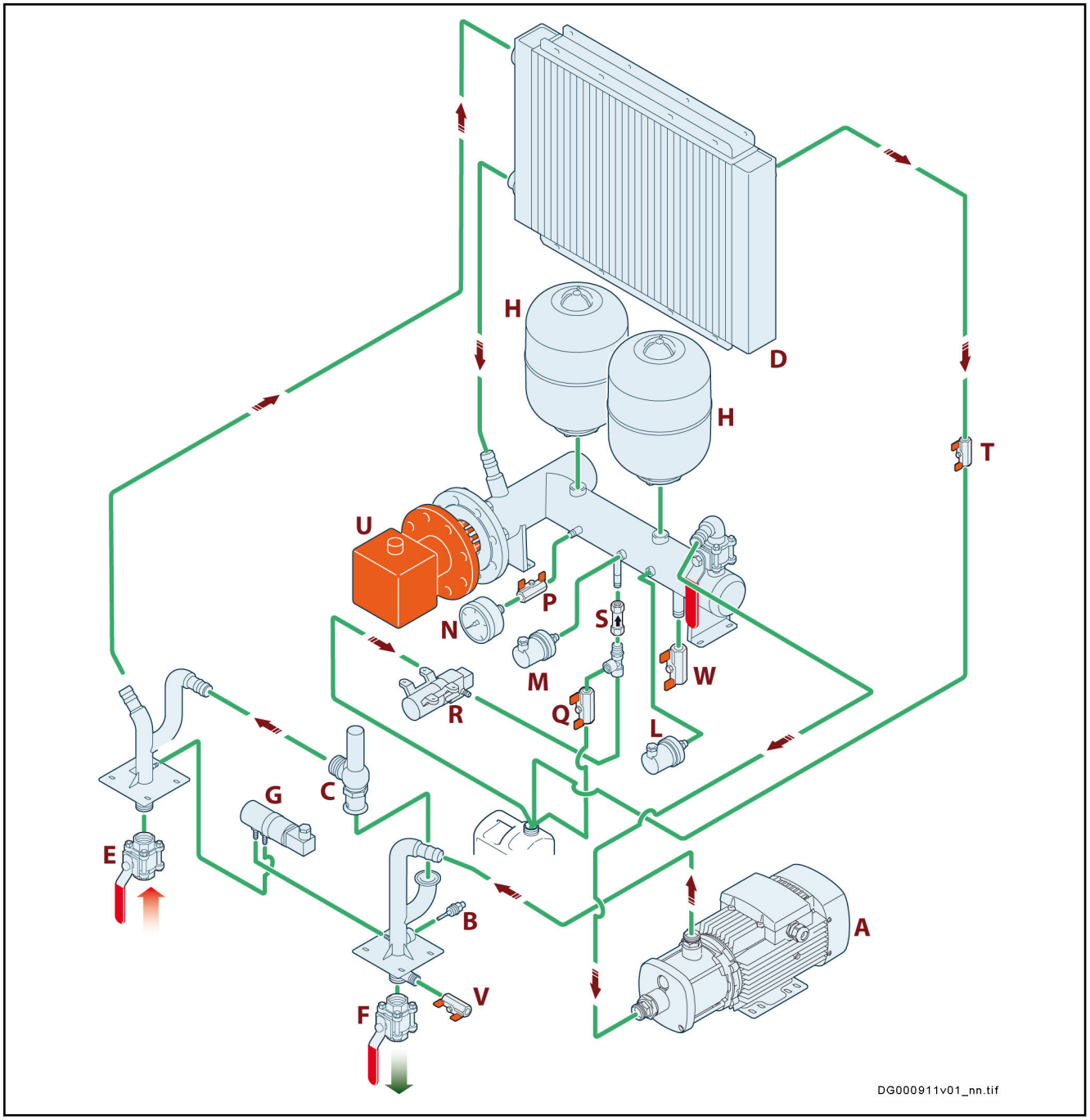


A	Terminal box
B	Electric fan
C	Heat exchanger
D	Expansion tank
E	Heater
F	Main pump
G	Filling pump

Fig. 8-146: Main components

Operating cycle and component description

The following figure illustrates the operating principle.



A	**Main pump:** Circulates the coolant through the hydraulic circuit.
B	**Temperature sensor:** Measures the coolant temperature in the outlet pipe.
C	**Bypass valve:** It limits the pressure of the output liquid.
D	**Heat exchanger:** Reduces the temperature of the coolant.
E	**Ball valve:** It opens and closes the flow of the coolant from the owner's system.
F	**Ball valve:** It opens and closes the flow of the coolant towards the owner's system.
G	**Pressure sensor:** This detects, in real time, the differential pressure between the intake pipe and the outlet pipe.
H	**Expansion tank:** Ensures consistent pressure in the circuit.

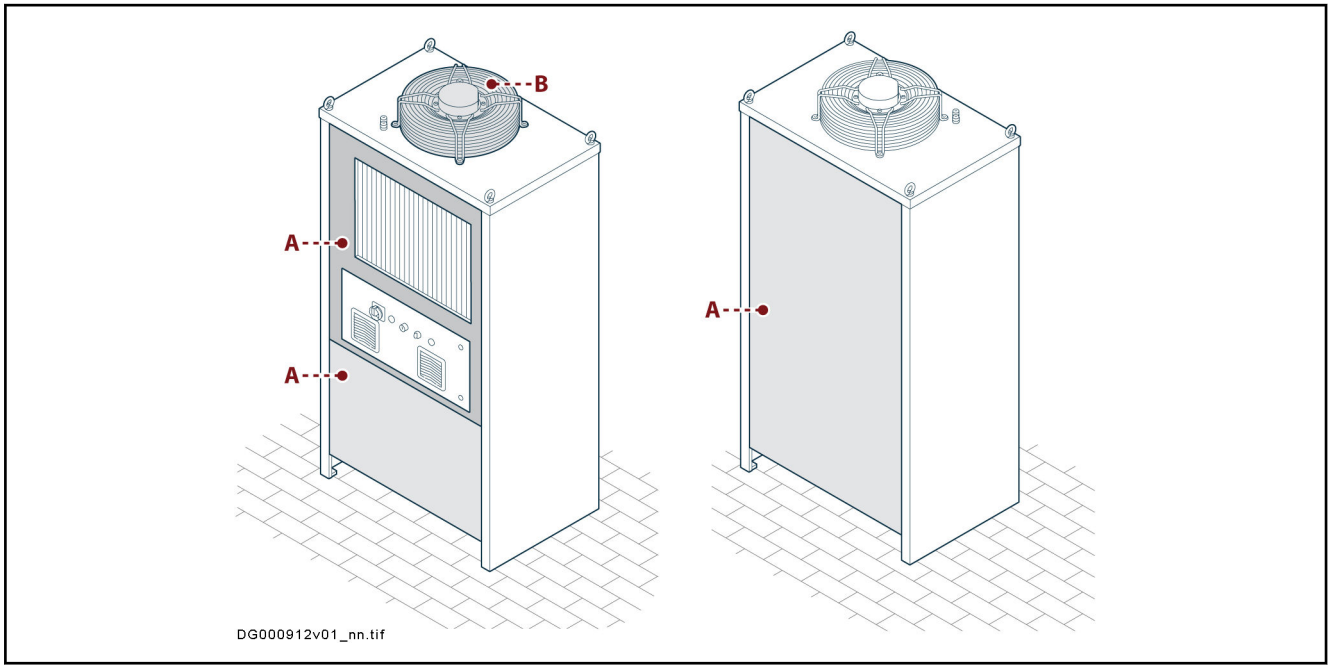
L	**Pressure switch (0.2 bar):** This detects the pressure level in the intake manifold.
M	**Pressure switch (0.5 bar):** This detects the pressure level in the intake manifold.
N	**Pressure gauge:** Measures the fluid pressure in the intake manifold.
P	**Valve:** Regulates the flow to the pressure gauge (**N**).
Q	**Valve:** This is used to release any backpressure in the filling pump delivery line and facilitate priming.
R	**Filling pump:** Fills the cooling circuit.
S	**Check valve:** It prevents the liquid from flowing into the filling pump when it is being primed or is deactivated.
T	**Valve:** Air release valve
U	**Heater (optional):** Heats the fluid if the heat exchanger is operated at ambient temperatures below 0 °C.
V	**Valve:** Used to drain the cooling circuit.
W	**Valve:** Used to drain the cooling circuit.

Fig. 8-147: Operating cycle and component description

Guards

⚠ WARNING **Risk of injury!**

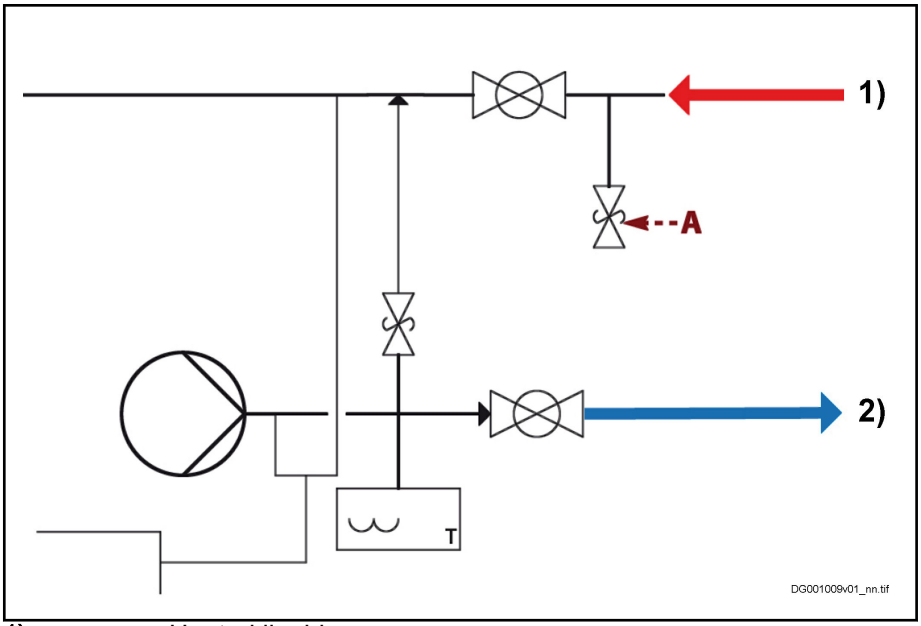
Always use the machine with the safety guards in place.



A **Guards** Prevents unauthorized access to machine parts.
B **Guards:** Prevents accidental contact with the fan.
Fig. 8-148: Guards

Overpressure devices

If additional pumps (external to the machine) are installed on the circuit or if the drop in pressure of the hydraulic load is less than 1.5 bar, the owner has to fit a pressure limiting valve. The valve has to limit the pressure to a maximum of 2 bar in the return pipe to the machine.



1) Heated liquid
2) Cooled liquid
A Pressure limiting valve

Fig. 8-149: Positioning of the pressure limiting valve (A)

Overall dimensions

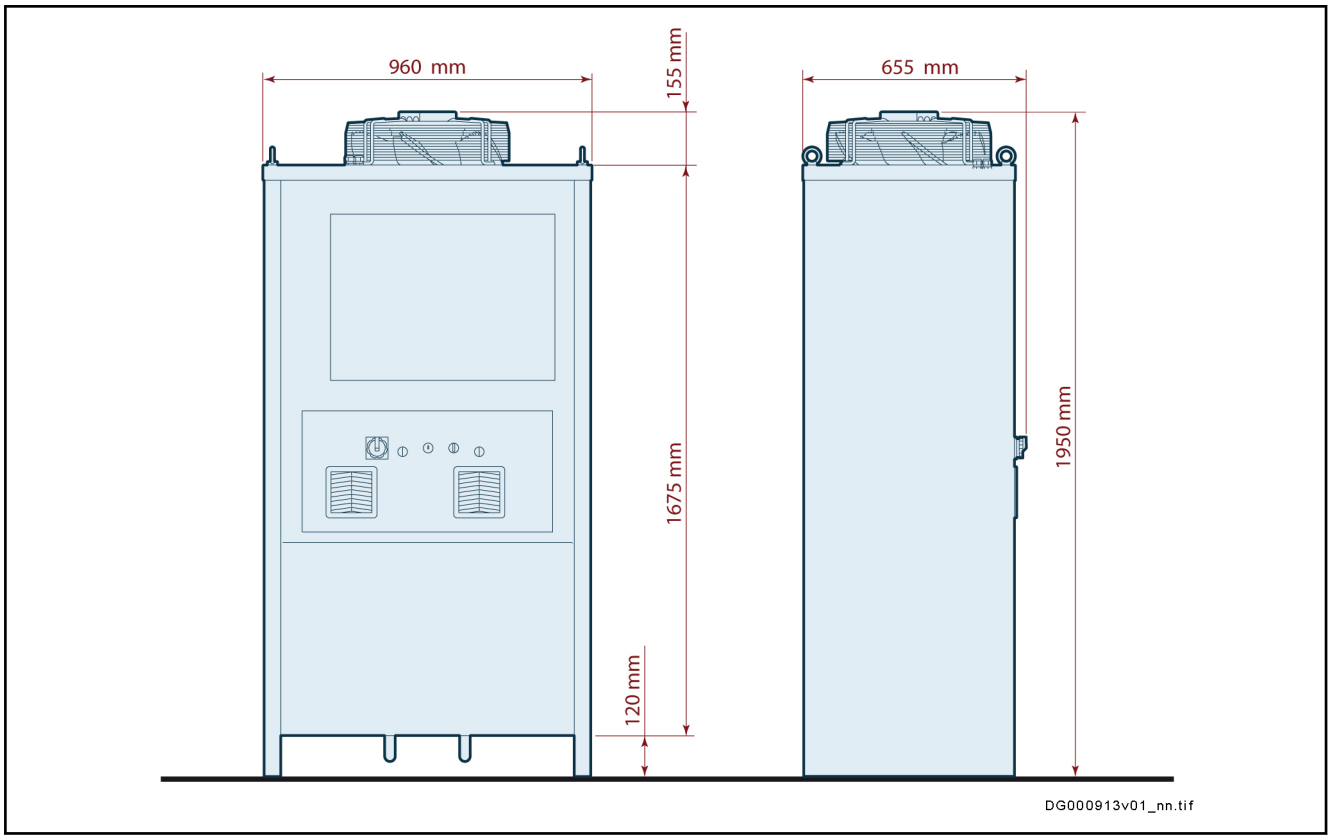


Fig. 8-150: Overall dimensions

Data

Technical data - Machine

Designation	Unit	Value
Power voltage	Vac	380 … 480 (±10%)
Frequency	Hz	50
Current	A	9
Maximum cooling capacity	kW	20
Maximum output flow rate	l/min	90
Maximum pressure of the incoming coolant	bar	2
Maximum pressure of the leaking coolant	bar	4.5
Maximum coolant temperature	°C	70[1)]
Minimum coolant temperature	°C	-40
Drive circuit coolant (monoethyl glycol and demineralized water solution) See also chapter "Liquid cooling" on page 53.	-	20% glycol
Estimated amount of coolant (heat exchanger only)	l	approx. 50
Maximum installation altitude	m	2000
Ambient temperature[*]	°C	-40 … +45
Relative humidity without condensation	%	95
Weight (heat exchanger)	kg	350
Weight (heat exchanger + packaging)	kg	440

* When temperatures fall below 0 °C, the heater in the control cabinet has to be turned on even when the machine is not running.

1) comply with the maximum permissible temperature of the coolant used

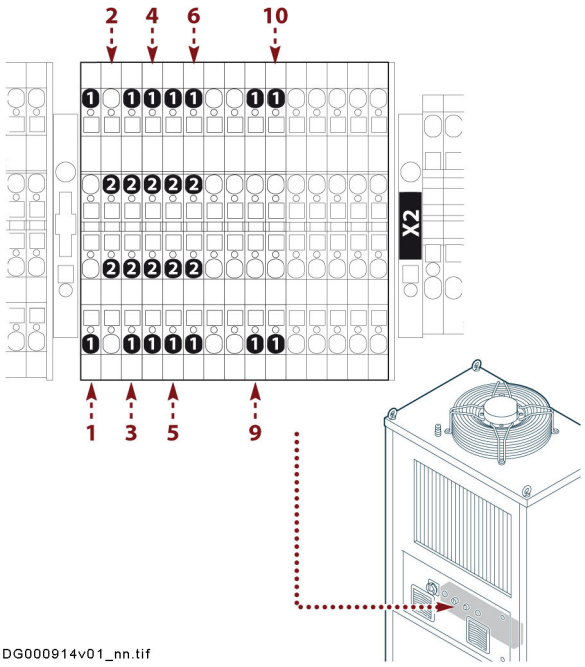
Tab. 8-216: Technical data - machine

ENABLE, UNIT ERROR and UNIT WARNING connections

The signals used to enable the relative machine status via the operator's control terminal are transmitted via the terminal block shown in the figure.

Connect the lines to the terminals shown in the "terminal connections" table.

Terminal box X2

Pos.	Significance	Terminals
9.1 - 2.2	Terminals for machine enable via the operator's control terminal (ENABLE)	
3.1 - 3.2 4.1 - 4.2	Machine error signal terminals Closed contact: no error	
5.1 - 5.2 6.1 - 6.2	Warning signal terminals Closed contact: no warning	
10.1 - 1.1	Terminals for remote alarm reset.	

Tab. 8-217: Connection terminals (terminal box X2)

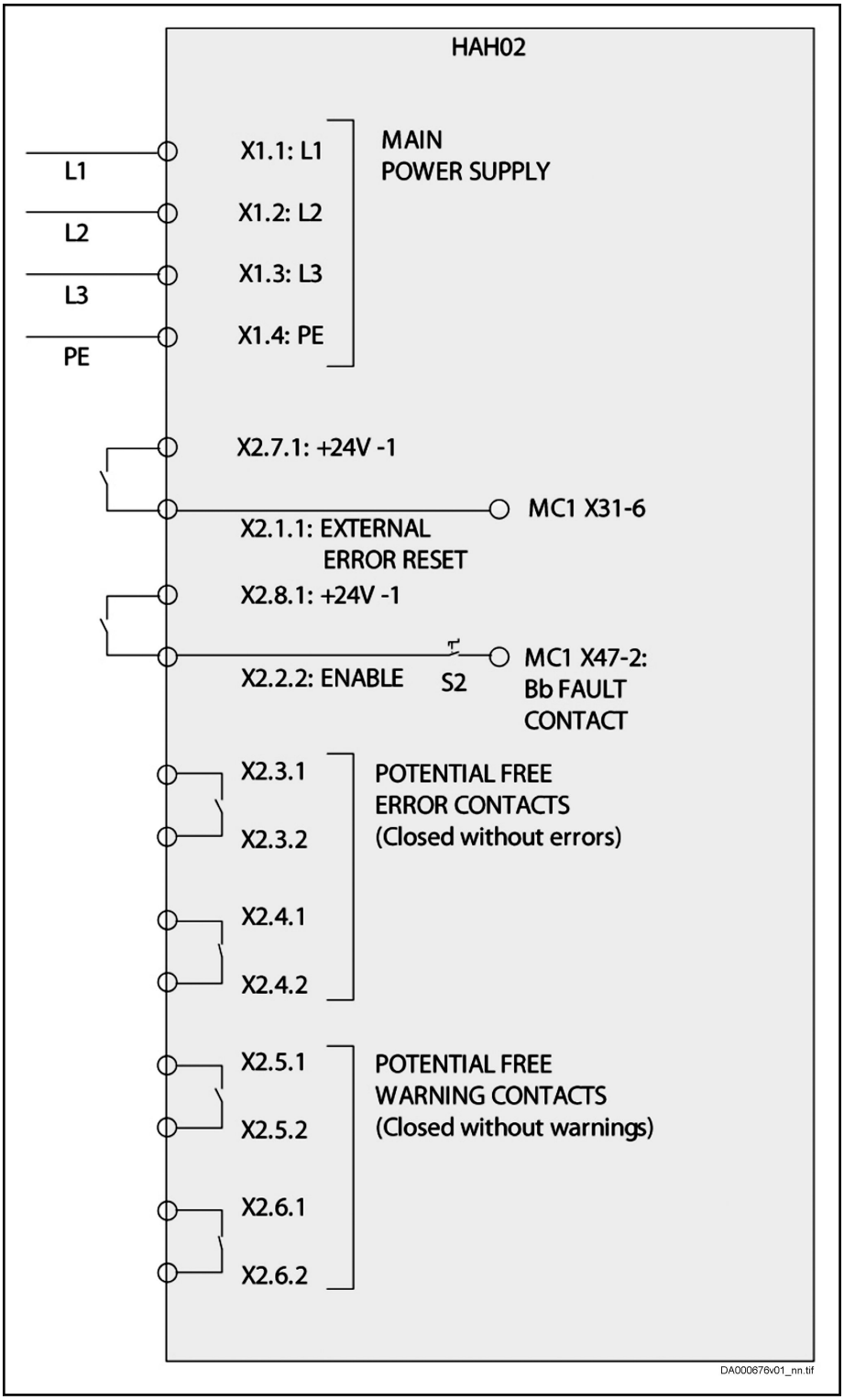
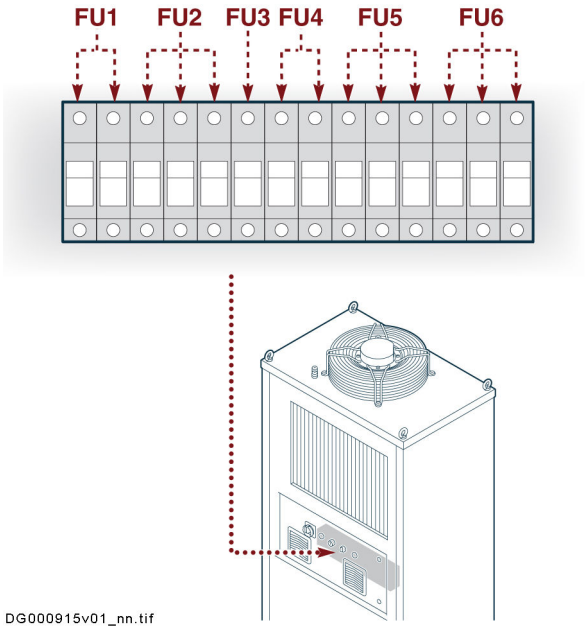


Fig. 8-151: Circuit diagram

Description of the fuses

Name	Current (A)	Type	Rated voltage (Vac)	Inter-ruption capacity (kW)	Fuse	Position
FU1	1	CC	600	200	Delayed	
FU2	6					
FU3	4					
FU4	1					
FU5	4					
FU6	10					

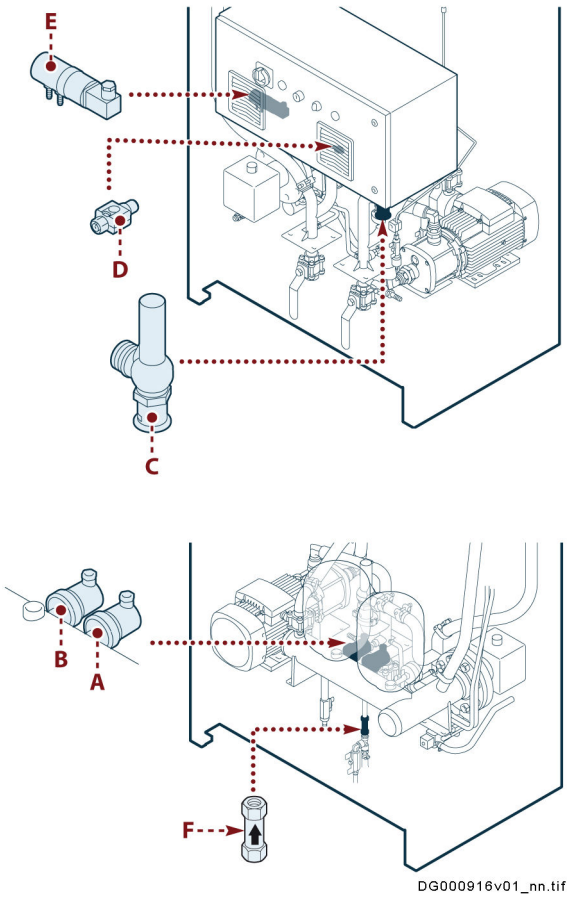
Tab. 8-218: Fuses

Operating and safety equipment

⚠ WARNING **Serious health and safety risks!**

Do not tamper with, circumvent, remove or bypass processing and protection devices; Failure to comply with this requirement may cause serious health and safety risks.

A	**Pressure switch (0.5 bar):** This detects the pressure level in the intake manifold. The pressure switch allows a "warning" to be signaled when the pressure falls below 0.5 bar.
B	**Pressure switch (0.2 bar):** This detects the pressure level in the intake manifold. The pressure switch allows an "error" to be signaled when the pressure falls below 0.2 bar and stops machine operation.
C	**Bypass valve:** Limits the fluid pressure in the outlet line to the maximum allowable value.
D	**Temperature sensor:** Measures the coolant temperature in the outlet pipe. Depending on the temperature detected, the system will signal either a "warning"(temperature too high) or an "error" (temperature continues to rise, resulting in machine shutdown).
E	**Pressure sensor:** This detects, in real time, the differential pressure between the intake pipe and the outlet pipe. The sensor helps maintain a constant pressure in the outlet line.
F	**Check valve:** It prevents the liquid from flowing into the filling pump when it is being primed or is deactivated.



Tab. 8-219: Operating and safety equipment

Ambient conditions for operation

The machine operates properly under the specified ambient conditions (see chapter "Data" on page 528).

Intended use

The machine is designed and manufactured to cool electric or electronic equipment or machines.

The machine has to be used in accordance with its technical specifications. It is prohibited to make any modifications to the machine or to use it for purposes other than the intended use.

The machine may only be used indoors.

Any other use than that specified, or not included or inferable from this manual, should be considered mishandling and therefore not permitted.

Unintended and unauthorized uses

The use of coolants with properties other than the coolants specified by the manufacturer is not permitted.

The machine must not be used in a flammable or hazardous environment.

The machine may only be commissioned after it has been verified that the system or machine in which it is installed complies with applicable national and local regulations.

Residual risks

Risk of crushing: When moving the machine, incorrect manoeuvres or improper handling of the load may pose a risk of injury to the operators involved.

Risk of electric shock: Maintenance operations or replacement of components may involve a risk of electric shock due to accidental contact with live electrical components.

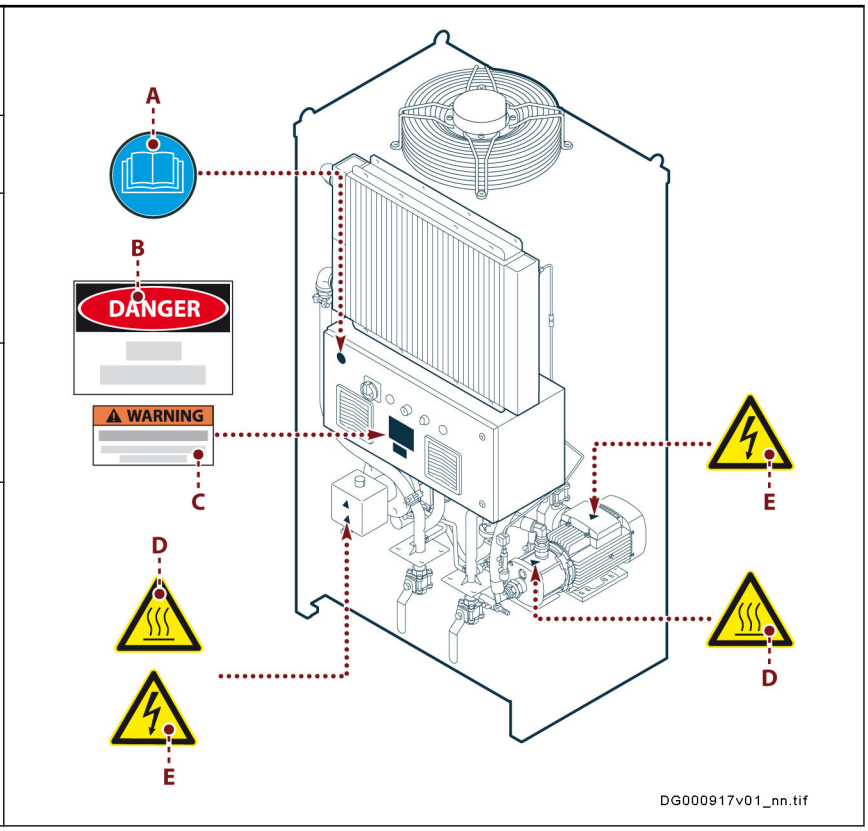
Thermal risk: Contact with hot surfaces can cause burns. Allow the machine to cool down before any operation.

Warning and safety signs

⚠ WARNING

Check that all the plates are legible. If they are not, clean them or - if they are damaged - replace them, applying the new ones in the same place as the old one.

A	This indicates the obligation for operators to read the instruction manual before operating the machine.
B	This shows that the voltage inside the terminal box is hazardous.
C	Risk of death or serious injury. Disconnect the machine from the power supply before beginning work.
D	This indicates that there is the risk of burns due to contact with hot surfaces. Allow the machine to cool down before any operation.
E	Risk of electric shock



Tab. 8-220: Warning and safety signs

Transporting and installing

Transport and installation safety recommendations

Personnel responsible for transport of the load must have the required qualification and experience and must be trained in handling the lifting gear used.

Use lifting gear with suitable load capacity in order to lift and move the load.

Persons authorized for transport must take appropriate measures to ensure their own safety and the safety of persons directly involved.

Place the package on a stable surface.

Do not place packed machines on top of each other as they are not intended for stacking.

Upon reception, each package must be inspected to verify the integrity and the exact quantity of its contents. In case items are damaged or missing, contact the importer or the manufacturer directly to discuss the procedure to be adopted.

Package description

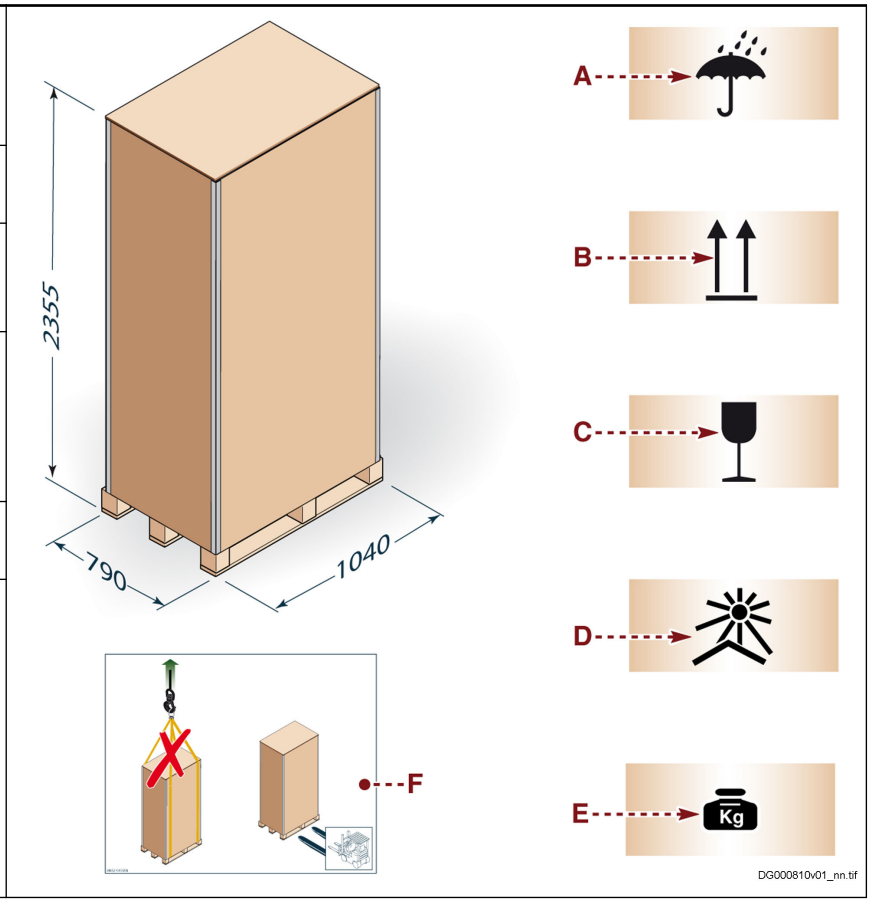
The packaging is selected according to the selected means of transport and the destination.

Packages can either be loaded directly onto a means of transport or into suitable containers if shipped by sea or air or to far-off destinations.

In order to facilitate transport, some components are removed and properly protected.

The figure shows the type of packaging most frequently used and the maximum dimensions as well as the warning symbols and notices attached to the packages.

A	This symbol means the packed machine must be stored in a dry place: its contents may be damaged by dampness.
B	This symbol means the packed machine must be kept upright.
C	This symbol means the packed machine must be handled with care: its contents are fragile.
D	This symbol indicates that the package must be kept away from direct sunlight and heat sources to avoid exposing its content to excessively high temperatures.
E	This symbol indicates the overall weight of the package.
F	The plate shows the procedure for lifting the package.



Tab. 8-221: Package description

Transporting and lifting the packed machine

The figure shows how to lift the package.

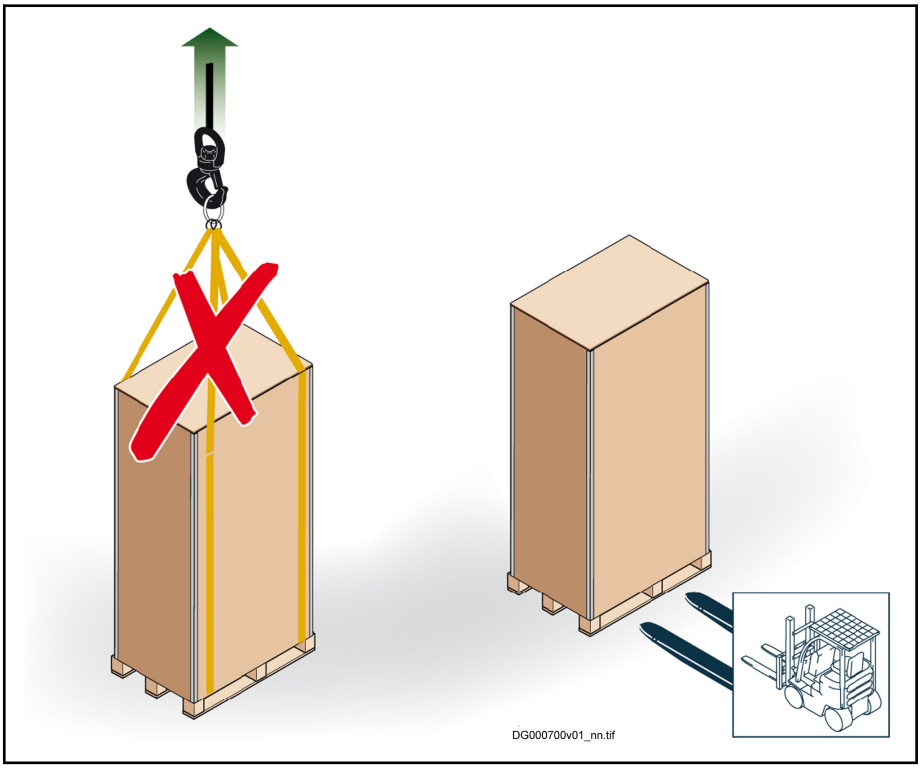


Fig. 8-152: Transporting and lifting the packed machine

Storage

If the machine is not going to be used for an extended period, it should be stored (possibly without unpacking it, or at least adequately protected) in a sheltered place protected from atmospheric agents at a temperature between -20 and +55 °C.

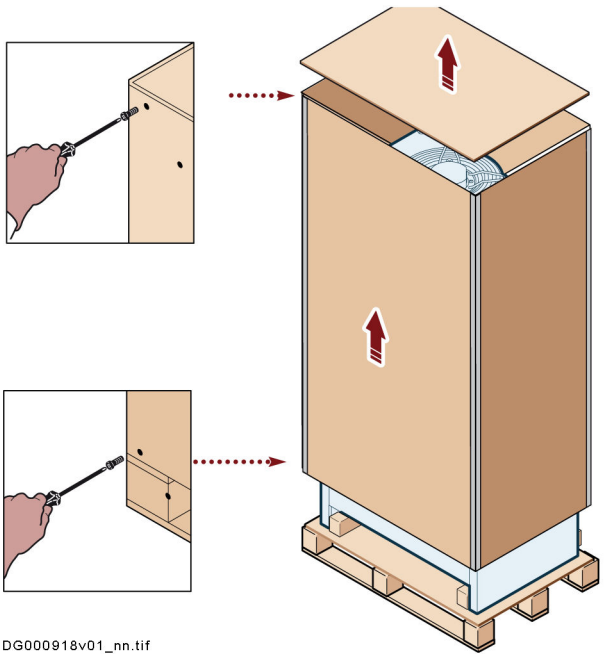
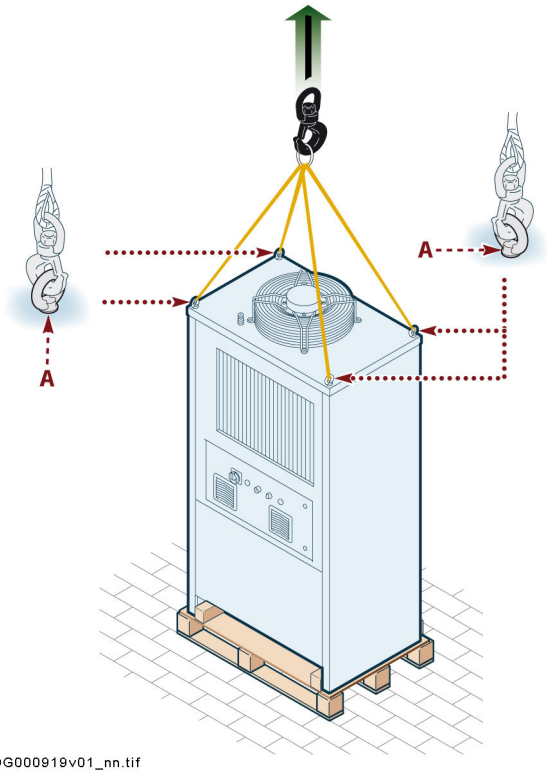
Avoid storing the machine in places where weather conditions could prejudice its good working order.

Unpacking

It is advisable to unpack the machine near the installation area to facilitate assembly.

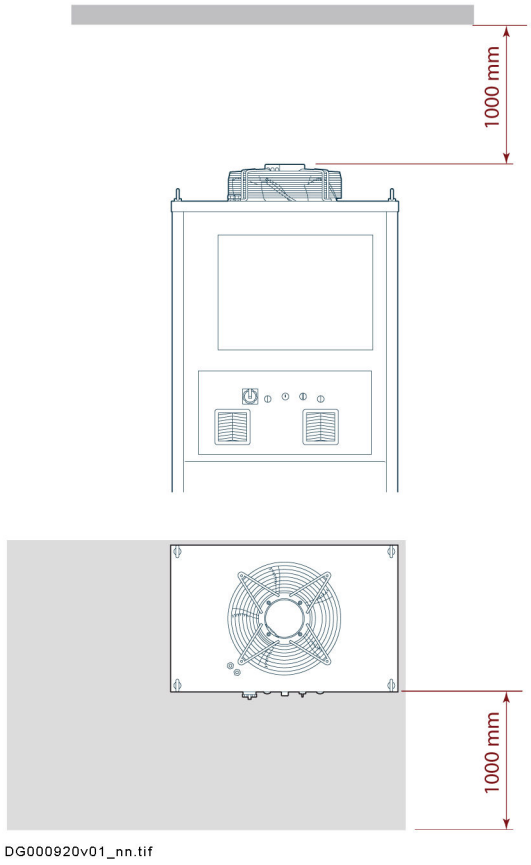
The figure shows how to unpack the machine properly.

Proceed as described.

1	Unscrew the screws.	
2	Remove the cover.	
3	Lift the side walls of the packaging.	
4	Tighten the eyebolts (**A**) supplied.	
5	Hook the ropes onto the eyebolts (**A**).	
6	Lift the machine. **WARNING!** When lifting pay attention to the machine swinging movement as the lifting point is never perfectly barycentric. Sudden movements may injure the people involved in the operations. The packaging material (wood, propylene, etc,.) can be kept for future use or properly disposed of according to the regulations in force.	

Tab. 8-222: Unpacking

Installation

Installation area The installation area must be flat and horizontal and correspond to the default load factor. Electrical connections as well as the possibility of transmitting the signals "UNIT ERROR" - "UNIT WARNING" must be available. Furthermore, all hydraulic connections must be available in accordance with legal regulations. According to the relevant regulations concerning health and safety at the working place, the area must have sufficient ventilation and lighting. Make sure that there is enough space around the installation area so that all work can be carried out safely. The figure shows the minimum space required around and above the machine to ensure sufficient ventilation.	

Tab. 8-223: Installation area

Electrical connection

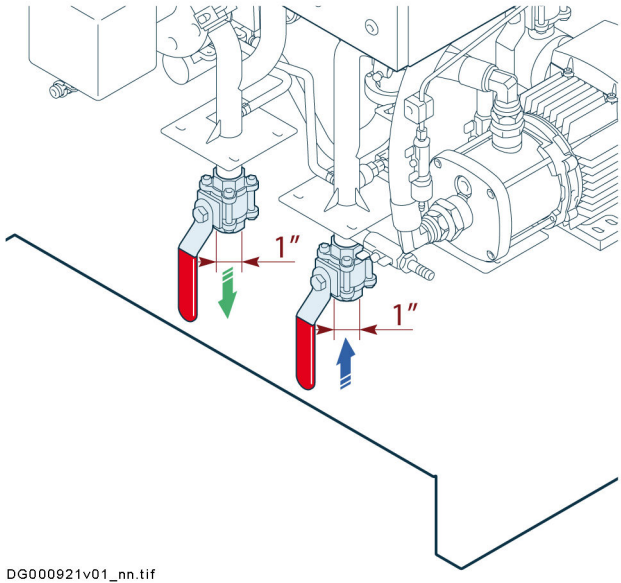
Electrical connections must be executed according to the manufacturer's specifications in the wiring diagram.

The electrical connections must be performed at professional standards in compliance with all legislative requirements and regulations.

Use a 4 G-AWG 12 cable (three-phase conductors + equipment grounding conductor).

Connect the three phases (L1, L2, L3) and the equipment grounding conductor to the relevant terminals inside the terminal box.

Hose connections

The owner has to install a pressure regulating device in the return pipe. Set the pressure in the intake and return pipes to the values shown in chapter "Data" on page 528. Use flexible tubes with an internal diameter of not less than 25 mm. Use connectors with an internal diameter of not less than 20 mm.	

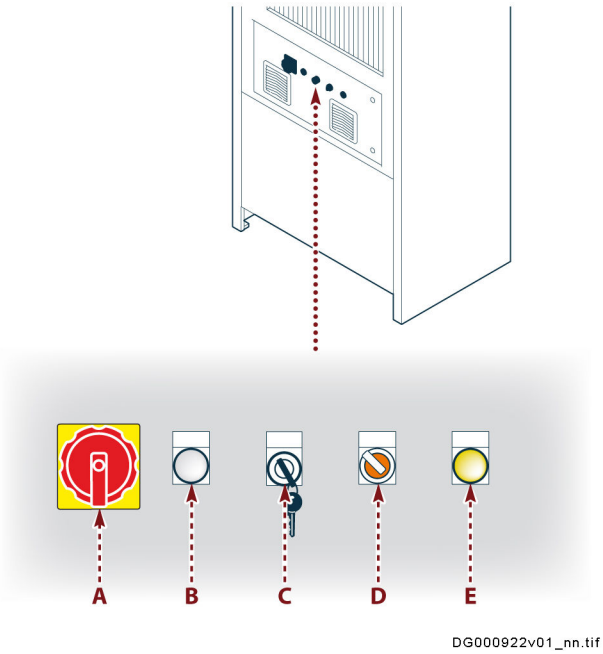
Tab. 8-224: Hose connections

Use

Safety advice for use

Before starting the machine, ensure that the system or the machine in which it has been fitted complies with applicable local regulations and directives.

Control elements and indicator lamps

A	**Main switch:** It is used for connecting and disconnecting the power supply to machine. The indicator lamp (**B**) lights up.	
B	**Indicator lamp (white light):** Indicates that the power supply to the machine has been enabled.	
C	**Key-operated two-position stay-put selector switch:** This is used to switch the main pump operation on and off. The key has to be kept by the designated staff member and available to the staff responsible for technical servicing.	
D	**Two-position stay-put back-lit switch (red light):** This is used to switch the filling pump on and off.	
E	**Indicator lamp (yellow):** Shows automatic shutdown of the heater triggered by overtemperature of the liquid solution.	

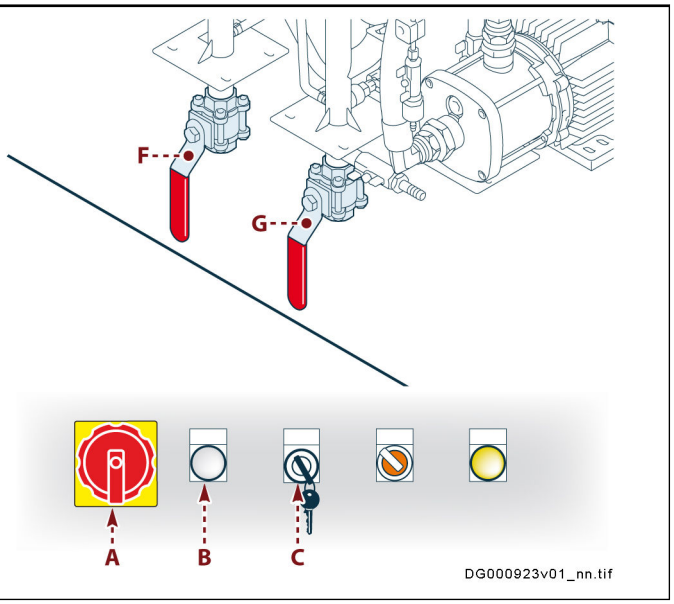
Tab. 8-225: Control elements and indicator lamps

Switching on

At temperatures below 0°C, the heating in the control cabinet must be switched on even if the machine is not running.

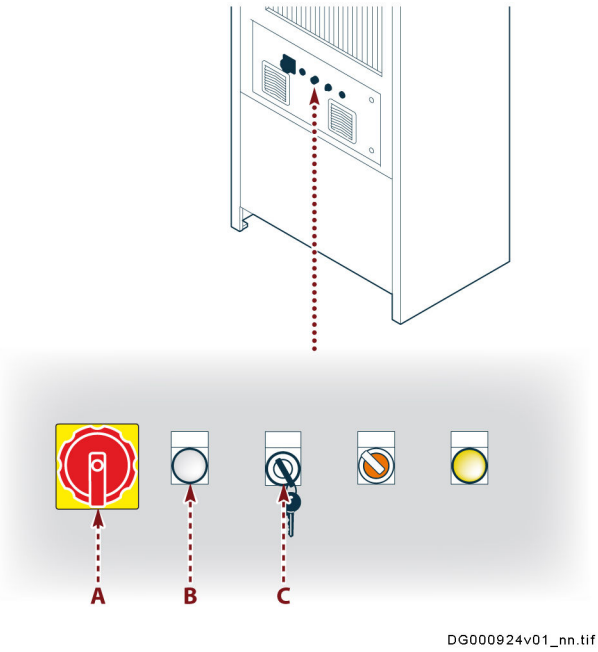
During the first run-up, carry out the circuit filling procedure (see chapter "Filling the hydraulic circuit" on page 543).

To start the machine, proceed as follows.

1	Open the ball valves (**F - G**).	
2	Turn the main switch (**A**) to the "ON" position. The indicator lamp (**B**) lights up.	
3	Turn the key selector (**C**) to "automatic" position. Machine start-up has to be performed using the operator terminal of the machine to be cooled, via the "ENABLE" connection (see chapter "ENABLE, UNIT ERROR and UNIT WARNING connections" on page 529).	

Tab. 8-226: Switching on

Switching off

Switching off with the main switch 1. Turn the main switch (**A**) to the "OFF" position. • The indicator lamp (**B**) will switch off. • Machine operation stops and the voltage supply to the terminal box is interrupted. • The supply terminals remain live.	
Switching off with the key-operated switch This switch-off mode is reserved for authorized personnel. 1. Insert the key into the selector switch (**C**). 2. Turn the selector switch to the "OFF" position. • Operation of the main pump stops. • The terminal box at the machine remains live.	
Remote-controlled switch-off • Remote-controlled switch-off has to be performed using the owner's operator terminal, via the "ENABLE" connection. • Operation of the main pump stops. • The terminal box at the machine remains live.	
Switching off automatically • The machine switches off automatically if the pressure in the circuit falls below 0.2 bar and the temperature of the liquid exceeds the preset limit (see parameter P-0-1318).	

Tab. 8-227: Switching off

Switching off in emergency conditions

To switch off the device in the event of imminent danger (emergency stop), turn the main switch (**A**) to the "OFF" position.

Fix the cause for the emergency stop before restarting the machine.

Filling the hydraulic circuit

Check if the installation as well as electrical and hydraulic connections are executed professionally in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

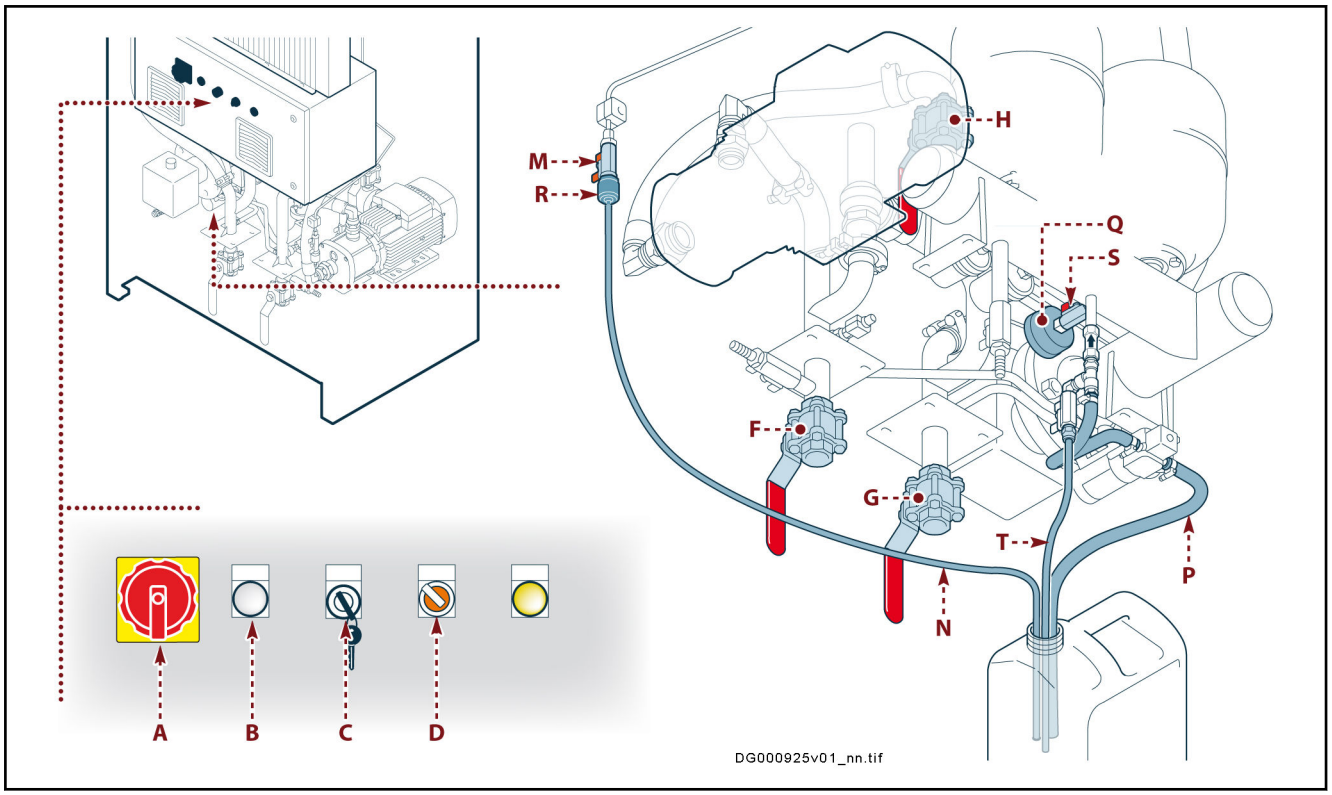


Fig. 8-153: Fill the hydraulic circuit

1. Fill a tank with an appropriate amount of fluid solution (see chapter "Data" on page 528).
2. Fit the pipes (**P - N - T**) into the tank.
3. Open the ball valve (**G**).
4. Open the ball valve (**F**).
5. Open the valve (**M**).

   If there is no liquid coming, clean the connector (**R**). See chapter "Cleaning the connector of the bleed valve" on page 550.
6. Open the ball valve (**H**).
7. Open the valve (**S**).
8. Turn the key-operated selector switch (**C**) to the "OFF" position to prevent unexpected activation of the main pump.
9. Ensure that the remote-controlled "ENABLE" function is activated.
10. **NOTICE!** Do **not** turn the selector switch (**C**) to the "ON" position since this could cause damage to the main pump.

    Open any existing valves that are installed outside the machine on the circuit of the machine to be cooled.
11. Turn the main switch (**A**) to the "ON" position.

    The indicator lamp (**B**) lights up.
12. Turn the selector switch (**D**) to activate the filling pump.

    Make sure that there is always enough liquid in the tank.

If the filling pump does not prime automatically, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 545).

13. When the fluid is running out of the clear tube (**N**) in a steady stream (no bubbles) and the pressure has reached 1.4 … 2.2 bar, turn the key-operated selector switch (**C**) to the "ON" position to activate the main pump in the automatic mode.

    The pressure is indicated on the (**Q**) pressure gauge.

    NOTICE! The filling pump is activated and deactivated automatically and keeps the pressure between 1.4 … 2.2 bar. The main pump is activated only when the circuit pressure reaches over 0.2 bar. During this stage, a sudden drop in pressure may occur. The pressure drop is caused by the air pumped into the circuit as a result of activation of the main pump. Make sure that the key-operated switch (**C**) is set to "ON".

14. Keep the main pump and the filling pump running for at least 30 minutes in order to rinse the cooling circuit thoroughly.

    NOTICE! If it is hard for the system to get up to pressure, close the valve (**M**).

    If the pressure exceeds 1.5 bar, turn off the filling pump and temporarily open the valve (**M**) until the correct pressure is reached.

    NOTICE! If the filling pump priming stops during the filling stage, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 545).

15. Turn the selector switch (**D**) to deactivate the filling pump.
16. Close the valve (**M**) when the pressure in the circuit has reached 1.5 bar.
17. Close the valve (**S**).
18. Remove the pipes from the tank.
19. Remove the key from the selector switch (**C**) and store in a safe place.

    After one hour of operation, check if the pressure is correct – if this is not the case, perform the restore operation (see chapter "Restore pressure" on page 546).

    NOTICE! Limit operation of the pressure gauge to the time necessary to perform the pressure reading. During operation, deactivate the pressure gauge to avoid damaging it.

Filling pump priming procedure

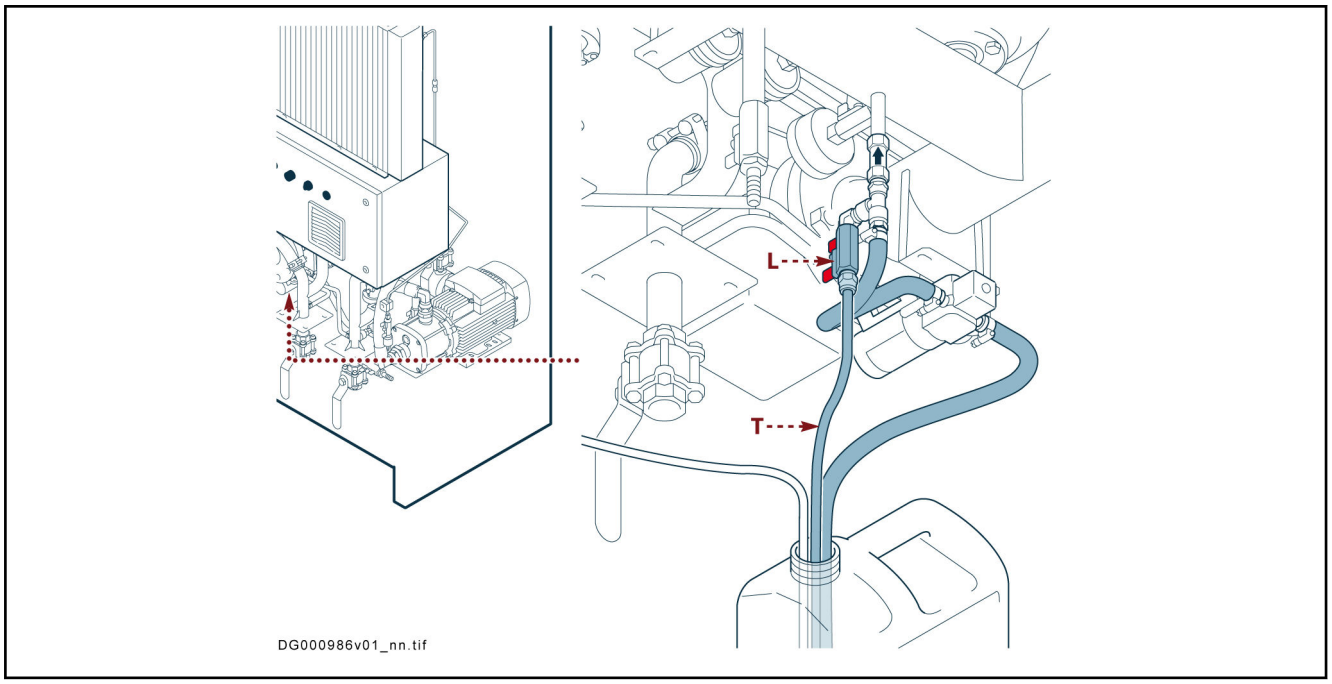


Fig. 8-154: Fill the hydraulic circuit

If the filling pump does not prime automatically, proceed as described:

1. When the filling pump is active, open the valve (**L**).
2. Wait for the coolant to start flowing out of the transparent hose (**T**).
3. Close the valve (**L**) and leave the filling pump working.

The filling pump is primed and starts pumping the coolant into the hydraulic circuit.

Restore pressure

This procedure can be carried out only if the pressure is above 0.8 bar and the main pump is activated.

If the pressure is below this level, carry out the circuit filling procedure (see chapter "Filling the hydraulic circuit" on page 543).

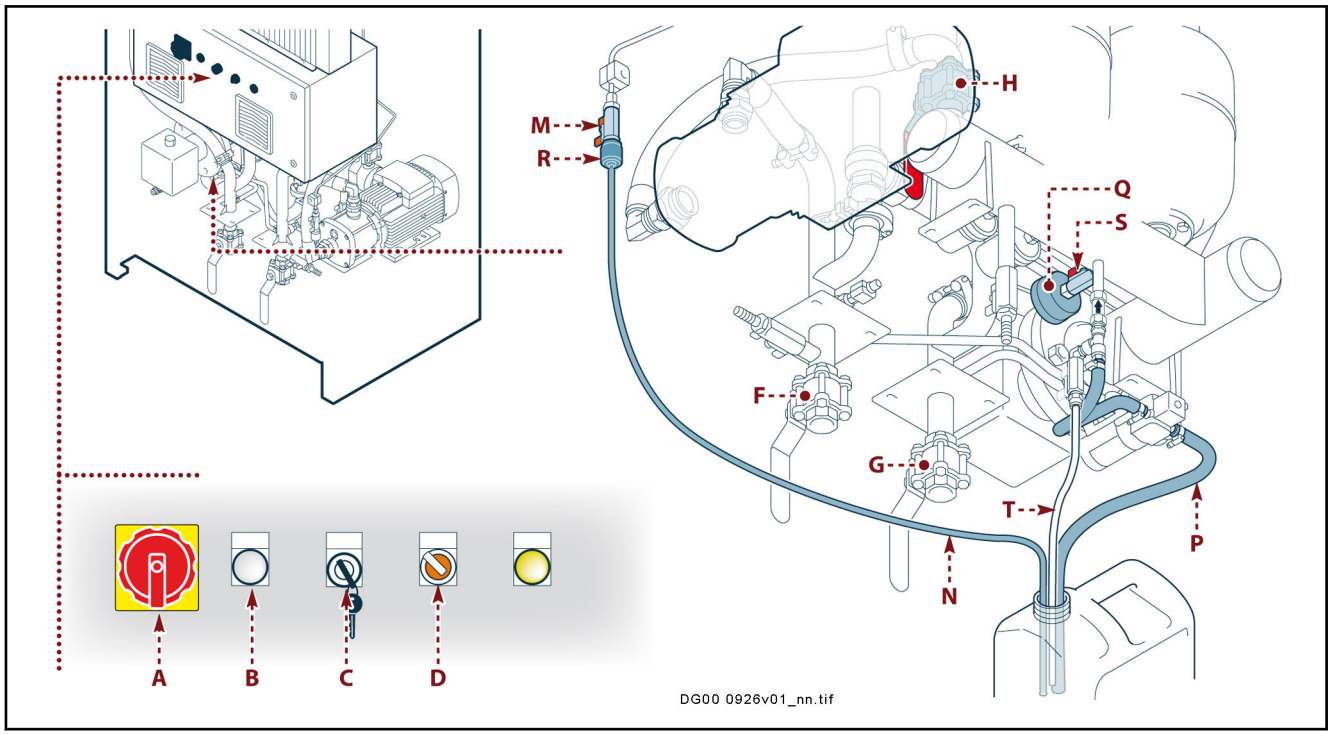


Fig. 8-155: Restoring the pressure

1. Fill a tank with an appropriate amount of fluid solution (see chapter "Data" on page 528).
2. Fit the pipes (**N - P - T**) into the tank.
3. Open the valve (**S**).
4. Turn the selector switch (**D**) to activate the filling pump. If the filling pump does not prime automatically, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 545).
5. Open the valve (**M**) and keep open until the fluid is running out of the clear tube (**N**) in a steady stream (no bubbles) and the pressure has reached 1.5 bar. The pressure gauge (**Q**) shows the pressure.

   If there is no liquid coming, clean the connector (**R**). See chapter "Cleaning the connector of the bleed valve" on page 550.
6. **NOTICE!** If the pressure exceeds 1.5 bar, turn off the filling pump and temporarily open the valve (**M**) until the correct pressure is reached.

   NOTICE! If the filling pump priming stops during the filling stage, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 545).

   Close the valve (**M**).
7. Turn the selector switch (**D**) to deactivate the filling pump.
8. Close the valve (**S**).
9. Remove the pipes from the tank.

10. Remove the key from the selector switch (**C**) and store in a safe place.

    NOTICE! Limit operation of the pressure gauge to the time necessary to perform the pressure reading. During operation, deactivate the pressure gauge to avoid damaging it.

Emptying the hydraulic circuit

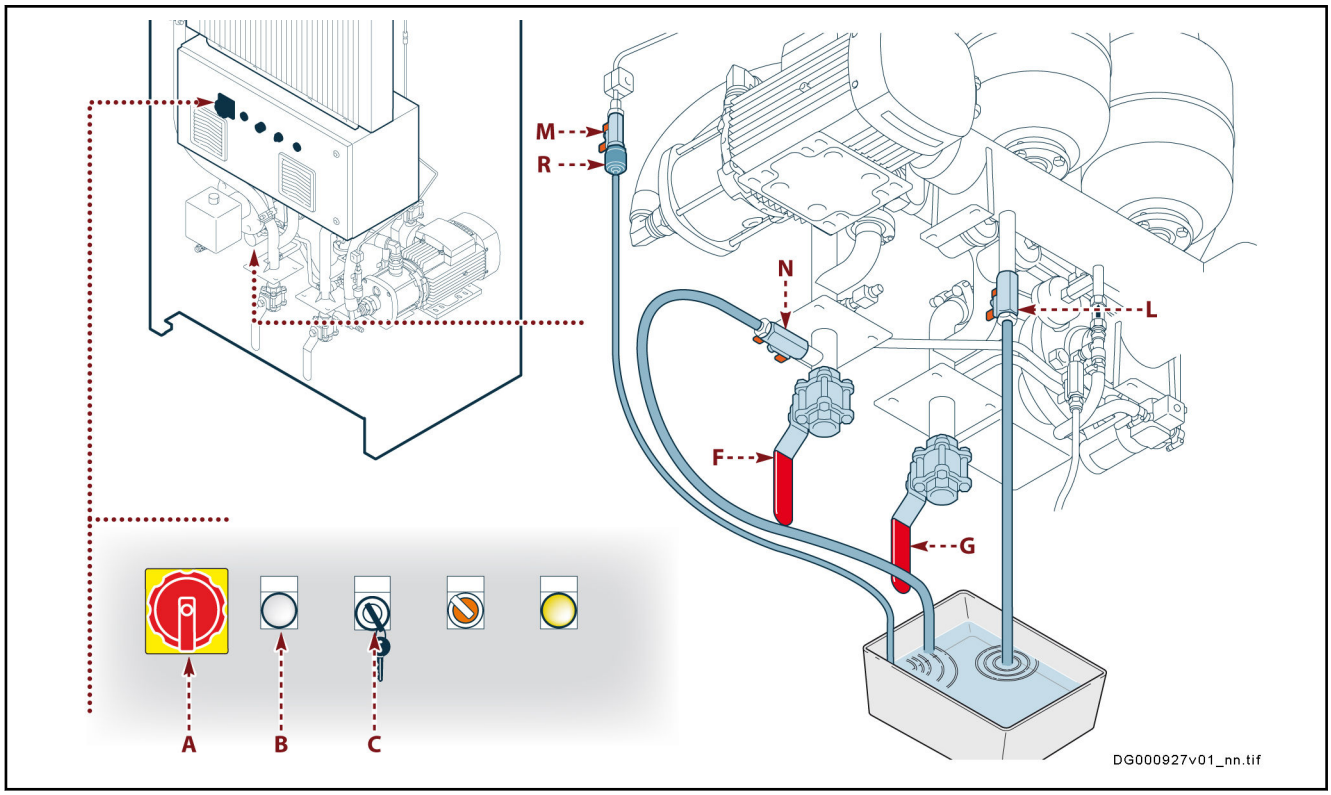


Fig. 8-156: Emptying the hydraulic circuit

1. Position a suitable container for collecting the coolant.
2. Switch off the machine (see chapter "Switching off" on page 542).
3. Turn the key selector (**C**) to the "OFF" position.
4. Turn the main switch (**A**) to the "OFF" position.
5. The indicator lamp (**B**) will switch off.
6. Close the ball valves (**F - G**).
7. Open the valve (**M**).

   If there is no liquid coming, clean the connector (**R**). See chapter "Cleaning the connector of the bleed valve" on page 550.
8. Open the valve (**L**).
9. Open the valve (**N**).
10. Drain out all the coolant.
11. Close the valve (**M**).
12. Close the valve (**L**).
13. Close the valve (**N**).

    NOTICE! Dispose of the coolant in an environmentally friendly manner in accordance with the applicable legal regulations.

Maintenance

Safety advice for maintenance

For personal safety reasons, before conducting maintenance interventions, check that all safety devices are activated and warn the people present in the workplace that such intervention is underway.

In particular, disconnect the power supply to the machine.
Ensure that the voltage cannot be switched on again unintentionally.
Allow the machine to cool down before any operation to prevent burns.

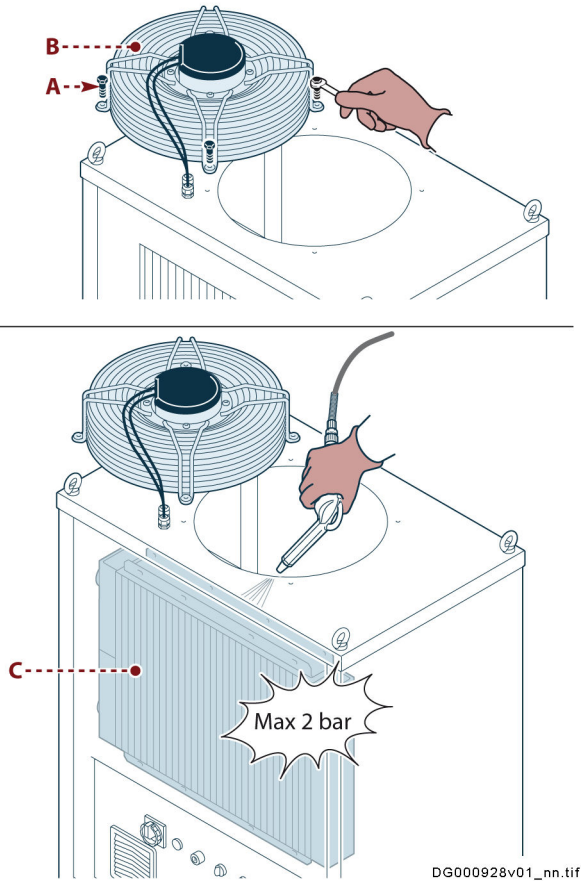
Maintenance schedule

Interval			Component	Type of work	Cross reference
Every 5000 operating hours	Every 30,000 operating hours	Every 10 years of operation	–	–	–
✓	–	–	Cooler - cooling channel	Cleaning	See chapter "Cleaning the cooler and cooling channel" on page 550
–	✓	–	Main pump	Replacement	See chapter "Replace the main pump" on page 555
–	✓	–	Cooling fan	Replacement	See chapter "Replacing the electric fan" on page 557
–	✓	–	Coolant	Replacement	See chapter "Exchanging the coolant" on page 560
–	–	✓	EPDM rubber hoses	Replacement	–

Tab. 8-228: Maintenance schedule

Cleaning the cooler and cooling channel

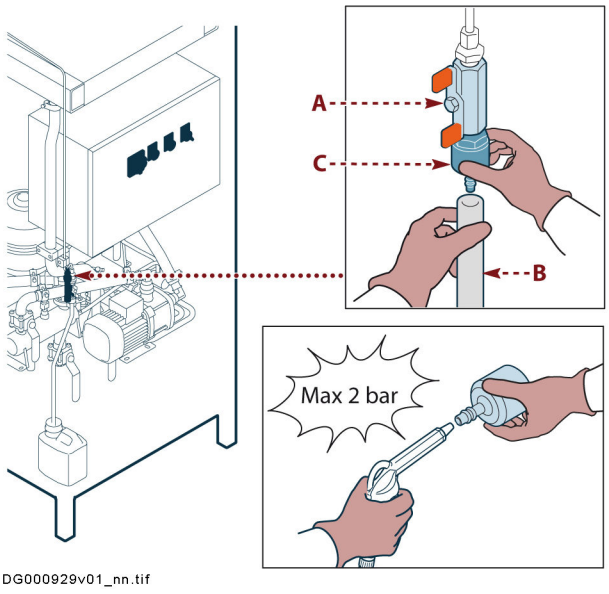
1	Disconnect the machine from the voltage source.
2	Unscrew the screws (**A**).
3	Move the fan (**B**) to the side.
4	Clean the inside of the cooler (**C**) with compressed air. Keep the pressure on the level indicated in the picture.
5	Position the fan (**B**).
6	Tighten the screws (**A**).



Tab. 8-229: Cleaning the cooler and the cooling channel

Cleaning the connector of the bleed valve

1	Close the bleed valve (**A**).
2	Remove the hose (**B**).
3	Unscrew the connector (**C**).
4	Clean the connector with compressed air. Keep the pressure on the level indicated in the picture.
5	Screw on the connector (**C**).
6	Attach the hose (**B**) to the connector.
7	Open the bleed valve (**A**).



Tab. 8-230: Cleaning the connector

Cleaning the machine

Clean the machine with detergents that are approved in accordance with the applicable legal regulations.

Troubleshooting

The following table contains a number of faults that may occur during operation as well as appropriate corrective measures.

Code	Type	Malfunction	Likely cause	Remedy
E2011	Warning 1	Low pressure, please refill	The system pressure is lower than 0.5 bar (loss of water, maintenance)	Refill cooling system up to 1.5 bar
E2012	Warning 2	Unable to start drive	Motor does not start in velocity control operation	Ensure that the system has the status "AF" before starting
E2013	Warning 3	Heater works	The heater switches on if the temperature of the liquid falls below 0°C.	Check operating temperature Check signal of the temperature sensor
E2014	Warning 4	Overtemperature	Temperature exceeds the defined value (P-0-1316) of the maximum permissible deviation from required temperature (t_{set}) for a defined duration (P-0-1317)	Check cooling system Clean cooling system, if necessary Reduce the level of the heat to be dissipated. If required, change the settings in the parameters P-0-1316 and/or P-0-1317
E2015	Warning 5	Fan	Fan signals error	Check fan and feedback signal
E2016	Warning 6	Lower motor speed limitation active	Motor velocity of the pressure control < 360 min^{-1}	Increase the value of parameter P-0-1374 (> 360 min^{-1}) Ensure that the motor can run with a velocity > 360 min^{-1}
F2011	Error 1	System pressure	System pressure lower than 0.2 bar	Refill cooling system up to 1.5 bar
F2012	Error 2	Overtemperature	The fluid temperature (on the drive side) has exceeded the maximum allowed temperature limit (see parameter P-0-1318)	If required, change the value of parameter P-0-1318 Clean fan Reduce the quantity of heat to be emitted
		Temperature of the heater is too high (yellow signal lamp lights up)	Thermostat of the heater is triggered	Check signal of the temperature sensor
		Heater does not heat	Thermostat of the heater was triggered in order to enable operation without liquid	Check the pressure of the cooling circuit and restore, if applicable
F2013	Error 3	Fan	Defective fan Fuses defective	Replace fan Replace fuses
		Slight leakage of cooling liquid between pump and motor	Start after long inactivity of the machine Changing the ambient conditions	Start pump [1)]

Code	Type	Malfunction	Likely cause	Remedy
		The filling pump does not start priming automatically	Suction hose empty following long period of machine disuse No coolant in the tank High backpressure in the filling pump delivery line	Perform the filling pump priming procedure
		The filling pump does not inject the coolant into the circuit	The filling pump is not primed The filling pump bleed valve is open	Perform the filling pump priming procedure Close the filling pump bleed valve

1) The pump is mechanically sealed by the cooling liquid. This type of seal (mechanical) may lead to a slight leakage of cooling liquid under certain conditions. It takes some time to minimize the leakage if the pump is started after stopping the machine or after being inactive. The required time depends on the operating conditions. The leaked cooling liquid usually evaporates immediately. The leaked cooling liquid is not visible then. **This type of leakage is not a malfunction.** Contact the service if the leakage persists for a longer period of time.

Tab. 8-231: Errors and warnings

Replacing the component

Safety advice for component exchange

For personal safety reasons, before conducting maintenance interventions, check that all safety devices are activated and warn the people present in the workplace that such intervention is underway.

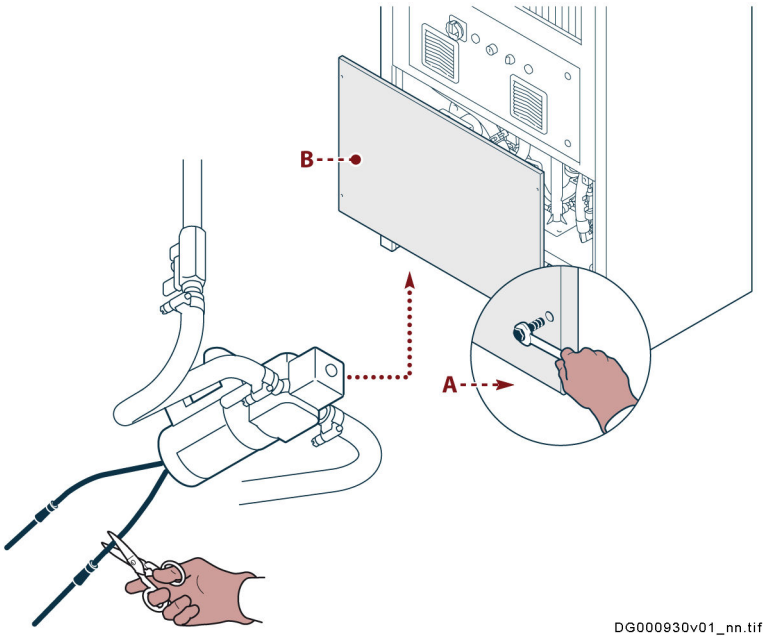
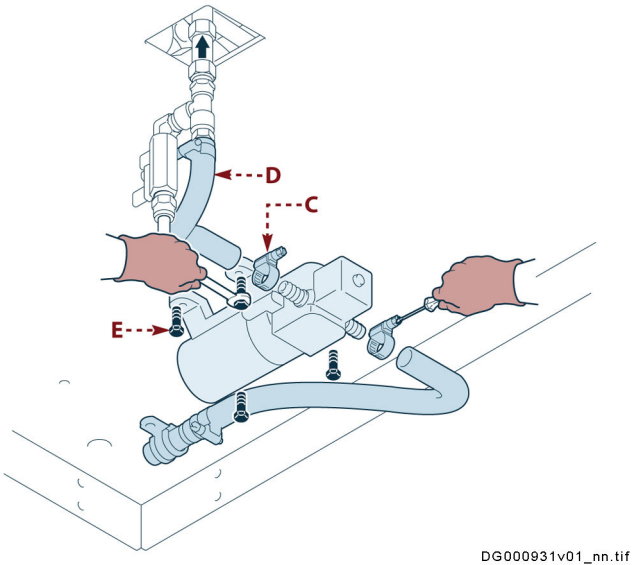
In particular, disconnect the power supply to the machine.

Ensure that the voltage cannot be switched on again unintentionally.

Allow the machine to cool down before any operation to prevent burns.

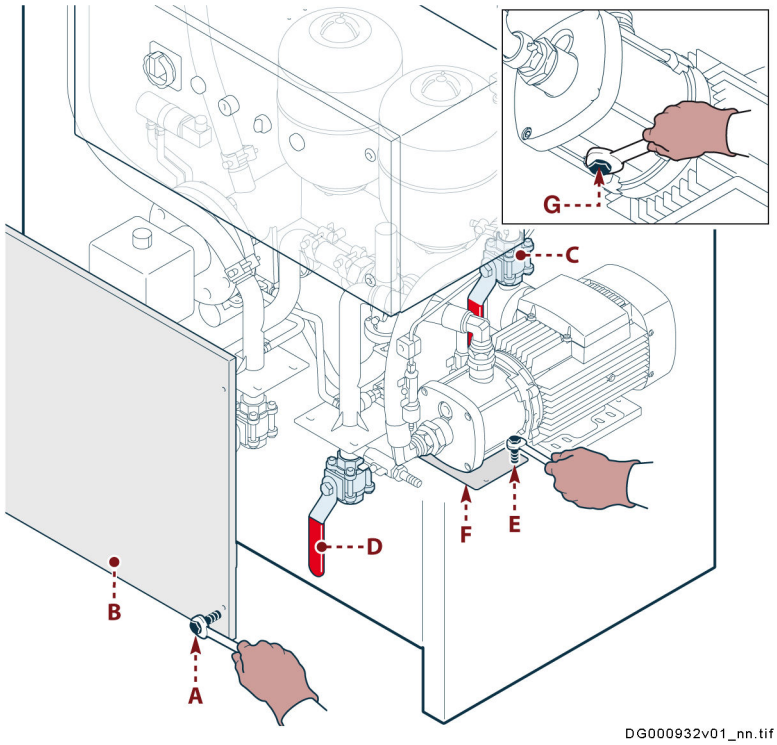
Replace worn or damaged parts by original spare parts.

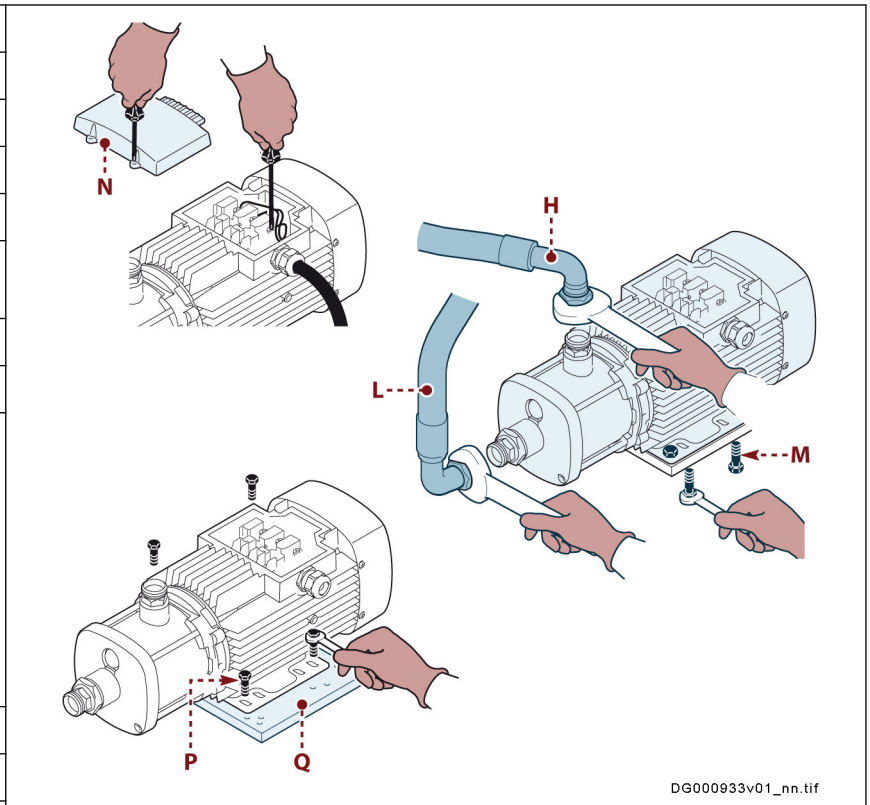
Replacing the filling pump

1	Disconnect the machine from the power supply source.	
2	Unscrew the screws (**A**).	
3	Remove the fixed guard (**B**).	
4	Cut the mains cables.	
5	Undo the screw and remove the strap (**C**).	
6	Extract the hose (**D**).	
7	Repeat the same operations to remove the other hose.	
8	Unscrew the screws (**E**).	
9	Remove the pump.	
10	Install the new pump. In order to install the new pump, proceed in reverse order to the removal of the pump.	

Tab. 8-232: Replacement of the filling pump

Replace the main pump

1	Disconnect the machine from the power supply source.	
2	Allow the machine to cool down.	
3	Unscrew the screws (**A**).	
4	Remove the fixed guard (**B**).	
5	Empty the hydraulic circuit of the machine (see chapter "Emptying the hydraulic circuit" on page 548).	
6	Close the valve (**C**).	
7	Close the valve (**D**).	
8	Unscrew the screw (**E**).	
9	Remove the fixed guard (**F**).	
10	Unscrew the lid (**G**). Discharge the entire cooling liquid.	

11	Disconnect the hosing (**H**).	
12	Disconnect the hosing (**L**).	
13	Unscrew the screws (**M**).	
14	Remove the pump.	
15	Remove the cover (**N**).	
16	Disconnect the cables from the terminals.	
17	Unscrew the screws (**P**).	
18	Remove the plate (**Q**).	
19	Install the new pump. In order to install the new pump, proceed in reverse order to the removal of the pump. **NOTICE!** The spare pump is supplied with the fittings mounted. Do not remove the fittings as this could cause liquid leakage.	
20	Open the valve (**C**).	
21	Open the valve (**D**).	
22	Fill the cooling circuit. See chapter "Filling the hydraulic circuit" on page 543.	

Tab. 8-233: Replacement of the main pump

Replacing the electric fan

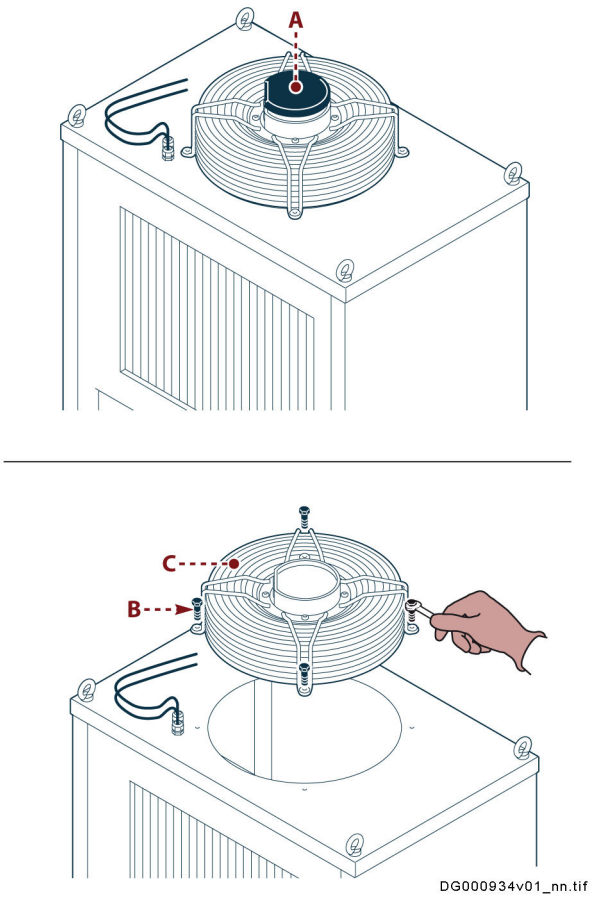
⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

Due to the use of capacitors and even after the machine's power supply has been disconnected, there is a serious risk of electric shock by contact with live parts.

Before removing the cover, always wait several minutes after disconnecting the electricity to the machine.

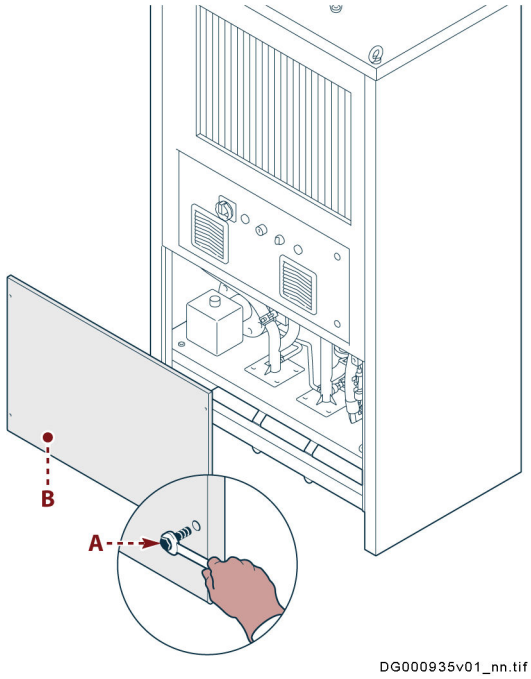
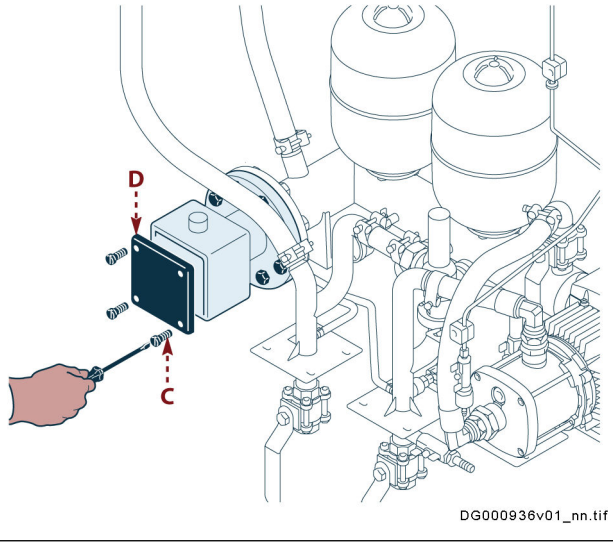
Make sure voltage has fallen below 50 V before touching live parts!

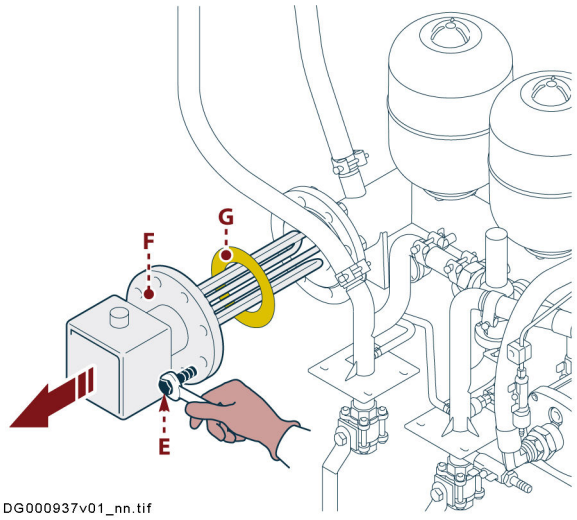
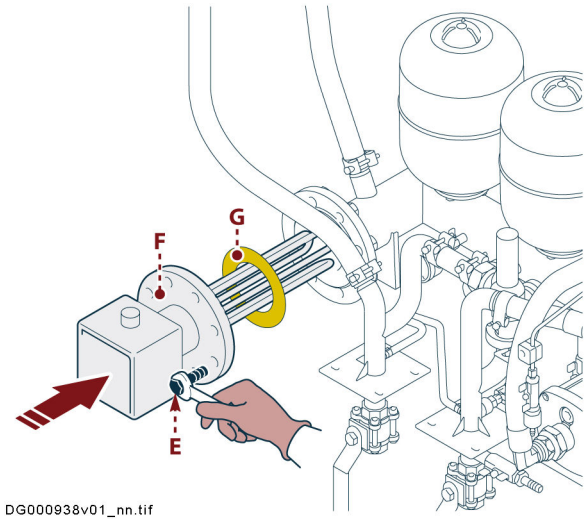
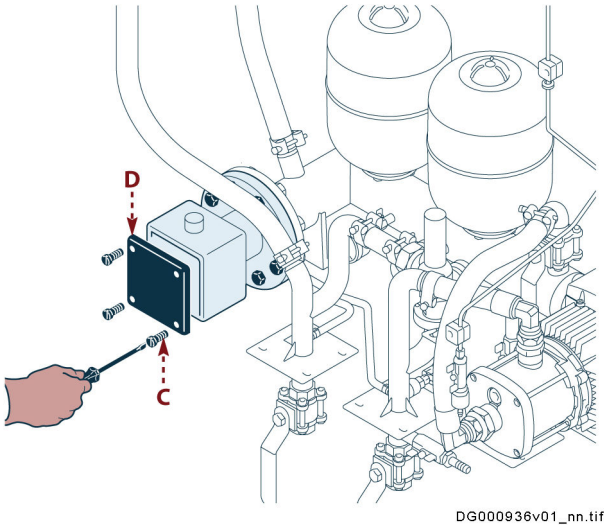
1	Disconnect the machine from the power supply source.
2	Remove the cover (**A**).
3	Disconnect the cables from the terminals.
4	Unscrew the screws (**B**).
5	Remove the electric fan (**C**).
6	Insert the electric replacement fan.
7	Tighten the screws (**B**).
8	Connect the lines (using the wiring diagram).
9	Reattach the cover (**A**).

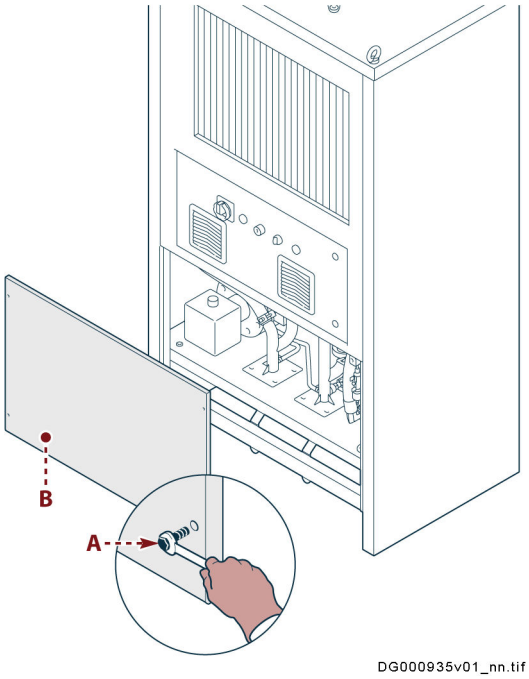


Tab. 8-234: Replacement of the electric fan

Replacing the heater

1	Disconnect the machine from the power supply source.	
2	Allow the machine to cool down.	
3	Empty the hydraulic circuit (see chapter "Emptying the hydraulic circuit" on page 548).	
4	Unscrew the screws (**A**).	
5	Remove the guard (**B**).	
6	Unscrew the screws (**C**).	
7	Remove the guard (**D**).	
8	Disconnect the cables from the terminals.	

9	Unscrew the screws (**E**).	
10	Remove the heater (**F**).	
11	Remove the gasket (**G**). **When replacing the heater, also exchange the gasket.**	
12	Position the new heater without damaging the gasket (**G**).	
13	Tighten the screws (**E**).	
14	Remove the cover of the new heater.	
15	Connect the cables (see wiring diagram).	
16	Tighten the screws (**C**).	

17	Place the guard (**B**).	
18	Tighten the screws (**A**).	

Tab. 8-235: Replacing the heater

Replacing the fuses

Before replacing the fuse, fix the cause of the malfunction.

Only replace the interrupted fuse with a fuse with the same characteristics.

For the characteristics of the fuses see chapter "Description of the fuses" on page 531.

Exchanging the coolant

Empty the hydraulic circuit of the machine (see chapter "Emptying the hydraulic circuit" on page 548).

Fill the hydraulic circuit (see chapter "Filling the hydraulic circuit" on page 543).

Disposing of old equipment

Scrapping operations must be handled by specialized personnel with suitable skills for the job.

In accordance with the applicable regulations, all individual components must be collected separately for disposal according to their chemical properties when dismantling the machine.

With reference to the European Directive (RAEE), electric and electronic components must either be disposed of in authorized landfill sites or the machine, complete of the said parts, must be returned to the dealer in case of a new purchase.

The owner is responsible for delivering the machine, at the end of its working life, to the appropriate collection structures. Failure to comply shall lead to penalties foreseen by the regulations in force.

Control using MLD

Pressure control

The differential pressure between the machine's intake and its outlet has to be kept at a constant rate (1.5 bar, for example) so that the flow to the devices to be cooled can be easily set.

To control the pressure, the pump speed is varied based on the intake/outlet differential pressure.

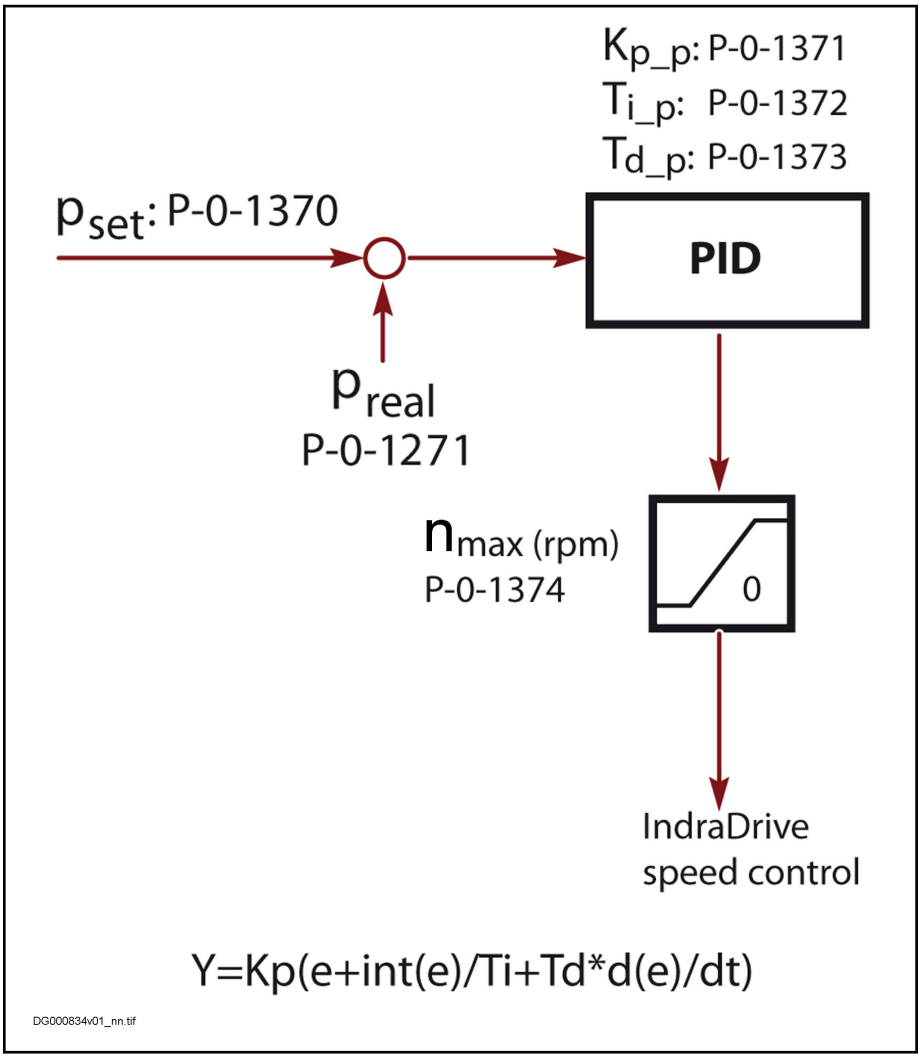


Fig. 8-157: Pressure control

Name	Parameter	Unit
p_{set}	P-0-1370	bar
K_{p_p}	P-0-1371	min^{-1} /bar
T_{i_p}	P-0-1372	s
T_{d_p}	P-0-1373	s

Name	Parameter	Unit
n_{max}	P-0-1374	min^{-1}
p_{real} (*)	P-0-1271	bar

* Read-only

Tab. 8-236: Pressure control parameters

Temperature control

When selecting the coolant temperature in the drive circuit, the climatic conditions of the system must be taken into account to prevent condensation on the equipment being cooled.

The temperature of the fluid is controlled by a variable speed electric fan which cools the fluid flowing through the heat exchanger.

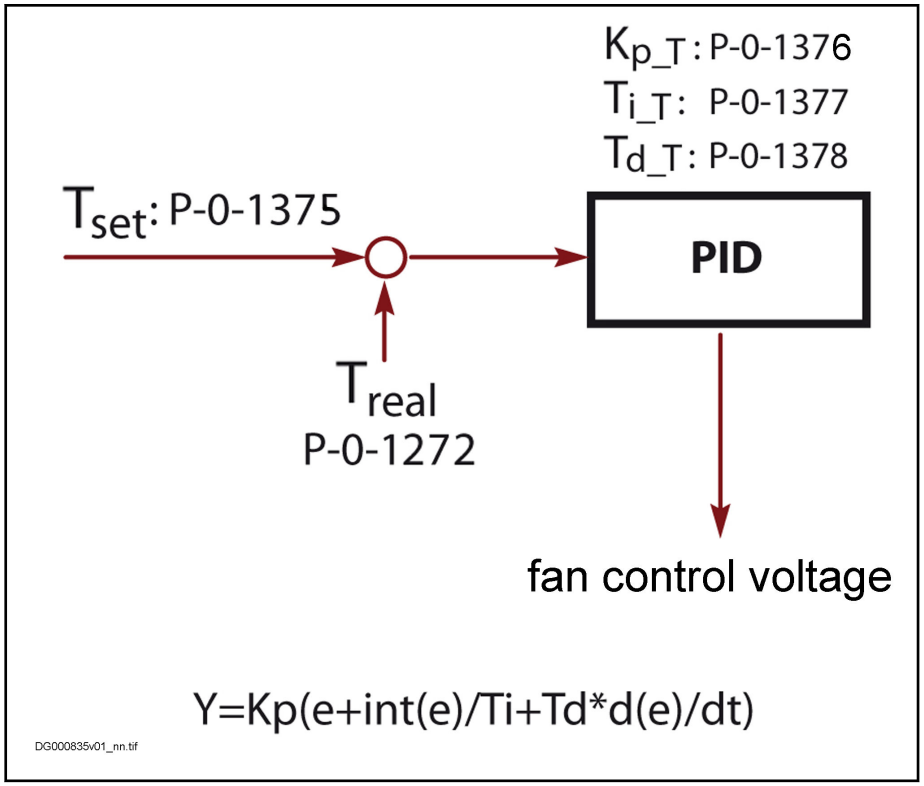


Fig. 8-158: Temperature control

Name	Parameter	Unit
T_{set}	P-0-1375	°C
K_{p_T}	P-0-1376	V / °C
T_{i_T}	P-0-1377	s
T_{d_T}	P-0-1378	s
T_{real} (*)	P-0-1272	°C
T_{real} (*)	P-0-1273	°F

* Read-only

Tab. 8-237: Temperature control parameters

Starting the machine

The machine is started (as per the predefined setting) solely with the digital command:

ENABLE (X31.1, P-0-1390)

You can set the type of machine enabling (starting via digital input or starting via the communication).

Start	Parameters	Input
Start selection 1	P-0-1380	digital
Start selection 2	P-0-1381	digital
Start command via communication	P-0-1382	digital

Tab. 8-238: Start options

The parameters **P-0-1380 and P-0-1381** can be set to "0" or "1".

If both parameters are set to the **same value** (0 or 1), the machine can be started via the digital input with **P-0-1390** (0 = off, 1 = on).

If both parameters are set to **different values**, the machine can be started via the communication with **P-0-1382** (0 = off, 1 = on).

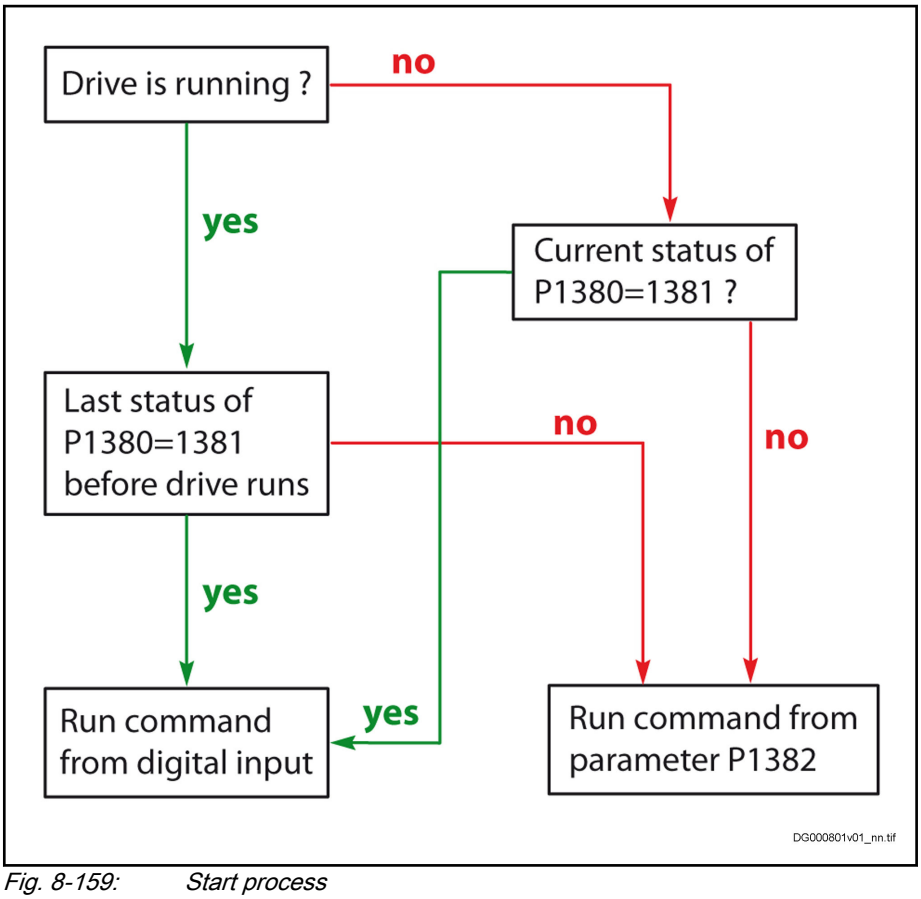


Fig. 8-159: Start process

Example: By setting the parameter P-0-1380 as a digital input and monitoring the parameters P-0-1381 and P-0-1382 via the PLC, the power-up command

for the machine can be transmitted either via the digital input or the PLC, from two different workstations.

Parameters

Hardware designation on the electronic type plate

Name	Parameters	012-020	020-090	022-090	035-090
Application type	S-0-1302.0.3	HAH02.1-WA012	HAH02.1-WA020	HAH02.1-WA022	HAH02.1-WA035

Tab. 8-239: Hardware designation on the electronic type plate (from software version ≥ 03V07)

Name	Parameter	Unit	Minimum value	Maximum value	012-020	020-090	022-090	035-090
$_{pset}$ (pressure command value)	P-0-1370	bar	0	2.0	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
$_{Kp}$ (pressure control)	P-0-1371	min^{-1} /bar	0	10000	40	40	40	40
T_i (pressure control)	P-0-1372	s	0.0	1000.0	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05
T_d (pressure control)	P-0-1373	s	0.0	1000.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
n_{max}	P-0-1374	min^{-1}	0	8000	3000	3000	3000	3000
Target temperature value	P-0-1375	°C	0	60	60	60	60	60
$_{Kp}$ (temperature control)	P-0-1376	V / °C	-1000.0	0.0	-0.5	-0.5	-0.5	-5.0
T_i (temperature control)	P-0-1377	s	0	10000	10	10	10	40
T_d (temperature control)	P-0-1378	s	0.0	1000.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Start selection 1	P-0-1380	-	0	1	0	0	0	0
Start selection 2	P-0-1381	-	0	1	0	0	0	0
Start command via communication	P-0-1382	-	0	1	0	0	0	0
p_{set_2} (pressure command value 2)	P-0-1385	bar	0.0	2.0	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2
Control word switching to p_{set_2}	P-0-1295	bit	-	-	0	0	0	0
High temperature warning differential value	P-0-1316	°C	0	20	10	10	10	10
High temperature warning time	P-0-1317	s	0	100	3	3	3	3
Overtemperature limit value	P-0-1318	°C	40	100	90	90	90	90
Control cabinet fan switch-on temperature	P-0-1319	°C	0	70	50	50	50	50
Tolerance in pressure control	P-0-1320	bar	0.0	10.0	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5
Low engine speed - Deceleration	P-0-1321	s	0	100	5	5	5	5

Tab. 8-240: Parameters

Name	Parameter	Unit	Type *	Scaling
Analog I/O monitoring parameters (read-only) with analog Hall sensors				
Fan control voltage	P-0-1270	V	AO	0-10 V, 0-100%
Pump differential pressure	P-0-1271	bar	-	-
Coolant temperature	P-0-1272	°C	-	-
Coolant temperature	P-0-1273	°F	-	-
Pressure sensor	P-0-1280	V	AI	0-10 V, 0-6 bar
Temperature sensor	P-0-1281	V	AI	0-10 V, -50-100 °C
Digital I/O parameters				
Drive enable	P-0-1390	bit 0	DI	
>, 0.5 bar pressure monitoring	P-0-1391	bit 0	DI	
>, 0.2 bar pressure monitoring	P-0-1391	bit 1	DI	
Fan monitoring	P-0-1391	bit 2	DI	TRUE for “Fan OK”
Status word machine	P-0-1410			
Cooler is running	P-0-1410	bit 0		Start command + P-0-1410.4 + no warning + no error
Command pressure value reached	P-0-1410	bit 1		abs(P-0-1370 - P-0-1271) < P-0-1320
The radiator is running (ignores warning)	P-0-1410	bit 3		Start command + P-0-1410.4 + no error
Motor running	P-0-1410	bit 4		Motor velocity (S40) ≥ 360
Drive warning	P-0-1412	bit 0	DO	"high" for no warning
Drive error	P-0-1412	bit 1	DO	"high" for no error
Heater enable	P-0-1412	bit 2	DO	
Fan approval	P-0-1412	bit 3	DO	
Housing fan enable	P-0-1412	bit 4	DO	

* AI: analog input; AO: analog output; DI: digital input; DO: digital output

Tab. 8-241: Parameters

Switching the pressure command value

The pressure command value can be switched via control word (P-0-1295.0). This function can be used for a more economical operation (lower energy consumption, less wear) if the new pressure command value is set to a lower value.

Pressure command value (p_{set})	P-0-1370
Pressure command value 2 (p_{set_2})	P-0-1385
Control word	P-0-1295.0
P-0-1295.0 = 0	Pressure command value: P-0-1370
P-0-1295.0 = 1	Pressure command value: P-0-1385

Tab. 8-242: Switching the pressure command value

With a pressure command value of 0.2 bar instead of 1.5 bar, laboratory measurements showed energy savings of 92% (40 W instead of 500 W). The motor speed decreased from 2200 min^{-1} to 760 min^{-1} resulting in a longer service life of the motor.

Cabinet fan control

The cabinet fan control applies only to units with cabinet heating (HAH02.**1-WAxxx-xxx-xx-xx-2**)

The cabinet fan will be turned on if the cabinet temperature (S-0-0384) is higher than the value in P-0-1319.

The cabinet fan will be turned off if the cabinet temperature (S-0-0384) is 5 °C/°F lower than value in P-0-1319.

Air-water heat exchanger (WA035-090)

Technical information

General description of the machine

The machine is designed and manufactured for the purpose of cooling devices or equipment using a liquid solution made of glycol and demineralized water.

The underlying principle of this cooling method is the transfer of heat between air and water via a heat exchanger.

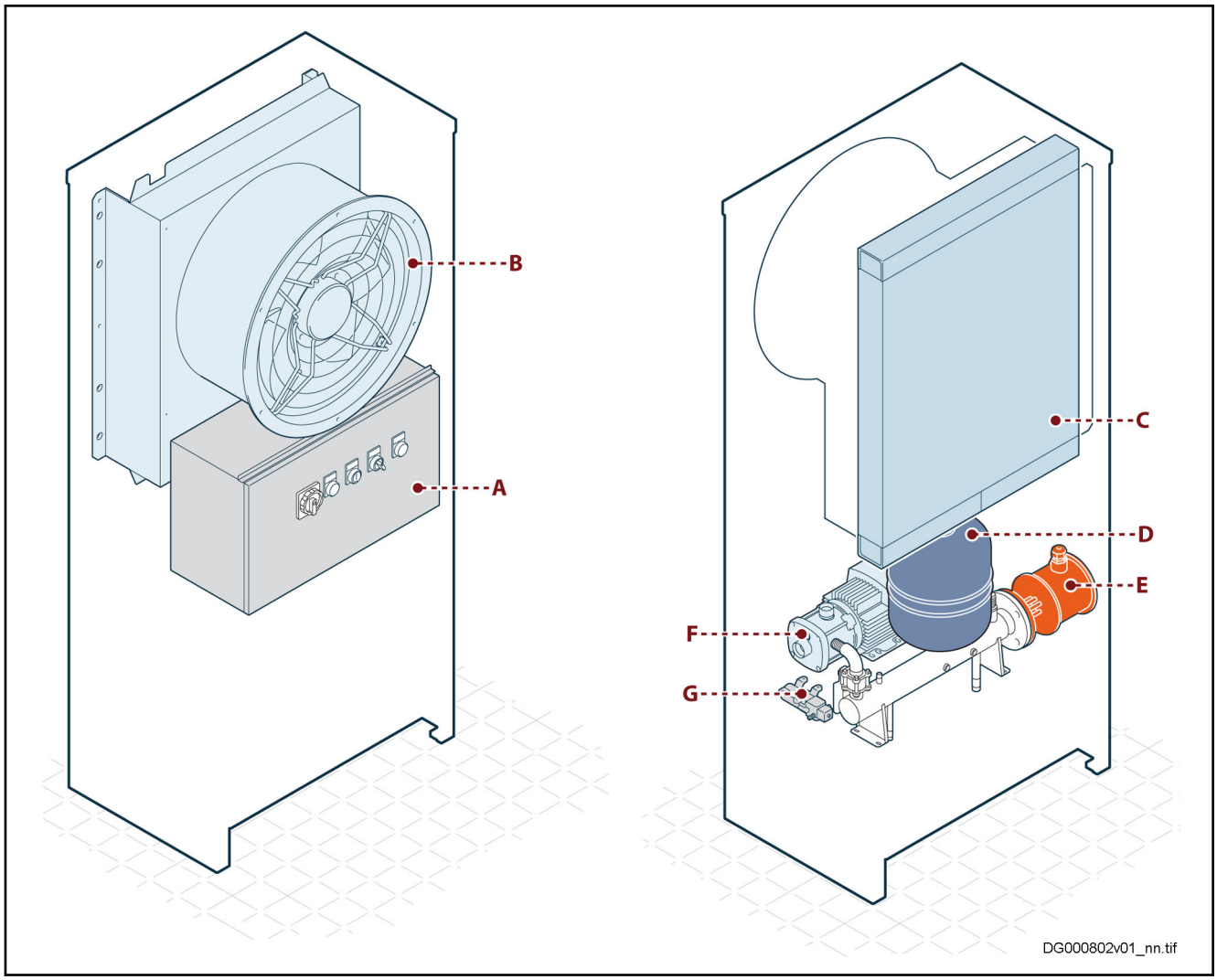
A pump in the radiator circulates the fluid, and the air current generated by an electric fan cools the fluid.

The machine can be equipped with an optional heater to raise the temperature of the incoming fluid.

Pressure and temperature are controlled via IndraMotion MLD, the drive-integrated Motion Logic Control system compliant with IEC 61131-3. See chapter "Control using MLD" on page 514.

See also chapter "Liquid cooling" on page 53.

Main components

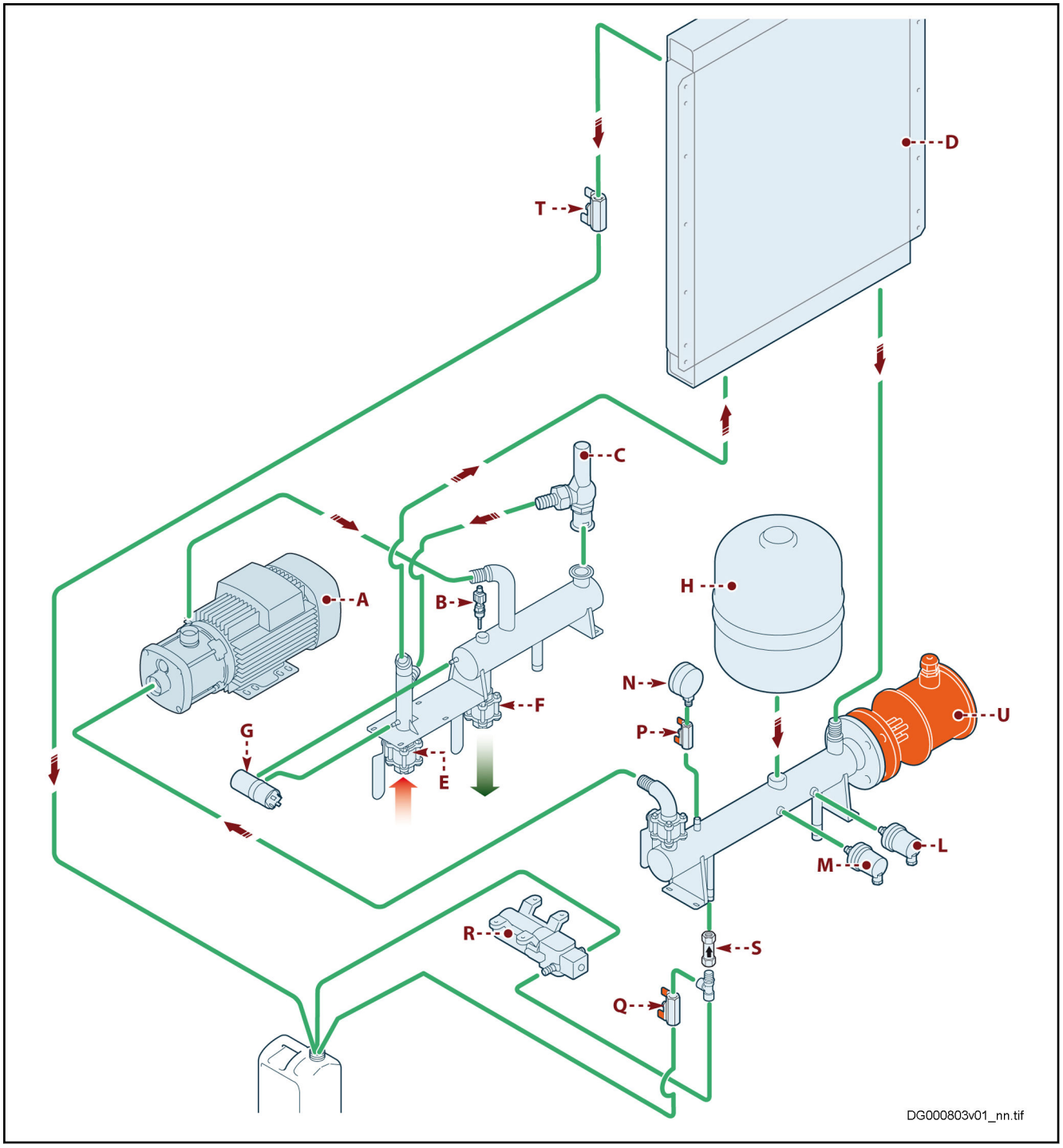


A	Terminal box
B	Electric fan
C	Heat exchanger
D	Expansion tank
E	Heater
F	Main pump
G	Filling pump

Fig. 8-160: Main components

Operating cycle and component description

The following figure illustrates the operating principle.



A	**Main pump:** Circulates the coolant through the hydraulic circuit.
B	**Temperature sensor:** Measures the coolant temperature in the outlet pipe.
C	**Bypass valve:** It limits the pressure of the output liquid.
D	**Heat exchanger:** Reduces the temperature of the coolant.
E	**Ball valve:** It opens and closes the flow of the coolant from the owner's system.
F	**Ball valve:** It opens and closes the flow of the coolant towards the owner's system.
G	**Pressure sensor:** This detects, in real time, the differential pressure between the intake pipe and the outlet pipe.

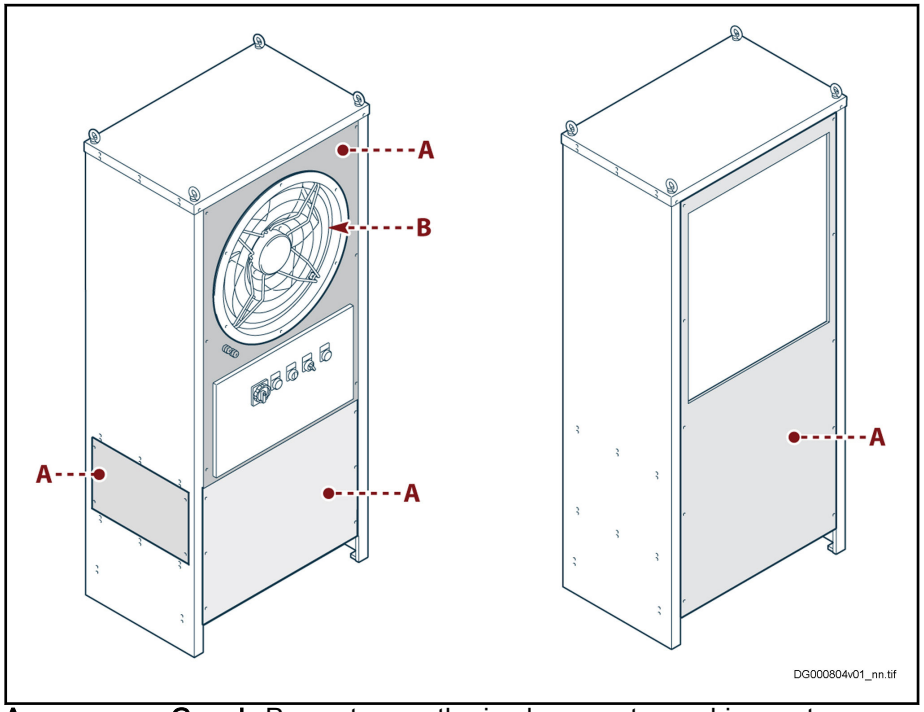
H	**Expansion tank:** Ensures consistent pressure in the circuit.
L	**Pressure switch (0.2 bar):** This detects the pressure level in the intake manifold.
M	**Pressure switch (0.5 bar):** This detects the pressure level in the intake manifold.
N	**Pressure gauge:** Measures the fluid pressure in the intake manifold.
P	**Valve:** Regulates the flow to the pressure gauge (**N**).
Q	**Valve:** This is used to release any backpressure in the filling pump delivery line and facilitate priming.
R	**Filling pump:** Fills the cooling circuit.
S	**Check valve:** It prevents the liquid from flowing into the filling pump when it is being primed or is deactivated.
T	**Valve:** Air release valve
U	**Heater (optional):** Heats the fluid if the heat exchanger is operated at ambient temperatures below 0 °C.

Fig. 8-161: Operating cycle and component description

Guards

⚠ WARNING **Risk of injury!**

Always use the machine with the safety guards in place.

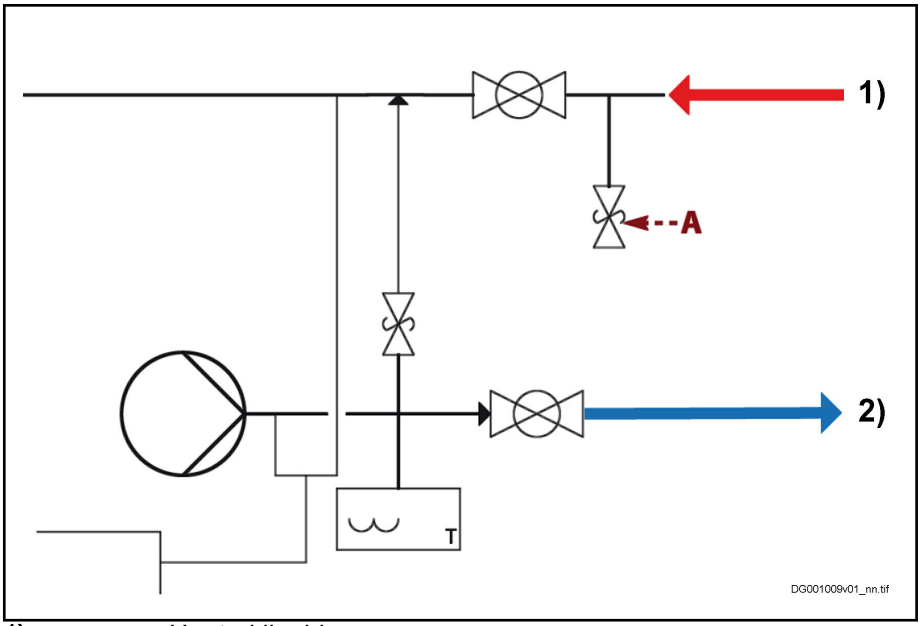


A **Guards** Prevents unauthorized access to machine parts.
B **Guards:** Prevents accidental contact with the fan.

Fig. 8-162: Guards

Overpressure devices

If additional pumps (external to the machine) are installed on the circuit or if the drop in pressure of the hydraulic load is less than 1.5 bar, the owner has to fit a pressure limiting valve. The valve has to limit the pressure to a maximum of 2 bar in the return pipe to the machine.



1) Heated liquid
2) Cooled liquid
A Pressure limiting valve

Fig. 8-163: Positioning of the pressure limiting valve (A)

Overall dimensions

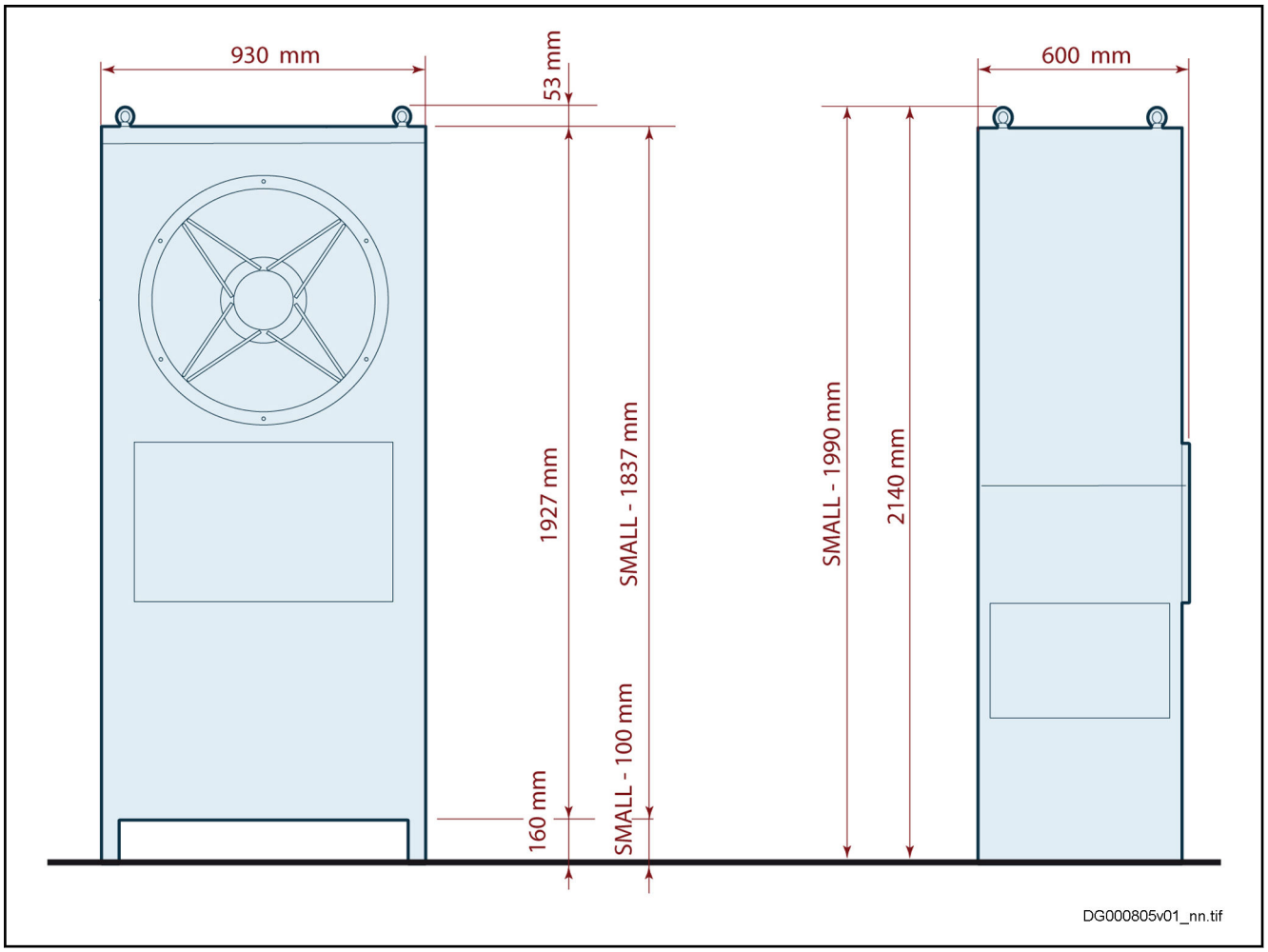


Fig. 8-164: Overall dimensions

Data

Technical data - Machine

Designation	Unit	Normal stress		Increased voltage	
		with heating	without heating	with heating	without heating
Power voltage	Vac	380 (-15%) 480 (+10%)	380 (-15%) 480 (+10%)	380 (-15%) 500 (+10%)	380 (-15%) 500 (+10%)
Frequency	Hz	50/60	50/60	50/60	50/60
Current	A	11	6.5	11	6.5
Maximum cooling capacity	kW	35	35	35	35
Maximum output flow rate	l/min	90	90	90	90
Maximum pressure of the incoming coolant	bar	2	2	2	2
Maximum pressure of the leaking coolant	bar	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5
Maximum coolant temperature	°C	70 [1)]	70 [1)]	70 [1)]	70 [1)]
Minimum coolant temperature	°C	-20	5	-20	5
Drive circuit coolant (monoethyl glycol and demineralized water solution) See also chapter "Liquid cooling" on page 53.	-	50% glycol	20% glycol	50% glycol	20% glycol
Estimated amount of coolant (heat exchanger only)	l	approx. 50	approx. 50	approx. 50	approx. 50
Degree of protection	IP	54	54	54	54
Ambient temperature	°C	-20 … +45	+5 … +45	-20 … +45	+5 … +45
Relative humidity without condensation	%	95	95	95	95
Maximum installation altitude	m	2000	2000	2000	2000
Weight (heat exchanger)	kg	350	350	350	350
Weight (heat exchanger + packaging)	kg	440	440	440	440

1) comply with the maximum permissible temperature of the coolant used

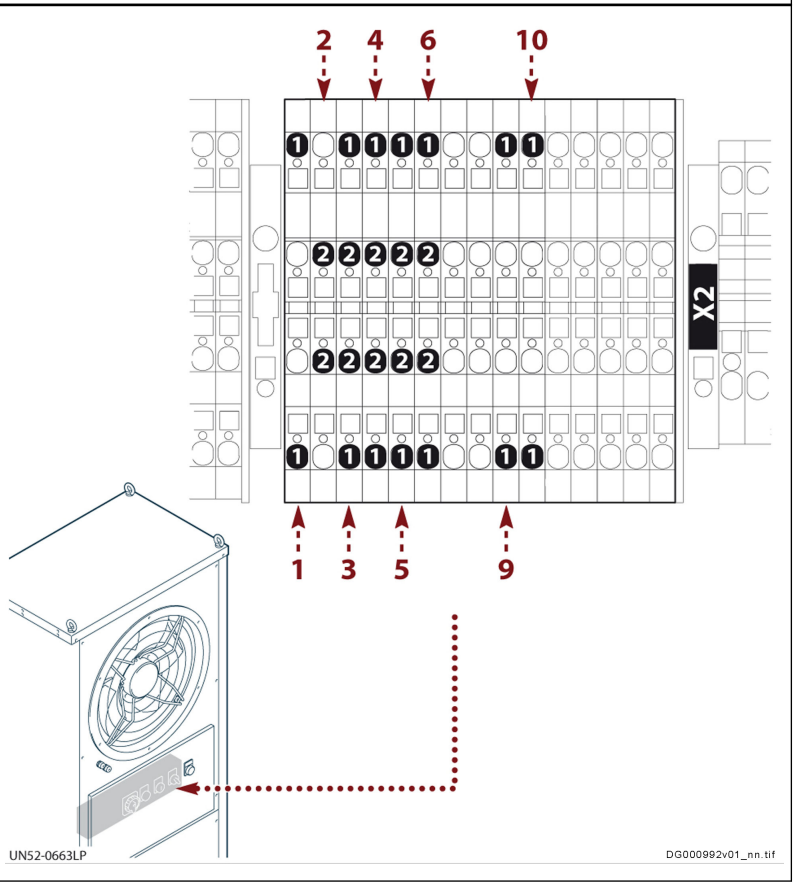
Tab. 8-243: Technical data - machine

ENABLE, UNIT ERROR and UNIT WARNING connections

The signals used to enable the relative machine status via the operator's control terminal are transmitted via the terminal block shown in the figure.

Connect the lines to the terminals shown in the "terminal connections" table.

Terminal box X2

Pos.	Significance	Terminals
9.1 - 2.2	Terminals for machine enable via the operator's control terminal (ENABLE)	
3.1 - 3.2 4.1 - 4.2	Machine error signal terminals Closed contact: no error	
5.1 - 5.2 6.1 - 6.2	Warning signal terminals Closed contact: no warning	
10.1 - 1.1	Terminals for remote alarm reset.	

Tab. 8-244: Connection terminals (terminal box X2)

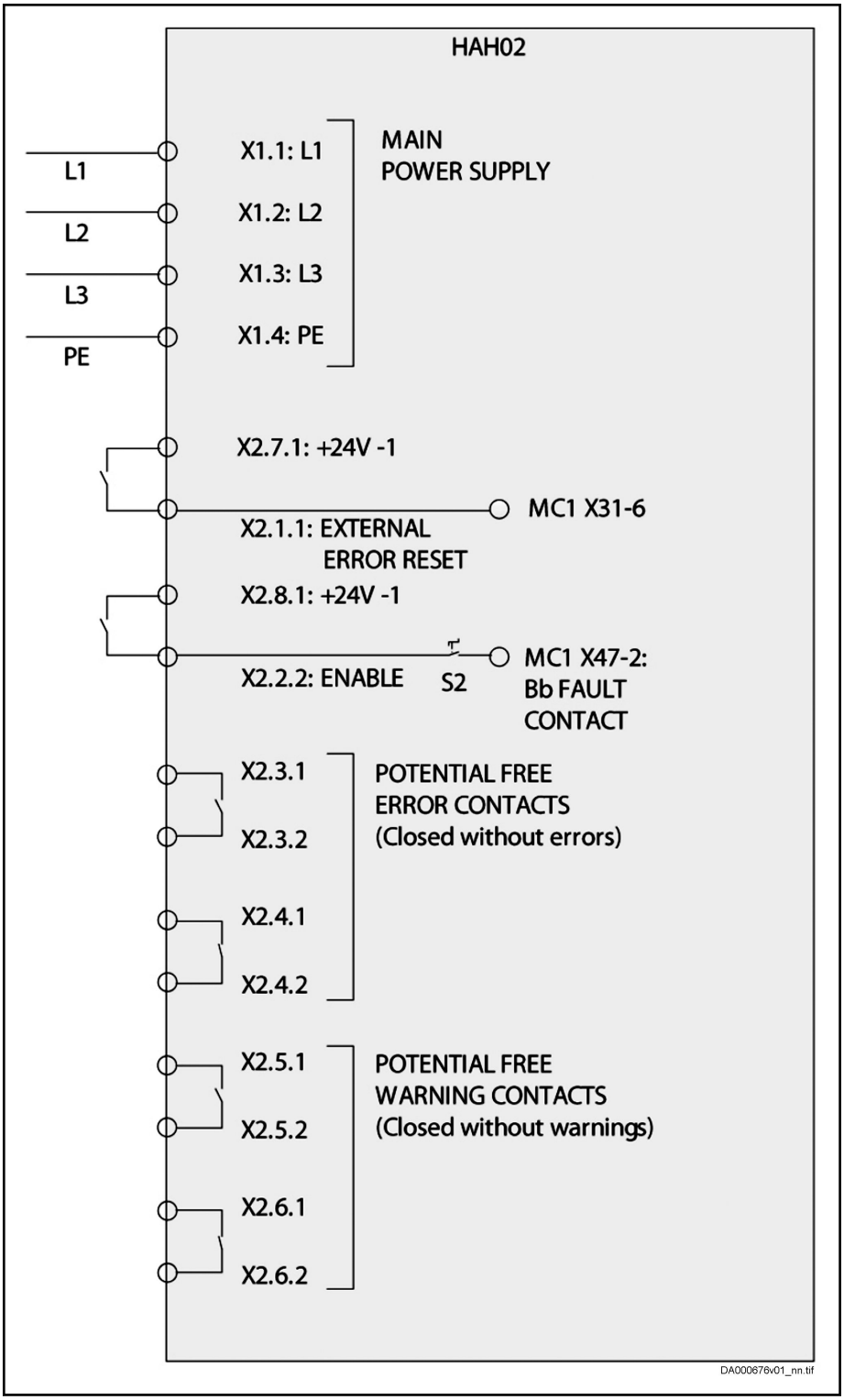
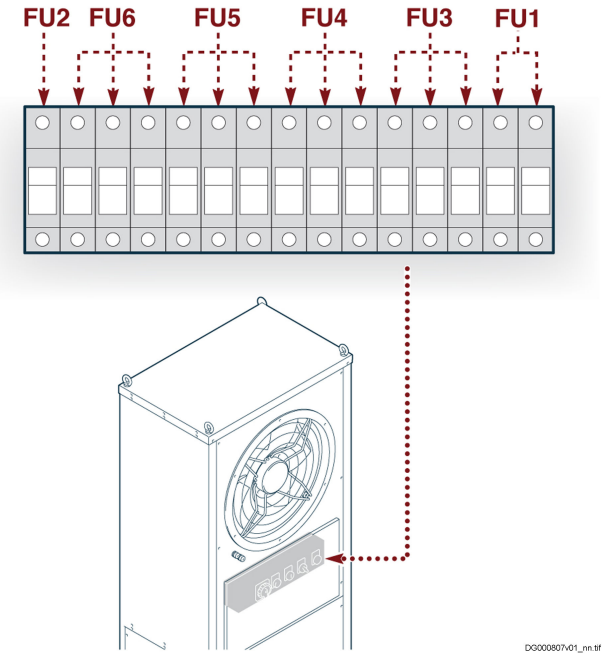


Fig. 8-165: Circuit diagram

Description of the fuses

Name	Current (A)	Type	Rated voltage (Vac)	Inter-ruption capacity (kW)	Fuse	Position
FU1	1	CC	600	200	Delayed	
FU2	4					
FU3	6					
FU4*	4					
FU5	4					
FU6**	6					

* For 500-V devices only
** For the OUTDOOR version only

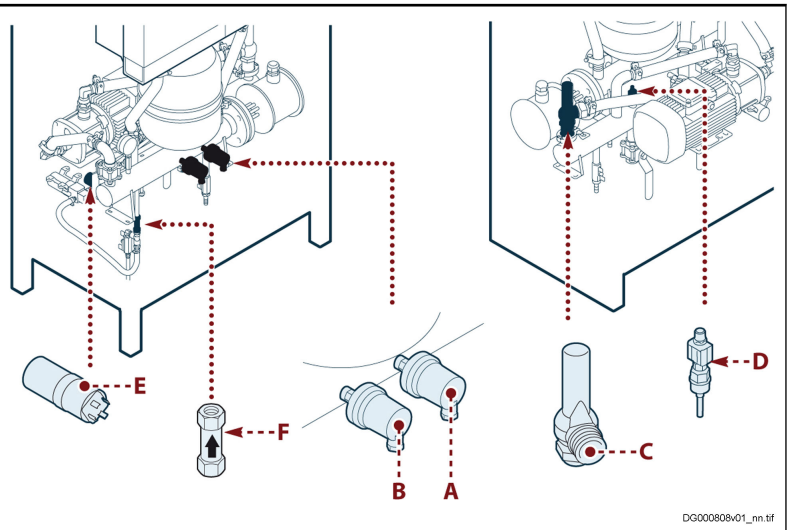
Tab. 8-245: Fuses

Operating and safety equipment

⚠ WARNING **Serious health and safety risks!**

Do not tamper with, circumvent, remove or bypass processing and protection devices; Failure to comply with this requirement may cause serious health and safety risks.

A	**Pressure switch (0.5 bar):** This detects the pressure level in the intake manifold. The pressure switch allows a "warning" to be signaled when the pressure falls below 0.5 bar.
B	**Pressure switch (0.2 bar):** This detects the pressure level in the intake manifold. The pressure switch allows an "error" to be signaled when the pressure falls below 0.2 bar and stops machine operation.
C	**Bypass valve:** Limits the fluid pressure in the outlet line to the maximum allowable value.
D	**Temperature sensor:** Measures the coolant temperature in the outlet pipe. Depending on the temperature detected, the system will signal either a "warning"(temperature too high) or an "error" (temperature continues to rise, resulting in machine shutdown).
E	**Pressure sensor:** This detects, in real time, the differential pressure between the intake pipe and the outlet pipe. The sensor helps maintain a constant pressure in the outlet line.
F	**Check valve:** It prevents the liquid from flowing into the filling pump when it is being primed or is deactivated.



Tab. 8-246: Operating and safety equipment

Ambient conditions for operation

The machine operates properly under the specified ambient conditions (see chapter "Data" on page 576).

The machine is able to function properly at altitudes up to 2000 m above sea level.

Intended use

The machine is designed and manufactured to cool electric or electronic equipment or machines.

The machine has to be used in accordance with its technical specifications. It is prohibited to make any modifications to the machine or to use it for purposes other than the intended use.

The machine can be used either indoors or outdoors, in areas exposed to the weather.

Any other form of use that is not specified or included in this project planning manual, or that cannot be inferred from them, is considered unintended and is therefore not permitted.

Unintended and unauthorized uses

The use of coolants with properties other than the coolants specified by the manufacturer is not permitted.

The machine must not be used in a flammable or hazardous environment.

The machine may only be commissioned after it has been verified that the system or machine in which it is installed complies with applicable national and local regulations.

Residual risks

Risk of crushing: When moving the machine, incorrect manoeuvres or improper handling of the load may pose a risk of injury to the operators involved.

Risk of electric shock: Maintenance operations or replacement of components may involve a risk of electric shock due to accidental contact with live electrical components.

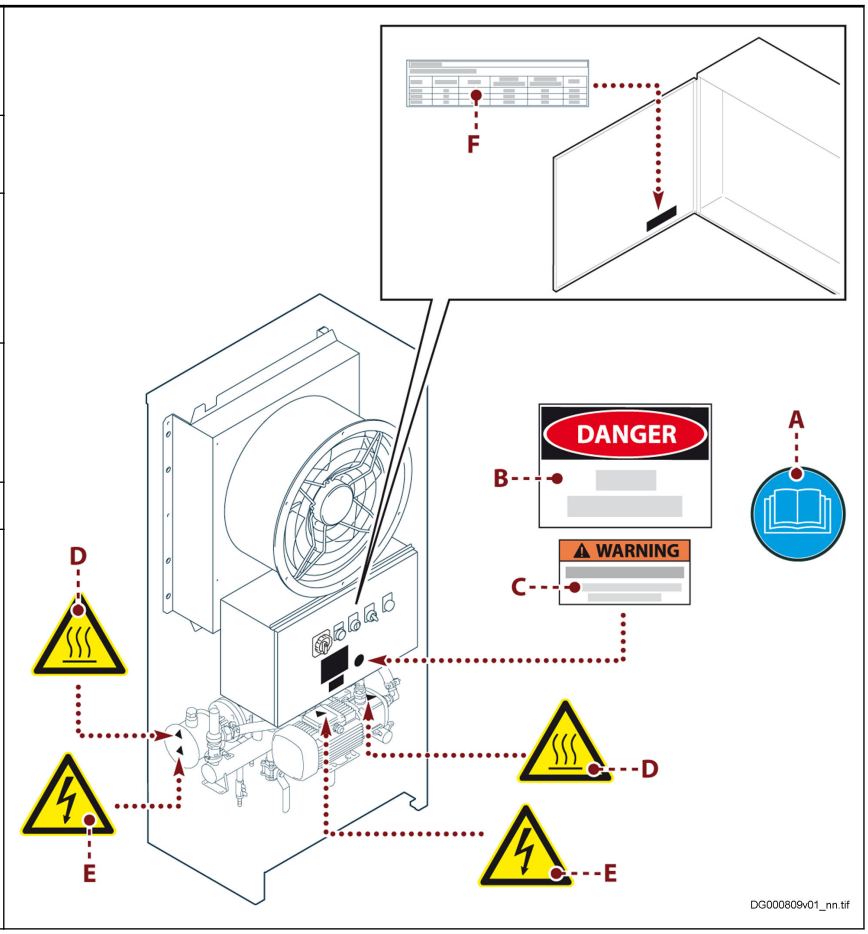
Thermal risk: Contact with hot surfaces can cause burns. Allow the machine to cool down before any operation.

Warning and safety signs

⚠ WARNING

Check that all the plates are legible. If they are not, clean them or - if they are damaged - replace them, applying the new ones in the same place as the old one.

A	This indicates the obligation for operators to read the instruction manual before operating the machine.
B	This shows that the voltage inside the terminal box is hazardous.
C	Risk of death or serious injury. Disconnect the machine from the power supply before beginning work.
D	This indicates that there is the risk of burns due to contact with hot surfaces. Allow the machine to cool down before any operation.
E	Risk of electric shock
F	Shows the technical properies of the fuses



Tab. 8-247: Warning and safety signs

Transporting and installing

Transport and installation safety recommendations

Personnel responsible for transport of the load must have the required qualification and experience and must be trained in handling the lifting gear used.

Use lifting gear with suitable load capacity in order to lift and move the load.

Persons authorized for transport must take appropriate measures to ensure their own safety and the safety of persons directly involved.

Place the package on a stable surface.

Do not place packed machines on top of each other as they are not intended for stacking.

Upon reception, each package must be inspected to verify the integrity and the exact quantity of its contents. In case items are damaged or missing, con-

tact the importer or the manufacturer directly to discuss the procedure to be adopted.

Package description

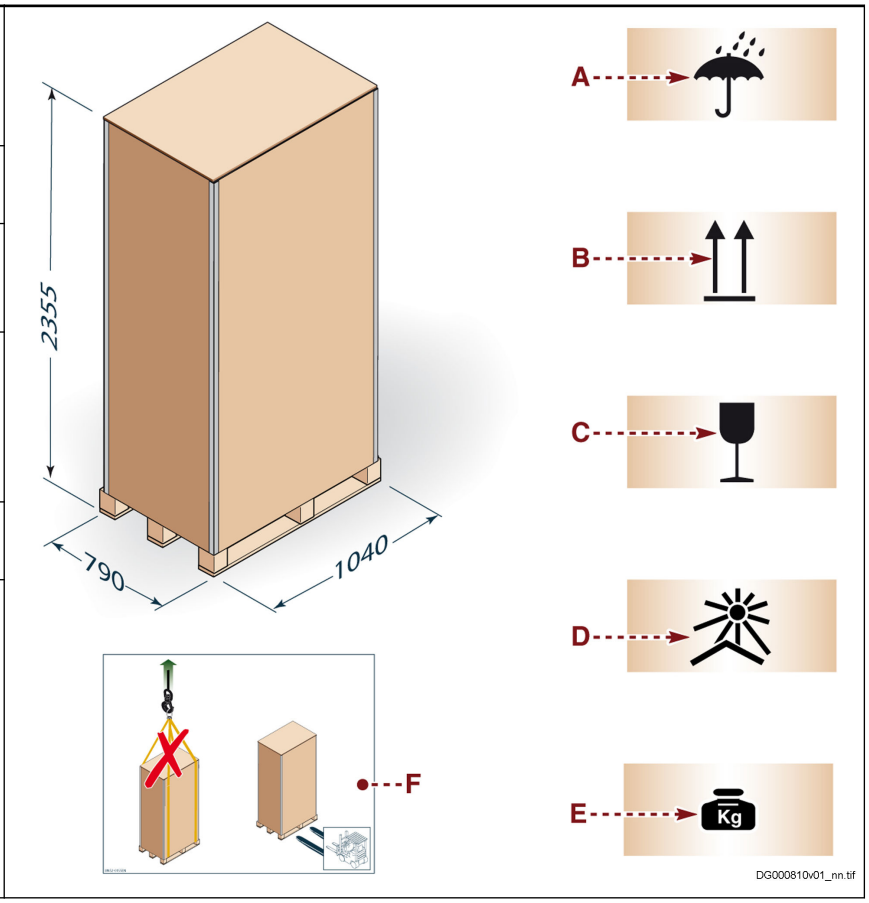
The packaging is selected according to the selected means of transport and the destination.

Packages can either be loaded directly onto a means of transport or into suitable containers if shipped by sea or air or to far-off destinations.

In order to facilitate transport, some components are removed and properly protected.

The figure shows the type of packaging most frequently used and the maximum dimensions as well as the warning symbols and notices attached to the packages.

A	This symbol means the packed machine must be stored in a dry place: its contents may be damaged by dampness.
B	This symbol means the packed machine must be kept upright.
C	This symbol means the packed machine must be handled with care: its contents are fragile.
D	This symbol indicates that the package must be kept away from direct sunlight and heat sources to avoid exposing its content to excessively high temperatures.
E	This symbol indicates the overall weight of the package.
F	The plate shows the procedure for lifting the package.



Tab. 8-248: Package description

Transporting and lifting the packed machine

The figure shows how to lift the package.

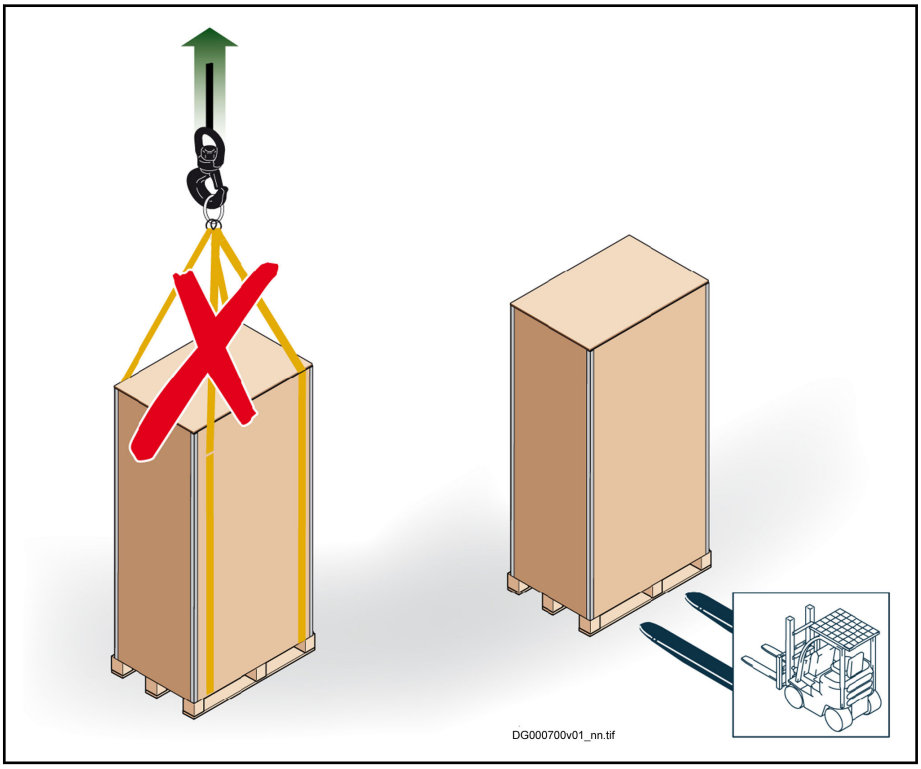


Fig. 8-166: Transporting and lifting the packed machine

Storage

If the machine is not going to be used for an extended period, it should be stored (possibly without unpacking it, or at least adequately protected) in a sheltered place protected from atmospheric agents at a temperature between -20 and +55 °C.

Avoid storing the machine in places where weather conditions could prejudice its good working order.

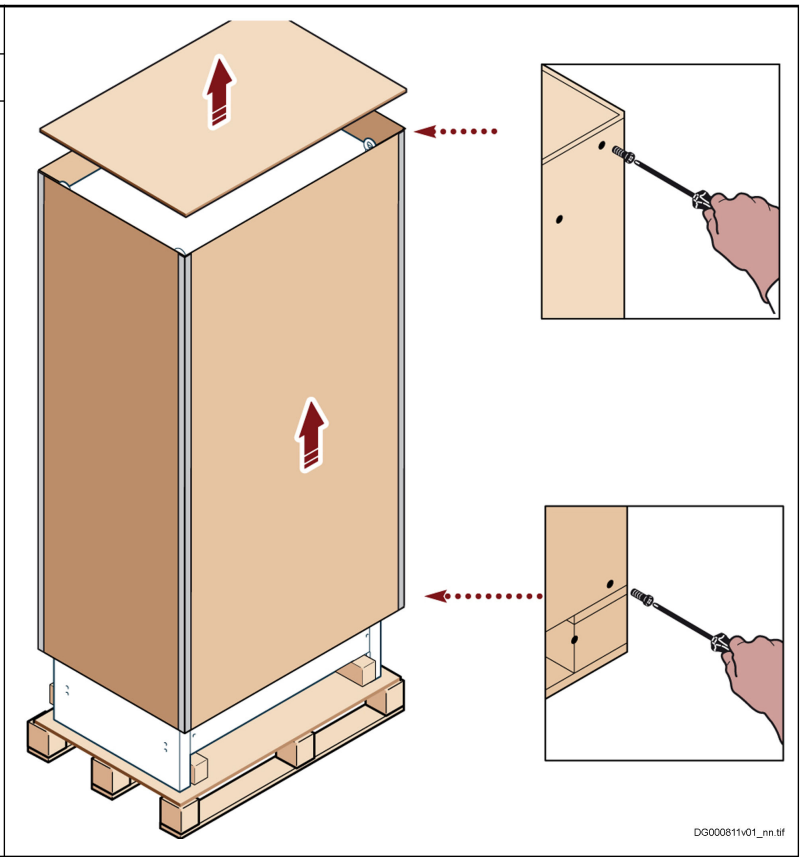
Unpacking

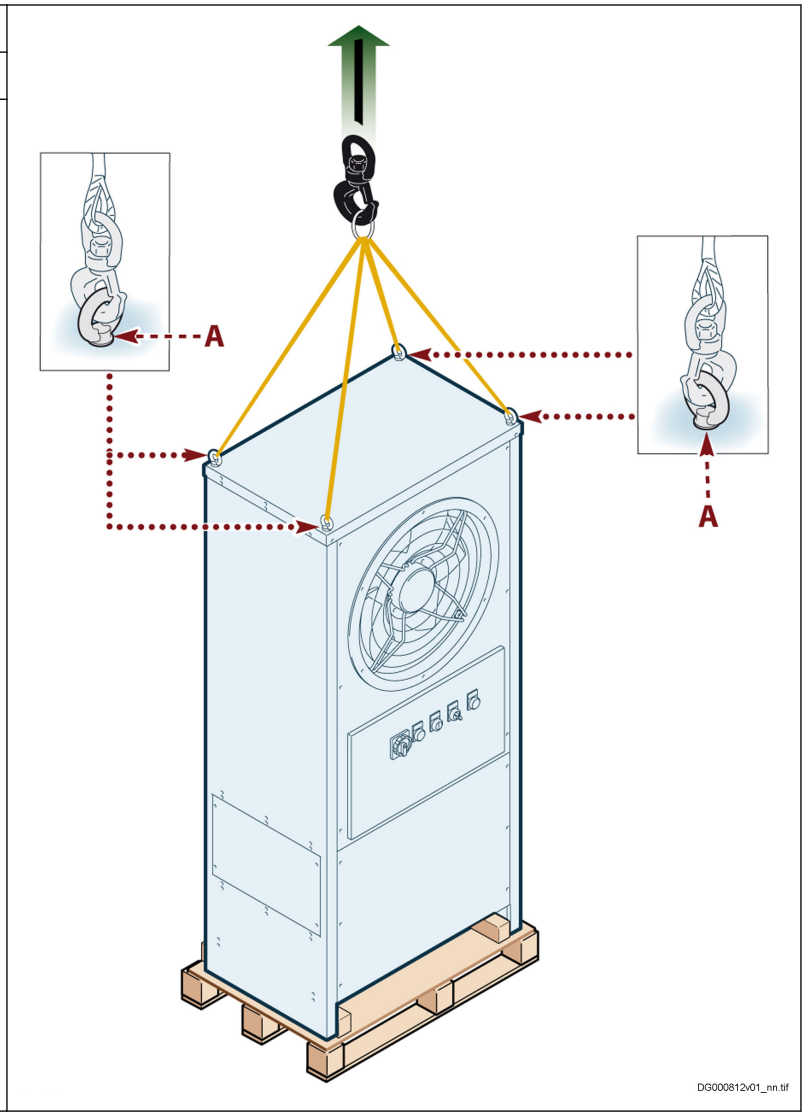
It is advisable to unpack the machine near the installation area to facilitate assembly.

The figure shows how to unpack the machine properly.

Proceed as described.

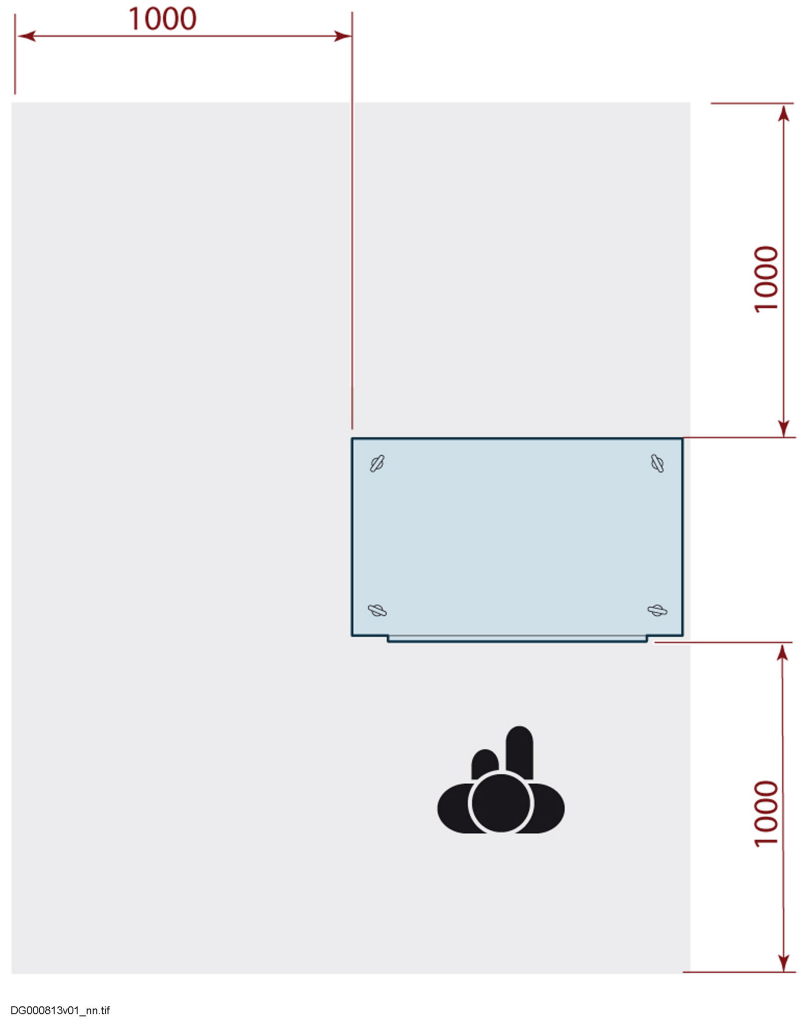
1	Unscrew the screws.
2	Remove the cover.
3	Lift the side walls of the packaging.



4	Tighten the eyebolts (**A**) supplied.	
5	Hook the ropes onto the eyebolts (**A**).	
6	Lift the machine. **WARNING!** When lifting pay attention to the machine swinging movement as the lifting point is never perfectly barycentric. Sudden movements may injure the people involved in the operations. The packaging material (wood, propylene, etc,.) can be kept for future use or properly disposed of according to the regulations in force.	

Tab. 8-249: Unpacking

Installation

Installation area The installation area must be flat and horizontal and correspond to the default load factor. Electrical connections as well as the possibility of transmitting the signals "UNIT ERROR" - "UNIT WARNING" must be available. Furthermore, all hydraulic connections must be available in accordance with legal regulations. According to the relevant regulations concerning health and safety at the working place, the area must have sufficient ventilation and lighting. Make sure that there is enough space around the installation area so that all work can be carried out safely.	

Tab. 8-250: Installation area

Electrical connection

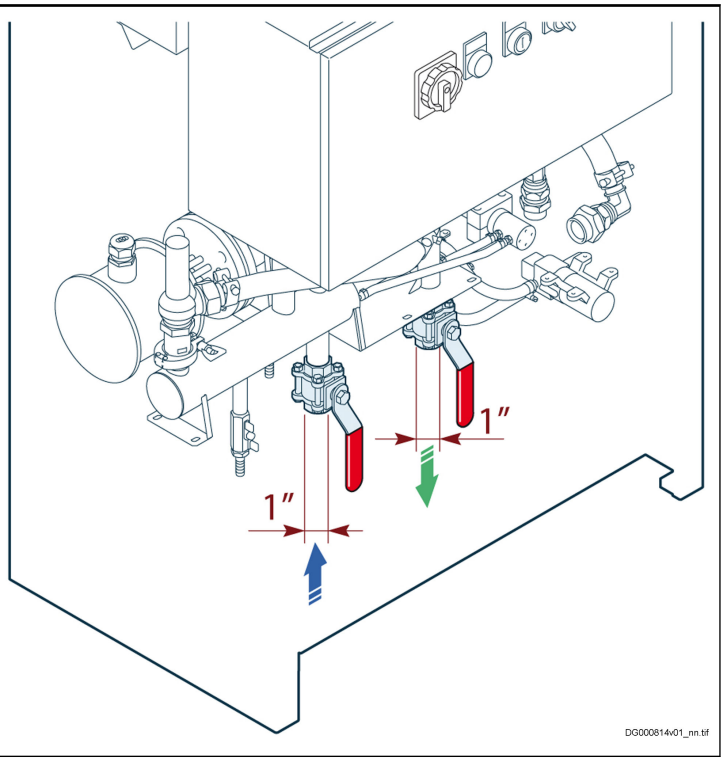
Electrical connections must be executed according to the manufacturer's specifications in the wiring diagram.

The electrical connections must be performed at professional standards in compliance with all legislative requirements and regulations.

Use a 4 G-AWG 12 cable (three-phase conductors + equipment grounding conductor).

Connect the three phases (L1, L2, L3) and the equipment grounding conductor to the relevant terminals inside the terminal box.

Hose connections

The owner has to install a pressure regulating device in the return pipe. Set the pressure in the intake and return pipes to the values shown in chapter "Data" on page 576. Use flexible tubes with an internal diameter of not less than 25 mm. Use connectors with an internal diameter of not less than 20 mm.	

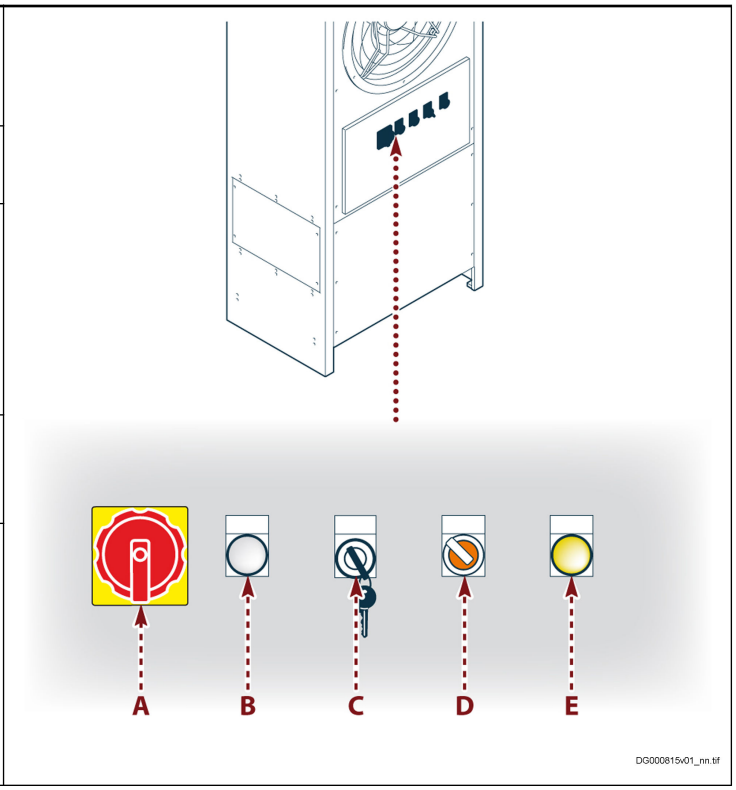
Tab. 8-251: Hose connections

Use

Safety advice for use

Before starting the machine, ensure that the system or the machine in which it has been fitted complies with applicable local regulations and directives.

Control elements and indicator lamps

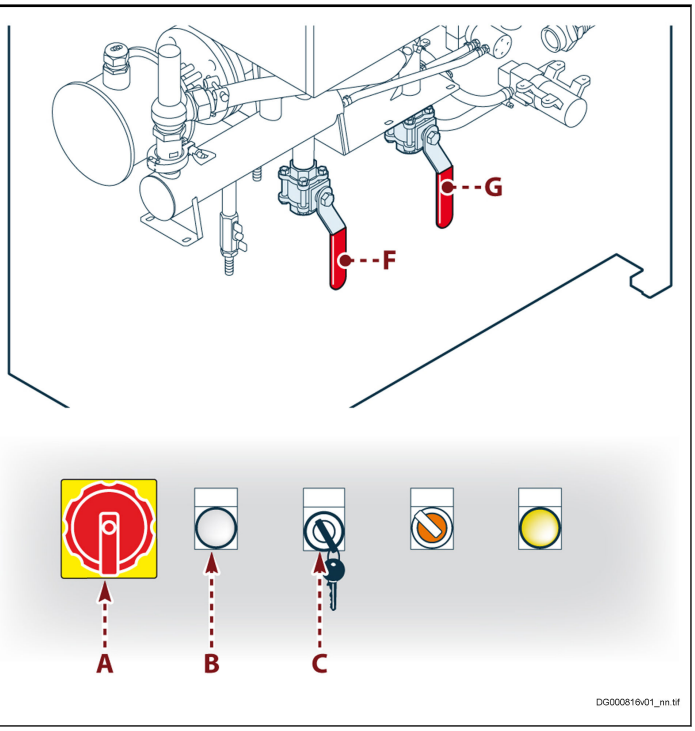
A	**Main switch:** It is used for connecting and disconnecting the power supply to machine. The indicator lamp (**B**) lights up.	
B	**Indicator lamp (white light):** Indicates that the power supply to the machine has been enabled.	
C	**Key-operated two-position stay-put selector switch:** This is used to switch the main pump operation on and off. The key has to be kept by the designated staff member and available to the staff responsible for technical servicing.	
D	**Two-position stay-put back-lit switch (red light):** This is used to switch the filling pump on and off.	
E	**Indicator lamp (yellow):** This shows automatic shutdown of the heater (optional) triggered by overtemperature of the liquid solution (see chapter "Resetting the safety temperature controller of the heater" on page 598).	

Tab. 8-252: Control elements and indicator lamps

Switching on

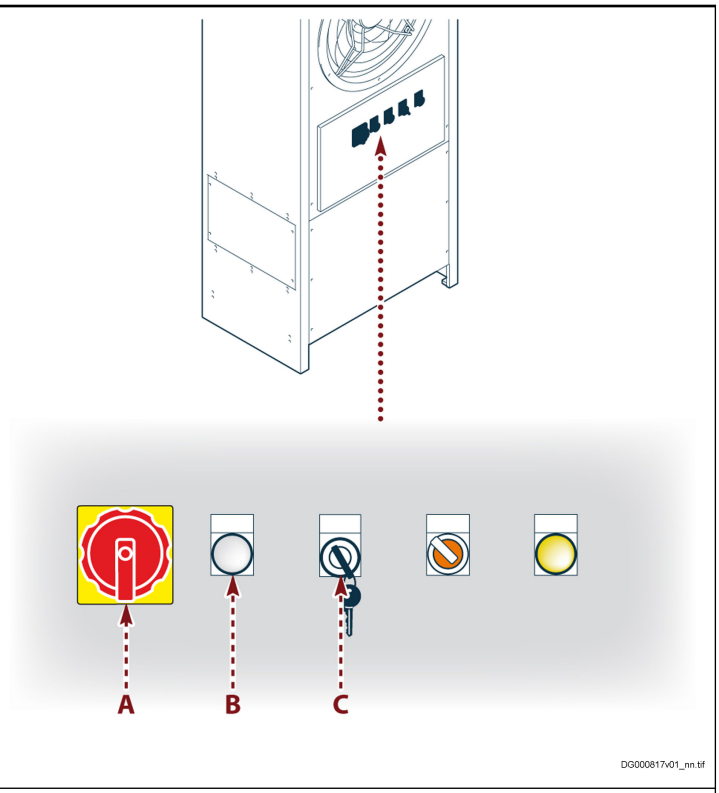
During the first run-up, carry out the circuit filling procedure (see chapter "Filling the hydraulic circuit" on page 592).

To start the machine, proceed as follows.

1	Open the ball valves (**F - G**).	
2	Turn the main switch (**A**) to the "ON" position. The indicator lamp (**B**) lights up.	
3	Turn the key selector (**C**) to "automatic" position. Machine start-up has to be performed using the operator terminal of the machine to be cooled, via the "ENABLE" connection (see chapter "ENABLE, UNIT ERROR and UNIT WARNING connections" on page 577).	

Tab. 8-253: Switching on

Switching off

Switching off with the main switch 1. Turn the main switch (**A**) to the "OFF" position. • The indicator lamp (**B**) will switch off. • Machine operation stops and the voltage supply to the terminal box is interrupted. • The supply terminals remain live.	
Switching off with the key-operated switch This switch-off mode is reserved for authorized personnel. 1. Insert the key into the selector switch (**C**). 2. Turn the selector switch to the "OFF" position. • Operation of the main pump stops. • The terminal box at the machine remains live.	
Remote-controlled switch-off • Remote-controlled switch-off has to be performed using the owner's operator terminal, via the "ENABLE" connection. • Operation of the main pump stops. • The terminal box at the machine remains live.	
Switching off automatically • The machine switches off automatically if the pressure in the circuit falls below 0.2 bar and the temperature of the liquid exceeds the preset limit (see parameter P-0-1318).	

Tab. 8-254: Switching off

Switching off in emergency conditions

To switch off the device in the event of imminent danger (emergency stop), turn the main switch (**A**) to the "OFF" position.

Fix the cause for the emergency stop before restarting the machine.

Filling the hydraulic circuit

Check if the installation as well as electrical and hydraulic connections are executed professionally in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

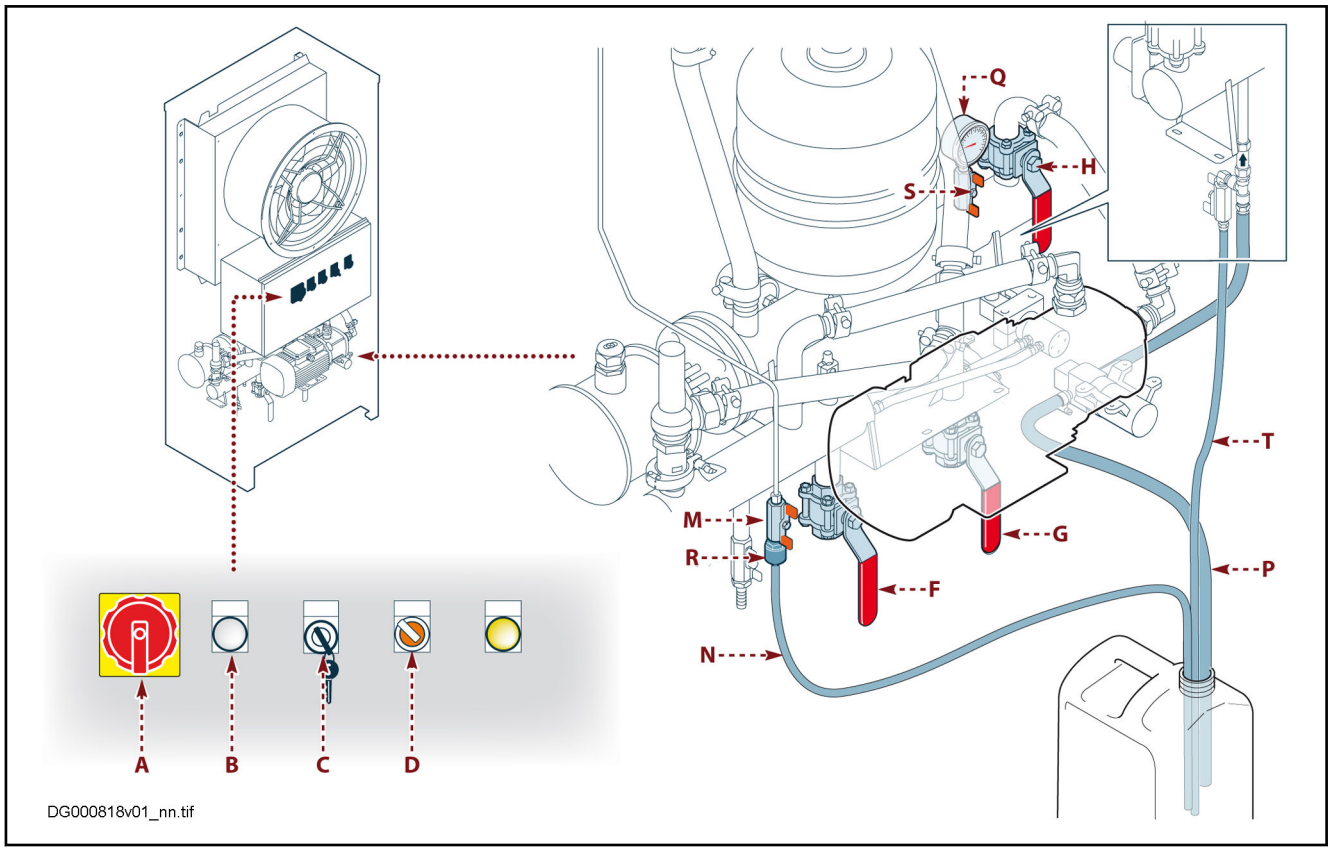


Fig. 8-167: Fill the hydraulic circuit

1. Fill a tank with an appropriate amount of fluid solution (see chapter "Data" on page 576).
2. Fit the pipes (**P - N - T**) into the tank.
3. Open the ball valve (**G**).
4. Open the ball valve (**F**).
5. Open the valve (**M**).

   If there is no liquid coming, clean the connector (**R**). See chapter "Cleaning the connector of the bleed valve" on page 601.
6. Open the valve (**S**).
7. Open the valve (**H**).
8. Turn the key-operated selector switch (**C**) to the "OFF" position to prevent unexpected activation of the main pump.
9. Ensure that the remote-controlled "ENABLE" function is activated.
10. **NOTICE!** Do **not** turn the selector switch (**C**) to the "ON" position since this could cause damage to the main pump.

    Open any existing valves that are installed outside the machine on the circuit of the machine to be cooled.
11. Turn the main switch (**A**) to the "ON" position.

    The indicator lamp (**B**) lights up.
12. Turn the selector switch (**D**) to activate the filling pump.

Make sure that there is always enough liquid in the tank.

If the filling pump does not prime automatically, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 594).

13. When the fluid is running out of the clear tube (**N**) in a steady stream (no bubbles) and the pressure has reached 1.4 … 2.2 bar, turn the key-operated selector switch (**C**) to the "ON" position to activate the main pump in the automatic mode.

    The pressure is indicated on the (**Q**) pressure gauge.

    NOTICE! The filling pump is activated and deactivated automatically and keeps the pressure between 1.4 … 2.2 bar. The main pump is activated only when the circuit pressure reaches over 0.2 bar. During this stage, a sudden drop in pressure may occur. The pressure drop is caused by the air pumped into the circuit as a result of activation of the main pump. Make sure that the key-operated switch (**C**) is set to "ON".

14. Keep the main pump and the filling pump running for at least 30 minutes in order to rinse the cooling circuit thoroughly.

    NOTICE! If it is hard for the system to get up to pressure, close the valve (**M**).

    If the pressure exceeds 1.5 bar, turn off the filling pump and temporarily open the valve (**M**) until the correct pressure is reached.

    NOTICE! If the filling pump priming stops during the filling stage, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 594).

15. Turn the selector switch (**D**) to deactivate the filling pump.
16. Close the valve (**M**) when the pressure in the circuit has reached 1.5 bar.
17. Close the valve (**S**).
18. Remove the pipes from the tank.
19. Remove the key from the selector switch (**C**) and store in a safe place.

    After one hour of operation, check if the pressure is correct – if this is not the case, perform the restore operation (see chapter "Restoring the pressure" on page 595).

NOTICE! Limit operation of the pressure gauge to the time necessary to perform the pressure reading. During operation, deactivate the pressure gauge to avoid damaging it.

Filling pump priming procedure

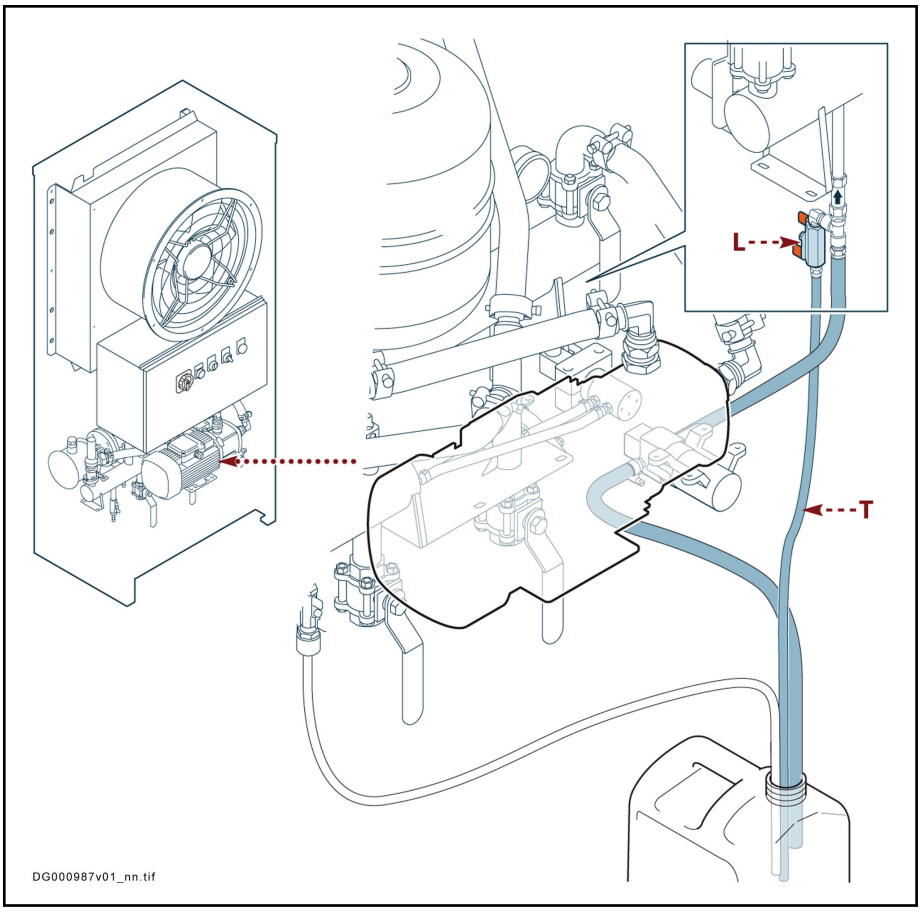


Fig. 8-168: Fill the hydraulic circuit

If the filling pump does not prime automatically, proceed as described:

1. When the filling pump is active, open the valve (**L**).
2. Wait for the coolant to start flowing out of the transparent hose (**T**).
3. Close the valve (**L**) and leave the filling pump working.

The filling pump is primed and starts pumping the coolant into the hydraulic circuit.

Restoring the pressure

This procedure can be carried out only if the pressure is above 0.8 bar and the main pump is activated.

If the pressure is below this level, carry out the circuit filling procedure (see chapter "Filling the hydraulic circuit" on page 592).

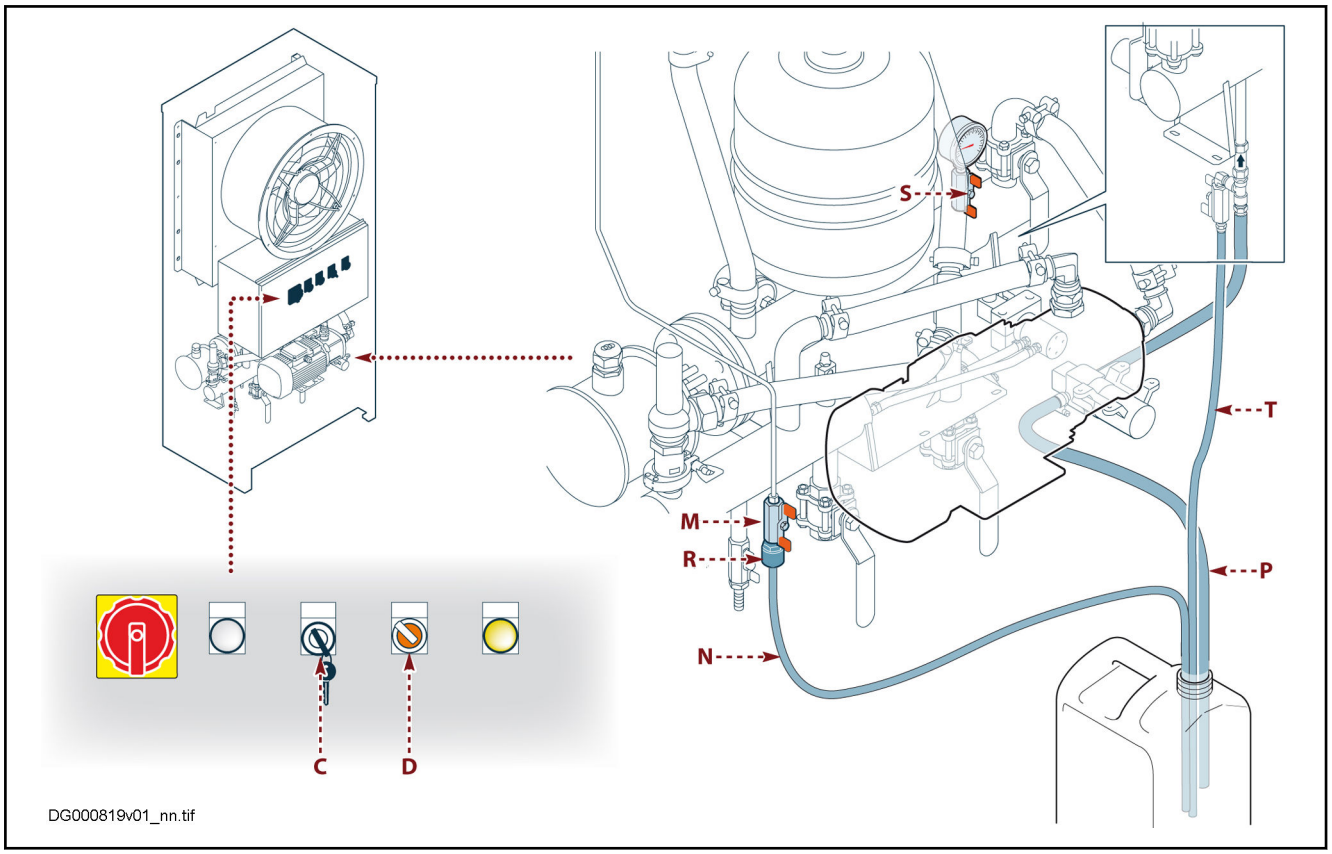


Fig. 8-169: Restoring the pressure

1. Fill a tank with an appropriate amount of fluid solution (see chapter "Data" on page 576).
2. Fit the pipes (**N - P - T**) into the tank.
3. Open the valve (**S**).
4. Turn the selector switch (**D**) to activate the filling pump. If the filling pump does not prime automatically, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 594).
5. Open the valve (**M**) and keep open until the fluid is running out of the clear tube (**N**) in a steady stream (no bubbles) and the pressure has reached 1.5 bar.

   If there is no liquid coming, clean the connector (**R**). See chapter "Cleaning the connector of the bleed valve" on page 601.
6. **NOTICE!** If the pressure exceeds 1.5 bar, turn off the filling pump and temporarily open the valve (**M**) until the correct pressure is reached.

   NOTICE! If the filling pump priming stops during the filling stage, start the filling pump priming procedure (see chapter "Filling pump priming procedure" on page 594).

   Close the valve (**M**).

7. Turn the selector switch (**D**) to deactivate the filling pump.
8. Close the valve (**S**).
9. Remove the pipes from the tank.
10. Remove the key from the selector switch (**C**) and store in a safe place.

NOTICE! Limit operation of the pressure gauge to the time necessary to perform the pressure reading. During operation, deactivate the pressure gauge to avoid damaging it.

Emptying the hydraulic circuit

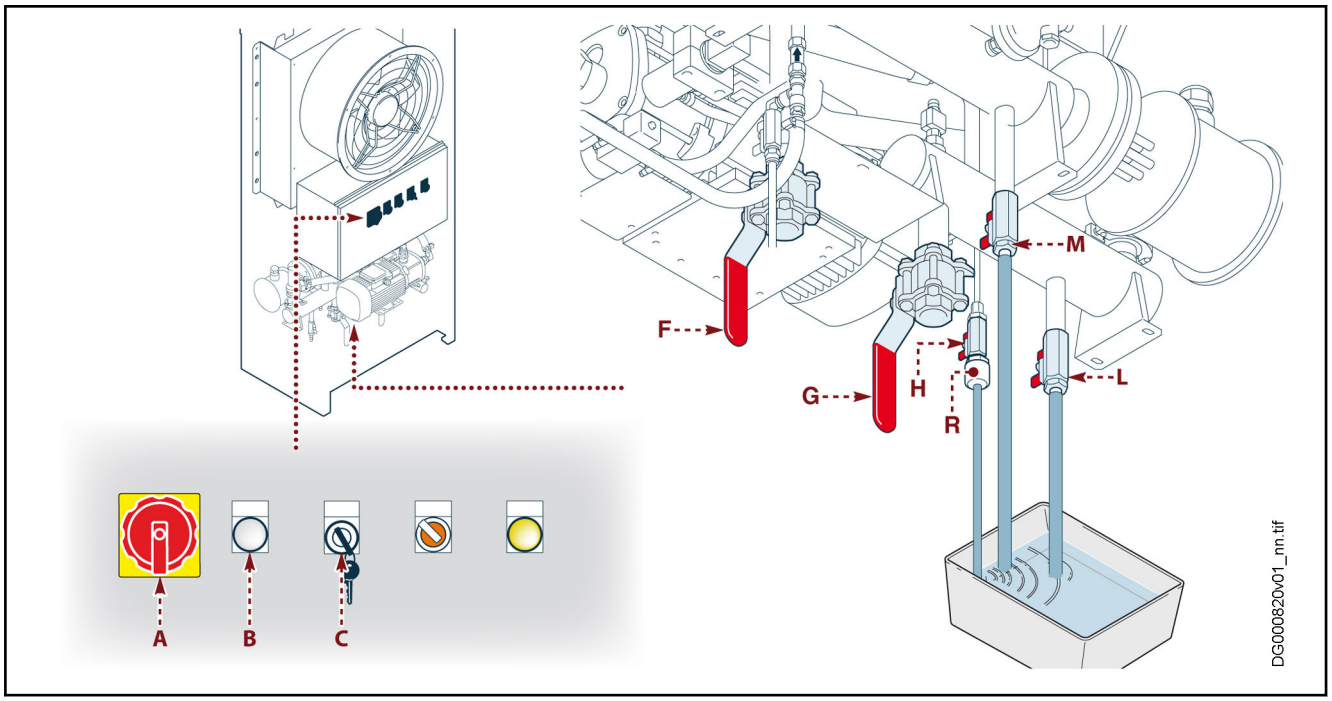


Fig. 8-170: Emptying the hydraulic circuit

1. Position a suitable container for collecting the coolant.
2. Switch off the machine (see chapter "Switching off" on page 591).
3. Turn the key selector (**C**) to the "OFF" position.
4. Turn the main switch (**A**) to the "OFF" position.
5. The indicator lamp (**B**) will switch off.
6. Close the ball valves (**F - G**).
7. Open the valve (**H**).

   If there is no liquid coming, clean the connector (**R**). See chapter "Cleaning the connector of the bleed valve" on page 601.
8. Open the valve (**L**).
9. Open the valve (**M**).
10. Drain out all the coolant.
11. Close the valve (**M**).
12. Close the valve (**L**).
13. Close the valve (**H**).

NOTICE! Dispose of the coolant in an environmentally friendly manner in accordance with the applicable legal regulations.

Resetting the safety temperature controller of the heater

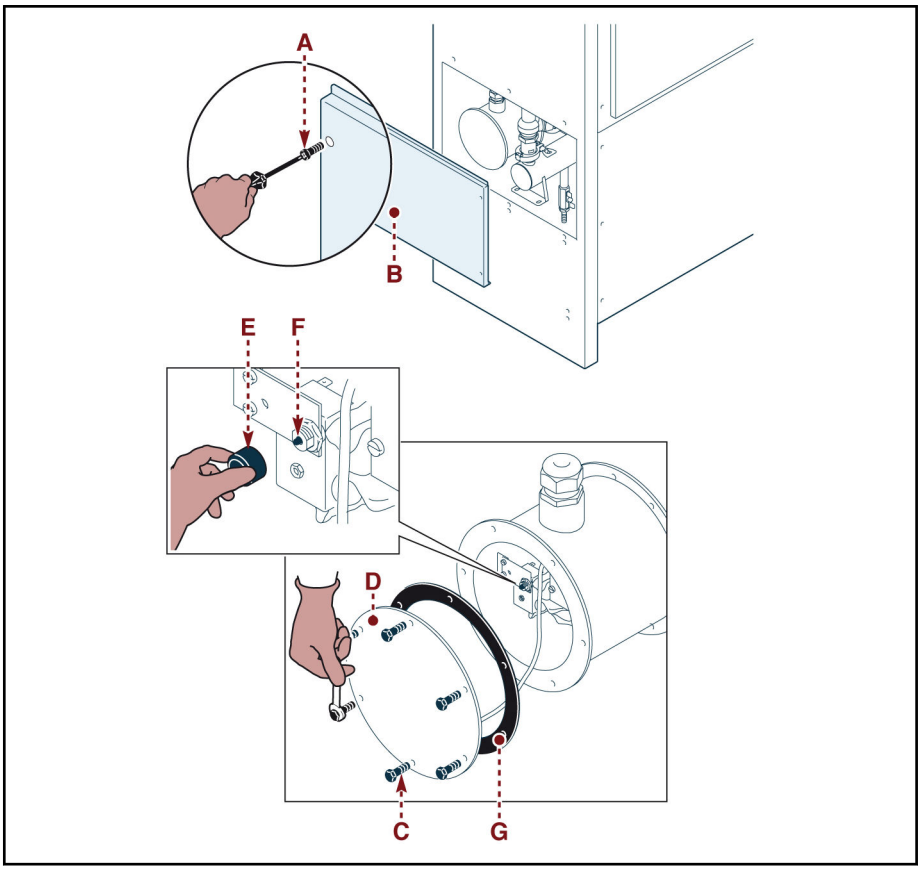


Fig. 8-171: Resetting the safety temperature controller of the heater

1. Disconnect the machine from the voltage source.
2. Allow the machine to cool down.
3. Remove the screws (**A**).
4. Remove the guard (**B**).
5. Remove the screws (**C**).
6. Remove cover (**D**).
7. Remove the lid (**E**).
8. Push the button (**F**).
9. Screw on the lid (**E**).
10. Adjust the gasket (**G**).
11. Adjust the cover (**D**) without damaging the gasket.
12. Tighten the screws (**C**).
13. Insert the guard (**B**).
14. Tighten the screws (**A**).

Maintenance

Safety advice for maintenance

For personal safety reasons, before conducting maintenance interventions, check that all safety devices are activated and warn the people present in the workplace that such intervention is underway.

In particular, disconnect the power supply to the machine.

Ensure that the voltage cannot be switched on again unintentionally.

Allow the machine to cool down before any operation to prevent burns.

Maintenance schedule

Interval			Component	Type of work	Cross reference
Every 5000 operating hours	Every 30,000 operating hours	Every 10 years of operation	–	–	–
✓	–	–	Cooler - cooling channel	Cleaning	See chapter "Cleaning the cooler and cooling channel" on page 599
–	✓	–	Main pump	Replacement	See chapter "Replacing the main pump" on page 606
–	✓	–	Cooling fan	Replacement	See chapter "Replacing the electric fan" on page 608
–	✓	–	Coolant	Replacement	See chapter "Replacing the coolant" on page 613
–	–	✓	EPDM rubber hoses	Replacement	–

Tab. 8-255: Maintenance schedule

Cleaning the cooler and cooling channel

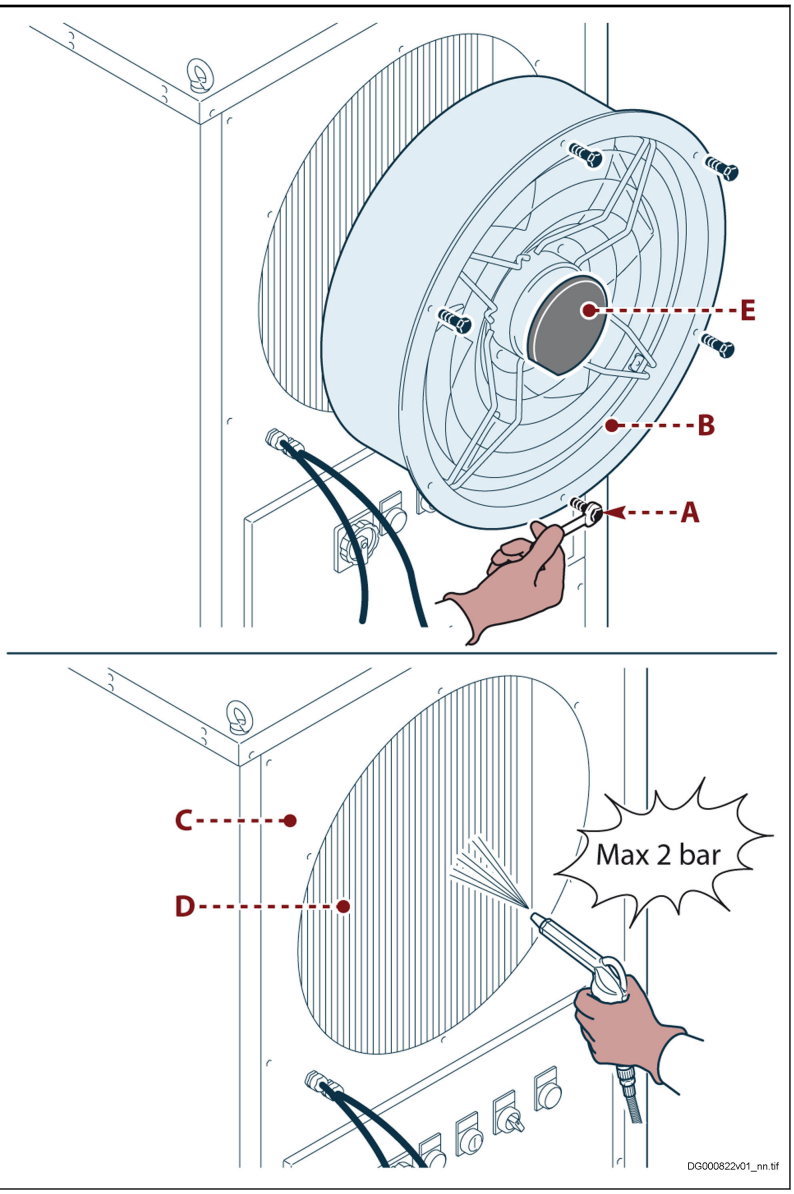
⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

Due to the use of capacitors and even after the machine's power supply has been disconnected, there is a serious risk of electric shock by contact with live parts.

Before removing the cover, always wait several minutes after disconnecting the electricity to the machine.

Make sure voltage has fallen below 50 V before touching live parts!

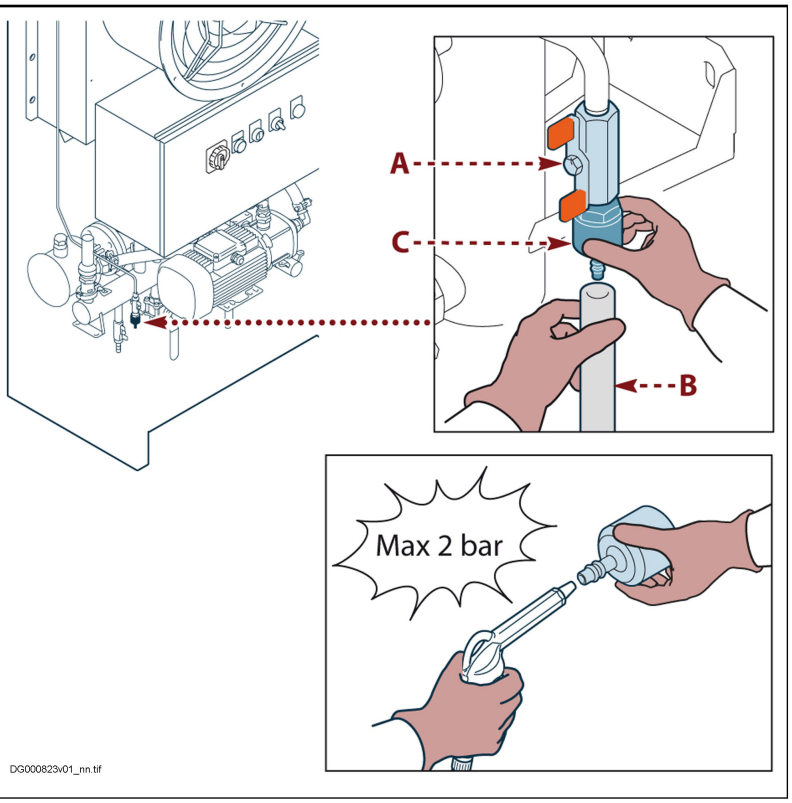
1	Disconnect the machine from the voltage source.
2	Remove the protective cover (**E**).
3	Remove the cable from the connection terminals.
4	Unscrew the screws (**A**).
5	Remove the electric fan unit (**B**).
6	Suction the cooling channel (**C**) to remove dust and dirt.
7	Clean the inside of the cooler (**D**) with compressed air. Keep the pressure on the level indicated in the picture.
8	Suction the cooling channel (**C**) again.
9	Insert the electric fan unit (**B**).
10	Tighten the screws (**A**).
11	Connect the cables (observe the wiring diagram).
12	Put on the protective cover (**E**).



Tab. 8-256: Cleaning the cooler and the cooling channel

Cleaning the connector of the bleed valve

1	Close the bleed valve (**A**).
2	Remove the hose (**B**).
3	Unscrew the connector (**C**).
4	Clean the connector with compressed air. Keep the pressure on the level indicated in the picture.
5	Screw on the connector (**C**).
6	Attach the hose (**B**) to the connector.
7	Open the bleed valve (**A**).



Tab. 8-257: Cleaning the connector

Cleaning the machine

Clean the machine with detergents that are approved in accordance with the applicable legal regulations.

Troubleshooting

The following table contains a number of faults that may occur during operation as well as appropriate corrective measures.

Code	Type	Malfunction	Likely cause	Remedy
E2011	Warning 1	Low pressure, please refill	The system pressure is lower than 0.5 bar (loss of water, maintenance)	Refill cooling system up to 1.5 bar
E2012	Warning 2	Unable to start drive	Motor does not start in velocity control operation	Ensure that the system has the status "AF" before starting
E2013	Warning 3	Heater works	The heater switches on if the temperature of the liquid falls below 0°C.	Check operating temperature Check signal of the temperature sensor
E2014	Warning 4	Overtemperature	Temperature exceeds the defined value (P-0-1316) of the maximum permissible deviation from required temperature (t_{set}) for a defined duration (P-0-1317)	Check cooling system Clean cooling system, if necessary Reduce the level of the heat to be dissipated. If required, change the settings in the parameters P-0-1316 and/or P-0-1317
E2015	Warning 5	Fan	Fan signals error	Check fan and feedback signal
E2016	Warning 6	Lower motor speed limitation active	Motor velocity of the pressure control < 360 min^{-1}	Increase the value of parameter P-0-1374 (> 360 min^{-1}) Ensure that the motor can run with a velocity > 360 min^{-1}
F2011	Error 1	System pressure	System pressure lower than 0.2 bar	Refill cooling system up to 1.5 bar
F2012	Error 2	Overtemperature	The fluid temperature (on the drive side) has exceeded the maximum allowed temperature limit (see parameter P-0-1318)	If required, change the value of parameter P-0-1318 Clean fan Reduce the quantity of heat to be emitted
		Temperature of the heater is too high (yellow signal lamp lights up)	Thermostat of the heater is triggered	Check signal of the temperature sensor
		Heater does not heat	Thermostat of the heater was triggered in order to enable operation without liquid	Check the pressure of the cooling circuit and restore, if applicable
F2013	Error 3	Fan	Defective fan Fuses defective	Replace fan Replace fuses
		Slight leakage of cooling liquid between pump and motor	Start after long inactivity of the machine Changing the ambient conditions	Start pump [1)]

Code	Type	Malfunction	Likely cause	Remedy
		The filling pump does not start priming automatically	Suction hose empty following long period of machine disuse No coolant in the tank High backpressure in the filling pump delivery line	Perform the filling pump priming procedure
		The filling pump does not inject the coolant into the circuit	The filling pump is not primed The filling pump bleed valve is open	Perform the filling pump priming procedure Close the filling pump bleed valve

1) The pump is mechanically sealed by the cooling liquid. This type of seal (mechanical) may lead to a slight leakage of cooling liquid under certain conditions. It takes some time to minimize the leakage if the pump is started after stopping the machine or after being inactive. The required time depends on the operating conditions. The leaked cooling liquid usually evaporates immediately. The leaked cooling liquid is not visible then. **This type of leakage is not a malfunction.** Contact the service if the leakage persists for a longer period of time.

Tab. 8-258: Errors and warnings

Replacing the component

Safety instruction regarding component replacement

For personal safety reasons, before conducting maintenance interventions, check that all safety devices are activated and warn the people present in the workplace that such intervention is underway.

In particular, the power supply to the machine must be switched off.

Ensure that the power cannot be turned back on accidentally.

Allow the machine to cool down before performing any work to prevent burns.

Replace worn or damaged parts with original spare parts.

Replacing the main pump

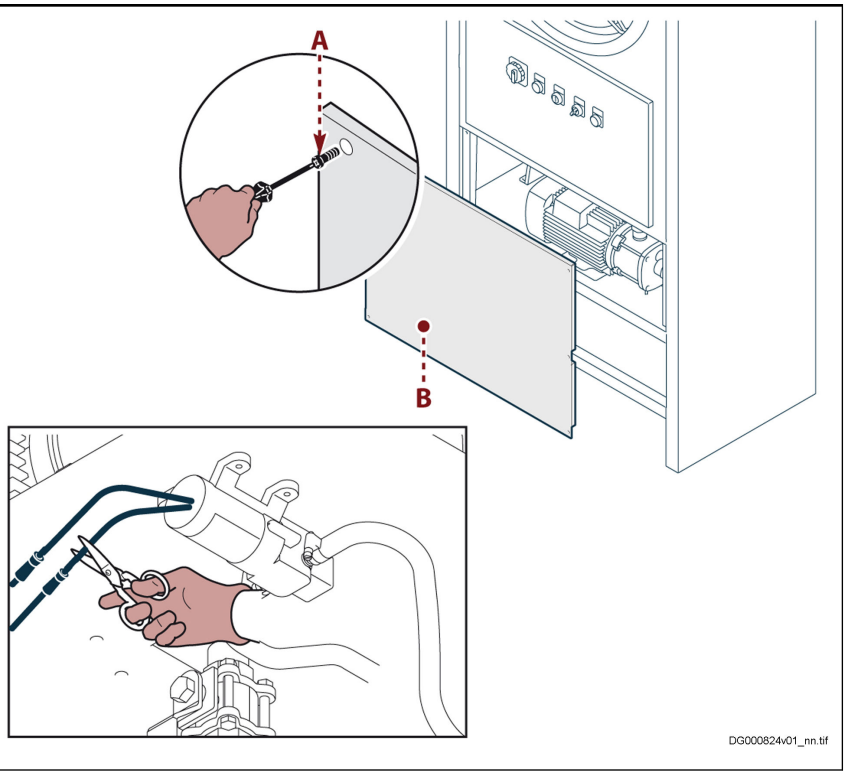
⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

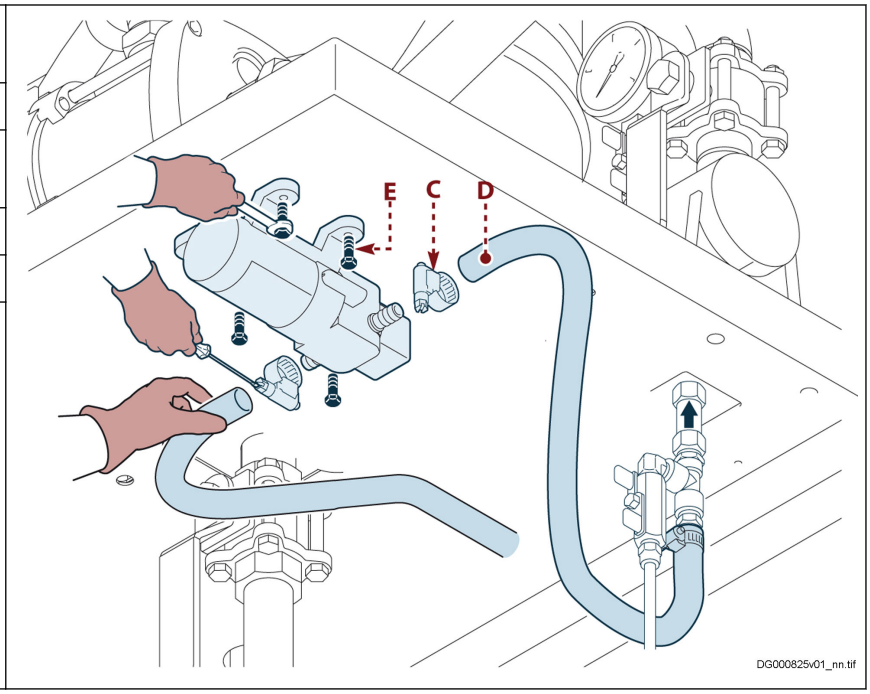
Due to the use of capacitors and even after the machine's power supply has been disconnected, there is a serious risk of electric shock by contact with live parts.

Before removing the cover, always wait several minutes after disconnecting the electricity to the machine.

Make sure voltage has fallen below 50 V before touching live parts!

1	Disconnect the machine from the voltage source.
2	Unscrew the screws (**A**).
3	Remove the fixed guard (**B**).
4	Cut the power cables.



5	Undo the screw and remove the hose clamp (**C**).	
6	Extract the hose (**D**).	
7	Repeat the same procedure to remove the other flexible tube.	
8	Unscrew the screws (**E**).	
9	Remove the pump.	
10	Install the new pump. To install the new pump, follow the same steps in reverse order as when removing the pump.	

Tab. 8-259: Replacing the fill pump

Replacing the main pump

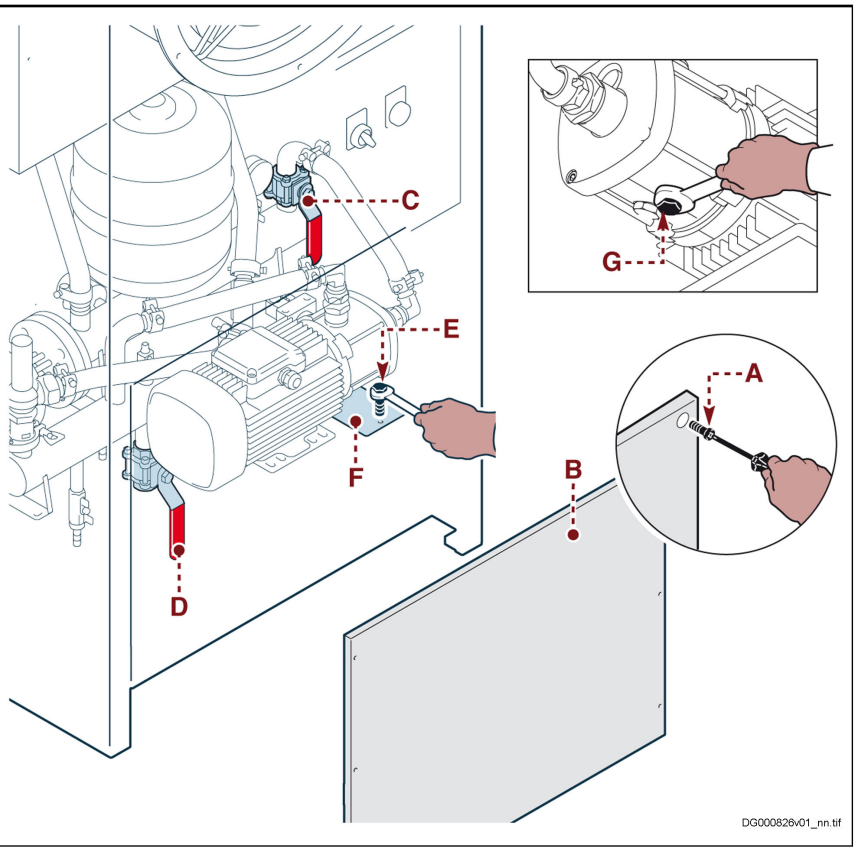
⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

Due to the use of capacitors and even after the machine's power supply has been disconnected, there is a serious risk of electric shock by contact with live parts.

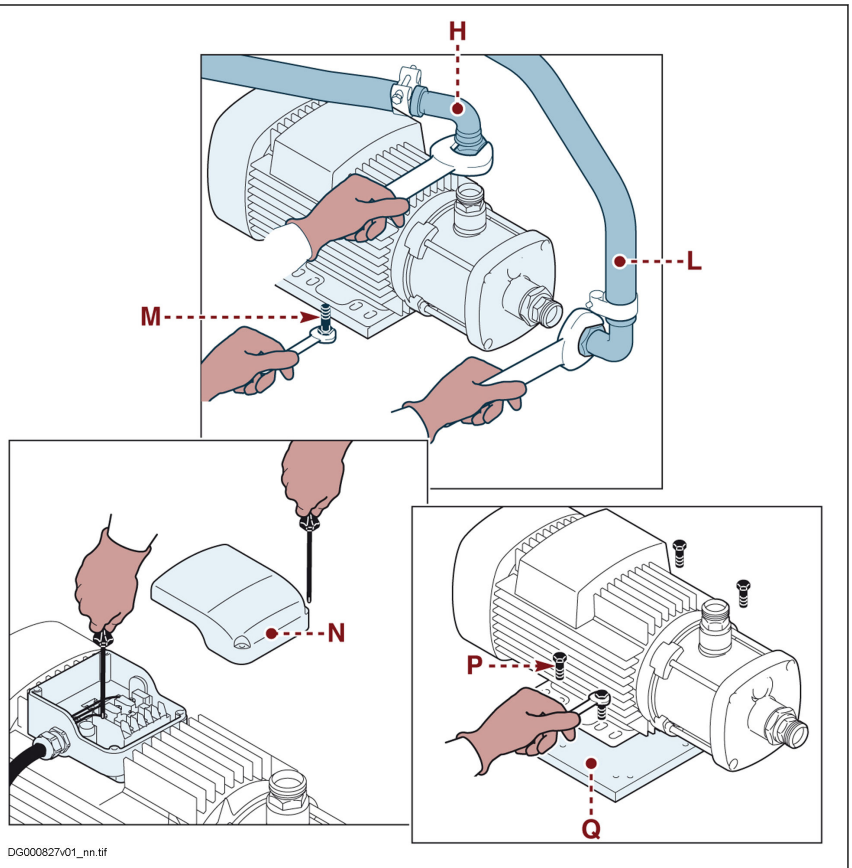
Before removing the cover, always wait several minutes after disconnecting the electricity to the machine.

Make sure voltage has fallen below 50 V before touching live parts!

1	Disconnect the machine from the voltage source.
2	Let the machine cool down.
3	Unscrew the screws (**A**).
4	Remove the cover (**B**).
5	Empty the hydraulic system of the machine (see chapter "Emptying the hydraulic circuit" on page 597).
6	Close the valve (**C**).
7	Close the valve (**D**).
8	Unscrew the screw (**E**).
9	Remove the fixed guard (**F**).
10	Remove the cap (**G**). Drain all of the coolant.



11	Disconnect the hosing (**H**).
12	Disconnect the hosing (**L**).
13	Unscrew the screws (**M**).
14	Remove the pump.
15	Remove the cover (**N**).
16	Disconnect the cable from the terminals.
17	Unscrew the screws (**P**).
18	Remove the plate (**Q**).
19	Install the new pump. To install the new pump, follow the same steps in reverse order as when removing the pump. **NOTICE!** The spare pump is supplied with the fittings mounted. Do not remove the fittings, as this could cause coolant to leak.
20	Open the valve (**C**).
21	Open the valve (**D**).
22	Fill the cooling circuit. See chapter "Filling the hydraulic circuit" on page 592.



Tab. 8-260: Replacing the main pump

Replacing the electric fan

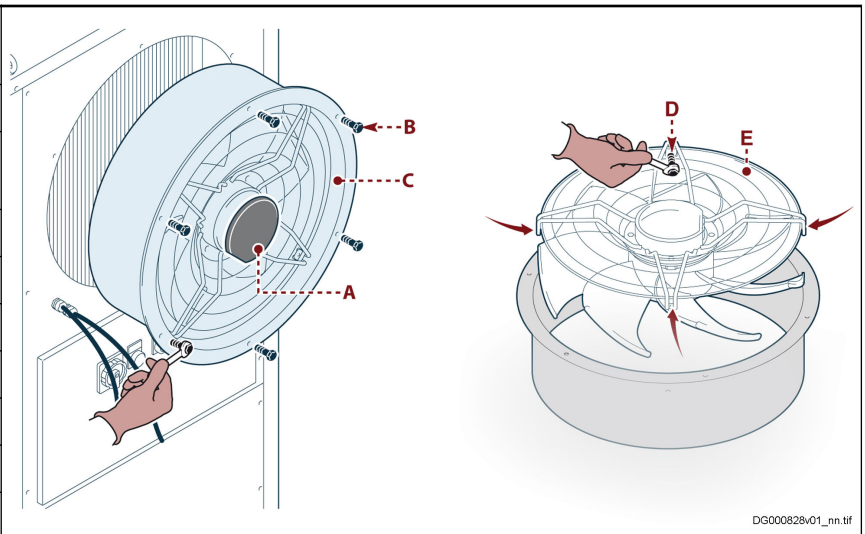
⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

Due to the use of capacitors and even after the machine's power supply has been disconnected, there is a serious risk of electric shock by contact with live parts.

Before removing the cover, always wait several minutes after disconnecting the electricity to the machine.

Make sure voltage has fallen below 50 V before touching live parts!

1	Disconnect the machine from the voltage source.
2	Remove the cover (**A**).
3	Disconnect the cable from the terminals.
4	Unscrew the screws (**B**).
5	Remove the electric fan unit (**C**).
6	Unscrew the screws (**D**).
7	Remove the electric fan (**E**).
8	Insert the electric replacement fan.
9	Tighten the screws (**D**).
10	Insert the electric fan unit.
11	Tighten the screws (**B**).
12	Connect the wires (using the wiring diagram).
13	Reattach the cover (**A**).



Tab. 8-261: Replacing the electric fan

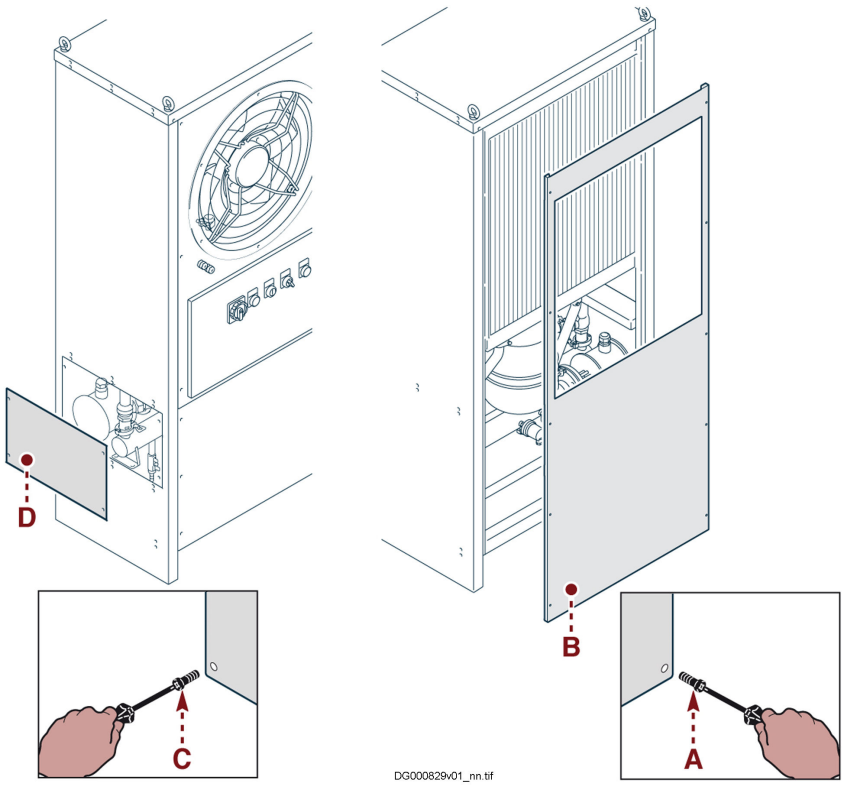
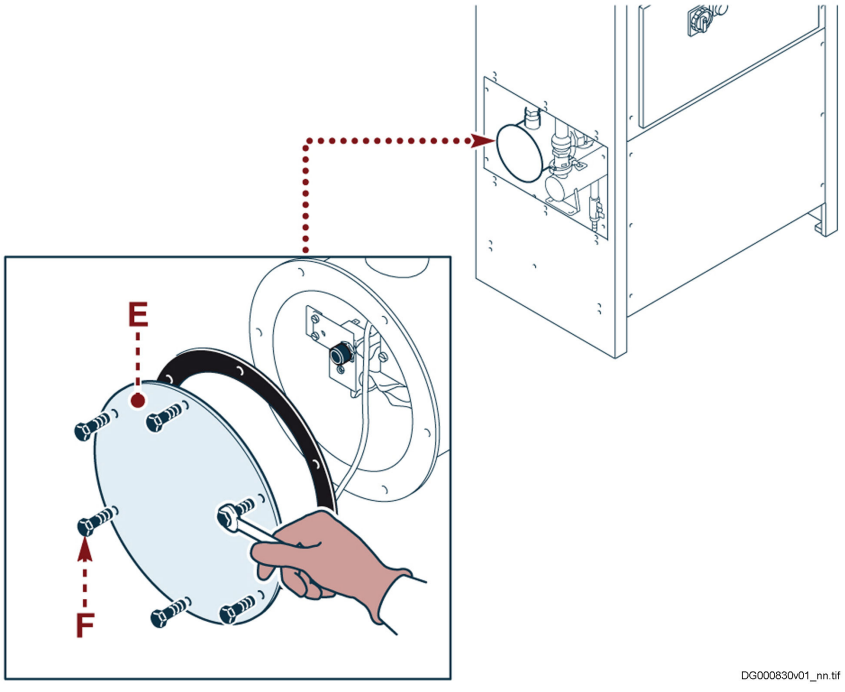
Replacing the heater

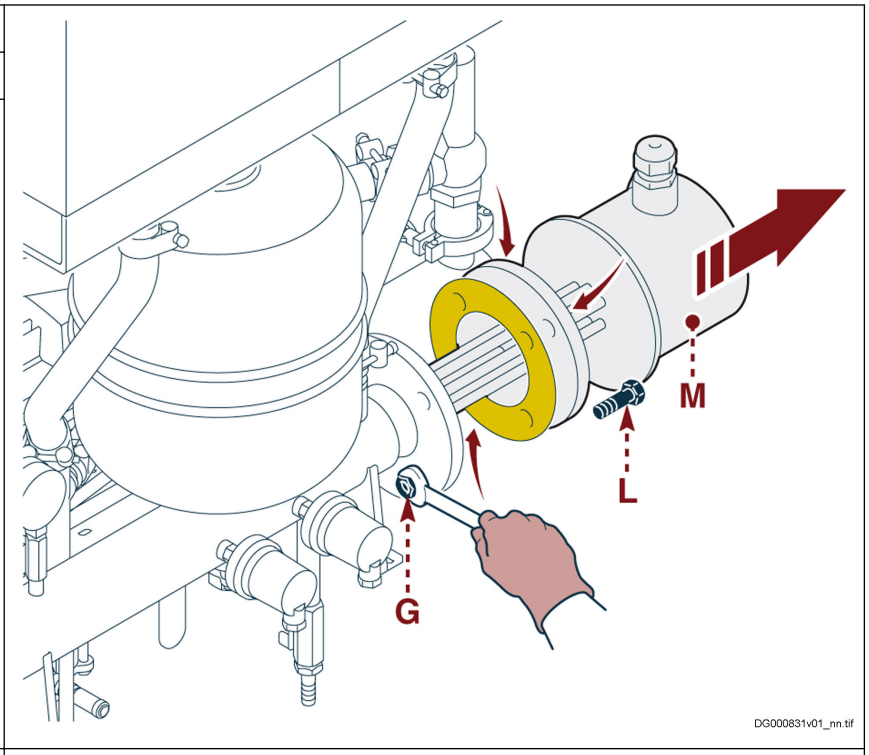
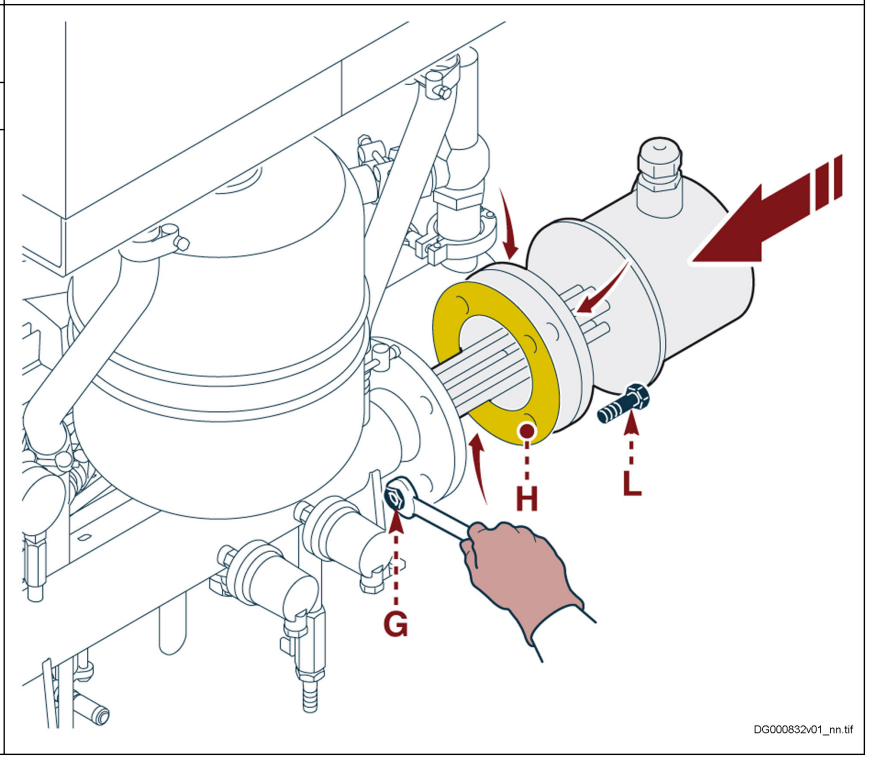
⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

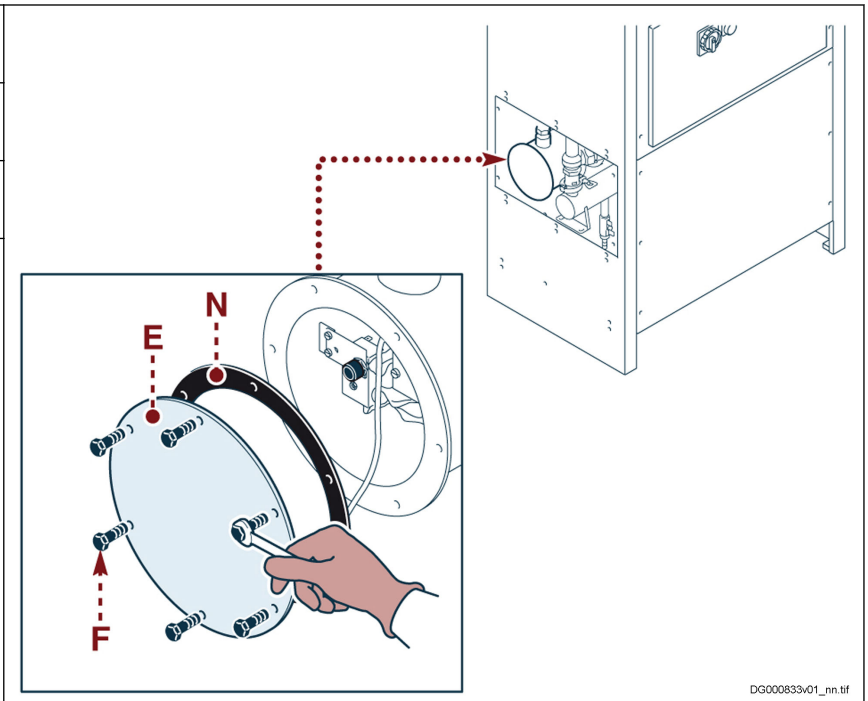
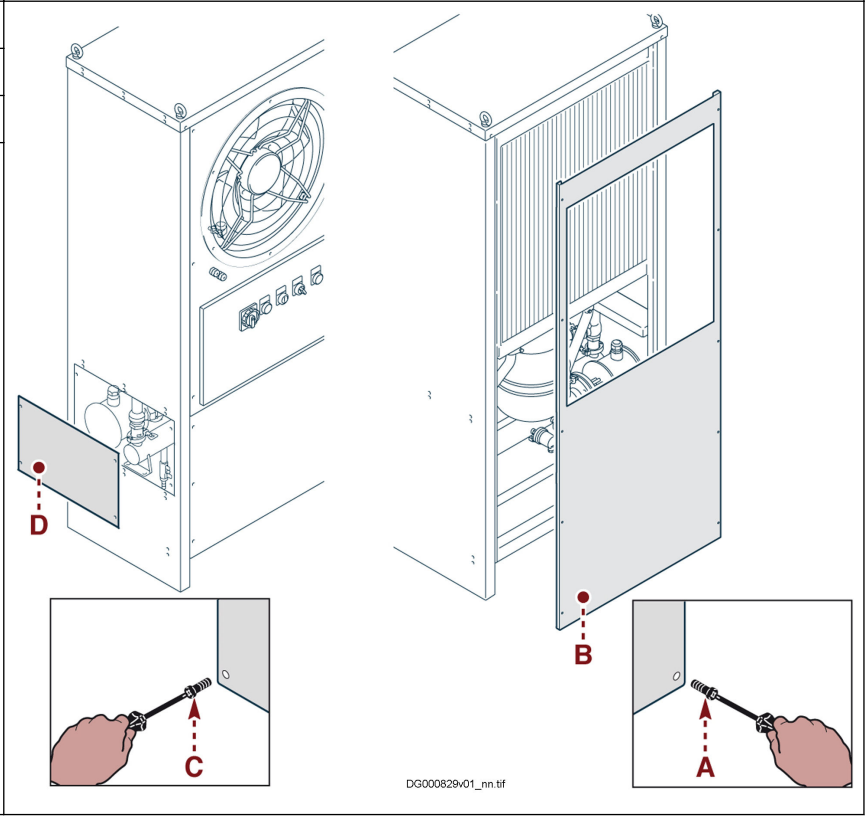
Due to the use of capacitors and even after the machine’s power supply has been disconnected, there is a serious risk of electric shock by contact with live parts.

Before removing the cover, always wait several minutes after disconnecting the electricity to the machine.

Make sure voltage has fallen below 50 V before touching live parts!

1	Disconnect the machine from the voltage source.	
2	Let the machine cool down.	
3	Drain the hydraulic system (see chapter "Emptying the hydraulic circuit" on page 597).	
4	Unscrew the screws (**A**).	
5	Remove the guard (**B**).	
6	Unscrew the screws (**C**).	
7	Remove the guard (**D**).	
8	Unscrew the screws (**F**).	
9	Remove the cover (**E**).	
10	Disconnect the cable from the terminals.	

11	Loosen the nuts (**G**).	
12	Unscrew the screws (**L**).	
13	Remove the heater (**M**).	
14	Position the new heater without damaging the seal (**H**).	
15	Insert the screws (**L**).	
16	Tighten the nut (**G**).	

17	Remove the cover from the new heater.	
18	Connect the cables (see wiring diagram).	
19	Position the cover (**E**) without damaging the seal (**N**).	
20	Tighten the screws (**F**).	
21	Position the protective device (**D**).	
22	Tighten the screws (**C**).	
23	Position the protective device (**B**).	
24	Tighten the screws (**A**).	

Tab. 8-262: Replacing the heater

Replacing the fuses

Fix the cause of the malfunction before replacing the fuse.

Replace the blown fuse only with a fuse that has the same specifications.

For the characteristics of the fuses see chapter "Description of the fuses" on page 579.

Replacing the coolant

Empty the hydraulic system of the machine (see chapter "Emptying the hydraulic circuit" on page 597).

Fill the hydraulic circuit (see chapter "Filling the hydraulic circuit" on page 592).

Disposing of old equipment

The disposal of old equipment must be carried out by qualified personnel.

When dismounting the machine, all individual parts have to be collected separately for disposal in accordance with applicable regulations and their chemical properties.

In accordance with the European Directive (WEEE), electrical and electronic components must either be disposed of at designated landfills or, if a new machine is purchased, the machine must be returned to the retailer in its entirety, including these parts.

The owner is responsible for delivering the machine, at the end of its working life, to the appropriate collection structures. Failure to comply shall lead to penalties foreseen by the regulations in force.

Control using MLD

Pressure control

The differential pressure between the machine's intake and its outlet has to be kept at a constant rate (1.5 bar, for example) so that the flow to the devices to be cooled can be easily set.

To control the pressure, the pump speed is varied based on the intake/outlet differential pressure.

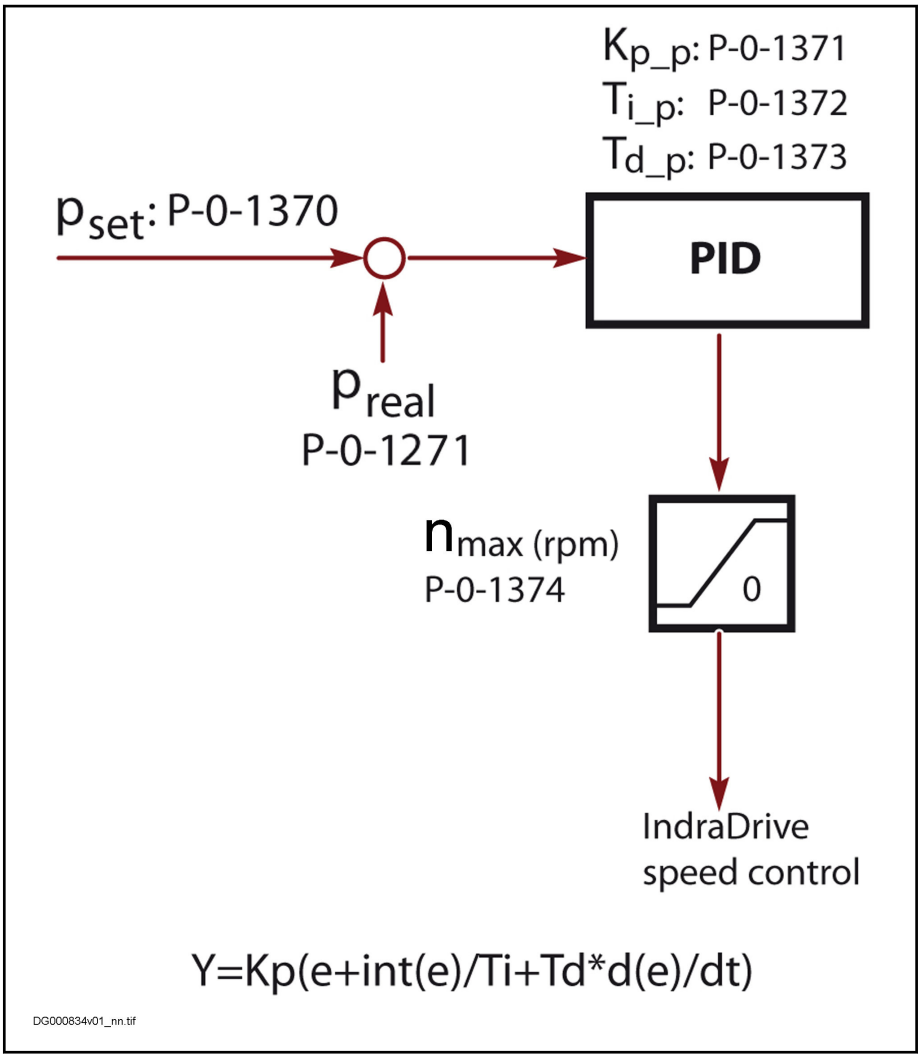


Fig. 8-172: Pressure control

Name	Parameter	Unit
p_{set}	P-0-1370	bar
K_{p_p}	P-0-1371	min^{-1} /bar
T_{i_p}	P-0-1372	s
T_{d_p}	P-0-1373	s

Name	Parameter	Unit
n_{max}	P-0-1374	min^{-1}
p_{real} (*)	P-0-1271	bar

* Read-only

Tab. 8-263: Pressure control parameters

Temperature control

When selecting the coolant temperature in the drive circuit, the climatic conditions of the system must be taken into account to prevent condensation on the equipment being cooled.

The temperature of the fluid is controlled by a variable speed electric fan which cools the fluid flowing through the heat exchanger.

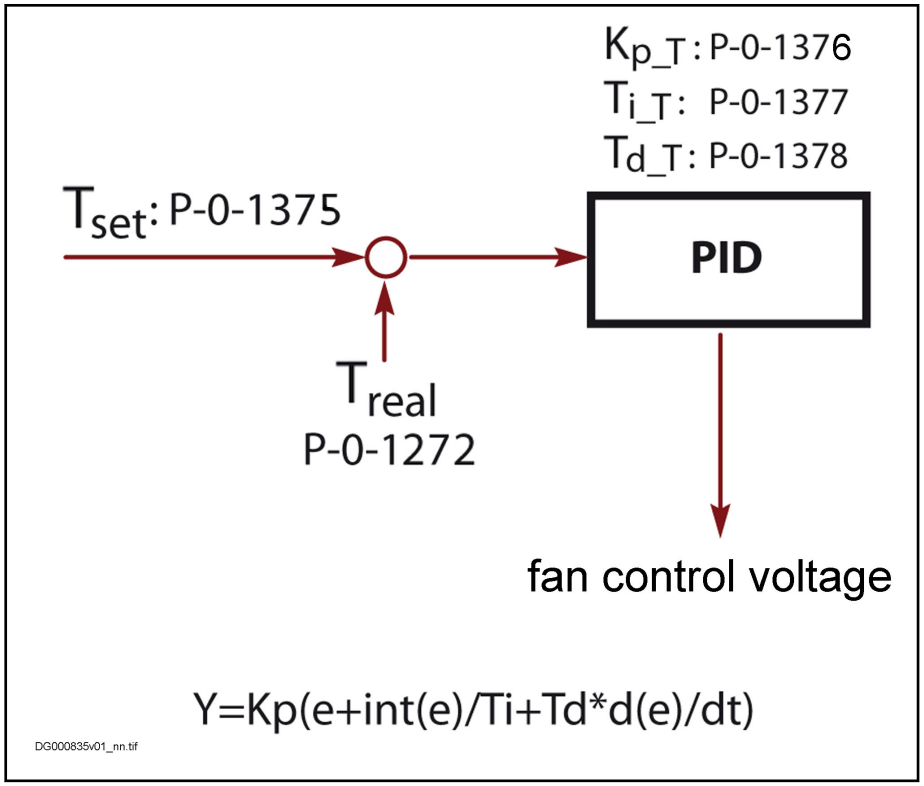


Fig. 8-173: Temperature control

Name	Parameter	Unit
T_{set}	P-0-1375	°C
K_{p_T}	P-0-1376	V / °C
T_{i_T}	P-0-1377	s
T_{d_T}	P-0-1378	s
T_{real} (*)	P-0-1272	°C
T_{real} (*)	P-0-1273	°F

* Read-only

Tab. 8-264: Temperature control parameters

Starting the machine

The machine is started (as per the predefined setting) solely with the digital command:

ENABLE (X31.1, P-0-1390)

You can set the type of machine enabling (starting via digital input or starting via the communication).

Start	Parameters	Input
Start selection 1	P-0-1380	digital
Start selection 2	P-0-1381	digital
Start command via communication	P-0-1382	digital

Tab. 8-265: Start options

The parameters **P-0-1380 and P-0-1381** can be set to "0" or "1".

If both parameters are set to the **same value** (0 or 1), the machine can be started via the digital input with **P-0-1390** (0 = off, 1 = on).

If both parameters are set to **different values**, the machine can be started via the communication with **P-0-1382** (0 = off, 1 = on).

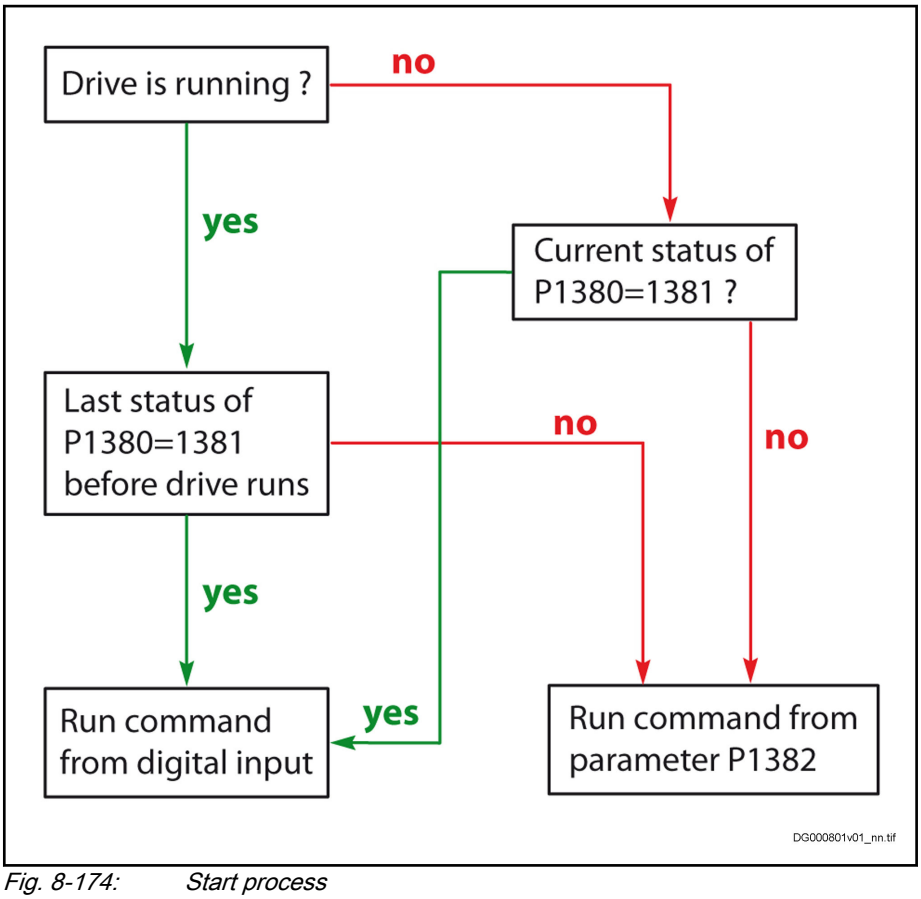


Fig. 8-174: Start process

Example: By setting the parameter P-0-1380 as a digital input and monitoring the parameters P-0-1381 and P-0-1382 via the PLC, the power-up command

for the machine can be transmitted either via the digital input or the PLC, from two different workstations.

Heating function (optional)

This feature is only available for machines equipped with an additional heater.

Heater operation is controlled automatically based on the temperatures of the fluid.

To measure the temperature, the same sensor is used as for temperature control.

The heater is switched on when the fluid temperature is below 0 °C and is switched off when the fluid temperature is above 30 °C.

When the heater has been switched on, the display at the drive controller shows "Heater is working".

Parameters

Hardware designation on the electronic type plate

Name	Parameters	012-020	020-090	022-090	035-090
Application type	S-0-1302.0.3	HAH02.1-WA012	HAH02.1-WA020	HAH02.1-WA022	HAH02.1-WA035

Tab. 8-266: Hardware designation on the electronic type plate (from software version ≥ 03V07)

Name	Parameter	Unit	Minimum value	Maximum value	012-020	020-090	022-090	035-090
$_{pset}$ (pressure command value)	P-0-1370	bar	0	2.0	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
$_{Kp}$ (pressure control)	P-0-1371	min^{-1} /bar	0	10000	40	40	40	40
T_i (pressure control)	P-0-1372	s	0.0	1000.0	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05
T_d (pressure control)	P-0-1373	s	0.0	1000.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
n_{max}	P-0-1374	min^{-1}	0	8000	3000	3000	3000	3000
Target temperature value	P-0-1375	°C	0	60	60	60	60	60
$_{Kp}$ (temperature control)	P-0-1376	V / °C	-1000.0	0.0	-0.5	-0.5	-0.5	-5.0
T_i (temperature control)	P-0-1377	s	0	10000	10	10	10	40
T_d (temperature control)	P-0-1378	s	0.0	1000.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Start selection 1	P-0-1380	-	0	1	0	0	0	0
Start selection 2	P-0-1381	-	0	1	0	0	0	0
Start command via communication	P-0-1382	-	0	1	0	0	0	0
p_{set_2} (pressure command value 2)	P-0-1385	bar	0.0	2.0	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2
Control word switching to p_{set_2}	P-0-1295	bit	-	-	0	0	0	0
High temperature warning differential value	P-0-1316	°C	0	20	10	10	10	10
High temperature warning time	P-0-1317	s	0	100	3	3	3	3

Name	Parameter	Unit	Minimum value	Maximum value	012-020	020-090	022-090	035-090
Overtemperature limit value	P-0-1318	°C	40	100	90	90	90	90
Control cabinet fan switch-on temperature	P-0-1319	°C	0	70	50	50	50	50
Tolerance in pressure control	P-0-1320	bar	0.0	10.0	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5
Low engine speed - Deceleration	P-0-1321	s	0	100	5	5	5	5

Tab. 8-267: Parameters

Name	Parameter	Unit	Type *	Scaling
Analog I/O monitoring parameters (read-only) with analog Hall sensors				
Fan control voltage	P-0-1270	V	AO	0-10 V, 0-100%
Pump differential pressure	P-0-1271	bar	-	-
Coolant temperature	P-0-1272	°C	-	-
Coolant temperature	P-0-1273	°F	-	-
Pressure sensor	P-0-1280	V	AI	0-10 V, 0-6 bar
Temperature sensor	P-0-1281	V	AI	0-10 V, -50-100 °C
Digital I/O parameters				
Drive enable	P-0-1390	bit 0	DI	
>, 0.5 bar pressure monitoring	P-0-1391	bit 0	DI	
>, 0.2 bar pressure monitoring	P-0-1391	bit 1	DI	
Fan monitoring	P-0-1391	bit 2	DI	TRUE for “Fan OK”
Status word machine	P-0-1410			
Cooler is running	P-0-1410	bit 0		Start command + P-0-1410.4 + no warning + no error
Command pressure value reached	P-0-1410	bit 1		abs(P-0-1370 - P-0-1271) < P-0-1320
The radiator is running (ignores warning)	P-0-1410	bit 3		Start command + P-0-1410.4 + no error
Motor running	P-0-1410	bit 4		Motor velocity (S40) ≥ 360
Drive warning	P-0-1412	bit 0	DO	"high" for no warning
Drive error	P-0-1412	bit 1	DO	"high" for no error
Heater enable	P-0-1412	bit 2	DO	
Fan approval	P-0-1412	bit 3	DO	
Housing fan enable	P-0-1412	bit 4	DO	

* AI: analog input; AO: analog output; DI: digital input; DO: digital output

Tab. 8-268: Parameters

Switching the pressure command value

The pressure command value can be switched via control word (P-0-1295.0). This function can be used for a more economical operation (lower energy consumption, less wear) if the new pressure command value is set to a lower value.

Pressure command value (p_{set})	P-0-1370
Pressure command value 2 (p_{set_2})	P-0-1385
Control word	P-0-1295.0
P-0-1295.0 = 0	Pressure command value: P-0-1370
P-0-1295.0 = 1	Pressure command value: P-0-1385

Tab. 8-269: Switching the pressure command value

With a pressure command value of 0.2 bar instead of 1.5 bar, laboratory measurements showed energy savings of 92% (40 W instead of 500 W). The motor speed decreased from 2200 min^{-1} to 760 min^{-1} resulting in a longer service life of the motor.

Cabinet fan control

The cabinet fan control applies only to units with cabinet heating (HAH02.**1-WAxxx-xxx-xx-xx-2**)

The cabinet fan will be turned on if the cabinet temperature (S-0-0384) is higher than the value in P-0-1319.

The cabinet fan will be turned off if the cabinet temperature (S-0-0384) is 5 °C/°F lower than value in P-0-1319.

9 Environmental protection and disposal

9.1 Environmental protection

Production processes

The products are manufactured in energy- and resource-optimized production processes which allow re-using and recycling the resulting waste. We regularly try to replace pollutant-loaded raw materials and supplies by more environment-friendly alternatives.

No release of hazardous substances

Our products do not contain any hazardous substances which may be released in case of appropriate use. Normally, our products will not have any negative influences on the environment.

Significant components

Significant components of our products are:

Electronic devices
- Steel
- Aluminum
- Copper
- Plastics
- Electronic components

Motors
- Steel / Stainless steel
- Aluminum
- Copper
- Brass
- Magnetic materials
- Elektronic components

9.2 Disposal

Return of products

Our products can be returned to us for disposal free of charge. However, this requires that the products be free from oil, grease or other dirt.

Furthermore, the products returned for disposal may not contain any undue foreign material or foreign components.

Deliver the products "free domicile" to the following address:

Bosch Rexroth AG
Electric Drives and Controls
Buergermeister-Dr.-Nebel-Straße 2
97816 Lohr am Main, Germany

Packaging

Packaging materials consist of cardboard, wood and polystyrene They can be recycled anywhere without any problem.

For ecological reasons, please refrain from returning the empty packages to us.

Batteries and accumulators

Batteries and accumulators can be labeled with this symbol.



The symbol indicating "separate collection" for all batteries and accumulators is the crossed-out wheeled bin.

End users in the EU are legally bound to return used batteries and accumulators. Outside the validity of the EU Directive 2006/66/EC, the particularly applicable regulations must be followed.

Batteries and accumulators can contain hazardous substances which can harm the environment or people's health when improperly stored or disposed of.

After use, the batteries or accumulators contained in Rexroth products must be properly disposed of according to the country-specific collection systems.

Recycling

Most of the products can be recycled due to their high content of metal. In order to recycle the metal in the best possible way, the products must be disassembled into individual assemblies.

Metals contained in electric and electronic assemblies can also be recycled by means of special separation processes.

Plastic parts of the products may contain flame retardants. These plastic parts are labeled according to EN ISO 1043. They have to be recycled separately or disposed of according to the applicable legal provisions.

10 Service and support

Our worldwide service network provides an optimized and efficient support. Our experts offer you advice and assistance should you have any queries. You can contact us **24/7**.

Service Germany

Our technology-oriented Competence Center in Lohr, Germany, is responsible for all your service-related queries for electric drive and controls.

Contact the **Service Hotline** and **Service Helpdesk** under:

Phone:	**+49 9352 40 5060**
Fax:	**+49 9352 18 4941**
E-mail:	service.svc@boschrexroth.de
Internet:	http://www.boschrexroth.com

Additional information on service, repair (e.g. delivery addresses) and training can be found on our internet sites.

Service worldwide

Outside Germany, please contact your local service office first. For hotline numbers, refer to the sales office addresses on the internet.

Preparing information

To be able to help you more quickly and efficiently, please have the following information ready:

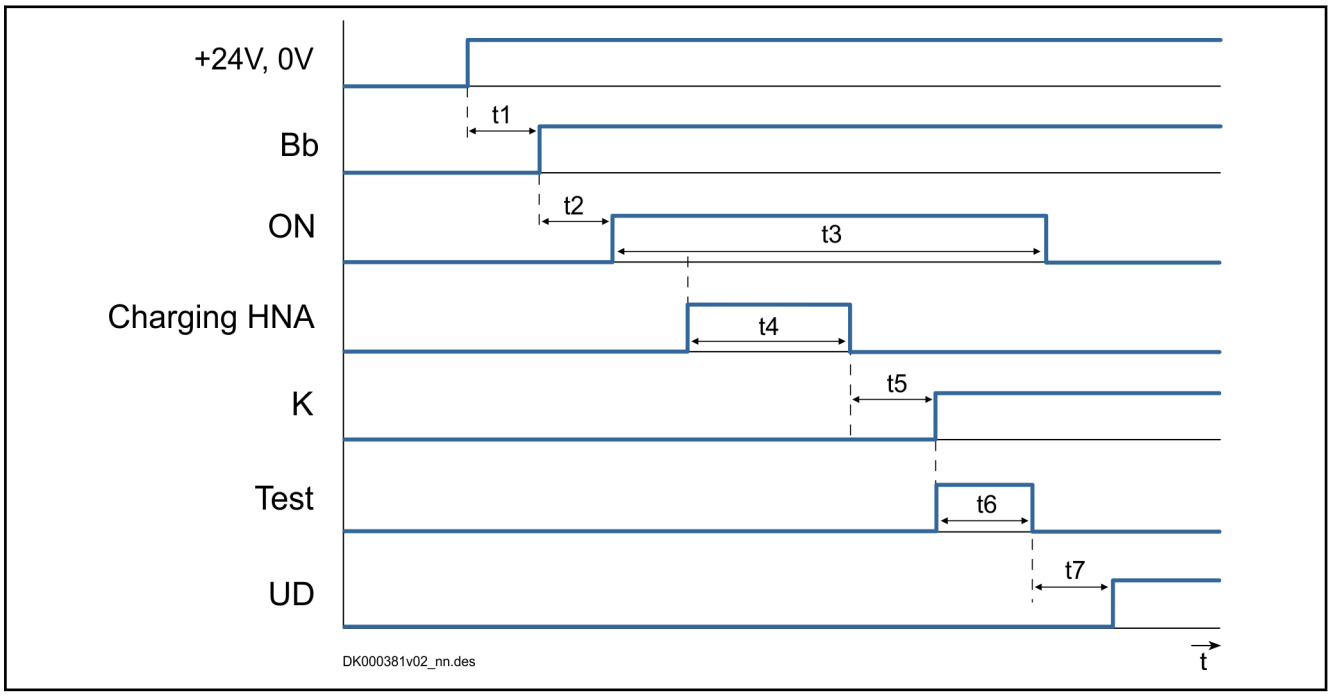
- Detailed description of malfunction and circumstances
- Type plate specifications of the affected products, in particular type codes and serial numbers
- Your contact data (phone and fax number as well as your e-mail address)

11 Appendix

11.1 Switching supply units on and off

11.1.1 Switching on

☞ See also Application Manual "IndraDrive Power Supply Basic PSB, Functions":
Chapter "Commissioning", subchapter "Supply unit with HMU"



Bb Readiness of the device group
K Load contactor/load switch
UD Ready for power output
t1 Time depends on whether the supply unit is connected to a control unit via the communication, and on how fast this control unit is booting up.
t2 The user can set the time. This time depends on the control or the machine.
t3 Switch-on pulse
t4 HNA charges the DC bus and switches the m
t5 The time depends on the DC bus capacitance (internal, external) and the mains voltage. Mains contactor is switched on by HNA.
t6 Time for internal test routines
t7 Time depends on the supply unit and the connected DC bus capacitances. Supply unit goes to "LB" (ready for power output) status

Fig. 11-1: Signal sequences when switching on with digital inputs/outputs

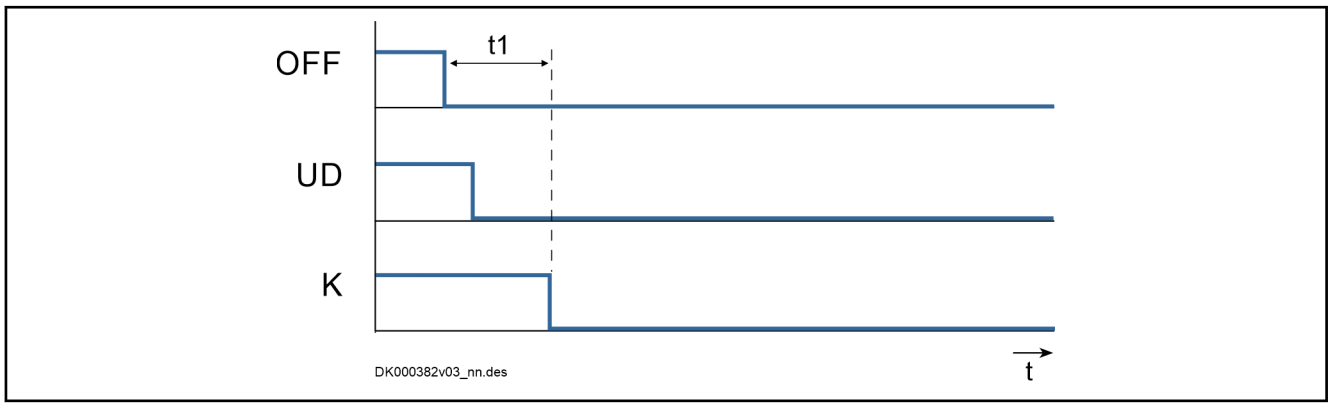
11.1.2 Switching off

☞ See also Application Manual "IndraDrive Power Supply Basic PSB, Functions":

Chapter "Commissioning", subchapter "Supply unit with HMU"

☞ At regenerative supply units, **at least 10 ms** have to elapse between the mains OFF request and the disconnection of the mains voltage, so that the energy flow has been interrupted when the disconnection process starts.

You can make sure this order is observed by using appropriate switch elements (e.g., by a control cabinet main switch with leading auxiliary contact). Wire the auxiliary contact in series to the -OFF mains.



K Load contactor/load switch
UD Ready for power output
t1 Time depends on device (mains contactor off delay); OFF relates to the hardware input

Fig. 11-2: Signal sequences when switching off

11.2 Reactive power

When reactive power compensation is enabled (S-0-1709.0.160, bit 0 = 1, bit 1 = 0), the supply unit automatically compensates for the reactive current of the components during operation.

A capacitive reactive current flows when the mains filter and, if applicable, the line capacitor are already connected to the line but the supply unit is not yet operational. The effect of the chokes is negligible.

$I_{LN} = 2 \times \pi \times f_N \times U_{LN} \times C_{eff}$
I_{LN}: capacitive reactive current (phase current)
f_N: Mains frequency
U_{LN} Line-to-line voltage of the mains
C_{rms}: Factor (see table below)

Tab. 11-1: Capacitive reactive power

Component		C_{eff} [As/V]
Mains filter	HNF05.1A- …	0.09×10^{-4}
Mains capacitor Mains voltage 3 × 500 V	HNC05.1N-0050-A4-…	1.15×10^{-4}
	HNC05.1N-0075-A4-…	1.59×10^{-4}
	HNC05.1N-0100-A4-…	2.02×10^{-4}
	HNC05.1N-0150-A4-…	2.89×10^{-4}
Mains capacitor Mains voltage 3 × 690 V	HNC05.1N-0040-A5-…	0.87×10^{-4}
	HNC05.1N-0050-A5-…	1.04×10^{-4}
	HNC05.1N-0070-A5-…	1.39×10^{-4}
	HNC05.1N-0100-A5-…	1.91×10^{-4}
	HNC05.1N-0125-A5-…	2.34×10^{-4}

Tab. 11-2: C_{eff} factor

11.3 Operation at third-party supply units

IndraDrive ML drive controllers are designed to be supplied via IndraDrive ML supply units.

In exceptional cases, other supply units (third-party supply units) can be used for supply (e.g. battery buffer, existing DC mains, ...) if the following **conditions** are met:

- The IndraBus in the IndraDrive ML drive system is closed and the Bb relays are wired into the EMERGENCY STOP chain of the third-party supply unit (or a connecting unit that separates the drive system from the DC bus).
- The DC bus capacitance (except for battery buffer without DC/DC converter) has to be at least as large as the corresponding capacity in an IndraDrive ML supply unit.
- For protection of the third-party supply unit, an HLL05 current-compensating DC bus choke has to be used between the third-party supply unit and the drive system.

  The DC bus ground capacitor pairs (HAS04.1-003) have to be mounted on the drive side. The sum of the leakage capacitances in the drive system (motors and cables) should not exceed 1.2 µF.
- The third-party supply unit should not contain any Y-capacitors in the DC bus. (Y-capacitors are allowed in the mains phases).
- An HLT05 braking unit with an external HLR05 braking resistor may be used.



The quality of the mains is determined by the third-party supply unit with its mains-side filters.

The requirements of the corresponding standards or supplementary customer requirements on the quality of the mains have to be ensured by the manufacturer of the third-party supply unit.

11.4 Sizing the line cross-sections and fuses

11.4.1 Introduction



The sizing of the line cross sections described here refers to the **short circuit protection** of the devices and not to the line protection.

Sizing the line cross sections and fuses in the supply feeder and branches to the drive system:

1. Determine the current in the supply feeder of the drive system and correct it with the correction factors for ambient temperature and bundling.
2. Determine the country of use ("international except for USA/Canada" or "USA/Canada")
3. Determine the installation type (e.g., B1 or B2)
4. In the "Current carrying capacity" table column, select the value that is immediately above the value determined in the first step
5. In the "Fuse" table column, read the corresponding fuse
6. In the "Cross section A …" table column, read the corresponding required cross section

11.4.2 International except for USA/Canada; installation type B1

Country of use: international except for USA/Canada				
Fuse I_N [A]			Current carrying capacity (× 0.87) $I_{Z(40)}$ [A]	Cross section A [mm²] Installation type B1
1 ×	2 ×	3 ×		
2			1.6	1.5
4			3.3	1.5
6			5.0	1.5
10			8.6	1.5
16			10.3	1.5
16			13.5	1.5
20			18.27	2.5
35			24.36	4
35			31.32	6
50			43.50	10
80			59.16	16
100			77.43	25
125			95.70	35
160			116.58	50
200			148.77	70
200			180.09	95
250			207.93	120

Country of use: international except for USA/Canada				
Fuse I_N [A]			Current carrying capacity (× 0.87) $I_{Z(40)}$ [A]	Cross section A [mm²] Installation type B1
1 ×	2 ×	3 ×		
250			227.94	150
315			257.52	185
355			301.02	240
400			342.78	300
	160		238.03	2 × 70
	160		288.14	2 × 95
	200		332.69	2 × 120
	200		364.70	2 × 150
	250		412.03	2 × 185
	315		481.63	2 × 240
	315		548.45	2 × 300
		125	312.42	3 × 70
		160	378.19	3 × 95
		160	436.65	3 × 120
		200	478.67	3 × 150
		200	540.79	3 × 185
		250	632.14	3 × 240
		315	719.84	3 × 300

Tab. 11-3: Line cross sections and fuses, B1 according to EN 60204-1:2006, Table 6, for 150mm² and more DIN IEC 60364-5-52:2004, Table B. 52-4

11.4.3 International except for USA/Canada; installation type B2

Country of use: international except for USA/Canada				
Fuse I_N [A]			Current carrying capacity (× 0.87) $I_{Z(40)}$ [A]	Cross section A [mm²] Installation type B2
1 ×	2 ×	3 ×		
2			1.6	0.75
4			3.3	0.75
6			5.0	0.75
10			8.5	0.75
16			10.1	1.0
16			13.05	1.5
20			17.40	2.5
25			23.49	4
35			29.58	6
50			40.02	10
63			53.94	16
80			69.60	25
100			86.13	35
125			102.66	50
160			129.63	70
200			155.73	95
200			179.22	120
224			195.75	150
250			221.85	185
315			258.39	240
355			294.93	300
	125		207.41	2 × 70
	160		249.17	2 × 95
	160		286.75	2 × 120
	200		313.20	2 × 150
	200		354.96	2 × 185
	250		413.42	2 × 240
	315		471.89	2 × 300
		100	272.22	3 × 70
		125	327.03	3 × 95
		160	376.36	3 × 120
		160	411.08	3 × 150

Country of use: international except for USA/Canada				
Fuse I_N [A]			Current carrying capacity (× 0.87) $I_{Z(40)}$ [A]	Cross section A [mm²] Installation type B2
1 ×	2 ×	3 ×		
		200	465.89	3 × 185
		200	542.62	3 × 240
		250	619.35	3 × 300

Tab. 11-4: Line cross sections and fuses, B2 according to EN 60204-1:2006, Table 6, for 150mm² and more DIN IEC 60364-5-52:2004, Table B. 52-4

11.4.4 International except for USA/Canada; installation type E

Country of use: international except for USA/Canada				
Fuse I_N [A]			Current carrying capacity (× 0.87) $I_{Z(40)}$ [A]	Cross section A [mm²] Installation type E
1 ×	2 ×	3 ×		
2			1.6	0.75
4			3.3	0.75
6			5.0	0.75
10			8.3	0.75
16			10.4	0.75
16			12.4	1
20			16.10	1.5
25			21.75	2.5
35			29.58	4
50			37.41	6
63			52.20	10
80			69.60	16
100			87.87	25
125			109.62	35
160			133.11	50
200			170.52	70
250			207.06	95
315			240.12	120
355			277.53	150
400			316.68	185
425			374.10	240
500			432.39	300
	160		272.83	2 × 70
	200		331.30	2 × 95
	250		384.19	2 × 120
	250		444.05	2 × 150
	315		506.69	2 × 185
	400		598.56	2 × 240
	400		691.82	2 × 300
		160	358.09	3 × 70
		200	434.83	3 × 95
		200	504.25	3 × 120

Country of use: international except for USA/Canada				
Fuse I_N [A]			Current carrying capacity (× 0.87) $I_{Z(40)}$ [A]	Cross section A [mm²] Installation type E
1 ×	2 ×	3 ×		
		250	582.81	3 × 150
		250	665.03	3 × 185
		315	785.61	3 × 240
		400	908.02	3 × 300

Tab. 11-5: Line cross sections and fuses, E according to EN 60204-1:2006, table 6, for 150mm² and more DIN IEC 60364-5-52:2004, table B. 52-10

11.4.5 USA/Canada; installation type E

Country of use: USA/Canada					
Fuse I_N				Current carrying capacity I_Z [A]	Cross section A Installation type E
1 ×	2 ×	3 ×	4 ×		
2				1.6	14 AWG
4				3.3	14 AWG
6				5	14 AWG
10				8.3	14 AWG
16				13	14 AWG
20				15	14 AWG
25				20	12 AWG
40				30	10 AWG
70				50	8 AWG
80				65	6 AWG
100				85	4 AWG
110				100	3 AWG
125				115	2 AWG
150				130	1 AWG
175				150	1/0 AWG
200				175	2/0 AWG
225				200	3/0 AWG
250				230	4/0 AWG
300				255	250 kcmil
300				285	300 kcmil
350				310	350 kcmil
350				335	400 kcmil
400				380	500 kcmil
450				420	600 kcmil
600				460	700 kcmil
600				475	750 kcmil
600				490	800 kcmil
600				520	900 kcmil
800				545	1000 kcmil
800				590	1250 kcmil
800				625	1500 kcmil
800				650	1750 kcmil

Country of use: USA/Canada					
Fuse I_N				Current carrying capacity I_Z [A]	Cross section A Installation type E
1 ×	2 ×	3 ×	4 ×		
800				665	2000 kcmil
	200			300	2 × 1/0 AWG
	225			350	2 × 2/0 AWG
	250			400	2 × 3/0 AWG
	300			460	2 × 4/0 AWG
	300			510	2 × 250 kcmil
	350			570	2 × 300 kcmil
	350			620	2 × 350 kcmil
	400			670	2 × 400 kcmil
	450			760	2 × 500 kcmil
	600			840	2 × 600 kcmil
	600			920	2 × 700 kcmil
	600			950	2 × 750 kcmil
	600			980	2 × 800 kcmil
	800			1040	2 × 900 kcmil
	800			1090	2 × 1000 kcmil
		200		450	3 × 1/0 AWG
		225		525	3 × 2/0 AWG
		250		600	3 × 3/0 AWG
		300		690	3 × 4/0 AWG
		300		765	3 × 250 kcmil
		350		855	3 × 300 kcmil
		350		930	3 × 350 kcmil
		400		1005	3 × 400 kcmil
		450		1140	3 × 500 kcmil
			200	600	4 × 1/0 AWG
			225	700	4 × 2/0 AWG
			250	800	4 × 3/0 AWG
			300	920	4 × 4/0 AWG
			300	1020	4 × 250 kcmil
			350	1140	4 × 300 kcmil
			350	1240	4 × 350 kcmil

Country of use: USA/Canada					
Fuse I_N				Current carrying capacity I_Z [A]	Cross section A Installation type E
1 ×	2 ×	3 ×	4 ×		
			400	1340	4 × 400 kcmil
			450	1520	4 × 500 kcmil

Tab. 11-6: Line cross sections and fuses according to UL508A:2007, Table 28.1

11.4.6 Rated values of the table values

1. Ambient temperature T_A of routed line ≤ 40 °C
2. Temperature T_L at the conductor during nominal current: 90 °C for UL-listed lines (USA/Canada) or 70 °C for PVC lines
3. The nominal current of the fuse is approx. 10-20% above the nominal current I_{LN} of the converter/supply unit or the determined current of the drive system.
4. Installation types:
   - B1 according to IEC 60364-5-52, e.g. stranded wires routed in the cable duct
   - B2 according to IEC 60364-5-52, e.g. multi-core line routed in the cable duct
   - E according to EN 60204-1 e.g. multi-conductor line installed on an open cable tray
   - according to NFPA 79 (external wiring), UL508A (internal wiring), NEC, NFPA 70:
     – 1 Cable with 3 lines, 1 neutral conductor and 1 protective conductor
     – surface mounting in a pipe

     internal wiring: Layout in the control cabinet or in devices

     external wiring: Layout outside the control cabinet

     field wiring: Specifications of cross-section of conenction terminals, wired by the user (in the field)
5. Recommendation for fuse design:
   - International except for USA/Canada:
     – Fuse-link according to IEC 60269-1, characteristic gG (fuses)
     – Circuit breaker according to IEC 60898-1/2, type B or C
     – Circuit breaker according to IEC 60947-2/6-2
   - USA/Canada:
     – Use listed AC input line fuses (class J and class L; 600 V AC). If time-inverted circuit breakers (in which case there is a requirement to provide evidence to UL that a suitable circuit breaker was used) or a Type E motor feeder are used, see UL 61800-5-1, 5.2.3.6.2DV.4.1.3

☞ **Correction factors**

The relevant standards specify correction factors for deviating rated values.

See tables below for the correction factors for ambient temperature and numbers of routed lines and circuits. The determined current in the feeder has to be multiplied with these factors, if required.

Ambient temperature correction factor

Ambient temperature T_A / °C	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
Correction factor according to EN 60204-1:2006, table D.1	0.87	0.93	1.00	1.1	1.22	1.41	1.73
Correction factor according to NFPA 79:2007, table 12.5.5(a)	0.88	0.94	1.00	1.1	1.18	1.32	1.52

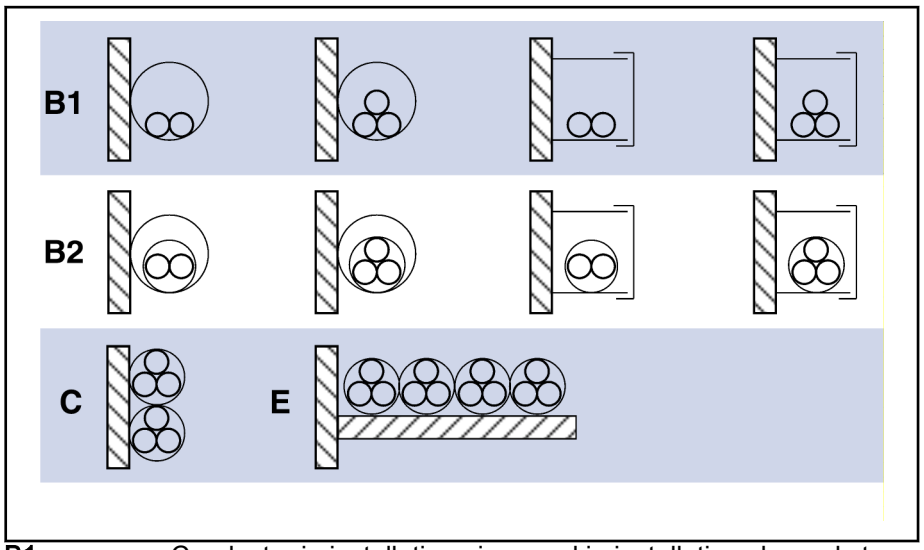
Tab. 11-7: Ambient temperature correction factor in accordance with EN 60204-1:2006 and NFPA 79:2007

Correction factor for bundling lines (installation methods B2 and E) and circuits (installation method B1[1)])

Number of lines	1	2	3	4	5
Correction factor according to EN 60204-1:2006, table D.2	1	1.25	1.43	1.54	1.67
Correction factor according to NFPA 79:2007, table 12.5.5(a)	1	1.25			

1) Three single conductors (L1, L2, L3) for power supply of a device are considered as one circuit.

Tab. 11-8: Correction factor in case of many lines and circuits according to EN 60204-1:2006 and NFPA 79:2007



B1 Conductor in installation pipes and in installation channels to be opened

B2 Cables or lines in installation pipes and in installation channels to be opened

C Cables or lines on walls

E Cables or lines on open cable trays.

Fig. 11-3: Installation methods (compare IEC 60364-5-52; VDE0298-7; EN 60204-1)

11.5 DC bus fuses

If drive components with lower power ratings are also connected to the DC bus, the cross-sectional area inevitably decreases.

The DC bus fuses have to be rated in accordance with the requirements of the connected devices and the requirements of the certifications (SCCR, voltage, power requirements of the connected devices, etc.).

11.6 Aluminum contact points and cupal disks

11.6.1 Introduction

Some components (e.g. chokes) may have **aluminum contact points** as connection points.

Aluminum contact points require a specific screw connection for establishing contact.

11.6.2 Preparation

The aluminum contact points come prepared for instant connection and do not need to be adapted when installed for the first time. The contact points are clean and have an anticorrosive coating.

The components with aluminum contact points come with bimetallic **cupal disks**. Cupal is a composite made of copper (Cu) and aluminum (Al).

Use cupal disks whenever contact is established between the aluminum contact point and any material other than aluminium.

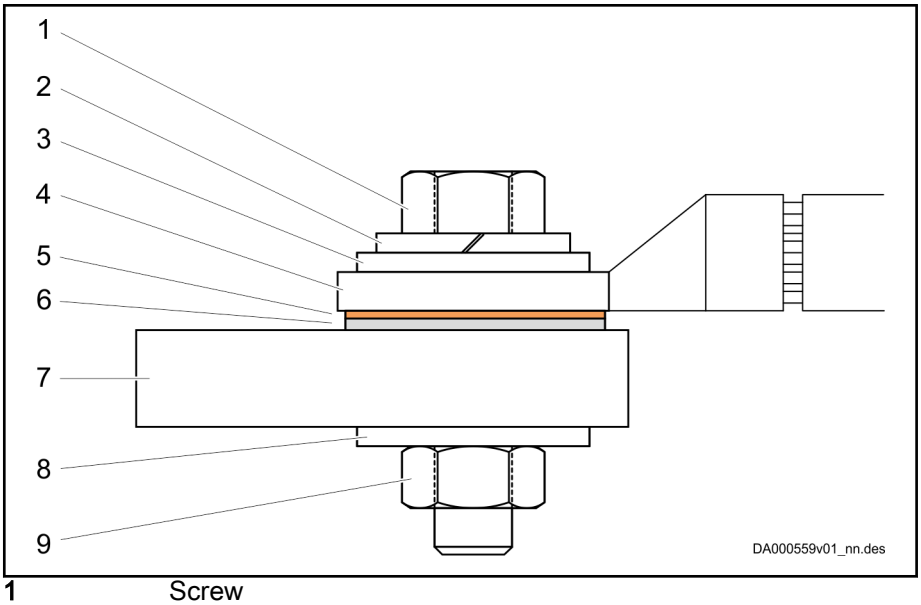
Clean both sides of the cupal disks with abrasive fleece before connecting them, and then grease the cupal disks with a thin layer of anticorrosive paste (contact grease).

If the connection is opened after operation, abrade and grease the connections and the cupal disks again.

11.6.3 Cupal disk

The aluminum side of the cupal disk always has to have direct contact to the aluminum contact point!

If contact is established on both sides of the aluminum contact point, also use a cupal disk on the opposite side.



1 Screw
2 Spring washer
3 Washer
4 Ring terminals
5 **Cupal disk (copper side)**
6 **Cupal disk (aluminum side)**
7 **Aluminum contact point**
8 Washer
9 Nut

Fig. 11-4: Connecting an aluminum contact point using a cupal disk

Tightening torque

NOTICE **Risk of damage from mechanical stress!**

Keep the aluminum contact point from inadmissible mechanical stress:

Always **hold the aluminum contact point and ring terminal in place** when tightening the screw connection.

Screw	Tightening torque [Nm]
M4	1.9
M5	3.7
M6	6.3
M8	15
M10	30
M12	52

Tab. 11-9: Tightening torque

Protection against corrosion

To protect the connection against corrosion, apply a thin layer of anticorrosive paste (contact grease) to the connection.

Suitable anticorrosive paste: acid- and alkali-free petrolatum

11.7 Leakage capacitances

11.7.1 Determining the leakage capacitance

The capacitances that generate so-called leakage currents against ground at the inverter outputs are referred to as leakage capacitance C_{ab}. The relevant values for the total value of leakage capacitance C_{ab_g} are:

- Capacitances of output filters
- Capacitances of power cables (capacitance per unit length against shield and ground wire)
- Capacitances of motors (winding capacitance against housing)

Leakage capacitance consists of the power cable and motor values for all individual drives operated on the mains filter.

Calculation:

$$C_{ab_g} = C_{ab_Mg} + C_{ab_Kg}$$

C_{ab_g} Total value of leakage capacitance
C_{ab_Mg} Total value of motor leakage capacitance
C_{ab_Kg} Total value of cable leakage capacitance

Fig. 11-5: Total leakage capacitance

The total capacitance C_{ab_Mg} is the sum of the capacitances of the individual motors. See motor documentation for these capacitances.

$$C_{ab_Mg} = C_{ab(Motor_1)} + C_{ab(Motor_2)} \cdots + C_{ab(Motor_n)}$$

C_{ab_Mg} Total value of motor leakage capacitance
$C_{ab(motor)}$ Leakage capacitance of a motor

Fig. 11-6: Total leakage capacitance of motor

$$C_{ab_Kg} = C_{Y_K\,typ\,(K1)} \times I_{(K1)} + C_{Y_K\,typ\,(K2)} \times I_{(K2)} \cdots + C_{Y_K\,typ\,(Kn)} \times I_{(Kn)}$$

C_{ab_Kg} Total value of cable leakage capacitance
$C_{Y_K\,typ}$ Capacitance per unit length of cables
$I_{(K)}$ Cable length

Fig. 11-7: Total leakage capacitance of cables

The total capacitance C_{ab_Kg} is the sum of capacitances of the individual power cables. See the technical data of the power cables for these capacitances per unit length.

11.7.2 Leakage capacitance of power cables

Note the information in the specifications of the cable manufacturer.

Leakage capacitance is specified in C per cable. In the case of parallel connection, the total value is the sum of individual cables.

☞ The rough calculation with the following values is allowed for Rexroth power cables (INKxxxx bulk cable):

- Cross section 1 … 10 mm^2: 1 nF/m
- Cross section 10 … 50 mm^2: 1.2 nF/m
- Cross section 50 … 300 mm^2: 1.3 nF/m

11.8 RSC - Relative Short Circuit Power

RSC

RSC is the relation of the short circuit power S_{k_mains} at the connection point of the mains to the rated apparent power $S_{inverter}$ of the connected inverter, or the relation of the short circuit current I_{k_mains} at the connection point of the mains to the maximum current $I_{inverter}$ of the inverter.

$RSC = S_{k_mains} \div S_{inverter}$

$RSC = I_{k_mains} \div I_{inverter}$

The RSC has a strong impact on low-frequency mains pollution transmitted by the inverter.

The stronger the mains related to the converter load (RSC high), the lesser the harmonics produced by the inverter affect the shape of the mains voltage and thus other connected loads.

RSC > 50

"Strong mains": With the same load, the mains current has somewhat higher current harmonics. The current harmonics do not cause any noticeable voltage distortions at the low system impedance.

IndraDrive ML Can be operated without any problem.

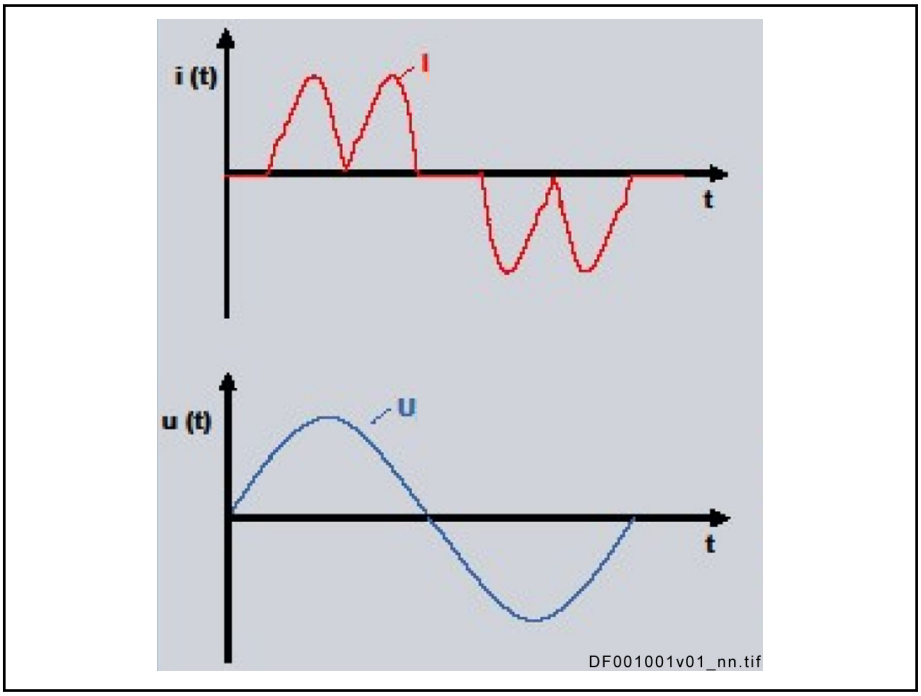


Fig. 11-8: Characteristic of mains current (I) and mains voltage (U) at RSC > 50

15 < RSC < 50

IndraDrive ML Can be operated without any problem. The THD values worsen as the RSC is reduced.

5 < RSC < 15

"Weak mains": The current harmonics cause noticeable voltage distortions at the high system impedance.

Operating IndraDrive ML might be problematic:

- Mains voltage increased

- Control dynamics affected
- EMC limit values not complied with
- Overcurrent protection reduced

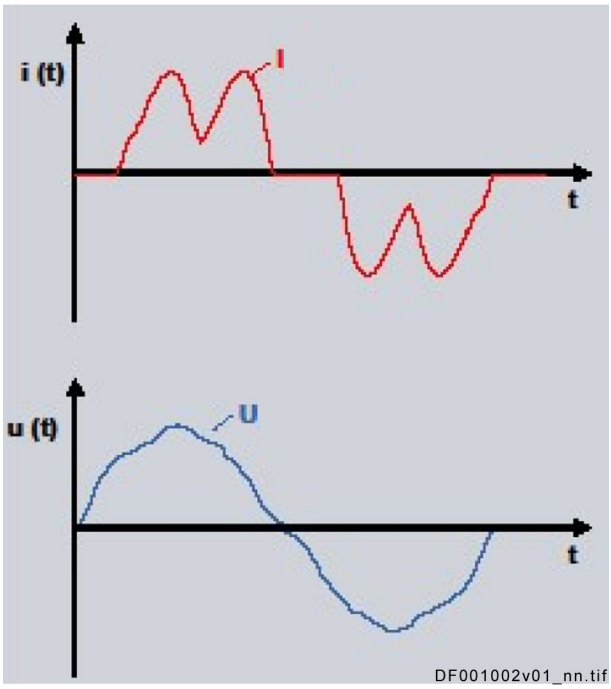


Fig. 11-9: Characteristic of mains current (I) and mains voltage (U) at RSC < 15

RSC < 5 It is not allowed to operate IndraDrive ML.

11.9 Total Harmonic Distortion (THD)

The parameters individually set for drive control have a strong influence on the **THDi** (mains current) and **THDu** (mains voltage) values. Therefore, the table shows typical values for the parameters set by default.

Basic conditions of the indicated values:

- Equipment with 250 kW
- Operation at 400 V/50 Hz with
  - Partial load 50%
  - Nominal load
  - Peak load
- Switching frequency: 4.2 kHz
- Output frequency of the load: 100 Hz
- System impedance: 21 µH; X/R ≈ 16; RSC ≈ 118

HMU05.1N-…-A4-D7

Size	Mains voltage [VAC]	Switching frequency [KHz]	THDi mains current [%]	THDu mains voltage [%]	Load
HMU05.1-F0140	400	4.2	3.993	4.940	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0140	400	4.2	4.332	4.843	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0140	400	4.2	2.529	4.851	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0140	500	4.2	3.622	4.272	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0140	500	4.2	2.217	3.882	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0140	500	4.2	1.585	3.904	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0170	400	4.2	2.489	4.014	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0170	400	4.2	0.785	4.867	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0170	400	4.2	1.262	5.157	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0170	500	4.2	3.786	3.455	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0170	500	4.2	0.453	4.150	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0170	500	4.2	2.135	4.564	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0220	400	4.2	3.189	4.224	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0220	400	4.2	2.247	1.646	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0220	400	4.2	2.244	2.482	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0220	500	4.2	4.871	3.620	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0220	500	4.2	1.427	4.687	Nominal load

Size	Mains voltage [VAC]	Switching frequency [KHz]	THDi mains current [%]	THDu mains voltage [%]	Load
HMU05.1-F0220	500	4.2	1.797	5.155	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0270	400	4.2	2.780	1.577	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0270	400	4.2	2.012	3.197	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0270	400	4.2	3.335	2.009	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0270	500	4.2	3.205	3.406	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0270	500	4.2	1.245	3.805	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0270	500	4.2	1.820	0.954	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0340	400	4.2	3.087	3.152	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0340	400	4.2	2.201	3.617	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0340	400	4.2	1.983	3.824	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0340	500	4.2	3.265	2.870	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0340	500	4.2	2.447	3.391	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0340	500	4.2	2.112	3.554	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0430	400	4.2	5.076	3.511	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0430	400	4.2	3.781	3.925	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0430	400	4.2	3.440	3.948	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0430	500	4.2	4.911	3.338	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0430	500	4.2	3.887	3.789	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0430	500	4.2	3.772	3.892	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0540	400	4.2	3.175	3.334	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0540	400	4.2	2.344	3.784	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0540	400	4.2	2.080	3.869	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0540	500	4.2	3.352	3.121	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0540	500	4.2	2.467	3.600	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0540	500	4.2	2.378	3.729	Peak load

Tab. 11-10: Total Harmonic Distortion (THD) HMU05.1N-…-A4-D7

HMU05.1N-…-A5-11

Size	Mains voltage [VAC]	Switching frequency [KHz]	THDi mains current [%]	THDu mains voltage [%]	Load
HMU05.1-F0140	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0140	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0140	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0140	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0140	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0140	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0170	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0170	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0170	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0170	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0170	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0170	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0220	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0220	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0220	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0220	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0220	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0220	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0270	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0270	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0270	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0270	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0270	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0270	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0400	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Partial load 50%

Size	Mains voltage [VAC]	Switching frequency [KHz]	THDi mains current [%]	THDu mains voltage [%]	Load
HMU05.1-F0400	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0400	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0400	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0400	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0400	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0540	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0540	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0540	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Peak load
HMU05.1-F0540	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Partial load 50%
HMU05.1-F0540	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Nominal load
HMU05.1-F0540	tbd	tbd	tbd	tbd	Peak load

Tab. 11-11: Total Harmonic Distortion (THD) HMU05.1N-…-A5-11

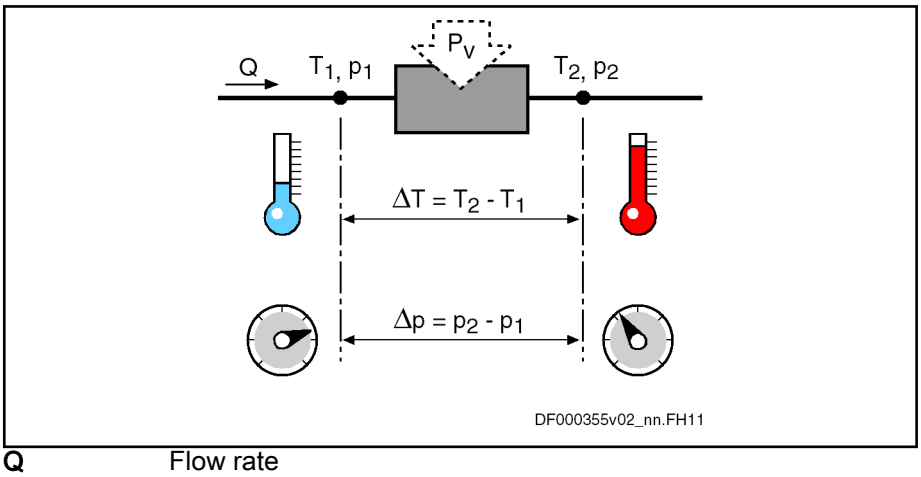
11.10 Liquid cooling

11.10.1 Sizing liquid cooling

Calculation criteria

Physical data

The figure below shows the fundamental physical data of a liquid-cooled drive component.



Q	Flow rate
$\Delta T = T_2 - T_1$	Temperature increase
$\Delta p = p_2 - p_1$	Pressure decrease
P_v	Power dissipation to be discharged

Fig. 11-10: Physical data

Flow rate

Flow rate

Coolant flows through liquid-cooled components. The flow rate Q indicates how much coolant volume ΔV per time interval Δt flows through the component.

$$Q = \frac{\Delta V}{\Delta t}$$

Q	Flow rate in l/min
ΔV	Coolant volume in l
Δt	Time interval in minutes in which ΔV flows

Fig. 11-11: Flow rate

Calculating the required flow rate

If the power dissipation P_V and the coolant are known, the required flow rate Q can be calculated with a selected coolant temperature increase ΔT.

The required flow rate Q can be calculated from the physical data of the component being cooled.

$$Q = \frac{P_V \times 60}{\Delta T \times \rho \times c}$$

P_V	Power dissipation to be discharged in kW
ΔT	Temperature rise of coolant in K
ρ	Density of coolant in kg/l
c	Specific thermal capacity of coolant in kJ/kgK

Fig. 11-12: Calculating the flow rate

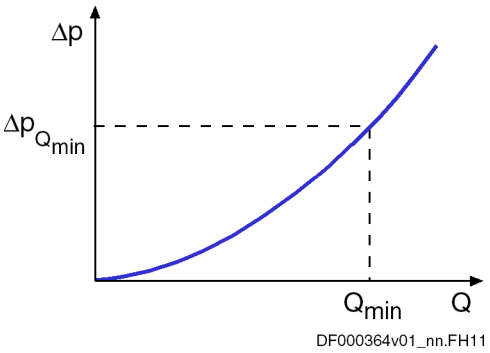
The flow rates are indicated in the technical data of the liquid-cooled components (referring to a fixed temperature increase of the coolant water). For any other temperature increase, calculate the flow rate using the above formula.

Pressure decrease

The coolant flow in a drive component is subject to changes in volume and direction. This results in losses in the drive components due to friction and change of direction. These losses cause the pressure decrease Δp.

The flow diagram shows how the pressure decrease Δp depends on the flow rate Q of a specific component.

Flow diagram



Δp	Pressure decrease
Δp_{Qmin}	Pressure decrease for Q_{min}
Q	Flow rate
Q_{min}	Min. required flow rate (see technical data for each component)

Fig. 11-13: Flow diagram

All other parts of the cooling system through which the coolant flows (tubes, valves, etc.) also cause pressure decreases.

Calculating pressure decrease

The pressure decrease Δp in liquid-cooled drive components is indicated in the technical data of each drive component. It refers to the indicated flow rate of the coolant water. These pressure decrease values only refer to drive components from Rexroth. The pressure decrease caused by equipment connected by the customer, such as screw connections, connecting bends, hose nozzles, etc., must be added to the pressure decrease of the drive component.

The flow rate-based pressure decrease can be calculated with the following formula:

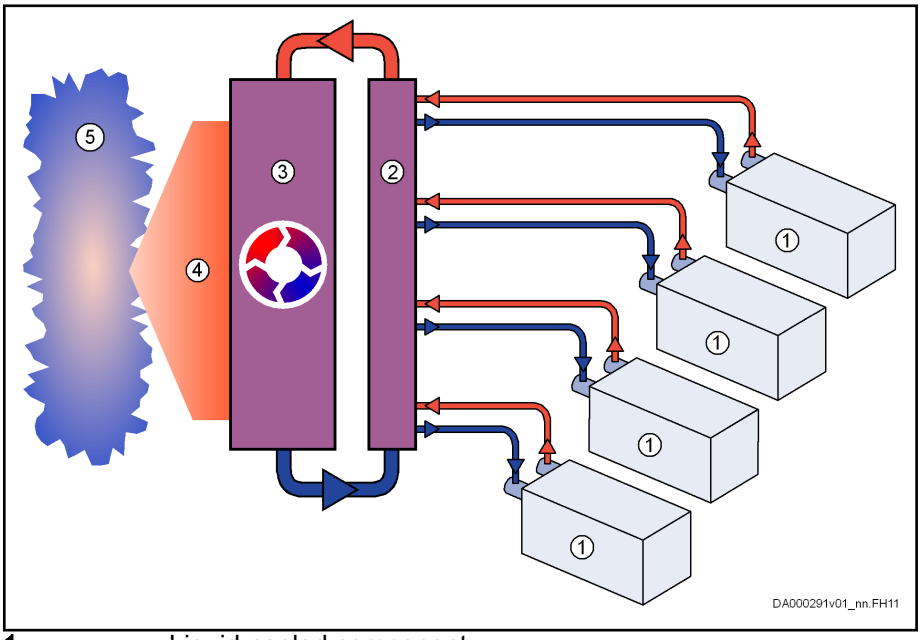
$$\Delta p = K_{\Delta p} \times Q^{1.75}$$

Δp	Pressure decrease
$K_{\Delta p}$	Constant (see technical data for each component)
Q	Flow rate in l/min

Fig. 11-14: Pressure decrease vs. flow rate

Sizing aids

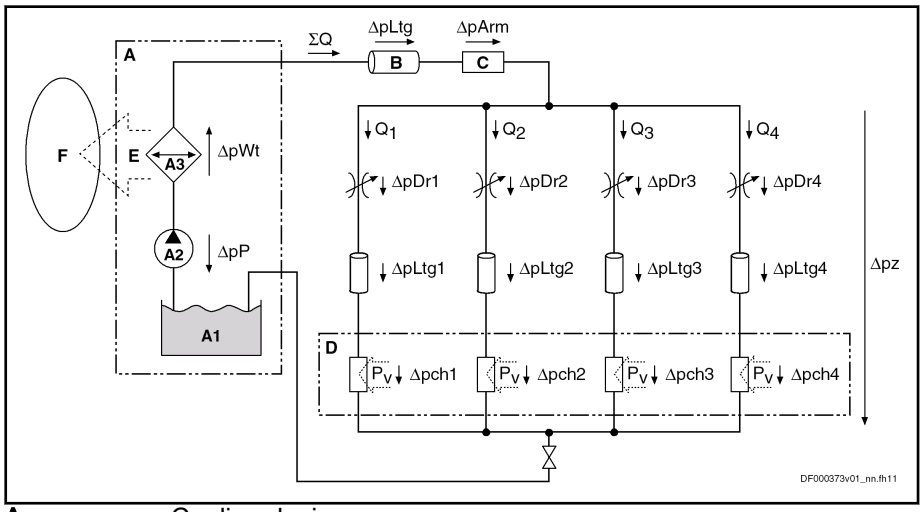
The following sizing aids are based on a cooling system with four components connected in parallel.



1	Liquid-cooled component
2	Main distributor of cooling liquid
3	Cooling device (cooling or refrigerating unit)
4	Heat dissipation
5	Higher-level cooling medium

Fig. 11-15: Arrangement with liquid-cooled components

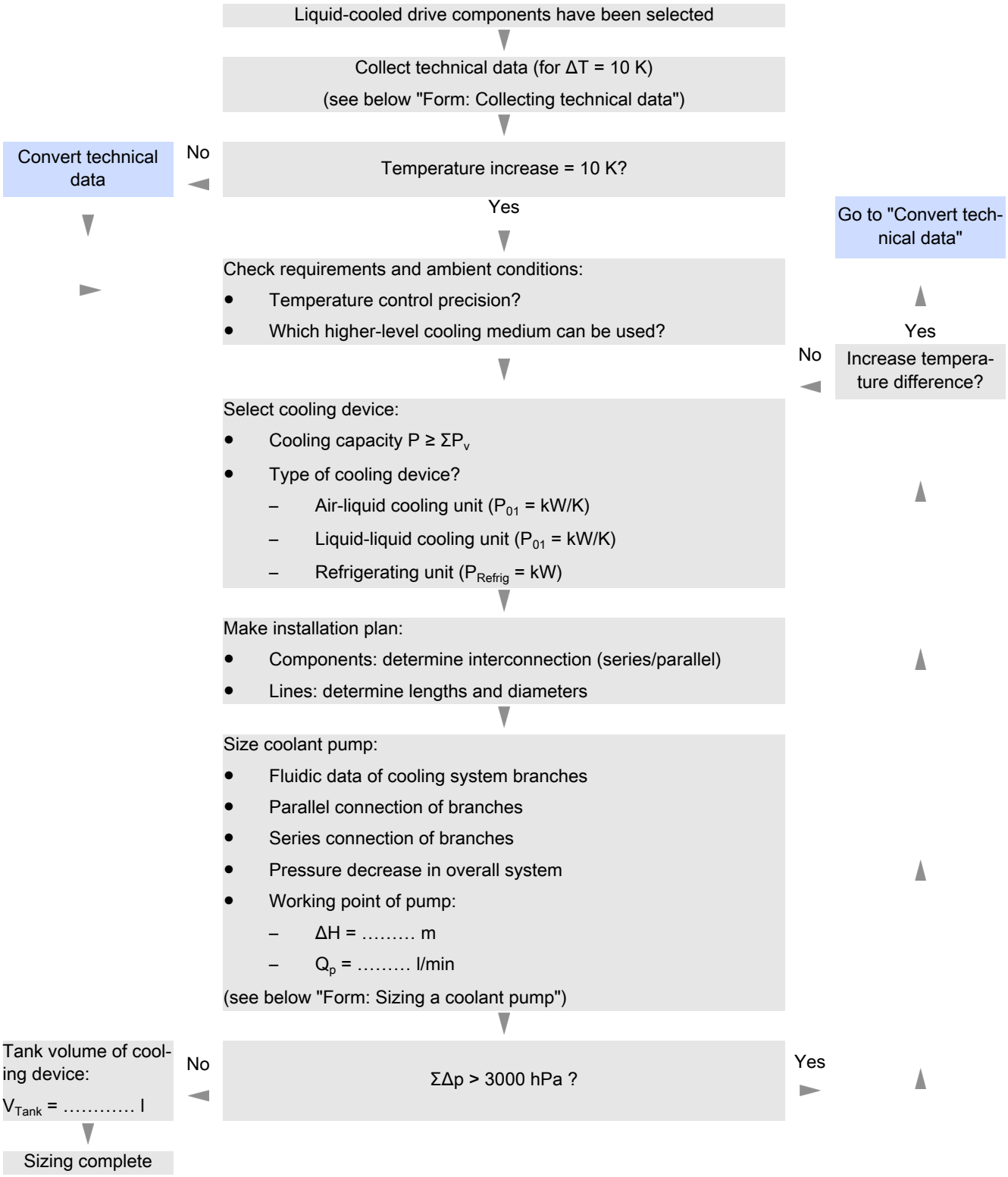
Liquid cooling circuit diagram



A	Cooling device
A1	Coolant container
A2	Coolant pump
A3	Heat exchanger
B	Coolant lines
C	Fittings
D	Drive components being cooled
E	Heat transfer
F	Higher-level cooling medium
Q	Flow rate
Δp	Pressure decrease (Arm: fittings; ch: drive components; Dr: choke; Ltg: line; P: coolant pump; Wt: heat exchanger)
ΔP_v	Power dissipation of a drive component being discharged

Fig. 11-16: Liquid cooling circuit diagram for four liquid-cooled drive components

Sizing a cooling system



Tab. 11-12: Sizing a cooling system

Form: Collecting technical data

Drive component	P_v [kW] Coolant	P_v [kW] Air	Q [l/min]	Δp [hPa]	ΔT [°C]	V [l]
	ΣP_{vCl}	ΣP_{vAir}				

Tab. 11-13: Collecting technical data

Form: Sizing a coolant pump

Fluidic data of cooling system branches										
Cooling system branch				1	2	3	4	5	…
Drive component	Type designation								
	Flow rate	Q_{chn}	l/min						
Pressure decreases	Coolant line	Length l_n	m						
		Added length l_{add}	m						
		Ø d	mm						
		$\Delta p_L/\Delta l$ for Q_{ch}	hPa/m						
		Δp_{Ln}	hPa	+	+	+	+	+	+
	Drive component	Δp_{chn}	hPa	+	+	+	+	+	+
	Additional component	Δp_{Add}	hPa	+	+	+	+	+	+
Total pressure decrease:	Without choker valve	Δp_{Bn}	hPa	=	=	=	=	=	=
(Only with parallel connection)	With choker valve [1)]	Δp_{Bn}	hPa	=	=	=	=	=	=
Parallel connection of branches no. ……									
Total pressure decrease		Δp_b	hPa						

Total flow rate	With choker valve [1]	ΣQ_{ch}	l/min						
	Without choker valve [2]	Approximation Q_{chn}	l/min						
		ΣQ_{ch}	l/min						
Series connection of branches no. ……									
Total pressure decrease		$\Sigma \Delta p_{Bn}$	hPa						
Total flow rate		ΣQ_{chnmax}	l/min						
Pressure decrease in overall system									
	Cooling system branches	Δp_B or Σp_{Bn}	hPa	+					
	Coolant line	Length l_0	m						
		Added length l_{add0}	m						
		Diameter d_0	mm						
		ΣQ_{ch}	l/min						
		$\Delta p_L/\Delta l$ for Q_{ch}	hPa/m						
		Δp_L	hPa	+					
	Heat exchanger	Δp_{He}	hPa	+					
	Fittings	Δp_{Ftg}	hPa	+					
	Additional component	Δp_{Add}	hPa	+					
	Overall cooling system	**Δp_{Cs}**	**hPa**	+					
Working point of coolant pump									
	Required delivery height	ΔH	m						
	Required delivery rate	Q_P	l/min						

1) The required coolant flow Q_{chn} is set with the choker valve in the cooling system branch.

2) The coolant flow Q_{chn} is set according to the pressure decrease over the cooling system branches Δp_b.

Tab. 11-14: Form for sizing coolant pump

11.10.2 Sizing example

The calculation for the cooling device is shown using a drive system to clarify the sizing calculation.

Components

- 1x supply unit with P = 400 kW
- 1x drive controller with P = 250 kW
- 1 × drive controller with P = 132 kW

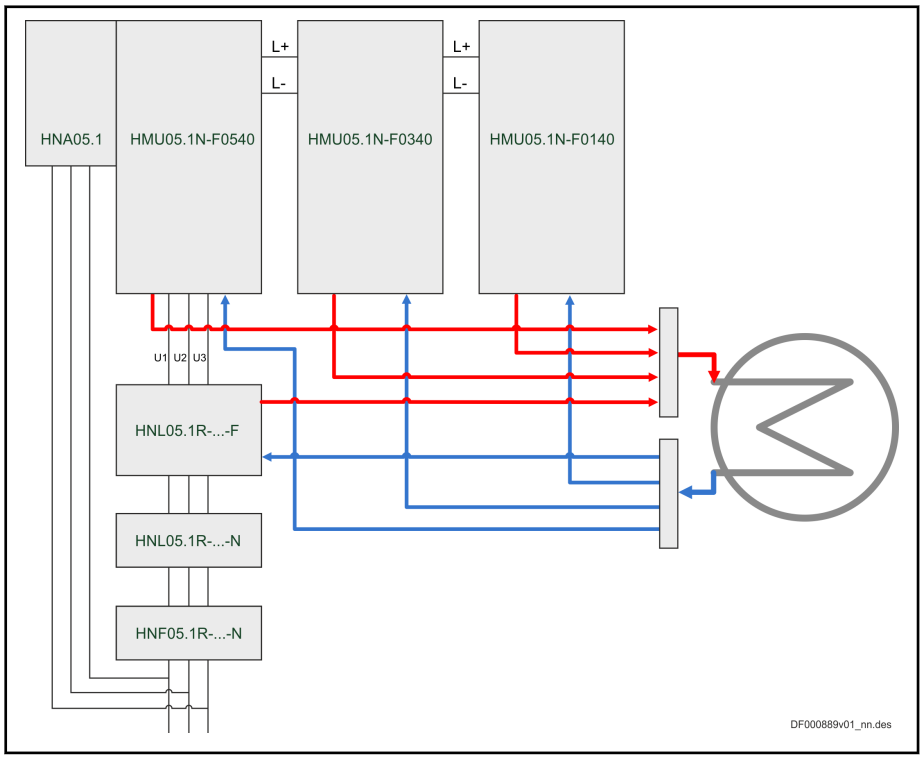


Fig. 11-17: Components

Form: Collecting technical data (for temperature increase = 10 K)

Drive component	P_v [kW] Coolant	P_v [kW] Air	Q [l/min]	Δp [hPa]	ΔT [°C]	V [l]
HMU05.1N-F0540	7.5	1.2	15.8	1.3	10	xxx
HMU05.1N-F0340	4,5	1	9	0.6		xxx
HMU05.1N-F0140	2.5	0.5	4,5	0.4		xxx
HNL05.1R	4	1.8	10	1.5		xxx
HNA05.1	-	0.15				
	ΣP_{vCl} = 18.5 kW	ΣP_{vAir} = 4.65 kW				ΣV_{ch} xxx

Tab. 11-15: Collecting technical data

Coolant

The coolant should be a 4:1 mixture of water and "Antifrogen" (N or L) or "Glysofor N" (e.g. RiFrost 1:4 from Rittal).

Do **not** mix "Antifrogen/Glysofor N" with "Antifrogen/Glysofor L". When switching the coolant (N for L or vice-versa), thoroughly rinse out all components and lines before adding the new coolant.

Maximum coolant temperature

At nominal power dissipation, the temperature increase in the coolant is 10 K at the given minimum flow rates. If the maximum coolant inlet temperature is 60°C, the maximum coolant temperature is 70°C.

Requirements for ambient conditions

No higher-level liquid cooling system is available at the installation site. The requirements on the temperature accuracy of the coolant are low (±5 K).

Selecting the cooling device

The absorbed thermal energy should be dissipated into the ambient air with an air-liquid cooling unit.

The cooling liquid must dissipate 18.5 kW of heat output into the ambient air. The maximum expected air temperature is 35°C.

Specific cooling capacity:

$$P_{01} = \frac{\Sigma P_V}{(T_{ein} - T_{amb})}$$

ΣP_V = 18.5 kW (sum of power dissipations from technical data of drive components)

T_{ein} = 60°C, max. coolant inlet temperature into cooling unit

T_{amb} = 35°C according to ambient conditions

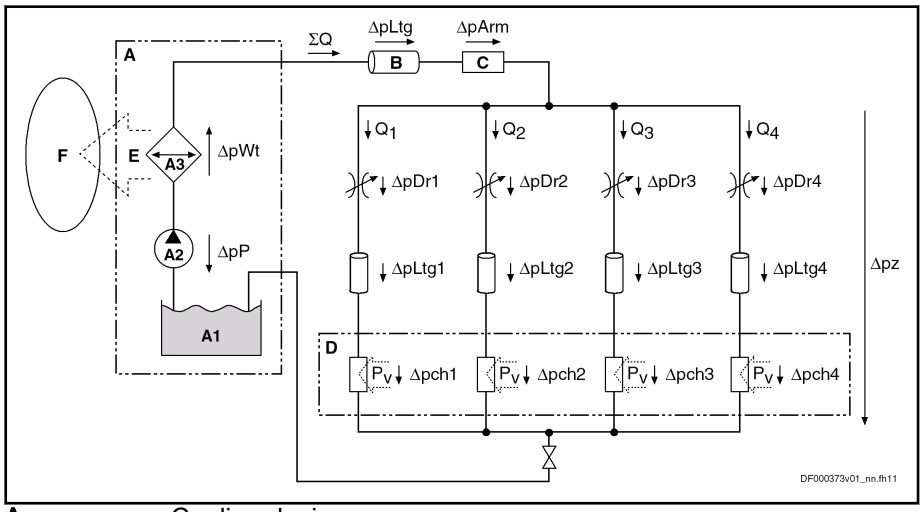
P_{01} = 18.5 ÷ (60 - 35) = 0.74 kW/°C

In addition, a cooling device should be installed on the control cabinet that can absorb the power of 4.65 kW dissipated into the air.

Fluidic interconnection

Due to the very different coolant flow rates of the drive components, the fluidic connection of the cooling system branches for the drive components is in parallel.

Creating an installation plan



A	Cooling device
A1	Coolant container
A2	Coolant pump
A3	Heat exchanger
B	Coolant lines
C	Fittings
D	Drive components to be cooled
E	Heat transfer
F	Higher-level cooling medium
Q	Flow rate
Δp	Pressure drop (Arm: fittings, ch: drive component, Dr: choke, Ltg: line, P: coolant pump, Wt: heat exchanger)
ΔP_v	Power dissipation of a drive component to be discharged

Fig. 11-18: Liquid cooling circuit diagram

Sizing the coolant pump

Fluidic data of cooling system branches								
Cooling system branch				1	2	3	4	…
Drive component	Type designation							
	Flow rate	Q_{chn}	l/min					
Pressure drops	Coolant line	Length l_n	m					
		Added length l_{zn}	m					
		Ø d	mm					
		$\Delta p_{Ltg}/\Delta l$ at Q_{ch}	hPa/m					
		Δp_{Ltgn}	hPa					
	Drive component	Δp_{chn}	hPa					
	Additional component	Δp_{Zus}	hPa	+ /	+ /	+ /	+ /	
Total pressure drop:	Without choker valve	Δp_{Zn}	hPa					
(Only with parallel connection)	With choker valve [1)]	Δp_{Zn}	hPa					

Parallel connection of branches no. 1,2,3,4								
Total pressure drop		Δp_z	hPa					
Total flow rate	With choker valve [1]	ΣQ_{ch}	l/min					
	Without choker valve [2]	Approximation Q_{chn}	l/min	/	/	/	/	
		ΣQ_{ch}	l/min	/				
Series connection of branches no. ……								
Total pressure drop		$\Sigma \Delta p_{Zn}$	hPa					
Total flow rate		ΣQ_{chnmax}	l/min					
Pressure drop in overall system								
	Cooling system branches	Δp_Z or Σp_{Zn}	hPa					
	Coolant line	Length l_0	m					
		Added length l_{z0}	m					
		Ø d_0	mm					
		ΣQ_{ch}	l/min					
		$\Delta p_{Ltg}/\Delta l$ at ΣQ_{ch}	hPa/m					
		Δp_{Ltg}	hPa					
	Heat exchanger	Δp_{Wt}	hPa					
	Fittings	Δp_{Arm}	hPa					
	Additional component	Δp_{Zus}	hPa	+ /				
	Overall cooling system	**Δp_{KS}**	**hPa**					
Working point of coolant pump								
	Required delivery height	ΔH	m					
	Required delivery rate	Q_P	l/min					

1) The required coolant flow Q_{chn} is set with the choker valve in the cooling system branch.

2) The coolant flow Q_{chn} is generated according to the pressure drop over the cooling system branches Δp_z.

Tab. 11-16: Sizing the coolant pump

Since the pressure drop of the overall cooling system is below the allowed input pressure, the sizing of the coolant pump is completed.

Tank

$$V_T = V_{Ks} + 1,3 \times V_{T_min}$$

$$V_{Ks} = V_{Wt} + V_{Arm} + V_{ch} + V_{Ltg}$$

with

V_{Wt} = …… from the heat exchanger manufacturer's specifications

V_{Arm} = …… from the fittings manufacturer's specifications

V_{ch} = …… collected from the technical data of the drive components

V_{Ltg} = line lengths x flow cross-section

V_{Vt} = from the distributor manufacturer's specifications

Conclusion The data determined for the cooling device can be retained in the procedure diagram. These data can be used to contact the supplier of the cooling device.

11.11 UL/CSA - Component designations

Component	Type identifier	E-File	Description in the E-file
Mains filter HNF05.1A-...-A5-NNNN	HNF05.1A-500N-R0150-N-A5-NNNN	E172117 E70122	B84143-B150-S58
	HNF05.1A-500N-R0180-N-A5-NNNN		B84143-B180-S58
	HNF05.1A-500N-R0250-N-A5-NNNN		B84143-B250-S58
	HNF05.1A-500N-R0320-N-A5-NNNN		B84143-B320-S58
	HNF05.1A-500N-R0400-N-A5-NNNN		B84143-B400-S58
	HNF05.1A-500N-R0600-N-A5-NNNN		B84143-B600-S58
	HNF05.1A-500N-R1000-N-A5-NNNN		B84143-B1000-S58
Mains choke HNL05.1R-...-A4-NNNN (Netzvordrossel)	HNL05.1R-0045-N0327-N-A4-NNNN	E472843	DVD120b13975A
	HNL05.1R-0054-N0409-N-A4-NNNN		DVD150b13552B
	HNL05.1R-0043-N0514-N-A4-NNNN		DVD168b13675B
	HNL05.1R-0050-N0652-N-A4-NNNN		DVD150d13976A
	HNL05.1R-0040-N0811-N-A4-NNNN		DVD150d13611B
Mains choke HNL05.1R-...-A4-NNNF (Chopper choke)	HNL05.1R-0219-N0218-N-A4-NNNF	E472843	DKD132d13766B
	HNL05.1R-0182-N0262-N-A4-NNNF		DKD132d13767B
	HNL05.1R-0135-N0327-N-A4-NNNF		DKD150d13972A
	HNL05.1R-0117-N0409-N-A4-NNNF		DKD150d13539B
	HNL05.1R-0130-N0514-N-A4-NNNF		DKD168d13674B
	HNL05.1R-0113-N0652-N-A4-NNNF		DKD210d13973A
	HNL05.1R-0100-N0811-N-A4-NNNF		DKD210d13606B
DC bus choke HLL05.1F-...-N-11-01U2-NNNN HLL05.1W-...-N-11-01U2-NNNN	HLL05.1F-04M0-S0202-N-11-01U2-NNNN	E472843	ZKD132d13964B
	HLL05.1W-04M0-S0202-N-11-01U2-NNNN		ZKD132d14033B
	HLL05.1F-04M0-S0243-N-11-01U2-NNNN		ZKD132d13965B
	HLL05.1F-04M0-S0303-N-11-01U2-NNNN		ZKD150d13966B
	HLL05.1W-04M0-S0303-N-11-01U2-NNNN		ZKD150d14101B
	HLL05.1F-04M0-S0380-N-11-01U2-NNNN		ZKD150d13538B
	HLL05.1F-04M0-S0475-N-11-01U2-NNNN		ZKD168e13876C
	HLL05.1F-04M0-S0603-N-11-01U2-NNNN		ZKD168d13967B
	HLL05.1F-04M0-S0720-N-11-01U2-NNNN		ZKD168d13628D

Component	Type identifier	E-File	Description in the E-file
Motor/balancing choke HML05.1W-D...-N-500-NNNN	HML05.1W-D021U-N0254-N-500-NNNN	E472843	DSD105b14028A
	HML05.1W-D018U-N0306-N-500-NNNN		DSD114b14029A
	HML05.1W-D014U-N0392-N-500-NNNN		DSD120b14030A
	HML05.1W-D009U-N0490-N-500-NNNN		DSD120b14031A
	HML05.1W-D009U-N0616-N-500-NNNN		DSD132b14009A
	HML05.1W-D007U-N0771-N-500-NNNN		DSD132b14032A
	HML05.1W-D006U-N1002-N-500-NNNN		DSD132b13630C

Tab. 11-17: UL/CSA components

Index

0 … 9

24 V supply
Connection point ... 140, 208, 360
Continuous power ... 101
Installation ... 102
Peak current ... 102
24V power supply unit ... 367
24V supply
Project planning ... 100

A

Acceptance tests ... 121
Accessories
Blank cover (HAS10) ... 183
Cabinet mounting kit (HAS08) ... 166
HAS03 ... 165
HAS08 ... 166
HAS10 ... 183
Mounting and connection accessories (HAS03) ... 165
Overview ... 163
Accumulators ... 621
Additional components ... 198
Overview ... 163
Additional documentation ... 17
ADVANCED
CSH02.5 ... 12
Air-liquid cooling unit
Cooling capacity ... 60
Air-to-liquid cooling unit
Features ... 54
Air-water heat exchanger
HAH02.1-WA035-090 ... 569
Aluminum contact points
Cupal disks ... 641
Ambient conditions ... 49
Applications
IndraDrive ML ... 3
Approvals ... 121
Assignment
HMU05 and additional components HNF05, HNL05, HNC05 ... 116
Axis coupling ... 119

B

BASIC
CSB02.5 ... 12
Batteries ... 621
Bleed valve, clean connector
HAH02.1-WA020-090 ... 550
HAH02.1-WA035-090 ... 601
HAH02.1-WW060-180 ... 457
Braking resistor
external, HLR05 ... 336
HLR05, data ... 338
Braking unit
HLT05 ... 342
Brief description
HMU05 ... 33

C

C-UL-US listing ... 121
Cables
Capacitance ... 643
Encoder cables, selection table ... 40
Leakage capacitance ... 643
Overview ... 163
Shield connection ... 143
Calculations
Leakage capacitance ... 643
Liquid cooling ... 650
Mains-side phase current ... 114
Phase current ... 114
Capacitance
Power cables ... 643
CCC, China Compulsory Certification ... 123
CE label ... 121
Certifications ... 121
Characteristic
Fuses ... 638
China Compulsory Certification (CCC) ... 123
Chopper throttle
HNL05 ... 279
Cleaning the bleed valve and connector
HAH02.1-WA012-020 ... 506
Combination
HMU05, HNF05, HNL05, HNC05 ... 116
Combining a mains choke and mains filter ... 116
Compatibility
With foreign matters ... 72
Components
Combining ... 33
Mounting positions ... 51, 94
Condensation protection
For liquid cooling ... 65
Condition as supplied ... 125
Conditions
Ambient and operating conditions ... 49
Configuration
Drive system ... 35
HMU05, HNF05, HNL05, HNC05 ... 116
Connection
24 V supply (XD10) ... 140, 208, 360
Aluminum contact points ... 641
Connection diagram (HMU05 as drive controller) ... 95, 129
Connection diagram (HMU05 as supply unit) ... 96, 129
Connection points, overview ... 130

Control voltage (XD10)..... 140, 208, 360
Coolant..... 145
Cupal disks..... 641
DC bus..... 141
Electrical..... 129
Ground..... 143
Hydraulics..... 145
Mains..... 104
Mains/motor (L1, L2, L3)..... 135
Motor fan control (XG3)..... 136
Motor holding brake(XG3)..... 136
Motor temperature monitoring (XG3)..... 136
Protective conductor..... 132
Shield..... 143
Connection points
HMU05, overview..... 130
connectionsHAH02.1-WA012-020
ENABLE, UNIT ERROR, UNIT WARNING, ERROR RESET connections..... 482
Contained substances
see "Significant components"..... 621
Control cabinet
Cooling..... 52
Design..... 52
Control lines
Cables, shield connection..... 143
Control section
Installation and removal..... 14
Control voltage
Connection point XD10..... 140, 208, 360
Continuous power..... 101
Data..... 147
Determining the power requirement..... 100
For drive systems..... 100
HMU05..... 147
Installation..... 102
Loop-through contacts (XD10)..... 140, 208, 360
Looping through..... 103
Peak current..... 102
Project planning..... 100
Requirements on the power supply unit..... 101
Supply with control voltage 24 V..... 100
Coolant
Connection points..... 145
Non-water-based coolant..... 68
water-based..... 67, 68
Coolant container..... 56
Coolant pump..... 56
Cooling
HMU05..... 88
Cooling system
Components..... 55
Sizing..... 654
Cooling systems..... 54
Cooling unit
Features..... 54
Corner-grounded delta mains..... 110
Coupling
Axis coupling..... 119
DC bus coupling..... 119
CSB02.5
BASIC..... 12
Type code..... 9
CSH02.5
ADVANCED..... 12
Type code..... 9
CSx02.5
Functional equipment..... 12
Cupal disks
Aluminum contact points..... 641

D

Data
Ambient conditions..... 49
HLL05..... 325
HLR05..... 338
HLT05..... 347
HML05..... 305
HMU05, control voltage..... 147
HMU05, cooling..... 88
HMU05, DC bus..... 153
HMU05, dimensional drawing..... 73
HMU05, dimensions..... 73
HMU05, distances..... 88
HMU05, housing dimensions..... 87
HMU05, insulation..... 87
HMU05, inverter..... 156
HMU05, Mains voltage..... 150
HMU05, mass..... 87
HMU05, power dissipation..... 88
HMU05, temperatures..... 88
HMU05, THD..... 646
HMU05, UL ratings..... 69
HNA05..... 202
HNC05..... 227
HNF05..... 247
HNL05..... 279
Operating conditions..... 49
DC bus
Connection point..... 141
Data, HMU05..... 153
Fuses..... 640
Fusing..... 640
DC bus choke
HLL05..... 312
DC bus coupling..... 119
DC bus ground capacitor pair
HAS04.1-003..... 331
Declaration of conformity..... 121
Design
HMU05..... 33
Devices
Mounting positions..... 51, 94
Dimension sheet
HNL05.1R-…-A4..... 252

HNL05.1R-…-A5 ... 268
Dimensional drawing
HLL05 ... 315
HLR05 ... 337
HLT05 ... 343
HML05 ... 286
HMU05 ... 73
HNA05 ... 199
HNC05 ... 219
HNF05 ... 241
Disposal ... 621
Distances
HMU05 ... 88
Documentation
Additional documentation ... 17
Drive systems ... 17
Editions ... 17
Firmware ... 18
Overview ... 17
Purpose ... 17
Related documentation ... 17
System components ... 17
Drive range
IndraDrive ML ... 1
Drive system ... 23
Configuring ... 35
HMU05 with HMS01/HMD01 ... 44
System structure ... 5

E
Electric drive system ... 23
Electrical connection ... 129
Electrical project planning ... 95
Encoder
Supported encoder systems ... 4
Environmental protection ... 621
External braking resistor
HLR05 ... 336
external wiring ... 638

F
field wiring ... 638
File numbers
UL ... 122
Firmware ... 16
Documentation ... 18
Flow rate
Calculation ... 650
Foreign matters
Compatibility ... 72
Functional equipment
CSx02.5 ... 12
Functional features
HMU05 ... 4
Fuses
Characteristic ... 638
Circuit breaker ... 638
DC bus ... 640
Design ... 638
Sizing ... 629

G
G1
Mounting position ... 94
G1, G2, G3, G4, G5
Mounting positions ... 51
Ground
Connection ... 143
Ground connection ... 143

H
HAH02
Disclaimer notice ... 376
General information ... 374
Heat exchanger ... 371
Manufacturer’s details and machine identification details ... 374
Safety information ... 377
Starting ... 421, 469, 516, 564, 616
Type code ... 371
HAH02.1-WA
Heating function (optional) ... 617
MLD ... 514, 562, 614
Parameters ... 518, 566, 617
Switching the pressure command value ... 424, 472, 519, 567, 619
Troubleshooting ... 507, 552, 602
HAH02.1-WA012-020
Clean the bleed valve and connector ... 506
Cleaning ... 505
Description of the control elements and indicator lamps ... 495
Description of the fuses ... 484
Disposal ... 513
Electrical connection ... 494
Emptying the hydraulic circuit ... 503
Exchanging the coolant ... 512
Filling pump priming procedure ... 500
Filling the hydraulic circuit ... 498
General description of the machine ... 474
Hose connections ... 494
Installation ... 492
Main components ... 475
Maintenance ... 504
Operational cycle and component description ... 475
Overall dimensions ... 480
Package ... 488
Processing and protection devices ... 485
Replacing the fan ... 512
Replacing the filling pump ... 510
Replacing the fuses ... 512
Replacing the main pump ... 511
Restoring the pressure ... 501

Storage... 490
Switching off... 497
Switching on... 496
Technical data - Machine... 481
Transport and installation, safety recommendations... 488
Transporting and lifting the packed machine... 490
Unpacking... 491
Use... 495
Warning and safety signs... 487
HAH02.1-WA020-090
Bleed valve, clean connector... 550
Cleaning... 550
Description of the control elements and indicator lamps... 540
Description of the fuses... 531
Disposal... 561
Electrical connection... 539
Emptying the hydraulic circuit... 548
ENABLE, UNIT ERROR and UNIT WARNING connections... 529
Exchanging the coolant... 560
Filling pump priming procedure... 545
Filling the hydraulic circuit... 543
General description of the machine... 521
Hose connections... 539
Installation... 538
Main components... 522
Maintenance... 548
Operating and safety equipment... 532
Operating cycle and component description... 522
Overall dimensions... 527
Package... 535
Replace the main pump... 555
Replacing the electric fan... 557
Replacing the filling pump... 554
Replacing the fuses... 560
Replacing the heater... 558
Restore pressure... 546
Storage... 536
Switching off... 542
Switching on... 541
Technical data - Machine... 528
Transport and installation, safety recommendations... 534
Transporting and lifting the packed machine... 536
Unpacking... 537
Use... 539
Warning and safety signs... 534
HAH02.1-WA035-090
Bleed valve, clean connector... 601
Cleaning... 599
Description of the control elements and indicator lamps... 589
Description of the fuses... 579
Disposing... 613
Electrical connection... 588
Emptying the hydraulic circuit... 597
ENABLE, UNIT ERROR and UNIT WARNING connections... 577
Filling pump priming procedure... 594
Filling the hydraulic circuit... 592
General description of the machine... 569
Heater - resetting the safety temperature controller... 598
Hose connections... 588
Installation... 587
Main components... 570
Maintenance... 598
Operating and safety equipment... 580
Operating cycle and component description... 570
Overall dimensions... 575
Package... 583
Replace the electric fan... 608
Replace the heater... 609
Replacing fuses... 613
Replacing the coolant... 613
Replacing the main pump... 605
Replacing the mMain pump... 606
Resetting the safety temperature controller of the heater... 598
Restoring the pressure... 595
Storage... 584
Switching off... 591
Switching on... 590
Technical data - Machine... 576
Transport and installation, safety recommendations... 582
Transporting and lifting the packed machine... 584
Unpacking... 585
Use... 588
Warning and safety signs... 582
HAH02.1-WW
MLD... 418, 466
Parameters... 423, 471
Switching the pressure command value... 424, 472, 519, 567, 619
Troubleshooting... 410, 458
HAH02.1-WW008-020
Bleed valve, clean connector... 409
Cleaning... 408
Control elements and indicator lamps... 399
Disposing of old equipment... 417
Drain the customer circuit... 406
Draining the drive circuit... 407
Electrical connection... 398
ENABLE, UNIT ERROR and UNIT WARNING connections... 385
Filling pump priming procedure... 404
Filling the drive circuit... 402
Fuses... 387

General description of the machine..... 378
Hose connections..... 398
Information and safety signs..... 390
Main parts..... 379
Maintenance..... 408
Mounting..... 395
Operational cycle and component description..... 379
Overall dimensions..... 382
Packaging..... 391
Processing and protection devices..... 388
Replacing the actuator..... 416
Replacing the filling pump..... 412
Replacing the fuses..... 417
Replacing the main pump..... 414
Replacing the mixing valve..... 416
Restore pressure..... 405
Storage..... 392
Switching off..... 401
Switching on..... 400
Technical data - machine..... 383
Transport and installation, safety recommendations..... 391
Transporting and lifting the packed machine..... 392
Unpacking..... 393
Usage..... 399
Water quality specification..... 384
HAH02.1-WW035-090
Bleed valve, clean connector..... 409
Cleaning..... 408
Control elements and indicator lamps..... 399
Disposing of old equipment..... 417
Drain the customer circuit..... 406
Drain the drive circuit..... 407
Electrical connection..... 398
ENABLE, UNIT ERROR and UNIT WARNING connections..... 385
Fill the drive circuit..... 402
Filling pump priming procedure..... 404
Fuses..... 387
General description of the machine..... 378
Hose connections..... 398
Information and safety signs..... 390
Main parts..... 379
Maintenance..... 408
Mounting..... 395
Operational cycle and component description..... 379
Overall dimensions..... 382
Packaging..... 391
Processing and protection devices..... 388
Replacing the actuator..... 416
Replacing the filling pump..... 412
Replacing the fuses..... 417
Replacing the main pump..... 414
Replacing the mixing valve..... 416
Restore pressure..... 405
Storage..... 392
Switching off..... 401
Switching on..... 400
Technical data - machine..... 383
Transport and installation, safety recommendations..... 391
Transporting and lifting the packed machine..... 392
Unpacking..... 393
Usage..... 399
Water quality specification..... 384
HAH02.1-WW060-180
Bleed valve, clean connector..... 457
Cleaning..... 456
Control elements and indicator lamps..... 447
Disposing of old equipment..... 465
Electrical connection..... 446
Emptying the customer side circuit..... 454
Emptying the drive circuit..... 455
ENABLE, UNIT ERROR and UNIT WARNING connections..... 433
Filling pump priming procedure..... 452
Filling the drive circuit..... 450
Fuses..... 435
General description of the machine..... 426
Hose connections..... 446
Main components..... 427
Maintenance..... 455
Mounting..... 443
Operating and safety devices..... 436
Operating cycle and component description..... 427
Overall dimensions..... 430
Packaging..... 438
Replacing the actuator..... 465
Replacing the filling pump..... 461
Replacing the fuses..... 465
Replacing the main pump..... 463
Replacing the mixing valve..... 464
Restoring the pressure..... 453
Storage..... 440
Switching off..... 449
Switching on..... 448
Technical data - machine..... 431
Transport and installation, safety recommendations..... 438
Transporting and lifting the packed machine..... 440
Unpacking..... 441
Use..... 446
Warning and safety signs..... 438
Water quality specification..... 432
HAS03
Accessories (for mounting and installation)..... 165
HAS04.1-003
DC bus ground capacitor pair..... 331
HAS08

Cabinet mounting kit..... 166
HAS10
Blank cover..... 183
Type code..... 183
Hazardous substances..... 621
Heat exchanger
HAH02..... 371
Helpdesk..... 623
HLL05
Data..... 325
DC bus choke..... 312
Dimensional drawing..... 315
Dimensions..... 315
HMU05 assignment..... 330
Sizing..... 314
Type code..... 312
HLR05
Braking resistor (external)..... 336
Data..... 338
Dimensional drawing..... 337
Dimensions..... 337
Installation..... 339
Type code..... 336
HLT05
Braking unit..... 342
Connection diagram..... 349
Connection points..... 353
Data..... 347
Dimensional drawing..... 343
Dimensions..... 343
Display elements..... 366
LEDs..... 366
Type code..... 342
Wiring diagram HLT05 / HNA05 / HMU05... 352
HML05
Data..... 305
Dimensional drawing..... 286
Dimensions..... 286
HMU05 assignment..... 311
Type code..... 285
HMS05
Drive controller..... 2
HMU05
Assigning the additional components HNF05, HNL05, HNC05..... 116
Brief description..... 33
Connection points, overview..... 130
Control voltage, data..... 147
DC bus, data..... 153
Design (block diagram)..... 33
Dimensional drawing..... 73
Dimensions..... 73
Distances..... 88
Drive system with HMS01/HMD01..... 44
Functional features..... 4
Housing dimensions..... 87
Insulation..... 87
Inverter, data..... 156
Mains voltage, data..... 150
Mass..... 87
Mounting in control cabinet..... 129
Power dissipation..... 88
Scope of delivery..... 126
Sound pressure level..... 87
Supported motors..... 35
Temperatures..... 88
THD..... 646
Type code..... 6
UL ratings..... 69
HMV05
Supply unit..... 2
HNA bus
XG32..... 138, 212
HNA05
Connection points..... 204
Data..... 202
Dimensional drawing..... 199
Dimensions..... 199
Display elements..... 217
LEDs..... 217
Mains connection module..... 198
Protective conductor connection point..... 205
Type code..... 198
HNC05
Aging..... 235
Assignment to HMU05..... 116
Capacity loss..... 235
Data..... 227
Dimensional drawing..... 219
Dimensions..... 219
Mains capacitor..... 218
Mains capacitor without ground capacitors (HNC05.1N-…-C001)..... 232
Type code..... 218
Wear test..... 235
HNF05
Assignment to HMU05..... 116
Data..... 247
Dimensional drawing..... 241
Dimensions..... 241
Mains filter..... 239
Type code..... 239
HNL05..... 248
Assignment to HMU05..... 116
Chopper throttle..... 279
Data..... 279
Dimension sheet HNL05.1R-…-A4..... 252
Dimension sheet HNL05.1R-…-A5..... 268
Dimensions HNL05.1R-…-A4..... 252
Dimensions HNL05.1R-…-A5..... 268
Pre-throttle..... 279
Type code..... 248
Hotline..... 623
Housing dimensions
HMU05..... 87
HPC01

Connection points..... 144
Optional cards..... 13
Type code..... 13

I
Identification
Of the components..... 125
Individual components
Combining..... 33
IndraDrive ML
Applications..... 3
Drive range..... 1
Overview..... 1
System presentation..... 1
Target applications..... 3
Installation
24 V supply..... 102
Connection points..... 129
Control section..... 14
Control voltage supply..... 102
Electrical connection..... 129
Optional card..... 14
Installation conditions..... 49
Installation methods..... 639
Installation type
B1..... 629, 638
B2..... 631, 638
E..... 633, 635, 638
E (international except for USA/Canada)..... 633
E (USA/Canada)..... 635
NFPA..... 638
UL508A..... 638
Insulation
HMU05..... 87
Insulation resistance testing..... 125
Intended use..... 21
Applications..... 21
internal wiring..... 638
Inverter, data
HMU05..... 156
IT mains type..... 108

L
L+, L-
DC bus..... 141
L1, L2, L3
Mains/motor connection..... 135
Leakage capacitance
Calculating..... 643
Determining..... 643
Power cables..... 643
Leakage currents
Cause..... 104
Line
Correction factor..... 638
Cross-sections, sizing..... 629
Fuses, sizing..... 629
Liquid cooling
Calculation criteria..... 650
Components of the cooling system..... 55
Condensation protection..... 65
Coolant..... 67
Flow rate..... 650
Liquid cooling circuit diagram..... 653
Parallel connection..... 64
Physical data..... 650
Pressure decrease..... 651
Project planning..... 53
Series connection..... 64
Sizing aids..... 652
Sizing example..... 657
Wiring..... 64
Liquid cooling circuit diagram
Liquid cooling..... 653
Liquid-to-liquid cooling unit
Cooling capacity..... 61
Features..... 54
Listing
C-UL-US..... 121

M
Mains
With grounded outer conductor..... 110
Mains capacitor
HNC05..... 218
without ground capacitors (HNC05.1N-…-C001)..... 232
Mains choke..... 248
HNL05..... 248
Mains connection
L1, L2, L3..... 135
Mains current..... 114
Mains filter, mains choke..... 116
Parallel connection..... 111
Power..... 114
Project planning..... 104
Types..... 111
Mains current..... 114
Mains filter
and mains choke..... 116
HNF05..... 239
Mains types..... 106
Mains voltage
HMU05..... 150
Mains-side phase current
Calculating..... 114
Mass
HMU05..... 87
Mechanical project planning..... 73
MLD
HAH02.1-WA, pressure control.... 514, 562, 614
HAH02.1-WA, temperature control..... 515, 563, 615
HAH02.1-WW, pressure control..... 418, 466

HAH02.1-WW, temperature control..... 419, 467
Motor
Cables, shield connection..... 143
Motor fan control..... 136
Motor fan control connection (XG3)..... 136
Motor holding brake..... 136
Motor holding brake connection (XG3)..... 136
Motor temperature monitoring..... 136
Motor temperature monitoring connection (XG3)..... 136
Supported motors..... 35
Third-party motors..... 35
Motor connection
L1, L2, L3..... 135
Mounting
HMU05 in control cabinet..... 129
Mounting position
Definition (G1, G2, G3, G4, G5)..... 51
G1..... 94

O
Operating conditions..... 49
Operation at partial load..... 114
Optional card
Installation and removal..... 14
Optional cards
HPC01..... 13
Overview
Accessories..... 163
Additional components..... 163
Cables..... 163

P
Packaging..... 621
Parallel connection..... 111
Parallel operation
Power extension..... 119
PELV..... 27
PF55, PF56, PF57, PF58
LEDs, HLT05..... 366
LEDs, HNA05..... 217
Phase current
Calculating..... 114
Power extension
Parallel operation..... 119
Power supply unit
24 V..... 367
24V/20A connection diagram..... 369
24V/40A connection diagram..... 370
Data..... 368
Pre-throttle
HNL05..... 279
Pressure control
HAH02.1-WA, MLD..... 514, 562, 614
HAH02.1-WW, MLD..... 418, 466
Pressure decrease
Calculation..... 651
Production processes..... 621
Project planning
Electrical project planning..... 95
Mechanical project planning..... 73
Protective conductor
Connection..... 132
Protective extra-low voltage..... 27

R
Rating plate
Electrical equipment..... 126
RCCB..... 104
RCD..... 104
Reactive current
Capacitive..... 627
HNC05..... 234
HNF05..... 247
Reactive power
Capacitive reactive current..... 627
Recycling..... 622
Refrigeration unit
Refrigeration capacity..... 63
Related documentation..... 17
Relative Short Circuit Power
RSC..... 644
Removal
Control section..... 14
Optional card..... 14
Residual-current-operated circuit breakers..... 104
Return of products..... 621
RSC
Relative Short Circuit Power..... 644

S
Safety instructions for electric drives and controls..... 23
Safety temperature controller
HAH02.1-WA035-090, reset..... 598
Scope of delivery
HMU05..... 126
Sealing nipple..... 145
Service hotline..... 623
Shield
Connection..... 143
Control lines..... 143
Motor power cables..... 143
Shut-off coupling..... 145
Significant components..... 621
Sizing
Line cross-sections and fuses..... 629
Sound pressure level
HMU05..... 87
standard motors
Voltage load..... 160
State-of-the-art..... 21
Storing
Components..... 127

Supply
With control voltage 24 V ... 100
With mains voltage ... 104
Supply unit
Third-party supply units ... 628
Support ... 623
Switching off
Supply unit ... 625
Switching on
Supply unit ... 625
System structure
Drive system ... 5

T
Target applications
IndraDrive ML ... 3
Technical data
HMU05, power section ... 147
See also index entry Data ... 147
Temperature control
HAH02.1-WA, MLD ... 515, 563, 615
HAH02.1-WW, MLD ... 419, 467
Testing
Customer-side ... 125
Factory-side ... 125
Insulation resistance ... 125
Voltage testing ... 125
THD
HMU05 ... 646
Third-party motors
At drive controllers ... 35
Third-party supply units ... 628
TN-C mains type ... 107
TN-S mains type ... 106
Transporting
Components ... 126
TT system ... 110
Type code
CSB02.5 ... 9
CSH02.5 ... 9
HAH02 ... 371
HAS10 ... 183
HLL05 ... 312
HLR05 ... 336
HLT05 ... 342
HML05 ... 285
HMU05 ... 6
HNA05 ... 198
HNC05 ... 218
HNF05 ... 239
HNL05 ... 248
HPC01 ... 13
Type plate
Electrical equipment ... 125

U
UL
Component designations (E-file) ... 662
File numbers ... 122
Listing ... 121
Ratings, HMU05 ... 69
Ungrounded mains ... 108
Unintended use ... 22
Consequences, disclaimer ... 21
Use
Intended use ... 21
Unintended use ... 22

V
Voltage testing ... 125

W
WATER IN/OUT
Coolant connection ... 145
Water-water heat exchanger
HAH02.1-WW008-020 ... 378
HAH02.1-WW035-090 ... 378
HAH02.1-WW060-180 ... 426

X
XD1
Mains voltage, equipment grounding conductor ... 206
XD2
DC bus ... 207
XD02
DC bus ... 357
XD4
Braking resistor ... 359
XD10
Control voltage (24 V) ... 140, 208, 360
XE01
Equipment grounding conductor connection point ... 355
XF1 ... 145
XF2 ... 145
XG1
IndraBus ... 139, 209, 361
XG3
Braking resistor feedback contact ... 362
Motor temperature monitoring, motor holding brake, motor fan control ... 136
XG31
Messages ... 210, 363
XG32
HNA bus ... 138, 212
XG33
DC BUS SHORT-CIRCUIT (ZKS) ... 365
On, off, ZKS (DC bus short circuit) status ... 213
XG34
Mains contactor (contact) ... 215
XG40
Mains contactor (acknowledgment messages) ... 216

Y

Y-capacitor pair
→ DC bus ground capacitor pair..... 331

Notes

rexroth
A Bosch Company

Bosch Rexroth AG
P.O. Box 13 57
97803 Lohr a.Main, Germany
Bgm.-Dr.-Nebel-Str. 2
97816 Lohr a.Main, Germany
Phone +49 9352 18 0
Fax +49 9352 18 8400
www.boschrexroth.com/electrics



R911344279

DOK-INDRV*-HXX05******-PR04-EN-P